A First Course in Finance

Preview, Thursday 30th March, 2006

"Have I (hic) godda deal for you."

A First Course in Finance

© 2003–2006 by Ivo Welch. All rights reserved.

Cartoons are copyright and courtesy of Mike Baldwin. See http://www.cornered.com/.

ISBN: no number yet.

Library of Congress: no number yet.

Book Website: http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book

Typesetting System: pdflatex.

Cover Font	Y&Y Lucida Casual	13-38pt.
Main Body Font	Y&Y Lucida	10pt.
Other Fonts	Y&Y Lucida variations	

See http://www.tug.org/yandy/

Most graphics were created in R, open-source and free: www.r-project.org. Fonts were embedded using AFPL ghostscript and Glyph Software's xpdf.

The referenced spreadsheets are Excel (Microsoft) and OpenOffice (free).

Printed: Thursday 30th March, 2006 (from bookg.tex).

Warning: This book is in development.
It is not error-free.

A First Course in Finance

PREVIEW, THURSDAY 30TH MARCH, 2006

Ivo Welch

Professor of Finance and Economics
Yale University

"Have I (hic) godda deal for you."

There are a large number of individuals who have helped me with this book. They will eventually be thanked here. Until then, some random collection: Rick Antle. Donna Battista. Randolph Beatty. Wolfgang Bühler. Kangbin Chua. Diego Garcia. Stan Garstka. Roger Ibbotson. Ludovic Phalippou. Matthew Spiegel. John Strong. Julie Yufe. Many anonymous victim students using earlier error-ridden drafts. Most importantly, Mary-Clare McEwing helped me improve the book.

Most of the review comments on early version of this book were very good, and I have tried hard to use them all. Thanks to the reviewers, who really gave a lot of their valuable time and thoughts to help me.

Tony Bernardo
Bill Christie
Jennifer Conrad
Josh Coval
Amy Dittmar
Richard Fendler
Diego Garcia
Sharon Garrison
James Gatti
Simon Gervais
Tom Geurtz
Robert Hansen
Milt Harris
Ronald Hoffmeister
Kurt Jesswin
Mark Klock
Angeline Lavin
Joseph McCarthy
Michael Pagano
Mitch Petersen
Sarah Peck
Robert Ritchey
Bruce Rubin
Tim Sullivan
Chris Stivers
Mark Stohs
John Strong
Joel Vanden
Jaime Zender
Miranda (Mei) Zhang

A list of articles upon which the ideas in the book are based, and a list of articles that describe current ongoing academic research will eventually appear on the book's website.

Warning: This book is in development.
It is not error-free.

Dedicated to my parents, Arthur and Charlotte.

last file change: Jan 23, 2006 (07:01h)

A Quick Adoption Checklist For Instructors

This is the recommended checklist for this book (AFCIF) while the book is in beta test mode. This checklist will not apply after AFCIF is published (with full supplementary materials) by Addison-Wesley-Pearson.

- ✓ Read this prologue and one or two sample chapters to determine whether you like the AFCIF approach. (Although not representative, I recommend that you also read the epilogue.)

  If you do like the AFCIF approach, then please continue. If you do not like AFCIF (or the chapters you read), please email ivo_welch@brown.edu why you did not like it. I promise I will not shoot the messenger: I want to learn how to do it better.

- ✓ Continue to assign whatever other finance textbook you were planning to use, just add AFCIF. Use it as a supplementary text, or assign just a few chapters.

  • Although AFCIF is a full-service textbook for an introductory finance course, it should also work well as a complement to an existing textbook. Your students should relatively easily benefit from having access to both, because this book is both different from and similar to the competition. I believe that relative to relying only on your old textbook, AFCIF will *not* increase, but decrease your student's confusion and workload.

  • Take the low risk route and see how well AFCIF works! (Take the Pepsi challenge!) Keeping your old textbook is also your insurance against using a novel textbook. And it will make students less critical of the remaining shortcomings in AFCIF, such as the limited number of exercises (and their occasionally erroneous solutions). Perhaps most importantly, AFCIF does not *yet* have full supplementary materials. It will when Addison-Wesley will publish it, but until then, the auxiliary materials from other textbooks may help.

  • For now, students can download the book chapters, so there is no printing cost involved. Affordability should not be a concern.

  • It should be a relatively simple matter to link AFCIF chapters into your curriculum, because the chapters are kept relatively straightforward and succinct.

  You cannot go wrong if you try out at least a few chapters of AFCIF in this manner.

- ✓ You can receive permission to post the electronic AFCIF on your class website. (The website must be secured to allow only university-internal distribution.) Students can carry the files on their notebook computers with them.

- ✓ You can ask your copy center to print and bind the version on your website. You can also obtain a nicely printed and bound version for $40 from lulu.com.

  • Although versions on the AFCIF website at http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book will always have some improvements, it is a good idea for each class to agree on one definitive reference version.

- ✓ If you are using AFCIF and you are looking for lecture notes, feel free to "steal" and adapt my lecture notes (linked at http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book) to your liking. You can change and modify the lecture notes anyway you like, without copyright restrictions.

- ✓ Of course, I hope that the majority of your students (and you) will prefer reading AFCIF instead of your old textbook. At the end of the course, please ask your students which textbook they found more helpful. Please email your conclusions and impressions to ivo.welch@yale.edu. Any suggestions for improvement are of course also very welcome. Any feedback would be appreciated, but it would be particularly helpful for me to learn in what respects they prefer their other textbook.

To The Instructor

This book is intentionally different.

Most corporate finance textbooks cover a similar canon of concepts, and this textbook is no exception. A quick glance at the Table of Contents will show you that most—though not all—of the topics in A First Course in Finance overlap with those in traditional finance textbooks. But this does not mean that this book is not different. Although I cover similar conceptual territory, there are also important departures.

Innovations in Approach

So, here is my view of how this book differs from what is currently out there. I do not claim that other traditional textbooks do not teach any of what I will list, but I do maintain that my emphasis on these points is much stronger than what you will find elsewhere.

Conversational Tone.

Conversational Tone The tone is more informal and conversational, which (I hope) makes the subject more accessible.

The method of instruction is "step-by-step numerical examples."

Numerical-Example Based I learn best by numerical example, and firmly believe that students do, too. Whenever I want to understand an idea, I try to construct numerical examples for myself (the simpler, the better). I do not particularly care for long algebra or complex formulas, precise though they may be. I do not much like many diagrams with long textual descriptions but no specific examples, either—I often find them too vague, and I am never sure whether I have really grasped the whole mechanism by which the concept works. Therefore, I wanted to write a textbook that relies on numerical examples as its primary tutorial method.

This approach necessitates a rearrangement of the tutorial textbook progression. Most conventional finance textbooks start with a bird's eye view and then work their way down. The fundamental difference of this book is that it starts with a worm's eye view and works its way up. The organization is built around critical question like "What would it be worth?," which is then answered in numerical step-by-step examples from first principles. Right under numerical computations are the corresponding symbolic formulas. In my opinion, this structure clarifies the meaning of these formulas, and is better than either an exclusively textual or algebraic exposition. I believe that the immediate duality of numerics with formulas will ultimately help students understand the material on a higher level and with more ease. (Of course, this book also provides some overviews, and ordinary textbooks also provide some numerical examples.)

Students should have a method of thinking, not just formulas.

Problem Solving An important goal of this book is to teach students how to approach new problems that they have not seen before. Our goal should be send students into the real world with the analytical tools that allow them to disect new problems, and not just with a chest full of formulas. I believe that if students adopt the numerical example method—the "start simple and then generalize" method—they should be able to solve all sorts of new problems. It should allow them to figure out and perhaps even generalize the formulas that they learn in this book. Similarly, if students can learn how to verify others' complex new claims with simple examples first, it will often help them to determine whether the emperor is wearing clothes.

We build a foundation first—so we are deeper!

Deeper, Yet Easier I believe that formulaic memorization is ultimately not conducive to learning. In my opinion, such an alternative "canned formula" approach is akin to a house without a foundation. Yes, it may be quicker to build. It may work for a while. But there is always the risk of collapse. Shoring up the house later is also more costly than building it right to begin with.

Giving students the methods of how to think about problems and then showing them how to develop the formulas themselves will make finance seem easier and simpler in the end, even if the coverage is conceptually deeper. In my case, when I haved learned new subjects, I have often found it especially frustrating if I understand a subject just a little but I also suspect that the pieces are really not all in place. A little knowledge can also

be dangerous. If I do not understand where a formula comes from, how would I know whether I can or cannot use it in a new situation? And I believe that even average students can understand the basic ideas of finance and where the formulas come from.

Brevity Sometimes, less is more.

Brevity is important. The book focus is on explanations, not institutions.

This book is intentionally concise, even though it goes into more theoretical detail than other books! Institutional descriptions are short. Only the concepts are explained in great detail.

My view is that when students are exposed to too much material, they won't read it, they won't remember it, and they won't know what is really important and what is not. Ten years after our students graduate, they should still solidly remember the fundamental ideas of finance, be able to look up the details when they need them, and be able to solve new (financial) problems. Many institutional details will have changed, anyway—it is the ideas, concepts, and tools that will last longer.

Self-Contained for Clarity Finance is a subject that *every* student can comprehend, regardless of background. It is no more difficult than economics or basic physics. But, it is often a problem that many students come into class with a patchwork on knowledge. We, the instructors, then often erroneously believe the students have all the background covered. Along the way, such students get lost. It is easy to mistake such them for "poor students," especially if there is no reference source, where they can quickly fill in the missing parts.

Self-contained means students can backtrack.

In this book, I try to make each topic's development self-contained. This means that I try to explain everything from first principles, but in a way that every student can find interesting. For example, even though the necessary statistical background is integrated in the book for the statistics novice, the statistics-savvy student also should find value in reading it. This is because statistics is different in our finance context than when it is taught for its own sake in a statistics course.

Closer Correspondence with the Contemporary Curriculum I believe that most finance core courses taught today follow a curriculum that is closer in spirit to this book—and more logical—than it is to the order in older, traditional finance textbooks. In the places where this book covers novel material (see below), I hope that you will find that the new material has merit—and if you agree, that covering it is much easier with this book than with earlier books.

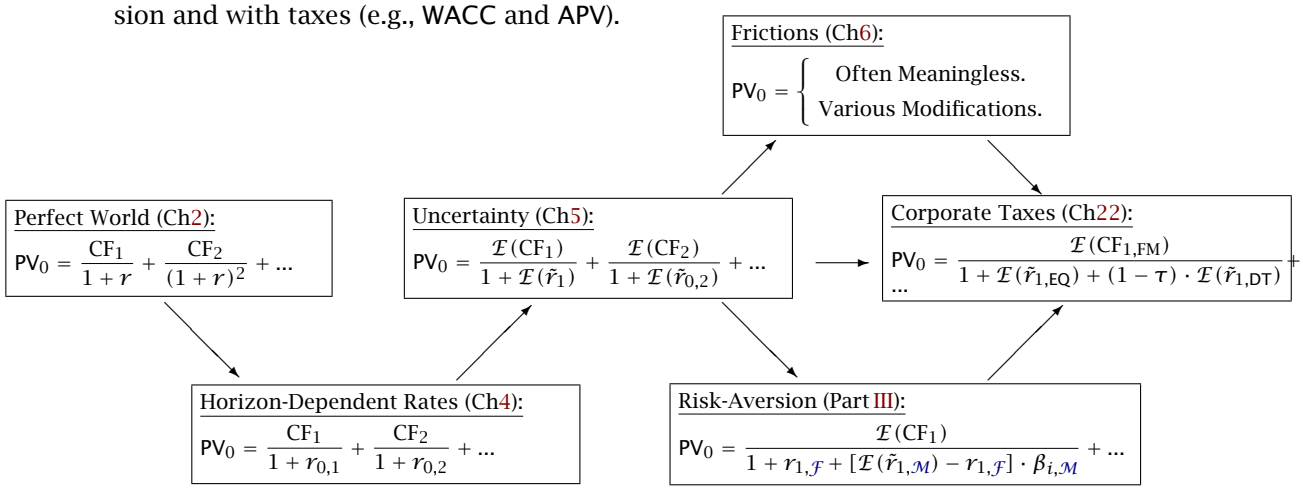
Less Chapter Reordering.

Innovations in Particular Topics

The book also offers a number of topical and expositional innovations. Here is a selection:

Progression to Risk and Uncertainty The book starts with a perfect risk-free world, then adds horizon-dependent interest rates, uncertainty under risk neutrality, imperfect market frictions (e.g., taxes), uncertainty under risk-aversion, and finally uncertainty under risk aversion and with taxes (e.g., WACC and APV).

First, no risk; then risk-neutral attitudes to risk; then risk-averse attitudes to risk.



Each step builds on concepts learned earlier. I believe it is an advantage to begin simply and then gradually add complexity. The unique roles of the more difficult concepts of risk measurement, risk-aversion, and risk-aversion compensation then become much clearer. (There are some forward hints in the text that describe how the model will change when the world becomes more complex.)

Drive home "default risk."

A Strong Distinction between Expected and Promised Cash Flows I have always been shocked by how many graduating students think that a *Boston Celtics* bond quotes 400 basis points in interest above a comparable Treasury bond because of the risk-premium, which they can calculate using the CAPM formula. Learning to avoid this fundamental error is more important than fancy theories: the main reason why the *Boston Celtics* bond *promises* 400 extra basis points is, of course, primarily its default risk (compensation for non-payment), not a risk-premium (compensation for risk-averse investors that comes from the correlation with the market rate of return). And for bonds, the latter is usually an order of magnitude smaller than the former. The CAPM can definitely not be used to find the 400 basis points. Although many instructors mention this difference at some point, 5 minutes of default risk discussion is often lost in 5 hours worth of CAPM discussion. But if students do not understand the basic distinction, the 5 hours of CAPM discussion are not only wasted but will have made matters worse!

Traditional textbooks have not helped, because they have not sufficiently emphasized the distinction. In contrast, in this book, default risk is clearly broken out. The difference between quoted (promised) and expected returns, and quoted default compensation and risk compensation are important themes carried throughout.

Understand accounting without being an accounting textbook.

Financials from a Finance Perspective Finance students need to solidly understand the relationship between financial statements and NPV. They need to understand the basic relationships in order to construct pro formas. Yet, when I was writing this book, I could not find good, concise, and self-contained explanations of the important aspects and logic of accounting statements *from a finance perspective*. Consequently, this book offers such a chapter. It does not just show students some financial statements and names the financial items; instead, it makes students understand how the NPV cash flows are embedded in the accounting statements.

A fundamental understanding of financials is also necessary to understand comparables: for example, students must know that capital expenditures must be subtracted out if depreciation is not. (Indeed, the common use of EBITDA without a capital expenditures adjustment is often wrong. If we do not subtract out the pro-rated expense cost, we should subtract out the full expenses. Factories and the cash flows they produce do not fall from heaven.)

Pro Formas In any formal financial setting, professionals propose new projects—whether it is the expansion of a factory building within a corporation, or a new business for presentation to venture capitalists—through pro formas. A good pro forma is a combination of financial expertise, business expertise, and intuition. Both art and science go into its construction. The book's final chapter, our capstone towards which the book works, is the creation of such a pro forma. It combines all the ingredients from earlier chapters—capital budgeting, taxes, the cost of capital, capital structure, and so on.

Students work out simple portfolios to understand covariances and theories.

"Hands-On" Investments The method of teaching investments is simple but revolutionary. It carries through an example of three securities with twelve actual annual rates of return. Students can easily relate to the problem of picking the best portfolio among these three stocks. Along the way, they get to compute variances, covariances, correlations, and betas. They will internalize that the "double summation" variance formula is just a convenient computational shortcut to the variance computed from the time-series of returns on the portfolio. The correspondence between a mean-variance efficient portfolio and the risk-reward correspondence (the security markets line) similarly becomes obvious and intuitive: students can pick a better portfolio from these three stocks if one offers too little or too much return for its contribution to portfolio risk. In the end, students really understand investments, rather than just recipe formulas—and I believe they will find it clearer and easier, too.

I know this sounds incredible. This level of detail is often considered too difficult and too theoretical to be teachable in an average introductory finance course. You really have to see it to believe it.

Robustness The book looks at the robustness of our methods—the relative importance of errors and mistakes—and what first-order problems students should worry about and what second-order problems they can reasonably neglect.

A Newer Perspective on Capital Structure The academic perspective about capital structure has recently changed. A $1 million house that was originally financed by a 50% mortgage and then doubles in value now has only a 25% debt ratio. In analogous fashion, Chapter 25 shows how stock price movements have drastically changed the debt ratio of IBM from 2001 to 2003. Students can immediately eyeball the relative importance of market influences, issuing and other financial activities. The corporate market value changes are an important and robust factor determining capital structure—at least equal in magnitude to factors suggested in academic theories involving the pecking order or trade-offs. Moreover, we now know that most new equity shares appear in the context of M&A activity and as executive compensation, not in the context of public equity offerings. Part IV of our book explains what the known first-order determinants of capital structure are, what the (important) second-order determinants are, and what the factors still under investigation are.

Many Other Topical Improvements For example, the yield curve gets its own chapter even before uncertainty is described in much detail, so that students understand that projects over different time horizons can offer different rates of return even in the absence of risk. There is a self-contained chapter on comparables as a valuation technique—a technique that many of our students will regularly have to use after they graduate. The corporate governance chapter has a perspective that is darker than it is in other textbooks. WACC, APV, and direct pro forma construction all incorporate the tax advantage of debt into valuation. This is bread-and-butter for CFOs. This book offers a clear explanation of how these methods usually come to similar results (and when not!). Throughout the book, I try to be open and honest about where our knowledge is solid and where it is shaky—and how sensitive our estimates are to the errors we inevitably commit.

...and many more.

Although most of our curriculums are similar in their coverage of the basics, time constraints usually force us to exclude some topics. Your preferences as to what to cut may differ from mine. For example, I find the financials part very important, because this is what most of our graduates will do when they become analysts, brokers, or consultants. However, you may instead prefer to talk more about international finance. It is of course impossible to satisfy everyone—and instructors have always chosen their own favorites, adding and deleting topics as they see fit.

Webchapters will allow a-la-carte choice.

This book tries to accomodate some choice. Some chapters are available on the Web site ("Web Chapters") accompanying this book. Chapter style and formatting are unmistakably identical to the book itself. Every instructor can therefore choose his/her own favorite selection and ask students to download it. These chapters are free and access is easy. The menu right now contains the following chapters:

Real Options Real options are briefly covered in Chapter 7 in the text, but not in great detail. This web chapter shows how to use spreadsheets, time-series analysis, Monte Carlo simulation, and optimization to determine the value of a plant that can shut down and reopen (for a cost) as output prices fluctuate.

Option and Derivative Pricing This is a difficult subject to cover in an introductory course, because it really requires a minimum of 4-6 class sessions to do it well. This chapter tries to help you cover the basics in 2-3 class sessions. It explains option contracts, static arbitrage relations (including put-call parity), dynamic arbitrage and the Black-Scholes formula, and binomial trees.

International Finance This chapter explains the role of currency translations and international market segmentation for both investments and corporate budgeting purposes.

Ethics This chapter is experimental—and provocative. There is neither a particular set of must-cover topics nor a template on how to present this material. Your choices and views may differ from mine. However, I believe that ethical considerations are too important for them never to be raised.

Capital Structure Event Studies This chapter describes the evidence (up-to-2003!) of how the stock market reacts to the announcements of new debt offerings, new equity offerings, and dividend payments.

The title of the book is optimistic. A one-quarter course cannot cover the vast field that our profession has created over the last few decades. The book requires at least a one semester course, or, better yet, a full two-quarter sequence in finance—although the latter may prefer the "general survey" version of this book, which goes into more detail in the investments part.

I hope that this book will become your first choice in finance textbooks. If you do not like it, please drop me an email to let me know where it falls short. I would love to learn from you. (And even if I do disagree, chances are that your comments will influence my next revision.)

SIDE NOTE: If you use this book or some chapters therefrom, please permit me to use and post *your* homework and exam questions with answers. (Of course, this is not a requirement, only a plea for help.) My intent is for the Website to become collaborative: you will be able to see what other faculty do, and they can see what you do. The copyright will of course remain with you.

TO THE STUDENT

PREREQUISITES

This book and the subject itself are tough, but they are not forbidding, even to an average student. The main prerequisite is mathematical aptitude, but not mathematical sophistication.

What do you need to understand this book? You do not need any specific background in finance. You do need to be thoroughly comfortable with arithmetic and generally comfortable with algebra. You do need mathematical aptitude, but no knowledge of advanced mathematical constructs, such as calculus. Knowledge of statistics would be very helpful, but I will explain the relevant concepts when the need arises. You should own a $20 scientific calculator. (Financial calculators are not bad but also not necessary.) You should learn how to operate a spreadsheet (such as Excel in Microsoft's Office or the free OpenCalc spreadsheet in OpenOffice). The financial world is moving rapidly away from financial calculators and toward computer spreadsheets—it is easier to work with information on a large screen with a 2,000 MHz processor than on a small 2-line display with a 2MHz processor. Because I have tried hard to keep the book self-contained and to explain everything from first principles, you should not *need* to go hunting for details in statistics, economics, or accounting textbooks. But this is not to say that you do not need to take courses in these disciplines: they have way more to offer than just background knowledge for a finance textbook.

Jargon can trip up the reader.

One word of caution: the biggest problem for a novice of *any* field, but especially of finance, is **jargon**: the specialized terminology known only to the initiated. Worse, in finance, much jargon is ambiguous. Different people may use different terms for the same thing, and the same term may mean different things to different people. You have been warned! This book attempts to point out such ambiguous usage. Luckily, the bark of jargon is usually worse than its bite. It is only a temporary barrier to entry into the field of finance.

How to Read The Book

This textbook is concise. I wants to communicate the essential material in a straightforward (and thus compact), but also conversational (and thus more interactive) and accessible fashion. There are already many finance textbooks with over a thousand pages. Much of the content of these textbooks is interesting and useful but not essential to an understanding of finance. (I personally find some of this extra content distracting.)

This book is concise, focusing on the essence of arguments.

The book is organized into four parts: the basics consist of return computations and capital budgeting. Next are corporate financials, then investments (asset pricing), and financing (capital structure). Major sections within chapters end with questions that ask you to review the points just made with examples or questions similar to those just covered. **You should not proceed beyond a section *without* completing these questions (and in "closed book" format)!** Many, but not all, questions are easy and/or straightforward replications of problems that you will have just encountered in the chapter. Others are more challenging. Each chapter ends with answers to these review questions. Do not move on until you have mastered these review questions. (The published version of this book will contain many more student questions, and there will be a separate student testbank.)

The layout of the book.

There are "annotations" on the left side of most paragraphs throughout the text. Suggestion: use the remaining white space in the margin to scribble your own notes, preferably in pencil so that you can revise them.

This is an annotation.

Especially important concepts that you should memorize are in red boxes:

These are other notices.

IMPORTANT: *This is an important point to remember.*

Interesting, related points that either interrupt the flow of an argument, or that are not absolutely necessary are marked

SIDE NOTE: This is an interesting related note, not crucial for understanding the material. It is usually not excessively technical.

More detailed technical points are "digging-deeper notes," which should be of interest only to the student who is interested in pursuing finance beyond the introductory course:

DIGGING DEEPER: *If you are really interested, here is a curious fact or a derivation that most likely relies on excessive algebra.*

Both can be safely omitted from reading without compromising understanding. Sometimes, an appendix contains further advanced material.

A final warning: I have a strange sense of humor. Please do not be easily turned off.

Sense of Humor

Other Readings

This book cannot do it all. It is important for you to keep up with current financial developments. Frequent reading of the financial section of a major newspaper (such as the **New York Times** [**N.Y.T.**]), the **Wall Street Journal** [**W.S.J.**], or the **Financial Times** [**F.T.**] can help, as can regular consumption of good business magazines, such as **The Economist** or **Business Week**. (See the website at http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book for more useful resource links.) Although this is not a book on "how to read and understand the newspaper," you should be able to understand most of the contents of the financial pages after consuming this textbook. You should also know how to cruise the web—sites such as Yahoo!*Finance* contain a wealth of useful financial information. Yahoo!*Finance* is also used extensively in this book.

Advice: Follow current coverage of financial topics elsewhere!

(This particular printout is of a version that contains questions and notes to reviewers, and the book itself ends early—covering only the more polished and edited chapters. However, the following table of contents corresponds to the complete and standard version of the book. Consequently, the page numbers are not correct. A parenthesized chapter title means that the chapter has not yet been completed.)

Table of Contents

I Investments and Returns 1

CHAPTER 1: A Short Introduction 5

1·1 The Goal of Finance: Relative Valuation 6
1·2 How do CFOs do It? 7
1·3 Learning How to Approach New Problems 9
1·4 The Main Parts of This Book 10

CHAPTER 2: The Time Value of Money 11

2·1 Basic Definitions 12
2·1.A. Investments, Projects, and Firms 12
2·1.B. Loans and Bonds 13
2·1.C. U.S. Treasuries 14
2·2 Returns, Net Returns, and Rates of Return 14
2·3 The Time Value of Money 17
2·3.A. The Future Value of Money 17
2·3.B. Compounding 17
2·3.C. Confusion: Interest Rates vs. Interest Quotes 21
2·4 Capital Budgeting 23
2·4.A. Discount Factor and Present Value (PV) 23
2·4.B. Net Present Value (NPV) 26
2·5 Summary 30

CHAPTER 3: More Time Value of Money 33

3·1 Separating Investment Decisions and Present Values From Other Considerations 34
3·1.A. Does It Matter *When* You Need Cash? 34
3·1.B. Corporate Valuation: Growth as Investment Criteria? 35
3·1.C. The Value Today is just "All Inflows" or just "All Outflows" 36
3·2 Perpetuities 38
3·2.A. The Simple Perpetuity Formula 38
3·2.B. The Growing Perpetuity Formula 40
3·2.C. A Growing Perpetuity Application: Individual Stock Valuation with Gordon Growth Models 41

3·3 The Annuity Formula . . . 43
3·3.A. An Annuity Application: Fixed-Rate Mortgage Payments 43
3·3.B. An Annuity Example: A Level-Coupon Bond 44
3·3.C. The Special Cash Flow Streams Summarized 47
3·4 Summary . . . 49
a Advanced Appendix: Proofs of Perpetuity and Annuity Formulas . . . 52

CHAPTER 4: Investment Horizon, The Yield Curve, and (Treasury) Bonds 53
4·1 Time-Varying Rates of Return . . . 54
4·2 Annualized Rates of Return . . . 55
4·3 The Yield Curve . . . 58
4·3.A. An Example: The Yield Curve in May 2002 58
4·3.B. Compounding With The Yield Curve 60
4·3.C. Yield Curve Shapes 61
4·4 Present Values With Time-Varying Interest Rates . . . 62
4·4.A. Valuing A Coupon Bond With A Particular Yield Curve 63
4·5 Why is the Yield Curve not Flat? . . . 65
4·5.A. The Effect of Interest Rate Changes on Short-Term and Long-Term Treasury Bond Values 66
4·6 The Yield To Maturity (YTM) . . . 68
4·7 Optional Bond Topics . . . 70
4·7.A. Extracting Forward Interest Rates 70
4·7.B. Shorting and Locking in Forward Interest Rates 72
4·7.C. Bond Duration 74
4·7.D. Continuous Compounding 78
4·8 Summary . . . 79

CHAPTER 5: Uncertainty, Default, and Risk 83
5·1 An Introduction to Statistics . . . 84
5·1.A. Random Variables and Expected Values 84
5·1.B. Risk Neutrality (and Risk Aversion Preview) 87
5·2 Interest Rates and Credit Risk (Default Risk) . . . 88
5·2.A. Risk-Neutral Investors Demand Higher *Promised* Rates 88
5·2.B. A More Elaborate Example With Probability Ranges 89
5·2.C. Preview: Risk-Averse Investors Have Demanded Higher *Expected* Rates 91
5·3 Uncertainty in Capital Budgeting, Debt, and Equity . . . 93
5·3.A. Present Value With State-Contingent Payoff Tables 93
5·3.B. Splitting Project Payoffs into Debt and Equity 96
5·4 Robustness: How Bad are Your Mistakes? . . . 104
5·4.A. Short-Term Projects 104
5·4.B. Long-Term Projects 104
5·4.C. Two Wrongs Do Not Make One Right 105
5·5 Summary . . . 106

CHAPTER 6: Dealing With Imperfect Markets 111
6·1 Causes and Consequences of Imperfect Markets . . . 112
6·1.A. Perfect Market Assumptions 112
6·1.B. Value in Imperfect Markets 113
6·1.C. Perfect, Competitive, and Efficient Markets 113
6·2 The Effect of Disagreements . . . 117
6·2.A. Expected Return Differences vs. Promised Return Differences 117
6·2.B. Corporate Finance vs. Entrepreneurial or Personal Finance? 118
6·2.C. Covenants, Collateral, and Credit Rating Agencies 119

6·3 Market Depth and Transaction Costs . . . 123
6·3.A. Typical Costs When Trading Real Goods—Houses 123
6·3.B. Typical Costs When Trading Financial Goods—Stocks 124
6·3.C. Transaction Costs in Returns and Net Present Values 126
6·3.D. Liquidity 127
6·4 An Introduction to The Tax Code . . . 128
6·4.A. The Basics of (Federal) Income Taxes 128
6·4.B. Before-Tax vs. After-Tax Expenses 130
6·4.C. Average and Marginal Tax Rates 131
6·4.D. Dividend and Capital Gains Taxes 131
6·4.E. Other Taxes 132
6·4.F. What You Need To Know About Tax Principles In Our Book 133
6·5 Working With Taxes . . . 134
6·5.A. Taxes in Rates of Returns 134
6·5.B. Tax-Exempt Bonds and the Marginal Investor 134
6·5.C. Taxes in NPV 135
6·5.D. Tax Timing 137
6·6 Inflation . . . 138
6·6.A. Defining the Inflation Rate 138
6·6.B. Real and Nominal Interest Rates 139
6·6.C. Handling Inflation in Net Present Value 141
6·6.D. Interest Rates and Inflation Expectations 142
6·7 Multiple Effects . . . 144
6·7.A. How to Work Problems You Have Not Encountered 144
6·7.B. Taxes on Nominal Returns? 145
6·8 Summary . . . 147

CHAPTER 7: Capital Budgeting (NPV) Applications and Advice 153
7·1 The Economics of Project Interactions . . . 154
7·1.A. The Ultimate Project Selection Rule 154
7·1.B. Project Pairs and Externalities 155
7·1.C. One More Project: Marginal Rather Than Average Contribution 157
7·2 Comparing Projects With Different Lives and Rental Equivalents . . . 162
7·3 Expected, Typical, and Most Likely Scenarios . . . 164
7·4 Future Contingencies and Real Options . . . 165
7·4.A. A Basic Introduction 165
7·4.B. More Complex Option Valuation in a Risk-Neutral World 166
7·4.C. Decision Trees: One Set of Parameters 166
7·4.D. Decision Trees: One Set of Parameters 171
7·4.E. Summary 173
7·5 Mental Biases . . . 175
7·6 Incentive (Agency) Biases . . . 176
7·7 Summary . . . 180

CHAPTER 8: Other Important Capital Budgeting Topics 183
8·1 Profitability Index . . . 184
8·2 The Internal Rate of Return (IRR) . . . 185
8·2.A. Definition 185
8·2.B. Problems with IRR 187
8·3 So Many Returns: The Internal Rate of Return, the Cost of Capital, the Hurdle Rate, and the Expected Rate of Return . . . 188
8·4 Other Capital Budgeting Rules . . . 189
8·4.A. The Problems of Payback 189
8·4.B. More Rules 190

8·5 Summary 191

II Corporate Financials 193

CHAPTER 9: Understanding Financial Statements 197

9·1 Financial Statements 198
9·1.A. The Contents of Financials 199
9·1.B. PepsiCo's 2001 Financials 205
9·1.C. Why Finance and Accounting Think Differently 206
9·2 The Bottom-Up Example — Long-Term Accruals (Depreciation) 208
9·2.A. Doing Accounting 208
9·2.B. Doing Finance 211
9·2.C. Translating Accounting into Finance 212
9·3 The Hypothetical Bottom-Up Example — Short-Term Accruals 215
9·3.A. Working Capital 215
9·3.B. Earnings Management 218
9·4 Completing the Picture: PepsiCo's Financials 219
9·5 Summary 224

A Appendix: Supplementary Financials — Coca Cola 225
a. Coca Cola's Financials From EdgarScan 226
b. Coca Cola's Financials From Yahoo!*Finance* 227
B Appendix: Abbreviated PepsiCo Income Statement and Cash Flow Statement 228

CHAPTER 10: Valuation From Comparables 233

10·1 Comparables vs. NPV 234
10·2 The Price-Earnings (PE) Ratio 235
10·2.A. Definition 235
10·2.B. Why P/E Ratios differ 236
10·2.C. P/E Ratio Application Example: Valuing Beverage Companies 244
10·3 Problems With P/E Ratios 245
10·3.A. Selection of Comparison Firms 246
10·3.B. (Non-) Aggregation of Comparables 247
10·3.C. A Major Blunder: Never Average P/E ratios 248
10·3.D. Computing Trailing Twelve Month (TTM) Figures 250
10·3.E. Leverage Adjustments For P/E Ratios 251
10·4 Other Financial Ratios 255
10·4.A. Value-Based Ratios 255
10·4.B. Non-Value-Based Ratios Used in Corporate Analyses 257
10·5 Closing Thoughts: Comparables or NPV? 262
10·6 Summary 262

A Advanced Appendix: A Formula For Unlevering P/E ratios 263

III Risk and Investments 267

CHAPTER 11: A First Look at Investments 271

11·1 Stocks, Bonds, and Cash, 1970–2004 . . . 272
11·1.A. Graphical Representation of Historical Stock Market Returns 272
11·1.B. Comparative Investment Performance 276
11·1.C. Comovement, Beta, and Correlation 280
11·2 Visible and General Historical Stock Regularities . . . 282
11·3 History or Opportunities? . . . 283
11·4 Eggs and Baskets . . . 284
11·4.A. The Overall Basket 284
11·4.B. The Marginal Risk Contribution 285
11·4.C. The Market Equilibrium 285
11·5 Summary . . . 286

CHAPTER 12: Securities and Portfolios 287

12·1 Some Background Information About Equities Market Microstructure . . . 288
12·1.A. Brokers 288
12·1.B. Exchanges and Non-Exchanges 288
12·1.C. How Securities Appear and Disappear 289
12·2 Equities Transaction Costs . . . 291
12·2.A. Going Long 291
12·2.B. Going Short: The Academic Fiction 291
12·2.C. Going Short: The Real World 292
12·3 Portfolios and Indexes . . . 294
12·3.A. Portfolio Returns 294
12·3.B. Funds and Net Holdings 296
12·3.C. Some Common Indexes 297
12·3.D. Equal-Weighted and Value-Weighted Portfolios 298
12·3.E. Quo Vadis? Random Returns on Portfolios 301
12·4 Summary . . . 302

CHAPTER 13: Statistics 305

13·1 Historical and Future Rates of Return . . . 306
13·2 The Data: Twelve Annual Rates of Returns . . . 307
13·3 Univariate Statistics . . . 308
13·3.A. The Mean 308
13·3.B. The Variance and Standard Deviation 308
13·4 Bivariate Statistics: Covariation Measures . . . 311
13·4.A. Intuitive Covariation 311
13·4.B. Covariation: Covariance, Correlation, and Beta 312
13·4.C. Computing Covariation Statistics For The Annual Returns Data 320
13·5 Summary . . . 323
13·6 Advanced Appendix: More Statistical Theory . . . 324
13·6.A. Historical and Future Statistics 324
13·6.B. Improving Future Estimates From Historical Estimates 324
13·6.C. Other Measures of Spread 326
13·6.D. Translating Mean and Variance Statistics Into Probabilities 326
13·6.E. Correlation and Causation 327

CHAPTER 14: Statistics of Portfolios 329
14·1 Two Investment Securities . . . 331
14·1.A. Expected Rates of Returns 331
14·1.B. Covariance 332
14·1.C. Beta 333
14·1.D. Variance 334
14·2 Three and More Investment Securities . . . 336
14·2.A. Expected Returns, Covariance, Beta 336
14·2.B. Variance 338
14·2.C. Advanced Nerd Section: Variance with N Securities and Double Summations 340
14·2.D. Another Variance Example: PepsiCo, CocaCola, and Cadbury 342
14·3 Historical Statistics For Some Asset-Class Index Portfolios . . . 345
14·4 Summary . . . 349
A Appendix: More Historical Statistics . . . 351
a. Country Fund Rates of Return 352
b. Dow-Jones Constituents 353

CHAPTER 15: The Principle of Diversification 357
15·1 What Should You Care About? . . . 358
15·2 Diversification: The Informal Way . . . 359
15·3 Diversification: The Formal Way . . . 360
15·3.A. Uncorrelated Securities 360
15·3.B. Correlated Securities 363
15·3.C. Measures of Contribution Diversification: Covariance, Correlation, or Beta? 363
15·4 Does Diversification Work in the Real World? . . . 368
15·4.A. Diversification Among The Dow-Jones 30 Stocks 368
15·4.B. Mutual Funds 370
15·4.C. Alternative Assets 370
15·5 Diversification Over Time . . . 372
15·6 Summary . . . 376

CHAPTER 16: The Efficient Frontier—Optimally Diversified Portfolios 381
16·1 The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier . . . 382
16·1.A. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With Two Risky Securities 382
16·1.B. Different Covariance Scenarios 385
16·1.C. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With Many Risky Securities 386
16·2 Real-World Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier Implementation Problems . . . 392
16·3 Combinations of Portfolios on The Efficient Frontier . . . 394
16·4 The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With A Risk-Free Security . . . 397
16·4.A. Risk-Reward Combinations of Any Portfolio Plus the Risk-Free Asset 397
16·4.B. The Best Risk-Reward Combinations With A Risk-Free Asset 399
16·4.C. The Formula to Determine the Tangency Portfolio 400
16·4.D. Combining The Risk-Free Security And the Tangency Portfolio 402
16·5 What does a Security need to offer to be in an Efficient Frontier Portfolio? . . . 403
16·5.A. What if the Risk-Reward Relationship is Non-Linear? 403
16·5.B. What if the Risk-Reward Relationships is Linear? 404
16·5.C. The Line Parameters 406
16·6 Summary . . . 409
A Advanced Appendix: Excessive Proofs . . . 411
a. The Optimal Portfolio Weights Formula 411
b. The Combination of MVE Portfolios is MVE — With Risk-Free Security. 412

c. The Combination of Mean-Variance Efficient Portfolios is Mean-Variance Efficient — Without Risk-Free Security. 413
d. Proof of the Linear Beta vs. Expected Rate of Return Relationship for MVE Frontier Portfolios 413

CHAPTER 17: The CAPM: A Cookbook Recipe Approach 421
17·1 The Opportunity Cost of Capital . . . 422
17·2 The CAPM . . . 423
17·2.A. The Premise and Formula 423
17·2.B. The Security Markets Line (SML) 424
17·3 Using the CAPM Cost of Capital in the NPV Context: Revisiting The Default Premium and Risk Premium . . . 427
17·4 Estimating CAPM Inputs . . . 429
17·4.A. The Equity Premium $\left(\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right)$ 429
17·4.B. The Risk-Free Rate and Multi-Year Considerations ($r_{\mathcal{F}}$) 433
17·4.C. Investment Projects' Market Betas ($\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$) 433
17·4.D. Betas For Publicly Traded Firms 435
17·4.E. Betas From Comparables and Leverage Adjustments: Equity Beta vs. Asset Beta 435
17·4.F. Betas Based on Economic Intuition 438
17·5 Value Creation and Destruction . . . 439
17·5.A. Does Risk-Reducing Corporate Diversification (or Hedging) Create Value? 439
17·5.B. Avoiding Cost-of-Capital Mixup Blunders That Destroy Value 441
17·5.C. Differential Costs of Capital — Theory and Practice! 442
17·6 Empirical Reality . . . 445
17·6.A. Non-CAPM Worlds and Non-Linear SMLs 445
17·6.B. How Well Does the CAPM Work? 447
17·7 Robustness: How Bad are Mistakes in CAPM Inputs? . . . 449
17·8 Summary . . . 451
A Appendix: Valuing Goods Not Priced at Fair Value via Certainty Equivalence . . . 452
a. Finding The True Value of A Good That is Not Fairly Priced 452
b. An Application of the Certainty Equivalence Method 455

CHAPTER 18: The CAPM: The Theory and its Limits 461
18·1 The Theory . . . 462
18·1.A. The Logic and Formula 462
18·1.B. Some Odds and Ends 463
18·2 Does the CAPM Hold? . . . 465
18·2.A. Listing All the CAPM Assumptions 465
18·2.B. Is the CAPM a good representation of reality? 466
18·2.C. Professorial Opinions on the CAPM 467
18·2.D. Why not Optimization instead of the CAPM? 469
18·3 Portfolio Benchmarking with the CAPM? . . . 469
18·4 Summary . . . 470
A Advanced Appendix: The Arbitrage Pricing Theory (APT) Alternative . . . 471

CHAPTER 19: Efficient Markets, Classical Finance, and Behavioral Finance 477
19·1 Arbitrage and Great Bets . . . 478
19·2 Market Efficiency and Behavioral Finance . . . 479
19·2.A. Basic Definition and Requirements 479
19·2.B. Classifications Of Market Efficiency Beliefs 481
19·2.C. The Fundamentals Based Classification 481

19·2.D. The Traditional Classification 483
19·3 Efficient Market Consequences 485
19·3.A. Stock Prices and Random Walks 485
19·3.B. Are Fund Managers Just Monkeys on Typewriters? 490
19·3.C. Corporate Consequences 493
19·3.D. Event Studies Can Measure Instant Value Impacts 495
19·4 Summary 501

IV Financing Choices / Capital Structure 503

CHAPTER 20: Corporate Financial Claims 507
20·1 The Basic Building Blocks 508
20·1.A. Bonds 508
20·1.B. Ordinary Equity (Common Stock) 509
20·1.C. Debt and Equity as Contingent Claims 510
20·2 More About Bonds 512
20·2.A. Bond Features 512
20·2.B. Convertible Bonds 514
20·3 More About Stock 517
20·3.A. Preferred Equity (Stock) 517
20·3.B. OPTIONAL: Options and Warrants 517
20·4 Summary 522

CHAPTER 21: Capital Structure and Capital Budgeting in a Perfect Market 525
21·1 Conceptual Basics 526
21·1.A. The Firm, The Charter, and The Capital Structure 526
21·1.B. Maximization of Equity Value or Firm Value? 526
21·2 Modigliani and Miller (M&M), The Informal Way 528
21·3 Modigliani and Miller (M&M), The Formal Way In Perfect Markets 530
21·4 Dividends 533
21·5 The Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) in a Perfect M&M World 534
21·5.A. The Numerical Example In a Risk-Averse World Where Riskier Equity Must Offer Higher A Expected Rate of Return 534
21·5.B. The WACC Formula (Without Taxes) 537
21·5.C. A Graphical Illustration 538
21·5.D. A Major Blunder: If all securities are more risky, is the firm more risky? 542
21·5.E. The Effect of Leverage Price-Earnings Ratios (Again) 542
21·6 The Big Picture: How to Think of Debt and Equity 543
21·7 Using the CAPM and WACC Cost of Capital in the NPV Formula 544
21·8 Summary 545
A Advanced Appendix: Compatibility of Beta, the WACC, and the CAPM Formulas in a Perfect World. 546

CHAPTER 22: Corporate Taxes and A Tax Advantage of Debt 549
22·1 Capital Budgeting If Equity and Debt Were Equally Taxed . . . 550
22·2 Differential Debt and Equity Taxation in The U.S. Tax Code . . . 551
22·3 Firm Value Under Different Capital Structures . . . 552
22·3.A. Future Corporate Income Taxes and Owner Returns 553
22·4 Formulaic Valuation Methods: APV and WACC . . . 554
22·4.A. Adjusted Present Value (APV): Theory 554
22·4.B. APV: Application to a 60/40 Debt Financing Case 556
22·4.C. Tax-Adjusted Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) Valuation: Theory 556
22·4.D. A Major Blunder: Applying APV and WACC to the Current Cash Flows 559
22·5 A Sample Application of Tax-Adjusting Valuation Techniques . . . 560
22·5.A. The Flow-To-Equity Direct Valuation from the Pro Forma Financials 561
22·5.B. APV 561
22·5.C. WACC 563
22·6 The Tax Subsidy on PepsiCo's Financial Statement . . . 565
22·7 Odds and Ends . . . 566
22·7.A. Which Valuation Method is Best? 566
22·7.B. A Quick-and-Dirty Heuristic Tax-Savings Rule 567
22·7.C. Can Investment and Financing Decisions Be Separate? 567
22·7.D. Using Our Tax Formulas 568
22·7.E. Other Capital Structure Related Tax Avoidance Schemes 569
22·8 Summary . . . 571
a Advanced Appendix: The Discount Factor on Tax Obligations and Tax Shelters . . . 576

CHAPTER 23: Other Capital Structure Considerations 581
23·1 The Role of Personal Income Taxes and Clientele Effects . . . 582
23·1.A. Background: The Tax Code For Security Owners 582
23·1.B. The Principle Should Be "Joint Tax Avoidance" 583
23·1.C. Tax Clienteles 584
23·2 Operating Policy Distortions: Behavior in Bad Times (Financial Distress) . . . 592
23·2.A. The Tradeoff in the Presence of Financial Distress Costs 592
23·2.B. Direct Losses of Firm Value 593
23·2.C. Operational Distortions of Incentives 596
23·2.D. Strategic Considerations 598
23·3 Operating Policy Distortions: Behavior in Good Times . . . 599
23·3.A. Agency Issues 599
23·4 Bondholder Expropriation . . . 601
23·4.A. Project Risk Changes 601
23·4.B. Issuance of Bonds of Similar Priority 602
23·4.C. Counteracting Forces 603
23·5 Inside Information . . . 606
23·6 Transaction Costs and Behavioral Explanations . . . 609
23·7 Corporate Payout Policy: Dividends and Share Repurchases . . . 610
23·8 Further Considerations . . . 613
23·8.A. Interactions 613
23·8.B. Reputation and Capital Structure Recommendations 613
23·8.C. Final Note: Cost of Capital Calculations 614
23·9 Summary . . . 615

CHAPTER 24: Clinical Observations About Capital Structure 621
24·1 Tracking IBM's Capital Structure From 2001 to 2003 . . . 622
24·2 IBM's Debt . . . 625
24·2.A. Long-Term Debt 625
24·2.B. Current Liabilities 626
24·2.C. Other Liabilities 626
24·2.D. Other Observations and Discussion 626
24·3 IBM's Equity . . . 630
24·4 Assessing IBM's Capital Structure Change . . . 632
24·5 The Capital Structure of Other Firms . . . 632
24·5.A. Very Large Firms 632
24·5.B. Smaller Firms 633
24·6 Summary . . . 637

CHAPTER 25: The Dynamics of Capital Structure and Firm Size 641
25·1 The Dynamics of Capital Structure and Firm Scale . . . 641
25·2 The Managerial Perspective . . . 643
25·2.A. The Holistic View 643
25·2.B. Meaningful Questions 644
25·2.C. Financial Flexibility and Cash Management 645
25·2.D. Market Pressures Towards the Optimal Capital Structure? 646
25·3 The Capital Issuing Process . . . 648
25·3.A. The Pecking Order (and Financing Pyramid) 648
25·3.B. Debt and Debt-Hybrid Offerings 649
25·3.C. Seasoned Equity Offerings 651
25·3.D. Initial Public Offerings 652
25·3.E. Raising Funds Through Other Claims and Means 655
25·3.F. The Influence of Stock Returns 655
25·4 Summary . . . 657

A Appendix: Standard&Poor's 04/24/2005 Bond Report on IBM's 2032 5.875% Coupon Bond . . . 659

CHAPTER 26: How Have Firms' Capital Structures Evolved? 661
26·1 Mechanisms vs. Rationales . . . 662
26·2 The Relative Importance of Capital Structure Mechanisms . . . 662
26·2.A. Net Issuing Activity 663
26·2.B. Firm Value Changes 664
26·3 Deeper Causality — Capital Structure Influences . . . 666
26·3.A. A Large-Scale Empirical Study 666
26·3.B. Theory vs. Empirics 668
26·3.C. Evidence on Equity Payouts: Dividends and Equity Repurchasing 669
26·3.D. Forces Acting Through the Equity Payout Channel 670
26·4 Survey Evidence From CFOs . . . 671
26·5 Leverage Ratios By Firm Size, Profitability, and Industry . . . 673
26·6 Perspective . . . 677
26·7 The Capital Market Response to Issue and Dividend Announcements . . . 678
26·8 Summary . . . 678

A Appendix: A List of Some Recent Empirical Capital-Structure Related Publications . . . 680

CHAPTER 27: Investment Banking 683
27·1 Investment Bankers . . . 684
27·1.A. Underwriting Functions 684
27·1.B. The Major Underwriters 685
27·2 The Underwriting Process . . . 687
27·2.A. Direct Issuing Costs 687
27·2.B. Underwriter Selection 689
27·2.C. Sum-Total Issuing Costs — The Financial Market Reaction 689
27·3 Mergers and Acquisitions . . . 693
27·3.A. M&A Participants, Deal Characteristics, and Advisory Fees 695
27·4 Summary . . . 697

CHAPTER 28: Corporate Governance 699
28·1 Less Fact, More Fiction: In Theory . . . 700
28·2 Managerial Temptations . . . 701
28·2.A. Illegal Temptations 701
28·2.B. Legal Temptations 703
28·2.C. The Incentive of the Entrepreneur to Control Temptations 706
28·3 Equity Protection . . . 708
28·3.A. Subsequent Equity Offerings 708
28·3.B. The Corporate Board 709
28·3.C. The Role of Votes 710
28·3.D. Large Shareholders 714
28·3.E. The Legal Environment 716
28·3.F. Ethics, Publicity, and Reputation 718
28·3.G. Conclusion 719
28·4 Debt Protection . . . 720
28·5 The Effectiveness of Corporate Governance . . . 722
28·5.A. An Opinion: What Works and What Does not Work 722
28·5.B. Where are we going? Sarbanes-Oxley and Beyond 723
28·6 Summary . . . 725

V Putting It All Together – Pro Formas 727

CHAPTER 29: Corporate Strategy and NPV Estimation With Pro Forma Financial Statements 729

29·1 The Goal and Logic . . . 730
29·1.A. The Template 731
29·2 The Detailed Horizon vs. The Terminal Time Break . . . 733
29·3 The Detailed Projection Phase . . . 735
29·3.A. Method 1: Direct Extrapolation of Historical Cash Flows 736
29·3.B. Method 2: Pro Forma Projections With Detailed Modeling of Financials 737
29·3.C. Policy and Calculations off the Pro Forma Components 742
29·4 Pro Forma Terminal Values . . . 743
29·4.A. The Cost of Capital 743
29·4.B. The Cost of Capital Minus the Growth Rate of Cash Flows 745
29·5 Complete Pro Formas . . . 747
29·5.A. An Unbiased Pro Forma 747
29·5.B. A Calibrated Pro Forma 749
29·6 Alternative Assumptions and Sensitivity Analysis . . . 752
29·6.A. Fiddle With Individual Items 752
29·6.B. Do Not Forget Failure 753
29·6.C. Assessing the Pro Forma 753
29·7 Proposing Capital Structure Change . . . 754
29·8 Hindsight . . . 756
29·9 Caution — The Emperor's New Clothes . . . 758
29·10 Summary . . . 759

A Appendix: In-a-Pinch Advice: Fixed vs. Variable Components . . . 760

VI Appendices 769

CHAPTER A: Epilogue 773

A·1 Thoughts on Business and Finance Education . . . 774
A·1.A. Common Student Misconceptions 774
A·1.B. Common Faculty Misconceptions 775
A·1.C. Business School vs. Practice 776
A·1.D. The Rankings 777
A·2 Finance: As A Discipline . . . 778
A·2.A. Art or Science? 778
A·2.B. Will We Ever Fully Understand Finance? 778
A·3 Finance Research . . . 779
A·3.A. Accomplishments of Finance 779
A·3.B. Interesting Current Academic Research 779
A·3.C. Getting Involved in Academic Research 779
A·3.D. Finance Degrees 779
A·3.E. Academic Careers in Finance and Economics: A Ph.D.? 780
A·3.F. Being a Professor — A Dream Job for the Lazy? 781

A·3.G. Top Finance Journals 782
A·4 Bon Voyage 783

CHAPTER B: More Resources 785
2·1 An NPV Checklist 786
2·2 Prominently Used Data Websites 788
2·3 Necessary Algebraic Background 789
2·4 Laws of Probability, Portfolios, and Expectations 791
2·4.A. Single Random Variables 791
2·4.B. Portfolios 793
2·5 Cumulative Normal Distribution Table 795
2·6 A Short Glossary of Some Bonds and Rates 797

CHAPTER C: Sample Exams 803
3·1 A Sample Midterm 804
3·2 A Sample Final 805
a Q&A: Answers 809

CHAPTER A: Index 813
1·1 Main Index 813

Web Chapters na

CHAPTER : International Finance see website
CHAPTER : Ethics see website
CHAPTER : IPOs in Detail see website
CHAPTER : Options see website
CHAPTER : Empirical Corporate Finance see website
CHAPTER : Real Options see website

Part I

Investments and Returns

Before we begin tonight's dream,
a word from our sponsor...

(A part of all versions of the book.)

What You Want to Accomplish in this Part

Aside from teaching the necessary background, the two primary goals of this first part of the book is to explain how to work with rates of return, and how to decide whether to take or reject investment projects.

The method of our book is to start with "simple" scenarios and then build on them. For any tool to work in a more complex scenario, it has to also work in the simpler scenario, so what you learn in earlier chapters lays the ground work for later chapters.

- In Chapter 1, you will learn where this book is going. Most of our goal is "relative valuation" (valuing one opportunity relative to others), and everything will come together to be of use only in our final "pro forma" chapter. It will also tell you more about the book's approach—its "method of thinking."

- In Chapter 2, you will start with the simplest possible scenario. There are no taxes, transaction costs, disagreements, or limits as to the number of sellers and buyers in the market. You know everything, and all rates of return in the economy are the same. A one-year investment pays the same and perfectly known rate of return per annum as a ten-year investment. You want to know how one-year returns translate into multi-year returns; and when you should take a project and when you should reject it. The chapter introduces the most important concept of "present value."

  > Typical questions: If you earn 5% per year, how much will you earn over 10 years? If you earn 100% over 10 years, how much will you earn per year? What is the value of a project that will deliver $1,000,000 in 10 years? Should you buy this project if it cost you $650,000?

- In Chapter 3, you will learn how to value particular kinds of projects—annuities and perpetuities—if the economy-wide interest rate remains constant.

  > Typical questions: What is the monthly mortgage payment for a $300,000 mortgage if the interest rate is 4% per annum?

- In Chapter 4, you will abandon the assumption that returns are the same regardless of investment horizon. For example, one-year investments may pay 2% per annum, while ten-year investments may pay 5% per annum. Having time-varying rates of return is a more realistic scenario than the previous chapter's constant interest rate scenario. However, the question that you want to answer are the same questions as those in Chapter 2. (The chapter then also explains some more advanced aspects of bonds.)

  > Typical questions: If you earn 5% in the first year and 10% in the second year, how much will you earn over both years? What is the meaning of a 4% annualized interest rate? What is the meaning of a 4% yield-to-maturity? How can you value projects if appropriate rates of return depend on investment horizon?

- In Chapter 5, you will abandon the assumption that you have perfect omniscience. To be able to study uncertainty, you must begin with statistics. The chapter then explains an important assumption about your risk preferences that makes this easy: risk-neutrality. This lays the ground for discussing the role of uncertainty in finance. (Later, in Part III, you will learn what to do if investors are risk-averse.)

  Uncertainty means that a project may not return the promised amount—the *stated* rate of return would be higher than the *expected* rate of return. Although you are interested in the latter, it is almost always only the former that you are quoted (promised). You must always draw a sharp distinction between promised (stated) rates of return, and expected rates of return. This chapter also explains the difference between debt and equity, which is only meaningful under uncertainty.

Typical questions: If there is a 2% chance that your borrower will not return the money, how much extra in interest should you charge? From an investment perspective, what is the difference between debt and equity? How bad is the role of inevitable mis-estimates in your calculations? If your cost of capital (borrowing from the bank) is 10% and your savings interest rate (saving in the bank) is 5%, should you take a project that will offer a 7% rate of return?

- In Chapter 6, you will abandon the perfect market assumptions and focus on four important frictions: disagreement, transaction costs, taxes, and inflation. This chapter also explains the basics and principles of the tax code. Though not welcome, these frictions matter, so you must consider them!

  Typical questions: What are typical transaction costs, and how do you work with them? Why are capital gains better than ordinary income? If you have to pay 40% income taxes on interest receipts, the inflation rate is 2% per annum, and your investment promises 5% per annum, how much more can you buy in goods tomorrow if you invest? If you can earn 5% in taxable bonds, and 3% in tax-exempt municipal bonds, which is the better investment for you? If the inflation rate is 5% per year, and the interest rate is 10% per year, how much more in goods can you actually buy if you save your money?

- Chapter 7 goes over a number of important issues that you should pay attention to when you have to make investment decisions.

  Typical questions: How should you think of projects that have sideeffects—for example, projects that pollute the air? How should you think of sunk costs? What is a "real option"? How do you value contingencies and your own flexibility to change course in the future? How should your assessment of the value change if someone else makes up the cash flow estimates? How do humans—you—tend to mis-estimate future cash flows.

- Chapter 8 discusses other capital budgeting rules, first and foremost the profitability index and the internal rate of return.

  Typical question: If your project costs $100, and returns $50 next year and $100 in ten years, what is your project's internal rate of return?

CHAPTER 1

A Short Introduction

The First Draft

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:07h)

last major edit: Mar 2004

Before you set out for your journey into the world of finance, this chapter outlines in very broad strokes what this book is all about.

1·1. The Goal of Finance: Relative Valuation

Finance is such an important part of modern life that almost everyone can benefit from understanding it better. What you may find surprising is that the financial problems facing **PepsiCo** or **Microsoft** are not really different from those facing an average investor, small business owner, entrepreneur, or family. On the most basic level, these problems are about how to allocate money. The choices are many: money can be borrowed or saved; money can be invested into projects, undertaken with partners or with the aid of a lender; projects can be avoided altogether if they do not appear valuable enough. Finance is about how best to decide among these alternatives—and this textbook will explain how.

Theme Number One: Value! Make Decisions Based on Value.

There is one principal theme that carries through all of finance. It is *value*. It is the question "What is a project, a stock, or a house worth?" To make smart decisions, you must be able to assess value—and the better you can assess value, the smarter your decisions will be.

Corporate managers need to know how to value—and so do you.

The goal of a good corporate manager should be to take all projects that add value, and avoid those that would subtract value. Sounds easy? If it only were so. Valuation is often very difficult.

The math is not hard.

It is not the formulas that are difficult—even the most complex formulas in this book contain just a few symbols, and the overwhelming majority of finance formulas only use the four major operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division). Admittedly, even if the formulas are not sophisticated, there are a lot of them, and they have an intuitive economic meaning that requires experience to grasp—which is not a trivial task. But if you managed to pass high-school algebra, if you are motivated, and if you keep an open mind, you positively will be able to handle the math. It is *not* the math that is the real difficulty in valuation.

The tough aspect about valuation is the real world.

Instead, the difficulty is the real world! It is deciding how you should judge the future—whether your Gizmo will be a hit or a bust, whether the economy will enter a recession or not, where you can find alternative markets, and how interest rates or the stock market will move. This book will explain how to use your forecasts in the best way, but it will mostly remain up to you to make smart forecasts. (The book will explain how solid economic intuition can often help, but forecasting remains a difficult and often idiosyncratic task.) But there is also a ray of light here: If valuation were easy, a computer could do your job of being a manager. This will never happen. Valuation will always remain a matter of both art and science, that requires judgment and common sense. The formulas and finance in this book are only the necessary toolbox to convert your estimates of the future into what you need today to make good decisions.

The law of one price.

To whet your appetite, much in this book is based in some form or another on the **law of one price**. This is the fact that two identical items at the same venue should sell for the same price. Otherwise, why would anyone buy the more expensive one? This law of one price is the logic upon which almost all of valuation is based. If you can find other projects that are identical—at least along all dimensions that matter—to the project that you are considering, then your project should be worth the same and sell for the same price. If you put too low a value on your project, you might pass up on a project that is worth more than your best alternative uses of money. If you put too high a value on your project, you might take a project that you could buy cheaper elsewhere.

Value is easier relative.

Note how value is defined in relative terms. This is because it is easier to determine whether your project is better, worse, or similar to its best alternatives than it is to put an absolute value on your project. The closer the alternatives, the easier it is to put a value on your project. It is easier to compare and therefore value a new Toyota Camry—because you have good alternatives such as Honda Accords and one-year used Toyota Camry—than it is to compare the Camry against a Plasma TV, a vacation, or pencils. It is against the best and closest alternatives that you want to estimate your own project's value. These alternatives create an "opportunity cost" that you suffer if you take your project instead of the alternatives.

Many corporate projects in the real world have close comparables that make such relative valuation feasible. For example, say you want to put a value on a new factory that you would build in Rhode Island. You have many alternatives: you could determine the value of a similar factory in Massachusetts instead; or you could determine the value of a similar factory in Mexico; or you could determine how much it would cost you to just purchase the net output of the factory from another company; or you could determine how much money you could earn if you invest your money instead into the stock market or deposit it into a savings account. If you understand how to estimate your factory's value relative to your other opportunities, you then know whether you should build it or not. But not all projects are easy to value in relative terms. For example, what would be the value of building a tunnel across the Atlantic, of controlling global warming, or of terraforming Mars? There are no easy alternative projects to compare these to, so any valuation would inevitably be haphazard.

Relative value often works well in the corporate world.

1·2. How do CFOs do It?

Table 1.1. CFO Valuation Techniques

Method	CFO Usage	Recommended	First Explained
Internal Rate of Return (IRR)	(76%)	Often	Chapter 8
Net Present Value (NPV)	(75%)	Almost Always	Chapter 2
Payback Period	(57%)	Rarely	Chapter 8
Earning Multiples (P/E Ratios)	(39%)	With Caution	Chapter 10
Discounted Payback	(30%)	Rarely	Chapter 8
Accounting Rate of Return	(20%)	Rarely	Chapter 10
Profitability Index	(12%)	Often	Chapter 8
Refinements Useful in NPV and IRR			
Sensitivity Analysis?	(52%)	Highly	Chapter 7
Real Options Incorporated?	(27%)	Highly	Chapter 7
Simulation Analysis (or VaR)?	(14%)	Highly	Chapter 7
Adjusted Present Value	(11%)	Highly	Chapter 22
Cost of Capital — An Input Into NPV and Needed for IRR			
CAPM	(73%)	With Caution	Chapter ??
Historical Average Returns	(39%)	Rarely	Chapter ??
Modified CAPM	(34%)	With Caution	Chapter ??
Backed out from Gorden Model	(16%)	Occasionally	Chapter 3
Whatever Investors Tell Us	(14%)	Occasionally	Chapter 2

Rarely means "usually no, and often used incorrectly."

This book will explain the most important valuation techniques. But how important are these techniques in the real world? Fortunately, we have a good idea. In a survey in 2001, Graham and Harvey (from Duke University) surveyed 392 managers, asking them what techniques they use when deciding on projects or acquisition. The results are listed in Table 1.1. Naturally, these are also the techniques that will consume most of this book. Until I explain them formally, let me try to give you a brief, informal explanation of what these techniques are.

The Survey.

The main techniques.

- The gold standard of valuation is the "Net Present Value" (NPV) method. It tries to translate all present and future project cash flows into one equivalent value today. The project is worth taking only if this value is positive. You will spend much of your time learning the intricacies of NPV.
- The "Internal Rate of Return" (IRR) method and its variant, the "Profitability Index," try to determine if the investment rate of return is higher or lower than the cost of capital. For example, if a project would earn 30% and you can finance this project with capital obtained at a rate of return of 10%, IRR suggests that you take this project. For many projects, IRR comes up with the same recommendation as NPV.
- The "Payback Period" method and its variant, "Discounted Payback," ask how long it takes before a project earns back its investment—and both are usually bad methods to judge projects. (The survey also found that payback is especially popular among managers who do not have an MBA and who are more advanced in years.)
- The "Earnings multiples" method tries to compare your project directly to others that you already know about. If your project costs less and earns more than these alternative opportunities, then the multiples approach usually suggests you take it. It can often be used, but only with extreme caution.
- The "Accounting Rate of Return" method judges projects by their accounting performance. This is rarely a good idea. (You will learn that financial accounting is not designed to always accurately reflect firm value.)

Input Methods. Both NPV and IRR are simple ideas, but they rely on inputs that can be difficult to obtain. Table 1.1 also describes CFOs' use of some highly recommended techniques that try to help. A "Sensitivity Analysis" asks what happens if you change your input estimates and/or forecasts. If you are not 100% sure—and you will rarely be 100% sure—this is always a prudent exercise. Spreadsheets were designed to facilitate such scenario analyses. "Real options" are embedded projects that give you a lot of future possibilities. Their valuation is as important as it is difficult. "Simulations" are a form of automated sensitivity anlysis. And "Adjusted Present Value" is a way to take corporate income taxes into account.

The Cost of Capital One input that is of special interest to us finance types is the cost of capital. It is an opportunity cost—where else could you invest money instead? The standard to find the cost of capital is the "Capital-Asset Pricing Model," more commonly abbreviated as CAPM. It tries to tell you the appropriate expected rate of return of a project, given its contribution to most investors' portfolio risk. It is a nice and consistent model, but not without problems. Still, the CAPM and some of its generalizations are often the best methods we have. Interestingly, CAPM use is more common in large firms and firms in which the CFO has an MBA.

1·3. Learning How to Approach New Problems

Theme Number Two: Learn how to approach problems.

This book is not just about teaching finance. It also wants to teach you how to approach novel problems. That is, it would rather not merely fill your memory with a collection of formulas and facts—which you could promptly forget after the final exam. Instead, you should understand *why* it is that you are doing what you are doing, and how you can logically deduce it for yourself when you do not have this book around. The goal is to eliminate the *deus ex machina*—the god that was lowered onto the stage to magically and illogically solve all intractable problems in Greek tragedies. You should understand where the formulas in this book come from, and how you can approach new problems by developing your own formulas. Learning how to logically progress when tackling tough problems is useful, not only in finance, but also in many other disciplines and in your life more generally.

Always start simple and uncomplicated!

The method of approaching new problems in this book is to think in terms of the simplest possible example first, even if it may sometimes seem too banal a problem or a step that you would rather brush aside. Some students may even be put off by doing the basics, wanting to move immediately on to the truly interesting, philosophical, or complex problems right away. However, you should try to avoid the temptation of skipping the simpler problems, the foundation. Indeed, arrogance about the basics is often more a sign of insecurity and poor understanding than it is a sign of solid understanding—and even after many years of studying the subject, I am always surprised about the many novel insights that I still get from pondering even the most basic problems. I have studied finance for almost two decades now, and this is an introductory textbook—and yet I still learned a lot thinking about basic issues while writing this textbook. There was plenty of "simple" material that I had thought I understood, which I then realized I had not.

Numerics work well.

Now, working up from simple examples is done in this book by the method of numerical example. You should translate the numerics onto algebra only after you have understood the simplest numerical form. Start simple even if you want to understand complex problems. This will take the sting out of the many formulas that finance will throw at you. Here is an example of how this book will proceed. If you will receive \$150 next year if you give me \$100 today, you probably already know that the rate of return is 50%. How did you get this? You subtracted \$100 from \$150, and divided by your original investment of \$100:

$$\frac{\$150 - \$100}{\$100} = 50\% \ . \tag{1.1}$$

The next step is to make an algebraic formula out of this. Name the two inputs, say, $\mathrm{CF}_{t=1}$ and $\mathrm{CF}_{t=0}$ for cash flow at time 1 and cash flow at time 0. Call your result a rate of return and name it r. To explain the correspondence between formulas and numerics, in this book, the formula is placed under the numerics, so you will read

$$\begin{aligned} 50\% &= \frac{\$150 - \$100}{\$100} \\ r &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_{t=1} - \mathrm{CF}_{t=0}}{\mathrm{CF}_{t=0}} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2}$$

Looks silly? Perhaps—but this is how I find it easiest to learn. Now you can ask much more interesting and complex questions, such as what you would end up with if you started with \$200 and earned 50% rate of return two years in a row, what the effect of inflation and imperfect competition would be on your rate of return, etc. There will be dozens of other complications to this formula in this book. But, we are getting ahead of ourselves. So trust me. This book will cover a lot of theory—but the theory will not be difficult when properly defanged.

1·4. The Main Parts of This Book

This book has four parts, plus a synthesis pro forma chapter.

This book will now proceed as follows:

1. The first part covers how your firm should make investment decisions, one project at a time. It covers the basics—rates of returns, the time value of money—and capital budgeting. It explains why we often rely on "perfect markets" when we estimate value.
2. The second part explains how corporate financial statements work, and how they relate to firm value.
3. The third part covers "investments." The novel part here is the consideration of how one investment influences the risk of other investments. For example, a coin bet on heads is risky. A coin bet on tails is risky. Half a coin bet on heads and half a coin bet on tails has zero risk. This part explains how ordinary investors should look at your portfolio of bets in overall terms. It then relates this investor problem to what the consequences are in terms of the corporate cost of capital—that is, the opportunity cost of capital that your investors incur if they give their money to your corporation rather to another one.
4. The fourth part covers how your projects should be financed. Should you find partners to join you, or borrow money? The former is called equity financing, the latter is called debt financing. This part also describes how firms have historically financed themselves and how investment banking works. It closes with the subject of corporate governance—how firm owners assure that their firm and other owners will not steal all their money.

The synthesis chapter is not only the standard way of business communication, but it also requires you knowing everything!

The book ends with a keystone chapter—a *pro forma* analysis of a real company, here PepsiCo. A pro forma is a projection of the future for the purpose of valuing the company today. In virtually every corporation, new corporate propositions have to be put into a pro forma. This is how new business ideas are pitched—to the CFO, the board, the venture capitalist, or the investment bank. Pro formas bring together virtually everything that you learn in this book. To do one well, you have to understand how to work with returns and net present values, the subject of the first part of the book. You have to understand how to work with financial statements, the next part of the book. You have to understand how to estimate the firm's cost of capital, the next part of the book. You have to understand how capital structure, taxes and other considerations influence the cost of capital, the final part of the book. You will learn what is easy and what is hard. You will learn what is science and what is art. And you will learn the limits to financial analysis.

Let's set sail.

CHAPTER 2

THE TIME VALUE OF MONEY

(Net) Present Values

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:08h)

last major edit: Mar 2004, Nov 2004

In this chapter, we assume that we live in an idealized world of no taxes, no inflation, no transaction costs, no differences of opinion, and infinitely many investors and firms—which is called a "perfect market." Of course, this financial utopia is often unrealistic, but all the tools you will be learning in this chapter will continue to work just as well in later chapters where the world becomes more complex and more "real."

After some definitions, we begin with the concept of a rate of return—the cornerstone of finance. You can always earn interest by depositing your money today into the bank. This means that money today is more valuable than the same amount of money next year. This concept is called the time-value of money—the present value of $1 is above the future value of $1.

Now, the other side to investing money today in order to receive money in the future is a project, company, stock or other investment that requires funding today to pay off money in the future—we want to invest, and companies want to borrow. The process by which firms decide which projects to undertake and which projects to pass up on is called capital budgeting. The idea behind this term is that each firm has a "capital budget," and must allocate its capital to the projects within its budgets. Capital budgeting is at the heart of corporate decision-making. You will learn that, to determine the value of projects with given cash flows in the future, the firm should translate all *future* cash flows—both inflows and outflows—into their equivalent *present* values today, and then add them up to find the "net present value" (NPV). The firm should take all projects that have positive net present value and reject all projects that have negative net present values.

This all sounds more complex than it is, so we'd better get started.

2·1. Basic Definitions

Before we can begin, we have to agree on a common language—for example, what we mean by a project, a bond, and a stock.

2·1.A. Investments, Projects, and Firms

To value projects, make sure to use all costs and benefits, including, e.g., opportunity costs and pleasure benefits.

As far as finance is concerned, every **project** is a set of flows of money (**cash flows**). Most projects require an upfront cash outflow (an **investment** or **expense** or **cost**) and are followed by a series of later cash inflows (**payoffs** or **revenues** or **returns**). It does not matter whether the cash flows come from garbage hauling or diamond sales. Cash is cash. However, it is important that all costs and benefits are included as cash values. If you would have to spend more time to haul trash, or merely find it more distasteful than other projects, then you would have to translate these project features into equivalent cash negatives. Similarly, if you want to do a project "for the fun of it," you must translate your "fun" into a cash positive. The discipline of finance takes over after all positives and negatives (inflows and outflows) from the project "black box" have been translated into their appropriate monetary cash values.

The black box is not trivial.

This does not mean that the operations of the firm are unimportant—things like revenues, operations, inventory, marketing, payables, working capital, competition, etc. These business factors are all of the utmost importance in making the cash flows happen, and a good (financial) manager must understand these. After all, even if all you care about is cash flows, it is impossible to understand them well if you have no idea where they come from and how they can change in the future.

These examples show that cash flows must include (quantify) non-financial benefits.

Projects need not be physical. For example, a company may have a project called "customer relations," with real cash outflows today and uncertain future inflows. You (a student) are a project: you pay for education and will earn a salary in the future. In addition, some of the payoffs from education are metaphysical rather than physical. If knowledge provides you with pleasure, either today or in the future, education yields a value that should be regarded as a positive cash flow. Of course, for some students, the distaste of learning should be factored in as a cost (equivalent cash outflow)—but I trust that you are not one of them. All such non-financial flows must be appropriately translated into cash equivalents if you want to arrive at a good project valuation!

In finance, firms are basically collections of projects.

A firm can be viewed as just a collection of projects. Similarly, so can a family. Your family may own a house, a car, tuition payments, education investments, etc.,—a collection of projects. This book assumes that the value of a firm is the value of all its projects' net cash flows, and nothing else. It is now your goal to learn how to determine these projects' values, given cash flows.

Stocks and Bonds are just projects with inflows and outflows.

There are two important specific kinds of projects that you may consider investing in—**bonds** and **stocks**, also called **debt** and **equity**. As you will learn later, in a sense, the stock is the equivalent of investing to become an owner who is exposed to a lot of risk, while the bond is the equivalent of a lending money, an investment which is usually less risky. Together, if you own all outstanding bonds (and loans) and stock in a company, you own the firm:

$$\text{Entire Firm} = \text{All Outstanding Stocks} + \text{All Outstanding Bonds and Loans} . \tag{2.1}$$

Anecdote: The Joy of Cooking: Positive Prestige Flows and Restaurant Failures
In New York City, two out of every five new restaurants close within one year. Nationwide, the best estimates suggest that about 90% of all restaurants close within two years. If successful, the average restaurant earns a return of about 10% per year. One explanation for why so many entrepreneurs are continuing to open up restaurants, despite seemingly low financial rates of return, is that restauranteurs so much enjoy owning a restaurant that they are willing to buy the prestige of owning a restaurant. If this is the case, then to value the restaurant, you must factor in how much the restauranteur is willing to pay for the prestige of owning a restaurant, just as you would factor in the revenues that restaurant patrons generate. (But there is also an alternative reason why so many restaurants fail, described on Page 175.)

This sum is sometimes called the **enterprise value**. Our book will spend a lot of time discussing these two forms of financing—but for now, you can consider both of them just investment projects: you put money in, and they pay money out. For many stock and bond investments that you can buy and sell in the financial markets, we believe that most investors enjoy very few, if any, non-cash based benefits.

Solve Now!

Q 2.1 *In computing the cost of your M.B.A., should you take into account the loss of salary while going to school? Cite a few non-monetary benefits, too, and try to attach monetary value to them.*

Q 2.2 *If you purchase a house and live in it, what are your inflows and outflows?*

2·1.B. Loans and Bonds

Why bonds first?

Plain bonds are much simpler than stocks or corporate investment projects in general. You should view bonds as just another type of investment project—money goes in and money comes out—except that bonds are relatively simple because you presumably know what the cash flows will be. For stocks and other projects the complications created by having to guess future cash flows can quickly become daunting. Therefore, it makes sense to first understand the project "plain bond" well before proceeding to other kinds of projects. Aside, much more capital in the economy is tied up in bonds and loans than is tied up in stock, so understanding bonds well is very useful in itself.

Finance Jargon: Loans, Bond, Fixed Income, Maturity.

A **loan** is the commitment of a **borrower** to pay a predetermined amount of cash at one or more predetermined times in the future (the final one being called **maturity**), usually for cash upfront today. A **bond** is a particular kind of loan, named so because it binds the borrower to pay money. Thus, "buying a bond" is the same as "extending a loan." Bond buying is the process of giving cash today and receiving a promise for money in the future. Similarly, instead of "taking a loan," you can just say that you are "giving a bond," "issuing a bond," or "selling a bond." Loans and bonds are also sometimes called **fixed income** instruments, because they "promise" a fixed income to the holder of the bond.

Bond: Defined by payment next year. Savings: Defined by payment this year.

Is there any difference between buying a bond for \$1,000 and putting \$1,000 into a bank savings account? Yes, a small one. The bond is defined by its future promised payoffs—say, \$1,100 next year—and the bond's value and price today are based on these future payoffs. But as the bond owner, you know exactly how much you will receive next year. An investment in a bank savings account is defined by its investment today. The interest rate can and will change every day, and next year you will end up with an amount that depends on future interest rates, e.g., \$1,080 (if interest rates will decrease) or \$1,120 (if interest rates will increase).

A bank savings account is like a sequence of 1-day bonds.

If you want, you can think of a savings account as consecutive 1-day bonds: when you deposit money, you buy a 1-day bond, for which you know the interest rate this one day in advance, and the money automatically gets reinvested tomorrow into another bond with whatever the interest rate will be tomorrow. Incidentally, retirement plans also come in two such forms: **defined benefit** plans are like bonds and defined by how much you will get when you retire; and **defined contribution** plans are like bank deposit accounts and defined by how much money you are putting into your retirement account today—in the real world, you won't know exactly how much money you will have when you will retire.

Interest and Non-Interest. Limited Upside.

You should already know that the net return on a loan is called **interest**, and that the rate of return on a loan is called the **interest rate**—though we will soon firm up your knowledge about interest rates. One difference between interest payments and non-interest payments is that the former usually has a maximum payment, while the latter can have unlimited upside potential. Not every rate of return is an interest rate. For example, the rate of return on an investment in a lottery ticket is not a loan, so it does not offer an interest rate, but just a rate of return. In real life, its payoff is uncertain—it could be anything from zero to an unlimited amount. The same applies to stocks and many corporate projects. Many of our examples use the phrase "interest rate," even though the examples almost always work for any other rates of return, too.

2·1.C. U.S. Treasuries

Start with the simplest and most important bonds: Treasuries.

Bonds may be relatively simple projects, but bonds issued by the U.S. government—called Treasuries—are perhaps the simplest of them all. This is because Treasuries cannot fail to pay. They promise to pay U.S. dollars, and the United States has the right to print more U.S. dollars if it were ever to run out. So, for Treasuries, there is absolutely no uncertainty about repayment. This is convenient because it makes it easier to learn finance—but you should study them not just because they are convenient tutorial examples. See, Treasuries are the single most important type of financial security in the world today. As of October 2004, the United States owed about $7.4 trillion, roughly $25,000 per citizen. After Treasuries are sold by the United States government, they are then actively traded in what is one of the most important financial markets in the world today. It would not be uncommon for dedicated bond traders to buy a 5-year Treasury originally issued 10 years ago, and 10 seconds later sell a 3-year Treasury issued 6 years ago—buyers and sellers in Treasuries are easily found, and transaction costs are very low. In 2001, average trading volume in Treasuries was about $300 billion per trading day (about 255 per year). Therefore, the annual trading volume in U.S. Treasuries of about $70 trillion totaled about five to ten times the U.S. economy's gross domestic product (**GDP**) of $10 trillion.

U.S. Treasury Bills, Notes, and Bonds have known and certain payouts.

The abbreviation Treasury comes from the fact that the debt itself is issued by the U.S. Treasury Department. **Treasury bills** (often abbreviated as **T-bills**) with maturities of less than one year, **Treasury notes** with maturities between one and ten years, and **Treasury bonds** with maturities greater than ten years. The 30-year bond was often called the **long bond**, at least before the Treasury suspended its issuance in October 2001—now, even a ten-year bond is often called the long bond. These three types of obligations are really conceptually the same, so they are usually called **U.S. Treasuries** or just **Treasuries**.

2·2. Returns, Net Returns, and Rates of Return

Defining: Return, Net Return, and Rate of Return.

The most basic financial concept is that of a return. The payoff or (dollar) **return** of an investment is simply the amount of cash it returns. The net payoff or **net return** is the difference between the return and the initial investment, which is positive if the project is profitable and negative if it is unprofitable. The **rate of return** is the net return expressed as a percentage of the initial investment. (**Yield** is a synonym for rate of return.) For example, an investment project that costs $10 today and returns $12 in period 1 has

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Return at Time 1} &= \$12 \\
\text{Return}_{t=1} &= \text{CF}_1 \quad , \\
\text{Net Return from Time 0 to Time 1} &= \$12 - \$10 = \$2 \\
\text{Net Return}_{t=0,1} &= \text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0 \quad , \\
\text{Rate of Return from Time 0 to Time 1} &= \frac{\$12 - \$10}{\$10} = \frac{\$12}{\$10} - 1 = 20\% \\
r_1 = r_{t=0,1} &= \frac{\text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} = \frac{\text{CF}_1}{\text{CF}_0} - 1 \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

Percent (the symbol %) is a unit of 1/100. So, 20% is the same as 0.20. Also, please note my way to express time. Our most common investment scenario is a project that begins "right here right now this moment" and pays off at some moment(s) in time in the future. We shall use the letter t to stand for an index in time, and zero (0) as the time index for "right now." The length of each time interval may or may not be specified: thus, time $t = 1$ could be tomorrow, next month, or next year. A cash payout may occur at one instant in time, and thus needs only one time index. But investments usually tie up cash over an interval of time, called a **holding period**.

We use a comma-separated pair of time indexes to describe intervals. Whenever possible, we use subscripts to indicate time. When the meaning is clear, we abbreviate phrases such as the interval "$t = 0, 1$" to simply $0, 1$, or even just as 1. This sounds more complicated than it is. Table 2.1 provides some examples.

Table 2.1. Sample Time Conventions

$\text{Cash}_{t=0}$	Cash Right Now (index time 0). The time index ("$t =$") is given explicitly.
$\text{Cash}_{\text{Midnight, March 3, 2025}}$	Cash on Midnight of March 3, 2025. We rely on the subscript to tell the reader that the explicit subscript t is omitted.
Cash_1	Cash in the Future (at index time 1).
$\text{Investment}_{0,\text{Midnight March 3 2025}}$	An Investment made right now to pay off on March 3, 2025.
$\text{Investment}_{0,1}$	A One Period Investment, From Right Now To Time 1.
$\text{Return}_{t=1,2}$	A One Period Return, From Time 1 To Time 2.
$\text{Investment}_{0,2}$	A Two Period Investment, From Right Now To Time 2.
Return_2	A Two Period Return, From Right Now To Time 2.

Capital Gains vs. Returns.

Returns can be decomposed into two parts: intermittent payments and final payments. For example, many stocks pay cash dividends, many bonds pay cash coupons, and many real estate investments pay rent. Say, an investment costs \$92, pays a dividend of \$5 (at the end of the period), and then is worth \$110. What would its rate of return be?

$$r_{0,1} = \frac{\$110 + \$5 - \$92}{\$92} = \frac{\$110 - \$92}{\$92} + \frac{\$5}{\$92} = 25\%$$
$$r_{0,1} = \frac{\text{CF}_1 + \text{Dividend}_{0,1} - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} = \underbrace{\frac{\text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0}}_{\text{Percent Price Change}} + \underbrace{\frac{\text{Dividend}_{0,1}}{\text{CF}_0}}_{\text{Dividend Yield}}. \tag{2.3}$$

The **capital gain** is the difference in the purchase price over the holding period, *not* counting interim payments. Here, the capital gain is the difference between \$110 and \$92, i.e., the \$18 change in the price of the investment. The dividend or coupon divided by the original price is called the **dividend yield** or **coupon yield** when stated in percentage terms. Of course, if the dividend/coupon yield is high, you might earn a positive rate of return but experience a negative capital gain. For example, a bond that costs \$500, pays a coupon of \$50, and then sells for \$490, has a **capital loss** of \$10 (which comes to a -2% capital yield), but a rate of return of $(\$490 + \$50 - \$500)/\$500 = +8\%$. Also, when there are dividends, coupons, or rent, prices follow a predictable pattern—this is because the price has to fall by about the amount of the payment. For instance, if a stock for \$20 were to pay a dividend for \$2 and stay at \$20, you should immediately purchase this stock—you would get \$2 for free. In fact, in a perfect market, anything other than a price drop from \$20 to \$18 at the instant of the dividend payment would not make sense. Such predictable price change patterns do not appear in rates of return. You will almost always work with rates of return, not with capital gains—though sometimes you have to draw the distinction, for example because the IRS treats capital gains differently from dividends. (We will talk about taxes in Section 6).

(Nominal) interest rates are usually non-negative.

When interest rates are certain, they should logically always be positive. After all, you can always earn 0% if you keep your money under your mattress—you thereby end up with as much money next period as you have this period. So why give your money to someone today who will give you less than 0% (less money in the future)? Consequently, interest rates are indeed almost always positive—the rare exceptions being both bizarre and usually trivial.

People often use incorrect terms, but the meaning is usually clear, so this is harmless.

Most of the time, people (incorrectly but harmlessly) abbreviate a rate of return or net return by calling it just a return. For example, if you say that the return on your $10,000 stock purchase was 10%, you obviously do not mean you received 0.1. You really mean that your rate of return was 10%. This is usually benign, because your listener will know what you mean. Potentially more harmful is the use of the phrase yield, because it is often used as a shortcut for dividend yield or coupon yield (the percent payout that a stock or a bond provide). So, if you say that the yield on a bond is 5%, then some listeners may interpret this to mean that the overall rate of return is 5%, while others may interpret this to mean the coupon yield to be 5%. And there is yet another complication, because coupon yields are often not quoted relative to the current price, but relative to the final payment. If in doubt, ask for a detailed explanation!

Basis Points avoid an ambiguity in the English language: 100 basis points is 1 percent.

Here is a language problem. What does the statement "the interest rate has just increased by 5%" mean? It could mean either that the previous interest rate, say 10%, has just increased from 10% to $10\% \cdot (1 + 5\%) = 10.05\%$, or that it has increased from 10% to 15%. Because this is unclear, the **basis point** unit was invented. A basis point is simply 1/100 of a percent. So, if you state that your interest rate has increased by 50 basis points, you definitely mean that the interest rate has increased from 10% to 10.05%. If you state that your interest rate has increased by 500 basis points, you mean that the interest rate has increased from 10% to 15%.

IMPORTANT: *100 basis points constitute one percent.*

Solve Now!

Q 2.3 *A project offers a return of $1,050 for an investment of $1,000. What is the rate of return?*

Q 2.4 *A project offers a net return of $25 for an investment of $1,000. What is the rate of return?*

Q 2.5 *If the interest rate of 10% increases to 12%, how many basis points did it increase?*

Q 2.6 *If the interest rate of 10% decreased by 20 basis points, what is the new interest rate?*

ANECDOTE: Interest Rates over the Millennia
Historical interest rates are fascinating, perhaps because they look so similar to today's interest rates. In 2004, typical interest rates may range between 2% and 20% (depending on other factors). Now, for over 2,500 years, from about the thirtieth century B.C.E. to the sixth century B.C.E., normal interest rates in Sumer and Babylonia hovered around 10–25% per annum, though 20% was the legal maximum. In ancient Greece, interest rates in the sixth century were about 16–18%, dropping steadily to about 8% by the turn of the millennium. Interest rates in ancient Egypt tended to be about 10–12%. In ancient Rome, interest rates started at about 8% in the fifth century B.C.E., but began to increase to about 12% by the third century A.C.E. (a time of great upheaval). When lending resumed in the late Middle Ages (12th century), personal loans in England fetched about 50% per annum though they tended to hover between 10–20% in the rest of Europe. By the Renaissance, commercial loan rates had fallen to 5–15% in Italy, the Netherlands, and France. By the 17th century, even English interest rates had dropped to 6–10% in the first half, and even to 3–6% in the second half. Mortgage rates tended to be lower yet. Most of the American Revolution was financed with French and Dutch loans at interest rates of 4–5%.

file=constantinterest.tex: RP

2·3. The Time Value of Money

Now turn the rate of return formula 2.2 around to determine how money will grow over time, *given* a rate of return.

2·3.A. The Future Value of Money

How much money will you receive in the future if the rate of return is 20% and you invest \$100? The answer is

Future Payoffs Given a Rate of Return and an Initial Investment.

$$\begin{aligned} 20\% &= \frac{\$120-\$100}{\$100} & \$100\cdot(1+20\%) &= \$100\cdot 1.2 &&= \$120 \\ r_{0,1} &= \frac{CF_1-CF_0}{CF_0} & \Leftrightarrow \qquad & CF_0\cdot(1+r_{0,1}) &&= CF_1 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.4}$$

Because the interest rate is positive, a given amount of money today is worth more than the same amount of money in the future—after all, you could always deposit your money today into the bank and thereby get back more money in the future. This is an example of the **time value of money**—a dollar today is worth more than a dollar tomorrow. This is one of the most basic and important concepts in finance. The \$120 next year is therefore called the **future value** (FV) of \$100 today. It is the time-value of money that causes its future value to be a bigger number than its **present value** (PV). Using these abbreviations, you could also have written the above as

$$r_{0,1} = \frac{FV-PV}{PV} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad FV = PV\cdot(1+r_{0,1}) \quad . \tag{2.5}$$

Please note that the time value of money has nothing to do with the fact that the prices of goods may change between today and tomorrow. (In Section 6, we will discuss inflation—the fact that the purchasing power of money can change.) Instead, the time value of money, the present value, and future value are based exclusively on the concept that your money today can earn a positive interest, so the same amount today is better than the same amount tomorrow.

2·3.B. Compounding

Now, what if you can earn the same 20% year after year and reinvest all your money? What would your two-year rate of return be? Definitely *not* 20% + 20% = 40%! You know that you will have \$120 in year 1, which you can reinvest at a 20% rate of return from year 1 to year 2. Thus, you will end up with

Interest on Interest (or rate of return on rate of return) means rates cannot be added.

$$\begin{aligned} \$120\cdot(1+20\%) &= \$144 \\ CF_1\cdot(1+r_{1,2}) &= CF_2 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.6}$$

This \$144—which is, of course, again a future value of \$100 today—represents a total two-year rate of return of

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$144-\$100}{\$100} &= \frac{\$144}{\$100}-1 = 44\% \\ \frac{CF_2-CF_0}{CF_0} &= \frac{CF_2}{CF_0}-1 = r_{0,2} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.7}$$

This is more than 40%, because the original net return of \$20 in the first year earned an additional \$4 in interest in the second year. You earn interest on interest! Similarly, what would be your three-year rate of return? You would invest \$144 at 20%, which would provide you with

$$\begin{aligned} \$144\cdot(1+20\%) &= \$172.80 \\ CF_2\cdot(1+r_{2,3}) &= CF_3 \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{2.8}$$

so your three-year rate of return would be

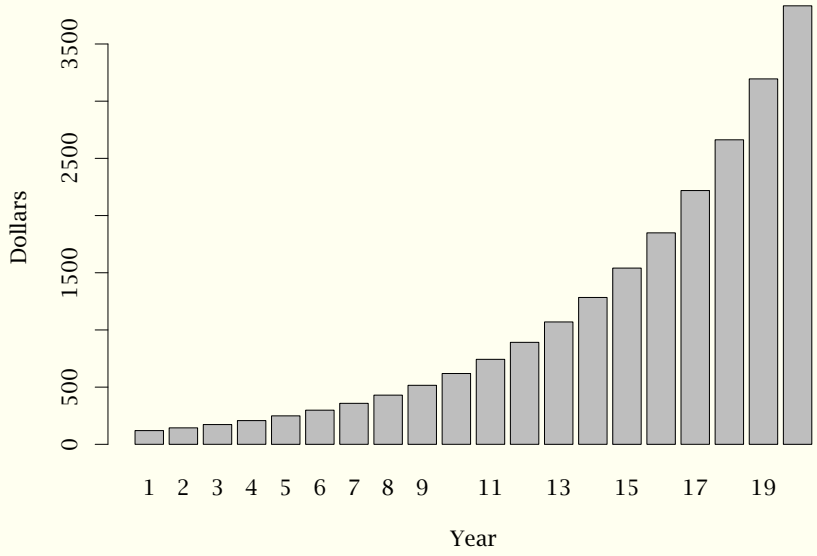
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$172.80 - \$100}{\$100} &= \frac{\$172.80}{\$100} - 1 = 72.8\% \\ r_{0,3} = \frac{CF_3 - CF_0}{CF_0} &= \frac{CF_3}{CF_0} - 1 = r_{0,3} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.9}$$

If you do not want to compute interim cash flows, can you directly translate the three sequential one-year rates of return into one three-year **holding rate of return**? Yes! The compounding formula that does this is the "one-plus formula,"

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + 72.8\%) &= (1 + 20\%) \cdot (1 + 20\%) \cdot (1 + 20\%) \\ (1 + r_{0,3}) &= (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) \cdot (1 + r_{2,3}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.10}$$

In this case, all three rates of return were the same, so you could also have written this as $r_{0,3} = (1 + 20\%)^3$. Figure 2.2 shows how your \$100 would grow if you continued investing it at a rate of return of 20% per annum. The function is exponential, that is, it grows faster and faster, as interest earns more interest.

Table 2.2. Compounding Over 20 Years at 20% Per Annum



Period	Start Value	One-Year Rate	End Value	Total Factor on \$100	Total Rate of Return
0 to 1	\$100	(1+20%)	\$120.00	1.2	20.0%
1 to 2	\$120	(1+20%)	\$144.00	$1.2 \cdot 1.2 = 1.44$	44.0%
2 to 3	\$144	(1+20%)	\$172.80	$1.2 \cdot 1.2 \cdot 1.2 = 1.728$	72.8%
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	

When money grows at a rate of 20% per annum, each dollar invested right now will be worth \$38.34 in 20 years. The money at first grows about linearly, but as more and more interest accumulates and itself earns more interest, the graph accelerates upward.

IMPORTANT: *The compounding formula translates sequential future rates of return into an overall holding rate of return:*

$$\underbrace{(1+r_{0,T})}_{\text{Holding Rate}} = \underbrace{(1+r_{0,1})}_{\text{Current Spot Rate}} \cdot \underbrace{(1+r_{1,2})}_{\text{Future 1-Period Rate}} \cdot \ldots \cdot \underbrace{(1+r_{T-1,T})}_{\text{Future 1-Period Rate}} . \tag{2.11}$$

The first rate is called the spot rate because it starts now (on the spot). If all spot and future interest rates are the same, the formula simplifies into $(1+r_{0,T}) = (1+r_t)^T$.

The compounding formula is so common, it is worth memorizing.

Another example of a payoff computation.

You can use the compounding formula to compute all sorts of future payoffs. For example, an investment project costing \$212 today and earning 10% each year for 12 years will yield an overall holding rate of return of

$$\begin{aligned} r_{0,12} &= (1+10\%)^{12} - 1 \approx 213.8\% \\ (1+r)^T - 1 &= r_{0,12} . \end{aligned} \tag{2.12}$$

Your \$212 investment today would therefore turn into a future value of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CF}_{12} &= \$212 \cdot (1+213.8\%) \approx \$665.35 \\ \text{CF}_0 \cdot (1+r_{0,12}) &= \text{CF}_{12} . \end{aligned} \tag{2.13}$$

Turn around the formula to compute individual holding rates.

Now, what constant two one-year interest rates (r) would give you a two-year rate of return of $r_{0,2} = 50\%$? It is not 25%, because $(1+25\%)\cdot(1+25\%)-1 = 56.25\%$. Instead, you need to solve

$$(1+r)\cdot(1+r) = (1+r)^2 = 1+50\% . \tag{2.14}$$

The correct answer is

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \sqrt[2]{1+50\%} - 1 \approx 22.47\% \\ &= \sqrt[t]{1+r_{0,t}} - 1 = r . \end{aligned} \tag{2.15}$$

(Appendix 2·3 reviews powers, exponents and logarithms.) Check your answer: $(1+22.47\%)\cdot(1+22.47\%) \approx (1+50\%)$. If the 12 month interest rate is 213.8%, what is the one-month interest rate? By analogy,

$$\begin{aligned} (1+r)^{12} &\approx 1+213.8\% \\ r = \sqrt[12]{1+213.8\%} - 1 &= (1+213.8\%)^{1/12} \approx 10\% , \end{aligned} \tag{2.16}$$

but you already knew this.

You can determine fractional interest rate via compounding, too.

Interestingly, compounding works even over fractional time periods. So, if the overall interest rate is 5% per year, to find out what the rate of return over half-a-year would be that would compound to 5%, compute

$$(1+r_{0,0.5}) = (1+r_{0,1})^{0.5} = (1+5\%)^{0.5} \approx 1+2.4695\% . \tag{2.17}$$

Compounding 2.4695% over two (six-month) periods indeed yields 5%,

$$\begin{aligned} (1+2.4695\%)\cdot(1+2.4695\%) &\approx (1+5\%) \\ (1+r_{0,0.5})^2 &= (1+r_{0,1}) . \end{aligned} \tag{2.18}$$

You need logs to determine time needed to get x times your money.

If you know how to use logarithms, you can also determine with the same formula how long it will take at the current interest to double or triple your money. For example, at an interest rate of 3% per year, how long would it take you to double your money?

$$\begin{aligned} (1+3\%)^x &= (1+100\%) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = \frac{\log(1+100\%)}{\log(1+3\%)} \approx 23.5 \\ (1+r_t)^T &= (1+r_{0,t}) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad T = \frac{\log(1+r_{0,t})}{\log(1+r_t)} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.19}$$

Solve Now!

Q 2.7 *A project has a rate of return of 30%. What is the payoff if the initial investment is $250?*

Q 2.8 *If 1-year rates of return are 20% and interest rates are constant, what is the 5-year holding rate of return?*

Q 2.9 *If the 5-year holding rate of return is 100% and interest rates are constant, what is the annual interest rate?*

Q 2.10 *If you invest $2,000 today and it earns 25% per year, how much will you have in 15 years?*

Q 2.11 *What is the holding rate of return for a 20 year investment which earns 5%/year each year? What would a $200 investment grow to?*

Q 2.12 *What is the quarterly interest rate if the annual interest rate is 50%?*

Q 2.13 *If the per-year interest rate is 5%, what is the two-year total interest rate?*

Q 2.14 *If the per-year interest rate is 5%, what is the ten-year total interest rate?*

Q 2.15 *If the per-year interest rate is 5%, what is the hundred-year total interest rate? How does this compare to 100 times 5%?*

Q 2.16 *At a constant rate of return of 5% per annum, how many years does it take you to triple your money?*

Q 2.17 *A project lost one-third of its value each year for 5 years. What was its rate of return, and how much is left from a $20,000 investment?*

Q 2.18 *From Fibonacci's Liber Abaci, written in the year 1202: "A certain man gave one denaro at interest so that in five years he must receive double the denari, and in another five, he must have double two of the denari and thus forever. How many denari from this 1 denaro must he have in 100 years?"*

Q 2.19 *(Advanced) In the text, you received the dividend at the end of the period. In the real world, if you received the dividend at the beginning of the period instead of the end of the period, could it change the rate of return? Why?*

2·3.C. Confusion: Interest Rates vs. Interest Quotes

Unfortunately, when it comes to interest rates, confusion and "sloppy talk" abounds. See, some people mistakenly add interest rates instead of compounding them. When the investments, the interest rates, and the time periods are small, the difference between the correct and incorrect computation can be minor, so this practice can be acceptable, even if it is wrong. For example, when interest rates are 1%, compounding yields

Adding rather than compounding can make forgivably small mistakes in certain situations—but don't be ignorant of what is happening.

$$\begin{aligned} (1+1\%) \cdot (1+1\%) - 1 &= 2.01\% \\ (1+r_{0,1}) \cdot (1+r_{1,2}) - 1 &= r_{0,2} \\ 1 + r_{0,1} + r_{1,2} + r_{0,1}\cdot r_{1,2} - 1 &= r_{0,2} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{2.20}$$

which is almost the same as the simple sum coming of $r_{0,1}$ and $r_{1,2}$ which comes to 2%. The difference between 2.01% and 2% is the "cross-term" $r_{0,1} \cdot r_{1,2}$. When returns are small—here if both returns are about 0.01—then the cross-product will be even smaller—here, it is 0.0001. This is indeed small enough to be ignored in most situation, and therefore a forgivable approximation. However, when you compound over many periods, you will accumulate more and more cross-terms, and eventually the quality of your approximation will deteriorate. It is also the same approximation if you just work out an average interest rate instead of an annualized interest rate. Doing so again ignores the interest on the interest. And again, this can be forgivable if the number of time periods and the interest rates are small.

Table 2.3. How Banks Quote Interest Rates

Bank quotes annual rate of (sometimes confusingly called **annual rate, compounded daily**) (should better be called **annual quote**)	10%
Bank pays daily rate of	10%/365 = 0.0274%
Daily rate compounds over 365 days to (sometimes called **effective annual rate**, sometimes abbreviated EAR or just EFF)	$(1 + 0.0274\%)^{365} - 1 = 10.5\%$

(Even this is an oversimplication: banks can also compute interest rates based on 360/days per year. Fortunately, this difference between 360 and 365 days compounding is truly trivial.)

Even banks and many other lenders—who should know how to compound—have adopted a convention of quoting interest rates that may surprise you. What they quote as the annual interest rate, is really lower than the actual annual interest rate your money will earn. The banks will compute daily interest at a rate of their annual interest quote, divided by 365. So, as Table 2.3 shows, in effect, if the bank quotes you an annual interest rate of 10%, it is paying you 10.5% per annum ($10.50 for every $100) if you leave your money in the bank for a year. Similarly, many lenders who receive monthly payments—such as mortgage lenders—use the same method to quote an "annual rate compounded monthly." That is, if they quote 12% per annum, they mean to collect $1.01^{12} \approx 12.68\%$ per year on the money lent to you. Trust me: interest rates are not intrinsically difficult, but they can be tedious and definitional confusions often reign in their world.

Banks add to the confusion, quoting interest rates in a strange but traditional way.

IMPORTANT: *My best advice when money is at stake: If in doubt, ask how the interest rate is computed! Even better, ask for a simple illustrative calculation.*

DIGGING DEEPER: *If you want to look up the rate of return on a Treasury bill, you may find that the Wall Street Journal quotes a number like 95. What does this mean?*

For example, in a Treasury auction, in which the government sells 180-day T-bills that will pay $10,000 in 180 days for $9,500, the discount quote would be

$$\text{Quoted TB Price} = \$10,000 \cdot [1 - (180/360) \cdot 10] = \$9,500 \tag{2.21}$$
$$\$10,000 \cdot [1 - (\textit{days to maturity}/360) \cdot \textit{discount rate}] \quad .$$

The Wall Street Journal then simply prints 95, because T-bills are quoted in units of 100. The real interest rate at the 95 quote is $(10,000/9,500) - 1 \approx 5.26\%$. *Therefore, even ignoring the extra 5 days, the 360 day interest rate is* $1.0526^2 - 1 \approx 10.8\%$, *not 10%. Be this as it may, a big advantage is that it is less confusing in that no one will confuse 95 for an interest rate. (Incidentally, I have not memorized the meaning, either. If I need it, I read this box.)*

Solve Now!

Q 2.20 *If you earn an (effective) interest rate of 12% per annum, how many basis points do you earn in interest on a typical day?*

Q 2.21 *If you earn an (effective) interest rate of 12% per annum, and there are 52.15 weeks, how much interest do you earn on a deposit of $100,000 over one week?*

Q 2.22 *If the bank quotes an interest rate of 12% per annum, how many basis points do you earn in interest on a typical day?*

Q 2.23 *If the bank quotes an interest rate of 12% per annum, and there are 52 weeks, how much interest do you earn on a deposit of $100,000 over one week?*

Q 2.24 *How much will your money grow to over the year?*

Q 2.25 *If the bank quotes an interest rate of 6% per year, what does a deposit of $100 in the bank come to after one year?*

Q 2.26 *If the bank quotes a loan rate of 8% per year, what do you have to pay back in one year if you borrow $100 from the bank?*

file=constantinterest.tex: RP

2·4. Capital Budgeting

Capital Budgeting: should you budget capital for a project?

Now turn to the flip side of the investment problem: if you know how much money you will have next year, what does this correspond to in value today? In a corporate context, your question is, "Given that Project X will return \$1 million in 5 years, how much should you be willing to pay to undertake this project today?"

2·4.A. Discount Factor and Present Value (PV)

The "Present Value Formula" is nothing but the rate of return definition—inverted to translate future cash flows into (equivalent) today's dollars.

Start again with the **rate of return** formula 2.2,

$$r_{0,1} = \frac{CF_1 - CF_0}{CF_0} = \frac{CF_1}{CF_0} - 1 \quad . \tag{2.22}$$

You only need to turn this formula around to answer the following question: if you know the prevailing interest rate in the economy ($r_{0,1}$) and the project's future cash flows (CF_1), what is the project's value to you *today*? For example, if the interest rate is 10%, how much would you have to save (invest) to receive \$100 next year? Or, equivalently, if your project will return \$100 next year, what is the project worth to you today? The answer lies in the **present value** formula, which translates future money into today's money. You merely need to rearrange the above formula to solve for CF_0,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$100}{1+10\%} &\approx \$90.91 \\ CF_0 = \frac{CF_1}{1+r_{0,1}} &= \mathsf{PV}(CF_1) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.23}$$

Check this: investing \$90.91 at an interest rate of 10% will indeed return \$100 next period:

$$\begin{aligned} 10\% \approx \frac{\$100 - \$90.91}{\$90.91} = \frac{\$100}{\$90.91} - 1 \quad &\Leftrightarrow \quad (1+10\%) \cdot \$90.91 \approx \$100 \\ r_{0,1} = \frac{CF_1 - CF_0}{CF_0} = \frac{CF_1}{CF_0} - 1 \quad &\Leftrightarrow \quad (1+r_{0,1}) \cdot CF_0 = CF_1 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.24}$$

Thus, you can also state that the present value (PV) of \$100 next year is \$90.91—the value today of future cash flows. If you can borrow or lend at the interest rate of 10% elsewhere, you will

Anecdote: Fibonacci and the Invention of Net Present Value

William Goetzmann argues that Leonardo of Pisa, commonly called Fibonacci, may have invented not only the famous "Fibonacci series," but also the concept of net present value, which is the focus of our chapter.

Fibonacci's family were merchants in the Mediterranean in the 13th century, with trade relations to Arab merchants in Northern Africa. Fibonacci wrote about mathematics primarily as a tool to solve merchants' problems—in effect, to understand the pricing of goods and currencies relative to one another. Think about how rich you could get if you could determine faster than your competition which goods were worth more in relation to others! In fact, you should think of Fibonacci and other Pisan merchants as the "financial engineers" of the 13th century.

Fibonacci wrote his most famous treatise, *Liber Abaci* at age 30, and published it in 1202. We still are solving the same kinds of problems today that Fibonacci explained. One of them—which you will solve at the end of this chapter—is called "On a Soldier Receiving 300 Bezants for his Fief":

> A soldier is granted an annuity by the king of 300 bezants per year, paid in quarterly installments of 75 bezants. The king alters the payment schedule to an annual year-end payment of 300. The soldier is able to earn 2 bezants on 100 per month (over each quarter) on his investment. How much is his effective compensation after the terms of the annuity changed?

To solve this problem, you must know how to value payments at different points in the future—you must understand the time value of money. What is the value of 75 bezants in one quarter, two quarters, etc.? What is the value of 300 bezants in one year, two years, etc.? Yes, money sooner is usually worth more than money later—but you need to determine by exactly how much in order to determine how good or bad the change is for the king and the soldier. To answer, you must use the interest rate Fibonacci gives, and then compare the two different cash flow streams—the original payment schedule and the revised payment schedule—in terms of a common denominator. This common denominator will be the two streams' present values.

be indifferent between receiving \$100 next year and receiving \$90.91 in your project today. In contrast, if the standard rate of return in the economy were 12%, your specific project would not be a good deal. The project's present value would be

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$100}{1+12\%} &\approx \$89.29 \\ \mathrm{CF}_0 = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} &, \end{aligned} \tag{2.25}$$

which would be less than its cost of \$90.91. But if the standard economy-wide rate of return were 8%, the project would be a great deal. Today's present value of the project's future payoffs would be

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$100}{1+8\%} &\approx \$92.59 \\ \mathrm{CF}_0 = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} &= \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1)\ , \end{aligned} \tag{2.26}$$

which would exceed the project's cost of \$90.91. So, it is the present value of the project, weighed against its cost, that should determine whether you should undertake the project today, or whether you should avoid it. The present value is also the answer to the question, "How much would you have to save at current interest rates today if you wanted to have a specific amount of money next year ($\mathrm{CF}_{t=1}$)"?

The PV formula.

Let's extend the example. If the interest rate were 10% per period, what would \$100 in two periods be worth today? In two periods, you could earn a rate of return of $r_{0,2} = (1+10\%)\cdot(1+10\%)-1 = 21\%$ elsewhere, so this is your appropriate comparable rate of return. The value of the \$100 is then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^2} &= \frac{\$100}{1+21\%} \approx \$82.64 \\ \mathrm{CF}_0 = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+r_{1,2})} &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{1+r_{0,2}} = \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_2)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{2.27}$$

The interest rate can now be called the "cost of capital."

In this context, the rate of return, r, with which the project can be financed, is often called the **cost of capital**. It is the rate of return at which you can borrow money elsewhere. This cost of capital is determined by the **opportunity cost** that you bear if you fund your specific project instead of the alternative next-best investment project elsewhere. Remember—you can invest your money at this rate instead of investing it in the project. Now, the better these alternative projects in the economy are, the higher will be your cost of capital, and the lower will be the value of your specific project with its specific cash flows. A project that promises \$1,000 next year is worth less today if you can earn 50% elsewhere than when you can earn only 5% elsewhere. (In this first valuation part of our book, I will just inform you of the economy-wide rate of return, here 10%, at which you can borrow or invest. The investments part of the book will explain how you can this rate of return is determined.)

Bond present values and prevailing interest rates move in opposite directions.

Remember how bonds are different from savings accounts? The former is pinned down by its promised fixed future payment, while the latter pays whatever the daily interest rate is. This induces an important relationship between the value of bonds and the prevailing interest rates—they move in opposite directions. For example, if you have a bond that promises to pay \$1,000 in one year, and the prevailing interest rate is 5%, the bond has a present value of $\$1,000/(1+5\%) \approx \$952.38$. If the prevailing interest rate suddenly increases to 6%, the bond's present value becomes $\$1,000/(1+6\%) \approx \$943.40$. You would have lost \$8.98, which is about 0.9% of your original \$952.38 investment. The value of your fixed bond payment in the future has gone down, because investors now have relatively better opportunities elsewhere in the economy. They can earn a rate of return of 6%, not just 5%, so if you wanted to sell your bond, you would have to price it to leave the next buyer a rate of return of 6%. If you had waited invested your money, the sudden change to 6% would have done nothing to your investment, because you could now earn the 6%. This is a general implication and worthwhile noting:

IMPORTANT: *The price and implied rate of return on a bond with fixed payments move in opposite directions. When the price of the bond goes up, its implied rate of return goes down.*

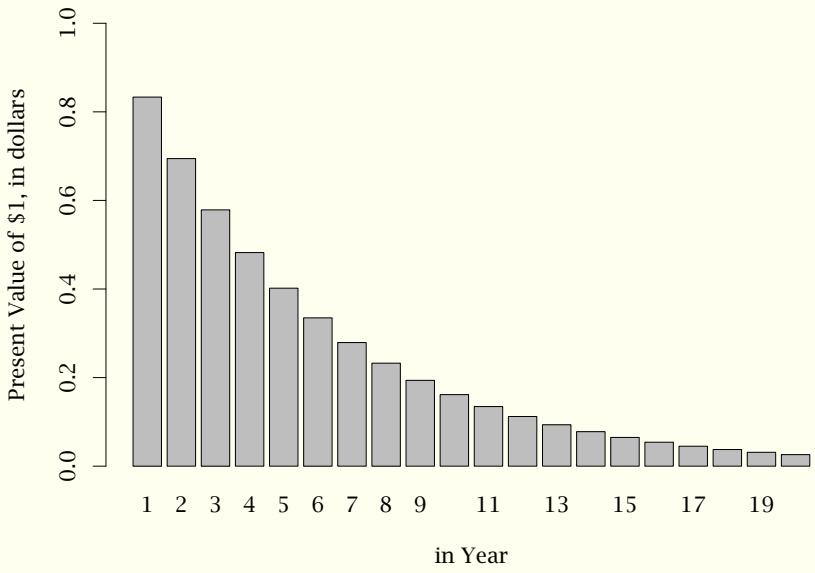
The discount factor is closely related to the cost of capital.

The quantity

$$\text{Discount Factor}_{0,t} = \left(\frac{1}{1+r_{0,t}}\right) \tag{2.28}$$

is called the **discount factor** (or sometimes, less correctly, the **discount rate**, though you should use discount rate as a name for $r_{0,t}$ in this context). When you multiply a cash flow by its appropriate discount factor, you end up with its present value. If you wish, you can also think of **discounting**—the conversion of a future cash flow amount into its equivalent present value amount—as the reverse of compounding. In other words, the discount factor translates one dollar in the future into the equivalent amount of dollars today. Because interest rates are usually positive, discount factors are usually less than 1—a dollar in the future is worth less than a dollar today. Figure 2.4 shows how the discount factor declines when the cost of capital is 20% per annum. After about a decade, any dollar the project earns is worth less than 20 cents to you today.

Table 2.4. Discounting Over 20 Years at a Cost of Capital of 20% Per Annum



Each bar is 1/(1 + 20%) = 83.3% of the size of the bar to its left. After 20 years, the last bar is 0.026 in height. This means that $1 in 20 years is worth 2.6 cents in money today.

2·4.B. Net Present Value (NPV)

Present Values are alike and thus can be added, subtracted, compared, etc.

An important advantage of present value is that all cash flows are translated into the same unit: cash today. To see this, say that a project generates \$10 in 1 year and \$8 in 5 years. You cannot add up these different future values to come up with \$18—it would be like adding apples and oranges. However, if you translate both future cash flows into their present values, you *can* add them. For example, if the interest rate was 5% per annum (and $(1+5\%)^5 = (1+27.6\%)$ in over 5 years), the present value of these two cash flows together would be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}(\text{ \$10 in one year }) &= \frac{\$10}{1+5\%} \approx \$9.52 \ , \\ \mathsf{PV}(\text{ \$8 in five years }) &= \frac{\$8}{(1+5\%)^5} \approx \$6.27 \ . \\ \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_t) &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_t}{1+r_{0,t}} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{2.29}$$

Therefore, the project's total value *today* (at time 0) is \$15.79.

The definition and use of NPV.

The **net present value** (NPV) is really the same as present value, except that the word "net" upfront reminds you to add and subtract *all* cash flows, including the *upfront* investment outlay today. The NPV calculation method is always the same:

1. Translate all future cash flows into today's dollars;
2. Add them all up.

So, if obtaining your project costs \$12 today, then this is a positive NPV project, because

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{NPV} &= -\$12 + \frac{\$10}{1+5\%} + \frac{\$8}{(1+5\%)^5} \approx \$3.50 \\ \mathrm{CF}_0 &+ \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_5}{1+r_{0,5}} = \mathsf{NPV} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{2.30}$$

Thinking what NPV means, and how it can be justified.

There are a number of ways to think about the NPV. One way is to think of the NPV of \$3.50 as the difference between the market value of the future cash flows (\$15.79) and the project's cost (\$12)—the difference being "value added." You can also think of the equivalent of purchasing bonds that exactly *replicates* the project payoffs. Here, you would want to purchase one bond that promises \$10 next year. If you save \$9.52—at a 5% interest rate—you will receive \$10. Similarly, you would have to save \$6.27 in a bond that promises \$8 in 5 years. Together, these two bonds exactly replicate the project cash flows. The **law of one price** tells you that your project should be worth as much as this bond project—the cash flows are identical. You would have had to put away \$15.79 today to buy these bonds, but your project can deliver these cash flows at a cost of only \$12—much cheaper and thus better than your bond alternative.

Yet another way to justify NPV: opportunity cost.

Still another way is to think of NPV as an indicator of how your project compares to the alternative opportunity of investing at the capital markets, the rates of return being in the denominator (the discount factors). What would you get if you took your \$12 and invested it in the capital markets instead of this project? You could earn a 5% rate of return from now to next year and 27.6% from now to five years. Your \$12 would grow into \$12.60 by next year. Like your project, you could receive \$10, and be left with \$2.60 for reinvestment. Over the next 4 years, at the 5% interest rate, this \$2.60 would grow to \$3.16. But your project would do better for you, giving you \$8. So, your project achieves a higher rate of return than the capital markets alternative would achieve.

Take all positive NPV projects.

The conclusion of this argument is not only the simplest but also the best capital budgeting rule: If the NPV is positive, as it is here, you should take the project. If it is negative, you should reject the project. If it is zero, it does not matter.

IMPORTANT:

- *The **Net Present Value** Formula is*

$$\begin{aligned} NPV &= CF_0 + PV(CF_1) + PV(CF_2) + PV(CF_3) + PV(CF_4) + \ldots \\ &= CF_0 + \frac{CF_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{CF_2}{1+r_{0,2}} + \frac{CF_3}{1+r_{0,3}} + \frac{CF_4}{1+r_{0,4}} + \ldots \\ &= \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{CF_t}{1+r_{0,t}} \right) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{2.31}$$

  The subscripts are time indexes, CF_t is the net cash flow at time t (positive for inflows, negative for outflows), and $r_{0,t}$ is the relevant interest rate for investments from today to time t. (The Greek sigma notation is just a shorter way of writing the longer summation above. You will see it again, so if you are not familiar with it, it is explained in Appendix Section 2·3.)

- *The **Net Present Value Capital Budgeting Rule** states that you should accept projects with a positive NPV and reject projects with a negative NPV.*
- *Taking positive NPV projects increases the value of the firm. Taking negative NPV projects decreases the value of the firm.*
- *NPV is definitively the best method for capital budgeting—the process by which you should accept or reject projects.*

The NPV formula is so important, it is worth memorizing.

A "free money" interpretation of NPV.

Why is NPV the right rule to use? The reason is that in our perfect world, a positive NPV project is the equivalent of free money. For example, if you can borrow or lend money at 8% anywhere today and you have an investment opportunity that costs \$1 and yields \$1.09, you can immediately contract to receive \$0.01 next year *for free*. (If you wish, discount it back to today, so you can consume it today.) Rejecting this project would make no sense. Similarly, if you can sell someone an investment opportunity for \$1, which yields only \$1.07 next year, you can again earn \$0.01 *for free*. Again, rejecting this project would make no sense. (In our perfect world, you can buy or sell projects at will.) Only zero NPV projects (\$1 cost for \$1.08 payoff) do not allow you to get free money. More interestingly, this allows you to conclude how a perfect world must work: Either positive NPV projects are not easy to come by—they are not available in abundant amounts, but can be available only in limited quantities to a limited number of individuals—or the NPV rule must hold. Positive NPV projects must be scarce, or everyone with access to these positive NPV projects would want to take an infinite amount of these projects, which in turn would continue until the economy-wide appropriate rate of return would go up to equal the project's rate of return. Of course, this argument is not here to show you how to get rich, but to convince you that the NPV rule makes sense and that any rule that comes to other conclusions than NPV would not.

Recap: NPV may be the most important building block in finance.

The translation between future values and present values—and its variant net present value—is the most essential concept in finance. Cash flows at different points in time must first be translated into the same units—dollars today—before they can be compared or added. *You must be comfortable with the mechanics of computing the net present value of projects.* You will solve many more NPV problems throughout the book. As you will find out in later chapters, despite its conceptual simplicity, the application of NPV in the real world is often surprisingly difficult, because you must estimate cash flows and discount factors.

Work a project example. Let us work another example. A project costs \$900 today, yields \$200/year for two years, then \$400/year for two years, and finally requires a cleanup expense of \$100. The prevailing interest rate is 5% per annum. Should you take this project?

First, determine the multi-year costs of capital. First you need to determine the cost of capital for tieing up money for 1 year, 2 years, 3 years, etc. The formula is

$$(1 + r_{0,t}) \;=\; (1 + r_{0,1})^t \;=\; (1 + 5\%)^t \;=\; 1.05^t \;. \tag{2.32}$$

So, for money right now, the cost of capital $r_{0,0}$ is $1.05^0 - 1 = 0$; for money in one year, it is $r_{0,1}$ is $1.05^1 - 1 = 5\%$; for money in two years, it is $r_{0,2}$ is $1.05^2 - 1 = 10.25\%$; and so on. The discount factors are one divided by one plus your cost of capital. So, a dollar in one year is worth $1/(1 + 5\%) \approx 0.952$ dollars today. A dollar in two years is worth $1/(1 + 5\%)^2 \approx 0.907$. You must now multiply the promised payoffs by the appropriate discount factor to get their present value equivalents. Because present values are additive, you then sum up all the terms to compute the overall net present value. Put this all into one table, as in Table 2.5, and you find that the project NPV is \$68.15. Because this is a positive value, you should take this project.

A negative version of the same project. However, if the upfront expense was \$1,000 instead of \$900, the NPV would be negative –\$31.85, and you would be better off investing the money into the appropriate sequence of bonds from which the discount factors were computed. In this case, you should have rejected the project.

Table 2.5. Hypothetical Project Cash Flow Table

Time	Project Cash Flow	Interest Rate Annualized	Interest Rate Holding	Discount Factor	Present Value
t	CF_t	r	$r_{0,t}$	$\frac{1}{1+r_{0,t}}$	$\mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_t)$
Today	–\$900	5.00%	0.00%	1.000	–\$900.00
Year +1	+\$200	5.00%	5.00%	0.952	+\$190.48
Year +2	+\$200	5.00%	10.25%	0.907	+\$181.41
Year +3	+\$400	5.00%	15.76%	0.864	+\$345.54
Year +4	+\$400	5.00%	21.55%	0.823	+\$329.08
Year +5	–\$100	5.00%	27.63%	0.784	–\$78.35
				Net Present Value (Sum):	\$68.15

As a manager, you must estimate your project cash flows. The appropriate interest rate (also called cost of capital in this context) is provided to you by the opportunity cost of your investors—determined by the supply and demand for capital in the broader economy, where your investors can place their capital instead. These are the two input columns. We computed the remaining columns from these inputs.

Solve Now!

Q 2.27 *Write down the NPV formula from memory.*

Q 2.28 *What is the NPV capital budgeting rule?*

Q 2.29 *If the cost of capital is 5% per annum, what is the discount factor for a cash flow in two years??*

Q 2.30 *Interpret the meaning of the discount factor.*

Q 2.31 *What are the units on rates of return, discount factors, future values, and present values?*

Q 2.32 *Determine the NPV of the project in Table 2.5, if the per-period interest rate is not 5% but 8% per year. Should you take this project?*

Q 2.33 *A project has a cost of capital of 30%. The final payoff is $250. What should it cost today?*

Q 2.34 *A bond promises to pay $150 in 12 months. The annual applicable interest rate is 5%. What is the bond's price today?*

Q 2.35 *A bond promises to pay $150 in 12 months. The bank quotes you interest of 5%. What is the bond's price today?*

Q 2.36 *Work out the present value of your tuition payments for the next two years. Assume that the tuition is $30,000 per year, payable at the start of the year. Your first tuition payment will occur in six months, your second tuition payment will occur in eighteen months. You can borrow capital at an interest rate of 6% per annum.*

Q 2.37 *Would it be good or bad for you, in terms of the present value of your liability, if your opportunity cost of capital increased?*

Q 2.38 *The price of a bond offering a firm promise of $100 in 1 year is $95. What is the implied interest rate? If the bond's interest rate suddenly jumped up by 150 basis points, what would the bond price be? How much would an investor gain/lose if she held the bond while the interest rate jumped up by these 150 basis points?*

file=constantinterest.tex: LP

2·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Returns must not be averaged, but compounded over time.
- The time-value of money means that one dollar today is worth more than one dollar tomorrow. Put differently, the future value of one dollar is less than the present value of one dollar.
- The discounted present value (PV) translates future cash values into present cash values. The net present value (NPV) is the sum of all present values of a project, including the usually negative upfront cash flow—the investment cost—today.
- The NPV formula can be written as

$$\mathsf{NPV} = \mathrm{CF}_0 + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{1+r_{0,2}} + \ldots \,. \tag{2.33}$$

  In this context, r is called the discount rate or cost of capital, and $1/(1+r)$ is called the discount factor.
- The Net Present Value Capital Budgeting Rule states that you should accept projects with a positive NPV and reject projects with a negative NPV.
- 100 basis points are equal to 1%.
- Interest rate quotes are *not* interest rates—misunderstandings often reigns supreme. For example, stated annual rates may not be the effective rates that you will earn if you put money into the bank. Or, a 3% coupon bond does not offer its investors a 3% rate of return. If in doubt, ask!
- Bonds commit to payments in the future. Bank savings deposits are like a sequence of 1-day bonds, where a new interest is set daily.

  A sudden increase in the prevailing economy-wide interest rate decreases the present value of a bonds' future payouts, and therefore decreases today's price of the bond.

1. Definitely yes. Foregone salary is a cost that you are bearing. This can be reasonably estimated, and many economic consulting firms regularly do so. As to non-monetary benefits, there is the reputation that the degree offers you, the education that betters you, and the beer consumption pleasure, if applicable.
2. Inflows: Value of Implicit Rent. Capital Gain if house appreciates. Outflows: Maintenance Costs. Transaction Costs. Mortgage Costs. Real Estate Tax. Theft. Capital Loss if house depreciates. And so on.

3. $r = \frac{\$1,050 - \$1,000}{\$1,000} = 5\%$.
4. $r = \frac{\$25}{\$1,000} = 2.5\%$.
5. 200.
6. 9.8%.

7. $r = 30\% = \frac{x - \$250}{\$250} \quad \Longrightarrow x = (1 + 30\%) \cdot \$250 = \$325$.
8. $(1 + 20\%)^5 - 1 \approx 149\%$.
9. $(1 + 100\%)^{1/5} - 1 \approx 14.87\%$.
10. $\$2,000 \cdot (1 + 25\%)^{15} = \$56,843.42$.
11. $1.05^{20} - 1 \approx 165.3\%$, so you would end up with $\$200 \cdot (1 + 165.3\%) \approx \$530.66$.
12. $$(1 + r_{0,0.25})^4 = (1 + r_{0,1}) \quad r_{0,0.25} = \sqrt[4]{1 + r_{0,1}} - 1 = (1 + 50\%)^{1/4} - 1 = 10.67\% \ . \tag{2.34}$$

13. $r_{0,2} = (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) - 1 = (1 + 5\%) \cdot (1 + 5\%) - 1 = 10.25\%$.
14. $r_{0,2} = (1 + r_{0,1})^{10} - 1 = 62.89\%$.
15. $r_{0,2} = (1 + r_{0,1})^{100} - 1 == 130.5 = 13,050\%$ In words, this is about 130 times the initial investment, and substantially more than 500% (5 times the initial investment).
16. About 22.5 years.
17. $[1 + (-1/3)]^5 - 1 \approx -86.83\%$. So about $2,633.74 is left.
18. First, solve for the interest rate: $1d \cdot (1 + r)^5 = 2d \Rightarrow r = 14.87\%$. Therefore, in 100 years, he will have $(1 + r)^{100} = 1,048,576$ denari. Of course, you can solve this in a simpler way: you have twenty 5-year periods, in each of which the holdings double. So, the answer is 2^{20} denari.
19. Yes, because dividends could then be reinvested, and earn extra return themselves.
20. $(1 + 12\%)^{(1/365)} = 3.105$bp/day.
21. The true daily interest rate, assuming 365 days, is 0.03105%. To get the true rate of return, compound this over 7 days: $(1 + 0.03105\%)^7 \approx 1.0021758$. So, your $100,000 will grow into $100,217.58. You can compute this differently: $(1 + 12\%)^(1/52.15)$.
22. 12%/365 = 3.288bp/day.
23. $(1 + 0.03288\%)^7 \approx 1.003116$. So, your $100,000 will grow into $100,230.36.
24. $(1 + 0.12/365)^{365} \approx \$112,747.46$.
25. The bank quote of 6% means that it will pay an interest rate of 6%/365= 0.0164384% per day. This earns an actual interest rate of $(1 + 0.0164384\%)^{365} = 6.18\%$ per year: Each invested $100 earns $6.18 over the year.
26. The bank quote of 8% means that you will have to pay an interest rate of 8%/365= 0.021918% per day. This earns an actual interest rate of $(1 + 0.021918\%)^{365} = 8.33\%$ per year: Each borrowed $100 requires $108.33 in repayment.

27. If you cannot do this by heart, do not go on until you have it memorized.
28. Accept if NPV is positive. Reject if NPV is negative.
29. $1/[(1 + 5\%) \cdot (1 + 5\%)] = 0.9070$.
30. It is today's value in dollars for one future dollar, i.e., at a specific point in time in the future.
31. The first two are unit-less, the latter two are in dollars (though the former is dollars in the future, while the latter is dollars today).

32. $-\$900 + \$200/(1+8\%)^1 + \$200/(1+8\%)^2 + \$400/(1+8\%)^3 + \$400/(1+8\%)^4 - \$100/(1+8\%)^5 \approx \$0.14$. The NPV is positive, therefore this is a worthwhile project.

33. $r = 30\% = \dfrac{\$250 - x}{x} \qquad \Longrightarrow x = \$250/(1+30\%) \approx \$192.31$.

34. $\$150/(1+5\%) \approx \$142.86$.

35. $\$150/(1+5\%/365)^{365} \approx \$142.68$.

36. The first tuition payment is worth $\$30,000/(1+6\%)^{1/2} \approx \$29,139$. The second tuition payment is worth $\$30,000/(1+6\%)^{3/2} \approx \$27,489$. Thus, the total present value is $56,628.

37. Good. Your future payments would be worth less in today's money.

38. The original interest rate is $\$100/\$95 - 1 = 5.26\%$. Increasing the interest rate by 150 basis points is 6.76%. This means that the price should be $\$100/(1+6.76\%) = \$93.67$. A price change from $95 to $93.67 is a rate of return of -1.4%.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 3

MORE TIME VALUE OF MONEY

Quick Formulas for Perpetuities and Annuities

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:11h)

last major edit: Mar 2004, Nov 2004

This chapter is a natural extension of the previous chapter. We remain in our world of constant interest rates, perfect foresight, and perfect markets. We cover two important but different questions that remain:

1. What should influence your investment decisions?

   In particular, if you have a need to have cash early on, would this make you value short-term projects more? And should you value companies which grow faster more?

2. Are there any shortcut formulas that can speed up your PV computations?

The answer to the first question will be that nothing other than NPV should matter for project valuation, so neither your need to have cash nor the growth pattern of the firm should make any difference

The answer to the second question will be that there are indeed valuation formulas for projects that have peculiar cash flow patterns—perpetuities and annuities. Their values are easy to compute when interest rates are constant. This often makes them useful "quick-and-dirty" tools for approximations. They are not only in wide use, but also are necessary to compute cash flows for common bonds (like mortgages) and to help you understand the economics of corporate growth.

3·1. Separating Investment Decisions and Present Values From Other Considerations

There are two philosophical issues left in our perfect world. First, does it matter *when* we need or generate money (i.e., *who* we are and how much cash we have), or does NPV subsume everything important that there is to know about our projects? Second, are fast-growing firms better investments than slow-growing firms?

3·1.A. Does It Matter *When* You Need Cash?

Who owns a project is not important in a perfectly competitive zero-friction capital market.

The answer is no—the value of a project *is* its net present value. It does not depend on who owns it, and/or on when the owner needs cash. Here is why. You already know about the time value of money, the fact that cash today is worth more than cash tomorrow. (A positive time value of money means nothing more than that the interest rate is positive.) If you do not agree—that is, if you value money tomorrow more than you value money today—then just give it to me until you need it back. I can deposit it in my bank account to earn interest in the interim. In our ideal, perfect capital market (without taxes, inflation, transaction costs, or other issues), you can of course do better: you can always shift money between time periods at an "exchange rate" that reflects the time value of money.

An "eager" consumer will take the project.

The shifting-at-will is worth illustrating. Assume that you have \$150 cash on hand and that you have exclusive access to a project that costs \$100, and returns \$200 next year. The appropriate interest rate (cost of capital) is 10%—but you *really* want to live it up today. So, how much can you consume? And, would you take the project? Here is the NPV prescription in a perfect market:

An "eager beaver" consumer still takes any positive NPV project.

- Sell the project in the competitive market for its NPV:

$$-\$100 + \left(\frac{\$200}{1+10\%}\right) = \$81.82 \quad . \tag{3.1}$$

- Spend the \$150 + (\$181.82 − \$100) = \$231.82 today. You will be better off taking the project than consuming just your \$150 cash at hand.

A "sleeper" consumer also takes the project.

Now, assume that you are Austin Powers, the frozen detective, who cannot consume this year. So, how much will you be able to consume next year? And, would you take the project? The NPV answer is

- Sell the project in the competitive market for

$$-\$100 + \frac{\$200}{1+10\%} = \$81.82 \ . \tag{3.2}$$

- Put the \$81.82 into the bank for 10% today. Get \$90 next year.
- Also put your \$150 into the bank at 10% interest.
- Next year, consume \$90 + \$165 = \$255.20.

Of course, an equally simple solution would be to take the project, and just put your remaining \$50 into a bank account.

The point of this argument is simple: regardless of when you need cash, you are better off taking all positive NPV projects, and then using the capital markets to shift consumption into your preferred time for consumption. It makes no sense to let *consumption decisions* influence *investment decisions*. This is called the **separation of decisions**: you can make investment decisions without concern for your consumption preferences. (This separation of investment and consumption decisions does not always hold in imperfect markets, in which you can face different borrowing and lending interest rates. Chapter 6 will discuss this.)

The moral of the story: consumption and investment decisions can be separated in a perfect environment.

SIDE NOTE: Of course, after they have lost their clients' money, many brokers like to confuse this basic truth by claiming that they invested their clients' money for the long-term, and not for the short-term. This presumes that long-term investments do worse in the short-run than short-term investment. This makes little sense, because if this were the case, your broker should purchase the short-term investment, and sell it when it is relatively worth more than the long-term investment in order to purchase relatively more of the (then relatively cheaper) long-term investment. So, the fact is that no matter whether an investor needs money sooner or later, the broker should always purchase the highest NPV investments. This gives clients the most wealth today—if you care about future consumption, you can always save the extra cash from finding the highest NPV investments today.

Solve Now!

Q 3.1 *What is the main assumption that allows you to independently consider investment (project) choices without regard to when you need wealth (or how much money you currently have at hand)?*

Q 3.2 *You have $500 and a terminal illness. You cannot wait until the following project completes: The project costs $400 and offers a rate of return of 15%, although equivalent interest rates are only 10%. What should you do?*

3·1.B. Corporate Valuation: Growth as Investment Criteria?

A similar question to that posed in the previous subsection is "Would it make more sense to invest in companies that grow more quickly rather than slowly"? If you wish, you can think of this question as asking whether you should buy stocks in a fast-growing company like Microsoft or in a slow-growing company like Exxon. The answer is that it does not matter in our perfect world. Whether a company is growing fast or growing slow is already incorporated in the firm's price today, which is just the discounted net present value of the firm's cash flows that will accrue to the owners. Therefore, neither is the better deal.

The price should incorporate the attributes of the firms.

For example, consider company "Grow" (G) that will produce

Should we invest in a fast grower or a slow grower?

$$G_{t=1} = \$100 \quad G_2 = \$150 \quad G_3 = \$250 \ , \tag{3.3}$$

and company "Shrink" (S) that will produce

$$S_{t=1} = \$100 \quad S_2 = \$90 \quad S_3 = \$80 \ . \tag{3.4}$$

Is G not a better company to buy than S?

There is no uncertainty involved, and both firms face the same cost of capital of 10% per annum. Then the price of G today is

Let's find out: Compute the values.

$$\mathsf{PV}_{t=0}(G) = \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$150}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$250}{(1+10\%)^3} \approx \$402.71 \ , \tag{3.5}$$

and the price of S today is

$$\mathsf{PV}_{t=0}(S) = \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$90}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$80}{(1+10\%)^3} \approx \$225.39 \ . \tag{3.6}$$

Your investment dollar grows at the same rate, disconnected from the cash flow rate.

If you invest in G, then next year you will have \$100 cash, and own a company with \$150 and \$250 cash flows coming up. G's value at time 1 (so PV now has subscript 1) will thus be

$$\mathsf{PV}_{t=1}(G) = \$100 + \frac{\$150}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$250}{(1+10\%)^2} \approx \$442.98 \ . \tag{3.7}$$

Your investment will have earned a rate of return of $\$442.98/\$402.71 - 1 = 10\%$. If you instead invest in S, then next year you will receive \$100 cash, and own a company with "only" \$90 and \$80 cash flows coming up. S's value will thus be

$$\mathsf{PV}_{t=1}(S) = \$100 + \frac{\$90}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$80}{(1+10\%)^2} \approx \$247.93 \ . \tag{3.8}$$

Your investment will have earned a rate of return of $\$247.39/\$225.39 - 1 = 10\%$. In either case, you will earn the fair rate of return of 10%. So—whether cash flows are growing at a rate of +50%, −10%, +237.5%, or −92% is irrelevant: *the firms' market prices today already reflect their future growth rates.* There is no necessary connection between the growth rate of the underlying project cash flows or earnings, and the growth rate of your investment money (i.e., your expected rate of return). Make sure you understand the thought experiment here: This statement that higher-growth firms do not necessarily earn a higher rate of return does not mean that a firm in which managers succeed in increasing the future cash flows at no extra investment cost will not be worth more. Such firms will indeed be worth more, and the current owners will benefit from the rise in future cash flows, but this will also be reflected immediately in the price at which you can purchase this firm.

3·1.C. The Value Today is just "All Inflows" or just "All Outflows"

Dividend Payout Timing can shift around, too.

Now, the same argument applies to dividends: in the end, all earnings must be paid out (i.e., as dividends). This does not need to occur at the same time: your earnings can grow *today*, and your dividends can be zero or be shrinking *today*. In our earlier example, firm G could be a slow dividend payer or a fast dividend payer. It could pay \$100 now, \$150 next year and \$250 in two years. Or, it could reinvest the money, effectively on your behalf, (at the same 10%, of course), and then pay one big lump sum dividend of $\$100 \cdot (1+10\%)^2 + \$150 \cdot (1+10\%) + \$250 = \$536$ at the end of period 2. The dividend payout policy does not affect G's value today. The important point is that the net present value of your total earnings and your total dividends must both be equal to the price of the firm in our perfect world—or you would get something for nothing or lose something for nothing.

IMPORTANT: *In a perfect market, the price and value of the firm are determined by the net present value of the firm's underlying projects. In total, the cash flows from the firm's projects belong to the firm's claim holders. Therefore, the net present value of the firm's projects also must be the same as the net present value of the firm's payouts to all claimants.*

$$\text{Firm Value} = PV(\underbrace{\text{“All Project Payouts”}}_{\text{All Future}}) = PV(\underbrace{\text{“All Project Cash Flows”}}_{\text{All Future}}) \quad . \tag{3.9}$$

The same logic applies to stock and debt. Debt receives some cash flows generated by the projects, which are then paid out as principal or interest. Similarly, stock receives some cash flows generated by the projects (sometimes casually called earnings), which are then paid out as dividends.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Stock Value} &= PV(\underbrace{\text{Dividends}}_{\text{All Future}}) = PV(\underbrace{\text{Earnings to Stock}}_{\text{All Future}}) \quad . \\ \text{Debt Value} &= PV(\underbrace{\text{Principal + Interest}}_{\text{All Future}}) = PV(\underbrace{\text{Cash Flows to Debt}}_{\text{All Future}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.10}$$

The time patterns of inflows or outflows only matters in determining net present values. Beyond this influence, it does not matter whether the firm is a fast-earnings grower, a slow-earnings grower, a fast-dividend payer, or a slow-dividend payer—each firm should be a fair investment. There is no value created by shifting earnings or dividends across periods.

This is sometimes called the M&M theorem, but holds in perfect markets only.

This simple insight is the basis of the "Modigliani-Miller" (M&M) theorems, which won two Nobel prizes in economics. (We will explain them in more detail in Chapter 21.) Remember, though, that the "perfect market" assumption is important—the value of the firm is only the discounted value of all future dividends or all future earnings if markets are not too far from perfect. This is reasonable enough an assumption for large company stocks traded in the United States, but not necessarily the case for small, privately held firms. You should also realize that over any limited time horizon, neither dividends nor earnings may represent value well—dividends can be zero for a while, earnings can be negative, and the firm can still have tremendous and positive value.

Any wealth gains accrue to existing shareholders, not to new investors.

There is an important corollary. If General Electric is about to win or has just had some great luck, having won a large defense contract (like the equivalent of a lottery), shouldn't you purchase GE stock to participate in the windfall? Or, if Wal-Mart managers do a great job and have put together a great firm, shouldn't you purchase Wal-Mart stock to participate in this windfall? The answer is that you cannot. The old shareholders of Wal-Mart are no dummies. They know the capabilities of Wal-Mart and how it will translate into cash flows. Why should they give you, a potential new shareholder, a special bargain for something that you contributed nothing to? Just providing more investment funds is not a big contribution—after all, there are millions of other investors equally willing to provide funds at the appropriately higher price. It is competition—among investors for providing funds and among firms for obtaining funds—that determines the expected rate of return that investors receive and the cost of capital that firms pay. There is actually a more general lesson here. Economics tells us that you must have a scarce resource if you want to earn above-normal profits. Whatever is abundant and/or provided by many will not be tremendously profitable.

Solve Now!

Q 3.3 *Presume that company G pays no interim dividends, so you receive $536 at the end of the project. What is the G's market value at time 1, 2, and 3? What is your rate of return in each year? Assume that the cost of capital is still 10%.*

Q 3.4 *Presume that company G pays out the full cash flows in earnings each period. What is G's market value at time 1, 2, and 3? What is your rate of return in each year?*

Q 3.5 *Which dividend stream increases the value of the firm? Do you prefer a firm paying a lot of dividends, or a firm paying no dividends until the very end?*

Q 3.6 *The discount rate is 15%/annum over all periods. Firm F's cash flows start with $500 and grow at 20% per annum for 3 years. Firm S's cash flows also start with $500 but shrink at 20% per annum for 3 years. What are the prices of these two firms, and what is the expected growth rate of your money that you would invest into these two companies?*

3·2. PERPETUITIES

"Perpetuities" and "Annuities" are projects with special kinds of cash flows, which permit the use of short-cut formulas.

We now proceed to our second subject of this chapter—the shortcut formulas to compute the present values of certain cash streams. A **perpetuity** is a project with a cash flow that repeats forever. If the cost of capital (the appropriate discount rate) is constant and the amount of money remains the same or grows at a constant rate, perpetuities lend themselves to quick present value solutions—very useful when you need to come up with quick rule of thumb estimates. Though the formulas may seem a bit intimidating at first, using them will quickly become second nature to you.

3·2.A. The Simple Perpetuity Formula

Table 3.1. Perpetuity Stream of $2 With Interest Rate $r = 10\%$

Time	Cash Flow	Discount Factor	Present Value	Cumulative
0	Nothing! You have no cash flow here!			
1	$2	$1/(1+10\%)^1$	$1.82	$1.82
2	$2	$1/(1+10\%)^2$	$1.65	$3.47
3	$2	$1/(1+10\%)^3$	$1.50	$4.97
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
50	$2	$1/(1+10\%)^{50}$	$0.02	$19.83
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
t	$2	$1/(1+10\%)^t$	$2/(1+10\%)^t$	
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
			Net Present Value (Sum):	= $20.00

An Example Perpetuity that pays $2 forever.

At a constant interest rate of 10%, how much money do you need to invest today to receive the same dollar amount of interest of $2 each year, starting next year, forever? Such a payment pattern is called a simple perpetuity. It is a stream of cash flows that are the same for each period and continue *forever*. Table 3.1 shows a perpetuity paying $2 forever if the interest rate is 10% per annum.

The Shortcut Perpetuity Formula.

To confirm the table's last row, which gives the perpetuity's net present value as $20, you can spend from here to eternity to add up the infinite number of terms. But if you use a spreadsheet to compute and add up the first 50 terms, you will get a PV of $19.83. If you add up the first 100 terms, you will get a PV of $19.9986. Trust me that the sum will converge to $20. This is because there is a nice shortcut to computing the net present value of the perpetuity if the cost of capital is constant.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Perpetuity PV} &= \frac{\$2}{10\%} = \$20 \\ \text{PV}_t &= \frac{\text{CF}_{t+1}}{r} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.11}$$

The "t+1" in the formula is to remind you that the first cash flow begins the *following* period, not this period—the cash flows are the same in 1 period, in 2 periods, etc.

IMPORTANT: *A stream of constant cash flows, CF dollars each period and forever, beginning next period, and is discounted at the same annual cost of capital r forever is worth*

$$PV_t = \frac{CF_{t+1}}{r} \quad . \tag{3.12}$$

The easiest way for you to get comfortable with perpetuities is to solve some problems.

Solve Now!

Q 3.7 *From memory, write down the perpetuity formula. Be explicit on when the first cash flow occurs.*

Q 3.8 *What is the PV of a perpetuity paying $5 each month, beginning next month, if the monthly interest rate is a constant 0.5%/month (6.2%/year)?*

Q 3.9 *What is the PV of a perpetuity paying $15 each month, beginning next month, if the annual interest rate is a constant 12.68% per year?*

Q 3.10 *Under what interest rates would you prefer a perpetuity that pays $2 million a year to a one-time payment of $40 million?*

ANECDOTE: The Oldest Institutions and Perpetuities

Perpetuities assume that projects last forever. But nothing really lasts forever. The oldest Western institution today may well be the Roman Catholic Church, which is about 2,000 years old. The oldest existing corporation in the United States is The Collegiate Reformed Protestant Dutch Church of the City of New York, formed in 1628 and granted a corporate charter by King William in 1696. The Canadian Hudson's Bay Company was founded in 1670, and claims to be the oldest continuously incorporated company in the world.

Guantanamo Naval Base was leased from Cuba in 1903 as a perpetuity by the United States in exchange for 2,000 pesos per annum in U.S. gold, equivalent to $4,085. In a speech, Fidel Castro has redefined time as "whatever is indefinite lasts 100 years." In any case, the Cuban government no longer recognizes the agreement, and does not accept the annual payments—but has also wisely not yet tried to expel the Americans.

Perpetuity bonds, called Consols, are fairly common in Britain, but not in the United States, because the American IRS does not permit corporations deducting interest payments on Consols.

Q 3.11 *In Britain, there are Consol bonds that are perpetuity bonds. (In the United States, the IRS does not allow companies to deduct the interest payments on perpetual bonds, so U.S. corporations do not issue Consol bonds.) What is the value of a Consol bond that promises to pay $2,000 per year if the prevailing interest rate is 4%?*

3·2.B. The Growing Perpetuity Formula

Table 3.2. Perpetuity Stream With $CF_{+1} = \$2$, Growth Rate $g = 5\%$, and Interest Rate $r = 10\%$

Time	Cash Flow		Discount Rate	Present Value	Cumulative
0	Nothing. You have no cash flows here.				
1	$(1+5\%)^0 \cdot \$2 =$	\$2.000	$(1+10\%)^1$	\$1.818	\$1.82
2	$(1+5\%)^1 \cdot \$2 =$	\$2.100	$(1+10\%)^2$	\$1.736	\$3.56
3	$(1+5\%)^2 \cdot \$2 =$	\$2.205	$(1+10\%)^3$	\$1.657	\$5.22
⋮	⋮ $\cdot \$2 =$	⋮	⋮	⋮	
30	$(1+5\%)^{29} \cdot \$2 =$	\$8.232	$(1+10\%)^{30}$	\$0.236	\$30.09
⋮	⋮ $\cdot \$2 =$	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
t	$(1+5\%)^{t-1} \cdot \$2 =$	⋮	$(1+10\%)^t$	⋮	⋮
⋮	⋮ $\cdot \$2 =$	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
			Net Present Value (Sum):		= \$40.00

A growing perpetuity assumes that cash flows grow by a constant rate forever.

What if the cash flows are larger every period? A generalization of the perpetuity formula is the **growing perpetuity** formula, in which the cash flows grow by a constant rate g each period. The cash flows of a sample growing perpetuity—which pays \$2 next year, grows at a rate of 5%, and faces a cost of capital of 10%—are shown in Table 3.2. The present value of the first 50 terms adds up to \$36.28. The first 100 terms add up to \$39.64. The first 200 terms add up to \$39.98. Eventually, the sum approaches the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV of Growing Perpetuity}_0 &= \frac{\$2}{10\% - 5\%} = \$40 \\ \text{PV}_t &= \frac{\text{CF}_{t+1}}{r - g} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.13}$$

As before, the "t+1" indicates that cash flows begin next period, not this period, and r is the interest rate minus g, the growth rate of your cash flows. Note that the growth timing occurs one period after the discount factor timing. For example, the cash flow at time 30 is discounted by $(1+r)^{30}$, but its cash flow is C_0 multiplied by a growth factor of $(1+g)^{29}$. We shall see later that the growing perpetuity formula is most commonly used when nominal project cash flows are assumed to grow by the rate of inflation. We will use this formula extensively to obtain "terminal values" in our final chapter on pro formas.

IMPORTANT: *A stream of cash flows, growing at a rate of g each period and discounted at a constant interest rate r (which must be higher than g) is worth*

$$PV_t = \frac{CF_{t+1}}{r-g} . \tag{3.14}$$

The first cash flow, CF_{t+1} occurs next period, the second cash flow of $CF_{t+2} = CF_{t+1} \cdot (1+g)$ occurs in two periods, and so forth, forever.

The growing annuity formula is worth memorizing.

Non-sensible answers.

What would happen if the cash flows grew faster than the interest rate ($g \geq r$)? Wouldn't the formula indicate a negative PV? Yes, but this is because the entire scenario would be non-sense. The PV in the perpetuities formulas is only less than infinity, because *in today's dollars*, each term in the sum is a little less than the term in the previous period. If g were greater than r, however, the cash flow one period later would be worth more even in today's dollars—and taking a sum over an infinite number of increasing terms would yield infinity as the value. A value of infinity is clearly not sensible, as nothing in this world is worth an infinite amount of money today. And, therefore, the growing perpetuity formula yields a non-sensical negative value if $g \geq r$—as it should!

Solve Now!

Q 3.12 *From memory, write down the growing perpetuity formula.*

Q 3.13 *What is the PV of a perpetuity paying \$5 each month, beginning this month (in 1 second), if the monthly interest rate is a constant 0.5%/month (6.2%/year), and the cash flows will grow at a rate of 0.1%/month (1.2%/year)?*

3·2.C. A Growing Perpetuity Application: Individual Stock Valuation with Gordon Growth Models

Perpetuities are imperfect approximations, but often give a useful upper bound.

With their fixed interest and growth rates and eternal payment requirements, perpetuities are rarely exactly correct. But they can be very helpful for quick back-of-the-envelope estimates. For example, consider a stable business with profits of \$1 million next year. Because it is stable, its profits are likely to grow at the inflation rate of, say, 2% per annum. This means it will earn \$1,020,000 in two years, \$1,040,400 in three years, etc. The firm faces a cost of capital of 8%. The growing perpetuity formula indicates that this firm should probably be worth no more than

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Business Value} &= \frac{\$1,000,000}{8\%-2\%} \approx \$16,666,667 \\ \text{Business Value}_0 &= \frac{\text{CF}_1}{r-g} , \end{aligned} \tag{3.15}$$

because in reality, the firm will almost surely not exist forever. Of course, in real life, there are often even more significant uncertainties: next year's profit may be different, the firm may grow at a different rate (or may grow at a different rate for a while) or face a different cost of capital for one-year loans than it does for thirty-year loans. Thus, \$16.7 million should be considered a quick-and-dirty useful approximation, perhaps for an upper limit, and not an exact number.

The "Gordon Growth Model": constant eternal dividend growth.

The growing perpetuity model is sometimes directly applied to the stock market. For example, if you believe that a stock's dividends will grow by $g = 5\%$ forever, and if you believe that the appropriate rate of return is $r = 10\%$, and you expect the stock to earn and/or pay dividends of $D = \$10$ next year, then you would feel that a stock price of

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1}{r-g} = \frac{\$10}{10\%-5\%} = \$200 \tag{3.16}$$

would be appropriate. In this context, the growing perpetuity model is often called the **Gordon growth model**, after its inventor Myron Gordon.

Estimating the cost of capital for GE.

Let us explore the Gordon growth model a bit more. In October 2004, Yahoo!*Finance* listed General Electric (GE) with a dividend yield of 2.43%. This is dividends divided by the stock price, D/P, although it may be that dividends are from this year and not forward-looking. (Fixing this would change our numbers only very little, so we shall not bother.) Rearrange our formula 3.16:

$$\frac{D}{P} = r - g = 2.43\% \ . \tag{3.17}$$

Therefore, we know that the market believes that the appropriate cost of capital (r) for General Electric exceeds its growth rate of dividends (g) by about 2.4%. Yahoo!*Finance* further links to a summary of GE's cash flow statement, which indicates that GE paid \$7.643 billion in dividends in 2003, and \$6.358 billion in 2001. Over these two years, the growth rate of dividends was about 9.6% per annum ($\$6.358 \cdot (1 + 9.6\%)^2 \approx \$7.643$). Therefore, if we believe 9.6%/year is a fair representation of the eternal growth rate of GE's dividends, then the financial markets valued GE as if it had a per-annum cost of capital of about

$$r = \frac{D}{P} + g \approx 2.4\% + 9.6\% \approx 12\% \ . \tag{3.18}$$

You can do the same with earnings.

It is also not uncommon to repeat the same exercise with earnings—that is, presume that stock market values are capitalized as if corporate earnings were eternal cash flows growing at a constant rate g. Again, Yahoo!*Finance* gives us all the information we need. GE's "trailing P/E" ratio—calculated as the current stock price divided by historical earnings—was 21, its "forward P/E" ratio—calculated as the price divided by analysts' expectations of next year's dividends—was 18.5. The latter is P_0/E_1, and thus closer to what we want. Yahoo!*Finance* further tells us that GE's earnings growth was 6.3%—the g in our formula. Therefore,

$$P_0 = \frac{E_1}{r-g} \quad \Rightarrow \quad r = \frac{E_1}{P_0} + g = \frac{1}{P_0/E_1} + g \approx \frac{1}{18.5} + 6.3\% \approx 11.7\% \ . \tag{3.19}$$

Keep perspective!

It is important that you recognize that these are just models—approximations—that you cannot take too seriously (in terms of accuracy). GE will not last forever, earnings are not the cash flows we need (more in Chapter 9), the discount rate is not eternally constant, earnings will not grow forever at 6.3%, etc. However, the numbers are not uninteresting and probably not too far off, either. GE is a very stable company that is likely to be around for a long time, and you could do a lot worse than assuming that the cost of capital (for investing of projects that are similar to GE stock ownership) is somewhere around 12% per annum—say, somewhere between 10% to 14% per annum.

Solve Now!

Q 3.14 *An eternal patent swap contract states that the patentee will pay the patenter \$1.5 million next year. The contract terms state growth with the inflation rate, which runs at 2% per annum. The appropriate cost of capital is 14%. What is the value of this patenting contract?*

Q 3.15 *How would the patent swap contract value change if the first payment did not occur next year, but tonight?*

Q 3.16 *A stock is paying a quarterly dividend of \$5 in one month. The dividend is expected to increase every quarter by the inflation rate of 0.5% per quarter—so it will be \$5.025 in the next quarter (i.e., paid out in four months). The prevailing cost of capital for this kind of stock is 9% per annum. What should this stock be worth?*

Q 3.17 *If a \$100 stock has earnings that are \$5 per year, and the appropriate cost of capital for this stock is 12% per year, what does the market expect the firm's "as-if-eternal dividends" to grow at?*

3·3. The Annuity Formula

The second type of cash flow stream that lends itself to a quick formula is an **annuity**, which is a stream of cash flows for a given number of periods. Unlike a perpetuity, payments stop after T periods. For example, if the interest rate is 10% per period, what is the value of an annuity that pays \$5 per period for 3 periods?

An Annuity pays the same amount for T years.

Let us first do this the slow way. We can hand-compute the net present value to be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\$5}{1+10\%} + \frac{\$5}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$5}{(1+10\%)^3} \approx \$12.4343 \\ \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{(1+r_{0,1})} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{(1+r_{0,2})} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_3}{(1+r_{0,3})} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.20}$$

So, what is the shortcut to compute the net present value of an annuity? It is the annuity formula, which is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV} &= \$5 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+10\%)]^3}{10\%} \right\} \approx \$12.4343 \ , \\ \mathsf{PV} &= \mathrm{CF}_{t+1} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\} = \mathsf{PV} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.21}$$

Is this really a short-cut? Maybe not for 3 periods, but try a 360-period annuity, and let me know which method you prefer. Either works.

IMPORTANT: *A stream of constant cash flows, beginning next period and lasting for T periods, and discounted at a constant interest rate r, is worth*

$$PV_t = \frac{CF_{t+1}}{r} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^T} \right] \ . \tag{3.22}$$

3·3.A. An Annuity Application: Fixed-Rate Mortgage Payments

Most mortgages are **fixed rate mortgage loans**, and they are basically annuities. They promise a specified stream of equal cash payments each month to a lender. A 30-year mortgage with monthly payments is really a 360-payments annuity. (The "annu-ity" formula should really be called a "month-ity" formula in this case.) So, what would be your monthly payment if you took out a 30-year mortgage loan for \$500,000 at an interest rate of 7.5% per annum?

Mortgages are annuities, so the annuity formula is quite useful.

Before you can proceed further, you need to know one more bit of institutional knowledge here: Mortgage providers—like banks—quote interest by just dividing the mortgage quote by 12, so the true monthly interest rate is $7.5\%/12 = 0.625\%$. (They do not compound; if they did, the monthly interest rate would be $(1+7.5\%)^{1/12} - 1 = 0.605\%$.)

Lenders quote interest rates using the same convention that banks use.

So our 30-year mortgage is an annuity with 360 equal payments with a discount rate of 0.625% per month. Its PV of \$500,000 is the amount that you are borrowing. We want to determine the fixed monthly cash flow that gives the annuity this value:

$$\begin{aligned} \$500,000 &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_{t+1}}{0.625\%} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+0.625\%)^{360}} \right] \approx CF_{t+1} \cdot 143.02 \\ \mathsf{PV} &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}_{t+1}}{r} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^T} \right] \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.23}$$

The mortgage payment can be determined by solving the Annuity formula.

Solving this for the cash flow tells you that the monthly payment on your \$500,000 mortgage will be \$3,496.07 for 360 months, beginning next month.

SIDE NOTE: Uncle Sam allows mortgage borrowers to deduct the interest, but not the principal, from their tax bills. The IRS imputes interest on the above mortgage as follows: In the first month, Uncle Sam proclaims 0.625%·\$500,000 = \$3,125 to be the tax-deductible mortgage interest payment. Therefore, the principal repayment is \$3,496.07 − \$3,125 = \$371.07 and remaining principal is \$499,628.93. The following month, Uncle Sam proclaims 0.625%·\$499,628.93 = \$3,122.68 to be the tax-deductible interest payment, \$3,496.07 − \$3,122.68 = \$373.39 as the principal repayment, and \$499,255.54 as the remaining principal. And so on.

3·3.B. An Annuity Example: A Level-Coupon Bond

Coupon bonds pay not only at the final time.

Let us exercise our new found knowledge in a more elaborate example—this time with bonds. Bonds come in many different varieties, but one useful classification is into coupon bonds and zero bonds (short for zero coupon bonds). A **coupon bond** pays its holder cash at many different points in time, whereas a **zero bond** pays only a single lump sum at the maturity of the bond. Many coupon bonds promise to pay a regular coupon similar to the interest rate prevailing at the time of the bond's original sale, and then return a "principal amount" plus a final coupon at the end of the bond.

Bonds are specified by their promised payout patterns.

For example, think of a coupon bond that will pay \$1,500 each half-year (semi-annual payment is very common) for five years, plus an additional \$100,000 in 5 years. This payment pattern is so common that it has specially named features: A bond with coupon payments that remain the same for the life of the bond is called a **level-coupon bond**. The \$100,000 here would be called the **principal**, in contrast to the \$1,500 semi-annual coupon. Level bonds are commonly named by just adding up all the coupon payments over one year (here, \$3,000), and dividing this sum of annual coupon payments by the principal. So this particular bond would be called a "3% semi-annual coupon bond" (\$3,000 coupon per year, divided by the principal of \$100,000). Now, the "3% coupon bond" is just a naming convention for the bond with these specific cash flow patterns—it is not the interest rate that you would expect if you bought this bond. In Section 2·3.C, we called such name designations interest *quotes*, as distinct from interest *rates*. Of course, even if the bond were to cost \$100,000 today (and we shall see below that it usually does not), the interest rate would not be 3% per annum, but $(1+1.5\%)^2 - 1 \approx 3.02\%$ per annum.

SIDE NOTE: **Par value** is a vacuous concept, sometimes used to compute coupon payout schedules. Principal and par value, and/or interest and coupon payment need not be identical, not even at the time of issue, much less later. For the most part, par value is best ignored.

We now solve for the value of our coupon bond. Incidentally, you may or may not find the annuity formula helpful—you can use it, but you do not need it. Our task is to find the value of a "3% coupon bond" today. First, we write down the payment structure for our 3% semi-annual coupon bond. This comes from its defined promised patterns,

A Typical Coupon Bond

Year	Due Date	Bond Payment	Year	Due Date	Bond Payment
0.5	Nov 2002	\$1,500	3.0	May 2005	\$1,500
1.0	May 2003	\$1,500	3.5	Nov 2005	\$1,500
1.5	Nov 2003	\$1,500	4.0	May 2006	\$1,500
2.0	May 2004	\$1,500	4.5	Nov 2006	\$1,500
2.5	Nov 2004	\$1,500	5.0	May 2007	\$101,500

Step 2: find the appropriate costs of capital.

Second, we need to determine the appropriate expected rates of return to use for discounting. We shall assume that the prevailing interest rate is 5% per annum, which translates into 2.47% for 6 months, 10.25% for two years, etc.

Maturity	Yield	Maturity	Yield
6 Months	2.47%	36 Months	15.76%
12 Months	5.00%	42 Months	18.62%
18 Months	7.59%	48 Months	21.55%
24 Months	10.25%	54 Months	24.55%
30 Months	12.97%	60 Months	27.63%

file=perpetuities.tex: RP

Our third step is to compute the discount factors, which are just $1/(1+r_{0,t})$, and to multiply each future payment by its discount factor. This will give us the present value (PV) of each bond payment, and therefore the bond overall value:

Step 3: Compute the discount factor is $1/(1+r_{0,t})$.

Year	Due Date	Bond Payment	Rate of Return	Discount Factor	Present Value
0.5	Nov 2002	\$1,500	2.47%	0.976	\$1,463.85
1.0	May 2003	\$1,500	5.00%	0.952	\$1,428.57
1.5	Nov 2003	\$1,500	7.59%	0.929	\$1,349.14
2.0	May 2004	\$1,500	10.25%	0.907	\$1,360.54
2.5	Nov 2004	\$1,500	12.97%	0.885	\$1,327.76
3.0	May 2005	\$1,500	15.76%	0.864	\$1,295.76
3.5	Nov 2005	\$1,500	18.62%	0.843	\$1,264.53
4.0	May 2006	\$1,500	21.55%	0.823	\$1,234.05
4.5	Nov 2006	\$1,500	24.55%	0.803	\$1,204.31
5.0	May 2007	\$101,500	27.63%	0.784	\$79,527.91
				Sum	\$91,501.42

We now know that, in our perfect world, we would expect this 3% level-coupon bond to be trading for \$91,501.42 today. Because the current price of the bond is below the so-named final principal payment of \$100,000, our bond would be said to trade at a **discount**. (The opposite would be a bond trading at a **premium**.)

Common naming conventions for this type of bond: coupon rate is not interest rate!

The above computation is a bit tedious. Can we translate it into an annuity? Yes! We will work in half-year periods. We thus have 10 coupon cash flows, each \$1,500, at a per-period interest rate of 2.47%. So, according to our formula, the coupon payments are worth

Using the annuity to make this faster.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV} &= \mathrm{CF}_{t+1} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\} \\ &= \$1,500 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+2.47\%)]^{10}}{2.47\%} \right\} \\ &\approx \$13,148.81 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.24}$$

In addition, we have our \$100,000 repayment of principal, which is worth

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV} &= \frac{\$100,000}{1+27.63\%} \approx \$78,352.62 \\ \mathsf{PV} &= \frac{\mathrm{CF}}{(1+r_{0,5})} \approx \$78,352.62 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.25}$$

Together, these present values of our bond's cash flows add up to \$91,501.42.

Prevailing Interest Rates and Bond Values: We already know that the value of one fixed future payment and the interest rate move in opposite directions. Given that we now have many payments, what would happen if the economy-wide interest rates were to suddenly move from 5% per annum to 6% per annum? The semi-annual interest rate would now increase from 2.47% to

The effect of a change in interest rates.

$$r = \sqrt[2]{1+6\%} - 1 \approx 2.96\% \quad \Leftarrow \quad (1+2.96\%)\cdot(1+2.96\%) \approx (1+6\%) \quad . \tag{3.26}$$

To get the bond's new present value, reuse our formula

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV} &= \mathrm{CF}_{t+1} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_T}{1+r_{0,T}} \\ &= \$1,500 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+2.96\%)]^{10}}{2.96\%} \right\} + \frac{\$100,000}{(1+2.96\%)^{10}} \\ &\approx \$12,823.89 + \$74,725.82 \approx \$87,549.70 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.27}$$

So, our bond would have lost \$3,951.72, or 4.3% of our original investment—which is the same inverse relation between bond values and prevailing economy-wide interest rates that we first saw on Page 24.

Interest Rates vs. Coupon Rates.

Important Repeat of Quotes vs. Returns: Never confuse a bond designation with the interest it pays. The "3%-coupon bond" is just a designation for the bond's payout pattern. Our bond will not give you coupon payments equal to 1.5% of your \$91,502.42 investment (which would be \$1,372.52). The prevailing interest rate (cost of capital) has nothing to do with the quoted interest rate on the coupon bond. We could just as well determine the value of a 0%-coupon bond, or a 10% coupon bond, given our prevailing 5% economy-wide interest rate. Having said all this, in the real world, many corporations choose coupon rates similar to the prevailing interest rate, so that at the moment of inception, the bond will be trading at neither premium nor discount. So, at least for this one brief at-issue instant, the coupon rate and the economy-wide interest rate may actually be fairly close. However, soon after issuance, market interest rates will move around, while the bond's payments remain fixed, as designated by the bond's coupon name.

Solve Now!

Q 3.18 *If you can recall it, write down the annuity formula.*

Q 3.19 *What is the PV of a 360 month annuity paying \$5 per month, beginning at \$5 next month, if the monthly interest rate is a constant 0.5%/month (6.2%/year)?*

Q 3.20 *Mortgages are not much different from rental agreements. For example, what would your rate of return be if you rented your \$500,000 warehouse for 10 years at a monthly lease payment of \$5,000? If you can earn 5% elsewhere, would you rent out your warehouse?*

Q 3.21 *What is the monthly payment on a 15-year mortgage for every \$1,000 of mortgage at an effective interest rate of 6.168% per year (here, 0.5% per month)?*

Q 3.22 *Solve Fibonacci's annuity problem from Page 23: Compare the PV of a stream of quarterly cash flows of 75 bezants vs. the PV of a stream of annual cash flows of 300 bezants. Payments are always at period-end. The interest rate is 2 bezants per month. What is the relative value of the two streams? Compute the difference for a 1-year investment first.*

Q 3.23 *In L'Arithmetique, written in 1558, Jean Trenchant posed the following question: "In the year 1555, King Henry, to conduct the war, took money from bankers at the rate of 4% per fair [quarter]. That is better terms for them than 16% per year. In this same year before the fair of Toussaints, he received by the hands of certain bankers the sum of 3,945,941 ecus and more, which they called 'Le Grand Party' on the condition that he will pay interest at 5% per fair for 41 fairs after which he will be finished. Which of these conditions is better for the bankers?" Translated, the question is whether a perpetuity at 4% per quarter is better or worse than a 41-month annuity at 5%.*

Q 3.24 *Assume that a 3% level-coupon bond has not just 5 years with 10 payments, but 20 years with 40 payments. Also, assume that the interest rate is not 5% per annum, but 10.25% per annum. What are the bond payment patterns and the bond's value?*

Q 3.25 *Check that the rates of return in the coupon bond valuation example on Page 45 are correct.*

Q 3.26 *In many a defined contribution pension plan, the employer provides a fixed percentage contribution to the employee's retirement. Let us assume that you must contribute \$4,000 per annum beginning next year, growing annually with the inflation rate of 2%/year. What is this individual's pension cost to you of hiring a 25-year old, who will stay with the company for 35 years? Assume a discount rate of 8% per year. NOTE: You need the growing annuity formula 3.28, which you should look up.*

file=perpetuities.tex: RP

3·3.C. The Special Cash Flow Streams Summarized

The growing annuity formula — use is rare.

I am not a fan of memorization, but you must remember the growing perpetuity formula. (It would likely be useful if you could also remember the annuity formula.) These formulas are used in many different contexts. There is also a **growing annuity** formula, which nobody remembers, but which you should know to look up if you need it. It is

$$\mathsf{PV}_t \;=\; \frac{\mathrm{CF}_{t+1}}{r-g}\cdot\left[1-\frac{(1+g)^T}{(1+r)^T}\right] \qquad . \tag{3.28}$$

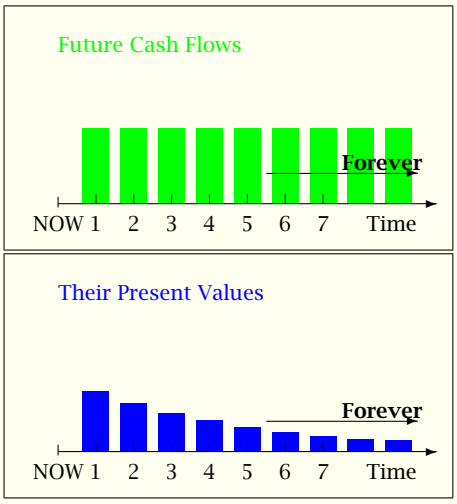
It is sometimes used in the context of pension cash flows, which tend to grow for a fixed number of time periods and then stop. However, even then it is not a necessary device. It is often more convenient and flexible to just work with the cash flows themselves within a spreadsheet.

A summary

Figure 3.1 summarizes the four special cash flow formulas. The present value of a growing perpetuity must decline ($r > g$), but if $g > 0$ declines at a rate that is slower than that of the simple perpetuity. The annuity stops after a fixed number of periods, here $T = 7$, which truncates both the cash flow stream and its present values.

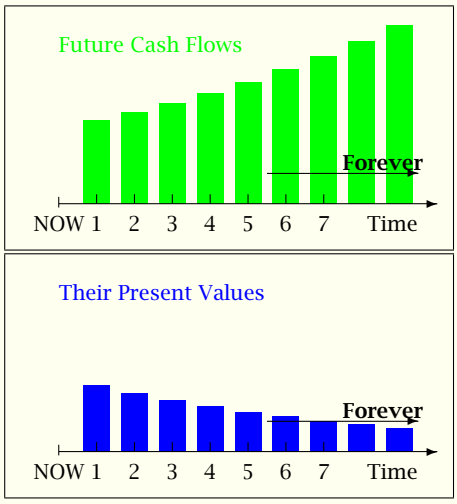
Figure 3.1. The Four Payoff Streams and Their Present Values

Simple Perpetuity



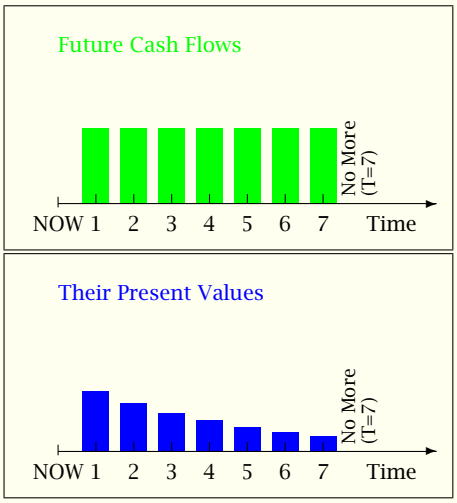
Formula: $\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\mathrm{CF}}{r}$

Growing Perpetuity



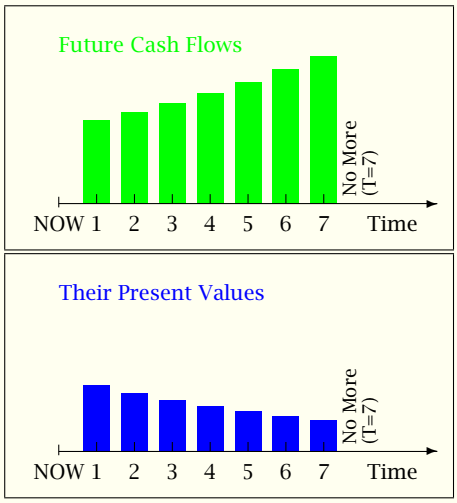
Formula: $\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{r-g}$

Simple Annuity ($T = 7$)



Formula: $\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\mathrm{CF}}{r} \cdot \left[1 - \left(\frac{1}{1+r}\right)^T\right]$

Growing Annuity ($T = 7$)



Formula: $\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{r-g} \cdot \left[1 - \left(\frac{1+g}{1+r}\right)^T\right]$

file=perpetuities.tex: RP

3·4. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- In a perfect market, consumption and investment decisions can be made independently. You should always take the highest NPV projects, and use the capital markets to shift cash into periods in which you want it.
- In a perfect market, firms are worth the present value of their assets. Whether they grow fast or slow is irrelevant except to the extent that this determines their PV. Indeed, firms can shift the time patterns of cash flows and dividends without changing the underlying firm value.
- In a perfect market, the gains from sudden surprises accrue to old owners, not new capital provides, because old owners have no reason to want to share the spoils.

- The PV of a growing perpetuity—with constant-growth (g) cash flows CF beginning next year and constant per-period interest rate r—is

$$\mathsf{PV}_t = \frac{\mathrm{CF}_{t+1}}{r-g} \quad . \tag{3.30}$$

- The application of the growing perpetuity formula to stocks is called the Gordon dividend growth model.
- The PV of an annuity—T periods of constant CF cash flows (beginning next year) and constant per-period interest rate r—is

$$\mathsf{PV}_t = \mathrm{CF}_{t+1} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\} \quad . \tag{3.31}$$

- Fixed-rate mortgages are annuities, and therefore can be valued with the annuity formula.

Solutions and Exercises

1. The fact that you can use capital markets to shift money forth and back without costs.
2. Take the project. If you invest \$400, the project will give $\$400 \cdot (1 + 15\%) = \$460$ next period. The capital markets will value the project at \$418.18. Sell it at this amount. Thereby, you will end up being able to consume $\$500 - \$400 + \$418.18 = \$518.18$.
3. For easier naming, we call year 0 to be 2000. The firm's present value in 2000 is $\$536/1.10^3 \approx \$402.71$—but we already knew this. If you purchase this company, its value in 2001 depends on a cash flow stream that is \$0 in 2001, \$0 in year 2002 and \$536 in year 2003. So, it will be worth $\$536/1.10^2 \approx \$442.98$ in 2001. In 2002, your firm will be worth $\$536/1.10 = \$487.27$. Finally, in 2003, it will be worth \$536. Each year, you expect to earn 10%, which you can compute from the four firm values.
4. Again, we call year 0 2000. The firm's present value in 2000 is based on dividends of \$100, \$150, and \$250 in the next three years. So, the firm value in 2000 is the \$402.71 in Formula 3.5. The firm value in 2001 is in Formula 3.7, but you immediately receive \$100 in cash, so the firm is worth only $\$442.98 - \$100 = \$342.98$. As an investor, you would have earned a rate of return of $\$442.98/\$402.71 - 1 = 10\%$. The firm value in 2002 is
$$\mathsf{PV}_{t=2}(G) = \frac{\$250}{(1+10\%)} \approx \$227.27 \quad . \tag{3.32}$$
but you will also receive \$150 in cash, for a total firm-related wealth of \$377.27. In addition, you will have the \$100 from 2001, which would have grown to \$110—for a total wealth of \$487.27. Thus, starting with wealth of \$442.98 and ending up with wealth of \$487.27, you would have earned a rate of return of $\$487.27/\$442.98 - 1 = 10\%$. A similar computation shows that you will earn 10% from 2002 (\$487.27) to 2003 (\$536.00).
5. It makes no difference!
6. F's cash flows are \$500, \$600, and \$720. Its value is therefore \$1,361.88. Firm S's cash flows are \$500, \$400, and \$320. Its value is therefore \$947.65. Both firms offer your investment dollar a 15% rate of return.
7. CF_1/r. The first cash flow occurs next period, not this period.
8. $\mathsf{PV} = \mathrm{CF}_1/r = \$5/0.005 = \$1,000$.
9. $\mathsf{PV} = \mathrm{CF}_1/r = \$15/.01 = \$1,500$.
10. You would prefer the perpetuity if the interest rate/cost of capital was less than 5%.
11. $\mathsf{PV} = \$2,000/4\% = \$50,000$.
12. $\mathrm{CF}_1/(r-g)$. The first cash flow occurs next period, not this period.
13. You get \$5 today, and next month you will receive a payment of $(1+\pi)\cdot\mathrm{CF} = 1.001 \cdot \$5 = \$5.005$. The growing perpetuity is worth $\mathsf{PV} = \mathrm{CF}_1/(r-g) = \$5.005/(0.5\% - 0.1\%) = \$1,251.25$. So, the total value is \$1,256.25.
14. \$12.5 million.
15. The immediate dividend would be worth \$1.5 million. In addition, you now have a growing perpetuity that starts with a payment of \$1.530 million. Therefore, the PV would be $\$1.500 + \$1.530/12\% = \$14.250 million$.
16. First work out what the value would be if you stood at one month. The interest rate is $(1+9\%)^{1/12} - 1 = 0.7207\%$ per month, and 2.1778% per quarter. Thus, in one month, you will have \$5.00 plus $\$5.025/(2.1778\% - 0.5\%) \approx \$299.50$. In addition, you get the \$5 for a total of \$304.50. Because this is your value in one month, discount \$304.50 at an 0.7207% interest rate to \$302.32 today.
17. $g = r - E/P = 12\% - \$5/\$100 = 7\%$ per annum.
18. Remembering this formula is not as important as remembering the other growing perpetuity formula. The annuity formula is $\mathrm{CF}_1 \cdot \left\{\frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r}\right\}$.
19. $$\mathrm{CF}_1 \cdot \left\{\frac{1-[1/(1+r)]^T}{r}\right\} = \$5 \cdot \left\{\frac{1-[1/(1+0.005)]^{360}}{0.005}\right\}$$
$$= \$5 \cdot \left\{\frac{1-0.166}{0.005}\right\} \approx \$833.96$$
20. You need to solve
$$\$500,000 = \frac{\$5,000}{r}\left(1 - 1/(1+r)^{120}\right) \quad . \tag{3.33}$$
The solution is $r \approx 0.3314\%$ per month, or 3.8% per annum. This is the implied rate of return if you purchase the warehouse and then rent it out. You would be better off earning 5% elsewhere.

file=perpetuities.tex: RP

21. For \$1,000 of mortgage, solve for CF_1 in

$$PV = CF_1 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1 - [1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\}$$

$$\$1,000 = CF_1 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1 - [1/(1+0.005)]^{15 \cdot 12 = 180}}{0.005} \right\}$$

$$\$1,000 = CF_1 \cdot 118.504 \iff CF_1 \approx \$8.44$$

In other words, for every \$1,000 of loan, you have to pay \$8.44 per month. For other loan amounts, just rescale the amounts.

22. For 1 year, the 300 bezants are worth $300/1.02^{12} = 236.55$ bezants today. The quarterly interest rate is $1.02^3 - 1 = 6.12\%$. Therefore, the 4-"quartity" is worth $75/.0612 \cdot [1 - 1/1.0612^4] = 300/1.0612^1 + 300/1.0612^2 + 300/1.0612^3 + 300/1.0612^4 = 259.17$ bezants. The soldier would have lost 22.62 bezants, which is 8.7% of what he was promised. (The same 8.7% loss applies to longer periods.)

23. For each ecu (e), the perpetuity is worth $1e/0.04 = 25e$. The annuity is worth $1e/0.05 \cdot (1 - 1/1.05^{41}) = 17.29e$. Therefore, the perpetuity is better.

24. The interest rate is 5% per half-year. Be my guest if you want to add 40 terms. I prefer the annuity method. The coupons are worth

$$\begin{aligned} PV(\text{Coupons}) &= CF_{t+1} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1 - [1/(1+r)]^T}{r} \right\} \\ &= \$1,500 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1 - [1/(1+0.05)]^{40}}{0.05} \right\} \\ &= \$1,500 \cdot \left\{ \frac{1 - [1/(1+0.05)]^{40}}{0.05} \right\} \\ &\approx \$25,739 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{3.34}$$

The final payment is worth

$$PV(\text{Principal Repayment}) = \frac{\$100,000}{(1+0.05)^{40}} \approx \$14,205 \quad . \tag{3.35}$$

Therefore, the bond is worth about \$39,944 today.

25. For six months, $(1+2.47\%)^2 - 1 = 5\%$. Now, define six months to be one period. Then, for t 6-month periods, you can simply compute an interest rate of $(1+2.47\%)^t - 1$. For example, the 30 months interest rate is $(1+2.47\%)^5 - 1 = 12.97\%$.

26.

$$\$4,000/(0.08 - 0.02) \cdot \left[1 - \frac{(1+0.02)^{35}}{(1+0.08)^{35}} \right] \approx \$57,649 \quad . \tag{3.36}$$

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=perpetuities.tex: LP

A. Advanced Appendix: Proofs of Perpetuity and Annuity Formulas

A Perpetuity The formula is

$$\frac{\text{CF}}{1+r} + \frac{\text{CF}}{(1+r)^2} + \cdots + \frac{\text{CF}}{(1+r)^t} + \cdots = \frac{\text{CF}}{r} \ . \tag{3.37}$$

We want to show that this is a true statement. Divide by CF,

$$\frac{1}{1+r} + \frac{1}{(1+r)^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(1+r)^t} + \cdots = \frac{1}{r} \ . \tag{3.38}$$

Multiply (3.38) by $(1+r)$

$$1 + \frac{1}{(1+r)} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(1+r)^{t-1}} + \cdots = \frac{(1+r)}{r} \ . \tag{3.39}$$

Subtract (3.39) from (3.38),

$$1 = \frac{(1+r)}{r} - \frac{1}{r} \tag{3.40}$$

which simplifies to be a true statement.

A Growing Perpetuity We know from the simple perpetuity formula that

$$\sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{CF}}{(1+r)^t} = \frac{\text{CF}}{r} \ \Leftrightarrow \ \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{\text{CF}}{f^t} = \frac{\text{CF}}{f-1} \ . \tag{3.41}$$

Return to the definition of a growing perpetuity, and pull out one $(1+g)$ factor from its cash flows,

$$\sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \frac{C\cdot(1+g)^{t-1}}{(1+r)^t} = \left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\frac{C\cdot(1+g)^t}{(1+r)^t} = \left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\frac{\text{CF}}{\left[\frac{1+r}{1+g}\right]^t} \ . \tag{3.42}$$

Let $\left[\frac{1+r}{1+g}\right]$ be f, and use the first formula. Then

$$\left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\left\{\sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\frac{\text{CF}}{\left[\frac{1+r}{1+g}\right]^t}\right\} = \left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\left\{\frac{\text{CF}}{\left[\frac{1+r}{1+g}\right]-1}\right\} \ , \tag{3.43}$$

and simplify this,

$$= \left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\left\{\frac{\text{CF}}{\left[\frac{(1+r)-(1+g)}{1+g}\right]}\right\} = \left(\frac{1}{1+g}\right)\cdot\left\{\frac{C\cdot(1+g)}{[r-g]}\right\} = \frac{\text{CF}}{r-g} \ . \tag{3.44}$$

An Annuity Consider one perpetuity that pays \$10 forever, beginning next year. Consider another perpetuity that begins in 5 years and also pays \$10, beginning in year 6, forever. If you purchase the first annuity and sell the second annuity, you will receive \$10 each year for five years, and \$0 in every year thereafter.

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	⋯
Perpetuity 1		+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	⋯
equivalent to	+\$10/r									
Perpetuity 2							-\$10	-\$10	-\$10	⋯
equivalent to						-\$10/r				
Net Pattern		+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10	+\$10				
equivalent to	+\$10/r					-\$10/r				
discount factor		$\frac{1}{(1+r)^1}$	$\frac{1}{(1+r)^2}$	$\frac{1}{(1+r)^3}$	$\frac{1}{(1+r)^4}$	$\frac{1}{(1+r)^5}$				

This shows that \$10, beginning next year and ending in year 5 should be worth

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$10}{r} - \frac{1}{(1+r)^5}\cdot\frac{\$10}{r} \\ &= \frac{C}{r} - \frac{1}{(1+r)^5}\cdot\frac{C}{r} = \left(\frac{C}{r}\right)\cdot\left[1-\frac{1}{(1+r)^T}\right] \ , \end{aligned} \tag{3.45}$$

which is just our annuity formula.

CHAPTER 4

INVESTMENT HORIZON, THE YIELD CURVE, AND (TREASURY) BONDS

Bonds and Fixed Income

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:15h)

last major edit: Mar 2004, Nov 2004

We remain in a world of perfect foresight and perfect markets, but we now delve a little deeper to make our world more realistic. In earlier chapters, the interest rate was the same every period—if a 30-year bond offered an interest rate of 5.6% per annum, so did a 1-year bond. But this is usually not the case in the real world. For example, in May 2002, a 30-year U.S. Treasury bond offered an interest rate of 5.6% per year, while a 1-year U.S. Treasury bond offered an interest rate of only 2.3% per year.

The issues that interest rates that depend on the length of time (which we call horizon-dependent) create are important not only for bond traders—who work with time-dependent interest rates every day—but also for companies that are comparing short-term and long-term projects or short-term and long-term financing costs. After all, investors can earn higher rates of return if instead of giving money to your firm's long-term projects, they invest in longer-term Treasury bonds. Thus, if two corporate projects have different horizons, they should not necessarily be discounted at the same cost of capital. In May 2002, building a 30-year power plant probably required a higher cost of capital to entice investors than an otherwise equivalent 1-year factory. Similarly, if your corporation wants to finance projects by borrowing, it must pay a higher rate of return if it borrows long-term.

In this chapter, you will learn how to work with horizon-dependent rates of returns, and you will see *why* rates usually differ. This chapter then takes a digression—it works out a number of issues that are primarily of interest in a bond context. This digression is germane to the corporate context, because almost all corporations need to borrow money. However, the material is self-contained and you can read it after you have finished the rest of the book.

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

4·1. Time-Varying Rates of Return

A second compounding example.

We now switch direction and make the world a bit more realistic—we allow rates of return to differ by horizon. As promised in the previous chapter, all tools you have learned remain applicable. In particular, compounding still works exactly the same way. For example, what is the two-year rate of return if the interest rate is 20% in the first year, and 30% in the second year? (The latter is known as a **reinvestment rate**.) You can determine multi-year rates of return from one-year rates of return using the same compounding formula,

$$\begin{aligned}(1+r_{0,2}) &= (1+r_{0,1}) \cdot (1+r_{1,2}) \\ &= (1+20\%) \cdot (1+30\%) = 1.56\ .\end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

Subtract 1, and the answer is the total two-year rate of return of 56%.

The general formula for compounding over many periods.

So, the compounding formula for obtaining a total rate of return from period i to period j is still the multiplicative "one-plus formula" for each interest rate (subtracting 1 at the end). It now can also help answer questions such as, "If the one-year rate of return is 30% from year 1 to year 2, 40% from year 2 to year 3, and 50% from year 3 to year 4, then what is the rate of return for investing beginning next year for three years?" The answer is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Given} &: r_{1,2}=30\% \quad r_{2,3}=40\% \quad r_{3,4}=50\% \\ (1+r_{1,4}) &= (1+r_{1,2}) \cdot (1+r_{2,3}) \cdot (1+r_{3,4}) \\ &= (1+30\%) \cdot (1+40\%) \cdot (1+50\%) \\ &= (1+173\%)\ .\end{aligned} \tag{4.2}$$

Subtracting 1, you see that the three-year rate of return for an investment that takes money next year (not today!) and returns money in four years, appropriately called $r_{1,4}$, is 173%. For example, if it were midnight of December 31, 2002 right now, each dollar invested on midnight December 31, 2003, would return an additional \$1.73 on midnight December 31, 2006 for a total return of \$2.73.

Solve Now!

Q 4.1 *If the first-year interest rate is 2% and the second year interest is 3%, what is the two-year total interest rate?*

Q 4.2 *Although a promising two-year project had returned 22% in its first year, overall it lost half of its value. What was the project's rate of return after the first year?*

Q 4.3 *From 1991 to 2002, the stock market (specifically, the S&P500) had the following annual rates of return:*

Year	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	*Year*	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$
1991	+0.2631	*1997*	+0.3101
1992	+0.0446	*1998*	+0.2700
1993	+0.0706	*1999*	+0.1953
1994	−0.0154	*2000*	−0.1014
1995	+0.3411	*2001*	−0.1304
1996	+0.2026	*2002*	−0.2337

What was your rate of return over these 12 years? Over the first 6 years and over the second 6 years?

file=yieldcurve.tex: RP

Q 4.4 *A project lost one third of its value the first year, then gained fifty percent of its value, then lost two thirds of its value, and finally doubled in value. What was the overall rate of return?*

4·2. Annualized Rates of Return

Per-Unit Measures are conceptual aids.

Time-varying rates of return create a new complication, that is best explained by an analogy. Is a car traveling 258,720 yards in 93 minutes fast or slow? It is not easy to say, because you are used to thinking in "miles per sixty minutes," not in "yards per ninety-three minutes." It makes sense to translate speeds into miles per hour for the purpose of comparing speeds. You can even do this for sprinters, who cannot run a whole hour. Speeds are just a standard measure of the rate of accumulation of distance per unit of time.

A Per-Unit Standard for Rates of Returns: Annualization.

The same issue applies to rates of return: a rate of return of 58.6% over 8.32 years is not as easy to compare to other rates of return as a rate of return per year. So, most rates of return are quoted as **average annualized rates**. Of course, when you compute such an average annualized rate of return, you do not mean that the investment earned the same annualized rate of return of, say, 5.7% each year—just as the car need not have traveled at 94.8 mph (258,720 yards in 93 minutes) each instant. The average annualized rate of return is just a convenient unit of measurement for the rate at which money accumulates, a "sort-of-average measure of performance."

An Example of Annualizing a Three-Year Total Holding Return.

So, if you were earning a total three-year holding return of 173% over the three year period, what would your average *annualized* rate of return be? The answer is not $173\%/3 \approx 57.7\%$, because if you earned 57.7% per year, you would have ended up with $(1+57.7\%)\cdot(1+57.7\%)\cdot(1+57.7\%)-1 = 287\%$, not 173%. This incorrect answer of 57.7% ignores the *compounded interest on the interest* that you would earn after the first year and second year. Instead, you need to find a single hypothetical rate of return which, if you received it each and every year, would give you a three-year rate of return of 173%.

A Problem of finding a three-year annualized interest rate. Solution: Take the N-th Root of the total return (N is number of years).

Call $r_{\bar{3}}$ this hypothetical annual rate which you would have to earn each year for 3 years in order to end up with a total rate of return of 173%. To find $r_{\bar{3}}$, solve the equation

$$\begin{aligned}(1+r_{\bar{3}})\cdot(1+r_{\bar{3}})\cdot(1+r_{\bar{3}}) &= (1+173\%)\\ (1+r_{\bar{3}})\cdot(1+r_{\bar{3}})\cdot(1+r_{\bar{3}}) &= (1+r_{0,3})\quad ,\end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

or, for short

$$\begin{aligned}(1+r_{\bar{3}})^3 &= (1+173\%)\\ (1+r_{\bar{t}})^t &= (1+r_{0,t})\quad .\end{aligned} \tag{4.4}$$

Here $r_{\bar{3}}$ is an unknown. Earning the same rate ($r_{\bar{3}}$) three years in a row should result in a total holding rate of return ($r_{0,3}$) of 173%. The correct solution for $r_{\bar{3}}$ is obtained by computing the third root of the total holding rate of return (Appendix 2·3 reviews powers, exponents and logarithms):

$$\begin{aligned}(1+r_{\bar{3}}) = (1+173\%)^{(1/3)} &= \sqrt[3]{1+173\%} \approx 1.3976\\ (1+r_{0,t})^{(1/t)} &= \sqrt[t]{1+r_{0,t}} = (1+r_{\bar{t}}).\end{aligned} \tag{4.5}$$

Confirm with your calculator that $r_{\bar{3}} \approx 39.76\%$,

$$(1+39.76\%)\cdot(1+39.76\%)\cdot(1+39.76\%) \approx (1+173\%)\quad . \tag{4.6}$$

In sum, if you invested money at a rate of 39.76% per annum for three years, you would end up with a total three-year rate of return of 173%. As is the case here, for bonds with maturities far from 1-year, the order of magnitude of the number would often be so different that you will intuitively immediately register whether $r_{0,3}$ or $r_{\bar{3}}$ is meant.

IMPORTANT: *The total holding rate of return over N years, called $r_{0,N}$, is translated into an annualized rate of return , called $r_{\overline{N}}$, by taking the N-th root:*

$$(1 + r_{\overline{N}}) = \sqrt[N]{1 + r_{0,N}} = (1 + r_{0,N})^{1/N} \quad . \tag{4.7}$$

Compounding the annualized rate of return over N years yields the total holding period rate of return.

Translating long-term net returns into annualized rates of returns.

The need to compute annualized rates of return often arises in the context of investments. For example, what annualized rate of return would you expect from a \$100 investment today that promises a return of \$240 in 30 years? The first step is computing the total holding rate of return. By Formula 2.2, the total 30-year rate of return is

$$\begin{aligned} r_{0,30} &= \frac{\$240 - \$100}{\$100} = 140\% \\ r_{0,30} &= \frac{CF_{30} - CF_0}{CF_0} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.8}$$

The annualized rate of return is the rate $r_{\overline{30}}$, which, if compounded for 30 years, offers a 140% rate of return,

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + r_{\overline{30}})^{30} &= (1 + 140\%) \\ (1 + r_{\overline{t}})^{t} &= (1 + r_{0,t}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.9}$$

Solve this equation by taking the 30th root,

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + r_{\overline{30}}) &= (1 + 140\%)^{1/30} = \sqrt[30]{1 + 140\%} \approx 1 + 2.96\% \\ (1 + r_{\overline{30}}) &= (1 + r_{0,30})^{1/30} = \sqrt[30]{1 + r_{0,30}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.10}$$

Thus, a return of \$240 in 30 years for \$100 investment is equivalent to about a 3% annualized rate of return.

Compounding ≈ Adding. Annualizing ≈ Averaging.

In the context of rates of return, compounding is similar to adding, while annualizing is similar to averaging. If you earn 1% twice, your compounded rate is 2.01%, similar to the rates themselves added (2%). Your annualized rate of return is 1%, similar to the average rate of return of $2.01\%/2 = 1.005\%$. The difference is the interest on the interest.

Compounding vs. Averaging can lead to surprising results.

Now presume that you have an investment that doubled in value in the first year, and then fell back to its original value. What would its average rate of return be? Doubling from, say, \$100 to \$200 is a rate of return of $+100\%$. Falling back to \$100 is a rate of return of $(\$100 - \$200)/\$200 = -50\%$. Therefore, the average rate of return would be $[+100\% + (-50\%)]/2 = +25\%$. *But you have not made any money!* You started with \$100 and ended up with \$100. If you compound the returns, you get the answer of 0% that you were intuitively expecting:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + 100\%) \cdot (1 - 50\%) &= 1 + 0\% \\ (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) &= (1 + r_{0,2}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.11}$$

Therefore, the annualized rate of return is also 0%. Conversely, an investment that produces $+20\%$ followed by -20% has an average rate of return of 0%, but leaves you with

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + 20\%) \cdot (1 - 20\%) &= (1 - 4\%) \\ (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) &= (1 + r_{0,2}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.12}$$

file=yieldcurve.tex: RP

For every \$100 of original investment, you only retain \$96. The average rate of return of 0% does not reflect this. The compounded and therefore annualized rate of return does:

$$1 + r_{\overline{2}} \;=\; \sqrt{(1 + r_{0,2})} \;=\; \sqrt{1 - 4\%} \;=\; 1 - 2.02\% \quad . \tag{4.13}$$

If you were an investment advisor and quoting your historical performance, would you rather quote your average historical rate of return or your annualized rate of return? (Hint: The industry standard is the average rate of return.)

Make sure to solve the following questions to gain more experience with compounding and annualizing over different time horizons.

Solve Now!

Q 4.5 *Assume that the two-year holding rate of return is 40%. The average rate of return is therefore 20% per year. What is the annualized rate of return? Which is higher?*

Q 4.6 *Is the compounded rate of return higher or lower than the sum of the individual rates of return? Is the annualized rate of return higher or lower than the average of the individual rates of return? Why?*

Q 4.7 *Return to Question 4.3. What was the annualized rate of return on the S&P500 over these twelve years?*

Q 4.8 *The following were the daily prices of an investment:*

2-Jan-01	*\$1,283.27*	*4-Jan-01*	*\$1,333.34*	*8-Jan-01*	*\$1,295.86*
3-Jan-01	*\$1,347.56*	*5-Jan-01*	*\$1,298.35*	*9-Jan-01*	*\$1,300.80*

If returns had accumulated at the same rate over the entire 255 days of 2001, what would a \$100 investment in 2001 have turned into?

Q 4.9 *If the total holding interest rate is 50% for a 5-year investment, what is the annualized rate of return?*

Q 4.10 *If the per-year interest rate is 10% for each of the next 5 years, what is the annualized total 5-year rate of return?*

Q 4.11 *If the annualized 5-year rate of return is 10%, what is the total 5-year holding rate of return?*

Q 4.12 *If the annualized 5-year rate of return is 10%, and if the first year's rate of return is 15%, and if the returns in all other years are equal, what are they?*

Q 4.13 *There is always disagreement about what stocks are good purchases. The typical degree of disagreement is whether a particular stock is likely to offer, say, a 10% (pessimist) or a 20% (optimist) annualized rate of return. For a \$30 stock today, what does the difference in belief between these two opinions mean for the expected stock price from today to tomorrow? (Assume that there are 365 days in the year. Reflect on your answer for a moment, and recognize that a \$30 stock typically moves about ±\$1 on a typical day. This is often called noise.)*

4·3. The Yield Curve

The Yield Curve: annualized interest rate as a function of bond maturity.

Let us now tackle the yield curve, which is also sometimes called the **term structure of interest rates**. The **yield curve** is today's average annualized interest (yield) that investments pay as a function of their time to maturity. If not clarified further, the yield curve usually means investments in **U.S. Treasuries**, although it should more precisely be called the **U.S. Treasuries yield curve**. Bond traders often graph other yield curves, too—such as the yield curve on bonds that were issued by corporations rather than by the government.

4·3.A. An Example: The Yield Curve in May 2002

Table 4.1. The Treasury Yield Curves in mid-2002

Maturity	Apr 30	May 30	May 31
1 Month	1.77%	1.72%	1.72%
3 Month	1.77%	1.74%	1.73%
6 Month	1.91%	1.88%	1.89%
1 Year	2.35%	2.22%	2.26%
2 Year	3.24%	3.15%	3.20%
3 Year	3.83%	3.64%	3.65%
4 Year	n/a	4.05%	4.06%
5 Year	4.53%	4.34%	4.36%
10 Year	5.11%	5.03%	5.04%
20 Year	5.74%	n/a	n/a
30 Year	n/a%	5.60%	5.61%

The data for May 30, 2002, and May 31, 2002 were printed in the Wall Street Journal. The data for April 30, 2002, was obtained from the U.S. Treasury website at www.ustreas.gov. As you can see, the yieldcurve changes every day—though day-to-day changes are usually small.

For illustration, I am pretending that the *Wall Street Journal* yield curve is based on zero bonds (which only have one final payment—these would be called Treasury STRIPS). Although this is actually not perfectly correct (the WSJ curve is based on coupon bonds), the differences are usually very small. This is also why the data on the Treasury website is slightly different—in this example, the maximum difference is for the 10-year bond, where it is 4 basis points.

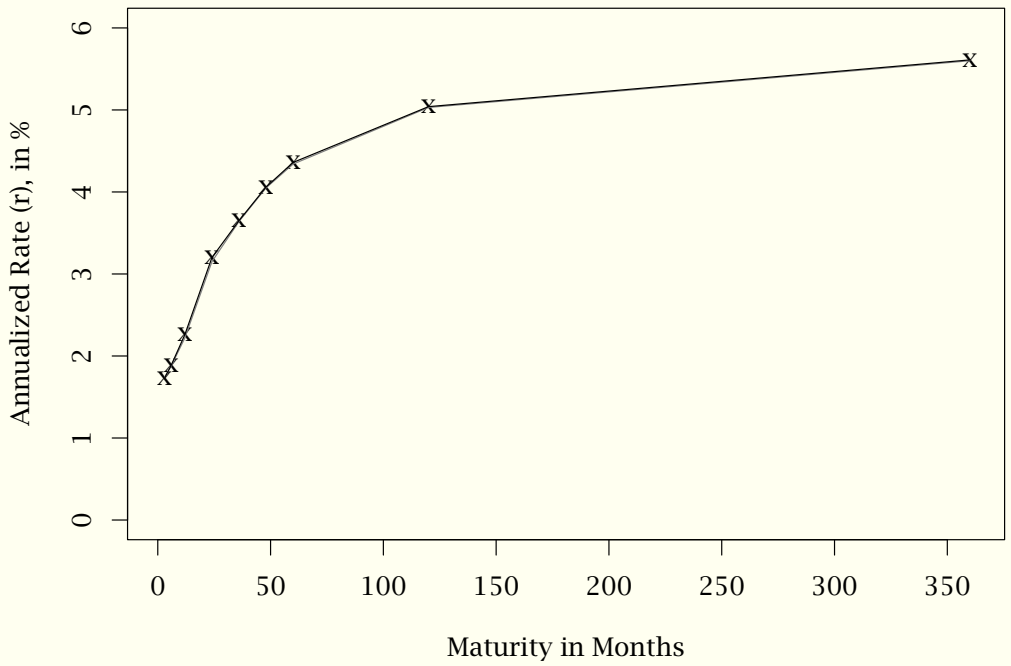
We will analyze the actual yield curves at the end of May 2002.

The table in Table 4.1 shows the actual Treasury yield table on April 30, May 30, and May 31, 2002. Figure 4.1 graphs the data from May 31, 2002. If you had purchased a 3-month bond at the end of the day on May 30, 2002, your annualized interest rate would have been 1.74%. The following day, a 3-month bond had a yield that was one basis point lower. (In real life, the 90-day bond can also switch identity, because as bonds age, another bond may be closer to 90-days than yesterday's 90-day bond.) If you had purchased a 30-year bond at the end of the day on May 30, 2002, you would have received an annualized interest rate of 5.60% per year, which is one basis point less than a 30-year bond would have been the following day.

You can interpolate annualized interest rates on the yield curve.

Sometimes, it is necessary to determine an interest rate for a bond that is not listed. This is usually done by interpolation. For example, if the 90-day Treasury note had a known interest rate of 1.73% and the 93-day Treasury note had a known interest rate of 1.76%, a good interest rate for an untraded 91-day Treasury note might be 1.74%.

Figure 4.1. The Treasury Yield Curves on May 31, 2002



This is the yieldcurve for May 31, 2002. The data is in the previous table.

Table 4.2. Relation Between Holding Returns, Annualized Returns, and Year-by-Year Returns, By Formula and on May 31, 2002

	Rates of Return		
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1 + 2.26\%)$	$= (1 + 2.26\%)^1$	$= (1 + 2.26\%)$
	$(1 + r_{0,1})$	$= (1 + r_{\overline{1}})^1$	$= (1 + r_{0,1})$
2 Year	$(1 + 6.50\%)$	$= (1 + 3.20\%)^2$	$= (1 + 2.26\%) \cdot (1 + 4.15\%)$
	$(1 + r_{0,2})$	$= (1 + r_{\overline{2}})^2$	$= (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2})$
3 Year	$(1 + 11.35\%)$	$= (1 + 3.65\%)^3$	$= (1 + 2.26\%) \cdot (1 + 4.15\%) \cdot (1 + 4.56\%)$
	$(1 + r_{0,3})$	$= (1 + r_{\overline{3}})^3$	$= (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) \cdot (1 + r_{2,3})$

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

The annualized interest rate was higher for longer time periods.

As notation for the annualized horizon-dependent interest rates, return to our earlier method, calling the two-year annualized interest rate $r_{\overline{2}}$, the three-year annualized interest rate $r_{\overline{3}}$, and so on. When you look at this particular yield curve, it is very clear how important it can be to put a subscript on the annualized yields: the annualized yield varied drastically with maturity. Just to summarize—we now have to be able to recognize a whole set of different interest rates: holding rates of returns, such as $r_{0,3}$; annualized rates of return, such as $r_{\overline{3}}$; and individual 1-year annual interest rates that do not begin today, called forward rates, such as $r_{1,2}$. Table 4.2 relates the different types of returns, so you remember which is which. (Section 4·7.A shows you how you can construct the "individually compounded" column of this table from the "annualized" column that is the yield curve.) Aside, please do not forget that all the interest rates in the yield curve themselves are just computed from the prevailing prices on corresponding Treasury securities. It is much more intuitive to express the yield curve in this annualized implied interest rate fashion than to give you all the Treasury security prices and let you do the calculations—but the two are really one and the same.

4·3.B. Compounding With The Yield Curve

Computing the holding period rate of return for 2-Year bonds.

On May 30, 2002, how much money did an investment of \$500,000 into U.S. 2-Year notes (i.e., a loan to the U.S. government of \$500,000) promise to return in two years? Refer to Table 4.1 on Page 58. Because the yield curve prints annualized rates of return, the total two-year holding rate of return (as in Formula 4.4) is the twice compounded annualized rate of return,

$$\begin{aligned} r_{0,2} &= (1+3.15\%)\cdot(1+3.15\%)-1 \approx 6.4\% \\ &= (1+r_{\overline{2}})\cdot(1+r_{\overline{2}})-1\ , \end{aligned} \tag{4.14}$$

so the \$500,000 would turn into

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{CF}_2 &\approx (1+6.4\%)\cdot \$500,000 \approx \$531,996 \\ &= (1+r_{0,2})\cdot \mathrm{CF}_0\ . \end{aligned} \tag{4.15}$$

(In the real world, you might have to pay a commission to arrange this transaction, so you would end up with a little less.)

Computing the holding period rate of return for 30-Year bonds.

What if you invested \$500,000 into 30-Year Treasuries? The 30-Year total rate of return would be

$$\begin{aligned} r_{0,30} &= (1+r_{\overline{30}})^{30}-1 \\ &= (1+5.60\%)^{30}-1 \approx 5.1276-1 \approx 412.76\%\ . \end{aligned} \tag{4.16}$$

Thus, your investment of $\mathrm{CF}_0 = \$500,000$ will turn into cash of $\mathrm{CF}_{30} \approx \$2,563,820$ in 30 years.

ANECDOTE: Life Expectancy and Credit
Your life expectancy may be 80 years, but 30-year bonds existed even in an era when life expectancy was only 25 years—at the time of Hammurabi, around 1700 B.C.E. (**Hammurabi** established the Kingdom of Babylon, and is famous for the Hammurabi Code, the first known legal system.) Moreover, four thousand years ago, Mesopotamians already solved interesting financial problems. A cuneiform clay tablet contains the oldest known interest rate problem for prospective students of the financial arts. The student must figure out how long it takes for 1 mina of silver, growing at 20% interest per year, to reach 64 minae. Because the interest compounds in an odd way (20% of the principal is accumulated until the interest is equal to the principal, and then it is added back to the principal), the answer to this problem is 30 years, rather than 22.81 years. This is not an easy problem to solve—and it even requires knowledge of logarithms!

4·3.C. Yield Curve Shapes

A flat yield curve means that the annualized interest rate is the same regardless of horizon.

What would a flat yield curve mean? It would mean that the interest rate was the same over any time period. This scenario was the subject of the previous chapter. For example, at 5% per annum and borrowing money for two years, the total (non-annualized) interest rate that would have to be paid would be $(1+5\%)\cdot(1+5\%)-1=10.25\%$. More generally, the interest rate over any period can then be quickly computed as

$$(1+r_{0,t}) \;=\; (1+r_{0,1})^t \quad . \tag{4.17}$$

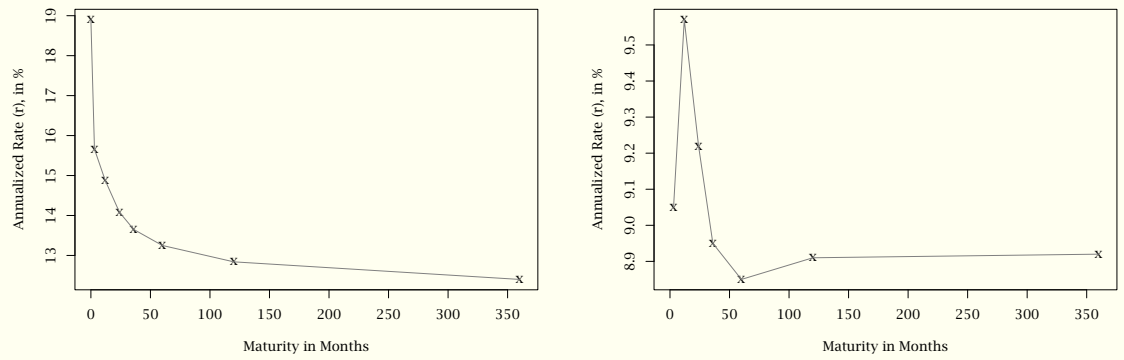
Yield Curves are often upward sloping.

The yield curve is usually upward sloping. This means that longer-term interest rates are higher than shorter-term interest rates. The yield curve at the end of May 2002 was fairly steep—though not the steepest ever. Since 1934, the steepest yield curve (the difference between the long-term and the short-term Treasury rate) occurred in October 1992, when the long-term interest rate was 7.3 percent and the short-term interest rate was 2.9 percent—just as the economy pulled out of the recession of 1991. Another oddity occurred in January 1940, when the long-term interest rate was 2.3 percent—but the short-term interest rate was practically zero.

They can also be downward-sloping or even be humped!

However, the yield curve is not always upward-sloping. If short-term rates are higher than long-term rates, the yield curve is said to be downward sloping (or **inverted**). Figure 4.2 shows that this was the case in December 1980 during a brief period of rapidly declining inflation rates (and expansion in between two recessions). In fact, it is even possible that medium-term rates are higher than both long-term and short-term rates—the yield curve is then called humped. Inverted or humped yield curves are relatively rare.

Figure 4.2. History: One Inverted and One Humped Yield Curve



December 1980 June 1979

SIDE NOTE: Economists have long wondered what they can learn from the shape of the yieldcurve. It appears that it is a useful—though unreliable and noisy—signal of where the economy is heading. Steep yield curves often signal emergence from a recession. Inverted yield curves often signal an impending recession.

Another interesting question is what drives the demand and supply for credit, which is ultimately the determinant of these interest rates. Economic research has shown that the Federal Reserve Bank has good influence on the short end of the Treasury curve—by expanding and contracting the supply of money and short-term loans in the economy—but not much influence on the long end of the Treasury curve. We will revisit this question later in this chapter, and again in Chapter 6 in the context of inflation.

If you want to undertake your own research, you can find historical data at the St. Louis Federal Reserve Bank, which maintains a database of historical interest rates at http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred. There are also the Treasury Management Pages at http://www.tmpages.com/. Or you can look at SmartMoney.com for historical yield curves. PiperJaffray.com has the current yield curve—as do many other financial sites and newspapers. bonds.yahoo.com/rates.html provides not only the Treasury yield curve, but also yield curves for other bonds that will be discussed in the next section.

If you want to learn more about how to work with yield curves, don't forget about the optional "forward interest rates" section below.

Solve Now!

Q 4.14 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, what does an investment of \$1 in 30-year bonds yield in 30 years?*

Q 4.15 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, what does an investment of \$1 in 1-year bonds yield in 1 year?*

4·4. Present Values With Time-Varying Interest Rates

The formula still looks very similar.

In the previous chapter, you learned that present values allow you to express many future cash flows in the same unit: cash today. With time-varying interest rates, nothing really changes. The only novelty is that you can express the individual holding returns (e.g., $1 + r_{0,2}$) in terms of the individual period interest rates (e.g., $(1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2})$). So, the **Net Present Value** Formula can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{NPV} &= \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_0) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_2) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_3) + \cdots \\ &= \mathrm{CF}_0 + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{1+r_{0,2}} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_3}{1+r_{0,3}} + \cdots \\ &= \mathrm{CF}_0 + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_2}{(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+r_{1,2})} \\ &\quad + \frac{\mathrm{CF}_3}{(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+r_{1,2})\cdot(1+r_{2,3})} + \cdots . \end{aligned} \tag{4.18}$$

You must understand that the cost of capital is time-dependent. Just because a longer-term project offers a higher expected rate of return does not necessarily mean that it has a higher NPV. Similarly, just because shorter-term borrowing allows firms to pay a lower expected rate of return does not necessarily mean that this creates value. This is also why the U.S. Treasury is not relying exclusively on short-term borrowing. A higher expected rate of return required for longer-term payments is (usually) a fact of life.

Important: *The appropriate cost of capital depends on how long-term the project is. The economy-wide yield curve is typically upward-sloping. Similarly, short-term corporate projects usually have lower costs of capital than long-term projects. And, similarly, corporations usually face lower costs of capital (expected rates of return offered to creditors) if they borrow short-term rather than long-term.*

Present Values are alike and thus can be added, subtracted, compared, etc.

Let us return to our earlier example on Page 26, where you had a \$10 payment in year 1 and an \$8 payment in year 2, but assume that the 5-year annualized interest rate is 6% per annum and therefore higher than the 1-year interest rate of 5%. In this case,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}(\text{\$10 in one year}) &= \frac{\$10}{1+5\%} \approx \$9.52 \\ \mathsf{PV}(\text{\$8 in five years}) &= \frac{\$8}{(1+6\%)^5} \approx \$5.98 . \end{aligned} \tag{4.19}$$

It follows that the project's total value *today* (time 0) would now be \$15.50. If the project still costs \$12, its net present value is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= -\$12 + \frac{\$10}{1+5\%} + \frac{\$8}{(1+6\%)^5} \approx \$3.50 \\ \text{NPV} &= \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\text{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\text{CF}_5}{1+r_{0,5}} = \text{NPV} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.20}$$

Here is a typical NPV Example.

You can also rework the project from Table 2.5 on Page 28, but you can now use a hypothetical current term structure of interest that is upward sloping. It requires an interest rate of 5% over 1 year, and 0.5% annualized interest more for every year, so it is 7% annualized for the 5-year cash flow. Table 4.3 works out the value of your project. The valuation method works the same way as it did earlier—you only have to use different interest rates now.

Table 4.3. Hypothetical Project Cash Flow Table

Time	Project Cash Flow	Interest Rate In Year	Interest Rate Compounded	Discount Factor	Present Value
t	CF_t	$r_{t-1,t}$	$r_{0,t}$	$\frac{1}{1+r_{0,t}}$	$\text{PV}(\text{CF}_t)$
Today	-\$900	any	0.0%	1.000	-\$900.00
Year +1	+\$200	5.0%	5.0%	0.952	\$190.48
Year +2	+\$200	5.5%	11.3%	0.898	\$179.69
Year +3	+\$400	6.0%	19.1%	0.840	\$335.85
Year +4	+\$400	6.5%	28.6%	0.778	\$311.04
Year +5	-\$100	7.0%	40.2%	0.713	-\$71.33
			Net Present Value (Sum):		\$45.73

Annualized interest rates apply only within this one year. They are perfectly known today.

4·4.A. Valuing A Coupon Bond With A Particular Yield Curve

Let us now work a more realistic example—determining the price of a coupon bond, for which payments are 100% guaranteed, just like payments on Treasury bonds themselves. We will recycle the 3% coupon bond example from Section 3·3.B. Of course, if you wanted to value a corporate project with risky cash flows instead of a bond, it might be more difficult to determine the appropriate inputs (cash flows and discount rates), but the valuation method itself would proceed in exactly the same way. After all, a bond is just like any other corporate project—an upfront investment followed by subsequent inflows.

Step 1: Write down the project's payment pattern.

First, recall the payment pattern of your bond, which comes from the definition of what a 3%-level semi-annual coupon bond is.

Year	Due Date	Bond Payment	Year	Due Date	Bond Payment
0.5	Nov 2002	\$1,500	3.0	May 2005	\$1,500
1.0	May 2003	\$1,500	3.5	Nov 2005	\$1,500
1.5	Nov 2003	\$1,500	4.0	May 2006	\$1,500
2.0	May 2004	\$1,500	4.5	Nov 2006	\$1,500
2.5	Nov 2004	\$1,500	5.0	May 2007	\$101,500

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

Step 2: find the appropriate costs of capital.

Second, find the appropriate rates of return to use for discounting. Because your bond is assumed default-free, it is just as good as a government bond (in our perfect world). Thus, you can use the government yield curve to extract appropriate discount factors. Assume it is May 30, 2002, so you can use the yield curve from Table 4.1 on Page 58.

Maturity	Yield	Maturity	Yield	Maturity	Yield
3 Month	1.74%	2 Year	3.15%	5 Year	4.34%
6 Month	1.88%	3 Year	3.64%	10 Year	5.03%
1 Year	2.22%	4 Year	4.05%	30 Year	5.60%

To use the PV formula to value your bond, you need to find the appropriate discount factors. Begin by computing the holding rates of return from the yield curve, using the methods from Section 4·1. For example, the 6-month and 2-year holding rates of return are computed as

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + r_{0,0.5} &= (1 + 1.88\%)^{0.5} \approx (1 + 0.94\%) \\ 1 + r_{0,2} &= (1 + 3.15\%)^{2} \approx (1 + 6.40\%) \\ 1 + r_{0,t} &= (1 + r_{\tilde{t}})^{t} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.21}$$

The table of holding rates of return that corresponds to the yield curve is

Maturity	Yield	Maturity	Yield	Maturity	Yield
3 Month	not needed	2 Year	6.40%	5 Year	23.67%
6 Month	0.94%	3 Year	11.32%	10 Year	not needed
1 Year	2.22%	4 Year	17.21%	30 Year	not needed

But how do you obtain a holding rate of return for the coupon that will be paid in 18 months? You do not know the annualized 18-month interest rate, but you do know that the 1-year annualized interest rate is 2.22% and the 2-year annualized interest rate is 3.15%. So it is reasonable to guess that the 1.5 year annualized interest is roughly the average interest rate of the 1-year and 2-year annualized interest rates—about 2.7%. Therefore, you would estimate the 1.5 year holding rate of return to be

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + r_{0,1.5} &\approx (1 + 2.7\%)^{1.5} \approx (1 + 4.08\%) \\ 1 + r_{0,t} &= (1 + r_{\tilde{t}})^{t} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.22}$$

You have to do similar interpolations for the coupon payments in 2.5, 3.5 and 4.5 years. Collect this information—our payments, annualized interest rates, and equivalent holding interest rates—into one table:

Year	Due Date	Bond Payment	Annual. Interest	Holding Interest
0.5	Nov 2002	$1,500	1.88%	0.94%
1.0	May 2003	$1,500	2.22%	2.22%
1.5	Nov 2003	$1,500	≈2.7%	4.08%
2.0	May 2004	$1,500	3.15%	6.40%
2.5	Nov 2004	$1,500	≈3.4%	8.72%
3.0	May 2005	$1,500	3.64%	11.32%
3.5	Nov 2005	$1,500	≈3.8%	13.94%
4.0	May 2006	$1,500	4.05%	17.21%
4.5	Nov 2006	$1,500	≈4.2%	20.34%
5.0	May 2007	$101,500	4.34%	23.67%

Step 3: Compute the discount factor is $1/(1 + r_{0,t})$.

Third, compute the discount factors, which are just $1/(1 + r_{0,t})$, and multiply each future payment by its discount factor. This is the present value (PV) of each bond payment, and the overall PV of your bond.

Year	Due Date	Bond Payment	Annual. Interest	Holding Interest	Discount Factor	Present Value
0.5	Nov 2002	$1,500	1.88%	0.94%	0.991	$1,486.03
1.0	May 2003	$1,500	2.22%	2.22%	0.978	$1,467.42
1.5	Nov 2003	$1,500	≈2.7%	4.08%	0.961	$1,441.20
2.0	May 2004	$1,500	3.15%	6.40%	0.940	$1,409.77
2.5	Nov 2004	$1,500	≈3.4%	8.72%	0.920	$1,379.69
3.0	May 2005	$1,500	3.64%	11.32%	0.898	$1,347.47
3.5	Nov 2005	$1,500	≈3.8%	13.94%	0.878	$1,316.48
4.0	May 2006	$1,500	4.05%	17.21%	0.853	$1,279.75
4.5	Nov 2006	$1,500	≈4.2%	20.34%	0.831	$1,246.47
5.0	May 2007	$101,500	4.34%	23.67%	0.809	$82,073.26
					Sum	$94,447.55

Therefore, you would expect this 3% semi-annual level-coupon bond to be trading for $94,447.55 today—because this is lower than the bond's principal repayment of $100,000, this bond is called a discount bond.

Common naming conventions for this type of bond: coupon rate is not interest rate!

4·5. Why is the Yield Curve not Flat?

There is no necessary reason why capital should be equally productive at all times. For example, in agrarian societies, capital could be very productive in summer (and earn a rate of return of 3%), but not in winter (and earn a rate of return of only 1%). This does not mean that investment in summer is a better deal or a worse deal than investment in winter, because cash in winter is *not* the same—not as valuable—as cash in summer, so the two interest rates are not comparable. You could not invest winter money at the 3% interest rate you will be able to invest it with 6 months later.

There is no reason why interest rates have to be the same in all periods.

But although seasonal effects do influence both prices and rates of return on agricultural commodities, and although the season example makes it clear that capital can be differently productive at different times, it is not likely that seasonality is the reason why 30-year Treasury bonds in May 2002 paid 5.6% per annum, and 6-month Treasury notes paid only 1.9% per annum. So why is it that the yield curve was so steep? There are essentially three explanations:

Longer-term Treasury bonds probably have higher yields because they are riskier—though it could also have been investment opportunities that are better in the far-away future than they are today.

1. The 30-year bond is a much better deal than the 1-year bond. This explanation is highly unlikely. The market for Treasury bond investments is close to perfect, in the sense that we have used the definition. It is very competitive and efficient—concepts that we will investigate more in Chapter 6. If there was a great deal to be had, thousands of traders would have already jumped on it. So, more likely, the interest rate differential does not overthrow the old tried-and-true axiom: **you get what you pay for**. It is just a fact of life that investments for which the interest payments are tied down for 30 years must offer higher interest rates now.

   It is important that you recognize that your cash itself is *not* tied down if you invest in a 30-year bond, because you can of course sell your 30-year bond tomorrow to another investor if you so desire.

2. Investors expect to be able to earn much higher interest rates in the future. For example, if the interest rate $r_{0,1}$ is 2% and the interest rate $r_{1,2}$ is 10%, then $r_{0,2} = (1+2\%)\cdot(1+10\%) \approx 1 + 12\%$, or $r_{\overline{2}} = 5.9\%$. If you graph $r_{\overline{T}}$ against T, you will find a steep yield curve, just as you observed. So, higher future interest rates can cause much steeper yield curves.

   However, I am cheating. This explanation is really no different from my "seasons" explanation, because I have given you no good explanation *why* investment opportunities were expected to be much better in May 2032 than they were in May 2002. I would need to give you an underlying reason. One particular such reason may be that investors believe that money will be worth progressively less. That is, even though they can earn higher interest rates over the long run, they also believe that the price inflation rate will increase. Inflation—a subject of Chapter 6—erodes the value of higher interest rates, so interest rates may have to be higher in the future merely to compensate investors for the lesser value of their money in the future.

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

However, the empirical evidence suggests that the yield curve is not a good predictor of future interest rates, except on the very shortest horizons (a month or less). So, the expectation of higher interest rates is *not* the most likely cause for the usually upward sloping curve in the real world.

3. Long-term bonds might somehow be riskier than short-term bonds, so investors only want to buy them if they get an extra rate of return. Although we have yet to cover uncertainty more systematically, you can gain some intuition by considering the effects of changes in economy-wide interest rates on short-term bonds vs. long-term bonds. This is the plan of the remainder of this section.

   The empirical evidence indeed suggests that it is primarily compensation for taking more risk with long-term bonds than short-term bonds that explains why long-term bonds have higher yields than short-term bonds. That is, investors seem to earn higher expected rates of return on average in long-term bonds, because these bonds are riskier (at least in the interim).

4·5.A. The Effect of Interest Rate Changes on Short-Term and Long-Term Treasury Bond Values

Our agenda is to explore the risk of interim interest rate changes.

Why are 30-year bonds riskier than 1-year bonds? Of course, repayment is no less certain with 30-year Treasury bonds than 1-year Treasury bonds. (This would be an issue of concern if you were to evaluate corporate projects rather than Treasuries: long-term corporate bonds are often riskier than short-term corporate bonds—most firms are unlikely to go bankrupt this week, but fairly likely to go bankrupt over a multi-decade time horizon.) Instead of non-payment risk, the issue here is that economy-wide bond prices (interest rates) can change in the interim, and the effects of interest rate changes can be much more dramatic on 30-year bonds than on 1-year bonds.

First, the effect of a 10bp point change on the 30-year bond.

The 30-Year Bond: Let's compute the value of a \$1,000 30-year zero bond today at the prevailing 5.60% interest rate. It is $\$1,000/1.056^{30} \approx \$195.02$. You already know that when prevailing interest rates go up, the prices of outstanding bonds drop and you will have lost money. Now, if interest rates increase by 10 basis points to 5.7%, the bond value decreases to $\$1,000/1.057^{30} \approx \$189.56$. If interest rates decrease by 10 basis points to 5.5%, the bond value increases to $\$1,000/1.055^{30} \approx \$200.64$. Thus, the effect of a 10 basis point increase in the prevailing 30-year yield induces an immediate percent change (a return) in the value of your bond of

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \frac{V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.5\%) - V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.6\%)}{V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.6\%)} = \frac{\$200.64 - \$195.02}{\$195.02} \approx +2.88\% \\ r &= \frac{V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.7\%) - V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.6\%)}{V(r_{\overline{30}}=5.6\%)} = \frac{\$189.56 - \$195.02}{\$195.02} \approx -2.80\% \end{aligned} \tag{4.23}$$

For every \$1 million you invest in 30-year bonds, you expose yourself to a \$29,000 risk for a 10-basis point yield change in the economy.

Second, the effect of a 10bp point change on the 1-year bond.

The 1-Year Bond: To keep the example identical, assume that the 1-year bond also has an interest rate of 5.6%. In this case, the equivalent computations for the value of a 1-year bond are \$946.97 at 5.6%, \$947.87 at 5.5%, and \$946.07 at 5.7%. Therefore, the equivalent change in value is

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \frac{V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.5\%) - V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.6\%)}{V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.6\%)} = \frac{\$952.38 - \$946.97}{\$946.97} \approx +0.09\% \\ r &= \frac{V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.7\%) - V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.6\%)}{V(r_{\overline{1}}=5.6\%)} = \frac{\$946.07 - \$946.07}{\$946.07} \approx -0.09\% \end{aligned} \tag{4.24}$$

So for every $1 million you invest in 1-year bonds, you expose yourself to a $900 risk for a 10-basis point yield change in the economy.

Comparison

It follows that the value effect of an equal-sized change in prevailing interest rates is more severe for longer term bonds. It follows, then, that if the bond is due tomorrow, there is very little havoc that an interest rate change can wreak.

In the interim, T-bonds are *not* risk-free!

This brings us to an important insight: Treasury bonds are risk-free in the sense that they cannot default (fail to return the promised payments). But they are risky in the sense that interest changes can change their value. Only the most short-term Treasury bills (say, due overnight) can truly be considered risk-free—virtually everything else is risky.

IMPORTANT: *Though "fixed income," even a Treasury bond does not guarantee a "fixed rate of return" over horizons shorter than the maturity: day to day, long-term bonds are generally riskier investments than short-term bills.*

"Only" a paper loss: A cardinal error!

But, if you really need cash only in 30 years, is this not just a paper loss? This is a cardinal logical error many investors commit. By committing your million dollars one day earlier, you would have lost $29,000 of your net worth in one day! Put differently, waiting one day would have saved you $29,000 or allowed you to buy the same item for $29,000 less. Paper money is actual wealth. Thinking paper losses are any different from actual losses is a common but capital error.

IMPORTANT: *"Paper losses" are actual losses.*

The primary exception to this rule is that realized gains and losses have different tax implications than unrealized gains and losses—a subject which we will discuss in Chapter 6.

DIGGING DEEPER: *I have pulled two tricks on you. First, in the real world, it could be that short-term economy-wide interest rates typically experience yield shifts of plus or minus 100 basis points, while long-term economy-wide interest rates never move. If this were true, long-term bonds could even be safer. But trust me—even though the volatility of prevailing interest rates in 20-year bonds is smaller than that of 1-year bonds, it is not that much smaller. As a consequence, the typical annual variability in the rate of return of an investment in 20-year Treasury bonds is higher (around 10%) than the typical variability in the rate of return of an investment in 1-month Treasury notes (around 3%). Long-term Treasury securities are indeed riskier.*

Second, when I quoted you value losses of $29,000 and $900, I ignored that between today and tomorrow, you would also earn one day's interest. On a $1,000,000 investment, this would be about $150. If you had invested the money in 1-day Treasury bills at 1.7% instead of 30-year bonds, you would have only received about $30. Strictly speaking, this $120 favors the long-term bond and thus should be added when comparing investment strategies—but it is only about 1 basis point, and so for a quick-and-dirty calculation such as ours, ignoring it was reasonable.

Solve Now!

Q 4.16 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, what is today's annualized rate of return on a 10-year bond?*

Q 4.17 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, what is today's total rate of return on a 10-year bond over the 10-year holding period?*

Q 4.18 *If you invest $500,000 at today's total rate of return on a 30-day Treasury note, what will you end up with?*

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

4·6. The Yield To Maturity (YTM)

We want a "sort-of average interest rate" that is implicit in future cash flows.

In Section 4·2, you learned how to annualize rates of return, so that you could better understand the rate at which two different investments accumulate wealth. However, there was only one payment involved. What do you do if each bond has many different payments? For example, what is the interest rate on a bond that costs \$100,000 today, and pays off \$5,000 in 1 year, \$10,000 in 2 years, and \$120,000 in 3 years? This may be an irregular coupon bond, but it is not an illegal one. How should you even name this bond—is there something like an "average" interest rate implicit in these cash flows? Is this bond intrinsically more similar to a bond offering a 4% rate of return or a bond offering a 6% rate of return? Note that this has nothing to do with the prevailing economy-wide yield curve. Our question is purely one of wanting to characterize the cash flows that are implicit to the bond itself. The answer is not obvious at all—until you learn it. The yield-to-maturity gives a sort of "average rate of return" implicit in many bond cash flows.

IMPORTANT: *The **Yield to Maturity** is the quantity YTM, which, given a complete set of bond cash flows, solves the NPV equation set to zero,*

$$0 = CF_0 + \frac{CF_1}{1+YTM} + \frac{CF_2}{(1+YTM)^2} + \frac{CF_3}{(1+YTM)^3} + ... \tag{4.25}$$

An example of solving the YTM equation.

So, in this case, you want to solve

$$0 = -\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+\text{YTM}} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+\text{YTM})^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+\text{YTM})^3} \ . \tag{4.26}$$

In general, you solve this equation by trial and error. Start with two values, say 5% and 10%.

$$\begin{aligned} -\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+5\%} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+5\%)^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+5\%)^3} &\approx \$17,493 \ , \\ -\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+10\%} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+10\%)^3} &\approx \$2,968 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{4.27}$$

To reach zero, you need to slide above 10%. So, try 11% and 12%,

$$\begin{aligned} -\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+11\%} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+11\%)^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+11\%)^3} &\approx \$363 \ , \\ -\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+12\%} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+12\%)^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+12\%)^3} &\approx -\$2,150 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{4.28}$$

Ok, the solution is closer to 11%. Some more trial and error reveals

$$-\$100,000 + \frac{\$5,000}{1+11.14255\%} + \frac{\$10,000}{(1+11.14255\%)^2} + \frac{\$120,000}{(1+11.14255\%)^3} \approx 0 \ . \tag{4.29}$$

So, the cash flows of your bond with payments of \$5,000 in 1 year, \$10,000 in 2 years, and \$120,000 in 3 years have an embedded sort-of-average interest rate—a yield to maturity—that is equal to 11.14%. There are also bonds that the corporation can call back in before maturity. In this case, it is not uncommon to compute a YTM for such a bond assuming the firm will do so, then called a **Yield-to-Call**.

A YTM is (usually) not an interest rate!

You can think of YTM as a generalization of the narrower interest rate concept. If there is only one cash inflow and one cash outflow—as is the case for a zero bond—then the YTM is the same as the annualized interest rate. However, a rate of return is defined by exactly two cash flows, so it is meaningless to talk about it when there are multiple cash flows. In contrast, the YTM can handle multiple cash flows just fine. Although it may help your intuition to think of the YTM as a "sort of" average interest rate that is embedded in a bond's cash flows, you should be

clear that the YTM is *not* an interest rate. (An interest rate is a YTM, but not vice-versa.) Instead, a YTM is a characteristic defined by a cash flow pattern.

If the yield curve is flat, YTM can substitute for NPV as a capital budgeting tool.

Should you purchase this bond? The answer is yes if and only if this bond does not have a negative NPV. Fortunately, YTM can often provide the same information. If the yield curve is uniformly below the bond's YTM, then the bond is a positive NPV project. So, if all prevailing economy-wide interest rates were 11%, and your bond's YTM is 11.14%, then this bond would be a positive NPV project and you should buy it. If all prevailing economy-wide interest rates were 12%, and your bond's YTM is 11.14%, then you should not buy this bond. Unfortunately, when the prevailing yield curve is not uniformly above or below the YTM (e.g., if it is 11% on the 1-year horizon climbing to 12% on the 3-year horizon), YTM cannot tell you whether to purchase the bond—though it still gives a nice characterization of bond payments. Instead, you have to go back to NPV.

YTM is also called IRR in a more general context, so spreadsheets have it built-in.

I must confess some small sins: First, the Treasury yield curve in Table 4.1 which was used for illustration was not really based on zero-bonds, as I had pretended. Instead, it was based on bonds that had some interim coupon payments—and it was the YTM of these coupon bonds that we graphed, not just the simple zero-bond annualized interest rate. (The zero-bond version of the yield curve would be graphed based on **Treasury STRIPS** [see Appendix B.2·6]. The STRIP yieldcurve can differ "a little" from the ordinary coupon-bond yieldcurve.) Second, the concept of YTM works with or without the concept of time-varying interest rates, so it may be misplaced in this chapter. It is about bond payments, not about the prevailing economy wide discount rates. I just placed it here, because it allowed us to discuss how you would compare a bond's YTM to the prevailing yield-curve, and how YTM becomes useless if the yield-curve is not uniformly above or below it. Third, there is an easier method than trial-and-error *yourself*—most computer spreadsheets offer a built-in function called "IRR" that solves the YTM equation exactly as you just did, only without trial and error and therefore more conveniently, too. (We will cover IRR in Chapter 8.)

Solve Now!

Q 4.19 *What is the YTM of a level-coupon bond whose price is equal to the principal paid at maturity? For example, take a 5-year bond that costs $1,000, pays 5% coupon ($50 per year) for 4 years, and finally repays $1,050 in principal and interest in year 5.*

Q 4.20 *What is the YTM of the following zero-bond? For example, take a 5-year bond that costs $1,000 and promises to pay $1,611?*

Q 4.21 *Compute the yield-to-maturity of a two-year bond that costs $25,000 today, pays $1,000 at the end of the first year and at the end of the second year. At the end of the second year, it also repays $25,000. What is the bond's YTM?*

Q 4.22 *Let us learn how to "STRIP" a Treasury coupon bond. (STRIP is a great acronym for Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal of Securities.) Presume the 12 month Treasury bond costs $10,065.22 and pays a coupon of $150 in 6 months, and interest plus coupon of $10,150 in 12 months. (Its payment patterns indicate that it was originally issued as a "3-percent semi-annual level-coupon bond.") Presume the 6-month Treasury bond costs $10,103.96 and has only one remaining interest plus coupon payment of $10,200. (It was originally issued [and perhaps many years ago] as a "4% semi-annual level-coupon bond.")*

(a) What is the YTM of these two bonds?

(b) Graph a yield curve based on the maturity of these two bonds.

(c) What would be the price of a 1-year zero bond?

(d) Graph a yield curve based on zero bonds.

(e) Do the yield differences between the 1-year zero bond and the 1-year coupon bond seem large to you?

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

4·7. Optional Bond Topics

Optional for ordinary capital budgeting, but relevant and useful!

There are many other finer details of bonds that we could dive into, even though they are not absolutely necessary for understanding the basics of capital budgeting. This does not mean that they are unimportant—indeed, any CFO who wants to finance projects by issuing bonds will inevitably run into each of them. So, in this section, we cover a set of related issues that are best dubbed "advanced, but not unimportant."

4·7.A. Extracting Forward Interest Rates

Forward interest rates are implied interest rates in the future, given by today's yield curve.

Can you lock in a 1-year interest rate beginning in 2 years? For example, you may have a project that will generate cash in 2 years and that you need to store for 1 year before the cash can be used in the next project. The answer is yes, and the lock-in rate is right in the yield curve itself. Computing and locking rates may not be important to the ordinary small investor, but it is to bond traders and CFOs. This lock-able interest rate is the **forward interest rate** (or, simply, **forward rate**)—an interest rate for an investment of cash beginning not today, but in the future. You have already used forward rates: we called them, e.g., $r_{2,3}$, the one-year interest rate beginning in 2 years. Still, I want to rename this to $f_{2,3}$ now, both for better memorization and (for the real world) to distinguish this forward interest rate that is known today from the one-year interest rate that will actually come in two years, which is unknown today. (It is only in our artificial world of perfect certainty that the two must be identical.) In contrast to forward rates, interest rates for investments beginning this period are called **spot rates** or **spot interest rates**, because they are the interest that can be obtained on the spot right now.

Working out forward rates step by step from the yield curve.

Begin by working out the future one-year interest rates that were already computed for you in Table 4.2 on Page 59. In Table 4.2, the formulas were

	Rates of Returns		
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1+r_{0,1})$	$=(1+r_{\bar{1}})^1$	$=(1+r_{0,1})$
2 Year	$(1+r_{0,2})$	$=(1+r_{\bar{2}})^2$	$=(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})$
3 Year	$(1+r_{0,3})$	$=(1+r_{\bar{3}})^3$	$=(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})\cdot(1+f_{2,3})$

The *Wall Street Journal* yield curve gives you the annualized interest rates, i.e., the third column. You can read them off and insert them into your table. On May 31, 2002, these interest rates were

	Rates of Returns		
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1+r_{0,1})$	$=(1+2.26\%)^1$	$\approx(1+r_{0,1})$
2 Year	$(1+r_{0,2})$	$=(1+3.20\%)^2$	$\approx(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})$
3 Year	$(1+r_{0,3})$	$=(1+3.65\%)^3$	$\approx(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})\cdot(1+f_{2,3})$

The first step is to compute the holding rates of return in the second column:

	Rates of Returns		
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1+2.26\%)$	$\approx(1+2.26\%)^1$	$=(1+r_{0,1})$
2 Year	$(1+6.50\%)$	$\approx(1+3.20\%)^2$	$=(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})$
3 Year	$(1+11.35\%)$	$\approx(1+3.65\%)^3$	$=(1+r_{0,1})\cdot(1+f_{1,2})\cdot(1+f_{2,3})$

Ultimately, you want to know what the implied future interest rates are. Work your way down. The first row is easy: you know that $r_{0,1}$ is 2.26%. You can also substitute this return into the other rows:

Rates of Returns			
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1 + 2.26\%)$	$\approx (1 + 2.26\%)^1$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%)
2 Year	$(1 + 6.50\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.20\%)^2$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot (1 + f_{1,2})$
3 Year	$(1 + 11.35\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.65\%)^3$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot (1 + f_{1,2}) \cdot (1 + f_{2,3})$

Now you have to work on the two year row to determine $f_{1,2}$: You have one equation and one unknown in the two year row, so you can determine the interest to be

$$(1 + 6.50\%) = (1 + 2.26\%) \cdot (1 + f_{1,2}) \implies (1 + f_{1,2}) = \left(\frac{1 + 6.50\%}{1 + 2.26\%}\right) \approx 1 + 4.15\% \ . \tag{4.30}$$

Substitute this solution back into the table,

Rates of Returns			
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1 + 2.26\%)$	$\approx (1 + 2.26\%)^1$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%)
2 Year	$(1 + 6.50\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.20\%)^2$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot$ (1+4.15%)
3 Year	$(1 + 11.35\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.65\%)^3$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot$ (1+4.15%) $\cdot (1 + f_{2,3})$

Now work on row 3. Again, you have one equation and one unknown in the three year row, so you can determine the interest to be

$$(1 + 11.35\%) = (1 + 2.26\%) \cdot (1 + 4.15\%) \cdot (1 + f_{2,3}) \tag{4.31}$$

$$\implies (1 + f_{2,3}) = \frac{1 + 11.35\%}{(1 + 2.26\%) \cdot (1 + 4.15\%)} \approx 1 + 4.56\% \ . \tag{4.32}$$

Rates of Returns			
Maturity	Total Holding	Annualized	Individually Compounded
1 Year	$(1 + 2.26\%)$	$\approx (1 + 2.26\%)^1$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%)
2 Year	$(1 + 6.50\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.20\%)^2$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot$ (1+4.15%)
3 Year	$(1 + 11.35\%)$	$\approx (1 + 3.65\%)^3$	$\approx$ (1+2.26%) $\cdot$ (1+4.15%) $\cdot$ (1+4.56%)

So, given the annualized rates of return in the yield curve, you can determine the whole set of implied forward interest rates. For example, the implied interest rate from year 2 to year 3 is 4.56%.

Think of the annualized interest rate as the average of interest rates.

Behind this arithmetic lies a pretty simple intuition: An annualized two-year interest rate is "really sort of" an "average" interest rate over the interest rates from the first year and the second year. (In fact, the annualized rate is called the **geometric average**.) If you know that the average interest rate is 3.20%, and you know that the first half of this average is 2.26%, it must be that the second half of the average must be a number around 4.2% in order to average out to 3.20%. And, indeed, you worked out that the forward one-year interest rate was 4.15%. It is not exact—due to compounding—but it is fairly close.

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

Solve Now!

Q 4.23 *Continuing the example, compute the one-year forward interest rate $f_{3,4}$ from year 3 to year 4, if the 4-year annualized interest rate was 4.06%.*

4·7.B. Shorting and Locking in Forward Interest Rates

Frictionless borrowing and lending of Treasury bonds allow investors to lock in future interest rates. How shorting works.

Why are forward interest rates so interesting? The reason is that by cleverly buying and selling (shorting) Treasury bonds, you can bet on future interest rates embedded in the yield curve. Working with and speculating on forward rates is the "bread-and-butter" of bond traders. But bond traders are not the only parties here—firms often also want to "lock in" future interest rates today—and they can indeed lock in today's forward interest rates as the future interest rates that they will face. To understand this, assume that you can buy and sell Treasury bonds, even if you do not own them. In effect, you can borrow these securities, sell them, receive the cash, buy back the bonds later, and return them to the lender. This is called a **short sale** (the opposite—buying securities—is said to be a long position). Table 4.4 explains the basic idea behind shorting. In effect, for Treasury bonds, short selling enables you to do what the government does—"issue" a security, take in money, and return it to the lender with interest. For example, you may sell short \$89,803.25 of a 3-year Treasury bond today with a 3.65% rate of interest and a maturity of 3 years. This will give you \$89,803.25 cash today, but require you to come up with \$100,000 for repayment in 3 years. In effect, selling a bond short is a way of borrowing money. In the real world, for professional bond traders, who can prove that they have enough funds to make good *any* possible losses, this is easily possible and with extremely small transaction costs, perhaps 1–2 basis points. Thus, assuming transaction costs away is a reasonable assumption.

Shorting is the opposite of Buying: It speculates that the value will decline.

Holding a security (i.e., being long) speculates that the value will go up, so selling a financial instrument (i.e., being short) speculates that the value will go down. If the price of the bond tomorrow were to go down to \$50,000 (an annualized interest rate of 26%), the trader could then purchase the government T-bill for \$50,000 to cover the \$100,000 commitment he has made for \$89,803.25, a profit of \$39,803.25. But if the price of the bond tomorrow were to go to \$99,000 (an annualized interest rate of 0.33%), the trader would lose \$9,196.75.

Future cash flows from the long leg and the short leg.

Now assume that you are able to buy a two-year bond at an annualized interest rate of 3.20%, and able to sell (short) a three-year bond at an annualized interest rate of 3.65%, and do so without transaction costs. For the three-year bond, you would have to promise to pay back $\$100 \cdot (1 + 11.35\%) \approx \$111.35$ in three years (cash outflow to you) for each \$100 you are borrowing today (cash inflow to you). For the two-year bond, you would invest these \$100 (cash outflow to you) and receive $\$100 \cdot (1 + 6.50\%) \approx \$106.50$ in two years (cash inflow to you).

Looking at your **Payout Table** 4.5, from your perspective, the simultaneous transaction in the two bonds results in an inflow of \$106.50 in year two followed by a cash outflow of \$111.35. Effectively, you have committed to borrowing \$106.50 in year 2 with payback of \$111.35 in year 3. The interest rate for this loan is

$$\begin{aligned} f_{2,3} &\approx \frac{\$111.35 - \$106.50}{\$106.50} \approx 4.56\% \\ &= \frac{CF_0 \cdot (1 + r_{0,3}) - CF_0 \cdot (1 + r_{0,2})}{CF_0 \cdot (1 + r_{0,2})}, \end{aligned} \tag{4.33}$$

which is exactly the forward interest rate in the table.

Digging Deeper: *There is an alternative way to work this. Start with the amount that you want to borrow/lend in a future period. For example, say you want to lend \$500 in year 2 and repay however much is necessary in year 3. Lending \$500 in year 2 requires an outflow, which you can only accomplish with an inflow today. (Therefore, the first "leg" of your transaction is that you borrow, i.e., short the 2-year bond!) Specifically, your inflow today is $\$500/(1+3.20\%)^2 \approx \$469.47$. Now, invest the entire \$469.47 into the 3-year bond, so that you have zero net cash flow today. (The second "leg" of your transaction is that you lend, i.e., purchase the 3-year bond.) This will earn you an inflow $\$469.47 \cdot (1 + 3.65\%)^3 \approx \$522.78$ in 3 years. In total, your financial transactions have committed you to an outflow of \$500 in year 2 in exchange for an inflow of \$522.78 in year 3—otherwise known as 1-year lending in year 2 at a precommitted interest rate of 4.56%.*

Table 4.4. The Mechanics of an Apple Short Sale

Three Parties: Apple Lender, You, The Apple Market.

Today:

1. You borrow 1 apple from the lender in exchange for your firm promise to the lender to return this 1 apple next year. (You also pay the lender an extra 1 cent lending fee.)
2. You sell 1 apple into the apple market at the currently prevailing apple price. Say, 1 apple costs \$5 today. You now have \$5 cash, which you can invest. Say, you buy bonds that earn you a 1% interest rate.

Next year:

1. You owe the lender 1 apple. Therefore, you must purchase 1 apple from the apple market.
   - If apples now cost \$6, you must purchase 1 apple from the market at \$6. You return the apple to the lender.
     Your net return on the apple is thus −\$1, plus the \$0.05 interest on \$5, minus the 1 cent fee to the lender. You therefore lost 96 cents.
   - If apples now cost \$4, you must purchase 1 apple from the market at \$4. You return the apple to the lender.
     Your net return on the apple is thus +\$1, plus the \$0.05 interest on \$5, minus the 1 cent fee to the lender. You therefore gained \$1.04.

Net Effects:

- The apple lender has really continued to own the apple throughout, and can sell the apple in Year 1. There is no advantage for the lender to keep the apple in his own apple cellar rather than to lend it to you. In addition, the lender earns 1 cent for free by lending.
- The apple market buyer purchased an apple from you today, and will never know where it came from (i.e., from a short sale).
- The apple market seller next year will never know what you do with the apple (i.e., that you will use it to make good on your previous year's apple loan).
- You speculated that the price of an apple would decline.
- Note that you did earn the interest rate along the way. Except for the fee you paid to the lender, you could sell the apple into the apple market today and use the proceeds to earn interest, just like an apple grower could have.

In the real world, short-selling is arranged so that you cannot sell the apple short, receive the \$5, and then skip town. As a short-seller, you must assure the lender that you will be able to return the apple next year. As the short seller, you must also pay the lender for all interim benefits that the apple would provide—though few apples pay dividends or coupon, the way stocks and bonds often do.

Table 4.5. Locking in a Future Interest Rate via the Long-Short Forward Interest Rate Spread

Time	Purchased 2-Year Bond Cash Flows		Shorted 3-Year Bond Cash Flows		Net Cash Flow	
Today	-$100.00	(outflow)	+$100.00	(inflow)	$0.00	
Year 1	$0.00		$0.00		$0.00	
Year 2	+$106.50	(inflow)	$0.00		+$106.50	(inflow)
Year 3	$0.00		-$111.35	(outflow)	-$111.35	(outflow)

Such forward interest rate swaps are so popular that there are markets that make this even simpler.

This particular transaction is called a **forward transaction**. Indeed, this particular type of forward transaction is so popular that an entire financial market on **interest forwards** has developed that allows speculators to easily engage in simultaneously going long or short on bonds.

You get what you pay for: the speculation can end up for better or worse.

Should you engage in this transaction? If the one-year interest rate in 2 years will be higher than 4.56%, you will be able to borrow at a lower interest than what will be prevailing then. Of course, if the interest rate will be lower than 4.56%, you will have committed to borrow at an interest rate that is higher than what you could have gotten.

Solve Now!

Q 4.24 *If you want to commit to saving at an interest rate of $f_{3,4}$, what would you have to do? (Assume any amount of investment you wish, and work from there.)*

Q 4.25 *If you want to commit to saving $500,000 in 3 years (i.e., you will deposit $500,000) at an interest rate of $f_{3,4}$ (i.e., you will receive $526,498.78), what would you have to do?*

4·7.C. Bond Duration

Maturity ignores interim payment structure.

In Section 4·6, you learned how to summarize or characterize the cash flows promised by a bond with the YTM. But how can you characterize the "term length" of a bond? The final payment, i.e., the maturity, is flawed: zero bonds and coupon bonds may have the same maturity, but a high coupon bond could pay out a good amount of money early on. For example, a coupon bond could pay 99% in coupon in the first month, and leave 1% for a payment in 30 years. It would count as a 30-year bond, the same as a zero-bond that pays 100% in 30 years.

Duration is an "average" payout date.

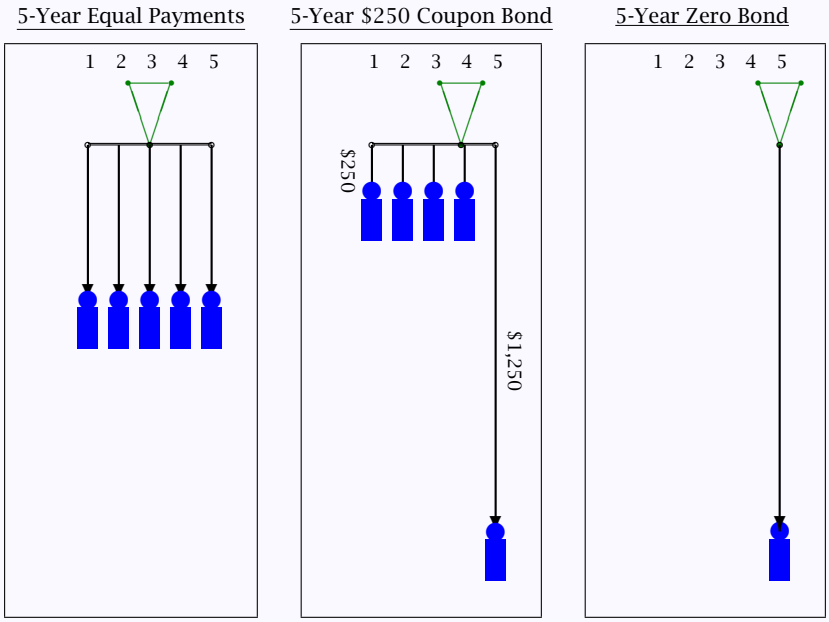
To measure the payout pattern of a bond, investors often rely on both maturity and **duration**—a measure of the *effective* time-length of a project. The simplest duration measure computes the time-weighted average of bond payouts, divided by the sum of all payments. For example, a 5 Year Coupon Bond that pays $250 for 4 years and $1,250 in the fifth year, has a duration of 3.89 years, because

$$\text{Plain Duration} = \frac{\$250\cdot 1 + \$250\cdot 2 + \$250\cdot 3 + \$250\cdot 4 + \$1,250\cdot 5}{\$250 + \$250 + \$250 + \$250 + \$1,250} \approx 3.89 \tag{4.35}$$

$$\frac{\text{Payment at Time 1}\cdot 1 + \text{Payment at Time 2}\cdot 2 + \ldots + \text{Payment at Time T}\cdot T}{\text{Payment at Time 1} + \text{Payment at Time 2} + \ldots + \text{Payment at Time T}}.$$

(You can think of this as the "payment-weighted" payout year.) The idea is that you now consider this 5-year coupon bond to be shorter-term than a 5-year zero bond (which has a 5-year duration)—and perhaps more similar to a 3.9-year zero bond.

SIDE NOTE: Duration is sometimes explained through a physical analog: If all payments were weights hanging from a (time) line, the duration is the point where the weights balance out, so that the line tilts neither right nor left.



Macaulay Duration alters plain duration by using the present value of payouts, not just nominal payouts. Thus, unlike plain duration which merely characterizes bond cash flows regardless of economy-wide interest rates, Macaulay duration also depends on the prevailing yield curve. If the interest rate on all horizons is 5%, the Macaulay duration for your coupon bond is

Macaulay duration uses PV, and is usually a little bit less than plain duration.

$$\text{Macaulay Duration} = \frac{\$238\cdot 1 + \$227\cdot 2 + \$216\cdot 3 + \$206\cdot 4 + \$979\cdot 5}{\$238 + \$227 + \$216 + \$206 + \$979} \approx 3.78 \tag{4.36}$$

$$\frac{\text{PV(Payment at Time 1)}\cdot 1 + \text{PV(Payment at Time 2)}\cdot 2 + \ldots + \text{PV(Payment at Time T)}\cdot T}{\text{PV(Payment at Time 1)} + \text{PV(Payment at Time 2)} + \ldots + \text{PV(Payment at Time T)}}.$$

Duration Similarity

Duration can be used as a measure for the "term" of projects other than bonds, too. However, duration only works if all incoming cash flows are positive—otherwise, it may be nonsense. Duration is important, because it helps you judge the exposure (risk) of your projects to changes in interest rates. For example, if you have a project (or bond portfolio) that has an average duration of 6.9 years, then it is probably more exposed to and more similar to the 7-year Treasury bond than the 5-year or 10-year Treasury bonds.

Duration is used as an interest exposure measure.

Now presume that the yield curve is 5% for 1-year T-bonds, 10% for 2-year T-bonds, and 15% for 3-year T-bonds. You can purchase a project that will deliver \$1,000 in 1 year, \$1,000 in 2 years, and \$1,500 in 3 years, and costs \$2,500. This bond would be a good deal, because its present value would be \$2,765.10. The project has a YTM of 17.5%, and a Macaulay duration of 2.01 years. (We shall only work with the Macaulay duration.) But, let's presume you are worried about interest rate movements. For example, if interest rates were to quadruple, the project would not be a good one. How does the value of your project change as the yield curve moves around?

A concrete project example.

The effect of a constant shift of the yield curve.

Let's work out how changes in the yield curve affect your projects and pure zero bonds, each promising \$1,000 at maturity. First, your project. Presume that the entire yield curve shifts upward by 1%—the 5% T-bond yield becomes a 6% yield, the 10% becomes 11%, and the 15% becomes 16%. Your project value would now be

$$\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\$1,000}{1+6\%} + \frac{\$1,000}{(1+11\%)^2} + \frac{\$2,500}{(1+16\%)^3} \approx \$2,716.01 \ . \tag{4.37}$$

This is an instant rate of return of $(\$2,716.01 - \$2,765.10)/\$2,765.10 \approx -1.776\%$.

Yield Curve	Project		
	PV(r_L)	PV(r_H)	RoR
Entire yield curve shifts upward by 1%:	\$2,765.10	\$2,716.01	-1.78%

Is this more similar to how the 1-Year zero T-bond changed, how the 2-year zero T-bond changed, or how the 3-year zero T-bond would have changed? Of course, zero bonds are only affected by their specific interest rate, so you can work out the percent change one at a time or all simultaneously, and you would get the same answer.

	Yield Curve			
	$r_L \to r_H$	PV(r_L)	PV(r_H)	RoR
1-Year Bond	1.05%→1.06%	\$952.38	\$943.40	-0.94%
2-Year Bond	1.10%→1.11%	\$826.45	\$811.62	-1.79%
3-Year Bond	1.15%→1.16%	\$640.66	\$657.52	-2.56%

The answer is that your project's value change is most similar to the 2-year zero T-bond value change. This is what your bond's duration of 2.01 year told you—your project behaves most similar to the 2-year bond as far as its interest rate sensitivity is concerned.

Duration Hedging

A hedge matches assets and liabilities to reduce risk.

So, now you know how your project would suffer from a change in the interest rate that you may fear, but what can you do about it? The idea is to **hedge** your risk—you try to own the same assets long and short—you are matching liabilities and assets—so that you are ensured against adverse changes. For example, it would be a perfect hedge if you purchased the project, and also shorted \$1,000 in the 1-year bond, \$1,000 in the 2-year bond, and \$2,500 in the 3-year bond. You would be totally uninterested in where interest rates would be moving—your wealth would not be affected. (This is the "law of one price" in action. In fact, there is absolutely no risk to lose money, so this would be an arbitrage portfolio, explained in Section 19·1.)

Why perfect hedges are rare.

In the real world, perfect hedges, whereby you can match all project cash flows perfectly, are rarely possible. First, it is more common that you know only roughly what cash flows your project will return. Fortunately, it is often easier to guess your project's duration than all its individual cash flows. Second, it may also be difficult for smaller companies to short 137 zero T-bonds to match all project cash flows—the transaction costs would simply be too high. Third, you may not do any active matching, but you would still like to know what kind of exposure you are carrying. After all, you may not only have this project as asset, but you may have liabilities [e.g., debt payments] that have a duration of 2.4 years—and you want to know how matched or mismatched your assets and liabilities are. Or, you may use the newfound duration knowledge to choose among bank or mortgage loans with different durations, so that your assets and liabilities roughly match up in terms of their duration.

Minimizing interest rate risk.

For example, you know your project assets have a duration of 2 years—what kind of loan would you prefer? One that has a 1-year duration, a 2-year duration or a 3-year duration? If you want to minimize your interest rate risk, you would prefer to borrow \$2,716 of a 2-year bond—though the bank loan, too, may not be a zero-bond, but just some sort of loan with a 2-year duration. Would you be comfortable that interest rate would not affect the value of your project very much if you were short the 2-year bond and long the project? Yes and no—you would be comfortable that wholesale shifts of the yield curve would not affect you. You would however be exposed to changes in the shape of the yield curve—if only one of the interest rates were to shift, your project would be impacted differently than your 2-year T-bond. In this case, your project's value would move less than the value of your 2-year bond. In the real world, over short horizons, duration matching often works very well. Over longer horizons, however, you will have to do constant watching and rearranging of assets and liabilities to avoid the gap enlarging too much.

DIGGING DEEPER: *The interest-rate sensitivity of a bond's value is roughly its duration divided by one-plus the bond's yield. Therefore, a bond's price change with respect to a change in interest rate is roughly*

$$\text{Bond Price Return} \approx \left(\frac{\text{Duration}}{1+\text{YTM}}\right) \cdot \text{Interest Rate Change} \quad . \tag{4.38}$$

This ignores complex changes in the term structure, but it is often a useful quick-and-dirty sensitivity measure. For example, take our project, and consider a change in interest rates of 10 basis points. That is, the 1-year interest rate moves to 1.051%, the 2-year to 1.101%, and the 3-year to 1.151%. The value of your project would change from \$2,765.10 to \$2,760.12, an immediate percent change of 18 basis points.

$$\begin{aligned} 18bp &\approx \left(\frac{2.01}{1+17.5\%}\right) \cdot 10bp \quad . \\ \text{Bond Price Return} &\approx \left(\frac{\text{Duration}}{1+\text{YTM}}\right) \cdot \text{Interest Rate Change} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{4.39}$$

Solve Now!

Q 4.26 *Compute the duration of a two-year bond that costs \$25,000 today, pays \$1,000 at the end of the first year and at the end of the second year. At the end of the second year, it also repays \$25,000.*

Q 4.27 *If the yield curve is a flat 3%, compute the Macaulay duration for this two-year bond.*

Q 4.28 *If the yield curve is a flat 10%, compute the Macaulay duration for this two-year bond.*

Q 4.29 *Compute the yield-to-maturity of a 25-year bond that costs \$25,000 today, and pays \$1,000 at year-end for the following 25 years. In the final year ($t = 25$), it also pays \$25,000. What is the YTM?*

Q 4.30 *Compute the plain duration of this 25-year bond.*

Q 4.31 *If the yield curve is a flat 3%, compute the Macaulay duration for this 25-year bond.*

Q 4.32 *If the yield curve is a flat 10%, compute the Macaulay duration for this 25-year bond.*

4·7.D. Continuous Compounding

Continuously compounded interest rates are "as if interest is paid every instant."

A subject of some interest to Wall Street traders, i.e., the people who trade bonds or options for a living, is the concept of a **continuously compounded interest rate**. This is easiest to explain by example.

Progressively more frequently paid interest payments converge to the continuously compounded interest rate.

Assume that you receive \$120 next year for an investment of \$100 today. You already know that this represents a simple rate of return of 20%. What would the interest be if it were paid twice per year, not once per year, the interest rate remained constant, and the \$100 would still come out to be \$120 at the end of the year. You have done this before:

$$(1 + r_{\text{semi-annual}}) \cdot (1 + r_{\text{semi-annual}}) = (1 + 20\%) \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad r \approx 9.54\% \ . \tag{4.40}$$

If you multiply this semiannual interest rate by two, you get 19.08%. What if you received interest twelve times a year?

$$(1 + r_{\text{monthly}})^{12} = (1 + 20\%) \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad r \approx 1.53\% \ . \tag{4.41}$$

Multiply this monthly (m) interest rate by 12 and you get 18.36%. What if you received interest 365 times a year?

$$(1 + r_{\text{daily}})^{365} = (1 + 20\%) \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad r \approx 0.05\% \ . \tag{4.42}$$

The 20% was called an "effective annual rate" in Table 2.3. Multiply this daily (d) interest rate by 365 and you get 18.25% (the annual quote). Now, what would this number be if you were to receive interest every single moment in time—the annual rate, compounded every instant?

The limit: Use logs and exponents to translate simple interest rates to continuously compounded interest rates.

The answer is, you guessed it, the continuously compounded interest rate and it can be computed by taking the **natural logarithm** (abbreviated "ln" on your calculator and below) of one plus the simple interest rate

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{continuously compounded}} &= \ln(1 + 20\%) \approx 18.23\% \\ r_{\text{continuously compounded}} &= \ln(1 + r_{\text{simple}}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{4.43}$$

(Appendix 2·3 reviews powers, exponents and logarithms.)

Warning: Never, ever apply cc rates of return to a cash flow!

You must *never* directly apply a continuously compounded interest rate to a cash flow to compute your return. In this example, investing \$100 would not leave you with \$118.23 after one year. Indeed, if someone quoted you a continuously compounded interest rate, to determine how much money you will end up with, you would first have to convert the continuously compounded return into a simple interest rate

$$r_{\text{simple}} = e^{r_{\text{continuously compounded}}} - 1 \approx e^{18.23\%} - 1 \approx 20\% \ , \tag{4.44}$$

and then apply this interest rate to the cash flow. Alternatively, you can multiply the cash flow not by one plus the simple interest rate, but by $e^{r_c c}$.

To obtain multi-period interest returns, continuously compounded interest rates are never compounded, but added instead.

Continuously compounded rates have two nice features: First, if the continuously compounded rate in period 1 is 10% and in period 2 is 20%, the total two-period continuously compounded rate is 30%—yes, continuously compounded interest rates can be added, so no more multiplying one-pluses! This additivity is not a big advantage. Second, they are more "symmetric." See, an ordinary rate of return lies between -100% and $+\infty$, while the continuously compounded rate of return lies between $-\infty$ and $+\infty$. (This can be an advantage in statistical work, as can be the fact that the logarithm helps "pull in" large outliers.) However, the main need for continuously compounded interest rates arises in other formulas (such as the Black-Scholes option formula, the subject of the Web Chapter on Options and Derivatives).

Solve Now!

Q 4.33 *A bond pays $150 for every $100 invested. What is its continuously compounded interest rate?*

Q 4.34 *Show my claim that you can add continuously compounded interest rates. That is, a bond pays a continuously compounded interest rate of 10%. Upon maturity, the money can be reinvested at a continuously compounded interest rate of 20%. If you invest $100 today, how much money will you end up with? What is the simple and continuously compounded interest rate over the two periods?*

4·8. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Compounding works just as well for time-varying interest rates.
- A holding rate of return can be annualized for easier interpretation.
- Different interest rates apply to different horizon investments. The graph of interest rates as a function of horizon is called the "term structure of interest" or "yield curve."
- Net present value works just as well for time-varying interest rates. You merely need to use the appropriate opportunity cost of capital as the interest rate in the denominator.
- Different horizon interest rates carry different risks, not because one is a better deal than the other. Instead, it is either that future interest rates are expected to be different, or that longer-term investments carry more interim risk.

  For Treasury bonds, the risk from interim interest rate changes seems to be the primary reason why the yield curve is usually upward sloping.
- More often than not, "paper losses" are no different from real losses.
- The yield curve is usually upward sloping, but can be downward sloping (inverted), humped, or flat.
- The Yield-to-Maturity is a "sort-of-average" interest rate characterizing the payoffs of a bond. It does not depend on economy-wide interest rates (the yield curve).

If you covered the optional bond topics section, you also learned the following.

- The information in the set of annualized rates of return, individual holding rates of return, and total holding rates of return is identical. Therefore, you can translate them into one another. For example, you can extract all forward interest rates from the prevailing yield curve.
- How shorting transactions work.
- If you can both buy and short bonds, then you can lock in forward interest rates today.
- Bond duration is a characterization of *when* bond payments typically come in.
- The continuously compounded interest rate is $\ln(1 + r)$, where r is the simple interest rate.

---

file=yieldcurve.tex: LP

Solutions and Exercises

1. $r_{0,2} = (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) - 1 = (1 + 2\%) \cdot (1 + 3\%) - 1 = 5.06\%$.
2. Solve $(1 + 22\%) \cdot (1 + x) = (1 - 50\%)$, so the project had a rate of return of -59%.
3. 166.4%. For checking, 124.3% followed by 18.8%.
4. The returns were $(-33\%, +50\%, -67\%, +100\%)$, so the overall rate of return was -33.3%.

5. The annualized rate of return is 18.3%. It is therefore lower than the average rate of return.
6. The compounded rate of return is always higher, because you earn interest on interest. The annualized rate of return is lower than the average rate of return, again because you earn interest on the interest. For example, an investment of \$100 that turns into an investment of \$200 in two years has a total holding period rate of return of 100%—which is an average rate of return of 50% and an annualized rate of return of $\sqrt{(1 + 100\%)} - 1 = 41\%$. Investing \$100 at 41%/annum would yield \$200, which is higher than 50% per annum.
7. $r_{\overline{12}} = \sqrt[12]{1 + 166.4\%} = 8.5\%$.
8. Your rate of return over the six days here was $r_{0,6} = \$1,300.80/\$1,283.27 - 1 = 1.366\%$. You can compound this over the $255/6 = 42.5$ time periods to obtain 78% per annum. (Alternatively, the 1.366% is a daily rate of 0.2264%, which can compound over 255 days.) So, your \$100 would have turned into \$178. (Actually, these were the index values of the S&P500; the rest of 2001 was a lot bleaker for investors, and they lost 13% in 2001.)
9. $r_{0,5} = 50\% \quad (1 + r_{\overline{5}})^5 = (1 + 50\%) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad r_{\overline{5}} = (1 + 50\%)^{1/5} - 1 = 8.45\%$.
10. The same.
11. $r_{\overline{5}} = 10\% \quad (1 + r_{0,5}) = (1 + r_{\overline{5}})^5 = (1 + 61.05\%)$.
12. The basic formula is $(1 + r_{\overline{5}})^5 = (1 + r_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + r_{1,2}) \cdot (1 + r_{2,3}) \cdot (1 + r_{3,4}) \cdot (1 + r_{4,5})$.
Substituting what you know, $(1 + 10\%)^5 = (1 + 15\%) \cdot (1 + x) \cdot (1 + x) \cdot (1 + x) \cdot (1 + x)$.
Calculating, $1.61051 = 1.15 \cdot (1 + x)^4$, $(1 + x)^4 = 1.40$, , and $(1 + x) = 1.40^{1/4} = 1.0878$. So, the return in all other years would have to be 8.78% per year.
13. The daily interest rate is either $(1 + 10\%)^{1/365} - 1 \approx 0.026\%$ or $(1 + 20\%)^{1/365} - 1 \approx 0.05\%$ per day. Thus, the pessimist expects a stock price of \$30.008 tomorrow; the optimist expects a stock price of \$30.015 tomorrow. Note that the 1 cent or so expected increase is dwarfed by the typical day-to-day noise in stock prices.

14. Do it!
15. Do it!

16. Do it!
17. Take the above number, call it $r_{\overline{10}}$, and compute $(1 + r_{\overline{10}})^{10}$.
18. Do it.

19. 5%, because

$$-\$1,000 + \frac{\$50}{1 + 5\%} + \frac{\$50}{(1 + 5\%)^2} + \frac{\$50}{(1 + 5\%)^3} + \frac{\$50}{(1 + 5\%)^4} + \frac{\$1,050}{(1 + 5\%)^5} = 0 \tag{4.45}$$

The YTM of such a bond is just the coupon itself.

20. The YTM is 10%, because

$$-\$1,000 + \frac{\$1,611}{(1 + 10\%)^5} = 0 \tag{4.46}$$

21. You are seeking the solution to

$$-\$25,000 + \sum_{t=1}^{2} \frac{\$1,000}{(1 + r)^t} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1 + r)^2} = 0 \ . \tag{4.47}$$

The correct solution is 4%.

22.

(a)

$$-\$10,065.22 \; + \; \frac{\$150}{\text{YTM}^{0.5}} \; + \; \frac{\$10,150}{\text{YTM}^{1}} \; = \; 0 \;\; , \tag{4.48}$$

so YTM = 2.35%. The YTM of the six-month bond is

$$-\$10,103.96 \; + \; \frac{\$10,200}{\text{YTM}^{0.5}} \; = \; 0 \;\; , \tag{4.49}$$

so YTM = 1.91%. Okay—I admit I chose the equivalent of the yield curve that we plotted in the text.

(b) Do it.

(c) The \$150 coupon is worth $\$150/1.0191^{0.5} \approx \$1,48.59$. Therefore, the one-year zero bond with one payment of \$10,150 due in one year costs $\$10,065.22 - \$148.59 \approx \$9,916.63$. This means that the 1-year zero bond with payoff of \$10,150 has a YTM of $\$10,150/\$9,916.63 - 1 \approx 2.3533\%$.

(d) Do it.

(e) The difference between the YTM of the coupon and the zero bond is only 0.3 basis points—very small, even though the yield curve here is fairly steep. The reason is that the early 6-month coupon earns a lower interest makes little difference because the coupon payment is only \$150, and most of the YTM comes from the final payment. The coupon effect can become larger on very long horizons when the yield curve is steep, but it is very rarely more than 10-20 basis points.

23. The 4-year holding rate of return is $r_{0,4} \approx (1 + 4.06\%)^4 \approx 17.26\%$. Therefore, the 1-year forward rate from year 3 to year 4 is $f_{3,4} \approx \frac{(1 + r_{0,4})}{(1 + r_{0,3})} - 1 \approx \frac{(1 + 17.27\%)}{(1 + 11.35\%)} - 1 \approx 5.30\%$.

24. Buy \$1,000 of a 4-year zero bond (4.06%/year) and short \$1,000 of a 3-year zero bond (3.65%/year). Today, you receive and pay \$1,000, so the transaction does not cost you anything. In 3-years, you need to pay the 3-year bond, i.e., you need to pay in \$1,113.55. In 4-years, you receive from the 4-year bond \$1,172.56. This is the equivalent of saving at an interest rate of 5.30%.

25. You can do this from first principles, as before. An alternative is to rely on the previous solution, where you were saving \$1,113.50. So, you now have to do this transaction at a scale that is $\$500,000/\$1113.5 \approx 449.03$ times as much. Therefore, instead of buying \$1,000 of the 4-year bond, you must buy $449.035 \cdot \$1,000 \approx \$449,035$ of the 4-year bond, and short the same amount of the 3-year bond.

26.

$$\text{Plain Duration} \; \approx \; \frac{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \$1,000 \cdot t\right) + \$25,000 \cdot 2}{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \$1,000\right) + \$25,000} \; = \; \frac{53,000}{27,000} \; \approx \; 1.96296 \;\; . \tag{4.50}$$

The units here are years, because we quoted the multiplication factors "1" and "2" are in years.

27.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Macaulay Duration at 3\%} \; &= \; \frac{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \frac{\$1,000 \cdot t}{(1+3\%)^t}\right) + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 2}{(1+3\%)^2}}{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \frac{\$1,000}{(1+3\%)^t}\right) + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+3\%)^2}} \\ &= \; \frac{\frac{\$1,000 \cdot 1}{(1+3\%)^1} + \frac{\$1,000 \cdot 2}{(1+3\%)^2} + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 2}{(1+3\%)^2}}{\frac{\$1,000}{(1+3\%)^1} + \frac{\$1,000}{(1+3\%)^2} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+3\%)^2}} \\ &= \; \frac{49,986}{25,478} \; \approx \; 1.96189 \;\; . \end{aligned} \tag{4.51}$$

The units here are years, because we quoted the multiplication factors "1" and "2" are in years.

28.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Macaulay Duration at 10\%} \; &= \; \frac{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \frac{\$1,000 \cdot t}{(1+10\%)^t}\right) + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 2}{(1+10\%)^2}}{\left(\sum_{t=1}^{2} \frac{\$1,000}{(1+10\%)^t}\right) + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+10\%)^2}} \\ &= \; \frac{\frac{\$1,000 \cdot 1}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$1,000 \cdot 2}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 2}{(1+10\%)^2}}{\frac{\$1,000}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$1,000}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+10\%)^2}} \\ &= \; \frac{43,884.3}{22,396.7} \; \approx \; 1.95941 \;\; . \end{aligned} \tag{4.52}$$

29. You are seeking the solution to

$$-\$25,000 \; + \; \sum_{t=1}^{25} \frac{\$1,000}{(1+r)^t} \; + \; \frac{\$25,000}{(1+r)^{25}} \; = \; 0 \;\; . \tag{4.53}$$

The middle piece is an annuity, so $\sum_{t=1}^{25} \$1,000/(1+r)^t = \$1,000 \cdot \frac{1 - [1/(1+r)^{25}]}{r}$. The correct solution is 4%.

30.
$$\text{Plain Duration} = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \$1,000 \cdot t \ + \$25,000 \cdot 25}{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \$1,000 \ + \$25,000} \approx 19.62 \tag{4.54}$$

31.
$$\text{Macaulay Duration at 3\%} = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \frac{\$1,000 \cdot t}{(1+3\%)^t} + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 25}{(1+3\%)^{25}}}{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \frac{\$1,000}{(1+3\%)^t} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+3\%)^{25}}} \approx 16.98 \ . \tag{4.55}$$

32.
$$\text{Macaulay Duration at 10\%} = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \frac{\$1,000 \cdot t}{(1+10\%)^t} + \frac{\$25,000 \cdot 25}{(1+10\%)^{25}}}{\sum_{t=1}^{25} \frac{\$1,000}{(1+10\%)^t} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+10\%)^{25}}} \approx 11.81 \ . \tag{4.56}$$

33. The simple interest rate is 50%. The cc interest rate is $\log(1 + 50\%) \approx 40.55\%$.

34. A 10% cc interest rate is a simple interest rate of $r_{0,1} \approx e^{0.10} - 1 \approx 10.52\%$, so you would have \$110.52 after one year. A 20% cc interest rate is a simple interest rate of $f_{1,2} \approx e^{0.20} - 1 \approx 22.14\%$. This means that your \$110.52 investment would turn into $(1 + 22.14\%) \cdot \$110.52 \approx \$134.99$. This means that the simple interest rate is $r_{0,2} \approx 34.99\%$. Thus, the cc interest rate is $\ln(1 + r_{0,2}) \approx \ln(1.3499) \approx 30\%$. Of course, you could have computed this faster: $V_t = e^{0.10} \cdot e^{0.20} \cdot V_0 = e^{0.10+0.20} \cdot V_0 = e^{0.30} \cdot \$100 \approx 1.3499 \cdot \$100 \approx \$134.99$.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 5

UNCERTAINTY, DEFAULT, AND RISK

Promised vs. Expected Returns; Debt vs. Equity

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:17h)

last major edit: Mar 2004, Nov 2004

We now enter the world of uncertainty—though we shall still pretend that we live in a perfect world of no taxes, no transaction costs, no differences of opinion, and infinitely many investors and firms.

Net present value still rules, but you will now have to face the sad fact that it is not easy to use in the real world. It is not the NPV concept that is difficult—in fact, you already "almost" know it. Instead, it is the present value formula inputs—the expected cash flows and appropriate costs of capital under uncertainty—that can be so very difficult to estimate in the real world.

What does uncertainty really do? There will be scenarios in which you will get more than you expected and scenarios in which you will get less than you expected. This is the case for almost all corporate projects. The single-most important insight under uncertainty is that you must always draw a sharp difference between *promised* (or *quoted*) and *expected* returns. Because firms can default on payments or go bankrupt in the future, promised returns are higher than expected returns.

After setting forth the necessary statistical background, our chapter will cover two important topics: First, we need to determine how lenders should charge borrowers if there is the possibility of default. Second, once we know about how to handle uncertainty, we can really discuss the differences between the two important building blocks of finance—debt and equity.

ANECDOTE: The Ruin of the First Financial System
The earliest known example of widespread financial default occurred in the year of 1788 B.C.E., when King Rim-Sin of Uruk (Mesopotamia) repealed all loan repayments. The royal edict effectively destroyed a system of flourishing commerce and finance, which was already many thousands of years old! It is not known why he did so.

5·1. An Introduction to Statistics

Statistics is about how to bet in an uncertain world.

Statistics has a reputation of being the most painful of the foundation sciences for finance—but we absolutely need it to describe an uncertain future. Fortunately, although statistics can be a difficult subject, if you have ever placed a bet in the past, chances are that you already have a good intuitive grasp of what you need. In fact, I had already sneaked the term "expected" into previous chapters, even though we only now firm up your knowledge of this important statistical concept.

5·1.A. Random Variables and Expected Values

A "fair" bet means that both sides break even if the bet is repeated infinitely many times.

The most important statistical concept is the **expected value**, which is most often just a fancy phrase for **mean** or **average**. The only necessary clarification is that we use "means" and "averages" for past outcomes and "expected value" for future outcomes.

> **IMPORTANT**: *The expected value is just a mean (or average) that is computed over future outcomes if hypothetical scenarios are repeated (infinitely) often.*

The "Expected Value" is the average outcome. An expected value can be an impossible realization.

For example, say you toss a coin, which can come up with either heads or tails and with equal probability. You receive \$1 if the coin comes up heads and \$2 if the coin comes up tails. Because you know that there is a 50% chance of \$1 and a 50% chance of \$2, the expected value of each coin toss is \$1.50—repeated infinitely often, the mean will be exactly \$1.50. Of course, exactly \$1.50 will never come up—the expected value does not need to be a possible **realization** of a single coin toss.

A random variable is a number whose realization is not yet known.

Statisticians have invented the concept of **random variables** to make it easier to work with uncertainty. A random variable is a variable whose value (i.e., outcome) has not yet been determined. In the coin toss example, we can define a random variable named c (for "coin toss outcome") that takes the value \$1 with 50% probability and the value \$2 with 50% probability. The expected value of c is \$1.50. To distinguish a random variable from an ordinary non-random variable, we use a tilde over the variable. To denote the expected value, we use the notation $\mathcal{E}$. So, in this bet,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{c}) &= 50\% \cdot \$1 + 50\% \cdot \$2 = \$1.50 \\ \text{Expected Value(of Coin Toss)} &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Heads}) \cdot \$1 + \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tails}) \cdot \$2 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{5.1}$$

After the coin has been tossed, the actual outcome c could, e.g., be

$$c = \$2 \ , \tag{5.2}$$

and c is no longer a random variable. Also, if you are certain about the outcome, perhaps because there is only one possible outcome, then the actual realization and the expected value are the same. The random variable is then really just an ordinary non-random variable. Is the expected outcome of the coin toss a random variable? No: we know the expected outcome is \$1.50 even before we toss the coin. The expected value is known, the uncertain outcome is not. The expected value is an ordinary non-random variable; the outcome is a random variable. Is the outcome of the coin throw *after* it has come down heads a random variable? No: we know what it is (heads), so it is not a random variable.

file=uncertainty.tex: RP

Figure 5.1. A Histogram For a Random Variable With Two Equally Likely Outcomes, \$1 and \$2.

Computing expected values from distributions.

A random variable is defined by the **probability distribution** of its possible outcomes. The coin throw distribution is simple: the value \$1 with 50% probability and the value \$2 with 50% probability. This is sometimes graphed in a histogram, as depicted in Figure 5.1.

An example with 3 possible outcomes.

For practice, let us make this a bit trickier. Assume that there is a 16.7% chance that you will get \$4, a 33.3% chance that you will get \$10, and a 50% chance that you will get \$20. You can simulate this payoff structure by throwing a die and getting \$4 if it comes up ⚀, \$10 if it comes up ⚁ or ⚂, and \$20 if it comes up ⚃, ⚄, or ⚅.

If it costs its expected value to buy a bet, the bet is fair. An example of a fair bet.

Now, a **fair bet** is a bet that costs its expected value. If repeated infinitely often, both the person offering the bet and the person taking the bet would expect to end up even. What is a fair price for our die bet? Call the uncertain payoff $\tilde{D}$. First, you must determine $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{D})$. It is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{D}) &= 16.7\% \cdot \$4 \\
&+ 33.3\% \cdot \$10 \\
&+ 50.0\% \cdot \$20 \quad = \$14 \\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{D}) &= \mathcal{P}rob(⚀) \cdot (\text{Payout if } ⚀) \\
&+ \mathcal{P}rob(⚁ \text{ or } ⚂) \cdot (\text{Payout if } ⚁ \text{ or } ⚂) \\
&+ \mathcal{P}rob(⚃ \text{ or } ⚄ \text{ or } ⚅) \cdot (\text{Payout if } ⚃ \text{ or } ⚄ \text{ or } ⚅) \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{5.3}$$

Therefore, if you repeat this bet a million times, you would expect to earn \$14 million. (On average, each bet would earn \$14, although some sampling variation in actual trials would make this a little more or less.) If it costs \$14 to buy each bet, it would be a fair bet.

The expected value is the probability weighted sum of all possible outcomes.

Generally, you compute expected values by multiplying each outcome by its probability and adding up all these products. If $\tilde{X}$ is a random variable with N possible outcomes, named X_1 through X_N, then you would compute

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) = \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = X_1) \cdot X_1 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = X_2) \cdot X_2 + \cdots + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = X_N) \cdot X_N \ . \tag{5.4}$$

This is the formula that you used above,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{D}) &= 16.7\% \cdot \$4 + 33.3\% \cdot \$10 + 50\% \cdot \$20 = \$14 \ . \\
&= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_1) \cdot D_1 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_2) \cdot D_2 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_3) \cdot D_3 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{5.5}$$

Note that N could be a trillion possible different outcomes, and many of them could be impossible, i.e., have probabilities of zero.

IMPORTANT: *You must understand*

1. *the difference between an ordinary variable and a random variable;*
2. *the difference between a realization and an expectation;*
3. *how to compute an expected value, given probabilities and outcomes;*
4. *what a fair bet is.*

We will consider the expected value the measure of the (average) **reward** that we expect to receive from making an investment.

Looking ahead, the standard deviation is the most common measure of spread.

There are also summary measures of spread, often used as measures of risk. They will play starring roles in Part III, where I will explain them in great detail. For now, if you are curious, think of them as measures of the variability of outcomes around your expected mean. The most common measure is the standard deviation, which takes the square-root of the sum of squared deviations from the mean—a mouthful. Let's just do it once,

$$\begin{aligned} Sdv(\tilde{D}) &= \sqrt{16.7\% \cdot (\$4 - \$14)^2 + 33.3\% \cdot (\$10 - \$14)^2 + 50\% \cdot (\$20 - \$14)^2} \approx \$6.3 \quad . \\ &= \sqrt{\mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_1) \cdot [D_1 - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{D})]^2 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_2) \cdot [D_2 - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{D})]^2 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{D} = D_3) \cdot [D_3 - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{D})]^2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.6}$$

Losely speaking, this adds to your summary that describes that you expect to earn \$14 from a single die throw that you expect to earn \$14 plus or minus \$6.3.

Solve Now!

Q 5.1 *Is the expected value of a die throw a random variable?*

Q 5.2 *Could it be that the expected value of a bet is a random variable?*

Q 5.3 *An ordinary die came up with a* ⚅ *yesterday. What was its expected outcome before the throw? What was its realization?*

Q 5.4 *A stock that has the following probability distribution (outcome P_{+1}) costs \$50. Is an investment in this stock a fair bet?*

Prob	P_{+1}	*Prob*	P_{+1}	*Prob*	P_{+1}	*Prob*	P_{+1}
5%	\$41	20%	\$45	20%	\$58	5%	\$75
10%	\$42	30%	\$48	10%	\$70		

5·1.B. Risk Neutrality (and Risk Aversion Preview)

Choosing investments on the basis of expected values is assuming risk-neutrality.

Fortunately, the expected value is all that we need to learn about statistics until we will get to Part III (investments). This is because we are assuming—only for learning purposes—that everyone is **risk-neutral**. Essentially, this means that investors are willing to write or take any fair bet. For example, you would be indifferent between getting \$1 for sure, and getting either \$0 or \$2 with 50% probability. And you would be indifferent between earning 10% from a risk-free bond, and earning either 0% or 20% from a risky bond. You have no preference between investments with equal expected values, no matter how safe or uncertain they may be.

Risk aversion means you would prefer the safe project, so you would demand an extra kicker to take the riskier project.

If, instead, you were risk-averse—which you probably are in the real world—you would not want to invest in the more risky alternative if both the risky and safe alternative offered the same expected rate of return. You would prefer the safe \$1 to the unsafe \$0 or \$2 investment. You would prefer the 10% risk-free Treasury bond to the unsafe corporate bond that would pay either 0% or 20%. In this case, if I wanted to sell you a risky project or bond, I would have to offer you a higher rate of return as risk compensation. I might have to pay you, say, 5 cents to get you to be willing to accept the project that pays off \$0 or \$2 if you can instead earn \$1. Or, I would have to lower the price of my corporate bond, so that it offers you a higher expected rate of return, say, 1% and 21% instead of 0% and 20%.

Where risk-aversion matters and where it does not matter.

Would you really worry about a bet for either +\$1 or −\$1? Probably not. For small bets, you are probably close to risk-neutral—I may not have to offer even one cent to take this bet. But what about a bet for plus or minus \$100? Or for plus and minus \$10,000? My guess is that you would be fairly reluctant to accept the latter bet without getting extra compensation. For large bets, you are probably fairly risk-averse—I would have to offer you several hundred dollars to take this bet. However, your own personal risk aversion is not what matters in financial markets. Instead, it is an aggregate risk aversion. For example, if you could share the \$10,000 bet with 100 other students in your class, the bet would be only \$100 for you. And some of your colleagues may be willing to accept even more risk for less extra money—they may have healthier bank accounts or wealthier parents. If you could lay bets across many investors, the effective risk aversion would therefore be less. And this is exactly how financial markets work: the aggregate risk absorption capability is considerably higher than that of any individual. In effect, financial markets are less risk averse than individuals.

The tools we shall learn now will remain applicable under risk-aversion.

We will study risk aversion in the investments part of the book. There, we will also need to define good measures of **risk**, a subject we can avoid here. (Appendix 2·4 provides more advanced statistical background, if you are interested.) But, as always, all tools we learn under the simpler scenario (risk-neutrality) will remain applicable under the more complex scenario (risk-aversion). And, in any case, in the real world, the difference between promised and expected returns that we shall discuss in this chapter is often more important (in terms of value) than the extra compensation for risk that we shall ignore in this chapter.

5·2. Interest Rates and Credit Risk (Default Risk)

Most loans in the real world are not risk-free, because the borrower may not fully pay back what was promised. So, how do we compute appropriate rates of returns for risky bonds?

5·2.A. Risk-Neutral Investors Demand Higher *Promised* Rates

You can ask the same interest rate from an investor as from the Treasury if payment is certain.

Put yourself into the position of a banker. Assume a one-year Treasury bond offers a safe annual rate of return of 10%. You are about to lend \$1 million to a risky company. The loan maturity is one year. You must decide what interest rate to charge on the loan. If you are 100% certain that the lender will fully pay the agreed-upon amount, you can earn as much charging a 10% interest rate from the borrower as you can from buying the Treasury bond. Both provide \$1,100,000 in repayment.

If you quote a risky borrower a particular interest rate, you must expect to earn a lower interest rate.

However, in the real world, there are few if any borrowers for whom you can be 100% certain that they will fully repay a loan. Let's take an extreme example. Assume you think there is a 50% chance that the company will **default** (fail to pay all that it has promised), and the borrower can only pay back \$750,000. There is also a 50% chance that the company will pay back the principal plus interest (in which case the company is called **solvent**). In this case, if you charge a 10% interest rate, your expected payout would be

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 50\% & \cdot & \$750,000 & + & 50\% & \cdot & \$1,100,000 & = & \$925,000\,. \\ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Default}) & \cdot & \text{Payment if Default} & + & \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Solvent}) & \cdot & \text{Payment if Solvent} & & \end{array} \tag{5.7}$$

So your *expected* return would not be \$1,100,000, but only \$925,000. Your *expected* rate of return would not be +10%, but only \$925,000/\$1,000,000 − 1 = −7.5%. Extending such a loan would not be—pardon the pun—in your best interest: you can do better by putting your \$1,000,000 into government Treasury bills.

You must ask for a higher promised interest—received only in good times—in order to make up for default risk.

So, as a banker, you must demand a higher interest rate from risky borrowers, even if you just want to "break even" (i.e., earn the same \$1,100,000 that you could earn in Treasury bonds). If you solve

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 50\% & \cdot & \$750,000 & + & 50\% & \cdot & (\text{promised repayment}) & = & \$1,100,000 \\ \mathcal{P}rob & \cdot & \text{Payment if Default} & + & \mathcal{P}rob & \cdot & \text{Payment if Solvent} & = & \text{Treasury Payment} \end{array} \tag{5.8}$$

for the desired promised repayment, you find that you must ask the borrower for \$1,450,000. The promised interest rate is therefore \$1,450,000/\$1,000,000 − 1 = 45%. Of this 45%, 10% is the time premium. Therefore, we can call the remaining 35% the **default premium**—the difference between the promised rate and the expected rate that allows the lender to break even.

Common terminology

We rarely observe expected rates of return directly. Newspaper and financial documents almost always provide only the **promised interest rate**, which is therefore also called the **quoted interest rate** or the **stated interest rate**. (The Yield-to-Maturity, YTM, also is usually merely a promised rate, not an expected rate.) On Wall Street, the **default premium** is often called the **credit premium**, and **default risk** is often called **credit risk**.

Solve Now!

Q 5.5 *For what kind of bonds are expected and promised interest rates the same?*

5·2.B. A More Elaborate Example With Probability Ranges

Borrowers may sometimes not be able to repay.

Now work a similar but more involved example in which we assume that you want to lend money to me. Assume I am often not able to pay you back, despite my best intentions and promises. You believe I will pay you with 98% probability what I promise, with 1% probability half of what I borrowed, and with 1% probability nothing. I want to borrow \$200 from you, and you could alternatively invest the \$200 into a government bond promising a 5% interest rate, so you would receive \$210 for certain. What interest rate would you ask of me?

Table 5.1. Risky Loan Payoff Table: 5% Promised Interest Rate

Receive Cash Flow $CF_{t=1}$	which is a return of	How Likely (Probability)
\$210	5.0%	98% of the time
\$100	-52.4%	1% of the time
\$0	-100.0%	1% of the time

If you ask me to pay the risk-free interest rate, you will on average earn less than the risk-free interest rate.

Table 5.1 shows that if you ask me for a 5% interest rate, your expected cash return will be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) &= 98\% \cdot \$210 \\ &+ 1\% \cdot \$100 \\ &+ 1\% \cdot \$0 = \$206.80 \end{aligned} \tag{5.10}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) &= \mathcal{P}rob\ CF_{t=1} \text{ will be case 1} \cdot CF_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 1} \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob\ CF_{t=1} \text{ will be case 2} \cdot CF_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 2} \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob\ CF_{t=1} \text{ will be case 3} \cdot CF_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 3} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

This expected return of \$206.80 is less than the \$210 that the government promises. Put differently, if I *promise* you a rate of return of 5%,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Promised}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \frac{\$210 - \$200}{\$200} = 5.00\% \\ \text{Promised}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \frac{\text{Promised}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) - CF_{t=0}}{CF_{t=0}} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{5.11}$$

your expected rate of return is only

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,t=1}) &= \frac{\$206.80 - \$200}{\$200} = 3.40\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,t=1}) &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) - CF_{t=0}}{CF_{t=0}} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{5.12}$$

which is less than the 5% interest rate that Uncle Sam promises—and surely delivers.

Determine how much more interest promise you need to break even.

You need to determine how much I have to promise you to "break even," so that you expect to end up with the same \$210 that you could receive from Uncle Sam. In Table 5.1, we computed the expected payoff as the probability-weighted average payoff. You want this payoff to be not

file=uncertainty.tex: LP

$206.80, but the $210 that you can get if you put your money in government bonds. So, you now solve for an amount x that you want to receive if I have money,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) &= 98\% \cdot x \\
&+ 1\% \cdot \$100 \\
&+ 1\% \cdot \$0 = \$210.00 \\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) &= \textit{Prob}\ \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ will be case 1} \cdot \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 1} \\
&+ \textit{Prob}\ \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ will be case 2} \cdot \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 2} \\
&+ \textit{Prob}\ \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ will be case 3} \cdot \mathrm{CF}_{t=1} \text{ cash flow in case 3} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{5.13}$$

The solution is that if I promise you $x = \$213.27$, you will expect to earn the same 5% interest rate that you can earn in Treasury bonds. Table 5.2 confirms that a promise of $213.27 for a cash investment of $200, which is a *promised* interest rate of

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Promised}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \frac{\$213.27 - \$200}{\$200} = 6.63\% \\
\text{Promised}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \frac{\text{Promised}(\tilde{C}_{t=1}) - \mathrm{CF}_{t=0}}{\mathrm{CF}_{t=0}} \quad ,
\end{aligned} \tag{5.14}$$

and provides an *expected* interest rate of

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) = 98\% \cdot (+6.63\%) + 1\% \cdot (-50\%) + 1\% \cdot (-100\%) = 5\% \quad . \tag{5.15}$$

Table 5.2. Risky Payoff Table: 6.63% Promised Interest Rate

Receive Cash Flow $\mathrm{CF}_{t=1}$	which is a return of	How Likely (Probability)
$213.27	+6.63%	98% of the time
$100.00	-50.00%	1% of the time
$0.00	-100.00%	1% of the time
$210.00	+5.00%	in expectation

The difference between the promised and expected interest rate is the default premium.

The difference of 1.63% between the promised (or quoted) interest rate of 6.63% and the expected interest rate of 5% is the default premium—it is the extra interest rate that is caused by the default risk. Of course, you only receive this 6.63% *if* everything goes perfectly. In our perfect world with risk-neutral investors,

$$\begin{aligned}
6.63\% &= 5\% + 1.63\% \\
\text{“Promised Interest Rate”} &= \text{“Time Premium”} + \text{“Default Premium”} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{5.16}$$

IMPORTANT: *Except for 100% safe bonds (Treasuries), the promised (or quoted) rate of return is higher than the expected rate of return. Never confuse the higher promised rate for the lower expected rate.*

Financial securities and information providers rarely, if ever, provide expected rates of return.

On average, the expected rate of return is the expected time premium plus the expected default premium. Because the *expected* default premium is zero *on average*,

In a risk-neutral world, all securities have the same exp. rate of return.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}(\text{Rate of Return}) &= \mathcal{E}(\text{Time Premium}) + \mathcal{E}(\text{Realized Default Premium}) \\ &= \mathcal{E}(\text{Time Premium}) + 0 \quad .\end{aligned} \tag{5.17}$$

If you want to work this out, you can compute the expected realized default premium as follows: you will receive (6.63% − 5% = 1.63%) in 98% of all cases; −50% − 5% = −55% in 1% of all cases (note that you lose the time-premium); and −100% − 5% = −105% in the remaining 1% of all cases (i.e., you lose not only all your money, but also the time-premium). Therefore,

$$\mathcal{E}(\text{Realized Default Premium}) = 98\% \cdot (+1.63\%) + 1\% \cdot (-55\%) + 1\% \cdot (-105\%) = 0\% \quad . \tag{5.18}$$

Solve Now!

Q 5.6 *Recompute the example in Table 5.2 assuming that the probability of receiving full payment of $210 is only 95%, the probability of receiving $100 is 1%, and the probability of receiving absolutely no payment is 4%.*

(a) At the promised interest rate of 5%, what is the expected interest rate?

(b) What interest rate is required as a promise to ensure an expected interest rate of 5%?

5·2.C. Preview: Risk-Averse Investors Have Demanded Higher *Expected* Rates

We have assumed that investors are risk-neutral—indifferent between two loans that have the same expected rate of return. As we have already mentioned, in the real world, risk-averse investors would demand and expect to receive a little bit more for the risky loan. Would you rather invest into a bond that is known to pay off 5% (for example, a U.S. government bond), or would you rather invest in a bond that is "merely" expected to pay off 5% (such as my 6.63% bond)? Like most lenders, you are likely to be better off if you know exactly how much you will receive, rather than live with the uncertainty of my situation. Thus, as a risk-averse investor, you would probably ask me not only for the higher *promised* interest rate of 6.63%, which only gets you to an expected interest rate of 5%, but an even higher promise in order to get you more than 6.63%. For example, you might demand 6.75%, in which case you would expect to earn not just 5%, but a little more. The extra 12 basis points is called a **risk premium**, and it is an interest component required above and beyond the time premium (i.e., what the U.S. Treasury Department pays for use of money over time) and above and beyond the default premium (i.e., what the promised interest has to be for you to just expect to receive the same rate of return as what the government offers).

In addition to the default premium, in real life, investors also demand a risk premium.

Recapping, we know that 5% is the time-value of money that you can earn in interest from the Treasury. You also know that 1.63% is the extra default premium that I must promise you, a risk-neutral lender, to allow you to expect to earn 5%, given that repayment is not guaranteed. Finally, if you are not risk-neutral but risk-averse, I may have to pay even more than 6.63%, although we do not know exactly how much.

A more general decomposition of rates of return.

If you want, you could think of further interest decompositions. It could even be that the time-premium is itself determined by other factors (such as your preference between consuming today and consuming next year, the inflation rate, taxes, or other issues, that we are brushing over). Then there would be a **liquidity premium**, an extra interest rate that a lender would demand if the bond could not easily be sold—resale is much easier with Treasury bonds.

More intellectually interesting, but otherwise not too useful decompositions.

IMPORTANT: *When repayment is not certain, lenders demand a promised interest rate that is higher than the expected interest rate by the default premium.*

$$\begin{aligned} &\textit{Promised Interest Rate} \\ &= \textit{Time Premium} + \textit{Default Premium} + \textit{Risk Premium} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.19}$$

The promised default premium is positive, but it is only paid when everything goes well. The actually earned interest rate consists of the time premium, the realized risk premium, and a (positive or negative) default realization.

$$\begin{aligned} &\textit{Actual Interest Rate Earned} \\ &= \textit{Time Premium} + \textit{Default Realization} + \textit{Risk Premium} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.20}$$

The default realization could be more than negative enough to wipe out both the time premium and the risk premium. But it is zero on average. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} &\textit{Expected Interest Rate} \\ &= \textit{Time Premium} + \textit{Expected Risk Premium} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.21}$$

Some real world evidence.

The risk premium itself depends on such strange concepts as the correlation of loan default with the general economy and will be the subject of Part III of the book. However, we can preview the relative importance of these components for you in the context of corporate bonds. (We will look at risk categories of corporate bonds in more detail in the next chapter.) The highest-quality bonds are called investment-grade. A typical such bond may promise about 6% per annum, 150 to 200 basis points above the equivalent Treasury. The probability of default would be small—less than 3% in total over a ten-year horizon (0.3% per annum). When an investment-grade bond does default, it still returns about 75% of what it promised. For such bonds, the risk premium would be small—a reasonable estimate would be that only about 10 to 20 basis points of the 200 basis point spread is the risk premium. The quoted interest rate of 6% per annum therefore would reflect first the time premium, then the default premium, and only then a small risk premium. (In fact, the liquidity premium would probably be more important than the risk premium.) For low-quality corporate bonds, however, the risk premium can be important. Ed Altman has been collecting corporate bond statistics since the 1970s. In an average year, about 3.5% to 5.5% of low-grade corporate bonds defaulted. But in recessions, the default rate shot up to 10% per year, and in booms it dropped to 1.5% per year. The average value of a bond after default was only about 40 cents on the dollar, though it was as low 25 cents in recessions and as high as 50 cents in booms. Altman then computes that the most risky corporate bonds promised a spread of about 5%/year above the 10-Year Treasury bond, but ultimately delivered a spread of only about 2.2%/year. 280 points are therefore the default premium. The remaining 220 basis points contain both the liquidity premium and the risk premium—perhaps in roughly equal parts.

Solve Now!

Q 5.7 *Return to the example in Table 5.2. Assume that the probability of receiving full payment of \$210 is only 95%, the probability of receiving \$100 is 4%, and the probability of receiving absolutely no payment is 1%. If the bond quotes a rate of return of 12%, what is the time premium, the default premium and the risk premium?*

5·3. Uncertainty in Capital Budgeting, Debt, and Equity

We now turn to the problem of selecting projects under uncertainty. Your task is to compute present values with imperfect knowledge about future outcomes. Your principal tool in this task will be the **payoff table** (or **state table**), which assigns probabilities to the project value in each possible future value-relevant scenario. For example, a floppy disk factory may depend on computer sales (say, low, medium, or high), whether floppy disks have become obsolete (yes or no), whether the economy is in a recession or expansion, and how much the oil price (the major cost factor) will be. Creating the appropriate state table is the manager's task—judging how the business will perform depending on the state of these most relevant variables. Clearly, it is not an easy task even to think of what the key variables are, to determine the probabilities under which these variables will take on one or another value. Assessing how your own project will respond to them is an even harder task—but it is an inevitable one. If you want to understand the value of your project, you must understand what the project's key value drivers are and how the project will respond to these value drivers. Fortunately, for many projects, it is usually not necessary to describe possible outcomes in the most minute detail—just a dozen or so scenarios may be able to cover the most important information. Moreover, these state tables will also allow you to explain what a *loan* (also called *debt* or *leverage*) and *levered ownership* (also called *levered equity*) are, and how they differ.

5·3.A. Present Value With State-Contingent Payoff Tables

Most projects are financed with a mix of debt and equity.

Almost all companies and projects are financed with both debt and levered equity. We already know what debt is. **Levered equity** is simply what accrues to the business owner *after* the debt is paid off. (In this chapter, we shall not make a distinction between financial debt and other obligations, e.g., tax obligations.) You already have an intuitive sense about this. If you own a house with a mortgage, you really own the house only after you have made all debt payments. If you have student loans, you *yourself* are the levered owner of your future income stream. That is, you get to consume "your" residual income only *after* your liabilities (including your non-financial debt) are paid back. But what will the levered owner and the lender get if the company's projects fail, if the house collapses, or if your career takes a turn towards Rikers Island? What is the appropriate compensation for the lender and the levered owner? The split of net present value streams into loans (debt) and levered equity lies at the heart of finance.

The example of this section: A building in Tornado Alley can have one of two possible future values.

We will illustrate this split through the hypothetical purchase of a building for which the future value is uncertain. This building is peculiar, though: it has a 20% chance that it will be destroyed, say by a tornado, by next year. In this case, its value will only be the land—say, $20,000. Otherwise, with 80% probability, the building will be worth $100,000. Naturally, the $100,000 market value next year would itself be the result of many factors—it could include any products that have been produced inside the building, real-estate value appreciation, as well as a capitalized value that takes into account that a tornado might strike in subsequent years.

Table 5.3. Building Payoff Table

Event	Probability	Value
Tornado	20%	$20,000
Sunshine	80%	$100,000
Expected Future Value		$84,000

The Expected Building Value

To obtain the expected future cash value of the building, multiply each (possible) outcome by its probability.

Table 5.3 shows the payoff table for full building ownership. The expected future building value of \$84,000 was computed as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}(\text{Value}_{t=1}) &= 20\% \cdot \$20,000 \\ &+ 80\% \cdot \$100,000 = \$84,000 \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (\text{Value if Tornado}_{t=1}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (\text{Value if Sunshine}_{t=1}) \ .\end{aligned} \tag{5.22}$$

Then discount back the expected cash value using the appropriate cost of capital.

Now, assume that the appropriate expected rate of return for a project of type "building" with this type of riskiness and with one-year maturity is 10%. (This 10% discount rate is provided by demand and supply in the financial markets and known.) Your goal is to determine the present value—the appropriate correct price—for the building *today*.

Under uncertainty, use NPV on expected (rather than actual, known) cash flows, and use the appropriate expected (rather than actual, known) rates of return. The NPV principles remain untouched.

There are two methods to arrive at the present value of the building—and they are almost identical to what we have done earlier. We only need to replace the known value with the expected value, and the known future rate of return with an expected rate of return. Now, the first PV method is to compute the expected value of the building next period and to discount it at the cost of capital, here 10 percent,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{PV}_{t=0} &= \frac{\$84,000}{1+10\%} \approx \$76,363.64 \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{Value}_{t=1})}{1+\mathcal{E}(r_{t=0,1})} \ .\end{aligned} \tag{5.23}$$

Table 5.4. Building Payoff Table, Augmented

Event	Probability	Value	Discount Factor	⇒	PV
Tornado	20%	\$20,000	$1/(1+10\%)$	⇒	\$18,181.82
Sunshine	80%	\$100,000	$1/(1+10\%)$	⇒	\$90,909.09

Taking expectations and discounting can be done in any order.

The second method is to compute the discounted state-contingent value of the building, and then take expected values. To do this, augment Table 5.3. Table 5.4 shows that *if* the tornado strikes, the present value is \$18,181.82. *If* the sun shines, the present value is \$90,909.10. Thus, the expected value of the building can also be computed

$$\begin{aligned}\text{PV}_{t=0} &= 20\% \cdot \$18,181.82 \\ &+ 80\% \cdot \$90,909.09 \approx \$76,363.64 \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (\text{PV of Building if Tornado}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (\text{PV of Building if Sunshine}) \ .\end{aligned} \tag{5.24}$$

Both methods lead to the same result: you can either first compute the expected value next year ($20\% \cdot \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot \$100,000 = \$84,000$), and then discount this expected value of \$84,000 to \$76,363.34; or you can first discount all possible future outcomes (\$20,000 to \$18,181.82; and \$100,000 to \$90,909.09), and then compute the expected value of the discounted values ($20\% \cdot \$18,181.82 + 80\% \cdot \$90,909.09 = \$76,363.34$.)

IMPORTANT: *Under uncertainty, in the NPV formula,*

- *known future cash flows are replaced by expected discounted cash flows, and*
- *known appropriate rates of return are replaced by appropriate expected rates of return.*

You can first do the discounting and then take expectations, or vice-versa.

The State-Dependent Rates of Return

What would the rates of return be in both states, and what would the overall expected rate of return be? If you have bought the building for \$76,363.64, and no tornado strikes, your actual rate of return (abbreviated $r_{t=0,1}$) will be

The state-contingent rates of return can also be probability-weighted to arrive at the average (expected) rate of return.

$$\text{if Sunshine:} \qquad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$100,000 - \$76,363.64}{\$76,363.64} \approx +30.95\% \ . \tag{5.25}$$

If the tornado does strike, your rate of return will be

$$\text{if Tornado:} \qquad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$20,000 - \$76,363.64}{\$76,363.64} \approx -73.81\% \ . \tag{5.26}$$

Therefore, your expected rate of return is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= 20\% \cdot (-73.81\%) \\ &+ 80\% \cdot (+30.95\%) = 10.00\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Tornado}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Sunshine}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.27}$$

The probability state-weighted rates of return add up to the expected overall rate of return. This is as it should be: after all, we derived the proper price of the building today using a 10% expected rate of return.

Solve Now!

Q 5.8 *What changes have to be made to the NPV formula to handle an uncertain future?*

Q 5.9 *Under risk-neutrality, a factory can be worth \$500,000 or \$1,000,000 in two years, depending on product demand, each with equal probability. The appropriate cost of capital is 6% per year. What is the present value of the factory?*

Q 5.10 *A new product may be a dud (20% probability), an average seller (70% probability) or dynamite (10% probability). If it is a dud, the payoff will be \$20,000; if it is an average seller, the payoff will be \$40,000; if it is dynamite, the payoff will be \$80,000. What is the expected payoff of the project?*

Q 5.11 *(Continued.) The appropriate expected rate of return for such payoffs is 8%. What is the PV of the payoff?*

Q 5.12 *(Continued.) If the project is purchased for the appropriate present value, what will be the rates of return in each of the three outcomes?*

Q 5.13 *(Continued.) Confirm the expected rate of return when computed from the individual outcome specific rates of return.*

5·3.B. Splitting Project Payoffs into Debt and Equity

State-contingent claims have payoffs that depend on future states of nature.

We now know how to compute the NPV of state-contingent payoffs—our building paid off differently in the two states of nature. Thus, our building was a state-contingent claim—its payoff depended on the outcome. But it is just one of many. Another state-contingent claim might promise to pay \$1 if the sun shines and \$25 if a tornado strikes. Using payoff tables, we can work out the value of *any* state-contingent claims—and in particular the value of the two most important state-contingent claims, debt and equity.

The Loan

Assume the building is funded by a mortgagor and a residual, levered building owner.

We now assume you want to finance the building purchase of \$76,363.64 with a mortgage of \$25,000. In effect, the single project "building" is being turned into two different projects, each of which can be owned by a different party. The first project is the project "Mortgage Lending." The second project is the project "Residual Building Ownership," i.e., ownership of the building but bundled with the obligation to repay the mortgage. This "Residual Building Ownership" investor will not receive a dime until *after* the debt has been satisfied. Such residual ownership is called the **levered equity**, or just the **equity**, or even the **stock** in the building, in order to avoid calling it "what's-left-over-after-the-loans-have-been-paid-off."

The first goal is to determine the appropriate promised interest rate on a "\$25,000 value today" mortgage loan on the building.

What sort of interest rate would the creditor demand? To answer this question, we need to know what will happen if the building were to be condemned, because the mortgage value (\$25,000 today) will be larger than the value of the building if the tornado strikes (\$20,000 next year). We are assuming that the owner could walk away from it and the creditor could repossess the building, but not any of the borrower's other assets. Such a mortgage loan is called a **no-recourse loan**. There is no recourse other than taking possession of the asset itself. This arrangement is called **limited liability**. The building owner cannot lose more than the money that he originally puts in. Limited liability is a mainstay of many financial securities: for example, if you purchase stock in a company in the stock market, you cannot be held liable for more than your investment, regardless of how badly the company performs.

Table 5.5. Payoff to Mortgage Creditor, Providing \$25,000 Today

Event	*Prob*	Value	Discount Factor
Tornado	20%	\$20,000	$1/(1+10\%)$
Sunshine	80%	Promised	$1/(1+10\%)$

ANECDOTE:
The framers of the United States Constitution had the English bankruptcy system in mind when they included the power to enact "uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies" in the Article I Powers of the legislative branch. The first United States bankruptcy law, passed in 1800, virtually copied the existing English law. United States bankruptcy laws thus have their conceptual origins in English bankruptcy law prior to 1800. On both sides of the Atlantic, however, much has changed since then.

Early English law had a distinctly pro-creditor orientation, and was noteworthy for its harsh treatment of defaulting debtors. Imprisonment for debt was the order of the day, from the time of the Statute of Merchants in 1285, until Dickens' time in the mid-nineteenth century. The common law writs of capias authorized "body execution," i.e., seizure of the body of the debtor, to be held until payment of the debt.

English law was not unique in its lack of solicitude for debtors. History's annals are replete with tales of draconian treatment of debtors. Punishments inflicted upon debtors included forfeiture of all property, relinquishment of the consortium of a spouse, imprisonment, and death. In Rome, creditors were apparently authorized to carve up the body of the debtor, although scholars debate the extent to which the letter of that law was actually enforced.

Direct Source: Charles Jordan Tabb, 1995, "The History of the Bankruptcy laws in the United States." www.bankruptcyfinder.com/historyofbkinusa.html. (The original article contains many more juicy historical tidbits.)

file=uncertainty.tex: RP

To compute the PV for the project "Mortgage Lending," we return to the problem of setting an appropriate interest rate, given credit risk (from Section 5·2). Start with the payoff table in Table 5.5. The creditor receives the property worth \$20,000 if the tornado strikes, or the full promised amount (to be determined) if the sun shines. To break even, the creditor must solve for the payoff to be received if the sun will shine in exchange for lending \$25,000 today. This is the "quoted" or "promised" payoff.

Start with the Payoff Table, and write down payoffs to project "Mortgage Lending."

$$\begin{aligned} \$25,000 &= 20\% \cdot \left(\frac{\$20,000}{1+10\%}\right) \\ &+ 80\% \cdot \left(\frac{\text{Promise}}{1+10\%}\right) \\ \text{Loan Value}_{t=0} &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (\text{Loan PV if Tornado}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (\text{Loan PV if Sunshine}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.28}$$

Solving, the solution is a promise of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Promise} &= \frac{(1+10\%)\cdot\$25,000 \ - \ 20\%\cdot\$20,000}{80\%} = \$29,375 \\ &= \frac{[1+\mathcal{E}(r)]\cdot\text{Loan Value} \ - \ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado})\cdot\text{Value if Tornado}}{\mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine})} \end{aligned} \tag{5.29}$$

in repayment, paid by the borrower only if the sun will shine.

With this promised payoff of \$29,375 (if the sun will shine), the lender's rate of return will be the **promised rate of return**:

The state-contingent rates of return in the tornado ("default") state and in the sunshine state can be probability weighted to arrive at the expected rate of return.

$$\text{if Sunshine:} \qquad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$29,375 - \$25,000}{\$25,000} = +17.50\% \ , \tag{5.30}$$

The lender would not provide the mortgage at any lower promised interest rate. If the tornado strikes, the owner walks away, and the lender's rate of return will be

$$\text{if Tornado:} \qquad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$20,000 - \$25,000}{\$25,000} = -20.00\% \ . \tag{5.31}$$

Therefore, the lender's expected rate of return is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= 20\% \cdot (-20.00\%) \\ &+ 80\% \cdot (+17.50\%) = 10.00\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Tornado}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Sunshine}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.32}$$

After all, in a risk-neutral environment, anyone investing for one year expects to earn an expected rate of return of 10%.

The Levered Equity

Our interest now turns towards proper compensation for you—the expected payoffs and expected rate of return for you, the residual building owner. We already know the building is worth \$76,363.64 today. We also already know how the lender must be compensated: to contribute \$25,000 to the building price today, you must promise to pay the lender \$29,375 next year. Thus, as residual building owner, you need to pay \$51,363.64—presumably from personal savings. If the tornado strikes, these savings will be lost and the lender will repossess the building. However, if the sun shines, the building will be worth \$100,000 minus the promised \$29,375, or \$70,625. The owner's payoff table in Table 5.6 allows you to determine

Now compute the payoffs of the 60% post-mortgage (i.e., levered) ownership of the building. The method is exactly the same.

that the *expected* future levered building ownership payoff is $20\% \cdot \$0 + 80\% \cdot \$70,625 = \$56,500$. Therefore, the present value of levered building ownership is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_{t=0} &= 20\% \cdot \left(\frac{\$0}{1+10\%}\right) + 80\% \cdot \left(\frac{\$70,625}{1+10\%}\right) \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (\text{PV if Tornado}) + \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (\text{PV if Sunshine}) \\ &= \$51,363.64 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{5.33}$$

Table 5.6. Payoff To Levered Building (Equity) Owner

Event	$\mathcal{P}rob$	Value	Discount Factor
Tornado	20%	\$0.00	$1/(1+10\%)$
Sunshine	80%	\$70,624.80	$1/(1+10\%)$

Again, knowing the state-contingent cash flows permits computing state-contingent rates of return and the expected rate of return.

If the sun shines, the rate of return will be

$$\text{if Sunshine:} \quad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$70,624.80 - \$51,363.63}{\$51,363.63} = +37.50\% \quad . \tag{5.34}$$

If the tornado strikes, the rate of return will be

$$\text{if Tornado:} \quad r_{t=0,1} = \frac{\$0 - \$51,363.63}{\$51,363.63} = -100.00\% \quad . \tag{5.35}$$

The expected rate of return of levered equity ownership, i.e., the building with the bundled mortgage obligation, is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= 20\% \cdot (-100.00\%) \\ &+ 80\% \cdot (+37.50\%) = 10.00\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) &= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Tornado}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Tornado}) \\ &+ \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Sunshine}) \cdot (r_{t=0,1} \text{ if Sunshine}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{5.36}$$

Reflections On The Example: Payoff Tables

Payoff tables are fundamental tools to think about projects and financial claims. You should think about financial claims in terms of payoff tables.

IMPORTANT: *Whenever possible, in the presence of uncertainty, write down a payoff table to describe the probabilities of each possible event ("state") with its state-contingent payoffs.*

Admittedly, this can sometimes be tedious, especially if there are many different possible states (or even infinitely many states, as in a bell-shaped normally distributed project outcome—but you can usually approximate even the most continuous and complex outcomes fairly well with no more than ten discrete possible outcomes), but they always work!

Table 5.7. Payoff Table and Overall Values and Returns

Event	*Prob*	Building Value	Mortgage Value	Levered Ownership
Tornado	20%	$20,000	$20,000	$0
Sunshine	80%	$100,000	$29,375	$70,625
Expected Value$_{t=1}$		$84,000	$27,500	$56,500
PV$_{t=0}$		$76,364	$25,000	$51,364
$\mathcal{E}(r_{t=0,1})$		10%	10%	10%

Table 5.7 shows how elegant such a table can be. It can describe everything we need in a very concise manner: the state-contingent payoffs, expected payoffs, net present value, and expected rates of return for your building scenario. Because owning the mortgage and the levered equity is the same as owning the full building, the last two columns must add up to the values in the "building value" column. You could decide to be any kind of investor: a creditor (bank) who is loaning money in exchange for promised payment; a levered building owner who is taking a "piece left over after a loan"; or an unlevered building owner who is investing money into an unlevered project. You might take the whole piece (that is, 100% of the claim—all three investments are just claims) or you might just invest, say $5, at the appropriate fair rates of return that are due to investors in our perfect world, where everything can be purchased at or sold at a fair price. (Further remaining funds can be raised elsewhere.)

There are three possible investment opportunities here. The bank is just another investor, with particular payoff patterns.

Reflections On The Example and Debt and Equity Risk

We have not covered risk yet, because we did not need to. In a risk-neutral world, all that matters is the expected rate of return, not how uncertain you are about what you will receive. Of course, we can assess risk even in a risk-neutral world, even if risk were to earn no extra compensation (a risk premium).

So, which investment is most risky: full ownership, loan ownership, or levered ownership? Figure 5.2 plots the histograms of the rates of return to each investment type. As the visual shows, the loan is least risky, followed by the full ownership, followed by the levered ownership. Your intuition should tell you that, by taking the mortgage, the medium-risky project "building" has been split into a more risky project "levered building" and a less risky project "mortgage." The combined "full building ownership" project therefore has an average risk.

Leveraging (mortgaging) a project splits it into a safer loan and a riskier levered ownership, although everyone expects to receive 10% on average.

It should not come as a surprise to learn that all investment projects expect to earn a 10% rate of return. After all, 10% is the time-premium for investing money. Recall from Page 92 that the expected rate of return (the cost of capital) consists only of a time-premium and a risk premium. (The **default premium** is a component only of **promised interest rates**, not of **expected interest rates**; see Section 5·2). By assuming that investors are risk-neutral, we have assumed that the risk premium is zero. Investors are willing to take any investment that offers an expected rate of return of 10%, regardless of risk.

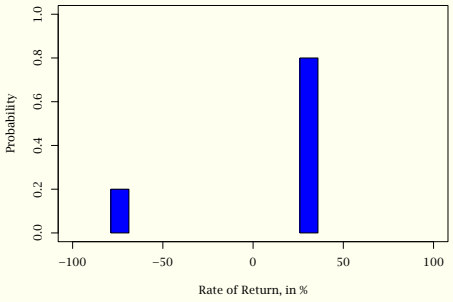
If everyone is risk-neutral, everyone should expect to earn 10%.

Although our example has been a little sterile, because we assumed away risk preferences, it is nevertheless very useful. Almost all projects in the real world are financed with loans extended by one party and levered ownership held by another party. Understanding debt and equity is as important to corporations as it is to building owners. After all, stocks in corporations are basically levered ownership claims that provide money only *after* the corporation has paid back its loans. The building example has given you the skills to compute state-contingent, promised, and expected payoffs, and state-contingent, promised, and expected rates of returns—the necessary tools to work with debt, equity, or any other state-contingent claim. And really, all that will happen later when we introduce risk aversion is that we will add a couple of extra basis

Unrealistic, maybe! But ultimately, maybe not.

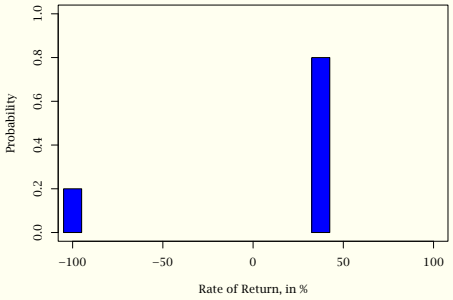
Figure 5.2. Probability Histograms of Project Returns

Histogram of Rate of Return for Project of Type "Full Ownership"



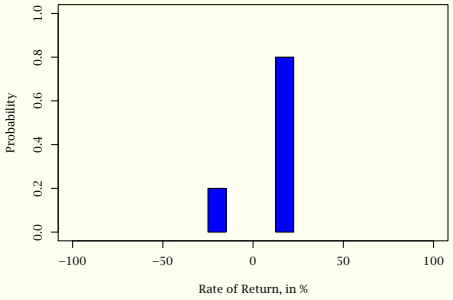
Histogram of Rate of Return for Project of Type "Levered Ownership"

(Most Risky)



Histogram of Rate of Return for Project of Type "Loan Ownership"

(Least Risky)



	20% probability	80% probability	Expected	
	Tornado	Sunshine	Average	Variability
Loan (Ownership)	$\frac{\$20,000}{\$25,000} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$29,375}{\$25,000} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$27,500}{\$25,000} - 1 =$	
	-20.00%	$+17.50\%$	10.00%	$\approx \pm 20\%$
Levered Ownership	$\frac{\$0}{\$51,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$70,625}{\$51,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$56,500}{\$51,364} - 1 =$	
	-100.00%	$+37.50\%$	10.00%	$\approx \pm 60\%$
Full Ownership	$\frac{\$20,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$100,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$84,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$	
	-73.81%	$+30.95\%$	10.00%	$\approx \pm 46\%$

Consider the variability number here to be just an intuitive measure—it is the aforementioned "standard deviation" that will be explained in great detail in Chapter 13. Here, it is computed as

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Loan Ownership} \quad Sdv &= \sqrt{20\% \cdot (-20.00\% - 10\%)^2 + 80\% \cdot (17.50\% - 10\%)^2} = 19.94\% \\
\text{Levered Ownership} \quad Sdv &= \sqrt{20\% \cdot (-100.00\% - 10\%)^2 + 80\% \cdot (37.50\% - 10\%)^2} = 59.04\% \\
\text{Full Ownership} \quad Sdv &= \sqrt{20\% \cdot (-73.81\% - 10\%)^2 + 80\% \cdot (30.95\% - 10\%)^2} = 46.07\% \\
Sdv &= \sqrt{\mathcal{P}rob_T \cdot [V_T - \mathcal{E}(V)]^2 + \mathcal{P}rob_S \cdot [V_S - \mathcal{E}(V)]^2} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{5.37}$$

points of required compensation—more to equity (the riskiest claim) than to the project (the medium-risk claim) than to debt (the safest claim).

Solve Now!

Q 5.14 *In the example, the building was worth $76,364, the mortgage was worth $25,000, and the equity was worth $51,364. The mortgage thus financed 32.7% of the cost of the building, and the equity financed $67.3%. Is the arrangement identical to one in which two partners purchase the building together—one puts in $25,000 and owns 32.7%, and the other puts in $51,364 and owns 67.3%?*

Q 5.15 *Buildings are frequently financed with a mortgage that pays 80% of the price, not just 32.7% ($25,000 of $76,364). Produce a table similar to Table 5.7 in this case.*

Q 5.16 *Repeat the example if the loan does not provide $25,000, but promises to pay off $25,000. How much money do you get for this promise? What is the promised rate of return. How does the riskiness of the project "full building ownership" compare to the riskiness of the project "levered building ownership"?*

Q 5.17 *Repeat the example if the loan promises to pay off $20,000. Such a loan is risk-free. How does the riskiness of the project "full building ownership" compare to the riskiness of the project "levered building ownership"?*

Q 5.18 *Under risk-neutrality, a factory can be worth $500,000 or $1,000,000 in two years, depending on product demand, each with equal probability. The appropriate cost of capital is 6% per year. The factory can be financed with proceeds of $500,000 from loans today. What are the promised and expected cash flows and rates of return for the factory (without loan), for the loan, and for a hypothetical factory owner who has to first repay the loan?*

Q 5.19 *Advanced: For illustration, we assumed that the sample building was not lived in. It consisted purely of capital amounts. But, in the real world, part of the return earned by a building owner is rent. Now assume that rent of $11,000 is paid strictly at year-end, and that both the state of nature (tornado or sun) and the mortgage loan payment happens only after the rent has been safely collected. The new building has a resale value of $120,000 if the sun shines, and a resale value of $20,000 if the tornado strikes.*

(a) What is the value of the building today?

(b) What is the promised interest rate for a lender providing $25,000 in capital today?

(c) What is the value of residual ownership today?

(d) Conceptual Question: What is the value of the building if the owner chooses to live in the building?

More Than Two Possible Outcomes

Multiple outcomes will cause multiple breakpoints.

How does this example generalize to multiple possible outcomes? For example, assume that the building could be worth \$20,000, \$40,000, \$60,000, \$80,000, or \$100,000 with equal probability, and the appropriate expected interest rate were 10%—so the building has an PV of $\$60,000/(1+10\%) \approx \$54,545.45$. If a loan promised \$20,000, how much would you expect to receive? But, of course, \$20,000!

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}\left(\text{ Payoff(Loan Promise =\$20,000) }\right) &= \$20,000\ . \\ \mathcal{E}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Payoff of Loan}\\ \text{if } \$0 \le \text{Loan} \le \$20,000\end{array}\right) &= \text{Loan}\ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.38}$$

If a loan promised \$20,001, how much would you expect to receive? \$20,000 for sure, plus the extra "marginal" \$1 with 80% probability. In fact, you would expect only 80 cents for each dollar promised between \$20,000 and \$40,000. So, if a loan promised \$40,000, you would expect to receive

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}\Big(\text{ Payoff(Loan Promise = \$40,000) }\Big) &= \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot (\$40,000 - \$20,000) \\ &= \$36,000 \\ \mathcal{E}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Payoff of Loan}\\ \text{if } \$20,000 \le \text{Loan} \le \$40,000\end{array}\right) &= \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot (\text{Loan} - \$20,000)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.39}$$

If a loan promised you \$40,001, how much would you expect to receive? You would get \$20,000 for sure, plus another \$20,000 with 80% probability (which is an expected \$16,000), plus the marginal \$1 with only 60% probability. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}\Big(\text{ Payoff(Loan Promise = \$40,001) }\Big) &= \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot (\$40,000 - \$20,000) \\ &\quad + 60\% \cdot \$1 \\ &= \$36,000.60 \\ \mathcal{E}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Payoff of Loan}\\ \text{if } \$40,000 \le \text{Loan} \le \$60,000\end{array}\right) &= \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot \$20,000 \\ &\quad + 60\% \cdot (\text{Loan} - \$40,000)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{5.40}$$

And so on. Figure 5.3 plots these expected payoffs as a function of the promised payoffs. With this figure, mortgage valuation becomes easy. For example, how much would the loan have to promise to provide \$35,000 today? The expected payoff would have to be $(1+10\%) \cdot \$35,000 = \$38,500$. Figure 5.3 shows that an expected payoff of \$38,500 corresponds to around \$44,000 in promise. (The exact number can be worked out to be \$44,167.) Of course, we cannot borrow more than \$54,545.45, the project's PV. So, we can forget about the idea of obtaining a \$55,000 mortgage.

Solve Now!

Q 5.20 *What is the expected payoff if the promised payoff is \$45,000?*

Q 5.21 *What is the promised payoff if the expected payoff is \$45,000?*

Q 5.22 *Assume that the probabilities are not equal: \$20,000 with probability 12.5%, \$40,000 with probability 37.5%, \$60,000 with probability 37.5%, and \$80,000 with probability 12.5%.*

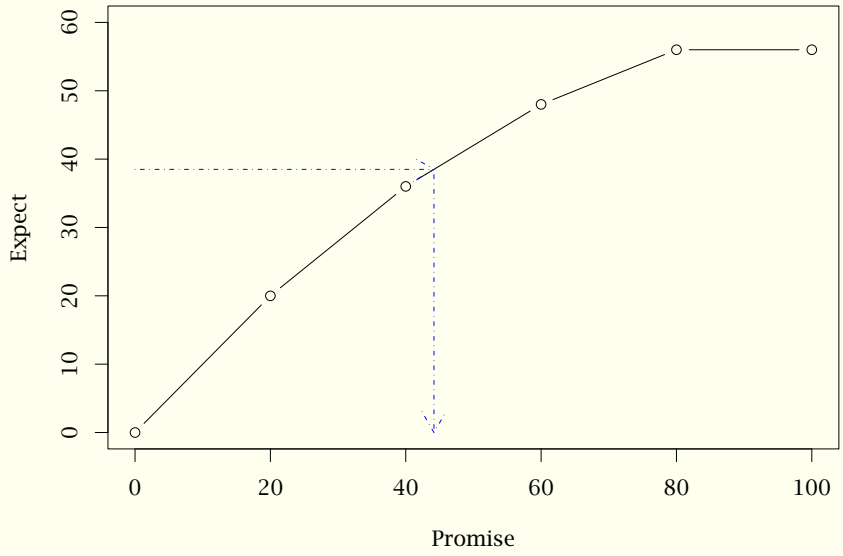
(a) Draw a graph equivalent to Figure 5.3.

(b) If the promised payoff of a loan is \$50,000, what is the expected payoff?

(c) If the prevailing interest rate is 5% before loan payoff, then how much repayment does a loan providing \$25,000 today have to promise? What is the interest rate?

You do not need to calculate these values, if you can read them off your graph.

Figure 5.3. Promised vs. Expected Payoffs



Q 5.23 *A new product may be a dud (20% probability), an average seller (70% probability) or dynamite (10% probability). If it is a dud, the payoff will be $20,000; if it is an average seller, the payoff will be $40,000; if it is dynamite, the payoff will be $80,000. The appropriate expected rate of return is 6% per year. If a loan promises to pay off $40,000, what are the promised and expected rates of return?*

Q 5.24 *Advanced: What is the formula equivalent to (5.40) for promised payoffs between $60,000 and $80,000?*

Q 5.25 *Advanced: Can you work out the exact $44,167 promise for the $35,000 (today!) loan?*

5·4. Robustness: How Bad are Your Mistakes?

How bad are mistakes?

Although it would be better to get everything perfect, it is often impossible to come up with perfect cash flow forecasts and appropriate interest rate estimates. Everyone makes errors. So, how bad are mistakes? How robust is the NPV formula? Is it worse to commit an error in estimating cash flows or in estimating the cost of capital? To answer these questions, we will do a simple form of **scenario analysis**—we will consider just a very simple project, and see how changes in estimates matter to the ultimate value. Doing good scenario analysis is also good practice for any managers—so that they can see how sensitive their estimated value is to reasonable alternative possible outcomes. Therefore this method is also called a **sensitivity analysis**. Doing such analysis becomes even more important when we consider "real options" in our next chapter.

5·4.A. Short-Term Projects

The benchmark case: A short-term project, correctly valued.

Assume that your project will pay off \$200 next year, and the proper interest rate for such projects is 8%. Thus, the correct project present value is

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{correct}} = \frac{\$200}{1+8\%} \approx \$185.19 \quad . \tag{5.44}$$

Committing an error in cash flow estimation.

If you make a 10% error in your cash flow, e.g., mistakenly believing it to return \$220, you will compute the present value to be

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{CF error}} = \frac{\$220}{1+8\%} \approx \$203.70 \quad . \tag{5.45}$$

The difference between \$203.70 and \$185.19 is a 10% error in your present value.

Committing an error in interest rate estimation.

In contrast, if you make a 10% error in your cost of capital (interest rate), mistakenly believing it to require a cost of capital (expected interest rate) of 8.8% rather than 8%, you will compute the present value to be

$$\mathsf{PV}_{r\text{ error}} = \frac{\$200}{1+8.8\%} \approx \$183.82 \quad . \tag{5.46}$$

The difference between \$183.82 and \$185.19 is less than a \$2 or 1% error.

> **IMPORTANT**: *For short-term projects, errors in estimating correct interest rates are less problematic in computing NPV than are errors in estimating future cash flows.*

5·4.B. Long-Term Projects

A long-term project, correctly valued and incorrectly valued.

Now take the same example, but assume the cash flow will occur in 30 years. The correct present value is now

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{correct}} = \frac{\$200}{(1+8\%)^{30}} \approx \$19.88 \quad . \tag{5.47}$$

The 10% "cash flow error" present value is

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{CF error}} = \frac{\$220}{(1+8\%)^{30}} \approx \$21.86 \quad , \tag{5.48}$$

and the 10% "interest rate error" present value is

$$\mathsf{PV}_{r\text{ error}} = \frac{\$200}{(1+8.8\%)^{30}} \approx \$15.93 \quad . \tag{5.49}$$

This calculation shows that cash flow estimation errors and interest rate estimation errors are now both important. So, for longer-term projects, estimating the correct interest rate becomes relatively more important. However, in fairness, estimating cash flows thirty years into the future is just about as difficult as reading a crystal ball. (In contrast, the uncertainty about the long-term cost of capital tends not explode as quickly as your uncertainty about cash flows.) Of course, as difficult as it may be, we have no alternative. We must simply try to do our best at forecasting.

Both cash flow and cost of capital errors are now important.

IMPORTANT: *For long-term projects, errors in estimating correct interest rates and errors in estimating future cash flows are both problematic in computing NPV.*

5·4.C. Two Wrongs Do Not Make One Right

Please do not think that you can arbitrarily adjust an expected cash flow to paint over an issue with your discount rate estimation, or vice-versa. For example, let us presume that you consider an investment project that is a bond issued by someone else. You know the bond's promised payoffs. You know these are higher than the expected cash flows. Maybe you can simply use the average promised discount rate on other risky bonds to discount the bond's promised cash flows? After all, the latter also reflects default risk. The two default issues might cancel one another, and you might end up with the correct number. *Or they might not cancel and you end up with a non-sense number!*

Do not think two errors cancel.

Let's say the appropriate expected rate of return is 10%. A suggested bond investment may promise \$16,000 for a \$100,000 investment, but have a default risk on the interest of 50% (the principal is insured). Your benchmark promised opportunity cost of capital may rely on risky bonds that have default premia of 2%. Your project NPV is neither $-\$100,000 + \$116,000/(1+12\%) \approx \$3,571$ nor $-\$100,000 + \$100,000/(1+10\%) + \$16,000/(1+12\%) \approx \$5,195$. Instead, you must work with expected values

An example: do not think you can just work with promised rates.

$$\text{PV} = -\$100,000 + \frac{\$100,000}{1+10\%} + \frac{\$8,000}{1+10\%} \approx -\$1,828 \quad . \tag{5.50}$$

This bond would be a bad investment.

Solve Now!

Q 5.26 *What is the relative importance of cash flow and interest rate errors for a 10-year project?*

Q 5.27 *What is the relative importance of cash flow and interest rate errors for a 100-year project?*

file=uncertainty.tex: LP

5·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The possibility of future default causes promised interest rates to be higher than expected interest rates. Default risk is also often called credit risk.
- Quoted interest rates are almost always promised interest rates, and are higher than expected interest rates.
- Most of the difference between promised and expected interest rates is due to default. Extra compensation for bearing more risk—the risk premium—is typically much smaller than the default premium.
- The key tool for thinking about uncertainty is the payoff table. Each row represents one possible state outcome, which contains the probability that the state will come about, the total project value that can be distributed, and the allocation of this total project value to different state-contingent claims. The state-contingent claims "carve up" the possible project payoffs.
- Most real-world projects are financed with the two most common state-contingent claims—debt and equity. The conceptual basis of debt and equity is firmly grounded in payoff tables. Debt financing is the safer investment. Equity financing is the riskier investment.
- If debt promises to pay more than the project can deliver in the worst state of nature, then the debt is risky and requires a promised interest rate in excess of its expected interest rate.
- NPV is robust to uncertainty about the expected interest rate (the discount rate) for short-term projects. However, NPV is not robust with respect to either expected cash flows or discount rates for long-run projects.

1. No! It is presumed to be known—at least for a die throw. The following is almost philosophy and beyond what you are supposed to know or answer here: It might, however, be that the expected value of an investment is not really known. In this case, it, too, could be a random variable in one sense—although you are presumed to be able to form an expectation (opinion) over anything, so in this sense, it would not be a random variable, either.
2. Yes and no. If you do not know the exact bet, you may not know the expected value.
3. *If* the random variable is the number of dots on the die, then the expected outcome is 3.5. The realization was 6.
4. The expected value of the stock is \$52. Therefore, purchasing the stock at \$50 is not a fair bet, but a good bet.
5. Only for government bonds. Most other bonds have some kind of default risk.
6.
   (a) The expected payoff is now $95\%\cdot\$210 + 1\%\cdot\$100 + 4\%\cdot\$0 = \$200.50$. Therefore, the expected rate of return is $\$200.50/\$200 = 0.25\%$.
   (b) You require an expected payoff of \$210. Therefore, you must solve for a promised payment $95\%\cdot P + 1\%\cdot\$100 + 4\%\cdot\$0 = \$210 \rightarrow P = \$209/0.95 = \$220$. On a loan of \$200, this is a 10% promised interest rate.
7. The expected payoff is \$203.50, the promised payoff is \$210, and the stated price is \$210/(1+12%)=\$187.50. The expected rate of return is $\$203.50/\$187.50 = 8.5\%$. Given that the time premium, the Treasury rate is 5%, the risk premium is 3.5%. The remaining 12%-8.5%=3.5% is the default premium.
8. The actual cash flow is replaced by the expected cash flow, and the actual rate of return is replaced by the expected rate of return.
9. $\$750,000/(1+6\%)^2 \approx \$667,497.33$.
10. $\mathcal{E}(P) = 20\%\cdot\$20,000 + 70\%\cdot\$40,000 + 10\%\cdot\$80,000 = \$40,000$.
11. \$37,037.
12. $\$20,000/\$37,037 - 1 = -46\%$, $\$40,000/\$37,037 - 1 = +8\%$, $\$80,0000/\$37037 - 1 = +116\%$.
13. $20\%\cdot(-46\%) + 70\%\cdot(+8\%) + 10\%\cdot(+116\%) = 8\%$.
14. No! Partners would share payoffs proportionally, not according to "debt comes first." For example, in the tornado state, the 32.7% partner would receive only \$6,547.50, not the entire \$20,000 that the debt owner receives.
15. The mortgage would finance \$61,090.91 today.

Event	*Prob*	Building Value	Mortgage Value	Levered Ownership
Tornado	20%	\$20,000	\$20,000	\$0
Sunshine	80%	\$100,000	\$79,000	\$21,000
Expected Value$_{t=1}$		\$84,000	\$67,200	\$16,800
PV$_{t=0}$		\$76,364	\$61,091	\$15,273
$\mathcal{E}(r_{t=0,1})$		10%	10%	10%

16. In the tornado state, the creditor gets all (\$20,000). In the sunshine state, the creditor receives the promise of \$25,000. Therefore, the creditor's expected payoff is $20\%\cdot\$20,000 + 80\%\cdot\$25,000 = \$24,000$. To offer an expected rate of return of 10%, you can get $\$24,000/1.1 = \$21,818$ from the creditor today. The promised rate of return is therefore $\$25,000/\$21,818 - 1 = 14.58\%$.
17. The loan pays off \$20,000 for certain. The levered ownership pays either \$0 or \$80,000, and costs $\$64,000/(1+10\%) = \$58,182$. Therefore, the rate of return is either -100% or $+37.5\%$. We have already worked out full ownership. It pays either \$20,000 or \$100,000, costs \$76,364, and offers either -73.81% or $+30.95\%$. By inspection, the levered equity project is riskier. In effect, building ownership has become riskier, because the owner has chosen to sell off the risk-free component, and retain only the risky component.
18. **Factory:** The expected factory value is \$750,000. Its price would be $\$750,000/1.06^2 = \$667,497$. The promised rate of return is therefore $\$1,000,000/\$667,497 - 1 \approx 49.8\%$. **Loan:** The discounted (today's) loan price is $\$750,000/1.06^2 = \$667,497.33$. The promised value is \$1,000,000. The loan must have an expected payoff of $1.06^2\cdot\$500,000 = \$561,800$ (6% expected rate of return, two years). Because the loan can pay \$500,000 with probability 1/2, it must pay \$623,600 with probability 1/2 to reach \$561,800 as an average. Therefore, the promised loan rate of return is $\$623,600/\$500,000 - 1 = 24.72\%$ over two years (11.68% per annum). **Equity:** The levered equity must therefore pay for/be worth $\$667,497.33 - \$500,000.00 = \$167,497.33$ (alternatively, levered equity will receive $\$1,000,000 - \$623,600 = \$376,400$ with probability 1/2 and \$0 with probability 1/2), for an expected payoff of \$188,200. (The expected two-year holding rate of return is $\$188,200/\$167,497 - 1 = 12.36\%$ [6% per annum, expected].) The promised rate of return is $(\$1,000,000 - \$623,600)/\$167,497.33 - 1 = 124.72\%$ (50% promised per annum).

19.

(a) In the sun state, the value is \$120,000+\$11,000= \$131,000. In the tornado state, the value is \$11,000+\$20,000= \$31,000. Therefore, the expected building value is \$111,000. The discounted building value today is \$100,909.09.

(b) Still the same as in the text: the lender's \$25,000 loan can still only get \$20,000, so it is a promise for \$29,375. So the quoted interest rate is still 17.50%.

(c) $\$100,909.09 - \$25,000 = \$75,909.09$.

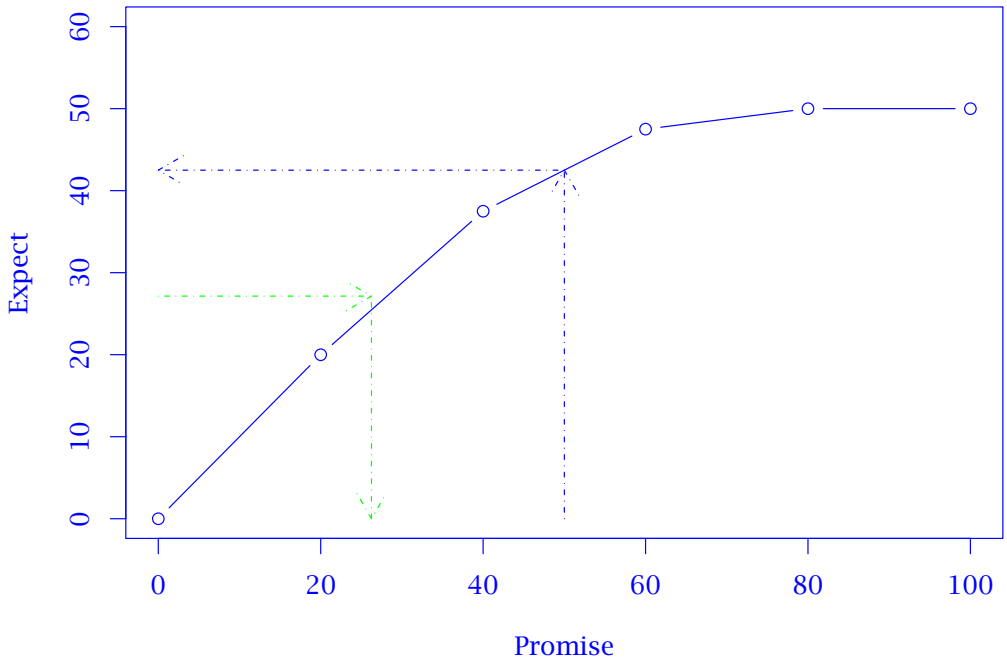
(d) Still \$100,909.09, assuming that the owner values living in the building as much as a tenant would.

Owner-consumed rent is the equivalent of corporate dividends paid out to levered equity. Note: you can repeat this example assuming that the rent is an annuity of \$1,000 each month, and tornadoes strike mid-year.

20. From the graph, it is around \$40,000. The correct value can be obtained by plugging into Formula (5.40): \$39,000.

21. From the graph, it is around \$55,000. The correct value can be obtained by setting Formula (5.40) equal to \$55,000 and solving for "Loan." The answer is indeed \$55,000.

22.



(a)

(b) The exact expected payoff is $1/8 \cdot \$20,000 + 3/8 \cdot \$40,000 + 1/2 \cdot \$50,000 = \$42,500$. The $1/2$ is the probability that you will receive the \$50,000 that you have been promised, which occurs if the project ends up worth at least as much as your promised \$50,000. This means that it is the total probability that it will be worth \$60,000 or \$80,000.

(c) The loan must expect to pay off $(1+5\%) \cdot \$25,000 = \$26,250$. Therefore, solve $1/8 \cdot \$20,000 + 7/8 \cdot x = \$26,250$, so the exact promised payoff must be $x = \$27,142.90$.

23. With 20% probability, the loan will pay off \$20,000; with 80% probability, the loan will pay off the full promised \$40,000. Therefore, the loan's expected payoff is $20\% \cdot \$20,000 + 80\% \cdot \$40,000 = \$36,000$. The loan's price is $\$36,000/(1+6\%) = \$33,962$. Therefore, the promised rate of return is $\$40,000/\$33,962 - 1 \approx 17.8\%$. The expected rate of return was given: 6%.

24.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}\left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Payoff of Loan}\\ \text{if } \$60,000 \le \text{Loan} \le \$80,000\end{array}\right) &= \$20,000 \\ &+ 80\% \cdot \$20,000 \\ &+ 60\% \cdot \$20,000 \\ &+ 40\% \cdot (\text{Loan} - \$60,000) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{5.51}$$

25. The loan must yield an expected value of \$38,500. Set formula (5.40) equal to \$38,500 and solve for "Loan." The answer is indeed \$44,166.67.

26. Consider a project that earns $100 in 10 years, and where the correct interest rate is 10%.
    - The correct PV is $\$100/(1+10\%)^{10} = \$38.55$.
    - If the cash flow is incorrectly estimated to be 10% higher, the incorrect PV is $\$110/(1+10\%)^{10} = \$42.41$.
    - If the interest rate is incorrectly estimate to be 10% lower, the incorrect PV is $\$100/(1+9\%)^{10} = \$42.24$.

    So, the misvaluation effects are reasonably similar at 10% interest rates. Naturally, percent valuation mistakes in interest rates are higher if the interest rate is higher; and lower if the interest rate is lower.
27. Although this, too, depends on the interest rate, interest rate errors almost surely matter for any reasonable interest rates now.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 6

DEALING WITH IMPERFECT MARKETS

Opinions, Market Depth, Transaction Costs, Taxes, and Inflation

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:21h)

last major edit: Mar 2004, Dec 2004

So far, we have assumed no differences in information (which we might call "opinions"), no transaction costs, no taxes, and a large market with many sellers and buyers—the "perfect market." In one sense, it is precisely these perfect market assumptions that have allowed modern finance to become the "science" that it is today. Most of the important concepts of finance have been derived in perfect markets first.

Why is it that these perfect markets assumptions are so important? It is because of what they have done for us: They have given us one unique appropriate expected rate of return—whether you want to borrow someone else's money to finance your projects or lend your money to someone else undertaking projects.

As convenient as this may be, you know that perfect markets do not exist. They are a concept, not reality. Thus, you must now learn how to think about finance in "imperfect markets." So we now leave this frictionless, utopian world. You will see that if markets are imperfect, it is difficult to attach a unique value to goods. Instead, the value depends on who the seller and who the buyer might be. Fortunately, most of your tools (and specifically NPV) still work! But you need to apply them with more caution.

6·1. Causes and Consequences of Imperfect Markets

So far, we have not drawn a distinction between the cost of capital at which you can borrow money to finance your projects, and the rate of return at which you can save money. In "perfect markets," these two rates were the same. Let us first cover broadly what market imperfections are and how they make our lives more difficult, and then discuss each imperfection in greater detail in its own section.

6·1.A. Perfect Market Assumptions

A perfect market is defined by the following assumptions:

No Differences in Information Everyone holds the same opinion. How can this assumption be violated? Here is one example. If your bank believes that there is a 50% chance that you will go bankrupt and default, and you believe that there is only a 0.1% chance, then your bank will lend you money only if you pay a much higher expected interest rate than it will pay you if you deposited your money with it.

This is why our perfect markets assumptions includes one that everyone has the same information and agrees on what it means. (It does not mean that there is no uncertainty, however. The important point in a perfect market is that everyone interprets the uncertainty identically.)

A Deep Market You can easily find a buyer or a seller. How could this assumption be violated? Say there is only one bank that you can do business with. This bank will exploit its monopoly power. It will charge you a higher interest rate if you want to borrow money from it than it will pay you if you want to deposit your money with it—and you will have no good alternative. (There is one nitpick qualification: if a project is worth more if it is owned or financed by a particular type—e.g., if a golf range is owned by a golf pro—then there must be a large number of this type of owner.)

This is why our perfect markets assumptions includes one that there are infinitely many buyers and sellers.

No Transaction Costs You can trade without paying any transaction costs. How can this assumption be violated? If it costs $1,000 to process the paperwork involved in a loan, you will incur this cost only if you need to borrow, but not if you want to save. This will make your effective borrowing interest rate higher than your effective savings interest rate.

This is why our perfect markets assumptions includes one that there are no transaction costs.

No Taxes There are no tax advantages or disadvantages to buying or selling securities. Specifically, there are no asymmetric tax treatments to the seller divesting or to the buyer purchasing. How can this be violated? If you have to pay taxes on interest earned, but cannot deduct taxes on interest paid, your de facto savings rate will be lower than your borrowing rate.

This is why our perfect markets assumptions includes one that there are no taxes.

We will soon tackle each of these issues in detail. However, the effect of violating any of these assumptions is really the same. Any violation that breaks the equality between the borrowing and the savings rate also breaks the link between value and one unique price (or cost). In fact, the value of a project may not even have meaning in imperfect markets—a project may not have one unique value, but any from among a range of possible values.

6·1.B. Value in Imperfect Markets

If savings and investment interest rates differ, the project's value (NPV) depends on the owner's position

In a perfect market, the value of the project depends only on the project, and not on you personally or on your cash position. This is often called the "separation of investments and financing decisions." You could make investment choices based on the quality of the projects themselves, not based on how you would end up financing them. The NPV formula does not have an input for your identity or wealth—its only inputs are the project's cash flows and the rate of return on alternative investments.

An example.

But if the borrowing and lending rates are not the same, then the value of the project depends on your cash holdings. For example, assume that you can lend money (invest cash) at 3%, and borrow money (receive cash) at 7%. What is the present value of a project that invests \$1,000 today and returns \$1,050 next period?

- If you have \$1,000 and your alternative is to invest your money in the bank, you will only get \$1,030 from the bank. You should take this project to earn \$20 more than you could earn from the bank.
- If you do not have the \$1,000, you will have to borrow \$1,000 from the bank to receive \$1,050 from the project. But because you will have to pay the bank \$1,070, you will lose \$20 net. You should not take the project.

The proper project decision now depends on how much cash you have. The separation between your project choice and your financial position has broken down. Taking your current cash holdings into account when making investment choices of course makes capital budgeting decisions more difficult. In this example, it is fairly easy—but think about projects that have cash inflows and outflows in the future, and how decisions could interact with your own wealth positions in the future. Equally important, in imperfect markets, the project value is no longer unique, either. In our example, it could be anything between +\$19.42 (\$1,050 discounted at 3%) and −\$18.69 (\$1,050 discounted at 7%).

Solve Now!

Q 6.1 *What are the perfect market assumptions?*

Q 6.2 *What does the assumption of a perfect market buy you that would not be satisfied in an imperfect market?*

Q 6.3 *Evaluate whether supermarkets are competitive markets.*

6·1.C. Perfect, Competitive, and Efficient Markets

Do You Always Get What You Pay For?

Are there any good deals?

Let us expand on this insight that projects may not have unique values. Have you ever heard someone say "it's only worth what people are willing to pay for it" and someone else that "it's worth much more than it's being sold for"? Who is correct? Are there any good deals?

Let's waffle a little.

The answer is that both are correct and neither is correct. The first claim is really meaningful only to the extent that markets are perfect: if a market is perfect, items are indeed worth exactly what buyers are willing to pay for them. The second claim is really (sort of) meaningful only to the extent that markets are imperfect: if a market is imperfect, items have no unique value. Different people can place different values on the item, and you may consider an item worth much more than what it was sold for.

For PepsiCo shares, other perfect market assumptions are not perfectly true, but not too far from the truth.

In finance, we often "conveniently" assume perfect markets. Although not perfectly accurate, this is often reasonably justifiable. For example, take the market for trading shares of stock in PepsiCo. It definitely appears to be a **competitive market**, i.e., a situation in which there are many competing buyers and sellers, so that no single buyer or seller can influence the price. There are lots of potential buyers willing to purchase the shares for the same price (or maybe just a tiny bit less), and lots of potential sellers willing to sell you shares for the same price (or maybe just a tiny bit more). A "perfect market" is a stricter requirement than a "competitive market" assumption. If a market is perfect, then it is also competitive, but not vice-versa. (For example, a competitive market can exist even in the presence of opinions and taxes.) For our discussion, we hope you can further assume that taxes are not distorting rates of return in a way that makes the PepsiCo shares' rates of return to a seller any higher or lower than the equivalent rates of return to a buyer, so that taxes are not distorting holding decisions. (This assumption may be a little, but probably not too far off from reality.) Moreover, few active traders in the market have inside information, so objective information differences should not be too bad either. Everyone should roughly agree to what shares can be sold for tomorrow—which defines value today. Finally, the transaction costs of trading shares on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE) are very low. There are no costs of having to find out the proper price of PepsiCo shares (it is posted by the NYSE), and there are no costs to searching for a buyer or seller. So, the market for PepsiCo shares may indeed be reasonably close to perfect.

IMPORTANT: *For many financial securities, such as publicly traded stocks, the assumption that the market is competitive and that the security is worth what it is trading for is pretty accurate.*

Buyers get what they pay for in a competitive low-friction market.

Such perfect markets reduce buyers' and sellers' concerns that one deal is better than another—that buying is better than selling, or vice-versa. For a more concrete example, consider gasoline and imagine that you do not yet know when and where on your road trip you will need to pump more gas. Unlike shares of stock, gas is not the same good everywhere: gas in one location can be more valuable than gas in another location (as anyone who has ever run out of gas can confirm). But, in populated areas, the market for gasoline is pretty competitive and close to perfect—there are many buyers (drivers) and sellers (gas stations). This makes it very likely that the first gas station you see will have a reasonable, fair price. If you drive by the first gas station and it advertises a price of \$1.50 per gallon, it is unlikely that you will find another gas station offering the same gas for \$1 per gallon or \$2 per gallon within a couple of miles. Chances are that "the price is fair," or this particular gas station would probably have disappeared by now. (The same applies of course in many financial markets, such as large company stocks, Treasury bonds, or certain types of mortgages.) As long as the market is very competitive, or better yet perfect, most deals are likely to be fair deals. Some shopping around may help a tiny bit, but an extreme amount of shopping would likely cost more in time and effort than what it could save.

Competitive markets leave surplus for average buyers and sellers.

But there is an important conceptual twist here: Paying what something is worth does not necessarily mean that you are paying what you *personally* value the good for. Even in competitive perfect markets, there can be many different types of buyers and sellers. It is only the marginal buyer and the marginal seller who end up trading at their "reservation values," where they are exactly indifferent between participating and not participating—but if you are not marginal, a market will allow you to make yourself better off. For example, if you are running out of gas and you are bad at pushing two-ton vehicles, you might very well be willing to pay a lot more for gas than even \$10 per gallon—and fortunately all you need to pay is the market price of \$1.50 per gallon! The difference between what you personally value a good for and what you pay for it is called your "surplus." So, even though everyone may be paying what the good is worth in a perfect market, most buyers and sellers can come away being better off.

A house's value depends on idiosyncratic factors. There is no single value.

Unfortunately, not every good is traded in a perfect market. Let us consider selling a house. What is the value of the house? What if the house is in a very remote part of the country, if potential buyers are sporadic, if alternative houses with the same characteristics are rare, and if the government imposes a 50% transfer fee? Now the value of the house depends on the luck of the draw (how many potential buyers are in the vicinity and see the ad, whether a potential buyer wants to live in exactly this kind of house, and so on), the urgency of the seller (perhaps whether the seller has the luxury to turn down a lowball first offer), and the identity of the seller (the current owner does not need to pay the government transfer fee, so he may value the house more than a potential buyer). So, it is only easy to determine the value of a good if the market is perfect. Because the market for many houses is not even close to perfect, the values of such houses are not unique.

Buyers may not get what they pay for in a non-competitive high-friction market.

Similarly, not all financial markets are close to perfect. Transaction costs, information differences, special taxes, or the unique power of the seller or market can play a role even in some financial markets. For example, many corporate bonds are traded primarily over-the-counter, meaning that you must call some individual at the brokerage house, who may play the role of the only easy clearinghouse for these particular bonds and who will try to gauge your expertise while negotiating a price with you. You could easily end up paying a lot more for this bond than what you could then sell it for one minute later.

Learn from the perfect markets concepts, but don't believe it holds.

Of course, you should not kid yourself: no market, financial or otherwise, is ever "perfectly perfect." The usefulness of the perfect market concept is *not* that you should believe that it actually exists in the real world. Instead, it is to get you to think about how close to perfect a given market actually is. The range in which possible values lie depends on the degree to which you believe the market is not perfect. For example, if you know that taxes or transaction costs can represent at most 2–3% of the value of a project, then you know that even if value is not absolutely unique, it is pretty close to unique—possible values sit in a fairly tight range. On the other hand, if you believe that there are few potential buyers for your house, but that some will purchase the house at much higher prices than others, then it will depend on your financial situation whether you will accept or decline a buyer's low-ball offer.

A "salesman" may distort the truth and claim great deals.

In sum, when someone claims that a stock or firm is really worth more than he or she is selling it for, there are only a small number of explanations: First, there may be pure kindheartedness toward any buyer or a desire by a seller to lose wealth; this happens so rarely that we just ignore this. Second, the seller may not have access to a perfect market to sell the goods. This may make the seller accept a low amount of money for the good, so depending on how you look at this, the good may be sold for more or less than you think it is worth. Third, the seller may be committing a conceptual mistake. The good is worth neither more nor less than what it is being sold for, but exactly how much it is being sold for. Fourth, the seller may be lying and is using this claim as a sales tactic.

Preview: Efficient Markets

Efficient Market: Use of all information.

There is an important corollary to a perfect market. A market (or a price) is called "efficient" if this market has set the price using *all* available information. If a market is perfect, it will inevitably also be efficient. If it were inefficient, you could become rich too easily. For example, say the market wanted to offer you an expected rate of return of 15% on a particular stock (for whatever reason), and the expected value of the stock is $115. Then the price of the stock today would have to be $100 for this market to be efficient. This market would not be efficient if it set the price for this stock at $99 or $101, because the stock would then offer other than the 15% expected rate of return. Similarly, you should not be able to locate information that tells you today when/if/that the true expected value tomorrow is really $120 for the $100 stock. If you could find this information, you could on average earn more than 15%. If the market has overlooked this information, it is not efficient.

What is the model? What is the information set?

The application and use of the "efficient markets" concept faces a number of issues. First, where does the 15% come from? It will have to come from some model that tells you what rate of return a stock should have to offer (given its characteristics, such as risk). Possible models will be discussed at length in Part III of this book. Without such a model, talking about market efficiency is meaningless. Second, what information exactly are we talking about? Insiders often have more information than the public. For example, a drug company executive may know before ordinary investors whether a drug is likely to work. Thus, the market may be efficient with respect to publicly available information, but not efficient with respect to insider information.

Competition and Efficiency

So, to be more accurate, when a market is perfect, we usually believe that it is also efficient with respect to public information. After all, if other buyers and sellers were to ignore a useful piece of information, you could likely earn a lot of money trading on it. For example, what would you do if you learned that the market always goes down on rainy days and up on sunny days? It is unlikely that the average investor requires extra return to hold stocks on sunny days—and, even if the average investor does, you would probably not! You would never buy stocks when the weather forecast predicts that rain is coming, and you would only buy stocks when the weather forecast predicts that the sun will be shining. Investors like yourself—and there are of course many such investors in perfect markets—would rapidly bid up the prices before the sun was shining, so that the prices would no longer systematically go up on sunny days. If markets are efficient, then you should not be able to earn abnormally good sunny-day returns—at least not this easily. To earn higher expected rates of return, you must be willing to take on something that other investors are reluctant to take on—such as higher risk (also the subject of Part III).

Classical vs. Behavioral Finance.

A belief in efficient markets is what defines **classical finance**. In contrast, **behavioral finance** believes that markets sometimes do not use all information. Depending on how strong a believer in classical finance vs. behavioral finance you are, you may believe that there are no such opportunities, that there are few such opportunities, or that there are plenty of such opportunities. Both camps agree, however, that market perfection (and especially competitiveness and transaction costs) play crucial roles in determining whether a market is efficient or not. We will

See Chapter 19

dedicate an entire chapter to market efficiency and its consequences, which will also talk in greater length about classical vs. behavioral finance.

Solve Now!

Q 6.4 *Can buyers and sellers be better off if a market is perfect? Or does this mean that everyone just pays what it is worth, and thus is no better off.*

Q 6.5 *What is the use of perfect markets, given that there is obviously not a single market in the world that is perfect?*

Q 6.6 *How does an efficient market differ from a perfect market?*

Q 6.7 *Your borrowing rate is 10%/year. Your lending rate is 4%/year. The project costs $1,000 and returns a rate of return of 8%. If you have $900 to invest, should you take the project?*

Q 6.8 *(Cont'd). You can think of the $900 as the amount of money that you are not consuming. Say, your wealth is $2,000, but in the previous question, you wanted to consume, e.g., $1,100. Could you still consume this much and take the project? How much could you consume and still want to take the project?*

file=frictions.tex: RP

6·2. The Effect of Disagreements

A broad perspective.

As you already learned, no market is truly perfect. Perfect market assumptions are just approximations. They work well in some situations, and poorly in others. They typically work quite well in many (but not all) large financial markets for large and liquid financial securities. You now need to learn how to judge the degree to which markets are imperfect—and how to deal with imperfections as real-world investors and managers.

The assumption "no market power" is straightforward.

Our perfect markets assumptions included one that markets are very deep, consisting of many buyers and sellers. If there is only one investor—say, a capital provider or bank—from which you can obtain funding, this investor will have market power over you. Of course, this investor will exploit it by charging you a higher borrowing rate and offering you a lower deposit interest rate. There is not much more to say about this particular perfect market assumption, so we now turn to the more interesting discussions.

Our agenda.

The remainder of our chapter explores how big typical market imperfections can be, what can mitigate them, and how you should work with them. This section begins by discussing the role of opinions. Then we continue to transaction costs. Next, we will take a look at income taxes. Finally, we will consider hybrid problems—like the role of taxes in the presence of inflation.

6·2.A. Expected Return Differences vs. Promised Return Differences

Under uncertainty, different opinions can lead to disagreements.

The most obvious cause for different borrowing and lending rates are differences in opinion between the lender and borrower. To think about this particular assumption violation, we must work in a world of uncertainty—it would be absurd to believe that such differences in opinion could exist if there is no uncertainty. So, what happens if the lender and borrower have different information or different judgment about the same information? Most prominently, they could disagree about the default risk! For example, if you have no credit history, then a lender who does not know you might be especially afraid of not receiving promised repayments from you—from the perspective of such a lender, you would be extremely high-risk. Your lender might estimate your appropriate default probability to be 20% and thus may demand an appropriate default premium from you of, say, 8% above the risk-free yield. On the other hand, *you* may know that you will indeed return the lender's money, because you know you will work hard and that you will have the money for sure. In your opinion, a fair and appropriate default premium should therefore be only 0-1%.

Expected rates of return for borrowing and lending now become different.

When your potential lenders and you have different opinions, you then face different expected savings interest rates and borrowing costs of capital. That is, if you know that you are a low risk, then your borrowing cost of capital (the *expected* interest rate) would not only be much higher than the lender perceives it to be, but it would also be the case that your borrowing *expected* cost of capital is much higher than your savings *expected* rate of return that you would earn if you deposited your money in the bank. You might be able to borrow at a cost of capital (expected rate of return) of 12%, but save only at an expected rate of return of 5%.

Do not confuse different *promised* borrowing/lending rates (not discussed here) with different *expected* borrowing/lending rates (discussed here).

This issue is very different from the difference between promised and expected returns that was discussed in Chapter 5. It is not just that you must offer a higher *promised* rate of return than what you expect to repay. Instead, you must now offer a higher *expected* rate of return when you want to borrow, compared with the *expected* rate of return that you could earn if you deposited money in the bank. (The bank is unlikely to go bankrupt, and your deposit is probably insured by the government, which means that the bank may pay not more interest than the equivalent short-term Treasury. The bank's promised rate of return is almost the same as the expected rate of return.) The difference in *stated* borrowing interest rates and *stated* saving interest rates at your local bank could just as well be the default premium—the difference in the returns you promise and which you expect to pay, although in a different guise. The bank quoting you a lower savings deposit interest rate than borrowing loan interest rate would just compare promised interest rates, not expected interest rates. Instead, the novel issue discussed in our chapter is that disagreements and information differences are now causing differences in *expected* returns. The borrowing and lending *expected* rates of return are no longer the same.

IMPORTANT: *The fact that credit spreads reflect a default premium—a difference between the promised rate of return and the expected rate of return—is not a market imperfection.*

The fact that credit spreads reflect differences in opinion between borrower and lender—a difference about the two assessed expected rates of return seen—is a market imperfection.

Here is an example. For example, assume the prevailing interest rate is 10% and you want to borrow \$1,000.

Perfect Market Default Spread Assume you have a 5% objective probability of total default. In this case, a risk-neutral bank would ask you for a return of

$$5\% \cdot 0 \;+\; 95\% \cdot x \;=\; (1+10\%) \cdot \$1{,}000 \quad\Longrightarrow\quad x \;\approx\; \$1{,}158\ . \tag{6.1}$$

This 15.8% interest rate is not a market imperfection. It is merely compensation for your probability of defaulting. Both you and and the bank would realize that you are paying a 10% cost of capital.

Imperfect Market Credit Spread Now assume that you believe you have a 3% objective probability of total default, and the bank believes you have a 9% objective probability of default. In this case, the bank would quote you an interest rate of 20.9%. You, in turn, would consider this \$1,209 in payment to be equivalent not to the 10% expected rate of return that the bank believes it is, but equivalent to a $97\% \cdot \$1{,}209/\$1{,}000 \approx 17.3\%$ interest rate. You would consider the 7.3% to be the extra spread due to friction—but, of course, who says you are right and the bank is wrong?

6·2.B. Corporate Finance vs. Entrepreneurial or Personal Finance?

For large companies, a perfect market assumption with reasonably equal borrowing and lending rates is reasonable.

Where do such market imperfections apply? In the world of large corporations, the interest rate spread between similarly risky borrowing and lending rates is often mild, so they can pretend they live in a "perfect" market in which they can separate the project choice from their financial situation. Their *promised* borrowing interest rates would still be higher than what they can receive investing their money in Treasury bonds—but, given that these large firms still have some possibility of going bankrupt, their *expected* borrowing cost of capital would probably be fairly similar to the *expected* rate of return that they could earn if they invested money into bonds with characteristics similar to those that they themselves issued.

For entrepreneurs, a perfect market assumption is problematic.

In the world of individuals, entrepreneurs, and small companies, however, expected borrowing interest rates are often higher than expected saving interest rates. In fact, this issue of an extraordinarily high differential between expected borrowing and lending rates—and with it the role of cash-on-hand—is one important difference between "ordinary corporate finance" and "entrepreneurial finance." Entrepreneurs find it very difficult to convey credibly their intent and ability to pay back their loans. As a consequence, many entrepreneurs even resort to financing projects with credit cards, which may charge a thousand basis points above Treasury bonds. These high borrowing costs can thus prevent rational entrepreneurs from taking many projects that they would undertake if they had the money on hand. It also means that more established firms or richer entrepreneurs should optimally take more projects than poorer entrepreneurs.

Don't believe entrepreneurial claims!

But be careful in the real world before you conclude this to be the case: Entrepreneurs tend to have notoriously over-optimistic views of their prospects. (Even venture capitalists, the financing vehicle for many high-tech entrepreneurial ventures, which advertise returns of 30%/year or more seem to have managed to return only a couple of percentage points above the risk-free rate over the last thirty years.) This may actually mean that entrepreneurs face only high *promised* borrowing costs, not high *expected* borrowing costs. Thus, the quoted spread between their borrowing and lending rates, which is really all that you can easily observe, likely

has a large component that is due not to information disagreements but simply due to credit risk.

SIDE NOTE: Valuation services are an important revenue business for many finance professors and consulting firms. When asked to value small, non-public businesses—for example, for purposes of assessing the inheritance tax or in disputes among former business partners—it is customary and legally acceptable to first compute the value of an equivalent publicly traded business or company, and then to apply a "private discount" of around 10% to 30% in order to reflect the limited access to capital (because lenders tend not to believe in high default rates for young companies).

Solve Now!

Q 6.9 *Can there be a difference in the borrowing and lending rates quoted by the bank in perfect markets?*

Q 6.10 *What are the possible reasons why entrepreneurs often have to finance their projects with credit cards, which can charge interest rates as high as 1500 basis points above Treasury?*

6·2.C. Covenants, Collateral, and Credit Rating Agencies

You would love to reduce such disagreements—but you may not be able to.

So, if you are an entrepreneur who wants to start a company, what can you do to reduce the expected cost of capital? The answer is that it is in your interest to disclose to the lender all the information you can, provided you are the type of entrepreneur who is likely to pay back the loan. You want to reduce the lender's doubt about future repayment. Unfortunately, this can be very difficult. The lender can neither peer into your brain, nor give you a good lie detector test. Attempts to convey information credibly in the real world are many, but there will always be residual information differences—they are just a fact of life. Still, if you can reduce the information differences, your firm will be able to enjoy lower costs of capital. Also, if you as borrower fail to give your best try to convince the lender of your quality, then the lender should not only assume that you are an average company, but instead assume you are the very worst—or else you would have tried to communicate as much as possible.

Good borrowers want to credibly tell the lender that they are good.

There are at least three important mechanisms that have evolved to alleviate such information differences. The first mechanism is **covenants**, which specify upfront what a debtor must do to maintain credit. This can include such requirements as the maintenance of insurance or a minimum corporate value. The second mechanism is **collateral**—something that the creditor can repossess if payments are not made. But anything that inflicts pain on the debtor will do. For example, if defaulting debtors were thrown into debtor's prison (as they often were until the 19th century), the promise to repay would be more credible and lenders would be more inclined to provide funding at lower rates. Of course, for the unlucky few who just happened to suffer incredibly bad luck ex-post, debtors' prison has some definite drawbacks.

Bond rating agencies indicate probability of default.

The third mechanism to alleviate repayment uncertainty are credit rating agencies, which keep a history of past payments to help assess the probability of future default. This is why you need to give your social security number if you want to take out a substantial personal loan—the lender will check up on you. The same is true for large corporations. It may be easier to judge corporate default risk for large companies than personal default risk, but it is still not easy and it costs both time and money. The two biggest bond credit rating agencies for corporations are **Moody's** and **Standard&Poors**. (The other two are *Duff and Phelps* and *Fitch*.) For a fee that the corporate borrower pays, they will rate the bond's quality, which reflects the issuer's probability that the bonds will default. This fee depends on a number of factors, such as the identity of the issuer, the desired detail in the agencies' investigations and descriptions, and

ANECDOTE: Sumerian Debt Contracts
Among the earliest known collateralized debt contracts is a tablet from Sumeria (Mesopotamia), which promises delivery of silver and gives as security the son of the borrower. (The tablet can be viewed at www.museumofmoney.org/babylon/index.html.) Such contracts are illegal today, but de-facto "debt slavery" for debts not repaid is common in many countries, according to the September 2003 issue of *National Geographic Magazine*.

the features of the bond (e.g., a bond that will pay off within one year is usually less likely to default before maturity than a bond that will pay off in thirty years; thus, the former is easier to grade). The credit rating agencies ultimately do not provide a whole set of default probabilities (e.g., 1% chance of 100% loss, 1.2% chance of 99% loss, etc.), but just an overall rating grade. It is up to the ratings' reader to translate the rating into an appropriate compensation for default risk. The top rating grades are called **investment grade**, while the bottom grade are called **speculative grade** (or **junk**).

Investment Grade:	Moody's	Standard & Poors
Exceptional	Aaa, Aaa1, Aaa2, Aaa3	AAA, AAA-, AA+
Excellent	Aa, Aa1, Aa2, Aa3	AA, AA-, A+
Good	A, A1, A2, A3	A, A-, BBB+
Adequate	Baa, Baa1, Baa2, Baa3	BBB, BBB-, BB+
Speculative Grade:	**Moody's**	**Standard & Poors**
Questionable	Ba, Ba1, Ba2, Ba3	BB, BB-, B+
Poor	B, B1, B2, B3	B, B-, CCC+
Very Poor	Caa, Caa1, Caa2, Caa3	CCC, CCC-, CC+
Extremely Poor	Ca, Ca1, Ca2, Ca3	CC,CC-, C+
Lowest	C	C

There is often a sharp difference in *quoted* interest rates between the worst investment grade bond and the best speculative grade bond, partly also because many investing institutions are allowed to hold only investment grade bonds.

Here is what ratings mean.

So, is there a difference between bonds of different rating quality? Yes! Altman studied corporate bonds from 1971 to 2003 and reported default and recovery rates. Figure 6.1 gives a sketch of how likely default was for a given credit rating. Very few investment grade bonds default—and especially right after issue when they would have still carried the original credit rating. However, many speculative bonds will eventually miss at least one coupon payment (which is considered default). Upon default, an AAA or AA bond price was worth about 75 cents on the dollar; an A bond price was worth about 50 cents on the dollar; and lower rated bonds were worth about 30 cents on the dollar. (The previous chapter already told you that the net effect is that junk bonds that promised a rate of return of about 5% above the 10-Year Treasury bond delivered only 2.2% above the Treasury on average.)

Ratings are useless for making money.

Unfortunately, although bond rating agencies will update their rating if the condition of the firm changes, the empirical evidence suggests that these bond ratings are not very good in helping an investor earn superior rates of returns. In fact, the ratings seem to respond more to drops in the value of the underlying bonds than vice-versa. The bond rating agencies seem to be more reactive than proactive. A longer discussion of bond ratings appears on Page 684f.

Sample Rates of Returns

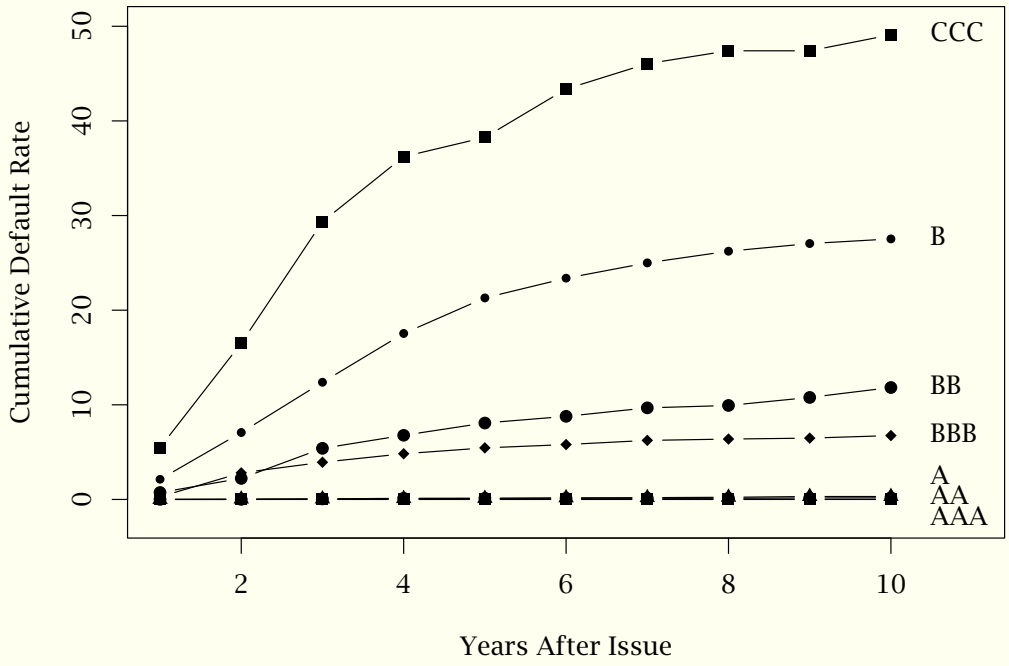
How do bond ratings translate into differences in promised (quoted) bond yields? Table 6.1 lists the borrowing rates of various issuers in May 2002. (Many other current interest rates can be found at www.bloomberg.com/markets/rates/index.html and bonds.yahoo.com/rates.html.) Most of the differences between these borrowers' promised interest rates and Treasury interest rates are due to default risk, which compensates lenders for differential default probabilities.

Solve Now!

Q 6.11 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, what is the annualized yield on corporate bonds (high-quality, medium-quality, high-yield) today?*

file=frictions.tex: RP

Figure 6.1. Cumulative Probability of Default by Original Rating



This figure shows the probability of default within x years after issue. For example, at some point during the first seven years of their issue, 25% of all bonds originally issued as B (poor) had not delivered on at least one promised bond payment.

Source: Edward Altman and Gonzalo Fanjul, New York University, February 2004. Moody's also offers similar reports, and publishes an interesting monthly report on credit risk, including corporate bond default forecasts (which change with the business cycle). Older Moody's reports can be found at riskcalc.moodysrms.com/us/research/mdr.asp. For example, in August 2002, the report described that no bonds rated Aaa–A2 bonds had defaulted, 0.3–0.6% of bonds rated A3–Ba3 had defaulted, and 1.8%, 7.6%, 9.9%, and 21.0% of bonds rated B1, B2, B3, and Caa–C had defaulted.

file=frictions.tex: LP

Table 6.1. Promised Interest Rates For Some Loans in May 2002.

Security (Bond)	Annual Yield	Similar U.S. Treasury
FNMA May 2003	2.36%	2.22%
FNMA March 2031	6.29%	5.60%
Boston Celtics 6s38	9.40%	5.60%
United Airlines 11.21s14	14.40%	4.82%
Corporate High-Quality 1–10 years	4.89%	≈ 3%–4%
Corporate Medium-Quality 1–10 years	6.24%	≈ 3%–4%
Corporate High-Quality 10+ years	6.76%	≈ 4%–5%
Corporate Medium-Quality 10+ years	7.65%	≈ 4%–5%
High-Yield (Junk Bond) Corporates	11.36%	?

Source: *Wall Street Journal*, Page C13. FNMA is a quasi-governmental agency that underwrites home mortgages. See also Page 798.

Warning, I am cheating a little: not all of the differences in promised rates of return in Table 6.1 are due to default risk. Some of the interest rate differentials can be due to transaction costs, liquidity premia, bond duration mismatches, risk premia (to be discussed in Part III [Investments]), or extra bond features (such as embedded bond options, to be discussed in Part IV [Financing]). For all these reasons, the quoted yields in Table 6.1 are not exactly comparable to treasuries. Nevertheless, the differences are mostly due to default risk.

6·3. Market Depth and Transaction Costs

There can be other causes of different expected rates of return, too.

The next market imperfections that can drive a wedge between borrowing and lending rates are transaction costs. If it is very difficult and costly to administer loans, an investor must charge you a higher borrowing rate than deposit rate just to break even. This is the subject of this section, in which you will see how corporations and individuals should account for transaction costs.

6·3.A. Typical Costs When Trading Real Goods—Houses

Real Estate is an important market in itself, and a great comparison for us.

When you engage in transactions, i.e., a purchase or sale, you face costs to facilitate the transactions. Real estate is a perfect example to illustrate transaction costs. The personal residence is the most significant asset that most people own, real estate is a very large part of the total value of the economy, and real estate transaction costs are so high that they will register with anyone who has ever had to sell a house. The real estate example also will allow you to contrast the real-estate transaction costs later with financial securities transaction costs.

So, what does selling or buying a house really cost?

Direct transaction costs require a money transfer.

Brokerage Commissions, a direct cost: In the United States, if a house is sold, the seller's broker typically receives six percent of the value of the house as commission (and splits this commission with the buyer's agent). Thus, if a real estate agent manages to sell a house for $300,000, the commission is $18,000. Put differently, without an agent, the buyer and seller could have split the $18,000 between them. (Of course, brokers do many useful things, such as matching buyers and sellers, shepherding the selling process, etc., so the $18,000 may just be the intrinsic transaction cost to selling a house. However, inconsistent with this view, real estate commissions are *much* lower in other countries, and it is difficult to see why the cost of selling houses would be *exactly* 6% in practically *all* markets in the United States.)

Thinking of transactions in "round-trip" form.

Although only the seller pays the broker's cost, it makes sense to think of transaction costs in terms of **round-trip** costs—how much worse you are off if you buy and then immediately sell an asset. You would mislead yourself if you thought that when you buy a house, you have not incurred any transaction costs because the seller had to pay them—you have incurred an implicit transaction cost in the future when you need to resell your investment. Of course, you usually do not immediately sell assets, so you should not forget about the timing of your future selling transaction costs in your NPV calculations.

Transaction costs are on the whole investment, so if you borrow to finance the investment, your part of the transaction costs may be much higher than you think!

Housing transaction costs are so high and so important that they are worth a digression. If you borrow to finance the investment, transaction may be higher than you think. The real estate agent earns 6% of the value of the house, not of the amount of money you put into the house. On a house purchase of $500,000, the typical loan is 80% of the purchase price, or $400,000, leaving you to put in $100,000 in equity. Selling the house the day after the purchase reduces the owner's wealth of $100,000 by the commission of $30,000—for an investment rate of return of –30%. This is not a risk component; it is a pure and certain transaction cost.

Let's add some price volatility.

Let us briefly consider what happens if the house price decreases or increases by 10%. If house prices decline by 10%, or the buyer overpays by 10%, the house can only be resold for $450,000, which leaves $423,000 after agent commissions. The house owner is left with $23,000 on a $100,000 investment. A 10% decline in real estate values has reduced the home owner's net worth by 77%! In comparison, a 10% increase in real estate values increases the value of the house to $550,000, which means that $517,000 is left after real estate commissions. The house owner's rate of return for the same up movement is thus only 17%.

This is how one estimates the value effects of commissions.

With the tools you already know, you can even estimate how the value of a typical house might change if the Internet could instantly and perfectly replace real estate agents. You cannot be too accurate—you can only obtain a back-of-the-envelope estimate. A typical house in the United States sells every seven years or so. Work with a $1,000,000 house, and assume that the expected house capital-gain appreciation is 0%—you consume all gains as rental enjoyment. In this case, the house will stay at $1,000,000 in value, the commission will stay constant at

$60,000 and will be paid every 7 years. If the appropriate 7-year interest rate were 40% (around 5% per annum), then the value of the brokerage fees would be a perpetuity of $\$60,000/40\% = \$150,000$. The capitalized transaction cost would therefore have lowered the value of the $1,000,000 house by $150,000. If you could eliminate all commissions, e.g., by selling equally efficiently over the Internet, such a house would increase in value by about 15%. However, if you believed that the brokerage commission were to go up by the inflation rate (2% per annum, or 15% per 7-years), the friction would not be $150,000 but $240,000—more like 25% of the value of the house, not just 15%.

Other direct expenses.

Other direct costs: In addition to direct agent commissions, there are also many other direct transaction costs. These can range from advertising, to insurance company payments, to house inspectors, to the local land registry, to postage—all of which cost the parties money.

Indirect transaction costs are the loss of other opportunities.

Indirect and opportunity costs: Then there is the seller's own time required to learn as much about the value of the house as possible, and the effort involved to help the agent sell the house. These may be significant costs, even if they involve no cash outlay. After all, the seller could spend this time working or playing instead. Furthermore, not every house is suitable for every house buyer, and the seller has to find the right buyer. If the house cannot be sold immediately but stays empty for a while, the foregone rent is part of the transaction cost. The implicit cost of not having the house be put to its best alternative use is called an **opportunity cost**. Opportunity costs are just as real as direct cash costs.

Solve Now!

Q 6.12 *If you presumed that the appropriate interest rate was 8%/year rather than 5%/year for the rental flow on a house, what would you presume the value effect of the 6% commission be?*

6·3.B. Typical Costs When Trading Financial Goods—Stocks

Transaction Costs for Stocks are also either direct or indirect.

Similarly, financial markets transactions also incur transaction costs. If an investor wants to buy or sell shares of a stock, the broker charges a fee, as does the stock exchange that facilitates the transaction. In addition, investors have to consider their time to communicate with the broker to initiate the purchase or sale of a stock as an (opportunity) cost.

The typical Transaction Costs for Stocks are relatively low.

Brokerage and Market-Maker Commissions, direct costs: Still, the transaction costs for selling financial instruments are much lower than they are for most other goods. Let's look at a few reasons why. First, even if you want to buy (or sell) $1 million worth of stock, some Internet brokers now charge as little as $10 per transaction. Your round-trip transaction, which is a buy and a sale, costs only $20 in broker's commission. In addition, you have to pay the spread (the difference between the bid and the ask price) to the stock exchange. For example, a large company stock like PepsiCo (ticker symbol PEP) may have a publicly posted price of $50 per share. But you can neither buy nor sell at $50. Instead, the $50 is really just the average of two prices: the **bid price** of $49.92, at which another investor or the exchange's market-maker is currently willing to buy shares; and the **ask price** of $50.08, at which another investor or the exchange's market-maker is currently willing to sell shares. Therefore, you can (probably) purchase shares at $50.08 and sell them at $49.92, a loss of "only" 16 cents which amounts to round-trip transaction costs of $(\$49.92 - \$50.08)/\$50.08 \approx -0.32\%$. You can compute the total costs of buying and selling 20,000 shares ($1,000,000 worth) of PepsiCo stock as

ANECDOTE: Real Estate Agents: Who works for whom?
Real estate agents are conflicted. If they sell sooner, they can spend their time focusing on other properties. Thus, the typical seller's agent will try to get the seller to reduce the price in order to make a quicker sale. Similarly, the buyer's agent will try to get the buyer to increase the offer. In a financial sense, the buyer's agent is working on behalf of the seller, and the seller's agent is working on behalf of the buyer. Interestingly, Steve Levitt found that when agents sell their own houses, their homes tend to stay on the market for about 10 days longer and sell for about 2 percent more. Source: Steve Levitt, University of Chicago.

Financial Round-trip Transaction		
Purchase 20,000 Shares	Pay \$50.08 · 20,000 = \$1,001,600	
Add Broker Commission	+\$10	= \$1,001,610
Sell 20,000 Shares	Receive \$49.92 · 20,000 = \$998,400	
Subtract Broker Commission	−\$10	= \$998,390
	Net Round-trip Transaction Costs	-\$3,220

This is not exactly correct, though, because the bid and ask prices that the exchange posts (e.g., on Yahoo!*Finance* or the *Wall Street Journal*) are only valid for 100 shares. Moreover, some transactions can occur inside the bid-ask spread, but for most large round-trip orders, chances are that you may have to pay more than \$50.08 or receive less than \$49.92. So 0.32% is probably a bit too small. (In fact, if your trade is large enough, you may even move the publicly posted exchange price away from \$50!) Your buy order may have to pay \$50.20, and your sell may only get you \$49.85. In real life, the true round-trip transaction cost on a \$1 million position in PEP is on the order of magnitude of 50 basis points.

An even lower cost alternative: limit orders.

The above applies primarily to a **market order**, in which you ask your broker to buy or sell at the prevailing market price. A **limit order** can specify that you only wish to buy or sell at \$50.00, but you are patient and willing to take the chance that your order may not get executed at all. There is a common belief that limit orders are "cheaper" in terms of transaction costs, but also "riskier." For example, if you have a standing limit order to buy at \$50, and the company reveals that it has managed earnings, so its value drops from \$51 to \$20, your limit order could still easily execute at \$50.

Opportunity costs are low, too.

Indirect and Opportunity Costs: Investors do not need to spend a lot of time to find out the latest price of the stock: it is instantly available from many sources (e.g., from the Internet such as Yahoo!*Finance*). So, the information research costs are very low: unlike a house, the value of a stock is immediately known. Finally, upon demand, a buyer can be found practically instantaneously, so search and waiting costs are also very low. Recall the often multi-month waiting periods if you want to sell your house.

Compared to other economic assets, ...

Compare the financial securities transaction costs to the transaction costs in selling a house. Broker fees alone are typically 6%: for the \$100,000 equity investment in the \$500,000 house, this comes to \$30,000 for a round-trip transaction. Add the other fees and waiting time to this cost and you are in for other transaction costs, say, another \$10,000. And houses are just one example: Many transactions of physical goods or labor services (but not all) can incur similarly high transaction costs.

Table 6.2. Comparison of Transaction Costs on Stocks and Real Estate

Cost Type	Explanation	Real Estate (House)	Financial Security (Stock)
Direct	Typical Round-trip Commission etc.	≥6%	0–1%
Search/Research	Time to Determine Fair Price	high	zero
Search/Liquidity	Time Waiting to Find Buyer	variable	zero

ANECDOTE: Payment for Order Flow
The next financial scandal may well be **payment for order flow**. Although well known among finance professionals, and disclosed to customers, most individual investors do not know that especially (but not only) discount brokers, such as Charles Schwab, Ameritrade, and e-Trade, can route their investors' orders routinely to market makers who charge relatively high bid-ask spreads, and then pay the discount broker a rebate kickback (typically 1 to 4 cents per share). Some brokerage houses can even fill customer orders with other customer orders in-house, at execution prices that are not the best prices. In any case, from the point of view of transaction costs, very wealthy investors may not necessarily be better off using discount brokers, but this is difficult for individual investors to determine conclusively. More information can be found at invest-faq.com/articles/trade-order-routing.html. The SEC also publishes "What every Investor should know" at www.sec.gov/investor/pubs/tradexec.htm.

...financial securities have such low transaction costs that they can almost be assumed to be zero.

In contrast, if you want to buy or sell 100 shares in, say, Microsoft stocks, your transaction costs are relatively tiny. Because there are many buyers and many sellers, financial transaction costs are comparably tiny. Even for a $100,000 equity investment in a medium-sized firm's stock, the transaction costs are typically only about $300–$500. To oversimplify, this book will make the incorrect, but convenient assumption that financial transaction costs are zero (unless otherwise described). For individuals buying and selling ordinary stocks only rarely (a **buy-and-hold** investor), a zero transaction cost assumption is often quite reasonable. But if you are a **day trader**—someone who buys and sells stocks daily—you better read another book! (And if you are a company that wants to issue new shares, wait until Section 27.)

Solve Now!

Q 6.13 *What would you guess the order of magnitude to be for a round-trip transaction in $10,000 worth of shares of DELL Computer be? Describe in percent and in absolute terms.*

Q 6.14 *List important transaction cost components, both direct and indirect.*

6·3.C. Transaction Costs in Returns and Net Present Values

Commissions need to be taken out of meaningful rates of return.

As an investor, you usually care about rates of return *after* all transaction costs have been taken into account, not about quoted rates of returns from quoted prices. Let's see how you should take these transaction costs on both sides (buy and sell) into account.

Return to our housing example. If you purchase a house for $1,000,000 and you sell it to the next buyer at $1,100,000 through a broker, your rate of return is not 10%. At selling time, the brokers charge you a 6% commission. There are also some other costs that reduce the amount of money you receive, not to mention the many opportunity costs. Say these costs amount to $70,000 in total. In addition, even when you purchased the house, you most likely had to pay some extra costs (such as an escrow transfer fee) above and beyond the $1,000,000—say, $5,000. Your rate of return would not be $\$1,100,000/\$1,000,000 - 1 = 10\%$, but only

$$r = \frac{(\$1,100,000 - \$70,000) - (\$1,000,000 + \$5,000)}{(\$1,000,000 + \$5,000)} \approx 2.5\% \ . \tag{6.2}$$

$$\text{Rate of Return} = \frac{\text{Dollars Returned, after Transaction costs} - \text{Dollars Invested, after Transaction costs}}{\text{Dollars Invested, after Transaction costs}} \ .$$

Note how the $5,000 must be added to, not subtracted from the price you paid. The price you paid was ultimately higher than $1,000,000. The $5,000 works against you. (Incidentally, in order to make their returns look more appealing, many professional fund managers quote their investors' rates of return before taking their own fees (transaction costs) into account. Usually, a footnote at the bottom satisfies the lawyers that the investors can not sue for being misled—they are supposed to know how to adjust returns for transaction costs themselves, which you now do.)

In NPV, work with after-transaction-cost cash flows—and after-transaction costs of capital.

How do you take care of transaction costs in present value calculations? This is relatively straightforward. In the example, you put in $1,005,000 and receive $1,030,000—say, after one year. So,

$$\text{NPV} = -\$1,005,000 + \frac{\$1,030,000}{1 + \text{Opportunity Cost of Capital}} \ . \tag{6.3}$$

The only thing you must still take care of is to quote your opportunity cost of capital also in after-transaction cost terms. You may not be able to get a 10% rate of return in comparable investments, because you may also be required to pay a transaction cost there, too. In this case, presume that an alternative investment with equal characteristics in the financial markets (not the housing markets) earns an 8%/year return, but has a 50 basis point cost, so this project may have an appropriate NPV of

$$\text{NPV} = -\$1,005,000 + \frac{\$1,030,000}{1 + 7.5\%} \approx -\$141,860 \ . \tag{6.4}$$

Solve Now!

Q 6.15 *Compute your after-transaction costs rate of return on purchasing a house for $1,000,000, if you have to pay 0.5% transaction fees upfront and pay 6% broker's commission (plus 2% in waiting costs). Assume a $4,000/month effective dividend of enjoying living in the house. At what rate of capital appreciation would the NPV be zero if you resold after one year? Assume that your opportunity cost of capital is 7% per year.*

6·3.D. Liquidity

More illiquid investments often have to offer a higher rate of return.

Things get even more interesting when transaction costs influence your upfront willingness to purchase assets. You might not want to purchase a house even if you *expect* to recoup your transaction cost, because you dislike the fact that you do not know whether it will be easy or hard to resell. After all, if you purchase a stock or bond instead, you know you can resell without much transaction cost whenever you want.

Physics in Finance? The Liquidity Analogy.

So, why would you want to take the risk of sitting on a house for months without being able to sell it? To get you to purchase a house would require the seller to compensate you. The seller would have to offer you a **liquidity premium**—an extra expected rate of return—to induce you to purchase the house. (We have already briefly mentioned this premium in the previous chapter.) The liquidity analogy comes from physics. The same way that physical movement is impeded by physical friction, economic transactions are impeded by transaction costs. Financial markets are often considered low-friction, or even close to frictionless. And when the amount of trading activity subsides, pros would even say that "the market has *dried up*."

This is true even for Treasury Bonds: on-the-run vs. off-the-run bonds.

Housing may be an extreme example, but liquidity effects seem to be everywhere and important—and even in financial markets with their low transaction costs. A well-known and startling example is Treasury bonds. One bond is designated to be **on-the-run**, which means that everyone who wants to trade a bond with roughly this maturity (and the financial press) focuses on this particular bond. This makes it easier to buy and sell the on-the-run bond than a similar but not identical off-the-run bond. For example, in November 2000, the 10-year on-the-run Treasury bond traded for a yield-to-maturity of 5.6% per annum, while a bond that was just a couple of days off in terms of its maturity (and thus practically identical) traded at 5.75% per annum. In other words, you would have been able to purchase the off-the-run bond at a much lower price than the on-the-run bond. The reason why you might want to purchase the on-the-run bond, even though it had a higher price, would be that you could resell it much more quickly and easily than the equivalent off-the-run bond. Of course, as the date approaches when this 10-year bond is about to lose its on-the-run designation and another bond is about to become the on-the-run 10-year bond, the old on-the-run bond drops in value and the new on-the-run bond increases in value.

Liquidity provision is a common business.

The provision of liquidity in markets of any kind is a common business. For example, you can think of antique stores or second-hand car dealerships as liquidity providers that try to buy cheap (being a standby buyer), and try to sell expensive (being a standby seller). Being a liquidity provider can require big risks and capital outlays. If it was easy, everyone could do it–and then there would be no more money in liquidity provision!

Solve Now!

Q 6.16 *What is the difference between a liquidity premium and transaction costs?*

6·4. An Introduction to The Tax Code

Our next violation of market perfection is taxes. They are pervasive and usually not small potatoes—they play such an important role that it is worthwhile to make a digression and explain the overall U.S. tax code once, at least in broad strokes. The actual tax code itself is very complex, and its details change every year, but the basics have remained in place for a long time and are similar in most countries. So, let us summarize in this section most of what you shall need in this book. It is an unusual section, in that it covers a subject matter to which we will refer again many times later—and like the tax code itself, it is somewhat tedious. I will try to liven it up with some anecdotes of how crazy the tax code really is, but you will just have to bear with it.

6·4.A. The Basics of (Federal) Income Taxes

The Tax Code basics are simple, the details are complex.

With the exception of **tax-exempt institutions**, such as charitable institutions and pension funds (which suffer no taxes), individuals and corporations in the United States are taxed in a similar fashion, so we can combine our discussion of the two. The name of the **Internal Revenue Service** (**IRS**) **tax form** that individuals have to file is feared by every U.S. tax payer: it is the infamous Form **1040**.

Step 1: Compute your Taxable Income.

Earned income or **ordinary income** is subject to both federal income taxes and state income taxes. There are, however, some deductions that taxpayers can take to result in lower **taxable income**. Most prominently, in the United States, individuals who itemize their deductions can reduce their taxable income through mortgage interest payments. (This does not extend to other kind of interest payments, so mortgage borrowing—rather than, say, car loan borrowing—is often the best choice in terms of after-tax effective interest costs for many individuals.) Further, with some restrictions, individuals may deduct other expenses, such as some educational expenses and certain retirement savings (specifically, through contribution to an **individual retirement account**, such as an ordinary **I.R.A.** or a **401-K**). (These are only tax-advantaged, not tax-exempt. Most contributions are income-tax exempt, but the IRS will collect taxes when the money is withdrawn in the future.) Individuals can also carry forward losses or deductions that they could not legally deduct in the current year into future years.

Corporations are similar.

Corporations are treated similarly, but often more generously by the tax code: they are generally allowed to deduct *all* interest, not just mortgage interest, and many corporations enjoy a plethora of preferential tax exemptions and loopholes, too numerous to list in just one book and ever-changing. Unlike individuals, corporations that have losses or extra deductions can even receive a refund for taxes paid in the most recent three years. This is not necessarily unfair—after all, corporations are just entities owned by individuals. Just as your car is not paying the car tax the DMV imposes—*you, the owner, are paying the car tax*—taxing corporations is just a different mechanism of taxing the individuals who own the corporation.

Tax Rates (Brackets) are "progressive."

Table 6.3 shows how your taxable income computation might look like. After you have computed your taxable income, you must apply the appropriate income tax rates. Income tax rates for individuals depend on your marital status and are usually **progressive**—that is, not only do you have to pay higher taxes when making more money, you have to pay *increasingly* higher taxes when making more money. (They are roughly progressive for corporations, but not perfectly so.) For example, Table 6.4 shows the U.S. federal income tax rates in 2004 for single individuals and corporations.

Anecdote: The Income Tax
The first federal income tax was introduced during the Civil War. It amounted to two percent per year on income above about $80,000 in 2002 dollars. Attorney Joseph H. Choate argued against the federal income tax in the Supreme Court—and won! It took a constitutional amendment to reinstate it. In his argument, Choate warned that the two percent rate might one day rise to twenty percent. (Source: Don Mathews.)

Between 1945 and 1963, the top income tax rate was around 90%; this was also the period in which the United States experienced the greatest economic boom in its history. Presumably, this was just coincidence.

file=frictions.tex: RP

Table 6.3. Sample Taxable Income Computation

	Actual Earned Income	$100,000
–	Allowed Mortgage Interest	$10,000
–	Allowed Retirement Investment Deduction (if investor is a person)	$5,000
=	Taxable Income	$85,000

Corporations are taxed similarly, but may be allowed a plethora of possible deductions. Details vary year to year, state to state, and company to company.

Table 6.4. Federal Income Tax Rate Tables for 2004

Single Individual

Tax Rate	Description	Minimum	Maximum	(Cumulative)
10%	on the first $7,150	$0	$7,150	$715
15%	on the next $21,900	$7,150	$29,050	$4,000
25%	on the next $41,300	$29,050	$70,350	$14,325
28%	on the next $76,400	$70,350	$146,750	$35,717
33%	on the next $172,350	$146,750	$319,100	$92,592
35%	on the remainder	$319,100	unlimited	

Corporations

Tax Rate	Description	Minimum	Maximum	(Cumulative)
15%	on the first $50,000	$0	$50,000	$7,500
25%	on the next $25,000	$50,000	$75,000	$13,750
34%	on the next $25,000	$75,000	$100,000	$22,250
39%	on the next $235,000	$100,000	$335,000	$113,900
34%	on the next $9.6 million	$335,000	$10.0 million	$3,377,900
35%	on the next $5.0 million	$10.0 million	$15.0 million	$5,127,900
38%	on the next $3.3 million	$15.0 million	$18.3 million	$6,381,900
35%	on the remainder	$18.3 million	unlimited	

Source: www.smbiz.com.

Table 6.5. Sample Income Tax Computation

Rate	on Amount		Tax
10%	on $7,150	=	$715
15%	on $21,900	=	$3,285
25%	on $41,300	=	$10,325
28%	on $14,650	=	$4,102
Computed Total Income Tax on $85,000		=	$18,427

Step 2: Look up Your Tax Bracket.

Each of the tax rates in Table 6.4 is also called a **tax bracket**, because each defines a range of income. If you are an individual in the 28% tax bracket, it means that you have taxable earnings between $70,350 and $146,750. Again, as with the computation of the taxable income, be warned that this particular tax rate table also contains many simplifications. (For example, there is also an **Alternative Minimum Tax** (**A.M.T.**) that nowadays applies to many taxpayers.) Table 6.5 shows how you would compute your federal income tax on a taxable income of $85,000, assuming you are single—it would come to $18,427.

6·4.B. Before-Tax vs. After-Tax Expenses

Taxpayers prefer before-tax expenses to (equal) after-tax expenses.

It is important for you to understand the difference between **before-tax expenses** and **after-tax expenses**. Before-tax expenses reduce the income before taxable income is computed. After-tax expenses have no effect on tax computations. Everything else being equal, if the IRS allows you to designate a payment to be a before-tax expense, it is more favorable to you, because it reduces your tax burden. For example, if you earn $100,000 and there were only one 40% bracket, a $50,000 before-tax expense leaves you

$$\begin{array}{rcl} (\$100,000 - \$50,000) \cdot (1 - 40\%) & = & \$30,000 \quad , \\ \text{Before-Tax Net Return} \cdot (1 - \text{Tax Rate}) & = & \text{After-Tax Net Return} \end{array} \tag{6.5}$$

while the same $50,000 expense if post-tax leaves you only with

$$\$100,000 \cdot (1 - 40\%) \; - \; \$50,000 \; = \; \$10,000 \quad . \tag{6.6}$$

We have already discussed the most important tax-shelter: both corporations and individuals can and often reduce their income tax by paying interest expenses, although individuals can do so only for mortgages. (Chapter 23 explores income tax reduction schemes for corporations in great detail.)

Save yourself some money by not repeating this mistake!

However, even the interest tax deduction has an opportunity cost, the oversight of which is a common and costly mistake. Many home owners believe that the deductibility of mortgage interest means that they should keep a mortgage on the house under all circumstances. It is not rare to find a home owner with both a 6% per year mortgage and a savings account (or government bonds) paying 5% per year. Yes, the 6% mortgage payment is tax deductible, and effectively represents an after-tax interest cost of 4% per year for a tax payer in the 33% marginal tax bracket. But, the savings bonds pay 5% per year, which are equally taxed at 33%, leaving only an after-tax interest rate of 3.3% per year. Therefore, for each $100,000 in mortgage and savings bonds, the house owner throws away $667 in before-tax money (equivalent to $444 in after-tax money).

ANECDOTE: The Use of Taxes
Where do all the taxes go?

In 2002, there were 128 million households filing federal income taxes. About $1 trillion (or about $7,800 per household) went to entitlement programs (primarily **Social Security** and **Medicare**). About $350 billion (or $2,700 per household) each went to defense spending and to non-defense spending. In inflation-adjusted terms, defense expenditures have remained roughly constant since 1962, non-defense expenditures have doubled, and entitlements have grown eightfold. Entitlements are projected to continue growing rapidly in the future, although this growth is likely not to be economically sustainable by the working population. (Source: The Heritage Foundation.)

State and Local Government expenditures in total are about half as large as federal government expenditures. In 2002, total government expenditures ran at about $2,855 billion per year, for a Gross Domestic Product of $10,150 billion, almost 30% of the total. Put differently, for every two dollars spent in the private economy, one dollar is spent by government somewhere.

6·4.C. Average and Marginal Tax Rates

It is also important for you to distinguish between the **average tax rate** and the **marginal tax rate**. The average tax rate is the total income tax divided by the income. In our example from Table 6.5, the average tax rate is

The Average Tax Rate is what you pay on your overall income.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Average Tax Rate} &= \frac{\$18,427}{\$85,000} \approx 21.68\% \\ &= \frac{\text{Total Tax Paid}}{\text{Total Taxable Income}} .\end{aligned} \tag{6.7}$$

(Some people prefer computing average tax rates relative to Total Income, rather than relative to Total Taxable Income). In this example, Uncle Sam receives 21.68% of this individual's taxable income.

In contrast, the marginal tax rate is the tax rate that applies to the last dollar earned (i.e., someone's tax bracket, as explained above). In our example with an income of $85,000, Table 6.4 shows that this rate was

The Marginal Tax Rate is what you paid on your last dollar of income, and what you would have to pay on one more dollar of income.

$$\text{Marginal Tax Rate} = 28\% . \tag{6.8}$$

The marginal tax rate is important, because it applies to any additional activity you might undertake. For example, if you want to work one extra hour at a $40 an hour pre-tax pay rate, you only receive $(1-28\%)\cdot\$40 = \$28.80$ as spendable extra cash, not $(1-21.68\%)\cdot\$40 = \$31.32$. Thus, in the decision whether to work (which is itself a *project*) or to play basketball (a sort of consumption "project" that is not taxed!), it is the marginal tax rate that matters, not the average tax rate.

Or, take a company facing the same tax situation (income and tax rate) next year, which now has to decide between investing in a project that costs $100 and will return $110, or investing in a tax-exempt vehicle that costs $100 and will return $107.50. If it takes the project, its earnings will increase from $85,000 to $85,010. At the marginal tax rate of 28%, its taxes will increase to $\$18,427 + 0.28 \cdot 10 \approx 18,429$, slightly raising the average tax rate (still 21.68%, though). So the extra after-tax income will only be $7.20—less than the $7.50 that the firm can get from putting its $100 into the tax-exempt vehicle instead. The firm's average tax rate of 21.89% is irrelevant—whatever the firm was able to avoid in taxes on its first dollars of earnings is the same and thus does not matter to each additional dollar. Economists are almost always more interested in the marginal tax rate than the average tax rate.

In deciding between corporate investments, the marginal tax rate matters!

6·4.D. Dividend and Capital Gains Taxes

While ordinary income applies to products and services sold, **capital gain** applies to income that is earned when an investment asset that was purchased is sold for a higher price. Capital gains are peculiar in three ways:

Capital gains are taxed less than ordinary income.

1. If the asset is held for more than a year, the capital gain is not taxed at the ordinary income tax rate, but at a lower long-term capital gains tax rate. (In 2002, the long-term capital gains tax rate is 15 percent for taxpayers that are in the 25% tax bracket or higher.)
2. Capital losses on the sale of one asset can be used to reduce the taxable capital gain on another sale.
3. The tax obligation occurs only at the time of the realization: if you own a painting that has appreciated by $100,000 each year, you did not have to pay $20\% \cdot \$100,000$ each year in taxes. The painting can increase in value to many times its original value, without you ever having to pay a dime in taxes, just as long as you do not sell it. In contrast, $100,000 in income per year will generate immediate tax obligations—and you even will have to pay taxes again if you invest the labor income for further gains.

Dividends—until 2008 ?!

Dividends, that is, payments made by companies to their stock owners, used to be treated as ordinary income. However, the "Bush 2003 tax cuts" (formally, the *Jobs&Growth Tax Relief Reconciliation Act of 2003*) reduced the tax rate to between 5% and 15%, the same as long-term capital gains taxes—provided that the paying company itself has paid sufficient corporate income tax. However, this will only be in effect until 2008, when dividends may be taxed at the ordinary income tax level again. There is no guarantee that this will not change every couple of years, so you must learn how to think about dividend taxes, not the current details of dividend taxes.

More on dividends is in Chapter 23.

Corporations are "lonelier" in the U.S., because they do not want to be taxed on inter-corporate dividend distributions.

In the United States, corporations holding shares in other companies are also taxed on dividend proceeds. This makes it relatively inefficient for them to hold cross equity stakes in dividend paying companies. However, in Europe, dividends paid from one corporations to another are often tax-exempted or tax-reduced. This has allowed most European corporations to become organized as pyramids or networks, with cross-holdings and cross-payments everywhere. (In effect, such cross-holdings make it very difficult for shareholders to influence management.)

6·4.E. Other Taxes

Other Income Taxes: state, county, international taxes.

In addition to federal income taxes, there are a plethora of other taxes. Most states impose their own income tax. This typically adds another tax rate of between 0% and 10%, depending on state and income. Worse, each state has its own idea not only of what its tax rate and tax brackets should be, but even how taxable income should be computed. Thus, you need to learn not only the federal tax code, but also your state's tax code. For example, California has the highest marginal state income tax bracket that is not federal deductible: 9.3%. Montana has the highest marginal state income tax bracket that is tax deductible on your federal income tax: 11%. Alaska, Florida, Nevada, South Dakota, Texas, Washington, and Wyoming levy no state income tax, and New Hampshire and Tennessee tax only interest and dividend income.

Property Taxes are state/local.

Many counties pay for school education with property tax rates. In the richer counties of southwest Connecticut, the tax is about 1% of the value of the house, but it can reach about 4% in the poorer urban counties. In Maine (the second-highest property tax collector in the nation), residents pay 5.5% of their income in property tax. Many states also levy a sales tax. Tennessee and Louisiana have a sales tax of 8.35%; Alaska, Delaware, Montana, New Hampshire, and Oregon levy no sales tax. (A nice summary can be found at www.retirementliving.com/RLtaxes.html. It also includes a ranking of the tax burdens by state—Alaska [with 6% of total income], New Hampshire, Delaware, and Tennessee have the lowest; New York [with 12.9% of total income], Maine, Ohio, and Hawaii have the highest.)

ANECDOTE: Taxing the Rich, or Taxing the Wealthy?
The political rhetoric about who wants to "tax the rich" is just false. Neither Democrats nor Republicans ever debate about taxing the rich. Instead, they debate about taxing high-income individuals. This matters because there is a big difference between wealth increases and income. The lowest tax rates on wealth increases are enjoyed by the richest Americans. Most of these are households that earn most of their wealth increases not in ordinary income, but in capital gains from existing wealth. If not realized, these wealth increases may never have been taxed, at all! For example, Warren Buffett has probably paid about 0.0% in personal income tax on his wealth increase of over $30 billion over the last 30 years.

In contrast, most ordinary households receive their annual wealth increases in ordinary income or interest receipts. These wealth increases are taxed every year, and are taxed at a much higher marginal tax rate than capital gains wealth increases. Roughly, an ordinary worker's wealth increases suffer taxes to the tune of about 25% to 50% per year. (Chapters 22–23 will describe tax sheltering in greater detail.) The primary tax on wealth today seems to come from property taxes—the value of one's house. Again, this does not much to tax the "super-wealthy," because for them, the residence constitutes only a very small part of their wealth.

Although a tax on all wealth increases would be fairer than the current income tax *and* provide better incentives to work, it would also be far more difficult to administer. Nevertheless, most European countries have both annual wealth-based taxes and wealth-based inheritance taxes.

Complex Complexity.

If you have to file in multiple states or even in multiple countries—although there are rules that try to avoid double taxation—the details can be hair-raisingly complex. If you find yourself in such a situation, may the force be with you!

"Social" Taxes: Social Security and Medicare.

Finally, there are **social security** and **medicare** contributions. Although these are supposedly insurance premia, any money taken in today is immediately spent by the government on the elderly today. Thus, anyone young today is unlikely to receive much in return from the government in 20 to 30 years—when there will be fewer young people around to pay their retirement benefits. Thus, many financial economists consider social taxes to be as much a form of income tax as the statutory income tax.

Non Income Based Taxes: Sales Tax, Real Estate Taxes, Estate Taxes.

This book also ignores many other non-income taxes. For some taxes, such as the **sales tax**, it is not clear how to use expertise in finance to lower them. For other taxes, such as the **estate tax**, you need extremely specialized financial vehicles to avoid or reduce them. These are beyond the scope of this book.

6·4.F. What You Need To Know About Tax Principles In Our Book

IMPORTANT: *You must understand*

1. *how income taxes are computed (the principles, not the details);*
2. *the fact that expenses that can be paid from before-tax income are better than expenses that must be paid from after-tax income;*
3. *how to compute the average tax rate;*
4. *how to obtain the marginal tax rate;*
5. *the fact that capital gains enjoy preferential tax treatment;*
6. *why the average and marginal tax rates differ, and why the marginal tax rate is usually higher than the average tax rate.*

What you will learn later about taxes.

As already noted, you will later have to pay special attention to three facts: that corporations and individuals can deduct certain interest expenses; that capital gains are taxed at lower tax rates; and that some retirement account investment returns are tax-exempt. These features of the tax code offer individuals and corporations opportunities to legally reduce their tax obligations.

Solve Now!

For all questions here, assume that this investor has $1,000 in valid interest deductions.

Q 6.17 *What are the average and marginal federal tax rates for a single individual earning $5,000? Repeat for a corporation.*

Q 6.18 *What are the average and marginal federal tax rates for a single individual earning $50,000? Repeat for a corporation.*

Q 6.19 *What are the average and marginal federal tax rates for a single individual earning $50,000,000? Repeat for a corporation.*

6·5. Working With Taxes

In one sense, taxes are very similar to transaction costs—they take a "cut," making investments less profitable. However, taxes are often orders of magnitude bigger and thus more important than ordinary transaction costs and—except for illustrative examples—you should not simply assume them away, which is quite different from what you can sometimes do with transaction costs. (Ignoring taxes may be a good assumption for the tax-exempt Red Cross, but probably not for you or for the ordinary corporation!) Another difference between taxes and transaction costs is that taxes are higher on profitable transactions, whereas plain transaction costs do not care whether you made money or lost money. In addition, taxes often have many more nuances. We now try to understand better how to work with income taxes.

6·5.A. Taxes in Rates of Returns

Taxable Investors (unlike tax-exempt investors) care about post-tax inflows and outflows.

In the end, all you probably care about are your after-tax returns, not your pre-tax returns. It should not matter whether you receive \$100 that has to be taxed at 50% or whether you receive \$50 that does not have to be taxed. This leads to a recommendation analogous to that for transaction costs—work only in after-tax money. For example, say you invest \$100,000 in after-tax money to earn a return of \$160,000. Your marginal tax rate is 25%. Taxes are on the net return of \$60,000, so your after-tax net return is

$$\begin{aligned} 75\% \cdot \$60,000 &= \$45,000 \\ (1-\tau) \cdot \text{Before-Tax Net Return} &= \text{After-Tax Net Return} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.9}$$

(The tax rate is often abbreviated with the Greek letter τ, tau.) In addition, you will receive your original investment back, so your after-tax rate of return is

$$r_{\text{After Tax}} = \frac{\$145,000 - \$100,000}{\$100,000} = 45\% \quad . \tag{6.10}$$

6·5.B. Tax-Exempt Bonds and the Marginal Investor

Municipal bonds' interest payments are legally exempt from income taxes.

In the United States, there are bonds that are issued by governmental entities, whose interest payments are legally tax-exempt—the reasoning of the federal government being that it does not want to burden states' or local governments' efforts to raise money. If you own one of these bonds, you do not need to declare the interest on your federal income tax forms, and sometimes not even on your state's income tax form, either. (The arrangement differs from bond to bond.) The most prominent tax-exempt bonds are called **municipal bonds** or **muni bonds** or even **munis** for short. As their name suggests, they are usually issued by municipalities such as the City of Los Angeles (CA) or the City of Canton (OH).

The May 2002 Situation.

On May 31, 2002, the *Wall Street Journal* reported on Page C12 that tax-exempt municipal 7-12 year highly rated bonds (AA) offered an annualized interest rate of 5.24%. Bonds of similar risk issued by corporations offered an interest rate of about 6.76%. Which one would be a better investment *for you*? Well, it depends.

Comparing After-Tax Returns of Tax-Exempt and Taxable Bonds.

If you invested \$1,000 into munis at a 5.24% interest rate, you would receive \$52.40 at year's end. You would get to keep all of it, because these bonds are tax-exempt. If you invested \$1,000 in taxable bonds at a 6.76% interest rate, you would receive \$67.60 at year's end. If your income tax rate is 0%, you would clearly prefer the \$67.60 to the \$52.40. However, if your marginal income tax rate is 30%, Uncle Sam would collect \$20.28 and leave you with \$47.32. Your after-tax rate of return is

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{post-tax}} &= (1-30\%) \cdot 6.76\% = 70\% \cdot 6.76\% \approx 4.73\% \\ r_{\text{post-tax}} &= (1-\tau) \cdot r_{\text{pre-tax}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.11}$$

With a 30% tax rate, you would prefer the tax-exempt bond that pays \$52.40.

Economists sometimes like to talk about a hypothetical marginal investor. This is an investor whose marginal income tax rate is such that she would be exactly indifferent between buying the tax-exempt and the taxable bond. Using Formula 6.11, the marginal investor has a tax rate of

High-income tax bracket individuals should prefer tax-exempt bonds; low-income tax bracket individuals should prefer taxable bonds.

$$5.24\% = (1-\tau_{\text{marginal}})\cdot 6.76\% \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \tau_{\text{marginal}} = 1-\frac{5.24\%}{6.76\%} \approx 22.5\% \tag{6.12}$$

$$r_{\text{post-tax}} = (1-\tau_{\text{marginal}})\cdot r_{\text{pre-tax}} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \tau_{\text{marginal}} = 1-\frac{r_{\text{post-tax}}}{r_{\text{pre-tax}}} \quad .$$

Any investor with a marginal income tax rate above 22.5% (such as a high-income retail investor) should prefer the tax-exempt bond. Any investor with a marginal income tax rate below this income tax rate (such as a tax-exempt pension fund investor) should prefer the taxable bond.

Unfortunately, unlike the U.S. Treasury, municipalities can and have gone bankrupt, so that they may not fully repay. (The most prominent recent default was the Orange County (CA) default in December 1994.) Municipal bonds are not an entirely risk-free investment.

Munis do have default (credit) risk. See next chapter.

Solve Now!

Q 6.20 *On May 31, 2002, for short-term bonds, the Bond Market Data Bank Section in the Wall Street Journal (Page C15) indicates the ratio between the equivalent yields of AAA municipal and Treasury securities to be around 74.6%. What is the marginal investor's tax rate?*

Q 6.21 *On May 31, 2002, for long-term bonds, the Bond Market Data Bank Section in the Wall Street Journal (Page C15) computes the ratio between the AAA municipal and Treasury securities to be around 92% (for short-term municipal bonds). What is the marginal investor's tax rate?*

6·5.C. Taxes in NPV

Again, as with transaction costs, you should take care to work only with cash in the same units—here, this means cash that you can use for consumption. Again, it should not matter whether you receive \$100 that has to be taxed at 50% or whether you receive \$50 that does not have to be taxed. As far as NPV is concerned, everything should be computed in after-tax dollars. This includes all cash flows, whether today or tomorrow, whether cash inflows or outflows.

Compute everything in After-Tax Dollars!

> **IMPORTANT**: *Do all NPV calculations in after-tax money.*

Unfortunately, you cannot simply discount pre-tax cash flows with the pre-tax cost of capital (wrong!) and expect to come up with the same result as when you discount after-tax cash flows with after-tax costs of capital (right!).

You must compute the after-tax opportunity cost of capital.

For example, consider a project that costs \$10,000 and returns \$13,000 next year. Your tax rate is 40%, and 1-year equivalently risky bonds return 25% if their income is taxable, and 10% if their income is not taxable. First, you must decide what your opportunity cost of capital is. Section 6·5.B tells you that if you put \$100 into taxables, you will own \$125, but the IRS will confiscate (\$125 − \$100) · 40% = \$10. You will thus own \$115 in after-tax income. Tax-exempts grow only to \$110, so you prefer the taxable bond—it is the taxable bond that determines your opportunity cost of capital. Your equivalent after-tax rate of return is therefore 15%. This 15% is your after-tax "opportunity" cost of capital—it is your best use of capital elsewhere.

An example—how to pick your opportunity cost of capital.

You must apply it to the after-tax expected cash flows.

Return to your $10,000 project now. You know that your taxable project returns 30% taxable ($3,000), while taxable bonds return 25% ($2,500), so NPV should tell you to take this project. Uncle Sam will confiscate $40\% \cdot \$3,000 = \$1,200$, leaving you with $11,800. Therefore, the NPV of your project is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= -\$10,000 + \frac{\$11,800}{1+15\%} = \$260.87 \\ \text{NPV} &= \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF}_1)}{1+\mathcal{E}(r_{0,1})} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.13}$$

It makes intuitive sense: if you had invested money into the bonds, you would have ended up with $11,500. Instead, you will end up with $11,800, the $300 difference occurring next year. Discounted, the $261 seems intuitively correct. Of course, there is an infinite number of ways of getting incorrect solutions, but recognize that none of the following calculations that use the pre-tax expected cash flows (and try different discount rates) give the same correct result:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &\neq -\$10,000 + \frac{\$13,000}{1+25\%} = \$400 \\ \text{NPV} &\neq -\$10,000 + \frac{\$13,000}{1+15\%} = \$1,304.35 \\ \text{NPV} &\neq -\$10,000 + \frac{\$13,000}{1+10\%} = \$1,818.18 \end{aligned} \tag{6.14}$$

You have no choice: *you cannot work with pre-tax expected cash flows.* Instead, you need to go through the exercise of carefully computing after-tax cash flows and discounting with your after-tax opportunity cost of capital.

Can you compare two projects based on pre-tax NPV?

You know that computing after-tax cash flows is a pain. Can you at least compare two equally taxable projects in terms of their pre-tax NPV? If one project is better than the other in pre-tax terms, is it also better in after-tax terms? If yes, then you could at least do relative capital budgeting with pre-tax project cash flows. This may or may not work, and here is why. Compare project SAFE that costs $1,000 and will provide $1,500 this evening; and project UNSAFE that costs $1,000 and will provide either $500 or $2,500 this evening with equal probability. The expected payout is the same, and the cost of capital is practically 0% for 1 day. If you are in the 20% marginal tax bracket, project SAFE will leave the IRS with $20\% \cdot (\$1,500 - \$1,000) = \$100$, and you with +$400 in after-tax net return. Project UNSAFE will either give you $1,500 or –$500 in *taxable* earnings.

- If you can use the losses to offset other gains elsewhere, then you would either send $\$1,500 \cdot 20\% = \$300$ extra to the IRS; or you would send $100 *less* to the IRS (because your taxable profits elsewhere would be reduced). In this case, project SAFE and UNSAFE would have the same expected tax costs and after-tax cash flows.
- If you drop into a different tax bracket beyond an additional net income of $1000, say 25%, then project UNSAFE becomes less desirable than project SAFE. For the $1,500 income, the first $500 would still cost you $100 in tax, but the remaining $1,000 would cost you $250. Thus, your project's marginal tax obligation would be either $350 or −$100, for an expected tax burden of $125. (The same logic applies if your losses would make you fall into a lower tax bracket—the UNSAFE project would become less desirable.)
- If you have no gains elsewhere to use your project tax loss against, then the UNSAFE project would again be worth less. Corporations can ask for a tax refund on old gains, so this factor is less binding than it is for individuals, who may have to carry the capital loss forward until they have sufficient income again to use it—if ever.

Thus, whether you can compare projects on a pre-tax basis depends on whether you have perfect symmetry in the applicable marginal tax rates across projects. If you do, then the project that is more profitable in after-tax terms is also more profitable in pre-tax terms. This would allow you to simply compare projects by their pre-tax NPVs. If gains and losses face different taxation—either because of tax bracket changes or because of your inability to use the tax losses elsewhere—then you cannot simply choose the project with the higher pre-tax NPV. You will have to go through the entire after-tax NPV calculations and compare these.

file=frictions.tex: RP

IMPORTANT: *You can only compare projects on a before-tax NPV basis if the tax treatment is absolutely symmetric. This requires consideration of your overall tax situation.*

WACC and APV unfortunately have to wait.

You now know how to discount projects in the presence of income taxes. However, you do not yet know how to compute the proper discount rate for projects that are financed by debt and equity, because debt and equity face different tax consequences. Unfortunately, you will have to wait until Chapter 22 before we can do a good job discussing the two suitable methods—called APV and WACC—to handle differential taxation by financing. Until we will have covered investments in Part III, you just do not have all the necessary pieces, and your goal must be to understand formulas, rather than just eat them.

Solve Now!

Q 6.22 *You have a project that costs $50,000 and will return $80,000 in three years. Your marginal tax rate is 37.5%. Treasuries pay a rate of return of 8% per year, munis pay a rate of return of 3% per year. What is the NPV of your project?*

6·5.D. Tax Timing

Do not forget that even when inflows require after-tax dollars, sometimes outflows are taxed again.

In many situations, the IRS does not allow reinvestment of funds generated by a project without an interim tax penalty. This can be important when you compare one long-term investment to multiple short-term investments that are otherwise identical. For example, consider a farmer in the 40% tax bracket who purchases grain that costs $300, and that triples its value every year.

- If the IRS considers this farm to be one long-term two-year project, the farmer can use the first harvest to reseed, so $300 seed turns into $900 in one year and then into a $2,700 harvest in two years. Uncle Sam considers the profit to be $2,400 and so collects taxes of $960. The farmer is left with post-tax profits of $1,440.
- If the IRS considers this production to be two consecutive one-year projects, then the farmer ends up with $900 at the end of the first year. Uncle Sam collects $40\%\cdot\$600 = \$240$, leaving the farmer with $660. Replanted, the $660 grows to $1,980, of which the IRS collects another $40\%\cdot\$1,980 = \$792$. The farmer is left with post-tax profits of $60\%\cdot\$1,980 = \$1,188$.

The discrepancy between $1,440 and $1,188 is due to the fact that the long-term project can avoid the interim taxation. Similar issues arise whenever an expense can be reclassified from "reinvested profits" (taxed, if not with some credit at reinvestment time) into "necessary maintenance."

Although you should always get taxes right—and really know the details of the tax situation that applies to you—be aware that you must particularly pay attention to getting taxes right if you are planning to undertake real estate transactions. These have special tax exemptions and tax depreciation writeoffs that are essential to getting the project valuation right.

Solve Now!

Q 6.23 *It is not uncommon for individuals to forget about taxes, especially when investments are small and payoffs are large but rare. Presume you are in the 30% tax bracket. Is the NPV of a $1 lottery ticket that pays off taxable winnings of $10 million with a chance of 1 in 9 million positive or negative? How would it change if you could purchase the lottery ticket with pre-tax money?*

6·6. INFLATION

Back to our perfect markets assumptions.

We have now discussed all violations from the assumptions necessary for our perfect market Utopia. So, what are we doing now? If you return to our perfect markets assumptions, you will see that "no inflation" was not among them. **Inflation** is the process by which goods cost more in the future than they cost today—in which the price level is rising and money is losing its value.

Known inflation applicable everywhere is irrelevant.

So, inflation is actually not a market imperfection per se. If today we quoted everything in dollars, and tomorrow we quote everything in cents—so that an apple that cost 1 currency unit today will cost 100 currency units tomorrow, an inflation of 10,000%—would it make any difference? Not really. The apple would still cost the same in terms of foregone other opportunities, whether it is 1 dollar or 100 cents.

...but inflation is often not applicable everywhere.

However, we have made a big assumption here—inflation applied equally to everything, and especially applied equally to all contracts across time. See, if you had contracted to deliver apples at 1 currency unit tomorrow, whatever currency units may be, you could be in big trouble—you would have promised to sell your apples at 1 cent (1 currency unit) instead of $1. Most financial contracts are denominated in such "nominal" terms—that is, in plain currency units—so inflation would matter. Of course, inflation would not be much of a concern for a financial contract that would be "inflation-indexed."

Our agenda.

What effect does inflation have on returns? On (net) present values? This is the subject of this section. As before, we start with interest rates and then proceed to net present values.

6·6.A. Defining the Inflation Rate

The CPI is the most common inflation measure.

The first important question is how you should define inflation. Is the rate of change of the price of apples the best measure of inflation? What if apples (the fruit) become more expensive, but Apples (the computers) become less expensive? Defining inflation is somewhat tricky. To solve this problem, economists have invented *baskets* or *bundles* of goods that are deemed to be representative, for which they can then measure an average price change. The official source of most inflation measures is the **Bureau of Labor Statistics** (**B.L.S.**), which determines the compositions of a number of prominent bundles (indexes), and publishes the average total price of these bundles on a monthly basis. The most prominent such inflation measure is a hypothetical bundle of average household consumption, called the **Consumer Price Index** (or **CPI**). (The CPI components are roughly: housing 40%, food 20%, transportation 15%, medical care 10%, clothing 5%, entertainment 5%, others 5%.) The *Wall Street Journal* prints the percent change in the CPI at the end of its column *Money Rates*. (On May 31, 2002, the Consumer Price Index was increasing at a rate of 1.6%/year.) A number of other indexes are also in common use as inflation measures, such as the **Producer Price Index** (**PPI**) or the broader **GDP Deflator**. They typically move fairly similarly to the CPI. There are also more specialized bundles, such as computer inflation indexes (the price of equivalent computer power does not inflate, but deflate, so the rate is usually negative), or indexes for prices of goods purchased in a particular region.

ANECDOTE: The German Hyperinflation of 1922

The most famous episode of **hyperinflation** occurred in Germany from August 1922 to November 1923. Prices more than quadrupled every month. The price for goods was higher in the evening than in the morning! Stamps had to be overprinted by the day, and shoppers went out with bags of money—that were worthless at the end of the day. By the time Germany printed 1,000 billion Mark Bank Notes, no one trusted the currency anymore. This hyperinflation was stopped only by a drastic currency and financial system reform. But high inflation is not just a historic artifact. For example, many Latin American countries experienced annual doubling of prices in the early 1980s.

The opposite of inflation is **deflation** (negative inflation)—a process in which the price level falls. Though much rarer, it happens. In fact, in November 2002, Business Week reported that an ongoing recession and low demand continue to force an ongoing decline in Japanese prices.

Many economists now believe that a modest inflation rate between 1% and 3% per year is a healthy number.

The official inflation rate is not just a number—it is important in itself, because many contracts are **rate-indexed**. For example, even if actual inflation is zero, if the officially reported CPI rate is positive, the government must pay out more to social security recipients. The lower the official inflation rate, the less the government has to pay. You would therefore think that the government has the incentive to understate inflation. But strangely, this has not been the case. On the contrary, there are strong political interest groups that hinder the B.L.S. from even just improving on mistakes in the CPI because it would result in *lower* official inflation numbers. In 1996, the *Boskin Commission*, consisting of a number of eminent economists, found that the CPI overstates inflation by about 74 basis points per annum—a huge difference. The main reasons are that the B.L.S. has been tardy in recognizing the growing importance of such factors as computer and telecommunication effective price declines, and the role of superstores such as Wal-Mart.

The CPI matters—even if it is wrong.

One final warning:

> **IMPORTANT**: *The common statement "in today's dollars" is ambiguous. Some people mean "inflation adjusted." Other people mean present values (i.e., "compared to an investment in risk-free bonds"). When in doubt, ask!*

Solve Now!

Q 6.24 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, find out what the current inflation rate is.*

6·6.B. Real and Nominal Interest Rates

To work around inflation, you first need to learn the difference between a **nominal return** and a **real return**. The nominal return is what everyone usually quotes—a return that has not been adjusted for inflation. In contrast, the real return somehow "takes out" inflation from the nominal return in order to calculate a return "as if" there had been no price inflation to begin with. It is the real return which reflects the fact that, in the presence of inflation, a dollar in the future will have less purchasing power than a dollar today. It is the real rate of return that measures your trade-off between present and future consumption, taking into account the change in prices.

Nominal is what is normally quoted. Real is what you want to know.

Consider a simple no-uncertainty scenario: assume that the inflation rate is 100% per year, and you can buy a bond that promises a *nominal* interest rate of 700% (the bond payout is quadruple your pay-in). What is your *real* rate of return? To find out, assume that \$1 buys one apple today. With an inflation rate of 100%, you need \$2 next year to buy the same apple. Your investment return will be \$1 · (1 + 700%) = \$8 for today's \$1 of investment. But this \$8 now applies to apples costing \$2 each. So, your \$8 will buy 4 apples, and not 8 apples. Your real rate of return is

An Extreme 100% Inflation Rate Example: Prices Double Every Year.

$$r_{\text{real}} = \frac{4\text{ Apples} - 1\text{ Apples}}{1\text{ Apples}} = 300\% \quad . \tag{6.15}$$

For each dollar invested today, you will be able to purchase only 300 percent more apples next year (not 700% more apples) than you could purchase today. This is because the purchasing power of your dollar next year will be reduced by half.

The correct formula to adjust for inflation is again a "one-plus" type formula. In our example, it is

The Conversion Formula from Nominal to Real Rates.

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + 700\%) &= (1 + 100\%) \cdot (1 + 300\%) \\ (1 + r_{\text{nominal}}) &= (1 + \text{Inflation Rate}) \cdot (1 + r_{\text{real}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.16}$$

Turning this formula around solves for real rates of return,

$$\begin{aligned}(1+r_{\text{real}}) &= \frac{1+700\%}{1+100\%} = 1+300\% \\ (1+r_{\text{real}}) &= \frac{(1+r_{\text{nominal}})}{(1+\text{Inflation Rate})} \quad .\end{aligned} \tag{6.17}$$

IMPORTANT: *The relation between nominal rates of return ($r_{nominal}$), real rates of returns (r_{real}), and inflation (π) is*

$$(1+r_{nominal}) = (1+r_{real}) \cdot (1+\pi) \quad . \tag{6.18}$$

For small rates, adding/subtracting is ok.

As with compounding, if both inflation and the nominal interest rate are small, the mistake of just subtracting the inflation rate from the nominal interest rate to obtain the real interest rate is not too grave. The difference is a cross-term (see Page 21),

$$r_{\text{real}} = r_{\text{nominal}} - \pi - \underbrace{r_{\text{real}} \cdot \pi}_{\text{cross-term}} \quad . \tag{6.19}$$

For example, as of mid-2004, the official CPI inflation rate fluctuated month-to-month from about 2.5% to 3% per annum. The 10-year Treasury bond paid 4% per annum on October 31, 2004. Therefore, if you believe that the inflation rate will remain at 2.5% per annum, you would presume a real rate of return of about $4\% - 2.5\% \approx 1.5\%$—though this would ignore the cross-term. The more accurate computation would be $(1+4\%)/(1+2.5\%)-1 \approx 1.46\%$. The cross-term difference of 4 basis points is swamped by your uncertainty about the future inflation rate—at least as of 2004. However, when inflation and interest rates are high—as they were, e.g., in the late nineteen-seventies—then the cross-term can make quite a meaningful difference.

Real interest rates can be negative.

A positive time-value of money—the fact that money tomorrow is worth more than money today—is only true for nominal quantities, not for real quantities. Only nominal interest rates are never negative. In the presence of inflation, real interest rates not only *can* be negative, but often *have* been negative. In such situations, by saving money, you would have ended up with more money—but with less purchasing power, not more purchasing power. Of course, if there are goods or project that appreciate with inflation (inflation hedges, such as real estate or gold), and to the extent that these goods are both storable and traded in a perfect market, you would not expect to see negative real rates of return. After all, you could buy these projects today and sell them next year, and thereby earn a real rate of return that is positive.

Solve Now!

Q 6.25 *Using information from a current newspaper or the WWW, find out what the annualized current 30-day nominal interest rate is.*

Q 6.26 *Using the information from the previous two questions, determine the annualized current real interest rate?*

Q 6.27 *From memory, write down the relationship between nominal rates of return ($r_{nominal}$), real rates of return (r_r), and the inflation rate (π).*

Q 6.28 *The nominal interest rate is 20%. Inflation is 5%. What is the real interest rate?*

Q 6.29 *The inflation rate is 1.5% per year. The real rate of return is 2% per year. A perpetuity project that payed $100 this year will provide income that grows by the inflation rate. Show what this project is truly worth. Do this in both nominal and real terms. (Be clear on what never to do.)*

6·6.C. Handling Inflation in Net Present Value

The most fundamental rule is to never mix apples and oranges. Nominal cash flows must be discounted with nominal interest rates.

When it comes to inflation and net present value, there is a simple rule: never mix apples and oranges. The beauty of NPV is that every project, every action is translated into the same units: today's dollars. Keep everything in the same units in the presence of inflation, so that this NPV advantage is not lost. When you use the NPV formula, always discount nominal cash flows with nominal costs of capital, and real (inflation-adjusted) cash flows with real (inflation-adjusted) costs of capital.

A Previous Example Revisited.

Let's show this. Return to our "apple" example. With 700% nominal interest rates and 100% inflation, the real interest rate is $(1 + 700\%)/(1 + 100\%) - 1 = 300\%$. What is the value of a project that gives 12 apples next year, given that apples cost $1 each today and $2 each next year? There are two methods you can use.

1. Discount the nominal value of 12 apples next year ($\$2 \cdot 12 = \$24$) with the nominal interest rate. Thus, the 12 future apples are worth
$$\frac{\text{Nominal Cash Flow}_1}{1 + \text{nominal rate}_{0,1}} = \frac{\$24}{1 + 700\%} = \$3 \ . \tag{6.20}$$

2. Discount real cash flows (i.e., 12A) with the real interest rate. Thus, the 12 future apples are worth
$$\frac{\text{Real Cash Flow}_1}{1 + \text{real rate}_{0,1}} = \frac{12A}{1 + 300\%} = 3A \ , \tag{6.21}$$
in today's apples. Because an apple costs $1 today, the eight apples are worth $3.

Both methods arrive at the same result. The opportunity cost of capital is that if you invest one apple today, you can quadruple your apple holdings by next year. Thus, a 12 apple harvest next year is worth 3 apples to you today. The higher nominal interest rates already reflect the fact that nominal cash flows next year are worth less than they are this year.

IMPORTANT:

- *Discount nominal cash flows with nominal interest rates.*
- *Discount real cash flows with real interest rates.*

Either works. Never discount nominal cash flows with real interest rates, or vice-versa.

Usually, use nominal interest rates.

If you want to see this in algebra, the reason that the two methods come to the same result is that the inflation rate cancels out,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$24}{1 + 700\%} = \frac{12A}{1 + 300\%} = \frac{12A \cdot (1 + 100\%)}{(1 + 300\%) \cdot (1 + 100\%)} \\ &= \frac{N}{1 + n} = \frac{R}{1 + r} = \frac{R \cdot (1 + \pi)}{(1 + r) \cdot (1 + \pi)} \ , \end{aligned} \tag{6.22}$$

where N is the nominal cash flow, n the nominal interest rate, R the real cash flow, r the real interest rate, and π the inflation rate. Most of the time, it is easier to work in nominal quantities.

Nominal interest rates are far more common than real interest rates, and you can simply use published inflation rates to adjust the future price of goods to obtain future expected nominal cash flows.

Solve Now!

Q 6.30 *If the real interest is 3% per annum, the inflation rate is 8% per annum, then what is the value of a $500,000 payment next year?*

Q 6.31 *If the real interest is 3% per annum, the inflation rate is 8% per annum, then what is the value of a $500,000 payment every year forever?*

Q 6.32 *Inflation is 2% per year, the interest rate is 8% per year. Our perpetuity project has cash flows that grow at 1% faster than inflation forever, starting with $20 next year.*

(a) What is the real interest rate?

(b) What is the project PV?

(c) What would you get if you grew a perpetuity project of $20 by the real growth rate of 1%, and then discounted at the nominal cost of capital?

(d) What would you get if you grew a perpetuity project of $20 by the nominal growth rate of 3%, and then discounted at the real cost of capital?

Doing either of the latter two calculation is not an uncommon mistake.

Q 6.33 *You must value a perpetual lease. It will cost $100,000 each year in real terms—that is, its proceeds will not grow in real terms, but just contractually keep pace with inflation. The prevailing interest rate is 8% per year, the inflation rate is 2% per year forever. The first cash flow of your project next year is $100,000 quoted in today's real dollars. What is the PV of the project? (Warning: watch the timing and amount of your first payment.)*

6·6.D. Interest Rates and Inflation Expectations

Nominal Interest Rate Levels

Inflation affects the level of the nominal interest rate.

Should you take inflation into account? Absolutely. As an investor, like the market overall, you probably care more about real returns than nominal rates. Therefore, when purchasing financial investments, you must form an expectation of how this investment will affect your purchasing power. For example, if the nominal interest rate is 5%, you may prefer spending more money today if you believe the inflation rate to be 10% than if you believe it to be only 6%. Of course, if you have no better alternatives, you might still want to save money even if your real rate of return is negative. Be this as it may, you would expect nominal interest rates in the economy to be higher when inflation is higher. This also means that you would expect nominal rates to go up when inflation rate expectations are going up. Similarly, you would expect nominal rates to go down when inflation rate expectations are going down. Now, many investors also believe that stocks are good inflation hedges, in that they appreciate automatically in value when the inflation rate increases—after all, they are just claims on real projects, which presumably similarly experience a price increase. In the end, the exact real interest rates in the economy are determined by the demand and supply for capital, which is determined by these kinds of considerations.

TIPS and Short-Term Bonds as "Inflation Hedges"

Inflation is uncertainty

But what if you wanted to purchase a bond that is truly risk-free, i.e., a bond that promises a specified amount of purchasing power (a real amount, not a nominal amount)? The problem is that you do not yet know fully what *future* inflation will be. Inflation is a random variable, because you do not yet know what inflation will be over the bond's holding period. You can estimate it, but you do not really know.

Inflation-Adjusted Treasury Bonds [TIPS].

What you want is a bond that pays out 1% more in interest if inflation were to turn out 1% higher. In 1997, the U.S. Treasury reintroduced such inflation-adjusted bonds. They are called Treasury Inflation Protected Securities (or **TIPS**, or sometimes just **CPI Bonds**).

An example: the October 2004 situation.

In late October 2004, the 10-year T-bond offered 4.02% per annum, while the 10-year TIPS offered 1.6% per annum. If inflation turns out to be above 2.38% per annum over the 10-year interval, then the TIPS will have been the better purchase. If inflation turns out to be lower than 2.56% per annum, then the plain T-bond will have been the better purchase. A volatile oil price in 2004 had caused the inflation rate to fluctuate dramatically—it troughed at 1.69% in March 2004 and peaked at 3.27% in June 2004. Ladies and Gentlemen—place your bet.

Short-term securities also help you "hedge" against inflation.

TIPS are not the only way you can reduce your worry about future inflation. Short-term bonds are another way to reduce the effect of future inflation. Inflation increases are associated with higher interest rates. Thus, an inflation increase would allow a short-term bond investor to earn a higher interest rate upon reinvestment.

Does Future Inflation Drive the Yield Curve Slope?

It is harder to see why the expectation of inflation would affect the slope of the yield curve.

Now let us return to our question about what determines the slope of the ordinary Treasury yield curve. Recall from Page 65 that you might demand a higher long-term interest rate if you believed that future inflation will increase. For example, if you believe that inflation will be much higher from year 5 to year 10, you would be less inclined to accept the same 5% per annum for the 10-year Treasury bond that you might accept for the 5-year Treasury bond. After all, what you will end up getting back from your 10-year bond will be worth much less to you! You could also demand extra compensation if you were less certain about inflation from 5-years out to 10-years out than about inflation from now to 5-years out. Fortunately, you can now put this to the test using TIPS. In October 30, 2004, the yield curves was as follows—with implied inflation rates computed for you:

	Ordinary T-Bonds	TIPS	Implied Inflation
3-month	1.90%	(n/a)	
5-year	3.29%	0.90%	2.4%
10-year	4.02%	1.60%	2.4%
30-year	4.79%	2.06%	2.7%

Remember that the TIPS returns are unaffected by inflation, so neither your expectation nor your uncertainty about future inflation should influence the TIPS yield curve—and yet it is almost as steep as the ordinary yield curve. The 5-year and 10-year T-bond vs. TIPS interest spread even embody the same inflation expectation of 2.4% per annum. The yield difference between the 5-year and the 30-year T-bond is about 1.5%, similar to the 1.2% difference between

ANECDOTE: Inflation-Adjusting Bonds
As it turns out, inflation-adjusted bonds had already been invented once before! The world's first known inflation-indexed bonds were issued by the Commonwealth of Massachusetts in 1780 during the Revolutionary War. These bonds were invented to deal with severe wartime inflation and discontent among soldiers in the U.S. Army with the decline in purchasing power of their pay. Although the bonds were successful, the concept of indexed bonds was abandoned after the immediate extreme inflationary environment passed, and largely forgotten. In 1780, the bonds were viewed as at best only an irregular expedient, since there was no formulated economic theory to justify indexation.

Source: Robert Shiller.

the 5-year and the 30-year TIPS. So, inflation uncertainty can account for only a small fraction of the steepness of this yield curve. There must be something other than inflation that makes investors prefer shorter-term T-bonds to longer-term T-bonds and borrowers prefer longer-term T-bonds to shorter-term T-bonds by so much that they are willing to agree on several hundred basis points less compensation per annum on the short-term rate. Of course, it may be that the horizon-dependent expectations or uncertainties about inflation will play a more important role in the future—but in October 2004, they just did not.

Solve Now!

Q 6.34 *On May 31, 2002, the Wall Street Journal reported on Page C10 that a 30-year CPI bond offered a real yield of about 3.375%/year. The current inflation rate was only 1.6%/year, and a normal 30-year Treasury bond offered a nominal yield of 5.6%/year. Under what scenario would you be better off buying one or the other?*

6·7. Multiple Effects

Of course, in the messy real world, you can suffer inflation, transaction costs, imperfect markets, and taxes all at once, not just in isolation. In fact, there are so many possible real-world problems that no one can possibly give you a formula for each one. Thus, it is more important that you realize you must approach the real world thinking about two issues.

1. To what extent is the assumption of a perfect market appropriate? For example, in the case of large and possibly tax-exempt companies, you may consider it reasonable to get away with assuming a perfect market, thinking about the direction in which market imperfections would push you, and judging the magnitude thereof. This can often give a reasonable answer without enormous complications that a perfect answer would require.
2. How can you handle a new situation in which you face particular sets of market imperfections? To answer such new thorny questions, you should internalize the method of "thinking by numerical example." You really need to become able to work out formulas for yourself when you need them.

6·7.A. How to Work Problems You Have Not Encountered

Taxes and Inflation: Interactions?

For example, let's see how you could approach a situation with both taxes and inflation. Always start by making up some numbers you find easy to work with. Let's say you are considering an investment of \$100. Further, assume you will earn a 10% rate of return on your \$100 investment and Uncle Sam will take $\tau = 40\%$ (or \$4 on your \$10). Therefore, you get \$110 before taxes but end up with only \$106 in nominal terms. What you have just calculated is

$$\$100 \cdot [1 + 10\% \cdot (1 - 40\%)] = \$106 \ . \tag{6.23}$$

Translate this into an algebraic formula,

$$\begin{aligned} \$100 \cdot [1 + 10\% \cdot (1 - 40\%)] &= \$106 \ . \\ \mathrm{CF}_0 \cdot [1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} \cdot (1 - \tau)] &= \mathrm{CF}_1 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{6.24}$$

Now you need to determine what your \$106 is really worth, so you must introduce inflation. Pick some round number, say, a rate of $\pi = 5\%$ per annum. Consequently, \$106 is worth in purchasing power

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\$106}{1 + 5\%} &= \$100.95 \\ \frac{\mathrm{CF}_1}{1 + \pi} &= V_0 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{6.25}$$

file=frictions.tex: RP

So, your post-tax post-inflation real rate of return is $\$100.95/\$100 - 1 \approx 0.95\%$. Again, knowing the numerical result, you need to translate your numbers into a formula. You computed

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{post-tax, real}} &= \frac{\$100.95 - \$100}{\$100} = \frac{\frac{\$100\cdot[1+10\%\cdot(1-40\%)]}{1+5\%} - \$100}{\$100} \\ &= \frac{10\%\cdot(1-40\%)-5\%}{1+5\%} = 0.95\% \\ r_{\text{post-tax, real}} &= \frac{V_0 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} = \frac{\frac{\text{CF}_0\cdot\left[1+r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}\cdot(1-\tau)\right]}{1+\pi} - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} \\ &= \frac{r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}\cdot(1-\tau)-\pi}{1+\pi}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.26}$$

This is, of course, not a formula that anyone remembers. However, it is both useful and a nice illustration of how you should approach and simplify complex questions—numerical example first, formula second.

6·7.B. Taxes on Nominal Returns?

If the real rate stays constant, does inflation hurt an investor? Yes, if there are taxes!

Here is an interesting question: if the real rate remains constant, does it help or hurt an investor if inflation goes up? Let's assume that the real rate of return is a constant 20%. If inflation is 50%, then the nominal rate of return is 80% (because $(1+50\%)\cdot(1+20\%) = 1+80\%$): you get \$180 for a \$100 investment. Now add income taxes to the tune of 40%. The IRS sees \$80 in interest, taxes \$32, and leaves you with \$48. Your \$148 will thus be worth $\$148/(1+50\%) = \$98.67$ in real value. Instead of a 20% increase in real purchasing power when you save money, you now suffer a $\$98.67/\$100 - 1 \approx 1.3\%$ decrease in real purchasing power. Despite a high real interest rate, Uncle Sam ended up with more, and you ended up with less purchasing power than you started with. The reason is that although Uncle Sam claims to tax only interest gains, because the interest tax is on *nominal* interest payments, you can actually lose in *real* terms. Contrast this with the same scenario without inflation. In this case, if the real rate of return were still 20%, you would have been promised \$20, Uncle Sam would have taxed you \$8, and you could have kept \$112 in real value.

> **IMPORTANT**: *Higher inflation rates hurt taxable investors who earn interest income, even if real interest rates seem to remain constant. This is because the IRS taxes nominal returns, not real returns.*

For much of the post-war U.S. history, real rates of return on short-term government bonds have indeed been *negative* for taxed investors.

When inflation increases, even real interest rates must also increase.

Inflation and taxes have an interesting indirect effect on equilibrium interest rates. You know that holding the agreed-upon interest fixed, inflation benefits borrowers and hurts lenders, because lenders who receive interest must pay taxes on the nominal amount of interest, not the real amount of interest. The reverse holds for borrowers. For example, assume interest rates are 3% and there is no inflation. A savings account holder with \$100 in the 33% tax bracket has to pay 1% to Uncle Sam (\$1), and gets to keep 2% (\$2). Now assume that interest rates are 12% and inflation is 9%. The savings account holder would now have to pay 4% (\$4) in taxes, and own \$108 the coming year. However, because money has lost 9% of its value, the \$108 is worth less than \$100 the following year. In effect, although real rates are identical in the no-inflation and inflation scenarios, a lender who pays taxes on nominal interest receipts gets to keep less in real terms if there is inflation. (It is straightforward to check that the opposite is true for borrowers.) The implication of this argument is simple: to compensate lenders for their additional tax burdens (on nominal interest), *real* interest rates must rise with inflation.

Solve Now!

Q 6.35 *If your tax rate is 20%, what interest rate do you earn in after-tax terms if the pre-tax interest rate is 6%?*

Q 6.36 *If your tax rate is 40%, what interest rate do you earn in after-tax terms if the pre-tax interest rate is 6%?*

Q 6.37 *If the private sector is a net saver, e.g., leaving the public sector as a net borrower, does Uncle Sam have an incentive to reduce or increase inflation?*

Q 6.38 *You are in the 33.33% tax bracket. A project will return $14,000 for a $12,000 investment—a $2,000 net return. The equivalent tax-exempt bond yields 15%, and the equivalent taxable bond yields 20%. What is the NPV of this project?*

Q 6.39 *Compare a 10-year zero bond and a 10% coupon bond, both paying 10%, with an appropriate (economy-wide) interest rate of 10%. If the IRS does not collect interim interest on the zero bond, and the marginal tax rate is 25%, then what is the relative NPV of the two bonds?*

Q 6.40 *Assume you have both taxes and inflation. You are in the 20% tax bracket, and the inflation rate is 5%/year. A 1-year project offers you $3,000 return for a $20,000 investment. Taxable bonds offer a rate of return of 10%/year. What is the NPV of this project? Extra-credit if you can derive the formula yourself!*

Q 6.41 *Advanced question: Return to the apples example from Section 6·6, in which the inflation rate was 100% and the nominal rate of interest was 700%. Now, assume that there is also a 25% default rate. That is, 25% of all apples are returned with worms inside, and will therefore not be sellable (and be worth $0). What is your real rate of return? What is the formula?*

Q 6.42 *Really advanced question: Return to the taxes-and-inflation example from Section 6·7. A 10% nominal rate of return, a tax rate of 40%, and an inflation rate of 5%. (We worked out that the post-inflation, post-tax rate of return was 0.95%.) Now, add a default rate, d, of 2%, where all money is lost (−100% return). What is the real, post-inflation, post-tax, post-default rate of return? (Hint: Losses are tax-deductible, too. Assume that the default rate reduces the nominal rate of return (on which taxes are charged), because you do not just take 1 such loan, but 1 million, which practically assures you of the exact default rate without any sampling variation.)*

file=frictions.tex: RP

6·8. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- If markets are not perfect, even *expected* borrowing and lending rates can be different. This is different from the fact that even in perfect markets, *promised* borrowing and lending rates can be different.
- If markets are not perfect, capital budgeting decisions can then depend on the cash position of the project owner.

  NPV and interest rate computations can still be used, although it then requires special care in working with correct and meaningful inputs (especially for the cost of capital). This is usually best done by thinking in terms of concrete examples first, and translating them into formula later.
- Transaction costs and taxes are market imperfections that reduce earned rates of return.
- Transaction costs can be direct (such as commissions) or indirect (such as search or waiting costs). It is often useful to think of round-trip transaction costs.
- Financial assets' transaction costs tend to be very low, so that it is reasonable in many (but not all) circumstances to just ignore them.
- In the real world, buyers often prefer more liquid investments. To induce them to purchase a less liquid investment may require offering them some additional expected rate of return.
- Many financial markets have such low transaction costs and are often so liquid that they are believed to be fairly efficient—there are so many buyers and so many sellers, that it is unlikely that you would pay too much or too little for an asset. Such assets are likely be worth what you pay for them.
- The tax code is complex. For the most part, individuals and corporations are taxed similarly. You must understand

  1. how income taxes are computed (the principles, not the details);
  2. that expenses that can be paid from before-tax income are better than expenses that must be paid from after-tax income;
  3. how to compute the average tax rate;
  4. how to obtain the marginal tax rate;
  5. that capital gains enjoy preferential tax treatment;
  6. why the average and marginal tax rates differ, and why the marginal tax rate is usually higher than the average tax rate.
- Taxable interest rates can be converted into equivalent tax-exempt interest rates, given the appropriate marginal tax-rate.
- Tax-exempt bonds are usually advantageous for investors in high-income tax brackets. You can compute the critical tax rate investor who is indifferent between the two.
- Long-term projects often suffer less interim taxation than short-term projects.
- You should do all transaction cost and tax net present value calculations with after-transaction cash flows and after-tax costs of capital.
- Like taxes and transaction costs, inflation can also cut into returns. However, in a perfect market, it can be contracted around and therefore neutralized.

file=frictions.tex: LP

- The relationship between nominal interest rates, real interest rates and inflation rates is

$$(1 + r_{\text{nominal}}) = (1 + r_{\text{real}}) \cdot (1 + \pi) \ . \tag{6.27}$$

  Unlike nominal interest rates, real interest rates can and have been negative.

- In NPV, you can either discount real cash flows with real interest rates, or discount nominal cash flows with nominal interest rates. The latter is usually more convenient.

- TIPS are bonds whose payments are indexed to the future inflation rate, and which therefore offer protection against future inflation. Short-term bond buyers are also less exposed to inflation rate changes than long-term bond buyers.

- Empirically, inflation seems to be able to explain the level of the yield curve, but not its slope.

- The IRS taxes nominal returns, not real returns. This means that higher inflation rates disadvantage savers and advantage borrowers.

file=frictions.tex: RP

Solutions and Exercises

1. No differences in information, no market power, no transaction costs, no taxes.
2. It means that borrowing and lending rates are identical, and that there is a unique price at which stuff is selling for (i.e., its value).
3. In most neighborhoods, there are plenty of supermarkets, fiercely competing for business. Losing one additional or gaining one additional supermarket probably makes little difference. There are also plenty of buyers. In many ways, supermarkets are a fairly competitive business, and their products are usually priced not far away from their closest competitors. Believe it or not: supermarkets typically earn a gross spread on goods of only about 2%! This has to pay for space and personnel. *However*, in some senses, this "supermarket market" is not perfectly competitive and frictionless: there is sales tax, so third parties cannot easily "arbitrage" product, i.e., sell a product that is less expensive in one supermarket to the other, more expensive supermarket. Plus, once you are at the supermarket, it is often cheaper just to buy the goods there, than it is to drive to another supermarket.
4. Yes! Surplus?
5. It helps you evaluate what violations really mean.
6. An efficient market is one in which the market uses all available information. In a perfect market, market pressures will make this come true, so a perfect market should be efficient. However, an efficient market need not be perfect.
7. You would have to borrow \$100 at an interest rate of 10% in order to take the project. If you take the project, you will therefore have $\$1,000 \cdot 1.08 - \$110 = \$970$ next period. If instead you invest \$900 at the 4% savings rate, you will receive only \$936. So, definitely take the project.
8. Say you invest I. If you put it into the bank, you receive $I \cdot (1+4\%)$. If you put I into the project, you receive $\$1,000 \cdot (1+8\%)$ from the project, borrow $(\$1,000 - I)$ at an interest rate of $(1+10\%)$. Therefore, you must solve

$$I \cdot (1+4\%) \quad = \quad \$1,000 \cdot (1+8\%) - (\$1,000 - I) \cdot (1+10\%) \tag{6.28}$$

   The solution is $I = \$333.33$, which means that if you want to consume more than \$1,666.66, you should not take the project. Check: [1] If you consume \$1,700, you have a remaining \$300 to invest. The bank would pay \$312 next year. The project would pay off \$1,080, but you would have to borrow \$700 and pay back \$770, for a net of \$310. You should not take the project [2] If you consume \$1,600, you have a remaining \$400 to invest. The bank would pay \$416 next year. The project would pay off \$1,080, but you would have to borrow \$600 and pay back \$660, for a net of \$420. You should take the project.

9. Yes! Stated rates include a default premium. A perfect market is about equality of expected rates, not about equality of promised rates?
10. First, default rates are high. (This is not necessarily a difference in expected rates of returns.) Second, information differences about default probabilities are high. Banks cannot easily determine which entrepreneurs are for real, and which ones will die and take the bank's money to their graces. The entrepreneurs may or may not be better at knowing whether their inventions will work. (This can be a market imperfection.)
11. Do it! This information can be found in the **Yield Comparisons** exhibit in the **Credit Markets** section in the WSJ.
12. The appropriate 7-year interest rate would now be about $(1+8\%)^7 - 1 \approx 71\%$. Therefore, a \$1 million house that you would resell in 7 years for \$1 million would cost you a direct $\$60,000/(1+8\%)^7 \approx \$35,009$ in present value of commissions. If you were paying all future real estate commissions for this house, the present value of this cost would be \$84,507. Therefore, the capitalized value of all future brokerage commissions would be lower (only about 8.5% of house value) than the 15% that we found in the text for lower interest rates.
13. DELL is an even larger stock than PepsiCo. Therefore, a round-trip transaction would probably cost a bid-ask spread of between 0.1% and 0.3%. On a \$10,000, the bid-ask cost would be around \$20, and broker fees would probably be around \$10 to \$30 with a discount broker. Thus, \$50 is a reasonable estimate.
14. Direct: Broker Costs. Market-Maker or Exchange Costs (Bid-Ask Spread). Indirect: Research Costs; Search (for Buyer/Seller) Costs; Anxiety.
15. You need to assume a proper discount rate for the \$4,000. A reasonable assumption is an annuity. At a 7% interest rate, this value is around \$46,281 today. Therefore

$$-(\$1,000,000 + \$5,000) + \$46,281 + \frac{x \cdot (1-8\%)}{1+7\%} \quad = \quad 0 \quad . \tag{6.29}$$

   Therefore, $x \sim \$1.115,032$ million, so the capital appreciation must be 11.5% per annum. Note how the \$5,000 must be added to the upfront cost, not subtracted!

file=frictions.tex: LP

16. A liquidity premium is an upfront lower price to compensate you for transaction costs later on.

17. Taxable income is \$4,000. **Individual:** Tax Rate of 10%, so taxes are \$400. Average and marginal tax rates are 10%. **Corporation:** Tax Rate of 15%, so taxes are \$600. Average and marginal tax rates are 15%.

18. The taxable income is \$49,000. **Individual:** Taxes are $\$715 + \$3,285 + \$19,950 \cdot 25\% = \$8,987.50$. Average Tax Rate (relative to taxable income) is 18.3%. The marginal tax rate is 25%. **Corporation:** Taxes are \$7,500. The marginal and average tax rate are both 15%.

19. Taxable Income: \$49,999,000. **Individual:** $35\% \cdot (\$49,999,000 - \$319,100) + \$92,592 = \$17,480,557$. The average tax rate is 34.96%. Marginal tax rate is 35%. At very high-income levels, the marginal and average tax rates are close. **Corporation:** $35\% \cdot (\$49,999,000 - \$18,300,000) + \$6,381,900 = \$17,476,550$. The average tax rate is 34.95%. The marginal tax rate is 35%.

20. 25.4%.

21. 8%. The ratio is very high by historical standards, which means that the marginal investor's income tax rate of 8% is quite low.

22. The T-bond will pay \$108 before tax. You will therefore earn \$105 after taxes. The muni will pay only \$103. So, your opportunity cost of capital is 5%. The project itself will have to pay taxes on \$30,000, so you will have \$18,750 net return left after taxes, which comes to an amount of \$68,750. Your project NPV is therefore

$$-\$50,000 + \frac{\$68,750}{(1+5\%)^3} \approx +\$9,389 \quad . \tag{6.30}$$

This is a great project!

23. The \$1 is paid from after-tax income, so leave it as is. The \$10 million is taxed, so you will only receive \$7 million. With a 1 in 9 million chance of winning, the expected payoff is 78 cents. Therefore, the NPV is negative for any cost of capital. If you could pay with pre-tax money, the ticket would cost you only 70 cents in terms of after-tax money, so for interest rates of below 10% or so, the lottery would be a positive NPV investment.

24. Do it! (As of 2002, it should be between 1% and 2% per year.) This rate can be found at the end of the **Money Rates** box in the WSJ.

25. Do it! (This changes too often to give a useful figure here.) It can also found in the Money Rates box.

26. Do it!

27. $(1 + r_{\text{nominal}}) = (1 + r_{\text{real}}) \cdot (1 + \pi)$.

28. $(1 + 20\%)/(1 + 5\%) = (1 + 14.29\%)$. The real interest rate is 14.29%.

29. In nominal terms, the rate of return is $n_{0,1} = (1+2\%) \cdot (1+1.5\%) - 1 = 3.53\%$, the cash flow will be \$101.50. Therefore, PV $= \$101.50/(3.53\% - 1.5\%) = \$5,000$. In real, inflation-adjusted terms, the rate of return is 2%, the \$101.50 next year are still worth \$100 in today's dollars, so PV $= \$100/2\% = \$5,000$. Never discount \$100 by 3.53%, or \$101.50 by 2%.

30. The nominal interest rate is $(1+3\%) \cdot (1+8\%) - 1 = 11.24\%$. Therefore, the cash flow is worth about \$449,478.

31. \$4.448 million.

32.

    (a) 5.88%.

    (b) The *correct* PV is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$20}{1+8\%} + \frac{\$20 \cdot (1+3\%)}{(1+8\%)^2} + \frac{\$20 \cdot (1+3\%)^2}{(1+8\%)^3} + \cdots \\ &= \frac{\$20}{8\%-3\%} = \$400 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.31}$$

    (c) Project value is not $\$20/(8\% - 1\%) \approx \$285.71$.

    (d) Project value is not $\$20/(5.88\% - 3\%) \approx \$694.44$.

33. The first *nominal* cash flow next period is \$102,000. Now, you can switch to nominal quantities throughout (the nominal cash flow next year, the nominal interest rate, and as nominal growth rate the inflation rate). You would therefore use next year's nominal cash flow—a CF of \$102,000—in the formula,

$$\text{PV} = \frac{\$102,000}{8\% - 2\%} = \$1,700,000 \quad . \tag{6.32}$$

It is affirmatively not $\$100,000/6\% \approx \$1,666,666$.

file=frictions.tex: RP

34. If inflation were to remain at 1.6%/year, the plain Treasury bond would offer a higher real rate of return because $(1 + 5.6\%)/(1 + 1.6\%) - 1 \approx 3.9\%$/year. But if inflation were to rise in the future, the TIPS could end up offering the higher rates of return.

35. For every \$100, you receive \$6. Uncle Sam takes 20% of \$6, or \$1.20. So, your after tax rate of return is \$4.80/\$100 = 4.8%. You could have also computed $(1 - 20\%) \cdot 6\% = 4.8\%$ directly.

36. For every \$100, you receive \$6. Uncle Sam takes 40% of \$6, or \$2.40. So, your after tax rate of return is \$3.60/\$100 = 3.6%. You could have also computed $(1 - 40\%) \cdot 6\% = 3.6\%$ directly.

37. Increase. In the real world, interest rates may have to rise to compensate private savers for this extra "tax" on money.

38. Your opportunity cost of capital is determined by the tax-exempt bond, because $66.7\% \cdot 20\% < 15\%$. Your project's \$2,000 will turn into $66.7\% \cdot \$2,000 = \$1,334$ after-tax earnings, or \$13,334 after-tax cash flow. Therefore, your NPV is $-\$12,000 + \$13,334/(1 + 15\%) = -\$405.22$. Check: The after-tax rate of return of the project's cash flow are $\$13,334/\$12,000 - 1 \approx 11\%$. This is less than 15%. You are better off investing in tax-exempt bonds.

39. The coupon bond has an after-tax rate of return of 7.5%. Start with \$1,000 of money. Reinvestment yields an after-tax rate of return of 7.5% (\$75 in the first year on \$1,000). So, after 10 years, you are left with $\$1,000 \cdot 1.075^{10} = \$2,061$. In contrast, the zero bond has a single pre-tax payout of $\$1,000 \cdot (1 + 10\%)^{10} = \$2,593.74$, for which the IRS would collect $\$1,593.74 \cdot 25\% = \$398.43$ in year 10, for a post-tax zero-bond payout of \$2,195. The tax savings on the zero bond are therefore \$134 in 10 years, or \$52 in present value.

40. What is your after-tax rate of return on taxable bonds? \$100 will grow to \$110 ($(1 + 10\%) \cdot \$100 = \$110$) pre-tax, minus the 20% what Uncle Sam collects. Uncle Sam takes $(1 + 10\%) \cdot \$100 = \$110$, subtracts \$100, and then leaves you with only 80% thereof:

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{after-tax}} &= \frac{80\% \cdot (\$110 - \$100)}{\$100} = 8\% \\ &= \frac{(1-\tau) \cdot (\text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0)}{\text{CF}_0} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{6.33}$$

where τ is your tax-rate of 20%. $(\text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0)/\text{CF}_0$ is the pre-tax rate of return, so this is just

$$r_{\text{after-tax}} = 80\% \cdot 10\% = (1-\tau) \cdot r_{\text{pre-tax}} \quad . \tag{6.34}$$

Now, in pre-tax terms, your project offers a 15% rate of return. In after-tax terms, the project offers $80\% \cdot \$3,000 = \$2,400$ net return, which on your investment of \$20,000 is a 12% after-tax rate of return. (On the same \$20,000, the taxable bond would offer only $80\% \cdot (\$22,000 - \$20,000) = \$1,600$ net return (8%). So, you know that the NPV should be positive.) Therefore, the project NPV is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= -\$20,000 + \frac{\$20,000 + 80\% \cdot (\$22,400 - \$20,000)}{1 + 8\%} \approx \$740.74 \\ &= \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\text{CF}_0 + (1-\tau) \cdot (\text{CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0)}{1 + r_{\text{after-tax}}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.35}$$

You can now easily substitute any other cash flows or interest rates into these formulas to obtain the NPV. Note how everything is computed in nominal dollars, so we do not need the information about the inflation rate!

41. Your numeraire is one apple ($1a$) that costs \$1. You will get \$8 in nominal terms, next year ($a \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}) = a \cdot (1 + 700\%) = 8 \cdot a$). This will purchase apples that cost \$2 each ($(1 + \pi) = (1 + 100\%) = \$2$), i.e., 4 apples ($a \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}})/(1 + \pi) = 1 \cdot (1 + 700\%)/(1 + 100\%) = 4$). However, one of the apples ($d = 25\%$) is bad, so you will get only 3 apples ($a_1 = a_0 \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}})/(1 + \pi) \cdot (1 - d) = 1a_0 \cdot (1 + 700\%)/(1 + 100\%) \cdot 75\% = 3 \cdot a_0$, where d is the 25% default rate) . Therefore, the real rate of return is $(a_1 - a_0)/a_0$ or

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{real,post-tax,post-default}} &= \frac{(1a \cdot \frac{1+700\%}{1+100\%} \cdot 75\%) - 1a}{1a} = 300\% - 1 = 200\% \\ r_{\text{real,post-tax,post-default}} &= \frac{[1a \cdot \frac{1+r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}}{1+\pi} \cdot (1-d)] - 1a}{1a} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{6.36}$$

The "1a" of course cancels, because the formula applies to any number of apples or other goods.

42. WARNING: THIS ANSWER HAS NOT BEEN CHECKED, AND MIGHT BE WRONG: Instead of 10%, you earn only $98\% \cdot 10\% + 2\% \cdot (-100\%) = 7.8\%$. Translated into a formula, this is $(1-d) \cdot r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} + d \cdot (-100\%) = r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} - d \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}) = 10\% - 2\% \cdot (1 + 10\%) = 7.8\%$. Now, in Formula 6.26,

$$r_{\text{post-tax, real, post-default}} = \frac{V_0 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} = \frac{\frac{\text{CF}_0 \cdot \left[1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} \cdot (1-\tau)\right]}{1+\pi} - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} = \frac{r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} \cdot (1-\tau) - \pi}{1+\pi}, \tag{6.37}$$

replace the nominal interest rate $r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}}$ with the default reduced nominal rate $r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} - d \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}})$, so the new formula is

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\text{post-default, post-tax, real}} &= \frac{V_0 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} \\ &= \frac{\frac{\text{CF}_0 \cdot \left[1 + (r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} - d \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}})) \cdot (1-\tau)\right]}{1+\pi} - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} \\ &= \frac{(r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}} - d \cdot (1 + r_{\text{nominal,pre-tax}})) \cdot (1-\tau) - \pi}{1+\pi} \\ &= \frac{7.8\% \cdot (1 - 40\%) - 5\%}{1 + 5\%} = -0.3\%. \end{aligned} \tag{6.38}$$

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 7

CAPITAL BUDGETING (NPV) APPLICATIONS AND ADVICE

Tips and Tricks!

last file change: Feb 24, 2006 (16:55h)

last major edit: Apr 2004, Dec 2004

The previous chapters have developed all necessary concepts in capital budgeting. This means that almost everything in the rest of the book will "just" help you estimate and understand the NPV inputs better, help you in particular applications, or elaborate on trade-offs that you—the decision maker—face. But this does not mean that you are done. Applying the relatively simple concept of NPV in the real world can be very difficult.

In this current chapter, we cover a collection of topics in which the application of NPV is often challenging. You will almost surely encounter these complications in your future corporate practice. In fact, I will try to help you avoid the kind of common mistakes that companies commit almost every day—mistakes that cost them value. In later chapters, we will look at other refinements. In Part II, we will bring in financial accounting information to work with the numbers that corporations use and report. In Part III, we will work on understanding what determines the cost of capital. In Part IV, we will work on how debt and equity financing influences the net present value. And, our crowning achievement will be Chapter 29, in which we will develop a pro forma that will have to bring everything together.

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

7·1. The Economics of Project Interactions

An example of interacting projects.

So far, we have considered projects in isolation. We computed the costs and benefits necessary to make our decision whether to accept or reject. Unfortunately, in the real world, projects are not always isolated. For example, an aquarium may add a large shark to its exhibition tank at a cost of $50,000 for projected additional ticket receipts of $120,000; or it may add a large octopus at a cost of $75,000 for projected additional ticket receipts of $200,000.

		Shark		Octopus
Ticket Receipts	+	$120,000	+	$200,000
Creature Cost	–	$50,000	–	$75,000
Net	=	$70,000	=	$125,000

Regrettably, adding both the shark and the octopus would not increase project value by $195,000, because octopuses are known to have negative effects on similarly sized sharks—they eat them. Thus, the best achievable project value is only $125,000 (skip the shark!). On the other hand, stocking the aquarium with an octopus plus some lobsters would cost only $75,000 plus a couple of dollars for the lobsters—which allows the octopus to remain alive. If you do not add the lobsters, you would end up with a starved and expiring octopus and thus not much audience. So, you either want to add the octopus and the lobsters together, or neither. In general, the question we are considering in this section is how you should deal with projects that have mutual interactions. In other words, how should you stock the aquarium?

7·1.A. The Ultimate Project Selection Rule

IMPORTANT: ***The Ultimate Project Selection Rule****: Consider all possible project combinations, and select the combination of projects that gives the highest overall NPV.*

There are too many possible action choices in the real world to evaluate (to compute NPV for). You need rules and heuristics!

Optimal project selection is easier said than done. It is easier for two projects at a time, as it was in our aquarium example, because there are only four options to consider: take neither, take one, take the other, or take both. But the complexity quickly explodes when there are more projects. For three projects, there are eight options. For four projects, there are sixteen options. For ten projects, there are about a thousand options. For twenty projects, there are over a million options. (The formula for the number of choices is 2^N, where N is the number of projects.) Even the simplest corporate projects can easily involve hundreds of decisions that have to be made. For our little aquarium, there are about 54,000 different fish species to consider—and each may interact with many others. These choices do not even consider the fact that some projects may allow other projects to be added in the future, and that many projects are not just "accept" or "reject," but "how much project to take."

A Greedy Algorithm?

To help us determine which projects to take, we need to find suitable **heuristics**, i.e., rules that simplify decisions even if they are not always correct. One common heuristic algorithm is to consider project combinations, one at a time. Start with the project combination that, if you were only allowed to take two projects (one pair from a set of many different projects), would give you the highest NPV. Then take this pair as fixed, i.e., treat it as a single project. Now see which project adds the most value to your existing pair. Continue until adding the best remaining project no longer increases value. Computer scientists call this the **greedy algorithm**. It is a good heuristic, because it drastically cuts down the possible project combinations to consider, and usually gives a pretty good set of projects. There are many possible enhancements to this algorithm, such as forward and backward iterations, in which one considers replacing one project at a time with every other option. Full-fledged algorithms and combinatorial enhancements

file=npvadvice.tex: RP

that guarantee optimal choice are really the domain of **computer science** and **operations research**, not of finance. Yet many of these algorithms have been shown to require more time than the duration of the universe, unless you make simplifications that distort the business problem so much that the results seem no longer trustworthy. Fortunately, economics is in our finance domain, and it can also help us simplify our project selection problem.

7·1.B. Project Pairs and Externalities

Project combinations can be classified into positive, zero, and negative interaction combinations.

We just mentioned considering projects in pairs. This is not only common practice, but also clarifies the economic issues. With two projects, we can decompose the total net present value into three terms:

$$\text{Overall NPV} = \text{NPV Project One} + \text{NPV Project Two} + \text{NPV Interactions} . \tag{7.1}$$

If you were to stock both the shark and the octopus, you would get ticket receipts of $200,000 [octopus] but pay $125,000 [octopus and shark], for a net of $75,000. Therefore,

$$\begin{array}{rcccccc} \$75,000 & = & \$70,000 & + & \$125,000 & + & (-\$120,000) \\ \text{NPV Aquarium With Both} & = & \text{NPV Shark} & + & \text{NPV Octopus} & + & \text{NPV Octopus eats Shark, so no more Shark ticket receipts} \end{array} . \tag{7.2}$$

The final term suggests that we can classify project combinations into one of three different categories:

1. Projects with zero interactions.
2. Projects with positive interactions.
3. Projects with negative interactions.

Interactions are also sometimes called **externalities** in economics, because one project has external influences on other projects—sometimes imposing external costs and sometimes providing external benefits. We now discuss these three cases.

Zero Project Interactions

Project independence is the most common case, and allows simple decision making.

Most projects in this world are **independent**—they have no mutual interactions. For example, a mall in Maine probably has no effect on a mall in Oregon. It neither steals customers from Oregon nor attracts extra customers. Independent project payoffs permit the separate evaluation of each project. This makes decision-making very easy:

- Taking each Positive NPV project increases firm value.
- Taking each Zero NPV project leaves firm value unchanged.
- Taking each Negative NPV project decreases firm value.

(These rules do not hold if projects have non-zero externalities, as we shall explain below.) Project NPVs are additive, because all cash flows have been translated into the same units, today's dollars, and the project interaction term is zero. Project independence makes decisions a lot easier: for twenty projects, only twenty independent decisions (accept or reject) have to be made, not a million.

> **IMPORTANT**: *You can evaluate zero interaction projects independently. In this case, you can simply add project net present values.*

Positive Project Interactions

Positive interactions exist when taking one project increases the value of another project. Projects with positive interactions are often considered as "bundles." Indeed, in many cases, what makes a project a project in the firm's mind is the indivisibility of its components.

Positive interactions mean that the sum of the parts is worth more than the parts individually. If one project has a positive influence on the net present value of another project, you cannot consider it without considering this positive influence. For example, consider creating a product as one project and an advertising campaign as another project. The advertising campaign project is of lesser use without a product, and the product is of lesser use without the advertising campaign. You must consider creating a product and an advertising campaign together. Such positive externalities are even more plentiful in smaller decisions: A secretary with word processing skills is less useful without a word processor, and a word processor is less useful without a secretary who can use it. A computer keyboard is less useful without a computer, and a computer is less useful without a keyboard. In fact, some projects or products only make sense if purchased together. In this case, producers may bundle them together and/or purchasers may only buy them as bundles.

Infrastructure can benefit many different projects.

In the corporate context, investment in *infrastructure* is another classical example of positive project interactions. For example, building a road, hiring a security firm, or laying a fast Internet connection could enhance the value of many divisions simultaneously. The firm should factor in the increase in value to *all* divisions when deciding on how much infrastructure to add.

Positive externalities is why firms exist to begin with.

Don't take positive externalities too lightly: On a philosophical basis, positive project interactions are the reason why firms exist in the first place. If there were no cost savings to having all resources combined in the firm, we might as well not bother and instead all work as individuals.

> **IMPORTANT**: *When deciding whether to take a project, you must credit all positive interactions to the project. The overall NPV is higher than the individual project NPVs alone.*

Agency issues often prevent proper crediting.

Internal conflict and cost allocation procedures issues (further discussed as "agency conflicts" below) often hinder corporations from taking advantage of many positive externalities. For example, in real life, our division managers might argue that they should not be charged for the Internet connection, because they did not request it and therefore do not really need it (even if it were to increase their divisions' values). After all, division managers would prefer getting Internet for free from the company instead of paying for it out of their own division budgets.

Another phrase for positive externalities.

Nowadays, managers who want to acquire other companies usually claim the presence of large positive externalities. **Synergies**, the managerial term for positive externalities between an acquirer and a potential acquisition target, has become an important managerial buzzword. For example, in the 2001 acquisition of Compaq by Hewlett-Packard, HP touted synergies of $2.5 billion dollars—most from cutting employees. Of course, whether synergies will be realized is always another question.

Negative Project Interactions

Negative interactions exist when taking one project decreases the value of another project. Pollution, cannibalization, and limited attention span are examples thereof.

Negative interactions mean that the sum of the parts is worth less than the parts individually. In this case, projects have negative influences on one another, and thereby decrease one another's value. Economists sometimes call negative externalities **diseconomies of scale**. Here are a few examples.

Pollution and Congestion If there is only one major road to two divisions, and the traffic of one division clogs up the traffic to the other division, it can cause a loss of cash flow in the other division. A division that wants to expand and thereby clog up more of the existing infrastructure will not want to pay for the congestion cost that its own expansion will impose on the other divisions. (Of course, it is the overall firm's headquarters that should step in and allow the expansion only if the NPV is positive after taking into account the negative externalities imposed on other divisions.)

file=npvadvice.tex: RP

Cannibalization If a new Apple computer can produce $100,000 in NPV compared to the older Windows machine that only produced $70,000 in NPV, how should we credit the Apple machine? The answer is that the Apple would eliminate the positive cash flows produced by the existing Windows machine, so the cash flow of the project "replace Windows with Apple" is only the $100,000 minus the $70,000 that the now unused Windows machine had produced.

Bureaucratization and Internal Conflict If more projects are adopted, project management may find it increasingly difficult to make good decisions in a reasonable time frame. This may require more cumbersome bureaucracy and reduce cash flows for all other divisions.

Resource Exhaustion Perhaps the most common source of negative externalities—and often underestimated—is **limited attention span**. Management can only pay so much attention to so many different issues. An extra project distracts from the attention previously received by existing projects.

Although costs always include opportunity costs, in the case of negative project externalities, they are more obvious. If your project cannibalizes another project or requires more attention, it's clearly an opportunity cost.

> **IMPORTANT**: *When deciding whether to take a project, charge all negative interactions to the project. The overall NPV is lower than the individual project NPVs alone.*

Agency issues often prevent proper costing.

Again, as in the case of positive externalities, agency issues and cost allocation systems often prevent proper accounting for negative externalities in the real world. Whichever division created the negative externality will argue that it is not its problem, and that the complaining division overstates the problem. Clearly, companies that are better at overcoming these issues will end up being more profitable.

7·1.C. One More Project: Marginal Rather Than Average Contribution

The Capital Budgeting Rule for one extra project requires taking all project interactions into account.

Usually, managers do not make the decision for all interacting projects simultaneously. Instead, many projects are already in place. Although existing projects should also constantly be evaluated in an ideal world, the manager often has to make a decision about adding or not adding a single new project (or project complex) only in the real world. For practical purposes, the old projects are present, given, and unalterable. So the new project may have positive or negative externalities on other existing projects, and the question is how best to decide whether to take it or not. This simplifies the decision even further: the question is now only whether the new project adds or subtracts value from the total. In this case, economists use the concept of decision on the **margin**—holding the existing projects as is, what is the *additional* contribution of the new project?

The aquarium haunts us.

Return to our aquarium example.

- If you already have the octopus in the tank [with its NPV of $125,000], should you add the shark? If you do, you pay an additional ("marginal") $50,000 and get nothing—because the shark will become octopus food, which generate no additional ticket sales. Thus, the marginal benefit of adding the shark is $-\$50,000$. Therefore you should not add the shark.
- If you already have the shark in the tank with its NPV of $70,000, should you add the octopus? Your marginal cost to add the octopus is $75,000 for the beast itself. In ticket sales, you would lose the $120,000 in shark receipts but gain $200,000 in octopus receipts. Your net benefit would therefore be $\$200,000 - \$120,000 + \$75,000 = +\$5,000$. Consequently, you should add the octopus, even though you know that your shark will become pet food!

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

Of course, if you can sell the shark or put it into its own aquarium, your calculations would change—though you would then also have to consider the marginal cost of selling the shark or getting a new aquarium.

IMPORTANT:

- *The decision on whether to take one additional project should be made based on the rule*

  Take New Project if

Total Firm NPV with New Project	>	*Total Firm NPV without New Project*

- *This means that the single new project should be credited with any value increase or value decrease that it confers on other projects.*
- *When considering a project **on the margin** (i.e., extra), credit/charge to this project all externalities that this project conveys onto the existing firm.*
- *Everything else equal, projects with positive externalities on the rest of the firm have higher marginal benefits than projects with negative externalities.*

We now discuss some more examples of how to think in terms of marginal costs and benefits.

Working with Economies of Scale

An example in which the cost function creates economies of scale.

Consider an example in which there are **economies of scale**—the more product we produce, the lower the average product price. Say, our factory can produce at

$$\text{Average Price Per Good} = \$4 + \frac{\$10}{x+1} . \tag{7.3}$$

Thus, producing one good costs $\$4 + \$10/(1+1) = \$9$/good, and one-hundred goods costs $\$4 + \$10/(100+1) = \$4.10$/good. The company is currently selling 5 goods domestically, each for a price of $\$8.00$. It earns a

$$\text{Total Profit @ 5 items} = 5 \cdot \$8 - 5 \cdot \left[\$4 + \frac{\$10}{(5+1)}\right] = \$11.67 . \tag{7.4}$$

The company is considering a new foreign sales division that would cost $16 to open, and that could sell another 5 units at $8. The average price for the company producing 10 units would be $4+$10/11= $4.91/unit. Therefore, 5 units cost $24.55 to produce. The total cost of $16 + $24.55 = $40.55 exceeds the total profit of $5 \cdot \$8 = \$40$. If considered by itself, opening a foreign sales division would not be a positive NPV project.

The foreign sales division also lowers the cost of domestic production!

Now compute the total firm profit if the firm were to open the foreign sales division. Ten units would sell for a profit of $80. Subtracting the opening costs of $16 and production costs of $10 \cdot \$4.91 = \$49.19$ would earn a

$$\text{Total Profit @ 10 items} = 10 \cdot \$8 - 10 \cdot \left[\$4 + \frac{\$10}{(10+1)}\right] - \$16 \approx \$14.91 . \tag{7.5}$$

This is more than the $11.67 that the firm earned without the foreign sales division. The reason is that the foreign office has an additional marginal benefit: it reduces the average production cost experienced by the domestic office. This cost improvement is a positive externality that must be credited to the project—or the firm will make the bad decision of not opening the foreign division.

All this is easier to see when we translate it into terms of marginal costs and benefits. The extra marginal cost of each item changes item by item—it is the difference in total costs of each item:

Think of these economies of scale in terms of marginal costs.

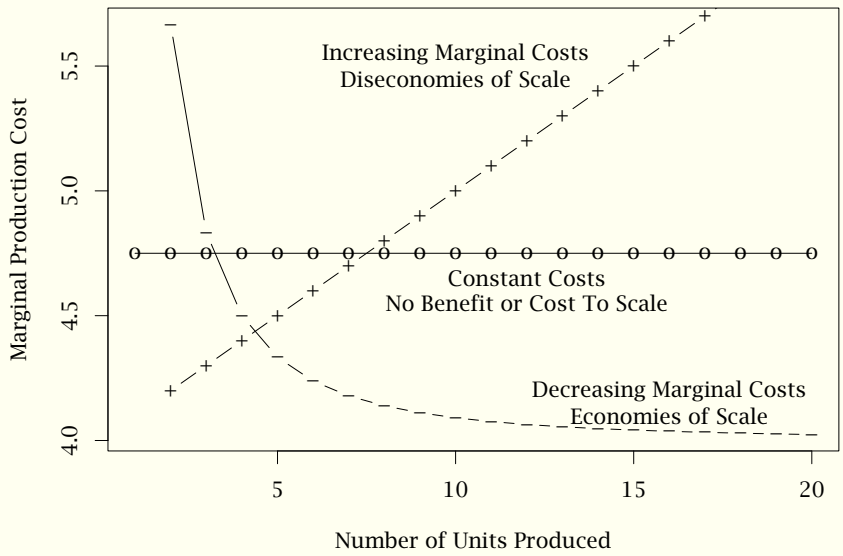
Units	Average	Total	Marginal	Units	Average	Total	Marginal
1	\$9.00	\$9.00	\$9.000	6	\$5.42	\$32.57	\$4.238
2	\$7.33	\$14.67	\$5.667	7	\$5.25	\$36.75	\$4.179
3	\$6.50	\$19.50	\$4.833	8	\$5.11	\$40.89	\$4.139
4	\$6.00	\$24.00	\$4.500	9	\$5.00	\$45.00	\$4.111
5	\$5.66	\$28.33	\$4.333	10	\$4.90	\$49.09	\$4.091

Going from 5 items to 10 items, production creates extra costs of \$4.333 to \$4.091 for a marginal cost of \$20.76. There would be an additional marginal cost of \$16 to open the foreign office. The total marginal cost would thus be \$36.76. The marginal benefit of 5 extra items would be \$40. Therefore, the foreign sales division gives us marginal NPV of \$40 − \$36.76 ≈ \$3.242. This is exactly the difference between \$11.67 from Formula 7.4 and \$14.91 from Formula 7.5. So thinking in terms of marginal costs and benefits is just a more convenient way to compare overall project values.

Graphical Display of Economies of Scale

In Figure 7.1, we show three different cost functions that are based on different externalities. When there are positive externalities, as there are when there are economies of scale, then each item has a positive effect on the next item produced, so the marginal cost is decreasing with the number of units. When there are negative externalities, as there are when there are diseconomies of scale (it may become harder and harder to find the necessary input materials), then each item has a negative effect on the next item produced, so the marginal cost is increasing with the number of units.

Figure 7.1. The Effects of Economies of Scale on Marginal Costs



Here are three examples to show positive externalities, zero externalities, and negative externalities in the production of goods. The decreasing marginal cost function represents economies of scale. In this case, it also looks as if we have diminishing decreasing marginal costs—though the production cost is less for each additional product, it only is a little less good-by-good if we produce many of them. The increasing marginal cost function represents diseconomies of scale—the more units we produce, the more we have to pay for each additional unit.

Economies of scale are often responsible for the big corporate success stories of our time.

In my opinion, decreasing marginal costs are responsible for the biggest corporate success stories. For example, Wal-Mart and Dell have managed not only to use their scale to negotiate considerable supplier discounts, but have also created inventory and distribution systems that allow them to spread their fixed costs very efficiently over the large quantities of goods they sell. They have the lowest costs and highest industry inventory turnover rates—two factors that allow them to benefit tremendously from their economies of scale. Similarly, Microsoft enjoys economies of scale—with a large fixed cost and almost zero variable cost, they can swamp the planet with copies of Windows. No commercial alternative can compete—Microsoft can always drop its price low enough to drive its competitor out of business. The socially optimal number of operating systems software companies is very small and may even be just one—it is what economists call a **natural monopoly**. If we consider our economy as one big firm, we would not want to incur the same huge fixed software development cost twice. The same applies to utilities: we would not want two types of cable strung to our house, two types of telephone lines, and two types of power lines. Of course, companies with monopolies will want to charge higher prices to exploit their monopoly powers. This helps the companies, but hurts the economy overall. Society has therefore often found it advantageous to regulate monopolists. Unfortunately, the regulatory agencies are themselves often "captured" by the companies that they are supposed to regulate, which sometimes can hurt the economy even more than the monopolies themselves. There are no easy and obvious solutions.

Working with Sunk Costs

Sunk costs are ubiquitous, and the opposite of costs that should enter decision-making.

Sunk costs are, in a sense, the opposite of marginal costs. A **sunk cost** is a cost that cannot be altered and that therefore should not enter into your decisions today. It is what it is. Sunk costs are ubiquitous, if only because with the passage of time, everything is past or irrevocably decided and thus becomes a sunk cost.

An example of how capital investments become sunk, and then how production itself becomes sunk.

For example, consider circuit board production—a very competitive industry. If you have just completed a circuit board factory for $1 billion, it is a sunk cost. What matters now is *not* that you spent $1 billion, but how much the production of each circuit board costs. Having invested $1 billion is irrelevant. What remains relevant is that the presence of the factory makes the marginal cost of production of circuit boards very cheap. It is only this marginal cost that matters when you decide whether to produce circuit boards or not. If the marginal board production cost is $100 each, but you can only sell them for $90 each, then you should not build boards, regardless of how much you spent on the factory. Though tempting, the logic of "we have spent $1 billion, so we may as well put it to use" is just plain wrong. Now, presume that the market price for boards is $180, so you go ahead and manufacture 1 million boards at a cost of $100 each. Alas, your production run has just finished, and the price of boards—contrary to everyone's best expectations—has dropped from $180 each to $10 each. At this point, the board production cost is sunk, too. Whether the boards cost you $100 to manufacture or $1 to manufacture is irrelevant. The cost of the production run is sunk. If boards now sell at $10 each, assuming you cannot store them, you should sell them for $10 each. Virtually all supply costs eventually become sunk costs, and all that matters when you want to sell a completed product is the demand for the product.

Time is a good proxy, but not the deciding factor.

One more note—time itself often, but not always, decides on what is sunk or not. Contracts may allow you to undo things that happened in the past (thereby converting an ex-post sunk cost into a cost about which you still can make decisions), or bind you irrevocably to things that will happen in the future.

IMPORTANT: *A sunk cost has no cost contribution on the margin. It should therefore be ignored.*

Overhead Allocation and Unused Capacity

Allocating already existing overhead to a project valuation is a common example of bad project decision making.

A closely related mistake is to forget that "overhead" is often a sunk cost. By definition, overhead is not a marginal cost, but something that has been incurred already and is allocated to departments. For example, assume your firm has spent \$500,000 on a computer that is currently idle half the time. It serves only one division. Assume that another division can take an additional project that produces \$60,000 in net present value, but that will consume twenty percent of the computer's time. Should your firm take this project? If twenty percent of the cost of the computer is allocated to this new project (i.e., $20\% \cdot \$500,000 = \$100,000$), the net present value of the new project would appear to be a negative $-\$40,000$. But the correct decision process is not to allocate the existing overhead as a cost to divisions. The \$500,000 on overhead has already been spent. The computer is a sunk cost—assuming that it really would sit idle otherwise and find no better purpose. It may seem unfair to have charged only the original division for the computer and exempt the opportunistic other division. Yet taking this additional project will produce \$60,000 in profits without cost—clearly, a good thing. I personally know of plenty of examples in which overhead allocation has killed very profitable projects.

If capacity is unused, it should have a zero price.

"Capacity" is a subject that is closely related. For example, a garage may be currently only used for half its space. Adding the project "another car" that could also park in the garage would reduce this car's depreciation. The garage would then have a positive externality on project "corporate cars." The marginal cost of storing other cars in the garage should be zero.

Real World Dilemmas

Often we do not have easy, smooth margins.

But should we really charge zippo for parking corporate cars if we suspect that the unused capacity will not be unused forever? What if a new division might come along that wants to rent the five currently unused garage space in the future? Do we then kick out all current parkers? Or, how should we charge this new division if it wanted to rent six spaces? Should we give it the five remaining unused parking spots for free? Presuming that garages can only be built in increments of ten parking spots each, should we build another ten-car garage, and charge it entirely to this new division that needs only one extra parking spot in the new garage? Should this new division get a refund if other divisions were to want to use the parking space—but, as otherwise unused parking space, should we not use the garage appropriately by not charging for the nine extra spaces that will then be a free resource?

Fixed costs are often responsible. The old method works, though—use "on the margin."

When there are high fixed and low variable costs, then capacity is often either incredibly cheap (or even free) or it is incredibly expensive—at least in the short run. Still, the right way to think of capacity is in terms of the relevant marginal costs and marginal benefits. From an overall corporate perspective, it does not matter how or who you charge—just as long as you get the optimal capacity utilization. To the extent that cost allocation distorts optimal marginal decision-making, it should be avoided. In our case, if optimal capacity utilization requires zero parking cost for the old garage, then so be it. Of course, when it comes to the decision to build an entirely new garage, you simply weigh the cost of building the 10-spot garage against the reduced deterioration for 1 car.

It becomes much harder if we do not know the right outcome, so we have to play games with our subordinate managers.

Unfortunately, real life is not always so simple. Return to our example on Page 156 of an Internet connection, that has a positive influence on all our divisions. We know that our division managers will not want to pay for it if they can enjoy it for free—so we cannot rely on them telling us the correct marginal benefit. So, would it solve our problem to charge only divisions that are voluntarily signing up for the Internet connection, and to forcibly exclude those that do not sign up? If we do, then we solve the problem of everyone claiming that they do not need the Internet connection. However, we are then stuck with the problem that we may have a lot of unused network capacity that sits around, has zero marginal cost, and could be handed to the non-requesters at a zero cost. It would not impose a cost on anyone else and create more profit for the firm. Of course, if we do this, or even if we are suspected to do this, then no division would claim that they need the Internet to begin with, so that they will get it for free. In sum, what makes these problems so difficult in the real world is that as the boss, you often do not know the right marginal benefits and marginal costs, and you end up having to "play

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

games" with your division managers to try to make the right decision. Such is real life!

Solve Now!

Q 7.1 *A company must decide if it should move division DA to a new location. If division DA moves, it will be housed in a new building that reduces its operating costs by $10,000 per year forever. The new building costs $120,000. Moving division DA allows division DB to expand within the old factory. This enables DB to increase its profitability by $3,000 per year forever. If the discount rate is 10%, should division DA move?*

Q 7.2 *A firm can purchase a new punch press for $10,000. The new press will allow the firm to enter the widget industry, and thereby earn $2,000 in profits per year forever. However, the punch press will displace several screw machines that produce $1,500 in profits per year. If the interest rate is 10%, should the new punch press be purchased?*

Q 7.3 *A company rents 40,000 square feet of space and is using 30,000 square feet for its present operations. It wishes to add a new division that will use the remaining 10,000 square feet. If it adds the division, equipment will cost $210,000 once, and the operations will generate $50,000 in profits every year. Presently, the office staff costs $160,000 per year. However, the expansion requires a larger staff, bringing costs up to $180,000 per year. If the cost of capital $r = 10\%$, should the firm expand?*

7·2. Comparing Projects With Different Lives and Rental Equivalents

Comparing contracts with unequal lives.

Let me switch gears, and cover another interesting and not immediately obvious application of NPV. A customer who currently pays $350 each year (at year end) is offering you a 5-year deal, in which she pays $1,000 upfront, followed by $100 each year end, for total payments of $1,500. The appropriate cost of capital is 10%. Should you accept this?

You get less per year—but more present value if you remember that you currently are paid only at year's end, too..

At first glance, you only get $\$1,500/5 = \$300$ per year, less than the $350 you are getting now. The present value of this new contract is even less:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= +\$1,000 + \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)} + \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^3} + \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^4} + \frac{\$100}{(1+10\%)^5} \\ &= \$1,379.08 \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{7.6}$$

which comes to only $275.82 per year. Looks like a bad idea, does it not? Wrong! What you need to realize is that the customer currently pays only $350 per year *in the future*, too, so the current arrangement of $350 per year is an annuity that is worth only

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$350}{(1+10\%)} + \frac{\$350}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$350}{(1+10\%)^3} + \frac{\$350}{(1+10\%)^4} + \frac{\$350}{(1+10\%)^5} \\ &= \$1,326.78 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{7.7}$$

The new contract is better than the current annual arrangement.

Rental Value Equivalents.

You can also think of this problem in terms of an equivalent "rental per annum value" of the contract. (It is sometimes abbreviated as **EAC** for equivalent annual cost.) What kind of annuity would be equal to our contract? The answer is

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{x}{(1+10\%)} + \frac{x}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{x}{(1+10\%)^3} + \frac{x}{(1+10\%)^4} + \frac{x}{(1+10\%)^5} \\ &= \text{Annuity}(x, 5 \text{ years}, 10\%) = \frac{x}{10\%} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+10\%)^5}\right] = \$1,379.08 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{7.8}$$

The solution is an annual rental value of $x = \$363.80$. So, the new contract would be worth the same as annual contracted payments of \$363.80—more than the \$350 that you are currently receiving.

Comparing multi-period contracts.

Rental values are a good way to think of contracts with different lengths. For example, would you prefer our contract to another one in which the customer pays \$800 upfront and \$200 each year for two years? The NPV of this contract is only

$$\text{NPV} = \$800 + \frac{+\$200}{1+10\%} + \frac{+\$200}{(1+10\%)^2} = \$1,147.11 \ , \tag{7.9}$$

which is lower than the \$1,379.08 that the earlier contract offered—but this is like comparing apples and oranges. Again, if you think about it, with the newer contract, you would still have another three years of product to sell. In this case, the NPV of the new contract of \$1,147.11 for two years worth of production is equivalent to rental payments of

$$\text{NPV} = \frac{x}{10\%} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+10\%)^2}\right] \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = \$660.95 \ . \tag{7.10}$$

The annual flow of \$660.95 is much higher than the annual flow of \$363.80 that the older contract offered, so you might prefer the newer contract.

Rental equivalents work only if you believe they are repeatable.

However, as appealing as comparing rental equivalents may be, this technique depends on the very strong assumption that you can repeat contracts when they expire and for quite a number of times (at least until both contracts expire in the same year). To see this, ask yourself which contract you would prefer if you believed that your customer would jump to the competition after the two-year contract is over. If your project would be otherwise useless, you might now prefer the five-year contract. Similarly, you have assumed that you do not value flexibility—for example, the shorter contract may allow you to attract an even better customer in 3 years. Or, it may be that you value the flexibility of not repeating the contract, if you fear that your input costs may be much higher in 3 years (so your net cash flows would not be what you input above). On the other hand, you may not like giving your customer the flexibility of jumping ship. In this case, flexibility would be a cost to you, and you would prefer the 5-year contract. In Section 7·4, we will be talking more about the value of such flexibility.

~~Cost~~ Bases

Similar rental equivalent value problems also often arise when you compare different technologies for example, you can purchase a machine that is likely to last for 18 years, and you must compare it against another machine that is likely to last for 22 years. The method for solving these problems is exactly the same, so try it in the next question.

Solve Now!

Q 7.4 *Machine A costs \$10,000 upfront, and lasts for 18 years. It has annual maintenance costs of \$1,000 per year. Machine B costs \$15,000 upfront, lasts for 22 years, and has annual maintenance costs of \$800 per year. Both machines produce the same product. The interest rate is 12% per annum.*

(a) What is the PV of the costs of each machine?

(b) What is the rental equivalent of either machine?

(c) Which machine is the better purchase if you assume neither value to flexibility, nor expect different machine costs or contracting conditions in the future?

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

7·3. Expected, Typical, and Most Likely Scenarios

The NPV formula requires expected cash flows, not typical cash flows. The difference is low-probability events.

Let us move on to a different, but also common error when managers apply NPV. This error is primarily conceptual. Under uncertainty, the NPV formula requires the **expected cash flows** in the numerator. The mistake is to think of the *typical cash flow* (in statistical terminology, the median) or the *most likely cash flow* (the mode), instead. If you do this, you will fail to consider low-probability events: a plane crash, a legal suit, an especially severe recession, or a terrific new client.

An Example.

For example, your business may have the following payoffs:

Event	Probability	Value
Good Business	50%	\$1,200,000
Normal Business	45%	\$1,000,000
Lawyers Sue For Punitive Damages	5%	−\$10,000,000

The most likely payoff is \$1,200,000. The typical payoff is \$1,000,000. The expected payoff, however, is only

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\text{Payoff}) &= 50\% \cdot \$1,200,000 + 45\% \cdot \$1,000,000 + 5\% \cdot (-\$10,000,000) \\ &= \$550,000 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{7.11}$$

It is the latter that is required in an NPV analysis. If you run this business 100 times, you would receive \$1.2 million 50 times, \$1 million forty-five times, and lose \$10 million 5 times. Fortunately, if the statistical distribution is symmetric, e.g., as it is in the case of the normal distribution, then the center of the distribution is the mean, median, and mode. Unfortunately, few businesses are immune to low-probability shocks, so the distinction between mean, median, and mode can rarely be taken lightly.

file=npvadvice.tex: RP

7·4. Future Contingencies and Real Options

A real option is the value of flexibility to change course in the future.

Now we move on to an important complication in estimating future expected cash flows. When the future is uncertain, then the ability to change course in the future—depending on the economic environment at the time—creates value. A business may expand its size, accelerate its production, and venture out into related or spin-off businesses, if the demand for its products increases, or if the costs of its inputs fall. Similarly, the firm may reduce, delay, or stop production if its economic environment deteriorates. This is called a **real option** (or **strategic option**). Conceptually, these options are just a variant of the problem of assessing the expected cash flows (and their cost of capital) correctly. Practically, the resulting complications can be so difficult that one could write a whole book on the subject—and some have done so.

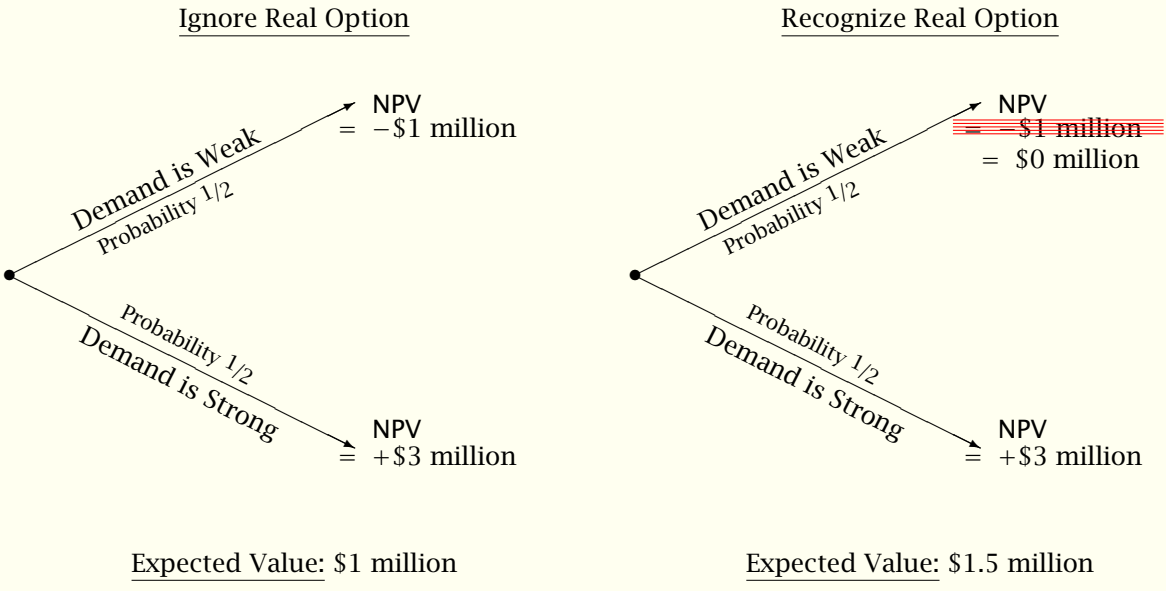
7·4.A. A Basic Introduction

An Example.

Let us illustrate a real option with a simple example. A factory may cost \$1 million to build in year 1. In year 2, it can produce \$2 million worth of inputs into \$3 million worth of outputs. The expected profits next year of \$1 million are no better than the actual cost today. From an NPV perspective, this factory does not appear worthwhile. Or does it?

Table 7.1. State Contingent Factory Payoff Table

		Ignore Real Option Always Run Factory	Recognize Real Option Shut down if Optimal
	Prob	Dumb NPV	Smart NPV
Demand is low	1/2	\$1,000,000	\$0
		- \$2,000,000	
		= -\$1,000,000	\$0
Demand is high	1/2	\$5,000,000	\$5,000,000
		- \$2,000,000	- \$2,000,000
		\$3,000,000	\$3,000,000
Expected Value		\$1,000,000	\$1,500,000



file=npvadvice.tex: LP

It is not the expected value that matters.

If the product can be either in high demand (yielding \$5 million) or in low demand (yielding \$1 million)—both equally likely—the expected value of output can indeed be \$3 million, as stated. This is what the firm expects to earn if managers always operate the factory, regardless of demand. But if managers can shut down the factory when demand is low, then owning the factory is similar to owning a contingent equity claim with limited liability (Chapter 5): *you can get the upside with less downside.* Take a look at the payoff table in Table 7.1. It shows that if the factory always runs, its expected net cash flows are less than if managers shut down the factory when demand is low. It is the managerial flexibility that increases the expected factory cash flow from \$1 million to \$1.5 million, which means that the factory is well worth building under reasonable cost-of-capital scenarios.

7·4.B. More Complex Option Valuation in a Risk-Neutral World

We are ignoring different costs of capital for real options.

In order to gain some more intuition on how to think about and value real options, let us now work with some two-period examples (well, two periods beyond today). By assuming the world is risk-neutral, we are also ignoring that discount rates can be higher when there are more strategic options. (Depending on the context, not worrying too much about the correct discount rate can be forgiveable or deadly.) Trust me: it will get tough enough without this extra complication.

7·4.C. Decision Trees: One Set of Parameters

Our more involved example.

Assume that you own a firm that can produce 150,000 units of a good at \$100/u. The retail price of your good was \$500/u recently, but you now expect it to go up or down either \$100/u this year, i.e., either to \$400/u or \$600/u. The year thereafter, you expect it to go up or down by \$200/u. For example, if the retail price were to become \$600/u, you expect it to be either \$400/u or \$800/u the following year. All price changes are equally likely. The fixed costs of running the plant are \$50 million, and rent (regardless of whether you run the plant or not) is \$10 million.

The cost of capital and timing assumptions.

The world is risk-neutral and the prevailing interest is 10% per year, which applies to this year's coming cash flows, and twice compounded to the following year's cash flows. Moreover, we presume that you know at the beginning of each year what the price over the whole year will be, because you receive customer orders at this point. (To model intra-year uncertainty more realistically, you would have to deal with more periods, not any more difficult in concept but much more tedious.)

Here is how our assumptions work together.

As an example, let us compute the firm value if you know that the price will go to \$600/u and then to \$400/u, and if you know that you will operate the plant this year but not the following year. The first year, you would earn revenues of $150,000u \cdot (\$600/u - \$100/u) = \$75M$, pay fixed costs of $\$50M$, and rent of $\$10M$. Your net profits would be $\$15M$, which discounts to $\$13.64M$. The second year, you would earn no revenues and pay no fixed costs, but still pay rent of $\$10M$. This discounts to $\$8.3M$. In sum, under this price path and with this operating policy, your firm would have an NPV of $\$5.4M$.

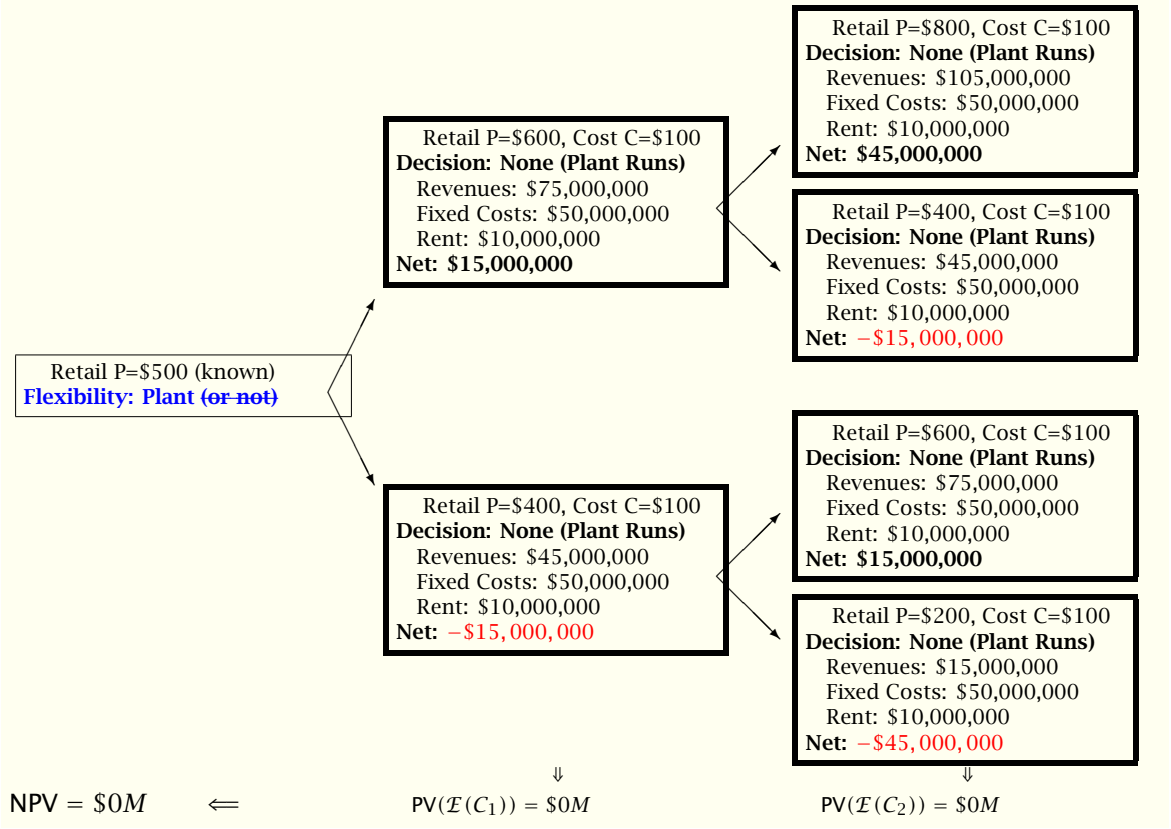
Our goal

We want to consider the value of this project in a number of scenarios, which differ in the assumption of your ability to know and respond to the prevailing environment.

Upfront Choice First, let us compute the value under inflexible behavior. This is one extreme benchmark. What is the value if you have to make your decision today of whether to operate or not in all future scenarios? That is, the firm would either have to operate or not operate in both future periods.

- If you do not start the plant, you would simply value the firm at \$0.
- If you do start the plant, then you must make the calculations that the tree in Figure 7.2 shows. If the price increases, you earn $\$75M - \$50M - \$10M = \$15M$. If it decreases, you earn $-\$45M - \$1M - \$5M = -\$15M$. Therefore, your expected

Figure 7.2. Value Under No Flexibility — Always Operate The Plant



revenues are \$0. The following year, you earn either $+\$45M$, $-\$15M$, $+\$15M$, or $-\$45M$. This again comes to an expected $\$0M$.

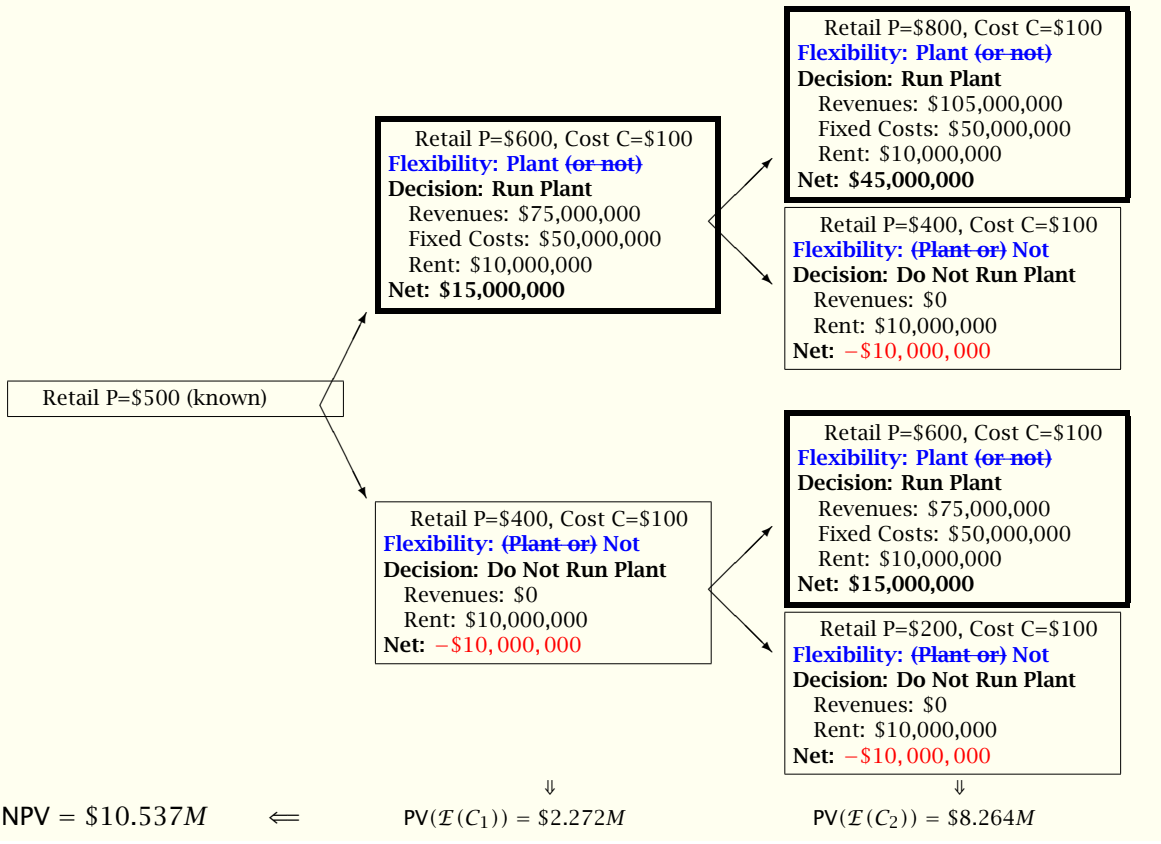
In this example, it really does not matter whether you start or not start the plant—your firm value is always \$0.

The example was rigged—the firm value is \$0 if you have no inflexibility.

Importantly, this \$0 is also the value if you work with expected outcomes instead of the tree. The expected price in both future years is \$500/u. At the expected price, your \$500/u production cost translates into expected revenues of $\$60M$. You would still have to pay for rent and fixed costs, at $\$60M$ per year. Indeed, working with expected values is the same as assuming that you do not have the ability to make strategic choices in the future (discussed next)—and a common source of underestimated project values in practice.

All Real Options — The Fully Flexible Choice Now assume the opposite extreme benchmark—you know each year what the price is and you have perfect flexibility to shut down and reopen the plant in response to market conditions. (This is the "Timing Option.") Here, if the retail price is above \$500/u, you would operate. For example, if the price is retail \$600/u, your marginal revenues are $\$150,000 \cdot (\$600/u - \$100/u) - \$50M = \$25M$. Subtract $\$10M$ in sunk rent cost, and you end up with revenues of $\$15M$. If the retail price is \$400/u, you earn $\$45M$, which is not enough to cover the $\$50M$ marginal fixed cost, so you are better off not operating and just paying the rent of $\$10M$.

Figure 7.3. Value Under Perfect Flexibility — Full Knowledge and Choice



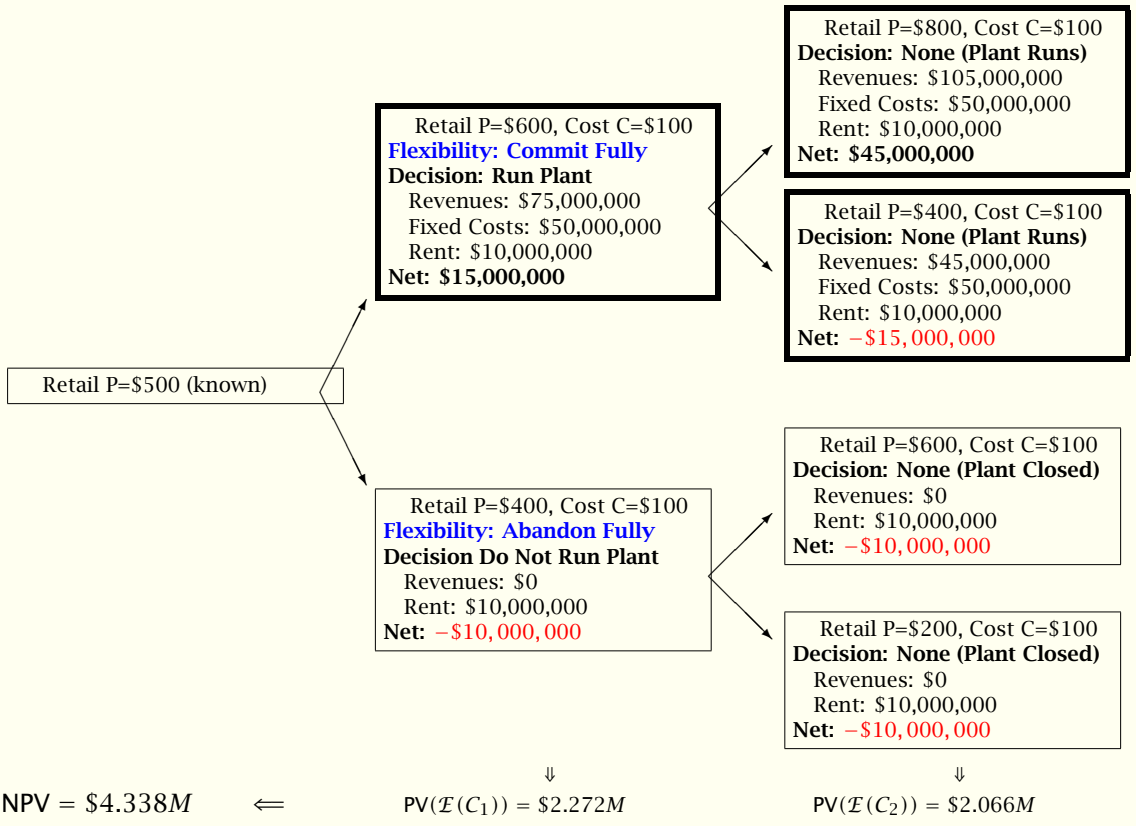
If you have perfect flexibility, you get "the max."

Figure 7.3 shows your valuation and optimal decision tree now. Again, the figure highlights important flexibility-related choices in blue as "Flexibility." The fat boxes indicate that you operate the plant, thin boxes that you do not. You earn $+\$15M$ or $-\$10M$ in the first year. The expected value is $\$2.5M$, which discounts to $\$2.3M$ (indicated at the bottom of the figure). The final year, you earn $+\$45M$, $-\$10M$, $+\$15M$, or $-\$10M$, which is an expected value of $\$10M$ and a discounted value of $\$8.3M$. Therefore, this firm is worth $+\$10.5M$.

The value to having knowledge and the flexibility to act on it—knowledge without flexibility is useless!—has transformed this firm from a nothing into a gem. It is this value-through-flexibility that your "strategic options to respond" has created. Put differently, the value of your real option is $+\$10.5M$.

The Option to Delay Choice Often, you do not have full flexibility. Instead, you have some strategic options, but not perfect flexibility. For example, what would happen if you had the option to delay your decision by one year, more specifically, to run the plant only if the price appreciates to \$600/u, but not if it depreciates to \$400/u? If you run the plant next year, you have to run it the following year. If you do not run the plant next year, you cannot run it the following year, either. Figure 7.4 shows your revised decision tree. The value of this strategic option is still a respectable $\$4.4M$. The reason why it does not reach $+\$10.5M$ is that you would still operate the plant in the final period if the price is \$400/u (which you would rather not do), and you would fail to run the plant in the final period if the price is \$600/u (which you would rather do).

Figure 7.4. Value to One-Year-Ahead Information (or Ability to Delay Choice Until Year 1)



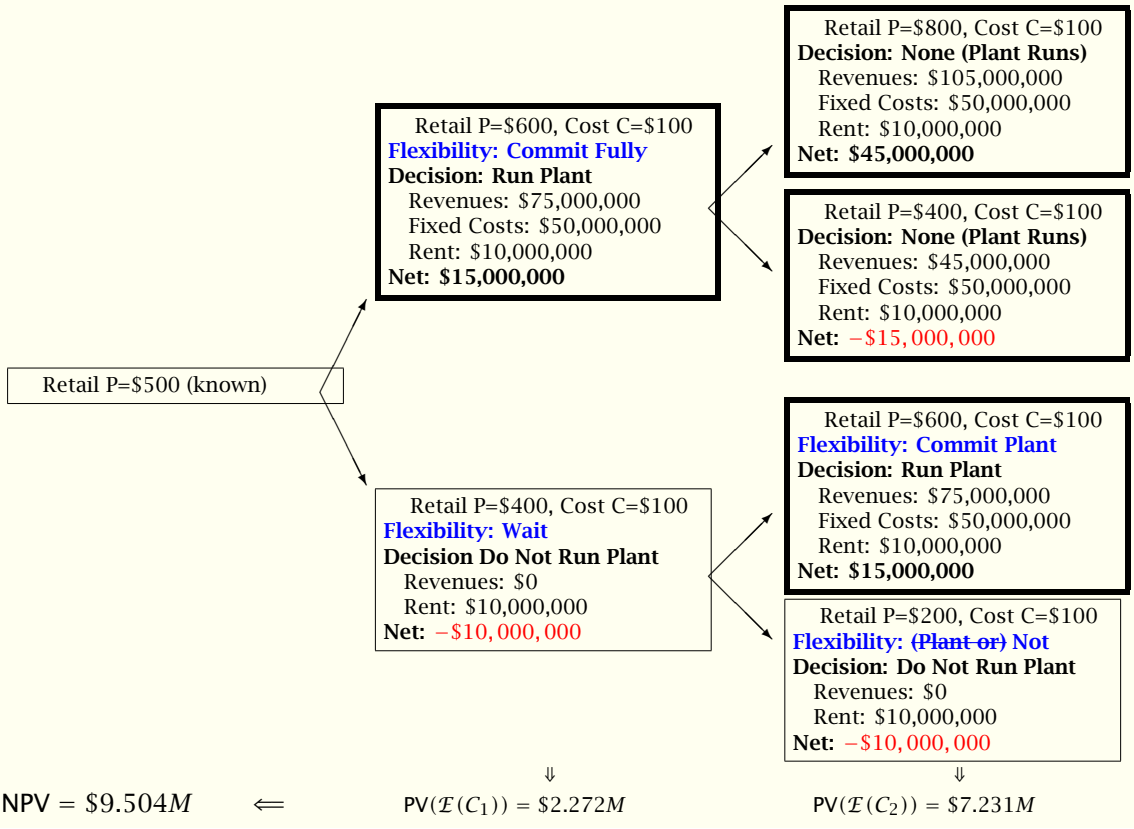
The Option to Starting Later An alternative scenario would allow you to start the plant anytime you wish, but once you start the plant, you cannot stop it. Figure 7.5 shows the tree for this scenario—the plant value now comes to $+\$9.5M$. This is more than you get from the option to delay for this scenario, because there is one node (where the price hits \$600/u) where you now could make money where previously you had to have already committed yourself not to operate. But this is less than what you get under perfect flexibility, because you are still robbed of the option to shut down if the retail price is \$400/u in the final period.

The Option to Stopping Later Yet another alternative scenario would force you to keep a once-closed plant stopped. That is, you cannot restart a plant once you have shut the burners off and allowed your skilled workers to leave. This is called the "abandonment option."

What should you do if the price falls to \$400/u at time 1?

This case also illustrates that decisions trees can become complex. If the price falls to \$400/u at first, should you run the plant or not? If you do not run the plant, you save money but you lose the strategic option to operate if the price then appreciates to \$600. Actually, you have no choice but to compute the best value both ways. Figure 7.6 and Figure 7.7 show the two decision trees. If you close the plant, your firm would be worth $\$5.4M$ (Figure 7.6). If you keep the plant open—eating a loss of $\$15M$ rather than just $\$10M$—your firm would be worth \$8.3M, because you keep the strategic option to operate if the retail price were to increase again to \$600. Therefore, keeping the plant open is the better strategy.

Figure 7.5. Value to Flexible Plant Starting (But Not Stopping)



You really need to consider all possible future strategies in response to all possible future price paths.

Solving such trees is a difficult problem, because your optimal strategy next year does not just depend on that year, but on future years. In fact, in our previous examples, I have cheated in making it too easy for you: I had told you the strategy at each node. Real option problems are difficult to value, precisely because your optimal strategy at any node can depend both on the current state of your firm and on all future possible scenarios.

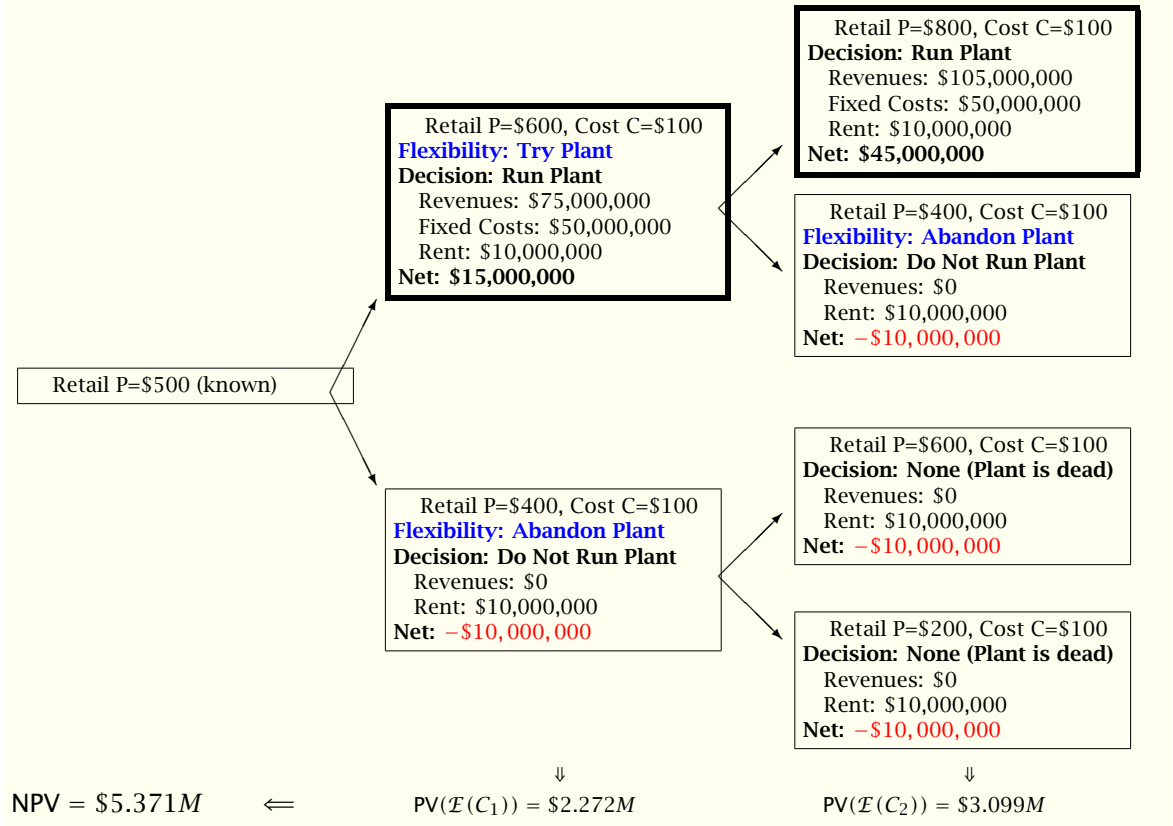
You can find more sophisticated instructions in advanced books or chapters.

The web chapter on real options explains how you can solve such problems more systematically. Decisions are often worked out "backwards": you start with the final year and work your way towards today. Another important tool explained in the web chapter is a form of automated **scenario analysis** called **Monte-Carlo simulation**, in which you can specify a whole range of possible future scenarios. The spreadsheet itself can then compute the expected outcome under many different scenarios under different decision strategies that you would specify.

Here is what the world is already using

Real option valuation methods are so difficult that they are not used as often as NPV, but they are also not obscure. Recall the survey of CFOs from Chapter 1. About 50% of their respondents stated that they use sensitivity analysis, which is the minimum tool to do at least some real options analysis. About 27% even try to explicitly value real options, which is a very difficult task; and 13% do simulation analyses. Again, these methods are difficult and beyond the scope of this chapter. They are covered in the web chapter, which—you should be warned—is also the most difficult chapter.

Figure 7.6. Value to Flexible Plant Stopping (But Not Starting) — Strategy 1: Close at $400



In sum, real options are the value to flexible choice. The value of the firm depends on how you can respond to situations in the future—and the more optimally you (can) respond, the higher is the value today. You cannot simply work with the expected retail prices or expected outcomes. Instead, you have to consider the whole range of future scenarios, and take into account how you can and will respond.

Real options could be called the "value of future flexibility."

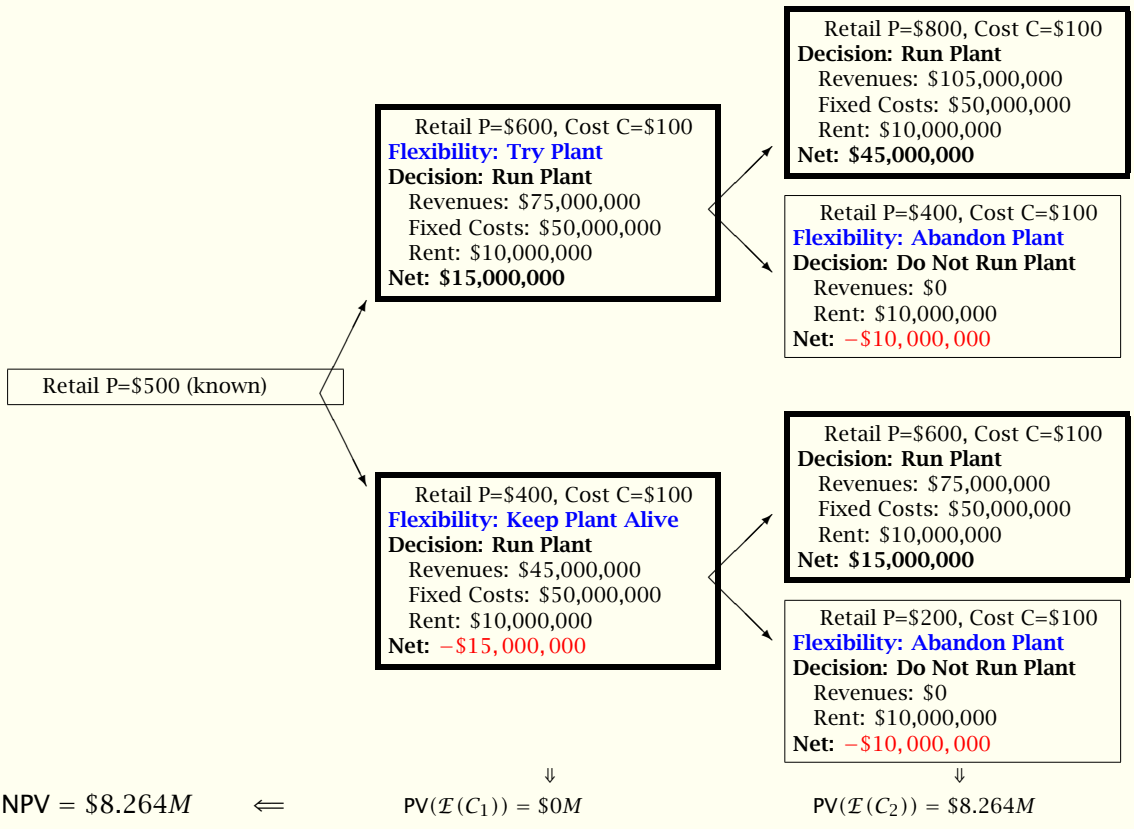
7·4.D. Decision Trees: One Set of Parameters

This example was a little artificial, because it kept the same parameters throughout. This symmetry made it easy to explain and compare options. More commonly, the parameters themselves will change and determine the extent of your flexibility (and thus the value of your strategic option). This is best to explain by example.

More common examples.

Fixed vs. Flexible Technology Choice Reconsider the fully flexible choice in Figure 7.3. Now assume that you have an alternative technology available, which eliminates your fixed operating costs, but requires an upfront $80M investment. (You are installing robots that will replace expensive manpower.) At first blush, this seems like a great idea—you no longer have to spend $100M, which discounts to 86.8M$. Alas, this ignores the strategic option that human workers have over robots: they can be hired and fired. Figure 7.8 shows that despite the low cost of the robots and despite the seeming savings of 6.8M$ in present value, you would allow the value of the firm to decline to 6.8M$. This is lower than even the value of the firm if you can not restart the plant—once your workers are gone, they are gone—as in Figure 7.7. Robots, therefore, are not a great idea. Incidentally, it is often suggested that the value of smart employees is not their initial or even expected

Figure 7.7. Value to Flexible Plant Stopping (But Not Starting) — Strategy 2: Run at $400



value, but the fact that smart people have the flexibility to attack novel problems for which they are not initially hired. Your value may be primarily that of a real option!

Adding Plant Capacity Another interesting real option is the option to expand. You can view this as the choice to build currently unused capacity.

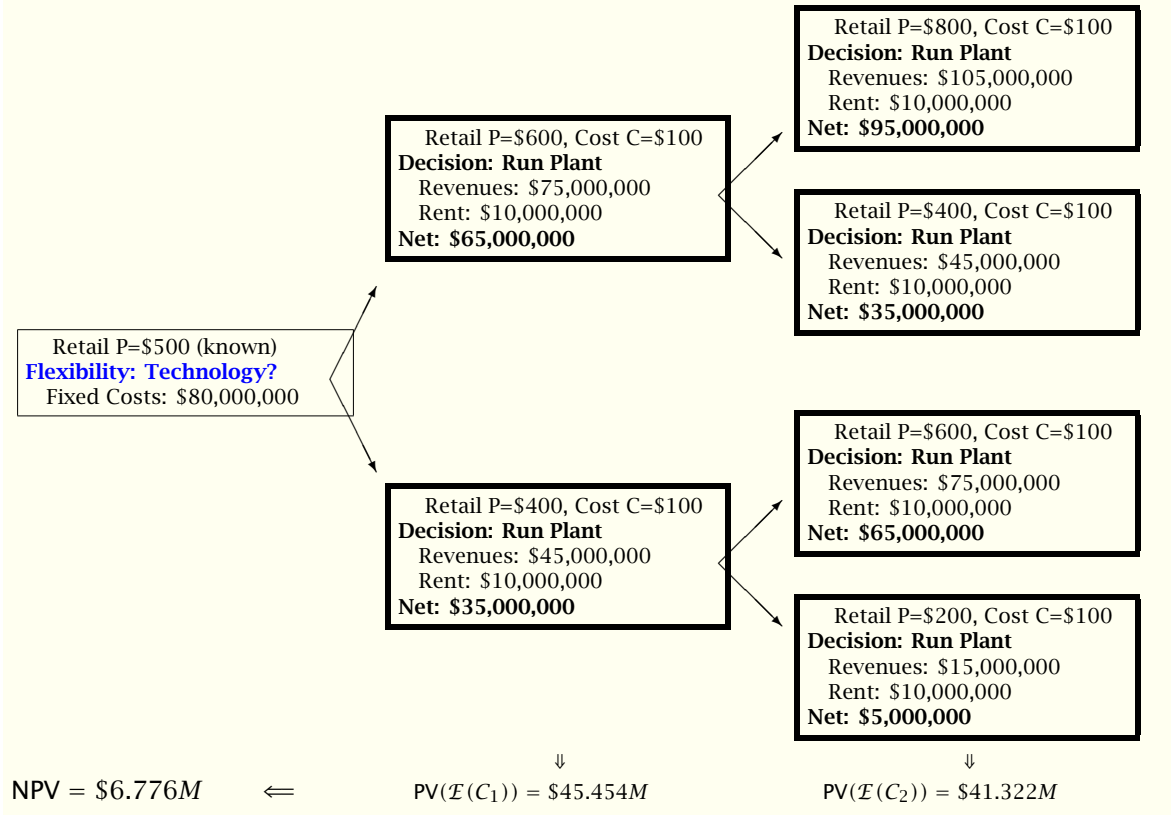
For example, say you can choose between

- your current fully flexible production technology that allows you to produce 150,000 units at $100/u (as in Figure 7.3);
- and another production technology that builds the following extra capacity: you can still produce 150,000 units at $100/u, but you can also produce 300,000 units at a cost of $200/u, though with higher machine costs of $100,000.

Note that doubling increases the cost of all goods, not just the cost of the extra 150,000 units. It would cost you 60M$ in variable production costs rather than just 15M$, and 100M$ in fixed costs rather than just 50M$—that is, almost $95M more if you ever wanted to use such extra capacity! Would you be willing to pay 3M$ to upgrade your plant to such a technology?

Figure 7.9 shows you the firm value with the option to expand. If the retail price hits its all time high of $800/u, the unusued capacity is worth a tremendous amount. Therefore, the value of the firm increases to 15.7M$ from your earlier optimal value of 10.5M$, easily enough to justify a 3M$ expenditure.

Figure 7.8. Value of a Fixed Cost Technology With Different Parameters



Real options come in many guises. Many projects are nothing but strategic options: For example, the value of unused land around cities is essentially the option that the city might expand enough to make building on the land economically worthwhile. Research and development often has no immediate usefulness, or even usefulness in the most likely scenario—but there is a chance that it might yield a highly profitable discovery. This strategic option value has to be properly considered in the expected cash flow computation, or the project value will be underestimated. Silly as it may sound, the most common mistake that managers commit when it comes to real options is to just not recognize that they are there.

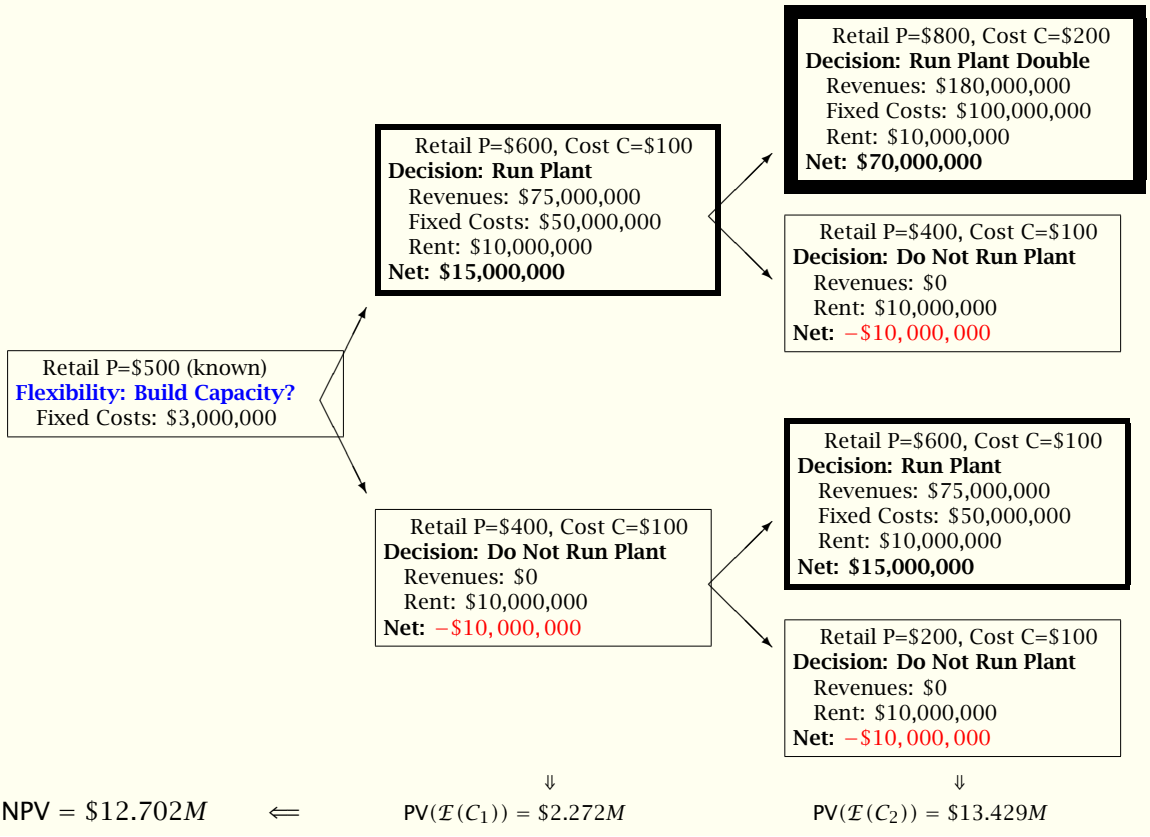
Strategic Options are everywhere.

7·4.E. Summary

The proper valuation of strategic options is as important as it is difficult. The fact that the first step to valuing your real options is to recognize them does not mean that the rest is easy. Strategic options become both economically more important and more difficult to value when there are many periods and many possible economic scenarios. Valuation is especially difficult if your decisions in each time period cannot be made independently but in turn depends on possible futures. For example, if it costs money to close and reopen a plant, then your decision to close the plant must also depend on your assessment of how quickly the product price will recover. If there is a good chance of recovery soon, you may choose to operate the plant even at a small loss right now. In such problems, the optimal decision rule itself can be very difficult to find.

Strategic options are tough to value.

Figure 7.9. Value of an Expansion Technology With Different Parameters



Use Scenario Analysis—The Management Name for Tree.

The correct valuation method for real options is the decision tree. In a spreadsheet, this is accomplished with **scenario analysis**, which allows you to specify different scenarios, one at a time, each resulting in its own cash flows. (Financial managers do this regularly, as we noted in Chapter 1.) The appropriate project NPV would be the average over many different scenarios—each with different probabilities and possibly different managerial responses—given a best managerial strategy. Working this out is not easy. Think about how difficult it was just to figure out how many different project combinations you could choose *today*. Now, figure out what you could do in the future under an infinite variety of possible *future* scenarios—which you have to do when you value strategic options. Out of necessity, most businesses consider only the most obvious strategic options.

Solve Now!

Q 7.5 *List "strategic options" that a firm needs to incorporate in its project valuation.*

Q 7.6 *A business produces 100,000 gadgets, costing $1 each to produce and sellable for $1.80 each (last year and just now). To produce another 100,000 gadgets requires running the machine at night, which increases production costs from $1 to $2. The business can last for up to 2 years (but think about how you would solve this for 5 years). In every year, with 10% probability, the output price doubles; with 10% probability, the output price halves; with 80% probability, the price stays the same as in the previous year. Shutting down the factory for 1 year costs $9,000. Reopening it costs $10,000. The cost of capital is a constant 5% per year. What is the value of this factory? (This is a difficult problem, but unfortunately not an unrealistic one.)*

file=npvadvice.tex: RP

7·5. Mental Biases

Most cash flow and cost-of-capital estimates rely on judgments. Unfortunately, it is often difficult to obtain accurate judgments. Our brains tend to commit systematic decision errors. Managers who do not recognize these biases will systematically make poor decisions.

Model inputs are usually not what they should be.

There are literally dozens of well-known behavioral errors, but limited space allows us to highlight just three: **overconfidence**, **relativism**, and **compartmentalization**.

Innate Human Decision Biases cause predictable valuation mistakes.

1. **Overconfidence** is the tendency of people to believe that their own assessments are more accurate than they really are. In lab experiments, ordinary people are found to be dramatically overconfident. When asked to provide a 90% confidence interval—which is just a range within which they are confident that their true value will lie in nine out of ten tries—most people end up being correct only five out of ten times.

   It is difficult to empirically document overconfidence—after all, if it were easy, managers would recognize it themselves and avoid it. However, we do have evidence that many managers who are already heavily invested in their own company tend to throw caution overboard and voluntarily invest much of their own money into the corporation—and even in companies going bankrupt later on. There is also good empirical evidence that those of us who are most optimistic in overestimating our own life-expectancy disproportionately become entrepreneurs. Even if optimism is a disease, it seems to be a necessary one for entrepreneurs!

   To understand this better and to test your own susceptibility to these problems, you can take a self-test at the book website, http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book. Doing so will likely make you remember this problem far more than reading long paragraphs of text in this book. Incidentally, the only population segments who are known not to be systematically overconfident are weather forecasters and clinically depressed patients.

2. **Relativism** is the tendency of people to consider issues of relative scale when they should not. For example, most people are willing to drive 15 minutes to a store farther away to save $20 on the purchase of $30 worth of groceries, but they would not be willing to drive the 15 minutes to a car dealer farther away to save $100 on the purchase of a new $20,000 car. The savings appears to be less important in the context of the car purchase than in the context of a grocery purchase. This is flawed logic, similar to comparing IRR's while ignoring project scale. The marginal cost is driving 15 minutes extra, and the marginal benefit is a higher $100 in the context of the car than the $20 in the context of the groceries. Put differently, the problem is that we tend to think in percentages, and the $20 is a higher percentage of your grocery bill than it is of your car purchase. The smaller the amount of money at stake, the more severe this problem often becomes. When a gas station advertises a price of $2 per gallon rather than $2.10, customers often drive for miles and wait in long lines—all to fill a 20 gallon gas tank at a total savings that amounts to a mere $2.

3. **Compartmentalization** Compartmentalization is the tendency of people to categorize decisions. Most people are more inclined to spend more when the same category has produced an unexpected windfall earlier. For example, winning a lottery prize while attending a baseball game often makes winners more likely to purchase more baseball tickets, even

Anecdote: Small Business Failures

In New York City, two of every five new restaurants close within one year. Nationwide, the best estimates suggest that about 90% of all restaurants close within two years. If successful, the average restaurant earns a return of about 10% per year. So, owners seem to lose money on average. So, why open yet another restaurant? We mentioned earlier (Page 12) that restauranteurs may just enjoy owning restaurants. But a more likely explanation is that restauranteurs are over-optimistic, and just do not realize how tough it is to profitably run a restaurant.

More generally, a **Small Business Administration** study of small business failures from 1989 to 1992 found that 33% of businesses failed within 2 years, 50% within 4 years, and 66% within 6 years. Yet in a survey of about 3,000 entrepreneurs, 81% of entrepreneurs believed that their chances of success were at least 70%, and 33% believed that they had zero chance of failure!

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

though the project "baseball game" has not changed in profitability. Similarly, an unexpected loss may stop people from an otherwise profitable investment that they should make. For example, say an individual likes to attend a particular baseball game. If she loses her baseball game ticket, she is less likely to purchase a replacement, even though the cost and benefit of purchasing the ticket are the same as they were when the original ticket was purchased.

Know thyself to avoid these errors!

Solve Now!

Q 7.7 *Describe common mental decision biases, and how they are likely to bias NPV calculations.*

7·6. Incentive (Agency) Biases

Incentive problems arise when the information provider has incentives that are different from those of the project owner.

Mental biases are not our only bias. Another kind of bias arises when one person is acting on behalf of another. This is called an **agency** problem—a situation in which the owner of a project has to rely on someone else for information, and this someone else has divergent interests. An example may be shareholders who rely on corporate management to undertake projects on their behalves, or a division manager who has to rely on department managers for information about how profitable their proposed projects really are. A cynical synopsis of agency biases would be "all people act and lie in their own self-interest." Now, although everyone does have incentives to lie—or at least color the truth—corporations are especially rife with such agency distortions. Of course, few people sit down and contemplate how to best and intentionally lie. Instead, they convince themselves that what is in their best interest is indeed the best route to take. Thus, mental biases often reinforce incentive problems: "wishful thinking" is a disease from which we all suffer.

These problems are pervasive and important.

You can take the fact that we have already had to mention agency issues repeatedly in this chapter as an indication of how important and pervasive these are. But, again, lack of space forces us to highlight just a few issues with some examples:

1. **Competition for Capital** Managers often compete for scarce resources. For example, division managers may want to obtain capital for their projects. A less optimistic but more accurate estimate of the project cash flows may induce headquarters to allocate capital to another division instead. Thus, division managers often end up in a race to make their potential projects appear in the most favorable and profitable light.

2. **Employment Concerns** Managers and employees do not want to lose their jobs. For example, scientists tend to highlight the potential and downplay the drawbacks of their areas of research. After all, not doing so may cut the project and thereby cost them their jobs.

3. **Perks** Managers do not like to give up perks. For example, division managers may like to have their own secretaries or even request private airplanes. Thus, they are likely to overstate the usefulness of the project "administrative assistance" or "private plane transportation."

4. **Power** Managers typically love to build their own little "empires." For example, they may want to grow and control their department because bigger departments convey more prestige and because they are a stepping stone to further promotion, either internally or externally. For the same reason, managers often prefer not to maximize profits, but sales.

5. **Hidden Slack** Managers like the ability to be able to cover up problems that may arise in the future. For example, division managers may want to hide the profitability of their divisions, fearing that headquarters may siphon off "their" profits into other divisions. They may prefer to hide the generated value, feeling that the cash they produced in good times "belongs" to them—and that they are entitled to use it in bad times.

6. Reluctance to Take Risk Managers may hesitate to take on risk. For example, they may not want to take a profitable NPV project, because they can only get fired if it fails—and may not be rewarded enough if it succeeds. A popular saying used to be "no one was ever fired for buying IBM," although these days Microsoft has taken over IBM's role.

7. Direct Theft Managers and employees have even been known to steal outright from the company. For example, a night club manager may not ring sales into the cash register. Or a sales agent may "forget" to charge her relatives. In some marginal cases, this can be a fine line. For example, is taking a paper clip from the company or answering a personal e-mail from the company account really theft? In other cases, theft is blatantly obvious. In September 2002, Dennis Kozlowski, former CEO, was charged with looting $600 million from Tyco shareholders. His primary defense was that he did so in broad daylight—with approval from the corporate board that he had helped put in place.

We do know where agency problems play a bigger role and where they play a lesser role.

Where agency problems are big, and where they are not.

I. Scale and Owner Engagement In a small company with one owner and one employee, agency conflicts are less important than they are in big corporations with their many layers of management and disengaged owners.

Do you believe that professionally run companies really make the best decisions on behalf of their public shareholders? Remember that agency issues do not just arise between shareholders and management—they start with the lowest level employee and bubble all the way up to the top-level CEO. Decision-making is often based on a chain of deception. It is a testament to the importance of sharing risks among many investors that large, publicly traded companies still manage to net-in-net create shareholder value!

II. Project Duration If the project is short-term and/or comes with good interim progress points, it is easier to reward managers appropriately for success and punish them for failure. For example, think how you would judge and reward a manager who is (supposedly) working on an R&D project that is not likely to have visible results for decades. This is a difficult task. Agency problems for large and very long-term projects may be so intrinsically high that they cannot be undertaken.

III. External Noise If good luck is an integral and important part of the project, it becomes more difficult to judge managerial performance, which in turn aggravates agency issues. For example, we can relatively easily measure the productivity of a line worker in a factory. We know whether she works or slacks off. Therefore, agency problems matter less. In contrast, it is more difficult to determine if our sales agent worked hard but the customer just did not bite, or if our sales agent just failed. Similarly, our nightwatch security guard may or may not be working hard, and it could take years before we could learn (probably the hard way) whether she regularly stayed awake or just dozed off.

IV. Opaqueness If information is very difficult for outsiders to come by, agency problems will be worse. For example, if only your manager sees what projects are available, he can present only those that he would like to undertake and not mention those that have higher NPV, but require different skills that he may not have or more work that he finds unpleasant.

We also know that there are mechanisms that can help alleviate agency problems.

A. Audits If the company runs independent assessments or audits, managers can make decisions based on better information, even if their employees are unwilling to provide it. However, many consultants suffer from the same disease as employees: they know that they are most likely to be rehired if they tell the manager what she wants to hear.

B. Truth-Telling Incentives If managers can be rewarded for telling the truth, agency conflicts will become less important. For example, if your company has a research scientist who has expertise in alpha-proteins and works on an alpha-protein project, your goal as manager should be to allow this scientist to say without suffering any negative consequences: "Do

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

not waste your money putting any more research dollars into alpha-proteins." This means that the scientist's salary and promotion chances must remain the same or even increase—even if this means that she no longer has a good alternative use for her time and effort. You might even offer a reward for any scientists who are voluntarily cancelling their projects.

Would you really be willing to carry through on such a promise? Would your research scientists believe you?

Some companies also undertake **post audits**, which are designed not only to evaluate the quality of the financial numbers (like a usual **audit**), but also the quality of managers' up-front forecasts. Knowing that such post audits will be held will strengthen the incentives of managers to give accurate forecasts to begin with.

C. Contingent Compensation If managers are rewarded more if the project succeeds and punished if the project fails, agency conflicts will become less important. For example, if you pay your managers only when their projects succeed (or throw them into jail when their project fails!), then managers will work harder and choose projects that they believe are more likely to succeed.

Of course, like any other mechanism to control agency problems, this control strategy has its costs, too. Managers have to feed their families and you may not be able to attract the best managers if you force them to take on so much risk. (The capital markets are probably better at taking risk than individual families!) And such managers may also be more reluctant to take good risks on behalf of the company—risks that they *should* take in the interest of shareholders—if they are themselves risk averse and compensated by outcome.

D. Reputation If managers can build a reputation for truth-telling and capable management, they are less likely to undertake bad projects. For example, agency concerns are likely to be a worse problem when it comes to secret one-shot projects, where your managers cannot build a track record that will help them with future projects. On the other hand, sometimes reputational considerations can themselves become the problem. Witness the many dysfunctional but beautifully artistic office buildings that are primarily monuments to some famous architectural firm.

The best "solution" is ample skepticism and common sense.

There is no obvious solution to these decision bias problems. Again, do not believe that just because we have spent only a few pages on agency issues that they are not important—they are both ubiquitous and very important in the real world. The website, http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book, has a full chapter on **corporate governance**, which is all about agency conflicts. As a manager or principal, you must be skeptical of all estimates and judgments and take the biases and incentives of each information provider into account.

Solve Now!

Q 7.8 *The CEO projects earnings of $100 million next year. List three reasons why this is not a good input into an NPV valuation.*

Q 7.9 *Describe common agency biases, and how they are likely to bias NPV calculations.*

ANECDOTE: Fiduciary Responsibility, or the Fox guarding the Hen House.
On Wednesday, December 29, 2004, The Wall Street Journal reported on page 1:

> In the biggest U.S. merger this year, J.P. Morgan Chase&Co. announced last January it would acquire Bank One Corp. To assure investors it was paying fair price, J.P. Morgan told them in a proxy filing it had obtained an opinion from one of "the top five financial advisors in the world."
>
> Itself.
>
> The in-house bankers at J.P. Morgan endorsed the $56.9 billion price—negotiated by their boss—as "fair."

Next to it was a sidebar called Passing Muster, which explained

> A 'fairness' opinion tells a company's board that a deal's terms are fair to shareholders.
>
> **Purpose:** Legal protection from an investor claim that a deal was done without due care.
>
> **Cost:** A few hundred thousand dollars to a few million.
>
> **Potential Conflicts**
>
> - Bankers may have incentives to call a deal fair because most of their advisory fee is paid only if deal closes.
> - Bankers' fee is tied to the deal price.
> - Bankers may support a deal where executives will personally profit, in hopes of securing future work.
> - Bankers use financial data supplied by client that wants deal to go through.
> - When deal maker is a bank, its own bankers often write the fairness opinion.

Remember that everyone—in-house bankers, management, and the corporate boards—are employed by the shareholders, to whom they owe fiduciary responsibility, and for whom they are supposed to look out for. It is a clear agency conflict for an employee to provide a fairness opinion. But it would also be difficult for management to have these in-house bankers fired for doing them a personal favor—another agency conflict.

And there is also the original agency conflict: the incentive of acquiring managers to pay too high a price or of target managers to accept too low a price. Here is how the WSJ story continues:

> But during the negotiations, Bank One Chief Jamie Dimon had suggested selling his bank for billions of dollars less if, among other conditions, he immediately became chief of the merged firm, according to a person familiar with the talks. That suggestion wasn't accepted by J.P. Morgan.

Obviously, Jamie Dimon did not offer to pay his own personal billions for the privilege of becoming CEO, but Bank One's shareholders' billions. Obviously, the J.P. Morgan management did not decline the billions on behalf of their own pockets, but on behalf of their J.P.M. shareholders.

Still, there are of course the corporate boards which could have fired either the in-house bankers or their management teams. Neither happened.

file=npvadvice.tex: LP

7·7. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Attribute to each project's NPV its influence on other projects, either positive or negative.
- Think about how you can take advantage of or create positive externalities among projects. If you cannot, there is no reason for these to be organized inside the same firm.
- Think "on the margin." Take all projects that contribute more marginal benefits than they create marginal costs.
- Consider economies of scale.
- Ignore sunk costs.
- Realize that real-world implementation problems—which range from differences in short-term marginal costs and long-term marginal costs, to political reasons and agency considerations inside corporations—often make taking the best set of projects difficult.
- Compare long-term projects in terms of their rental equivalents *if* these projects are easily repeatable.
- Use the *expected* cash flows, not the *most likely* cash flows in the NPV numerator.
- Take "strategic options" (or "real options") into account. This is the value of your ability to change course depending on future conditions. It includes your flexibility to delay or accelerate projects, and to expand or shut down projects.
- Realize that common human and agency biases usually distort expected cash flow estimates.
- Design your operations so as to reduce agency conflicts when it is marginally profitable to do so.

The problem is tough! We can only offer some help.

No doubt about it: good capital budgeting is a difficult problem. Each subsection covered in this chapter can easily be expanded into a full chapter or even a full book—and real options and corporate governance already have their own web chapters. There are pitfalls everywhere. To make your task a little easier, Appendix 2·1 contains an NPV checklist. In the end, though, capital budgeting is an art as much as a science and has to rely as much on common sense and intuition as on rules. The best analysis combines both.

file=npvadvice.tex: RP

Solutions and Exercises

1. The answer is yes, because it will cost the company $120,000 to move division DA. Moving saves $10,000/10%= $100,000 in division DA costs and $3,000/10%=$30,000 in division DB costs. The total savings are $130,000 which is $10,000 greater than the cost of the building.
2. The answer is no, because the press earns $2,000/0.10=$20,000. But the press costs $10,000 to purchase and eliminates $1,500/0.10=$15,000 of profits from the screw machines. So the total cost of the press, including the $15,000 in opportunity costs, is $25,000. The project's value is $\$20,000 - \$25,000 = -\$5,000$.
3. Yes. The PV of the division's profits will be $50,000/0.10=$500,000. The division costs are $210,000 for new equipment and $20,000 per year in increased overhead. The PV of the increased overhead is $20,000/0.10=$200,000. So the total PV cost of the new division is $\$210,000 + \$200,000 = \$410,000$, and the PV of the benefits equal $500,000.

4. (a)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV}(\text{Cost}) &= \$10,000 + \text{Annuity}(\$1,000, 18 \text{ years}, 12\%) \\ &= \$10,000 + \frac{\$1,000}{12\%} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+12\%)^{18}}\right] = \$17,249.67 \ . \\ \text{PV}(\text{Cost}) &= \$15,000 + \text{Annuity}(\$800, 22 \text{ years}, 12\%) \\ &= \$15,000 + \frac{\$1,000}{12\%} \cdot \left[1 - \frac{1}{(1+12\%)^{22}}\right] = \$21,115.72 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{7.12}$$

   (b) The equivalent rental values are

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Annuity}(x, 18 \text{ years}) &= \$17,249.67 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = \$2,379.37 \ . \\ \text{Annuity}(x, 22 \text{ years}) &= \$21,115.72 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = \$2,762.16 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{7.13}$$

   (c) The 18-year machine has the lower rental cost, so it is the better deal.

5. See Page 165.
6. Problems like this need to be solved "backwards." You can start in period 2 with a prevailing price of $0.45, $0.90, $1.80, $3.60, or $7.20; and your factory can be either open or closed. In this final period,
   - If the price is $0.90 or lower, you definitely want to close the factory, because $9,000 loss is better than $10,000 loss. If the factory is already closed, lucky you.
   - If the price is $1.80 or higher, you definitely want the factory to be open, because $80,000 profit fortunately outweighs all opening and closing costs. If the factory is already open, lucky you.

   Now consider what to do in year 1. If the price drops to $0.90, you have a decision to make: operate the factory for a year, hoping that the future will be better, or close the factory. Operating losses would be $10,000. Closing immediately would cost only $9,000. So, if you operate today, you incur an extra $1,000 loss. In exchange, there is a 10% chance that the price will go back up, in which case you got lucky. In this case, you will have saved $10,000 reopening costs. Thus, you are exactly indifferent between closing and operating if the price has dropped. (Of course, if the price is higher today, operating today is the correct choice.)
   The problem of determining optimal choices as a function of environmental variables can get incredibly complex very easily. Scenario analysis (or just plain real-world experience and intuition) is really the only analysis method. This goes beyond the scope of an introductory textbook.

7. See Page 175.

8. First, it is probably the most likely outcome, not the expected outcome. It is probably more likely that the firm goes bankrupt due to totally unforeseen circumstances than it is likely that the firm will have a windfall. Second, the CEO has an incentive to distort the truth, and report better projections than are most likely. This is an agency problem. And, third, the CEO is probably subject to mental biases, too.

9. See Page 176.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 8

OTHER IMPORTANT CAPITAL BUDGETING TOPICS

The Internal Rate of Return (IRR), Duration, and Other Capital Budgeting Rules

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:32h)

last major edit: Apr 2004, Dec 2004

The CFO survey in Chapter 1 mentioned a number of other popular capital budgeting rules (methods to decide among projects) other than NPV. Of course, even at their best, these measures can only be as good as NPV—we know that NPV, when correctly applied, yields the right answer.

Two of these alternative capital budgeting techniques often—but not always—yield the same correct answer, because they are really based on the same equation as NPV. They are the profitability index and the internal rate of return, abbreviated IRR. Chapter 1 mentioned that IRR is used as often as NPV. Actually, you have already seen it in another context, where it was called the yield-to-maturity (YTM). You can interpret IRR as a "sort of average rate of return" when a project has different cash flows at different times. You will encounter IRR many times in your career.

Unfortunately, there are also some incorrect capital budgeting rules that are in common use, first and foremost the payback rule mentioned in Chapter 1. You thus need to know what they are, and when and why they are bad.

file=irr.tex: LP

8·1. Profitability Index

How it is computed.

The first important alternative capital budgeting measure is the **profitability index**. It divides the present value of future cash flows by the project cost (the negative of the first cash flow). For example, if you have a project with cash flows

Time	0	1	2	3	PV 1 to 3
Project A Cash Flow	−$100	$70	$60	$50	$128.94

and the interest rate is 20% per annum, you would first compute the present value of future cash flows as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV} &= \frac{\$70}{1+20\%} + \frac{\$60}{(1+20\%)^2} + \frac{\$50}{(1+20\%)^3} \approx \$128.94 \\ &= \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{8.1}$$

The NPV is $28.94. The profitability index is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Profitability Index} &= \frac{\$128.94}{-(-\$100)} \approx 1.28 \quad . \\ \text{Profitability Index} &= \frac{\mathsf{PV}(\text{ Future Cash Flows })}{-\mathrm{CF}_0} \end{aligned} \tag{8.2}$$

A positive NPV project usually has a profitability index above 1—"usually" because the profitability index is meaningful only if the first cash flow is a cash outflow. When this is the case, you can use either NPV or the profitability index for a simple "accept/reject" decision: the statements "NPV > 0" and "Profitability Index > 1" are the same.

Here it does nicely.

Some managers like the fact that the profitability index gives information about relative performance and use of capital. For example,

Time	0	1	2	3	PV 1 to 3
Project B Cash Flow	−$10.00	$21.14	$18.12	$15.10	$38.94

has the same NPV of $28.94 as our original project, but a higher profitability index than 1.28 because it requires less capital upfront.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Profitability Index} &= \frac{\$38.94}{-(-\$10)} \approx 3.89 \quad . \\ \text{Profitability Index} &= \frac{\mathsf{PV}(\text{ Future Cash Flows })}{-\mathrm{CF}_0} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{8.3}$$

The reason is that two measures value the scale of the project differently. It is intuitively appealing that we would prefer the second project, even though it has the same NPV, because it requires less capital. It may even be less risky, but this can be deceiving, because we have not specified the risk of our future cash flows.

But here is where it can go wrong.

Unfortunately, the very same feature that we just considered as an advantage can also be a disadvantage. You cannot use the profitability index to choose among different projects. For example, assume that your first project returns twice as much in cash flow in all future periods, so it is clearly the better project now.

Time	0	1	2	3	$\mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_1, \mathrm{CF}_2, \mathrm{CF}_3)$
Project B Cash Flow	−$10	$21.14	$18.12	$15.10	$38.94
Project C Cash Flow	−$100	$140	$120	$100	$257.87

But the profitability index of project C is only

$$\text{Profitability Index} = \frac{\$257.87}{-(-\$100)} \approx 2.57 \quad . \tag{8.4}$$

which is below the 3.89 profitability index of project B. The reason is that, when compared to NPV, the profitability index *really* "likes" lower upfront investment projects. It can indicate higher index values even when the NPV is lower. So, you should really consider the profitability index to choose among projects only if the NPV of the two projects is equal (or at least very similar).

8·2. The Internal Rate of Return (IRR)

Why study IRR if we already know the correct answer?

The second important alternative to NPV is the **Internal Rate of Return**, often abbreviated as **IRR**. You already know it—it is the same measure as the yield-to-maturity (YTM) that we encountered in Section 4·6. It is important that you understand how to work it—and what its drawbacks are, because it is in wide use.

8·2.A. Definition

IMPORTANT: *The Internal Rate of Return is the quantity IRR, which, given a complete set of project cash flows, solves the NPV equation set to zero,*

$$0 = CF_0 + \frac{CF_1}{1+IRR} + \frac{CF_2}{(1+IRR)^2} + \frac{CF_3}{(1+IRR)^3} + \ldots \tag{8.5}$$

The IRR capital budgeting rule states that if a project's IRR is above its appropriate interest rate (cost of capital), it should be taken.

IRR generalizes returns!

For example, for a project with cash flows −\$100 and +\$130 today and next year, the IRR is obtained by solving

$$-\$100 + \frac{\$130}{1+\text{IRR}} = 0 \ . \tag{8.6}$$

Of course, this means that IRR is just the simple rate of return of 30%. In this sense, a simple rate of return is a special case of the more general IRR concept. But here is an example of IRR, where a simple return is not applicable. A project has cash flows −\$100, +\$55, and +\$60.50 in successive years. How can you characterize the "rate of return" (loosely speaking) embedded in its cash flows? You do so by finding the IRR,

$$-\$100 + \frac{\$55}{1+\text{IRR}} + \frac{\$60.50}{(1+\text{IRR})^2} = 0 \ . \tag{8.7}$$

For this particular set of cash flows, the solution is an internal rate of return of 10%, because

$$-\$100 + \frac{\$55}{1+10\%} + \frac{\$60.50}{(1+10\%)^2} = 0 \ . \tag{8.8}$$

If the project's appropriate cost of capital over all years is 9%, then the IRR capital budgeting rule states that the project should be accepted; if the cost of capital is 11%, it should be rejected. As with NPV, it is important with IRR that you know whether you are computing it based on expected or promised cash flows. If you want to use the IRR for capital budgeting, you must use expected cash flows. YTM is most often computed for promised cash flows—thus, it really should be called "quoted YTM" rather than just "YTM."

IRR is a characteristic of a project's cash flows. (It is not an interest rate.)

Even though the internal rate of return is quoted as a percentage and compared against an interest rate (the cost of capital or hurdle rate), the IRR itself is usually *not* an interest rate. Instead, IRR is a characteristic of a project's cash flow stream. A given cash flow stream directly implies an IRR. In fact, you can compute the IRR for a project, never having looked at financial markets, interest rates, or costs of capital. This is IRRs most important advantage over NPV: *it can be calculated before you know what the appropriate interest rate (cost of capital) is.* It thus

can give you useful project information in and of itself. It is also helpful in judging project profitability and thereby allows you to judge the performance of a manager—it may be easier to hold her to her earlier promise of delivering an IRR of 20% than it is to argue with her about what the appropriate cost of capital for her project would be. Armed with the IRR, you can then contact various capital providers to see if the project is worthwhile. This is especially useful if your project can be easily scaled but your cost of capital is increasing with your level of investment (markets are imperfect). In this case, NPV is somewhat cumbersome to use, but IRR makes it easy to help you determine an optimal scale for your investment.

IMPORTANT: *The IRR is best thought of as a characteristic of project cash flows. It is not a simple rate of return, even though it is often compared to a cost of capital (which is rate of return) when it is used for capital budgeting purposes.*

IRR is safe to use when there is only one positive or only one negative cash flow.

The IRR capital budgeting rule often yields the same (correct) decision as the NPV capital budgeting rule. IRR is guaranteed to work if

1. the first, up-front cash flow is a single negative number (an investment) followed only by positive cash flows (paybacks), or vice-versa.
2. the relevant yield curve for your cost of capital is uniformly above or below the IRR.

This is why IRR has survived as a common method for "capital budgeting": most projects have precisely such cash flow patterns—an upfront investment followed by future profits. Of course, you cannot do any better than doing right, so always using NPV is safer. It is just that if you use IRR *correctly* and in the right circumstances, it can often work equally well and sometimes gives you nice intuition.

Here is how to get the IRR.

You can find IRRs either by trial and error—as we did in Section 4·6—or you can use a common spreadsheet function, which does this in a relatively painless manner. For example, Table 8.1 shows how to obtain an IRR in a simple example—cell **A4** will become 0.13. (It may be painless for you, but finding IRR is actually not a trivial function. The spreadsheet must find the solution to a polynomial equation that is of an order equal to the number of periods.)

Table 8.1. IRR Calculation in Excel

	A	
1	-1000	
2	600	
3	600	
4	=IRR(A1:A3)	← will become 13%

file=irr.tex: RP

8·2.B. Problems with IRR

Unfortunately, like the profitability index, IRR does not always work. There are a number of problems that you may encounter.

1. **Project Comparisons and Scale** In fact, the IRR shares the first shortcoming with the profitability index. It can mislead when projects are exclusive alternatives. For example, would you prefer a project with a 100% IRR, or a project with a 10% IRR? Think about it.

   What if the first project is an investment opportunity of \$5 (returning \$10), and the second project is an investment opportunity of \$1,000 (returning \$100)? The latter is the better project, even though its IRR is worse.

2. **Direction** If a project starts with inflows and continues with outflows, it may be that a lower IRR is better than a higher IRR. For example, if you have one project that receives \$100 and has to pay \$105 next year, its IRR is 5%. If you have another project that receives \$100 and has to pay \$106, its IRR is 6%. Obviously, you would rather pay less in the future—but the IRR for the second project is higher.

3. **Multiple Solutions** When projects have both future positive and negative cash flows (there are often multiple and sometimes no solutions), all hell can break loose. For example, return to our earlier project from Section 2·4.B on Page 28, where our project cost \$900 today, yielded \$200/year for two years, then \$400/year for two years, and finally required a cleanup expense of \$100. There are at least two internal rates of return: $r = 8\%$ and $r = -79.6\%$ (round to -80%). Confirm this:

$$\begin{aligned} -\$900 + \frac{\$200}{1+8\%} + \frac{\$200}{(1+8\%)^2} + \frac{\$400}{(1+8\%)^3} + \frac{\$400}{(1+8\%)^4} + \frac{-\$100}{(1+8\%)^5} &\approx 0\,, \\ -\$900 + \frac{\$200}{1-80\%} + \frac{\$200}{(1-80\%)^2} + \frac{\$400}{(1-80\%)^3} + \frac{\$400}{(1-80\%)^4} + \frac{-\$100}{(1-80\%)^5} &\approx 0\,. \end{aligned} \tag{8.9}$$

   So, does this project yield an internal rate of return of 8% or an internal rate of return of -80%? The fact is that both IRRs are valid according to the definition. Should you accept the project if the prevailing interest rate is 5%? The answer is not obvious, and we need to go back to the NPV rule to learn that the correct answer is yes.

   What does Excel do if there are multiple IRRs? You will never know. Excel will just pick one for you.

   SIDE NOTE: There is also "modified IRR" (or MIRR) measure that can sometimes eliminate multiple solutions. It is not worth the bother. If you have alternating-sign cash flows, use NPV instead.

4. **No Solution** What is the proper IRR of a project that yields \$10 today and \$20 tomorrow, and never demands an investment? There is no IRR that makes it zero. Or a project that costs \$10 today and \$20 tomorrow, and never yields a positive cashflow? These projects have no economically sensible IRR solutions, though they are admittedly far-fetched. But neither does a project with cash flows -10, $+\$28$, and $-\$20$ in consecutive years, where the non-existence is not so obvious.

5. **Cost of Capital Comparison** When the term structure of interest rates is not flat (e.g., when the annualized two-year interest rate is different from the one-year interest rate), and the IRR lies between them, there is no rule as to which one to compare the IRR to. For example, the yield curve may have the 1-year interest rate at 10%, the 2-year interest rate at 9%, the 3-year interest rate at 8%, the 4-year interest rate at 7%, and the 5-year interest rate at 6%. Should you accept a 5-year project with an 8% IRR? After all, its project IRR is above its 5-year cost of capital (interest rate) but below the 1-year cost of capital. There is no clear answer.

These problems may seem obvious when highlighted in isolation. But in the context of complex real-world multiple project analysis, they are surprisingly often overlooked. Don't!

file=irr.tex: LP

Solve Now!

Q 8.1 *A project has cash flows of -$100, $55, and $70 in consecutive years. What is the IRR?*

Q 8.2 *From memory, write down the equation that defines IRR.*

Q 8.3 *Give an example of a problem that has multiple IRR solutions.*

Q 8.4 *Give an example of a problem that has no IRR solution.*

8·3. So Many Returns: The Internal Rate of Return, the Cost of Capital, the Hurdle Rate, and the Expected Rate of Return

Finance professors like to use terms interchangeably

It is time to recap four rates that are commonly used in finance: the **Internal Rate of Return**, the **Cost of Capital**, the **Expected Rates of Return** and the **Hurdle Rate**. The differences are sometimes subtle, and they are sometimes used interchangeably—which is okay in many, but not all, situations. So, here is a summary.

- **Internal Rate Of Return** The internal rate of return is a feature of cash flows, and has nothing to do with capital markets. It can be calculated before the appropriate cost of capital is known. It is the most different from the three rates below.
- **Cost of Capital** Always think of it as the *opportunity* cost of capital. It is also determined by the prevailing rates for loans of your type in capital markets. It is determined by demand and supply of capital in the economy—the expected rate of return that investors demand in order to give us money willingly. In perfect capital markets, with many lenders and borrowers, loans are usually zero net present value (or the borrower or lender is giving away free money). The cost of capital is sometimes called the "required expected rate of return."
- **Expected Rate of Return** The expected rate of return is a generic term. It could mean your project's expected rate of return, or the cost of capital (the lenders' expected rate of return). If your project's actual expected rate of return is above the required expected rate of return, it is a positive NPV project. If management makes smart decisions, projects' expected rates of return are above the cost of capital. The very last, marginal project often has an expected rate of return just above the cost of capital.
- **Hurdle Rate** The appropriate project hurdle rate is the expected rate of return above which management decides to accept and go forward with the project. It is set neither by the financial markets, nor by the project, but by management. Bad management could choose any arbitrary and even idiotic hurdle rates. Good management should accept all projects that have positive net present value.

  Usually, this means that good managers should set a project's hurdle rate to be equal to the project's cost of capital, and management should then determine whether the project's IRR exceeds this hurdle rate.

  If management makes smart decisions, taking all positive NPV projects, the "hurdle rate," "cost of capital," and "required expected rate of return" are all the same.

We already know that expected project returns are difficult to come by. Managers often incorrectly use promised rates of return. Because corporations are aware that claims based on expected project returns are regularly inflated (agency issues again!), many of them have established hurdle rates high above the firm's cost of capital. It is not uncommon to find project hurdle rates of 15% on claimed project rates of returns in corporations that face costs of capital on the order of 10%. Venture capitalists even regularly employ project hurdle rates as high as 30%!

file=irr.tex: RP

8·4. Other Capital Budgeting Rules

8·4.A. The Problems of Payback

Alternative Capital Budgeting Rules: Power!

Although most corporations in the real world rely on NPV and IRR, some follow a whole variety of different capital budgeting rules. In some corporations, power rules: the most influential employees get most new funding. In other corporations, even stranger historical methods for deciding whether to take projects have taken hold.

Alternative Capital Budgeting Rules: Payback!

One commonly used alternative rule is the **payback rule**. Projects are assumed to be better if they recover their original investment faster. For the most part, this is a stupid idea. Consider the following three projects:

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4
Project A	−$5	+$8		
Project B	−$5	+$4	$1,000	
Project C	−$5	+$4	$0	+$1 million

Project A has the shortest (best) payback period, but it is the worst of the three projects. Project B has the next shortest payback period, but it is the second-worst of the three projects (assuming reasonable interest rates). Project C has the longest (worst) payback period, but is the best project. (There is also a version of payback in which future paybacks are discounted. This measure asks not how long it takes you to get your money back, but how long it takes you to get the present value of your money back.)

Pluses and Minuses.

To be fair, payback can be an interesting number.

1. There is a beautiful simplicity to payback. It is easier for managers not trained in finance to understand "you will get your money back within 5 years" than it is to understand "the NPV is $50 million."
2. Payback's emphasis on earlier cash flows helps firms set criteria when there are agency problems inside the firm. For instance, if your department manager claims that you will get your money back within 1 year, and 3 years have already passed without your having seen a penny, then something is probably wrong and you may need a better manager.
3. Payback can also help if you have limited capital—an imperfect market situation—so that your cost of capital is very high and getting your money back in a short amount of time is paramount. In this sense, payback helps you assess your future "liquidity."
4. Finally, in many ordinary situations, in which the choice is a pretty clear-cut yes or no, the results of the payback rule do not lead to severe mistakes, but just to mild mistakes (as would, for example, a rule that ignores all time-value of money). If you have a project in which you get your money back within one year, chances are that it's not a bad one, even from an NPV perspective. If you have a project in which it takes 50 years to get your money back, chances are that it's not a good one.

Having said all this, if you use payback to make decisions, it will lead you to take the wrong projects and ruin your company. So, why take a chance when you know better capital budgeting methods? Feel free to work out the payback period and use it as "interesting side information," but do not base your project choices on it—and certainly don't compare projects merely on the basis of payback.

file=irr.tex: LP

8·4.B. More Rules

Accounting Based Measures.

There are an infinite number of other possible capital budgeting rules. A set of measures is based on accounting information (which we will cover next, so do not worry if the following makes little sense to you). For example, some firms choose projects based on the book rate of return—net income divided by the book value of equity. Some firms want to choose projects to maximize the book value of equity. Some firms want to choose projects to maximize reported earnings. As you will learn soon, all of these measures are based on complex accounting conventions, and not on economics. Therefore, I can only recommend against using them. I have no idea what kind of projects you will end up with if you use any of these measures—except that in many cases, if the measures are huge (e.g., if your accounting rate of return is 90% per annum), then chances are that the project is also positive NPV.

Sensible Measures.

A more sensible managerial practice is to think about what resources are constrained in the firm, given that we do not live in a perfect market. If the firm is highly levered and has difficulty borrowing more, then the contribution of the new project to the firm's leverage ratio would be an interesting measure. If the firm's management is already stretched thin, then measuring the managerial time required to run the project would be an interesting measure. If the firm is cash-constrained, then the payback time and cash outlay [e.g., the profitability index] would make interesting measures. Of course, all these issues should have already appropriately entered the cash flows that you use in your NPV calculations—but the fact is that this is often difficult to do or was entirely overlooked to begin with. Therefore, even though these measures should not be used as primary capital budgeting tools, you can use them to help you make informed trade-offs.

IMPORTANT: *Simple Advice: Stick to net present value and, if need be, to the internal rate of return. Do not use alternative capital budgeting rules for investment decisions. Use alternative measures to help you make decisions, but do not be mechanically driven by them.*

file=irr.tex: RP

8·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The profitability index rearranges the NPV equation. If used by itself, it often provides the same capital budgeting advice as NPV. But relative to NPV, the profitability index favors projects that have a lower upfront scale.
- The IRR (internal rate of return) is computed from a project's cash flows—and without the use of any cost-of-capital information. It solves the NPV formula to equal zero.
- IRR can be interpreted as a "sort of" average rate of return implicit in project cash flows.
- Projects with an IRR above the cost of capital often, but not always, have positive net present value (NPV), and vice-versa.
- IRR can suffer from serious computation problems, having multiple or no solutions. IRR suffers from comparison problems, because it does not adjust for project scale.
- In the context of bonds, IRR is called the "yield to maturity."
- The information that other capital budgeting measures provide can sometimes be "interesting." However, they often provide non-sensical results and therefore should generally be avoided—or at least consumed with great caution.

Solutions and Exercises

1. Using Excel, the answer pops out as 16%. Check: $-\$100 + \$55/1.16 + \$70/1.16^2 = 0$.
2. See equation 8.5 on Page 185.
3. For example, $-\$100, +\$120, -\$140, +\$160, -\$1$. (The solutions are −99.3716% and 16.796%. The important aspect is that your example has multiple inflows and multiple outflows.)
4. $-\$100$ at time 1, $-\$50$ at time 2. There are no economically sensible rates of return that can possibly make this a zero net present value.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

Part II

Corporate Financials

"It's not all bad. We still have enough cash for bribing the prison guards."

(A part of all versions of the book.)

Transition

You now know all the important capital budgeting concepts. The next issue on the agenda is to learn to apply them with the information that companies provide, which is rarely the cash flows that you need as direct inputs into your NPV analyses. So, the goal now is to teach you how to work with the information in corporate financial statements—and how to translate what you can find in financials into what you need for a net present value analysis. Our analysis primarily takes the perspective of the corporate manager, although outside analysts often also need to analyze corporate financials from the same perspective.

We will also try to use some of the information in the financials to perform a different type of valuation estimation, which is based on financials and relies on proper market valuation of comparable firms.

What we want to Accomplish in this Part

The goal of this part of the book is to teach the meaning and intelligent use of corporate financial statements.

- Chapter 9 shows how to extract economic cash flow estimates from corporate financial statements. We will build up some hypothetical firms to show what they would report in their financials. This will help you understand how to translate back from the financials to the firm.

  Typical question: What are the economic cash flows in PepsiCo's financial statements that we would use to estimate the net present value of PepsiCo?

- Chapter 10 shows how to assemble information about your own firm, using publicly available information from comparable firms.

  Typical questions: How do "comparables" differ from NPV? When is the P/E (price earnings) ratio a good number to look at? What should be the P/E ratio of our project? How and when can you average P/E ratios? What can you learn from other financial ratios?

CHAPTER 9

UNDERSTANDING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Translating Accounting into Finance (Economic Cash Flows)

last file change: Feb 18, 2006 (19:54h)

last major edit: Apr 2004, Dec 2004

Financial Accounting is the "language of business." Although this book is not about financial statements, you must understand both their logic and their fundamentals. They contain information about the cash flows we need for an NPV analysis, as well as a lot of other useful information. Without understanding accounting, you also cannot understand corporate income taxes, a necessary NPV input.

This chapter begins with a simple hypothetical project. Its economics make computing NPV easy. It then explains how accountants would describe the project in a financial statement. We then translate between the finance and the accounting descriptions. Finally, the chapter applies the same analysis to the financial statement of a real corporation, PepsiCo (PEP).

This chapter also gently introduces some more details on corporate income taxes and capital structure, which will be explained in greater detail in Chapter 22.

file=financials.tex: LP

9·1. Financial Statements

accounting also matters to finance.

We already know that the value of our firm is determined by its underlying projects. We already know that these projects have cash flows that we use in our NPV analyses. So, why should you bother with learning about what companies say in their financials? A rose is a rose is a rose, isn't it? The projects and thus the firm have the same value no matter what we report.

Yes and no. There are many good reasons why you should understand financial statements:

1. If you want to have an intelligent conversation with someone else about corporations, you must understand the language of accounting. In particular, you must understand what earnings are—and what they are not.

2. Subsidiaries and corporations report financial statements, designed by accountants for accountants. They rarely report the exact cash flows and cash flow projections that you need for PV discounting. How can you make good decisions which projects to take if you cannot understand most of the information that you will ever have at your disposal?

3. It may be all the information you will ever get. If you want to get a glimpse of the operation of a publicly traded corporation, or understand its economics better, then you must be able to read what the company is willing to tell you. If you want to acquire it, the corporate financials may be your primary source of information.

4. The IRS levies corporate income tax. This tax is computed from a tax-specific variant of the corporate income statement, which relies on the same accounting logic as the published financials. (The reported and tax statements are *not* the same!) Because income taxes are definite costs, you must be able to understand and construct financial statements that properly subtract taxes from the cash flows projected from projects when you want to compute NPV. And, if you do become a tax guru, you may even learn how to structure projects to minimize the tax obligations, although most of this is beyond the scope of our textbook.

5. Many contracts are written on the basis of financials. For example, a bond covenant may require the company to maintain a price-earnings ratio above 10. So, even if a change in accounting rules should not matter theoretically, such contracts can create an influence of the reported financials on your projects' cash flows.

6. There is no doubt that managers care about their financial statements. Managerial compensation is often linked to the numbers reported in the financial statements. Moreover, managers can also engage in many maneuvers to legally manipulate their earnings. For example, firms can often increase their reported earnings by changing their depreciation policies (explained below). Companies are also known to actively and expensively lobby the accounting standards boards. For example, in December 2004, the accounting standards board finally adopted a mandatory rule that companies will have to value employee stock options when they grant them. Until 2004, firms' financial statements could treat these option grants as if they were free. This rule was adopted despite extremely vigorous opposition by corporate lobbies, which was aimed at the accounting standards board and Congress. The reason is that although this new rule does not ask firms to change projects, it will drastically reduce the *reported* net income (earnings) especially of technology firms.

   But why would companies care about this? After all, investors can already determine that many high-tech firms (including the likes of Microsoft a few years ago) may have never had positive earnings if they had had to properly account for the value of all the stock options that they have given. This is a big question. Some behavioral finance researchers believe that the financial markets value companies as if they do not fully understand corporate financials. That is, not only do they share the common belief that firms manage their earnings, but they also believe that the market fails to see through even mechanical accounting computations. Naturally, the presumption that the financial markets cannot understand accounting is a very controversial hypothesis—and, if true, this can lead to all sorts of troublesome consequences.

file=financials.tex: RP

For example, if the market cannot understand financials, then managers can legally manipulate their share prices. A firm would especially benefit from a higher share price when it wants to sell more of its shares to the public. In this case, managers could and should maneuver their financials to increase their earnings just before the equity issue. There is good evidence that firms do this—and also that the financial markets are regularly disappointed by these firms' performances years after their equity issues.

Even more troublesome, there is also evidence that managers do not take some positive NPV projects, if these projects harm their earnings. Does this sound far-fetched? In fact, in a survey of 401 senior financial executives Graham, Harvey, and Rajgopal found that 55% would delay starting a project and 80% would defer maintenance and research spending in order to meet earnings targets. Starting projects and doing maintenance and R&D are presumably the right kind of (positive NPV) projects, so not taking them decreases the underlying real value of the firm—even though it may increase the financial image the firm projects.

It is of course impossible for this book about finance to explain all the nuances of accounting. Instead, we will focus on only one goal of importance to a financier: how do we obtain the cash flows that we need for an NPV analysis, and why can we not use earnings? Accounting has, of course, more to offer than just this—and fortunately you can learn more about its broader scope in your accounting course.

9·1.A. The Contents of Financials

Publicly traded companies report their **financial results** (or **financials**) in **financial reports** to their shareholders and to the public. The most important financial report is the **Annual Report**, which is filed with the SEC in Form **10-K**. (There is also a **Quarterly Report**, called **10-Q**.) Almost all Annual Reports begin with a general description of the business and business developments, followed by the more formal presentation of the firm's financials. We are interested primarily in the financials: after all, financiers are primarily interested in *how much* money the firm makes rather than *how* it makes it. However, as much as we would prefer to keep the firm a black box, we usually cannot: knowledge of "how money is made" is usually necessary for good knowledge of the "how much money is made"—and "how can we make more money."

Companies communicate their internals through standardized financial reports.

If you have not seen a company's Annual Report (which includes the financial statements), please spend some time reading one. Any business library should have a selection. Most large corporations also publish their financials on their websites. If you own shares of stock in a publicly traded company, the Annual Report will automatically be mailed to you once a year. And the SEC runs **EDGAR**, a very comprehensive electronic repository of corporate financials, including annual and quarterly reports.

Read some!

file=financials.tex: LP

Table 9.1. Consolidated Balance Sheet PepsiCo, Inc. and Subsidiaries
December 29, 2001 and December 30, 2000

(in millions except per share amounts)	2001	2000
ASSETS		
Current Assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 683	$ 1,038
Short-term investments, at cost	966	467
	1,649	1,505
Accounts and notes receivable, net	2,142	2,129
Inventories	1,310	1,192
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	752	791
Total Current Assets	5,853	5,617
Property, Plant and Equipment, net	6,876	6,558
Intangible Assets, net	4,841	4,714
Investments in Unconsolidated Affiliates	2,871	2,979
Other Assets	1,254	889
Total Assets	$21,695	$20,757
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current Liabilities		
Short-term borrowings	$ 354	$ 202
Accounts payable and other current liabilities	4,461	4,529
Income taxes payable	183	64
Total Current Liabilities	4,644	4,593
Long-Term Debt	2,651	3,009
Other Liabilities	3,876	3,960
Deferred Income Taxes	1,496	1,367
Preferred Stock, no par value	26	49
Deferred Compensation — preferred	-	(27)
Common Shareholders' Equity		
Common stock, par value 1 $^2/_3$ c per share (issued 1,782 and 2,029 shares, respectively)	30	34
Capital in excess of par value	13	375
Deferred compensation	-	(-21)
Retained earnings	11,519	16,510
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1,646)	(1,374)
Less: repurchased common stock, at cost (26 and 280 shares, respectively)	(1,268)	(7,920)
Total Common Shareholders' Equity	8,648	7,604
Total Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity	$21,695	$20,757

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

file=financials.tex: RP

Table 9.2. Consolidated Statement of Common Shareholders' Equity PepsiCo, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Fiscal years ended December 29, 2001, December 30, 2000 and December 25, 1999.

	2001		2000		1999	
(in millions)	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount
Common Stock						
Balance, beginning of year	2,029	$ 34	2,030	$ 34	2,037	34
Share repurchases	-	-	(9)	-	(13)	-
Stock option exercises	6	-	-	-	-	-
Quaker stock option exercises	3	-	8	-	6	-
Shares issued to effect merger	(256)	(4)	0	-	-	-
Balance, end of year	1,782	30	2,029	34	2,030	34
Capital in Excess of Par Value						
Balance, beginning of year		375		559		904
Share repurchases		-		(236)		(370)
Stock option exercises[(a)]		82		52		(21)
Reissued shares		150		-		-
Shares issued to effect merger		(595)		-		-
Other		1		-		46
Balance, end of year		13		375		559
Deferred Compensation						
Balance, beginning of year		(21)		(45)		(68)
Net activity		21		24		23
Balance, end of year		-		(21)		(45)
Retained Earnings						
Balance, beginning of year		16,510		14,921		13,356
Net income		2,662		2,543		2,505
Shares issued to effect merger		(6,644)		-		-
Cash dividends declared - common		(1,005)		(950)		(936)
Cash dividends declared - preferred		(4)		(4)		(4)
Balance, end of year		11,519		16,510		14,921
Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss						
Balance, beginning of year		(1,374)		(1,085)		(1,139)
Currency translation adjustment (CTA)		(218)		(289)		(136)
CTA reclassification adjustment		-		-		175
Cash flow hedges, net of tax:						
Cumulative effect of accounting change		3		-		-
Derivative (losses)/gains, net		(21)		-		-
Minimum pension liability adjustment, net of tax		(38)		(2)		17
Other		2		2		(2)
Balance, end of year		(1,646)		(1,374)		(1,085)
Repurchased Common Stock						
Balance, beginning of year	(280)	(7,920)	(271)	(7,306)	(255)	(6,535)
Shares repurchased	(35)	(1,716)	(38)	(1,430)	(36)	(1,285)
Stock option exercises	20	751	29	816	20	514
Reissued shares	13	374	-	-	-	–
Shares issued to effect merger	256	7,243	-	-	-	–
Balance, end of year	(26)	(1,268)	(280)	(7,920)	(271)	(7,306)
Total Common Shareholders' Equity		$ 8,648		$ 7,604		$ 7,078

(a) Includes total tax benefit of $212 in 2001, $177 in 2000 and $105 in 1999.
See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements. These include a closing stock price of $49.05/share, which indicates a market capitalization of $87.4 billion.

file=financials.tex: LP

Table 9.3. Consolidated Statement of Income PepsiCo, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Fiscal years ended December 29, 2001, December 30, 2000 and December 25, 1999.

(in millions except per share amounts)	2001	2000	1999
NET SALES			
New PepsiCo	$ 26,935	$25,479	$22,970
Bottling Operations	–	–	2,123
Total Net Sales	26,935	25,479	25,093
COSTS AND EXPENSES			
Cost of sales	10,754	10,226	10,326
Selling, general and administrative expenses	11,608	11,104	11,018
Amortization of intangible assets	165	147	193
Merger-related costs	356	–	–
Other impairment and restructuring charges	31	184	73
Total Costs and Expenses	22,914	21,661	21,610
OPERATING PROFIT			
New PepsiCo	$ 4,021	$3,818	$3,430
Bottling Operations	–	–	2,123
Total Operating Profit	$ 4,021	$3,818	$3,483
Bottling equity income and transaction gains/(loss), net	160	130	1,083
Interest expense	(219)	(272)	(421)
Interest income	67	85	130
INCOME BEFORE INCOME TAXES	4,029	3,761	4,275
PROVISION FOR INCOME TAXES	1,367	1,218	1,770
NET INCOME	$ 2,662	$ 2,543	$ 2,505
NET INCOME PER COMMON SHARE			
Basic	$ 1.51	$ 1.45	$ 1.41
Diluted	$ 1.47	$ 1.42	$ 1.38

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

file=financials.tex: RP

Table 9.4. Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows PepsiCo, Inc. and Subsidiaries
Fiscal years ended December 29, 2001, December 30, 2000 and December 25, 1999.

in millions

	52 Weeks Ending 12/29/01	53 Weeks Ending 12/30/00
Cash Flows - Operating Activities		
Net income	$ 2,662	$ 2,543
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities		
Bottling equity income, net	(160)	(130)
Depreciation and amortization	1,082	1,093
Merger-related costs	356	–
Other impairment and restructuring charges	31	184
Cash payments for merger-related costs and restructuring charges	(273)	(38)
Deferred income taxes	162	33
Deferred compensation - ESOP	48	36
Other noncash charges and credits, net	209	303
Changes in operating working capital, excluding effects of acquisitions and dispositions		
Accounts and Notes Receivables	7	(52)
Inventories	(75)	(51)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(6)	(35)
Accounts payable and other current liabilities	(236)	219
Income taxes payable	394	335
Net change in operating working capital	84	416
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	4,201	4,440
Cash Flows - Investing Activities		
Capital spending	(1,324)	(1,352)
Acquisitions and investments in unconsolidated affiliates	(432)	(98)
Sales of businesses	–	33
Sales of property, plant & equipment	–	57
Short-term investments. by original maturity		
More than three months – purchases	(2,537)	(4,950)
More than three months – payments	2,078	4,585
Three months or less, net	(41)	(9)
Other, net	(381)	(262)
Net Cash Used for Investing Activities	(2,637)	(1,996)

(Continued on the following page.)

(Continued from previous page.)

in millions

	52 Weeks Ending 12/29/01	53 Weeks Ending 12/30/00
Cash Flows - Financing Activities		
Proceeds from issuances of long-term debt	324	130
Payments of long-term debt	(573)	(879)
Short-term borrowings, by original maturity		
More than three months — proceeds	788	198
More than three months — payments	(483)	(155)
Three months or less, net — payments	(397)	1
Cash dividends paid	(994)	(949)
Share repurchases - common	(1,716)	(1,430)
Share repurchases - preferred	(10)	–
Quaker share repurchases	(5)	(254)
Proceeds from issuance of shares in connection with the Quaker merger	524	–
Proceeds from exercises of stock options	623	690
Net Cash Used for Financing Activities	(1,919)	(2,648)
Effect of Exchange Rate Changes on Cash and Cash Equivalents	–	(4)
Net (Decrease)/Increase in Cash and Cash Equivalents	(355)	(208)
Cash and Cash Equivalents - Beginning of year	1,038	1,246
Cash and Cash Equivalents - End of period	$ 683	$ 1,038
Supplemental Cash Flow Information		
Interest Paid	$ 159	$ 226
Income taxes paid	$ 857	$ 876
Acquisitions		
Fair value of assets acquired	$ 604	$ 80
Cash paid and debt issued	(432)	(98)
Liabilities Assumed	$ 172	$ (18)

file=financials.tex: RP

9·1.B. PepsiCo's 2001 Financials

The accounting view: balance sheet, income statement, and cash flow statement.

Tables 9.1–9.4 contain the four main financial statements that PepsiCo reported in its 2001 Annual Report. (The entire annual report is available at http://www.pepsico.com/investors/-annual-reports/2001/pepsico_financials2001.pdf.)

The balance sheet in Table 9.1 provides a snapshot of the firm's assets and liabilities at a fixed point in time. (It is a measure of "stock," not of "flow" over an interval.)

Some assets (like cash and inventories) are fairly liquid and short-term, and are therefore often called **current assets**. Other assets (like plants and brand reputation [an intangible asset]) are much harder to convert into cold, hard cash if we were to sell the firm, and thus are itemized separately.

As in finance, accounting forces the sum total of all assets to be owned by creditors and shareholders. And, as with assets, some creditors are owed money short-term. These are called **current liabilities**. Other debt is more long-term—and then there are obligations to our "friend," the IRS. The remainder—whatever assets are not accounted for by debt owed to creditors—is called equity. Therefore,

$$\text{Assets} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Shareholders' Equity} \ . \tag{9.1}$$

If all assets and liabilities were properly valued, this accounting **book value** of shareholders' equity would be the market value, too. However, accounting rules and difficulties in valuing assets and liabilities often render the book value of shareholders' equity into more of a "plug" number that serves to equalize assets and liabilities than into an intrinsically meaningful figure. You have been warned!

The owners' equity statement (or "shareholders' equity statement") in Table 9.2 explains the history of capital originally contributed to the firm, and earnings that were retained (not paid out). We will not use this statement.

The income statement in Table 9.3 reports the revenues and expenses of the company, resulting in earnings (also called net income) over the year. (Thus, it reports a measure of "flow," not of "stock.") Because it is hard to see the trees in so much forest, many financial services produce an abbreviated form thereof, which you can find in Table 9.13 (Page 228).

In the above three statements, accountants seek to "smooth out" temporary hiccups—which you will learn in a moment. It is only in the fourth statement that this is not attempted:

The cash flow statement in Table 9.4 reports the sources and uses of cash over the year. (It is a measure of "flow," not of "stock.") Again, an abbreviated version is in Table 9.14 (Page 229).

You should stare at these four statements for a while. But you can look as hard as you like, and you will not find an item entitled "cash flow for an NPV analysis." And the cash flows on the cash flow statement look nothing like the earnings, which is what the world seems to consider important?! Somehow, we must try to understand what this financials mean so that we can extract what we really need—a "cash flow for our NPV analysis"—from what we have: the four financial statements.

Financial reports follow accounting conventions.

We will be spending a lot of time explaining the income statement and cash flow statement, but the upshot will be that the cash flow statement comes closest to what we want. However, to understand why it is insufficient and where it comes from, we need to take a wider expedition into the logic of accounting (and specifically, of net income), which is different from the logic of finance (and specifically, NPV cash flows). So our next step is to learn how to read, interpret, and transform financial statements into the cash flows that an NPV analysis demands. You also need this expedition to have a better understanding of earnings and financial statements in general.

9·1.C. Why Finance and Accounting Think Differently

Earnings reflect future costs and benefits (in some sense).

Both accountants and financiers are interested in firm value. But the principal difference between them is that the accountants try to approximate changes in the current value of the firm, while the latter try to understand the exact timing of hard cash inflows and outflows over the entire future. The former want to learn about earnings, the latter want to learn about cash flows.

The difference between income and cash flows are accruals.

The main difference between these two concepts of income and cash flows are **accruals**: economic transactions that have delayed cash implications. For example, if I owe your firm $10,000 and have committed to paying you tomorrow, the accountant would record your current firm value to be $10,000 (perhaps time- and credit-risk adjusted). In contrast, the financier would consider this to be a zero cash-flow—until tomorrow, when the payment actually occurs. The contrast is that the accountant wants the financial statements to be a good representation of the economic value of the firm *today* (i.e., you already own the payment commitment), instead of a representation of the exact timing of inflows and outflows. The financier needs the timing of cash flows for the NPV analysis instead.

Financiers see actual cash flows: an expense spike, followed by years of no expenses.

Accruals can be classified into long-term accruals and short-term accruals. The primary **long-term accrual** is **depreciation**, which is the allocation of the cost of an asset over a period of time. For example, when a financier purchases a maintenance-free machine, he sees a machine that costs a lot of cash today, and produces cash flows in the future. If the machine needs to be replaced every 20 years, then the financier sees a sharp spike in cash outflows every 20 years, followed by no further expenditures (but hopefully many cash inflows).

Accountants smooth asset values over time.

The accountant, however, sees the machine as an asset that uses up a fraction of its value each year. So, an accountant would try to determine an amount by which the machine deteriorates in each year, and would only consider this prorated deterioration to be the annual outflow (called an **expense**). The purchase of a $1 million machine would therefore not be an earnings reduction of $1 million in the first year, followed by $0 in the remaining 19 years. Instead, it would be an expense of $50,000 in each of 20 years. (This is a very common method of depreciation and is called **straight-line depreciation**.)

Accountants use impairment schedules.

To complicate matters further, accountants often use different standardized depreciation schedules over which particular assets are depreciated. These are called impairment rules, and you already know the straight-line rule. Houses, for example, are commonly depreciated straight-line over 30 years—often regardless of whether the house is constructed of wood or brick. The predetermined value schedule is usually not accurate: For example, if investors have recently developed a taste for old buildings, it could be that a building's value has doubled since its construction, even though the financial statements might record this building to be worth nothing. (Even this is oversimplified. On occasion, accountants invoke procedures that allow them to reduce the value of an asset midway through its accounting life—but more often downward than upward.) Another common impairment rule is accelerated depreciation, which is especially important in a tax context. (But we are straying too far.)

There is some inconsistency when the machine has been fully depreciated.

If the machine happens to continue working after 20 years, the financials which have just treated the machine as a $50,000 expense in Year 20 will now treat it as a $0 expense in Year 21. It remains worth $0 because it cannot depreciate any further—it has already been fully depreciated. The financier sees no difference between Year 20 and Year 21, just as long as the machine continues to work.

For short-term accruals, such as receivables, accounting logic relies on predicted cash flows.

Short-term accruals come in a variety of guises. To a financier, what matters is the timing of cash coming in and cash going out. A sale for credit is not cash *until* the company has collected the cash. To the accountant, if the firm sells $100 worth of goods on credit, the $100 is booked as **revenue** (which flows immediately into **net income**), even though no money has yet arrived. In the accounting view, the sale has been made. To reflect the delay in payment, accountants increase the **accounts receivables** by $100. (Sometimes, firms simultaneously establish an allowance for estimated non-payments [bad debts].)

file=financials.tex: RP

Another short-term accrual is **corporate income tax**, which a financier considers to be an outflow only when it has to be paid—at least not until (the corporate equivalent of) April 15 of the following year. However, on the income statement, when a firm in the 40% corporate tax bracket makes $100 in profits, the income statement immediately subtracts the corporate income tax of $40 (which will eventually have to be paid on the $100 in profits) and therefore records net income of only $60. To reflect the fact that the full $100 cash is still around, $40 is recorded as **tax payables**.

The logic of finance relies on actual cash flows (or immediate values), only.

In sum, for a financier, the machine costs a lot of cash today (so it is an immediate negative), the accounts receivables are not yet cash inflows (so they are not yet positives), and the corporate income tax is not yet a cash outflow (so it is not yet a negative). For an accountant, the machine costs a prorated amount over a period of years, the accounts receivables are immediate positive earnings, and the corporate income tax is an immediate cost. There is definite sense in the approaches of both accounting and finance: the accounting approach is better in giving a snapshot impression of the firm's value; the finance approach is better in measuring the timing of the cash inflows and cash outflows for valuation purposes. Note that valuation leans much more heavily on the assumption that *all* future cash flows are fully considered. Today's cash flows alone would *not* usually make for a good snapshot of the firm's situation.

Both approaches have relevant advantages and disadvantages.

Solve Now!

Q 9.1 *What are the main differences between how accounting (net income) and finance (NPV cash flows) see projects?*

Q 9.2 *Why is a firm not just a firm and accounting numbers not just "funny money"? That is, what is the most important direct cash flow influence of accounting in most corporations?*

ANECDOTE: Trashy Accounting at Waste Management

On December 14, 1998, Waste Management settled a class action lawsuit by shareholders for $220 million, then the largest such settlement. (This will soon be dwarfed by the Enron, MCI WorldCom, and Arthur Andersen debacles.) The suit alleged that WMX had overstated its income by $1.32 billion over an 8-year period. From 1994 through 1997, about 47% of the company's reported income was fictitious.

One of WMX's dubious practices was that it had changed the accounting life of its waste containers from 12 years to 18 years. Therefore, each year, it subtracted less depreciation, which increased its reported earnings by $1.7 billion. Of course, managers were handsomely rewarded for their superior earnings performance.

file=financials.tex: LP

9·2. The Bottom-Up Example — Long-Term Accruals (Depreciation)

Rather than starting off trying to understand a creature as complex as the PepsiCo financials, our method is to start with a simple firm and construct hypothetical financials. We will then use our knowledge to reverse the procedure. At the end of this chapter, we will do the same to obtain NPV cash flows from the PepsiCo financials.

9·2.A. Doing Accounting

The hypothetical project to illustrate the accounting perspective and the finance perspective.

We want to understand how depreciation drives a wedge between income and cash flows. Start with a simple project for which we know the cash flows. Our firm is basically just one machine, described in Table 9.5.

Table 9.5. A Hypothetical Project

Project	
Real Physical Life	6 Years
Capital Expenditure	\$75, year 1
	\$75, year 2
Raw Output	\$70/year
− Input Costs (cash)	\$5/year
− Selling Costs (cash)	\$5/year
= Net Output	\$60/year
Overall Cost of Capital	12%/year
Corporate Tax Rate (τ)	40%/year

Available Financing — Executed	
Debt Capacity	\$50
Debt Interest Rate	10%/year
	(=\$5/year)

Accounting Treatment	
Project Life	3 Years

Note: This debt contract provides cash necessary in Year 1, and requires a first interest payment in year 2. Both principal and interest are repaid in Year 6.

Elaborate on the example.

With \$50 of debt at 10% interest, the firm's annual interest payments are \$5. The machine (and its tax depreciation schedule) is rather unusual: it has no maintenance costs; it requires capital expenditures in the second year; it produces fully even in year 1; and divine intelligence tells us that the machine will really last 6 years. But the IRS has decreed that depreciation of this particular machine occurs over 3 years. So, \$75 generates \$25 in depreciation, three years in a row, beginning in the year of the capital expenditure.

By assuming a lower interest rate of 10% on the debt than on the overall firm's cost of capital of 12%, we are in effect assuming that financial markets are risk-averse—as they truly are in the real world. Risk aversion is the subject of Part III.

Side Note: Sign Warning: You might think that a machine purchase of \$75 would be recorded as a Capital Expenditure of +\$75. Alas, the accounting convention is to record this as a negative number, i.e., −\$75. You are assumed to know that a negative expenditure is not a cash inflow, but a cash outflow. (But beware: capital expenditures is recorded as a positive asset on the balance sheet.)

Table 9.6. Income Statement and Excerpt of Cash Flow Statement of Hypothetical Machine

	Income Statement						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Sales (Revenues)	$70	$70	$70	$70	$70	$70
–	Cost of Goods Sold (COGS)	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
–	Selling, General & Administrative Expenses (SG&A)	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
=	EBITDA	$60	$60	$60	$60	$60	$60
–	Depreciation	$25	$50	$50	$25	$0	$0
=	EBIT (operating income)	$35	$10	$10	$35	$60	$60
–	Interest Expense	$0	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
=	EAIBT (or EBT)	$35	$5	$5	$30	$55	$55
–	Corporate Income Tax (at 40%)	$14	$2	$2	$12	$22	$22
=	Net Income	$21	$3	$3	$18	$33	$33

	Excerpts From the Cash Flow Statement						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Capital Expenditures	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-
	Net Debt Issue	+$50	-	-	-	-	–$50

Note: Though broken out in this sample income statement, parts of depreciation are often rolled into COGS or SG&A. It is always fully broken out (and thus can be obtained from) the cash flow statement.

Our project's income statement.

The income statement for our project is shown in Table 9.6. In going down the left-most column of any of these tables, you will notice that—as in finance—accounting has its own jargon. **COGS** abbreviates **cost of goods sold**; **SG&A** abbreviates **selling, general & administrative expenses**. These are expenditures that have to be subtracted from **sales** (or **revenues**) to arrive at **EBITDA**: **earnings before interest and taxes, depreciation, and amortization**. Next we subtract out depreciation, which is a subject that deserves the long sidenote below and that we will return to in a moment. Thus, we arrive at **operating income**, also called **EBIT** (**earnings before interest and taxes**). Finally, we take out interest expense at a rate of 10% per year and corporate income tax (which we can compute from the firm's tax rate of 40%) and arrive at plain **earnings**, also called **Net Income**. Net income is often called the "bottom line," because of where it appears.

Compare our project to PepsiCo.

Note the similarity of our project's income statement to PepsiCo's income statement from Table 9.3. PepsiCo's accountants prefer to put later years in columns to the left. In 2001, PepsiCo had $26,935 million in sales. COGS and SG&A added up to $\$10,754 + \$11,608 = \$22,362$ million. Therefore, EBITDA was $\$26,935 - \$22,362 = \$4,573$ million. Amortization subtracted $165 million. Other expenses amounted to $387 million, leaving us with EBIT of $\$4,573 - \$165 - \$356 - \$31 = \$4,021$ million. In PepsiCo's case, the combination of bottling equity income and transaction gains, interest expenses, and interest income was determined to be its net interest income of $8 million. Uncle Sam demanded $1,367 million, leaving shareholders with net income of $2,662.

file=financials.tex: LP

SIDE NOTE: The depreciation that we need to add back for our NPV analysis is the $1,082 million on the cash flow statement, not the $165 million amortization that PepsiCo reports on its income statement. The reason is that PepsiCo lumped most but not all depreciation into SG&A. Amortization omits depreciation of non-physical plant assets. For clarity, I have added one line in Table 9.13, which breaks out the depreciation from selling, general & administrative expenses. Edgarscan also reported net interest income/expense of $8, which we therefore added to the table.

Non-Cash Items contain M&A costs of $356 from PepsiCo's acquisition of Quaker Oats in August 2001. Note that financials are often **restated**, i.e., changed ex-post to reflect the acquisition of other businesses. This particular procedure is called **pooling**. The idea is to report financials *as if* the two companies had always been conjoined.

Yes, PepsiCo has a few extra items, and changes some of the names around, but the broad similarity should be apparent.

There is one extra piece of information that we need to record—elsewhere. Depreciation smoothes capital expenditures.

We have used almost all the information of our project. The two exceptions are the capital expenditures and the net debt issue. They do not go onto the income statement. Instead, they are reported on the cash flow statement (also in Table 9.6). In this case, capital expenditures are $75 in Year 1 and $75 in Year 2, followed by $0 in all subsequent years. Net debt issuing is $50 in Year 1, and the debt principal repayment of $50 occurs in Year 6. (For PepsiCo, in Table 9.3, you can find the equivalent items as "capital spending" under Investing Activities and as proceeds from issuances of long-term debt and payments of long-term debt under Financing Activities). This is not to say that capital expenditures and debt play no role in the income statement—they do, but not one-to-one. For example, capital expenditures reduce net income (in the income statement) only slowly through depreciation. In the first year, the first $25 depreciation from the $75 capital expenditures are accounted for; in the second year, the second $25 depreciation from the first $75 capital expenditures are accounted for, plus the first $25 depreciation from the second $75 capital expenditures are accounted for; and so on.

SIDE NOTE:

- **Depreciation**, **depletion**, and **amortization** are all "allocated expenses" and not actual cash outflows. The difference in names derives from the asset types to which they apply. Depreciation applies to **Tangible Assets**, such as plants. Depletion applies to **Natural Resources**. Amortization applies to **Intangible Assets**. Because depreciation, depletion, and amortization are really all the same thing, they are often just lumped together under the catch-all phrase "depreciation," a convention that we follow in this chapter.
- For tutorial purposes, our example commits an accounting error. Corporations have no consistent treatment of depreciation on the income statement: some depreciation is typically rolled into cost of goods sold (such as depreciation on manufacturing equipment; thus our machine's depreciation would usually be reported as part of cost of goods sold). Other depreciation may be rolled into selling, general & administrative expenses, and yet other depreciation may be broken out. Therefore, the only complete picture of depreciation can be found on the cash flow statement, where the sum-total of all forms of depreciation is added back to net income.
- The rules for publicly reported financial statements are called **GAAP** (Generally Accepted Accounting Principles) and change rarely. They are set by a number of policy makers, most prominently **FASB** (the Financial Accounting Standards Board). For public reporting purposes, firms are supposed to seek to match true depreciation to reported depreciation.

- Although the IRS financial statements follow the same logic as the public financials, the statements themselves are not the same. The IRS rules change often and are set by Congress. (Even states can have their own rules.) The difference is particularly pronounced when it comes to depreciation schedules. Tax depreciation rules are set by the IRS, and they often apply strict mechanical schedules, regardless of the true asset life. Consequently, there are many companies that report positive earnings to their shareholders, and negative earnings to the IRS.
- In some countries, the financial and tax statements of public companies are identical. In the author's opinion, this is not a bad idea. In the United States, the public debate is how to get companies not to be aggressive in reporting financial earnings (on which executive compensation is often based!). If companies had to release their tax statements to the public, aggressive earnings manipulation would become not only more difficult, but also more costly.
- To compute corporate income tax, our chapter should have used not the depreciation on the firm's reported financial statements, but the depreciation on the firm's unreported *tax* statements. We commit this error to facilitate the exposition.
- There is a small timing difference between interest expense and when interest is actually paid. This is usually about 1 month in timing. The value impact of this difference is small, so we shall ignore it, and just use interest expense as if it were immediately paid.

(These are very important account details—even if they are not particularly exciting.)

9·2.B. Doing Finance

Now, forget accounting for a moment, and instead let us value the machine from an underlying finance perspective. The firm consists of three components: the machine itself, the tax obligation, and the loan.

The finance perspective focuses only on adding actual cash inflows and cash outflows. Note difference between full and levered ownership.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV Project} &= \text{NPV Machine} - \text{NPV Taxes} \quad , \\ \text{NPV Levered Ownership} &= \text{NPV Machine} - \text{NPV Taxes} + \text{NPV Loan} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.2}$$

Full project ownership is equivalent to holding both the debt (including all liabilities) and equity, and earning the cash flows due to both creditors and shareholders. Levered equity ownership adds the project "loan" to the package. As full project owner (debt plus equity), in the first year, you must originally supply \$50 more in capital than if you are just a levered equity owner, but in subsequent years, the interest and principal payments are not negatives for you. (For convenience, we ignore intra-year payment timing complications.)

We first work out the actual cash flows of the first component, the machine itself. Without taxes and loan, the machine produces

Let us look at the first component of the firm—the machine's actual cash flows, without taxes and loan.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV}_{\text{Machine}} &= \frac{\$60-\$75}{(1+12\%)^1} + \frac{\$60-\$75}{(1+12\%)^2} + \frac{\$60}{(1+12\%)^3} \\ &\quad + \frac{\$60}{(1+12\%)^4} + \frac{\$60}{(1+12\%)^5} + \frac{\$60}{(1+12\%)^6} = \$119.93 \\ \text{NPV}_{\text{Machine},t=0} &= \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\text{CF}_1}{1+r_{0,1}} + \frac{\text{CF}_2}{1+r_{0,2}} + \frac{\text{CF}_3}{1+r_{0,3}} \\ &\quad + \frac{\text{CF}_4}{1+r_{0,4}} + \frac{\text{CF}_5}{1+r_{0,5}} + \frac{\text{CF}_6}{1+r_{0,6}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.3}$$

Unfortunately, corporate income tax—the second component—is an actual cost which cannot be ignored. Looking at Table 9.6, we see that Uncle Sam collects \$14 in the first year, then \$2 twice, then \$12, and finally \$22 twice.

The tax obligation is a negative NPV project, which must be calculated and then valued.

To value the future tax obligations, we need to know the appropriate discount factor. Unfortunately, we need to delay this issue until Section a (Page 576). It is both convenient and customary (if not exactly correct) to use the firm's overall cost of capital as the discount rate for its tax obligations.

Assume that the stream of tax obligations has the same discount rate (12%) as that for the overall firm. With this cost-of-capital assumption, the net present cost of the tax liability is

Value the tax liability, and determine the project NPV.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV}_{\text{Tax Liability}} &= \frac{\$14}{(1+12\%)^1} + \frac{\$2}{(1+12\%)^2} + \frac{\$2}{(1+12\%)^3} \\ &\quad + \frac{\$12}{(1+12\%)^4} + \frac{\$22}{(1+12\%)^5} + \frac{\$22}{(1+12\%)^6} = \$46.77 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.4}$$

Put together,

$$\text{NPV Project} = \text{NPV Machine} - \text{NPV Taxes} = \$119.93 - \$46.77 = \$73.16 \quad . \tag{9.5}$$

Now consider the third component—the loan. Assume that we play not the "full project owner," but only the "residual levered equity owner," so we do not extend the loan ourselves. Instead, a perfect capital market extends us a loan. We can assume that our company "got what it paid for," a fair deal: the loan, which provides \$50 and pays interest at a rate of 10%, should be zero NPV. (This saves us the effort to compute the NPV of the loan!)

The loan usually is a "Zero NPV" project, unless you can get an unusually great deal or unusually bad deal on the loan.

$$\text{NPV}_{\text{Loan}} = \$0 \quad . \tag{9.6}$$

Table 9.7. Cash Flows and Net Income Summary

	Year 1	2	3	4	5	6	Discount Rate	NPV
CF Machine w/o Tax	-$15	-$15	+$60	+$60	+$60	+$60	12%	$119.93
CF Uncle Sam	-$14	-$2	-$2	-$12	-$22	-$22	12%	-$46.77
CF **Project**	-$29	-$17	+$58	+$48	+$38	+$38	12%	$73.16
CF Loan	+$50	-$5	-$5	-$5	-$5	-$55	10%	$0.00
Residual CF: **Levered Ownership**	+$21	-$22	+$53	+$43	+$33	-$17	?	$73.16
For comparison, Net Income	$21	$3	$3	$18	$33	$33	n/a	n/a

Note: The cost of capital (expected rate of return) is higher in this example for the machine than it is for the loan. This will be explained when we discuss the role of risk-aversion, when the safer loan will command a lower cost of capital than the riskier machine.

Be my guest, though, and make the effort:

$$\text{NPV}_{\text{Loan}} = \frac{+\$50}{1.10^1} + \frac{-\$5}{1.10^2} + \frac{-\$5}{1.10^3} + \frac{-\$5}{1.10^4} + \frac{-\$5}{1.10^5} + \frac{(-\$50)+(-\$5)}{1.10^6} = \$0 \ . \tag{9.7}$$

Therefore, the project NPV with the loan, i.e., levered equity ownership, is the same as the project NPV without the loan. This makes sense: we are not generating or destroying any value by walking over to the bank. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV Levered Ownership} &= \text{NPV Machine} - \text{NPV Taxes} + \text{NPV Loan} \\ &= \$119.93 - \$46.77 + \$0 = \$73.16 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{9.8}$$

Although the NPV remains the same, the cash flows to levered equity ownership are different from the cash flows to the project. The cash flows (and net income) are shown in Table 9.7. Note how different the cash flows and net income are. Net Income is highest in Years 5 and 6, but levered cash flow in Year 6 is negative. In contrast, in Year 3, the year with the highest levered cash flow, net income is lowest.

9·2.C. Translating Accounting into Finance

Discounting the Net Income does not give the true project NPV.

If you did not know about the details of this machine but saw only the financials, could you compute the correct firm value by discounting the net income? Discounting net income with a cost of capital of 12% would yield

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Incorrect NPV}_{\text{via Net Income}} &= \frac{\$21}{(1+12\%)^1} + \frac{\$3}{(1+12\%)^2} + \frac{\$3}{(1+12\%)^3} \\ &+ \frac{\$18}{(1+12\%)^4} + \frac{\$33}{(1+12\%)^5} + \frac{\$33}{(1+12\%)^6} = \$70.16 \ , \end{aligned} \tag{9.9}$$

which is definitely not the correct answer of $73.16. Neither would it be correct to discount the net income with a cost of capital of 10%,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Incorrect NPV}_{\text{via Net Income}} &= \frac{\$21}{(1+10\%)^1} + \frac{\$3}{(1+10\%)^2} + \frac{\$3}{(1+10\%)^3} \\ &+ \frac{\$18}{(1+10\%)^4} + \frac{\$33}{(1+10\%)^5} + \frac{\$33}{(1+10\%)^6} = \$75.24 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{9.10}$$

So, how do you reverse-engineer the correct cash flows for the NPV analysis from the financials? You first need to translate the financials back into the cash flows that NPV analysis can use. You just need to retrace our steps. You have both the income statement and cash flow statement at your disposal. First, to obtain the machine cash flow, you can apply the formula

Cash flows can be reverse engineered from the corporate financials.

		Year 1	Year 2
	EBIT	+$35	+$10
+	Depreciation	+$25	+$50
"+"	(−)Capital Expenditures	+(−$75)	+(−$75)
=	CF Project, Pre-Tax	−$15	−$15

(9.11)

to the numbers from Table 9.6. You add back the depreciation, because it *was not* an actual cash outflow; and you subtract the capital expenditures, because it *was* an actual cash flow. I find the formula most intuitive if I think of the depreciation + capital expenditures terms as undoing the accountants' smoothing of the cost of machines over multiple periods.

IMPORTANT: *The main operation to take care of long-term accruals in the conversion from net income into cash flows is to undo the smoothing—add back the depreciation and take out the capital expense.*

SIDE NOTE: The formula signs themselves seem ambiguous, because accountants use different sign conventions in different spots. For example, because capital expenditures are usually quoted as negative terms on the cash flow statement, in order to subtract out capital expenditures, you just add the (negative) number. In the formula below, you want to subtract corporate income tax, which appears on the income statement (Table 9.6) as a positive. Therefore, you have to subtract the positive. Sigh... I try to clarify the meaning (and to warn you) with the quotes around the +, and the cumbersome " +″ (−) in the formulas themselves.

Now you need to subtract corporate income taxes (and, again, look at the numbers themselves to clarify the signs in your mind; income-tax is sometimes quoted as a negative, sometimes as a positive). This gives you the after-tax project cash flow,

Finish the reverse-engineering.

		Year 1	Year 2
	EBIT	+$35	+$10
+	Depreciation	+$25	+$50
"+"	(−)Capital Expenditures	+(−$75)	+(−$75)
−	(+)Corporate Income Tax	−(+$14)	−(+$2)
=	CF Project, After-tax	−$29	−$17

(9.12)

Net Income already has corporate income tax subtracted out, but it also has interest expense subtracted out. So, the same cash flow results if you start with net income instead of EBIT, but add back the interest expense,

		Year 1	Year 2
	Net Income	+$21	+$3
+	Depreciation	+$25	+$50
"+"	(−)Capital Expenditures	+(−$75)	+(−$75)
+	Interest Expense (*add* back to Net Income)	$0	+(+$5)
=	CF Project, After-tax	−$29	−$17

(9.13)

file=financials.tex: LP

Cash flow to levered equity holders.

Investors (equity and debt together) must thus come up with \$29 in the first year and \$17 in the second year. What part of this is provided by creditors? In the first year, creditors provide \$50; in the second year, creditors get back \$5. Therefore, levered equity actually receives a positive net cash flow of \$21 in the first year, and a negative cash flow of \$22 in the second year. Therefore, with the loan financed from the outside, you must add all loan inflows (principal proceeds) and subtract all loan outflows (both principal and interest). Therefore, the cash flow for levered equity shareholders is

		Year 1	Year 2
	EBIT	+\$35	+\$10
+	Depreciation	+\$25	+\$50
"+"	(−)Capital Expenditures	+(−\$75)	+(−\$75)
−	Corporate Income Tax	−(+\$14)	−(+\$2)
=	CF Project	−\$29	−\$17
+	Net Debt Issue	+\$50	\$0
−	Interest Expense	\$0	−\$5
=	CF Levered Equity Ownership	+\$21	−\$22

(9.14)

Again, net income already has both corporate income tax and interest expense subtracted out, so again the same result obtains if you instead use the formula

		Year 1	Year 2
	Net Income	+\$21	+\$3
+	Depreciation	+\$25	+\$50
"+"	(−)Capital Expenditures	+(−\$75)	+(−\$75)
+	Net Debt Issue	+\$50	\$0
=	CF Levered Equity Ownership	+\$21	−\$22

(9.15)

Although you could now repeat the calculation for PepsiCo, hold your horses—we will do so only after we have covered other issues.

Solve Now!

Q 9.3 *Show that the formulas 9.11–9.15 yield the cash flows in Table 9.7*

Q 9.4 *Using the same cash flows as in the NPV analysis in Table 9.7, how would the project NPV change if you used a 10% cost of capital (instead of 12%) on the tax liability?*

Q 9.5 *Rework the example (income statement, cash flow statement excerpts, cash flows, and NPV) with the following parameters.*

ANECDOTE: Solid Financial Analysis

EBITDA was all the rage among consultants and Wall Street for many years, because it seems both closer to cash flows than EBIT and more impervious to managerial earnings manipulation through accruals. Sadly, discounting EBITDA can be worse than discounting EBIT *if* capital expenditures are not netted out—and they usually are not netted out. (Forgetting about capital expenditures when depreciation is not netted out is equivalent to assuming that product falls like manna from heaven. EBIT may spread capital expenditures over time periods in a strange way, but at least it does not totally forget it!) Sometimes, a little bit of knowledge is more dangerous than no knowledge.

In June 2003, a Bear Stearns analyst valued American Italian Pasta, a small N.Y.S.E.-listed pasta maker. Unfortunately, Herb Greenberg from TheStreet.com discovered that he forgot to subtract capital expenditures. This mistake had increased the value of American Italian Pasta from \$19 to \$58.49 (then trading at \$43.65). Bear Stearns admitted the mistake, and came up with a new valuation, in which Bear Stern's boosted the estimate of the company's operating cash flows and dropped its estimate of the cost of capital. Presto! The NPV of this company was suddenly \$68 per share. How fortunate that Bear Stearns' estimates are so robust to basic errors. Incidentally, American Italian Pasta traded at \$30 in mid-2004, just above \$20 by the end of 2004, and at around \$10 by the end of 2005.

Project	
True Lifespan	5 Years
Cost	$120, year 1
Raw Output	$80/year
− Input Costs	$6/year
− Selling Expense	$8/year
= Net Output	$66/year
Overall Cost of Capital	8%/year
Corporate Tax Rate (τ)	50%

Available Financing — Executed	
Debt Capacity	$100
Debt Interest Rate	8%/year

Accounting Treatment	
Accounting Life	4 Years

Debt does not require interest payment in Year 1. The world is risk-neutral, because debt and project require the same expected rate of return (cost of capital).

Q 9.6 *For the example in the text, do both the financials and the cash flow analysis using monthly discounting. Assume that the loan is taken at year start, and most expenses and income occur pro-rata. (Warning: Time-Intensive Question. Use Excel. Do not do by hand!)*

9·3. The Hypothetical Bottom-Up Example — Short-Term Accruals

You now know how to translate some of the financials into more NPV-relevant cash flows. But you can still improve the accuracy of your cash flow formula by also adjusting for short-term accruals.

Here are other items that require cash (inflows or outflows), which have not appeared in this simple example.

9·3.A. Working Capital

To run a business day-to-day requires cash. Firms must put money into cash registers (to make change), into inventories (to have something to sell), and into extending credit to buyers (to get them to bite). This is called **working capital**. Accountants define working capital as current assets minus current liabilities. Current Assets are **cash**, **accounts receivables**, and **inventories**. Current Liabilities are **accounts payables**, **bank overdrafts**, **tax payables**, and other soon-due bills.

The definition of working capital.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Working Capital} &= (\text{Current Assets}) - (\text{Current Liabilities}) \\ &= (\text{Cash} + \text{Accounts Receivables} + \text{Inventories}) - (\text{Accounts Payables}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{9.16}$$

The cash flow effects of working capital changes are best explained with an example. Say that a firm sells $100 of goods on credit. The firm books $100 as net income. But because the $100 is not yet available, the firm also books $100 into accounts receivables. To compute actual cash flows, recognize that the cash has not yet materialized: we need to subtract out the $100 accounts receivables from the $100 net income.

Net Income books cash before it comes in, so accounts receivables need to be taken out.

This becomes more interesting if you consider multiple years. For example, the firm in Table 9.8 always sells on credit and is always paid by its customers the following year. An NPV analysis requires the firm's actual cash receipts in Line 2, but accountants have provided only the information in lines 3 and 4. How do you get back the information in Line 2? Year 1 has already been discussed: you subtracted accounts receivables from net income to obtain the actual cash inflows of $0. Year 2 is more interesting: The firm previously had accounts receivables of $100, but now has accounts receivables of $300. It is the +$200 *change* in accounts receivables (= $300 − $100) that needs to be subtracted from the $300 in net income in order to infer the actual cash receipts of $100. In Year 3, the firm no longer grows and is liquidated, so the remaining receivables turn into cash that can be recaptured from the business. Again, the formula to obtain the NPV cash flow (Line 2) subtracts the change in working capital (accounts

The difference between cash flows and Net Income are year-to-year changes in working capital.

Table 9.8. Multi-Year Working Capital

	Year	0	1	2	3
Finance	1. Sales and Net Income	$0	$100	$300	$0
	2. Actual Cash Receipts (for NPV CF)	$0	$0	$100	$300
Accntng	3. Reported Net Income	$0	$100	$300	$0
	4. Reported accounts receivables	$0	$100	$300	$0

receivables) of $\$0 - \$300 = -\$300$ from the $0 net income to conclude that we got +$300 cash inflow. Table 9.9 shows these calculations. (Incidentally, recall how you started this subsection with a Year 1 computation: you subtracted $100 in accounts receivables from the $100 net income. This worked only because the accounts receivables were the same as the *change* in accounts receivables, because the original accounts receivables were zero.)

Table 9.9. Multi-Year Working Capital

	Year	0	1	2	3
Finance	1. Sales and Net Income	$0	$100	$300	$0
	2. Actual Cash Receipts (for NPV CF)	$0	$0	$100	$300
Accntng	3. Reported Net Income	$0	$100	$300	$0
	4. Reported accounts receivables	$0	$100	$300	$0
	Your Computations				
	5. Change in accounts receivables	*$0*	*+$100*	*+$200*	*-$300*
	6. Net Income (Line 3) - Change in accounts receivables (Line 5)	*$0*	*$0*	*+$100*	*+$300*

Line 6 recovers Line 2 from the financials.

Working Capital already contains other delayed payments, making our life easier.

Other short-term accruals that are components of working capital work similarly. For example, although corporate income tax is deducted on the income statement for the year in which the earnings have occurred, firms do not have to immediately pay these taxes. Instead, they can often defer them—at least until (the corporate equivalent of) April 15 of the following year. To the extent that more taxes can be delayed, more cash is available than is suggested by net income. Therefore, delayed taxes must be added back to net income when computing finance cash flows. Of course, at some point in the future, these tax payables will have to be paid, and they will then have to be counted as a cash outflow of the firm. But, for now, the permitted delay in payment is like a government loan at zero interest—and one that the accounting item net income ignores.

IMPORTANT: *The main operation to take care of short-term accruals in the conversion from net income into cash flows is to undo the smoothing—add changes in working capital.*

SIDE NOTE: Alas, as with capital expenditures (see Page 208), the cash flow statement has its sign conventions. The change in cash, accounts receivables, and inventories is recorded as a negative. But accounts payables do not have the opposite sign from accounts receivables, though they are already an outflow (negative); they are left as is. As a result, to compute the firm's working capital from its line items (accounts receivables, accounts payables, etc.), you do not subtract current liabilities (e.g., accounts payables) from current assets (e.g., accounts receivables), but add them together.

Here is an example of the accounting sign conventions. Table 9.4 on Page 203 listed PepsiCo's changes in working capital as 84, 416, and 79 for the years 2001, 2000, and 1999:

Cash Flow Statement	December		
	2001	2000	1999
Current Assets			
Accounts Receivables	+7	–52	–141
Inventories	–75	–51	–202
Prepaid Expenses, etc.	–6	–35	–209
Current Liabilities			
Accounts Payables, etc.	–236	+219	+357
Corporate Income Tax, Payable	+394	+335	+274
Net Change in Operating working capital	+84	+416	+79

Excludes effects of acquisitions and dispositions.

Because these figures come from the cash flow statement, to obtain the net change in operating working capital, all figures are simply added up, not netted out! (The sign of current liabilities has already been reversed for you.) If you stumble onto the fact that these numbers cannot be inferred from other parts of the financial statements, this is because these numbers exclude the effects of acquisitions and dispositions, as well as non-operating working capital.

Where are changes in cash [in the register] itself? These are not in the changes of working capital, but instead they are what you find at the very bottom of the cash flow statement.

We can now expand our formulas to include changes in working capital. For example, Formula 9.12 transmutes into

Expand our valuation formula for another source of cash.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NPV Project} = \quad & \text{EBIT} + \text{Depreciation} \quad \text{“+”} \quad \text{Capital Expenditures} \\ & - \text{Corporate Income Tax} - \text{Increase in Working Capital} \ .\end{aligned} \tag{9.17}$$

ANECDOTE: Working Capital Management
Entrepreneurs usually fail for one of two reasons, and both are common: The first is that the business is just not a good idea to begin with. There is not much you can do about this. The second is that the business is too good of an idea, and the entrepreneur is not equipped to handle the success. The growth in sales consumes so much cash for increases in working capital that the firm fails to pay back its own loans: The cash is tied up in production, or in inventory, or in credit extended to customers (payment to be received), when instead it is needed to flow back to the bank. For growing firms, proper working capital management is an issue of first-order importance.

9·3.B. Earnings Management

There is considerable leeway in financials.

Even though the United States has the tightest accounting regulations of any country, managers still have a lot of discretion when it comes to financials. There is also no clear line where accounting judgments become unethical or even criminal. The border zone between ethical and unethical behavior is a ramp of gray—it may be easy when one is in the clean white zone or in the clean black zone, but in between, it is often a slippery slope.

Not only earnings, but also cash flows can be managed.

We already know that managers must make many judgments when it comes to accrual accounting. For example, managers can judge overoptimistically how many products customers will return, how much debt will not be repaid, how much inventory will spoil, how long equipment will last, whether a payment is an expense (fully subtracted from earnings) or an investment (an asset that is depreciated over time), or how much of an expense is "unusual." However, manipulation is possible not only for earnings and accruals but also for cash flows—though doing so may be more difficult and costly. For example, if a firm designates some of its short-term securities as "trading instruments," their sale can then create extra cash—what was not cash before now counts as cash! Similarly, we already know that firms can reduce inventory, delay payments to suppliers, and lean on customers to accelerate payment—all of which will generate immediate cash, but possibly anger suppliers and customers so much that it will hurt the business in the long run. Firms can also sell off their receivables at a discount which may raise the immediate cash at hand but reduce the profit the firm will ultimately receive. A particularly interesting form of cash flow management occurs when a firm is lending money aggressively to its customers. The sales generate immediate cash from sales, and the loans can count as investments. Of course, if the customers default, all the company has accomplished is to give away its product for free.

Here is a good warning sign.

One quick measure of comparing how aggressive or conservative financials are is to compare the firm to other similar firms on the basis ratio of its short-term accruals divided by its sales. It is important that "similar" means firms that are not only in the same industry but also growing at roughly the same rate. The reason is that growing firms usually consume a lot of cash—an established firm will show higher cash flow than a growing firm. If the firm is unusual in having much higher accruals—especially short-term accruals—than comparable firms, it is a warning sign that this firm deserves more scrutiny. Managers who decide to manipulate their numbers to jack up their earnings more than likely will try to manage their accruals aggressively in order to create higher earnings, too. Of course, this does not mean that all managers who manage their accruals aggressively do so to deceive the market and will therefore underperform later on. A manager who is very optimistic about the future may treat accruals aggressively—believing in few returns, great sales, and a better future all around. Indeed, as noted earlier, the slope from managerial optimism to illegal earnings manipulation is slippery. Finally, another earnings warning sign for the wary investor is when a firm changes its fiscal year—this is sometimes done in order to make it more difficult to compare financials to the past and to financials of other firms in the same industry.

Solve Now!

Q 9.7 *A firm reports the following financials.*

Year	*0*	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*
Reported Sales= Net Income	*$0*	*$100*	*$100*	*$300*	*$300*	*$100*	*$0*
Reported Accounts Receivables	*$0*	*$100*	*$120*	*$340*	*$320*	*$120*	*$0*

Can you describe the firm's customer payment patterns? Extract the cash flows.

Q 9.8 *Construct the financials for a firm that has quarterly sales and net income of $100, $200, $300, $200, $100, and half of all customers pay immediately, the other half always pay* ***two*** *quarters after purchase.*

file=financials.tex: RP

Q 9.9 *(Difficult:) Amazonia can pay suppliers after it has sold to customers. Amazonia has 25% margins and is reporting*

Month	*Jan*	*Feb*	*Mar*	*Apr*	*May*
Reported Sales	*$0*	*$100*	*$100*	*$400*	*$0*
Reported Net Income	*$0*	*$25*	*$25*	*$100*	*$0*
Reported Accounts Payables	*$0*	*$75*	*$75*	*$300*	*$0*

What are Amazonia's actual cash flows?

Q 9.10 *Are short-term accruals or long-term accruals easier to manipulate?*

Q 9.11 *Give an example of how a firm can depress the earnings that it reports in order to report higher earnings later.*

Q 9.12 *Give an example of how a firm can depress the cash flows that it reports in order to report higher cash flows later.*

9·4. Completing the Picture: PepsiCo's Financials

Other, so-far neglected sources of cash hidden in the financial statements.

Now, if you take another look at the complete PepsiCo cash flow statement in Table 9.4 or even the abbreviated cash flow statement in Table 9.14 (Page 229), you will see not only the procedures that we have just discussed—starting with net income, adding back depreciation, subtracting off capital spending, and adding changes in working capital—but a whole range of other items that we have not yet even mentioned.

Now "wing it."

There are two pieces of good news here. First, you now understand the main logic of what is going on. Second, you can now rely on the accountants to do most of the hard work for you. The logic of how to handle the remaining items in the cash flow statement is either similar to what we have already discussed and/or obvious from the name. For instance, you hopefully won't need an explanation from me as to why "bottling equity income, net" which appears just below "net income" and which is added to it is probably just another form of net income—even if I knew its meaning better than you, it would not help if I explained it to you, because every company has its own unique collection of named items in their financial statements. Like I, you will have to "wing it"—or, better, seek to understand the specific company you are analyzing.

Here are a few less obvious ones.

There are two other sources and uses of cash flow, which we still want to mention, because it is not (relatively) obvious from the accounting jargon what is really happening.

Changes in Deferred Taxes arise when firms use different depreciation schedules on their tax financials than on their public financials. Many firms are allowed to use accelerated depreciation for tax purposes. The resulting discrepancy in tax timing is then recorded as "changes in deferred taxes."

Note that this item has nothing to do with the fact that income tax is paid after it is incurred (e.g., on April 15). This difference in the timing of taxes incurred and taxes actually sent to the IRS can be computed as changes in Income Tax Payable, which is itself a component of changes in Working Capital.

Investment in Goodwill is an item whose name is even more of a misnomer. It has to do with cash laid out when firms acquire other firms. (It can be a very important item for acquirers.)

file=financials.tex: LP

A semi-complete cash flow formula:

Putting short-term and long-term accruals and other sources/uses of cash together yields a second and more complete formula for estimating cash flows for an NPV analysis from financial statements. Cash Flows for NPV analysis can be estimated using a formula like the one in Table 9.10.

Table 9.10. A Formula To Compute Cash Flows

			PepsiCo, 2001
		Earnings after Interest before Taxes	$4,029
	+	add back Interest Expense	+ ($8)
=		Earnings before Interest and Taxes (EBIT)	$4,021
	–	Corporate Income Tax	– $1,367
=		Net Operating Profit	$2,654
	+	Changes in Deferred Taxes	+ $162
	+	Depreciation	+ $1,082
=		Gross Cash Flow	$3,898
	–	Increase in Working Capital (incl. tax payables, etc.)	– ($84)
	–	Capital Expenditures	– $1,324
	–	Investment in Goodwill	
	–	All Sorts of Increases in Net Other Assets	– ($211)
=		Free Cash Flow from Operations	$2,869
	+	All Sorts of Non-Operating Cash Flows	+ ($1,313)
=		Total Project Firm Cash Flow (to Debt and Equity)	$1,556
	+	Net Issuance of Debt	+ ($341)
	–	Interest Expense	– ($8)
=		Total Cash Flow to Levered Equity	$1,223

In this formula, the numbers on the right are from the abbreviated cash flow statement in Table 9.14. You can also see how similar this is to the accounting cash flow statement. It starts with the net income of $4,029 (from the income statement) and adds back depreciation—unlike in the income statement, the depreciation on the cash flow statement includes all depreciation of all sorts of assets. The **deferred taxes** of $162 (i.e., tax depreciation schedule differences) and **non-cash items** of $211 are two more opaque items that provided PepsiCo with extra cash during the year—more than was indicated by its net income of $2,662. The **change in working capital**, explained in Section 9·3.A, is cash that PepsiCo had to add to its inventory, loans made to its retailers, or cash it could recover from its delay of payables and tax payments. In 2001, PepsiCo actually could reduce and thereby generate $84 in cash from its working capital. In total, collecting all positive cash flow terms, PepsiCo's business generated $3,898 + $84 + $211 + $8 = $4,201 million. Of this cash, PepsiCo invested $1,324 + $1,313 = $2,637 million (i.e., negative cash flows) into things like plant and equipment, advertising and sponsorships, etc. Another $8 was spent on interest payments. Again, these were actual cash flows consumed in the course of running PepsiCo.

file=financials.tex: RP

Unfortunately, the formula cannot cover *all* items in *all* companies—and even for PepsiCo, we had to lump some items and ignore others (such as foreign exchange effects). So please do not consider our cash flow formula to be the perfect, end-all formula to compute NPV cash flows. Again, every business operates and reports differently. Still, the formula is a good start for estimating realized cash flows for an NPV analysis for most firms in the real world, and for understanding the link between earnings and cash flows.

It's a suggestive formula, not a perfect one.

Fortunately, most of the time, we do not need to construct the cash flow with this long formula ourselves, because we can instead rely on the corporate **cash flow statement** itself. After all, it tries to construct most of the information for us. Its big items, including even those we forgot in our long formula, are lumped into the sum of cash flows from operating activity and cash flows from investing activity. So we can use this sum instead of fiddling with the components. However, there is one difference between what accountants consider cash flows and what financiers consider cash flows. It is interest payments. Accountants consider interest payments an operating expense. Financiers consider them a distribution to owners. If we take care of this detail, we can then rely on our accounting friends:

An even easier solution which works better!

IMPORTANT:

Project Cash Flows (CF), *which pay out to owners collectively (both debt holders and equity holders in the corporation) are*

$$\begin{aligned} CF_{Project} &= \text{Cash Flow from Operating Activity} \\ &+ \text{Cash Flow from Investing Activity} \\ &+ \text{Interest Expense} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.18}$$

Net Income, a component of cash flow from operating activity, has had interest expense subtracted out. But interest expense is cash that is being returned to (debt) investors. Thus, to obtain the total amount generated by the project and available (paid out to) the sum-total of both creditors and shareholders, the interest expense (from the income statement) must be added back.

Equity Cash Flows (CF), *which are available only to levered equity shareholders—that is, they have subtracted out all inflows and outflows to creditors (debtholders)—are*

$$\begin{aligned} CF_{Equity} &= \text{Cash Flow from Operating Activity} \\ &+ \text{Cash Flow from Investing Activity} \\ &+ \text{Net Issuance of Debt} \\ &= CF_{Project} + \text{Net Issuance of Debt} - \text{Interest Expense} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.19}$$

DIGGING DEEPER: *Because accountants keep score of both assets and liabilities, the exact same cash flows can also be obtained from the financing side of the business:*

		Change in Marketable Securities
	+	*Decrease in Debt*
	+	*After-Tax Interest Expense*
	+	*Dividends*
	+	*Share Repurchases*
	−	*After-Tax Interest Income*
=		*Total Financial Flow*

(Actually, accountants charge after-tax interest as an operating cost, so care must be taken to recognize it as a distribution.) For complete references, see Corporate Valuation *by Bradford Cornell (Irwin), or* Valuation *by Copeland, Koller, Murrin (McKinsey).*

PepsiCo's cash flow, the easy way.

Will these formulas give us the same result? Let us apply them to PepsiCo. Adding **total operating activity** of +$4,201 and **total investing activity** of −$2,637 gives $1,564 in **operating activity net of investing activity**. Finally, we need to add back any interest expense that was taken out from net income. (After all, the project generated these funds and they were paid out, just as dividends are paid out.) In PepsiCo's case, it is not an interest expense, but net interest income, so the cash flow that we would use in an NPV analysis of the business of PepsiCo for 2001 is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CF}_{\text{Project}} &= \text{Cash Flow from Operating Activity} \\ &+ \text{Cash Flow from Investing Activity} \\ &+ \text{Interest Expense}_{\text{(from the income statement)}} \\ &= \$4,201 + (-\$2,637) + (-\$8) = \$1,556 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.20}$$

(PepsiCo is the rare company that did not pay interest income, but earned interest income in 2001!) These are the cash flows accruing to all owners together, debt and equity. We are still interested in the cash flow that is earned by PepsiCo's levered equity (without the creditors). We need to add cash obtained from **net issuance of debt** (the difference of debt principal that we raised and debt principal that we repaid, which we can read from the cash flow statement), and we need to subtract interest that we paid.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CF}_{\text{Equity}} &= \text{CF}_{\text{Project}} + \text{Net Issuance of Debt} - \text{Interest Expense} \\ &= \$1,556 + (-\$341) - (-\$8) = \$1,223 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{9.21}$$

Both numbers are identical to those on Page 220. It must be noted that you might sometimes need the longer formula with its individual components, because they may need to be discounted by different interest rates. We will see more of this later.

See how much earnings and cash flows can differ.

PepsiCo showed an increase in net income from 1999 to 2001. Did it also have an increase in cash flows? The answer is no. In 1999, PepsiCo had NPV cash flows of $3,605 − $1,172 − $792 = $1,641; in 2000, it had cash flows of $4,440 − $1,996 + $57 = $2,501; in 2001, it had NPV cash flows of $4,201 − $2,637 − $8 = $1,556. Yet, even in 2000, managers used **changes in working capital** to prevent PepsiCo's cash flows from dropping even further. It may be that PepsiCo did not show stellar three year improvement, after all. On the other hand, the cash was not discarded but used. Naturally, judging whether these were profitable investment uses is a difficult matter.

The cash flow statement in Table 9.14 also continues where we stopped. It proceeds to tell us what PepsiCo did with its projects' (post interest) cash flows: It used $994 million to pay dividends, $579 million to repurchase its own equity shares, and $341 million to repurchase its own debt, for total capital market activities of $1,919 million. In fact, this means it paid out more than it made in 2001 to the tune of $1,919 − ($1,556 + $8) = $355 million. (Presumably,

file=financials.tex: RP

PepsiCo still had cash lying around. Of course, this cash, too, was not generated in 1999, as PepsiCo also bled cash in 2000. It was in 1999 that PepsiCo produced the cash it consumed in 2000 and 2001.)

Our task is done—you can now look at a financial statement and obtain an estimate of the information they contain about cash flows that matter to your NPV analysis.

The task is done!

Solve Now!

Q 9.13 *From memory, can you recall the main components of cash flow used in an NPV analysis? Do you understand the logic?*

Q 9.14 *Is the firm's lifetime sum of net income (about) equal to the firm's lifetime sum of cash flows?*

Q 9.15 *A new firm reports the following financials:*

	Income Statement	*December*		
		2001	*2000*	*1999*
=	*Revenue*	*200*	*162*	*150*
	COGS	*60*	*58*	*57*
	+ SG&A	*20*	*19*	*18*
=	**Operating Income**	*120*	*85*	*75*
-	*Net Interest Income (Gains&Losses)*	*35*	*35*	*35*
=	**Income Before Tax**	*85*	*50*	*40*
-	*Corporate Income Tax at 40%*	*34*	*20*	*16*
=	**Income After Tax**	*51*	*39*	*24*
-	*Extraordinary Items*	*0*	*0*	*0*
=	**Net Income**	*51*	*39*	*24*

The firm also reports

Source	*Item*	*2001*	*2000*	*1999*
Cash Flow Statement	*Capital Expenditures*	*0*	*30*	*200*
Cash Flow Statement	*Depreciation*	*25*	*23*	*20*
Balance Sheet	*Deferred Taxes*	*20*	*16*	*0*
Balance Sheet	*Accumulated Depreciation*	*68*	*43*	*20*
Balance Sheet	*Working Capital*	*35*	*25*	*20*

(You will need to compute changes in deferred taxes, which are \$20 − \$16 = \$4 *in 2001, as well as changes in working capital.) Can you compute an estimate of cash flows produced by this firm?*

Q 9.16 *What are the cash flows produced by PepsiCo's projects in 1999, 2000, and 2001? What are the cash flows available to residual equity shareholders in 1999, 2000, and 2001?*

file=financials.tex: LP

9·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- There are four required financial statements: the balance sheet, the income statement, the shareholders' equity statement, and the cash flow statement. Although every company reports its numbers a little different, the major elements of these statements are fairly standard.
- Financial statements also serve more purposes than just NPV calculations, and are well worth studying in more detail—elsewhere.
- Earnings (net income) are *not* the cash flow inputs required in an NPV analysis.
- Accountants use "accruals" in their net income (earnings) computation, which we need to undo in order to extract actual cash flows.
- The primary long-term accrual is "depreciation," an allocation of capital expenditures. The prime operation to undo this is to add back depreciation and subtract out capital expenditures.
- The primary short-term accrual is "changes in working capital," an allocation of soon-expected but not-yet-executed cash inflows and cash outflows. Examples are accounts payables, accounts receivables, and tax payables. The prime operation to undo them is to add back changes in working capital.
- If a cash flow statement is available, it conveniently handles most of the difficulties in undoing accruals for the NPV analysis. However, accountants believe interest expense to be a cost of operations, while financiers believe it to be a payout to owners. Thus, interest expense requires special handling.
- Formula 9.18 shows how to compute cash flows that accrue to project owners (debt plus equity). It is cash flow from operating activity, plus cash flow from investing equity, plus interest expense.
- Formula 9.19 shows how to compute cash flows that accrue to levered equity owners (equity only). It is the cash flow that accrues to project owners, plus net issuance of debt, minus interest expense.

A final observation: the most difficult part to analyzing financial statements for me is getting the signs right.

A. Appendix: Supplementary Financials — Coca Cola

The following tables provide further financial statements for Coca Cola and PepsiCo. They are here to give you a feeling for what real-world financial statements look like—maybe a little more complicated and involved than what we covered, but you should still be able to extract the components that matter.

Solve Now!

Q 9.17 *The 2002 10-K Annual Statement of Coca Cola is available from Edgar. (If need be, you can use the financials provided on Page 226. However, it would be good for you to look this up on the Web, instead.) Approximate the cash flows that you would use in valuing Coca Cola. Then, use the cash flow statement. How different are the numbers that Coca Cola reports from those that you would infer from the income statement combined with capital expenditures and depreciation (i.e., from our first formula, 9.12 on Page 213)? What if you had used our second formula 9.17 on Page 217, which also subtracts out changes in working capital?*

a. Coca Cola's Financials From EdgarScan

Table 9.11. Coca Cola's Financials from EdgarScan, Restated.

	Income Statement	December		
		2001	2000	1999
=	Revenues	20,092	19,889	19,284
	COGS	6,044	6,204	6,009
	+ SG&A (incl. Depreciation)	8,696	8,551	8,480
	+ Other Expenses	0	1,443	813
-	= **Total Operating Expenses**	14,740	16,198	15,302
=	**Operating Income**	5,352	3,691	3,982
	+ Other Net Income	607	155	174
=	**EBIT**	5,959	3,846	4,156
+	Interest Expense	289	447	337
=	**Income Before Tax**	5,670	3,399	3,819
-	Income Tax	1,691	1,222	1,388
=	**Income After Tax**	3,979	2,177	2,431
-	Extraordinary Items	-10,000	0	0
=	**Net Income**	3,969	2,177	2,431

	Cash Flow Statement	December		
		2001	2000	1999
	Net Income	3,969	2,177	2,431
+	Depreciation and Depletion	803	773	792
+	Deferred Taxes	56	3	97
+	Non-Cash Items	-256	1,484	1,120
+	Changes In Working Capital	-462	-852	-557
=	**Total Operating Activity**	4,110	3,585	3,883
	Capital Expenditures	-769	-733	-1,069
+	Investments	-1	-218	-342
+	Other Investing	-418	-214	-2,010
=	**Total Investing Activity**	-1,188	-1,165	-3,421
	Dividends	-1,791	-1,685	-1,580
+	Net Issuance of Stock	-113	-198	-153
+	Net Issuance of Debt	-926	-585	+956
=	**Total Financing Activity**	-2,830	-2,072	-471
-	Foreign Exchange Effects	-45	-140	-28
=	**Net Change In Cash**	47	208	-37

b. Coca Cola's Financials From Yahoo!*Finance*

Table 9.12. Coca Cola financial statements from Yahoo!*Finance*, Not Restated

	Income Statement	December		
		2001	2000	1999
=	Revenues	20,092	20,458	19,805
	COGS	6,044	6,204	6,009
	+ SG&A	8,696	10,563	9,814
	+ Depreciation and Amortization			
	+ Unusual Expenses			
–	= **Total Operating Expenses**			
=	**Operating Income**	5,352	3,691	3,982
	+ Other Net Income	607	155	174
=	**EBIT**	5,959	3,846	4,156
–	Interest Expense	289	447	337
=	**Income Before Tax**	5,670	3,399	3,819
–	Income Tax	1,691	1,222	1,388
=	**Income After Tax**	3,979	2,177	2,431
–	Extraordinary Items	-10,000	0	0
=	**Net Income**	3,969	2,177	2,431

	Cash Flow Statement	December		
		2001	2000	1999
	Net Income	3,969	773	792
+	Depreciation and Depletion	803	773	792
+	Deferred Taxes			
+	Non-Cash Items			
+	Changes In working capital			
=	**Total Operating Activity**	4,110	3,585	3,883
	Capital Expenditures	–769	–733	–1,069
+	Investments	–1	–218	–518
+	Other Investing	–418	–214	–1,834
=	**Total Investing Activity**	–1,188	–1,165	–3,421
	Financing Cash Flow Items			
+	Dividends	–1,791	–1,685	–1,580
+	Net Issuance of Stock	–113	–198	–153
+	Net Issuance of Debt	–926	–585	+956
=	**Total Financing Activity**	–2,830	–2,072	–471
–	Foreign Exchange Effects	–45	–140	–28
=	**Net Change In Cash**	47	208	–37

file=financials.tex; RP

file=financials.tex: LP

Q 9.18 *What are the economic project cash flows you would use for Coca Cola from 1999 to 2001?*

B. Appendix: Abbreviated PepsiCo Income Statement and Cash Flow Statement

Abbreviated and summarized statements may appear in a variety of venues, such as www.marketguide.com, the SEC's Edgar, or Price-Waterhouse-Coopers' EdgarScan.

Table 9.13. PepsiCo Income Statement, Restated for Acquisitions.

	Consolidated Income Statement	December		
	(in millions)	2001	2000	1999
=	**Net Sales**			
	New PepsiCo	$26,935	$25,479	$22,970
	Bottling operations	–	–	2,123
=	Total Net Sales	26,935	21,661	25,093
	Costs and Expenses			
	Cost of Goods Sold	10,754	10,226	10,326
	Selling, General & Administrative Expenses	11,608	11,104	11,018
	Note: sg&a incl. depreciation of	*917*	*946*	*963*
	Amortization of Intangible Assets	165	147	193
	Merger-related Costs (Unusual Expenses)	356	–	–
	Other Impairment and Restructuring (Unusual Expenses)	31	184	73
–	= **Total Costs and Expenses**	22,914	21,661	21,610
=	**Operating Income**			
	New PepsiCo	4,021	3,818	3,430
	Bottling operations and equity investments	–	–	53
	Total Operating Project	4,021	3,818	3,483
	a. Bottling equity income and transaction gains/(losses), net	160	130	1,083
	b. Interest Expense	(219)	(272)	(421)
	c. Interest Income	67	85	130
	= Net Interest Income, a-c (Gains&Losses)	*=8*	*=-57*	*=792*
=	**Income Before Income Taxes**	4,029	3,761	4,275
–	**Provision for corporate income tax**	1,367	1,218	1,770
=	**Income After Income Taxes**	2,662	2,543	2,505
–	Extraordinary Items	0	0	0
=	**Net Income**	$ 2,662	$ 2,543	$ 2,505

Table 9.14. PepsiCo Abbreviated Cash Flow Statement, Restated for Acquisitions.

	Cash Flow Statement	December		
	(in millions)	2001	2000	1999
	Net Income	2,662	2,543	2,505
+	Depreciation, Depletion, Amortization	1,082	1,093	1,156
+	Deferred Taxes (changes in)	162	33	573
+	Non-Cash Items	211	355	-708
+	Changes in Working Capital	84	416	79
=	**Total Operating Activity**	4,201	4,440	3,605
	Capital Expenditures	-1,324	-1,352	-1,341
+	Other Investing	-1,313	-644	169
=	**Total Investing Activity**	-2,637	-1,996	-1,172
	Financing Cash Flow Items	-5	-254	-382
+	Dividends	-994	-949	-935
+	Net Issuance of Stock	-579	-740	-902
+	Net Issuance of Debt	-341	-705	391
=	**Total Financing Activity**	-1,919	-2,648	-1,828
-	Foreign Exchange Effects	0	-4	3
=	**Net Change In Cash**	-355	-208	608

file=financials.tex: LP

1. Accruals, specifically depreciation and delayed payments/receipts.
2. Uncle Sam uses Accounting methods to compute corporate income taxes. Secondary influences, not discussed in the text, come from the fact that many contracts are contingent on accounting numbers (e.g., debt covenants).
3. Do it!
4. A 12% instead of a 10% interest rate would increase the NPV of the tax obligation from \$46.77 to \$50.16. Therefore, the project value would decrease by \$3.39.
5. The income statementis now

	Year	1	2	3	4	5
	Sales (Revenues)	\$80	\$80	\$80	\$80	\$80
–	Cost of Goods Sold (COGS)	\$6	\$6	\$6	\$6	\$6
–	Selling, General & Administrative Expenses (SG&A)	\$8	\$8	\$8	\$8	\$8
=	EBITDA	\$66	\$66	\$66	\$66	\$66
–	Depreciation	\$30	\$30	\$30	\$30	\$0
=	EBIT (Operating Income)	\$36	\$36	\$36	\$36	\$66
–	Interest Expense	-	\$8	\$8	\$8	\$8
=	EAIBT (or EBT)	\$36	\$28	\$28	\$28	\$58
–	Corporate Income Tax	\$18	\$14	\$14	\$14	\$29
=	Net Income	\$18	\$14	\$14	\$14	\$29

Cash Flow Statement Excerpt

	Year	1	2	3	4	5
	Capital Expenditures	–\$120	-	-	-	-
	Net Debt Issue	+\$100	-	-	-	–\$100

The cash flow formula is EBIT plus depreciation (or use EBITDA instead) minus capital expenditures, minus corporate income tax: \$36 + \$30 – \$120 – \$18 = –\$72. The first levered equity cash flows are –\$72 + \$100 = +\$28.

Cash Flow	Discount Rate	1	2	3	4	5	NPV
Machine	8%	–\$54	\$66	\$66	\$66	\$66	\$152.41
Uncle Sam	8%	–\$18	–\$14	–\$14	–\$14	–\$29	–\$69.81
Project	8%	–\$72	+\$52	+\$52	+\$52	+\$37	\$82.60
Loan	8%	+\$100	–\$8	–\$8	–\$8	–\$108	\$0
Levered Ownership	8%	+\$28	+\$44	+\$44	+\$44	–\$71	\$82.60

6. The answer will eventually be posted on my website. (It is not there yet.)
7.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Reported Net Income	\$0	\$100	\$100	\$300	\$300	\$100	\$0
Reported accounts receivables	\$0	\$100	\$120	\$340	\$320	\$120	\$0
Change in accounts receivables	\$0	\$100	\$20	\$220	–\$20	–\$200	–\$120
Cash Flow	\$0	\$0	\$80	\$80	+\$320	+\$300	+\$120

The firm's customers did not all pay the next period. Therefore, the cash flows were delayed.

8. The cash flows are

	Quarter	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	Reported Net Income	$0	$100	$200	$300	$200	$100	$0	$0
	Immediate Cash Flows	$0	$50	$100	$150+	$100+	$50+	$0	$0
	+ Delayed Cash Flows				+$50	+$100	+$150	+$100	+$50
⇒	= Cash Flows	=$0	=$50	=$100	=$200	=$200	=$200	=$100	=$50
⇒	Change in A/R	-	$50	$100	$100	$0	–$100	–$100	–$50
⇒	Accounts Receivables	$0	$50	$150	$250	$250	$150	$50	$0

It is easier to obtain the change in A/R first: we know that Net Income minus the Change in A/R must add up to cash flows. So, Change in A/R = Net Income – cash flows. And, knowing Change in A/R, accounts receivables itself requires simply adding up.

9. In Year 1, Amazonia has cash inflows of $100 ($25 net income plus $75 change in accounts payables). In Year 2, Amazonia has another $100 in sales, but payables stay the same. (It has to pay its old suppliers $75, even though it gets to keep $75 from its new suppliers.) So, Amazonia gets cash inflows of $25 only. In Year 3, Amazonia gets net income cash inflows of $100, plus the $225 change in payables, for cash inflows of $325. Finally, in Year 4, Amazonia has cash outflows of $300. The pattern is thus

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May
Cash Flows	$0	$100	$25	$325	–$300

Note that Amazonia has total 5-month cash flows of $150, just as it has total 5-month net income of $150. The working capital has only influenced the timing attribution.

10. Short term accruals. To manipulate long-term accruals, managers would have to manipulate the depreciation schedule, and though this is possible a few times, if it is done often, it will most surely raise eyebrows.

11. For example, a firm can take out a reserve against a judgment in a pending lawsuit. Or, it could assume that customers will pay their bills less than they actually will.

12. For example, a firm could pay all its payables immediately, instead of delaying them.

13. See Page 220.

14. Yes. Cash flows just have different timing. For example, firm's capital expenditures are not booked immediately, but the sum of all lifetime depreciation adds up to the sum of all lifetime capital expenditures. (This abstracts away from some pathological accounting cases that we have not covered.).

15. Use the Formula on Page 220:

				2001	2000	1999
		Earnings before Interest and Taxes (EBIT)		120	85	75
	–	Corporate Income Tax	–	34	20	16
	+	Changes in deferred taxes	+	4*	16*	?
=		Net Operating Profit	=	90	81	?
	+	Depreciation	+	25	23	20†
=		Gross Cash Flow	=	115	104	?
	–	Increase in Working Capital	–	10*	5*	?
	–	Capital Expenditures	–	0	30	200
=		Free Cash Flow from Operations	=	105	69	?

* Note that the balance sheet gave the level of deferred taxes and the level of working capital, not the *changes* in these variables. You had to compute the differences yourself. † Depreciation is only available from the cash flow statement, not from the balance sheet.

16. Use Formulas 9.18 and 9.19. PepsiCo's project cash flows, available for satisfaction of both creditors and shareholders, are

	Cash Flow from Operating Activity	4,201	4,440	3,605
+	Cash Flow from Investing Activity	–2,637	–1,996	–1,172
+	Interest Expense	+ (–8)	57	(–792)
=	Cash Flow From Projects	1,556	2,501	1,641

PepsiCo's shareholder cash flows are

file=financials.tex: LP

	Cash Flow from Operating Activity	4,201	4,440	3,605
+	Cash Flow from Investing Activity	-2,637	-1,996	-1,172
+	Net Issuance of Debt	-341	-705	391
=	Cash Flow To Equity	1,223	1,739	2,824

17. For reference, in 2001, the cash flow statement reports depreciation of +$803, and capital expenditures of −$769. Our first formula 9.12 was net income plus depreciation minus corporate income tax, or $3,969+$803-$769=$4,003. Looking at the actual Coca Cola 2001 cash flow statement on Page 226, our calculation omits deferred taxes (+$56), non-cash items (-$256), changes in working capital (-$462), and "investments" of −$418 − $1. In total, our first formula 9.12 therefore would have omitted $1,081. Our second formula 9.17 would have captured at least changes in working capital, for an error reduction of $462, and a total error of $619.

18. Economic project cash flows are operating activity cash flows plus investing activitiy cash flows plus interest:

	1999	2000	2001
Operating Activity	3,883	3,585	4,110
Investing Activity	-3,421	-1,165	-1,188
Interest Paid	337	447	289
Economic Project Cash Flows	799	2,867	3,211

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

However bad my answers to exercises in earlier chapters may have been, the solutions in this chapter are probably worse. I am notoriously bad when it comes to keeping the correct signs. I have no future as an accountant! Before this chapter is formally finished, this section will be quadruply checked.

CHAPTER 10

VALUATION FROM COMPARABLES

A Practical Approach

last file change: Mar 13, 2006 (10:43h)

last major edit: Apr 2004, Dec 2004

You now know how to read financial statements, how to obtain cash flows from financial statements, and how to value them. You also know that forecasting cash flows is a very difficult task. Are there any shortcuts? Are there any good alternatives to NPV? Is there anything else you can do with financial statements?

Surprisingly, the answer is yes. There is one alternative approach often resorted to by practitioners. It is called "valuation by comparables," or "comps" for short. Executed correctly, comps can give answers that are as good as those you can obtain with a thorough NPV analysis—though they are not always the same. In practice, sometimes the NPV study gives a better value estimate, and sometimes the method of comparables does.

The basic idea behind valuation by comparables is simple and best understood by analogy: assume that you want to determine the value of 5 red marbles. If black marbles cost $2 a piece, and if you are willing to make the assumption that red marbles are valued like black marbles, then you can compute that the value of your 5 red marbles should be $10. It is not necessary to forecast what value marbles will have in the future or what discount factor to apply: the market price of black marbles has already taken this information into account.

Of course, the more similar black marbles are to red marbles, the better this method will work. (If black marbles are made from coal and red marbles are made from rubies, you will undervalue your red marbles!) The method of comparables therefore assumes that public markets already value comparable firms appropriately—or at least that they misvalue your firm the same way that they misvalue other firms—so that the value of your firm or your new project can be assessed in terms of its similarity to comparable firms.

10·1. Comparables vs. NPV

Just to show you what we are talking about...

Let us begin with a very brief example. In early 2006,, Dell had a market value of $71.5 billion and earnings of $3 billion, giving it a P/E ratio of 23.5. Say you are wondering how much Gateway should be worth, given that it had earnings of $49.6 million. By the method of comparables, you would postulate that Gateway is just like Dell. Each dollar of earnings should translate into $23.5 of value. Therefore, you would claim that Gateway should be worth

$$\text{Value of Gateway} \approx \underbrace{23.5}_{\text{Dell P/E}} \cdot \underbrace{\$49.6 \text{ million}}_{\text{Gateway E}} \approx \$1.2 \text{ billion}. \tag{10.1}$$

(In reality, Gateway was worth about $925 million.)

NPV is also a comparable in a sense.

The idea of comparables is the same as that of NPV—both are attempts to value your project *relative* to other projects that are available. In NPV analysis, you compare your own project to another-project benchmark through the opportunity cost of capital. NPV also tells you exactly what matters—future cash flows—and how you should weight different cash flows relative to one another. In theory, you cannot do better than NPV. But in practice, it is so very difficult to estimate these future cash flows. There is also no objective standard when you are measuring the future. If you say the expected cash flows in 10 years are $1 million, and I say that they are $5 million, which one is right?

Comparables proxy for future cash flows with an available measure today.

Comparables try to measure project similarity not through estimates of future cash flows, but through something that is available *today*. If firms with similar earnings also have similar future cash flows (or at least similar present values of all future cash flows), then earnings are a good proxy for what you really want—plus we can objectively agree on what these earnings are today. In using today's earnings instead of a full estimate of future cash flows, we therefore trade off your judgmental uncertainty about the future cash flow against your judgmental uncertainty about how good your current earnings approximate the future cash flow stream.

When NPV will work better and when comparables will work better.

Both NPV and comparables are based on relative valuation, but comparables lean more heavily on immediately similar projects and the assumption that the market has valued these correctly. NPV is a bit more forgiving, in that the opportunity cost of capital uses a broader swath of alternatives than just a couple of similar-looking firms in an industry. Consequently, NPV makes it easier to compare an investment in PepsiCo to, say, an investment in Treasuries and the stock market. Here, the method of comparables would fail, because these alternatives seem so dissimilar to PepsiCo that you would have no faith in a comparables-derived estimates. In contrast, comparables make it easier to compare an investment in PepsiCo to, say, an investment in Coca Cola. With similar characteristics, you can reasonably assume that you can rely on the financial markets having gotten Coca Cola's valuation based on future cash flows and future discount factors right, so you are in effect free-riding on a wonderfully accurate valuation already provided for you by the financial markets.

Solve Now!

Q 10.1 *When negotiating, would you value your next residence by the method of comparables, or by the method of NPV? If comparables, what kind of ratio might you use?*

file=comparables.tex: RP

10·2. The Price-Earnings (PE) Ratio

Why not Price Cash Flow Ratio?

The kind of ratios that you would be most interested in have value in their numerators—for example, the price-earnings ratio. The reason is that if you obtain a good estimate for what a reasonable price-earnings ratio is, you merely need to multiply the proper ratio by your project's or firm's earnings, and out comes an estimate of price,

$$\underbrace{\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{X}\right)}_{\text{from comparables}} \cdot X_{\text{our project}} \Rightarrow \text{Price Estimate for your Project} \quad . \tag{10.2}$$

The most important such ratio is the price-earnings ratio. The reason is that earnings are often seen as best representatives of future cash flows. At first glance, this may seem odd to you. After an entire chapter on how to compute cash flows in order to avoid net income, why compute a price-earnings ratio, rather than a price-cash flow ratio? The reason is that cash flows are usually more "spiky" than earnings. When a firm makes a large capital expenditure or acquisition, it may have a large negative cash flow one year, followed by positive cash flows in the following years. This is not a problem in an NPV analysis, because the higher future cash flows will also enter in the future terms. But, for computing a representative ratio with just one year's information, the current accounting earnings are probably more representative than a current cash flow would be. After all, earnings try to smooth inflows and outflows of large expenditures over many periods. It is a number which accountants have created for the very purpose which we need here: a representative number for a "long-term" picture.

10·2.A. Definition

The price-earnings ratio is price divided by (expected or current) earnings, either per-share or overall.

The **price-earnings ratio** is commonly abbreviated as **P-E ratio**, **P/E ratio**, or **PE Ratio**. The P/E ratio divides the overall firm market value—its market price—by the income flow (earnings) the firm generates. (Later in our chapter, we shall discuss some other ratios—and it will then become clear why the P/E ratio is the most popular comparables measure.) In the real world, price-earnings ratios are often *but not always* quoted as the current market price divided by the *expected* earnings for the *next* year (as determined by a consensus among analysts). The advantage is that expected earnings focus more on the future than on the most recently reported earnings. This suits us well, because valuation is forward-looking, not backward looking. Incidentally, in much of this chapter, we use the growing perpetuity formula 3.13 (on Page 40), which already calls for next year's earnings, anyway. In any case, the intuition would remain the same if you used the most recently reported earnings. Therefore, this chapter keeps the language a bit loose—and even forgets to note that future earnings are a random variable, for which we really mean the expected value.

Firm-value and price-per-share based ratios are the same.

Let us start by exploring the meaning of the P/E ratio with an example. A firm with a market value of $\mathbf{P} = \$200$ million and expected earnings of $\mathbf{E} = \$10$ million next year would have a price-earnings ratio of 20. Both inputs could be expressed in per-share terms, rather than in aggregate value. So, if this firm has 40 million shares outstanding, each share would be worth $\mathbf{P} = \$5$ and produce earnings of $\mathbf{E} = \$0.25$. The price-earnings ratio would still be 20.

Our first comparables valuation.

We now want to value a project that is quite similar to this firm and has earnings of $\mathbf{E} = \$3$ per share. What should your project's per-share value be?

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Price Estimate} &= \text{Comparable Price Earnings Ratio} \cdot \text{Our Earnings} \\ &= 20 \cdot \$3 = \$60 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{10.3}$$

Other interpretations.

One way to look at the price-earnings ratio is that it attaches an implicit overall value to each dollar of earnings. In this case, each extra dollar of earnings translates into an extra $20 worth of valuation—the shares sell for twenty times earnings. Sometimes you should use the reciprocal of the P/E ratio, the **earnings yield**,

$$\text{Earnings Yield} = \frac{\text{(Expected) Earnings}}{\text{Price}} = \frac{1}{\text{P/E Ratio}} . \tag{10.4}$$

You can view the earnings-yield as telling you the percentage of price that is due to current earnings. In our example, the earnings yield would be $10/200 = 5\%$. If the earnings are zero or negative, the price-earnings ratio is meaningless, and often indicated as NA or N/A. In contrast, the earnings-price ratio (earnings yield) can reasonably be negative and meaningful. If the earnings are positive, then a higher price-earnings ratio implies a lower earnings-price yield and vice-versa.

10·2.B. Why P/E Ratios differ

P/E ratios differ due to growth differences (and expected rates of return).

Our first goal in constructing a valuation by comparables is to determine where price-earnings ratios come from, and what they say about the firm. The main reason why P/E Ratios differ across firms and industries is that expectations differ as to how today's earnings relate to future cash flows—the expected growth rate. If you believe that today's earnings will be the last, your value estimate per dollar of current earnings should be lower than if you believe that it is a very low proxy of much better times to come.

> **IMPORTANT**: *The price-earnings ratio is higher when the firm has more growth opportunities.*

There is also an influence of leverage here—firms that are more levered have lower price-earnings ratios, a topic that we will cover in Section 10·3.E.

Direct Differences in Earnings Growth

Determining a sensible price-earnings ratio for a hypothetical firm, which is a simple growing perpetuity.

We can illustrate this in a "traditional" growing perpetuity framework. Assume that a firm—call it A—is expected to earn cash of $100 next year, and its appropriate cost of capital is 15%. This firm is a perpetuity whose income will grow by 5% per annum forever. The growing perpetuity formula 3.13 on Page 40 states that the value of this firm is

$$\begin{aligned} V_A &= \frac{\$100}{15\% - 5\%} = \$1,000 \\ \text{Value}_A \approx \mathbf{P}_A &= \frac{\text{Exp Cash Flow}_A \approx \mathbf{E}_A}{\text{Exp Interest Rate}_A - \text{Exp Growth Rate}_A} . \end{aligned} \tag{10.5}$$

With a price of $1,000 and expected earnings of $100, A's price divided by its expected earnings is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathbf{P}_A}{\mathbf{E}_A} &= \frac{\$1,000}{\$100} = 10 \\ \frac{\mathbf{P}_A}{\mathbf{E}_A} &= \frac{\left[\frac{\mathbf{E}_A}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_A) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_A)}\right]}{\mathbf{E}_A} = \frac{1}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_A) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_A)} . \end{aligned} \tag{10.6}$$

Faster growing firms have higher price-earnings ratios.

What if the firm grew not by 5% but by 10% per year (forever)? Then the price earnings ratio would be

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathbf{P}_A}{\mathbf{E}_A} &= \frac{1}{15\% - 10\%} = 20 . \\ &= \frac{1}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_A) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_A)} . \end{aligned} \tag{10.7}$$

file=comparables.tex: RP

The P/E ratio is higher. So, high price-earnings ratios are a reflection of the market's expectation about how fast the firm will grow relative to its cost of capital.

Slower growing firms have lower price-earnings ratios.

What if the market expected this firm to shrink by 5% each year? Such a firm would have a price-earnings ratio of only

$$\frac{\mathbf{P_A}}{\mathbf{E_A}} = \frac{1}{15\% - (-5\%)} = 5 \quad . \tag{10.8}$$

Cigarette producers, for example, may suffer from negative annual growth rates and as a result have low price-earnings ratios. In May 2002, RJR Nabisco and Philip Morris (now Altria) had P/E ratios of about 12. Contrast this with high-growth firms, such as AMGEN (a high-tech pharmaceutical), which had a P/E ratio of about 40 and Microsoft, which had a P/E ratio of about 45.

High growth rates for shrinking companies?

Despite everything I have just written, you can also find some companies that have performed poorly and even shrunk, but which still have high P/E ratios. For example, in October 2005, Sun Microsystems had a P/E ratio of 45—three times as high as Microsoft's then P/E ratio of 16. Does this mean our theory is wrong? On the contrary! P/E is a value ratio relative to current earnings. Sun was generally believed to have experienced very tough times after about 2003. Presumably the market did not expect Sun's low earnings in 2004 and 2005 to be representative of its long-term earnings. Instead, it expected Sun's future earnings to be much higher than its somewhat distressed 2005 earnings. Relative to its 2005 earnings, Sun may indeed be a growth company!

The growth rate of earnings is not the expected rate of return to investors.

Do you find it confusing that the earnings can grow by 5%, but investors expect to receive 15% rate of return? Shouldn't investors' expected rate of return be the growth rate of earnings? No—not at all. (Indeed, the expected rate of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$) cannot be equal to the growth rate of earnings ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g})$), or the NPV would be infinite.) The reason is that the price today already capitalizes all future earnings. Although we have already discussed why there is no direct link between earnings and rates of return (in Section 3·1.B), this is so important it deserves another example. Say that the appropriate cost of capital for a firm is 10%, and it will produce \$100 next year, \$50 the next year, and \$0 thereafter. There is no uncertainty. Clearly, the cashflows/earnings of the firm are shrinking dramatically. But the value of the firm today is $\$100/1.1 + \$50/1.1^2 \approx \$132.23$. Next year, the investor will receive \$100 and hold a remaining project of $\$50/1.1^1 \approx \$45.45$, for a total wealth of \$145.45. The (expected) rate of $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$ is $\$145.45/\$132.23 - 1 = 10\%$, even though the growth rate of earnings is negative.

The Present Value of Growth Opportunities (PVGO)

PVGO (Present Value of Growth Opportunities).

Another way to express the same information—to give perspective about the meaning of P/E ratios—comes from decomposing a firm into two components: the ratio of one hypothetical firm that has the projected earnings of the company, but has stopped growing; and the ratio of another hypothetical firm that has zero earnings right now and consists just of the projected growth opportunities. The latter part is called the **Present Value of Growth Opportunities** (**PVGO**). You can split the market value of any company—regardless of its actual earnings—into these two components.

An example split of firms' earnings into "steady" and "PVGO."

For example, consider three firms, all priced at \$150 and all with an appropriate cost of capital of 10%. The first firm has expected earnings of \$15, the second firm has expected earnings of \$12, and the third firm has expected earnings of \$20. We will decompose each firm's value into the two components.

Stability: The first firm is worth

$$\begin{aligned} \$150 &= \frac{\$15}{10\%} + \quad ? \quad = \$150+? \\ \mathbf{P} &= \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} + \text{PVGO} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{10.9}$$

To be an equality, the question mark must stand for \$0. The market has priced this first firm exactly as if it had no expectation of any future growth. Thus, 100% of this firm's value comes from the "steady component," and 0% from the "growth component." Eventually, in the very

long-run, you would expect mature and stable companies to settle into this mode.

Growth: In contrast, if the second firm, also trading at \$150, earned only a constant \$12 forever, its constant growth component would only be worth \$120,

$$\begin{aligned} \$150 &= \frac{\$12}{10\%} + ? = \$120 + ? \\ \mathbf{P} &= \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} + \text{PVGO} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{10.10}$$

Therefore, this firm's "steady component" is worth \$120, and its growth opportunities must be worth PVGO = \$30. Taking this further, we would say that \$30/\$150 = 20% of the firm's value is due to future growth opportunities above and beyond a steady business.

Decline: Finally, if the third firm were expected to earn a constant \$15 forever, it should have been worth \$150 today. To justify its market value of \$150, you must believe that it will have negative growth in the future,

$$\begin{aligned} \$150 &= \frac{\$20}{10\%} + ? = \$200 + ? \\ \mathbf{P} &= \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} + \text{PVGO} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{10.11}$$

specifically, a subtractive part worth PVGO = −\$50. This firm would not maintain a steady business.

Table 10.1. Various E/P Ratios in Early November 2004

	P/E	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	PVGO/P	PEG		P/E	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	PVGO/P	PEG
Google	50	10%	80%	2.2	Coca Cola	20	6%	20%	2
Pixar	45	8%	72%	2	Exxon	15	7%	5%	2
Cisco	20	12%	60%	1.4	Procter&Gamble	19	5%	0%	1.8
PepsiCo	20	10%	50%	2	Altria (P.Morris)	12	6%	-40%	1.3
Microsoft	21	8%	40%	2	GM	8	9%	-40%	1.2
Home Depot	17	9%	35%	1.3	U.S. Steel	6	11%	-50%	0.5
Boeing	20	7%	30%	2	Ford Motor	7	9%	-60%	1.2
Wal-Mart	21	7%	30%	1.5	RJR Nabisco	10	6%	-65%	1.5

All inputs are from Yahoo!*Finance*. No attempt has been made to adjust for debt ratio. The ratio PVGO/**P** = $1 - 1/[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) \cdot \mathsf{P/E\ ratio}]$. P/E ratios are forward-looking. The cost of capital estimate is rough, and computed as $5\% + 3\% \cdot \beta$ (except Google, which I made up). The cost of capital is the subject of the next part of the book and comes with a good deal of uncertainty. Therefore, PVGO/P is intentionally heavily rounded. PEG ratios are quoted directly from Yahoo!*Finance* as based on 5-yr expected earnings. It divides the P/E ratios by analysts' expected growth rate of earnings.

A sample of firms.

Table 10.1 computes the PVGO as a fraction of firm value from the firm's P/E ratio and an estimate of the cost of capital (the subject of Part III). Apparently, the market believes that the future lies with Google (\$44 billion in market cap) and Pixar (\$5 billion), and not with U.S. Steel (\$5 billion) or Ford Motor (\$25 billion). The table also gives another popular ratio, the PEG ratio, which divides the P/E ratios by analysts' expected growth rate of earnings. It combines information about $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g})$ and P/E ratio, thus trying to say something about $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$. The idea is that stocks with lower P/E ratios and higher growth rates have lower PEG-ratios—and are perhaps better buys. (I do not know how well or how poorly this measure works for this purpose.)

file=comparables.tex: RP

You can also rearrange Formula 10.9 to get a relationship between a firm's P/E ratio and its cost of capital

The E/P yield is the interest rate plus the normalized present value of growth opportunities

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P} &= \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} + \text{PVGO} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \frac{\mathbf{P}}{\mathbf{E}} = \frac{1}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} + \frac{\text{PVGO}}{\mathbf{E}} \quad . \\ \$150 &= \frac{\$12}{10\%} + \$30 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \frac{\$150}{\$12} = \frac{1}{10\%} + \frac{\$30}{\$12} = 12.5 \end{aligned} \tag{10.12}$$

The formula states that a stable company without any growth opportunities ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) = 0 \Rightarrow \text{PVGO} = 0$) has an earnings-price yield equal to its cost of capital, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$. A growing firm ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) > 0 \Rightarrow \text{PVGO} > 0$) has an earnings-price yield lower than its cost of capital. And a dying firm ($\text{PVGO} < 0$) has an earnings-price yield higher than its cost of capital.

Empirical Evidence: P/E Ratios and Growth Rates

Do high growth firms in the real-world have higher P/E ratios?

The P/E ratio theory works nicely on paper, but does it hold water in the real world? The implication of the theory is that if you plot long-term expected earnings growth ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_{\mathbf{E}})$) against $\mathbf{E}/\mathbf{P}$, you should get a negative relation.

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_{\mathbf{E}})} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathbf{P}} = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - \mathcal{E}(g_{\mathbf{E}}) \quad . \tag{10.13}$$

Unfortunately, to make the theory operationally useful, you have to make two more assumptions. First, you do not know the eternal growth rate: you only know the most recent earnings ($\mathbf{E}_0$) and the earnings predicted by analysts for next year (call them $\hat{\mathbf{E}}_{+1}$), so you can only compute the expected growth rate for one year: $\mathcal{E}(g_{\mathbf{E}}) = (\hat{\mathbf{E}}_{+1} - \mathbf{E}_0)/\mathbf{E}_0$. You have to make the leap that firms with higher short-term growth rates also have higher long-term growth rates, so you can use the former as a stand-in for the latter. Second, each firm may have its own costs of capital (unequal $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$). If firms with high growth rates $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_{\mathbf{E}})$'s also have sufficiently high costs of capital $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$'s, then you might not even be able to see any relationship between earnings yield and earnings growth. Both of these problems could conceivably scramble any negative expected relationship between the earnings yield and the growth rate of earnings. Thus, you need to look at the empirical evidence to determine how practically useful the theory is.

Some detail information about the figure.

Figure 10.1 plots the predicted next-year earnings-growth rate against the earnings yield (the ratio of predicted earnings over today's stock price), for firms with market capitalization of $50 million or more, as of December 2000. Each dot is one firm.

The evidence supports the theory: high-growth firms have lower E/P (and thus higher P/E) ratios.

The figure shows how firms with higher earnings growth rates had lower earnings-yields (higher price-earnings ratios), just as the theory had predicted. Eyeballing the figure, you can see that firms that are neither growing nor contracting tend to have an earnings price ratio of, say, about 8% ($\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E} \approx 12$), firms growing by 20% tend to have a lower earnings price ratio of, say, about 5% ($\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E} \approx 20$), and firms growing by about 40% tend to have an even lower earnings price ratio of, say, about 2.5% ($\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E} \approx 40$).

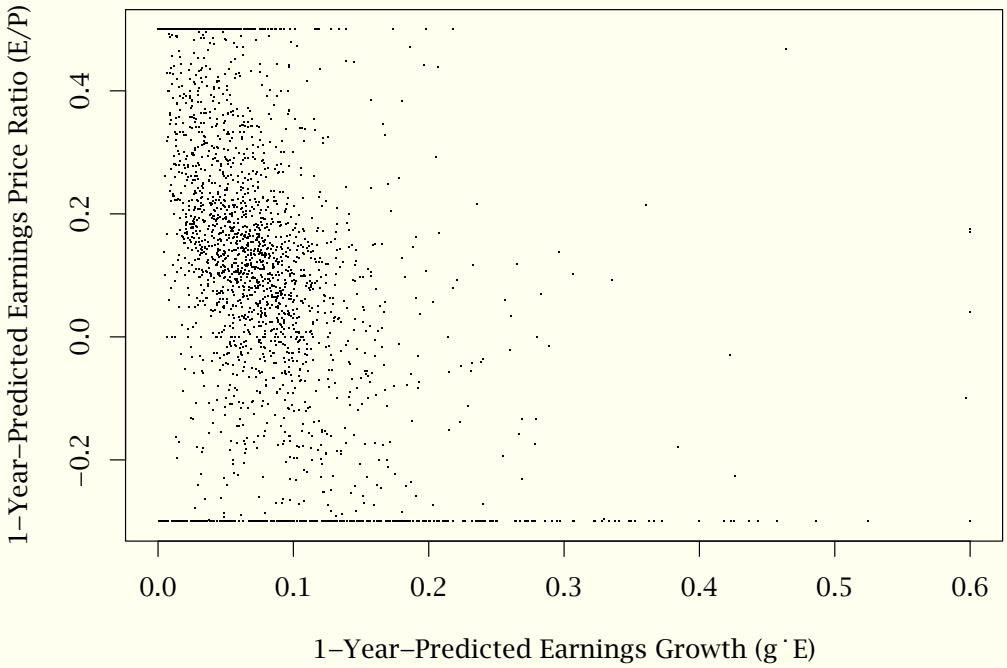
Using the figure to estimate a comparables-based firm value, as of December 2000.

If you had been hired in December 2000 to assess the value of a privately held firm for which you only knew the earnings, Figure 10.1 would have been very useful. For example, if this firm had earnings of $10 million, and was expected to grow them to $12 million by December 2001, the figure would have indicated that this 20% earnings growth rate on average would have translated into likely E/P yields between about 2% and 10%, with 5% being perhaps the best number. Therefore, reasonable value estimates for this company might have been somewhere between $50 \cdot \$12 \text{ million} \approx \$600 \text{ million}$ and $10 \cdot \$12 \text{ million} \approx \$120 \text{ million}$, with $20 \cdot \$12 \text{ million} \approx \$240 \text{ million}$ being a decent average estimate.

The figure will change, so you must use a current equivalent for valuation.

Unfortunately, you cannot use the December 2000 figure to assess appropriate P/E ratios today. The reason is that during economic booms, earnings growth is high, and, although P/E ratios are high, too, they do not seem high enough; after all, such earnings growth is unsustainable. During recessions, earnings growth can be negative. But P/E ratios remain relatively too high, because investors expect that earnings-growth will eventually improve again. For example, in December 2000, corporate earnings growth was running at an average rate of +40%, and therefore unsustainable. Naturally, if such an earnings growth rate could be sustained forever, the

Figure 10.1. Relation between 1-Year Predicted Earnings-Growth Rates and 1-Year Predicted Earnings-Price Yields, as of December 2000.



Analysts' consensus earnings forecasts were obtained from **I/B/E/S**.

DIGGING DEEPER: *To reduce the influence of some extremely unusual firms, a few firms with* E/P yield*s in excess of 100% were truncated ("winsorized") at 100%. More importantly, earnings growth ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_E)$, the independent variable on the x-axis) was truncated at −30% and +50%, again to reduce the influence of extreme observations. Firms with such negative growth rates and such high positive growth rates are sufficiently unusual that pretending that they had just −30% or +50% growth is reasonable. Indeed, it is particularly unreasonable to pretend that negative earnings growth can last forever, so you would not expect a good relationship between price-earnings ratios and earnings growth for contracting firms. Finally, firms with lagged negative earnings (not earnings growth rates!) had to be ignored, too, because it is impossible to compute a meaningful earnings growth rate when the denominator is negative.*

price over today's earnings ratio would have to be truly astronomical! By December 2001, i.e., post 9/11, the opposite had happened: the typical current earnings growth rate had dropped to −40%, and yet firms were still worth something! So, it is an important point that the relation between earnings growth and earnings-price yields, using only one-year-ahead earnings forecasts, does not hold over time. Do not use Figure 10.1 to estimate $\mathrm{P}/_{\mathrm{E}}$ ratios from earnings growth *today*! Instead, if you need to value a firm based on its current growth rates *today*, recreate the graph and implied E/P yield with data as of today.

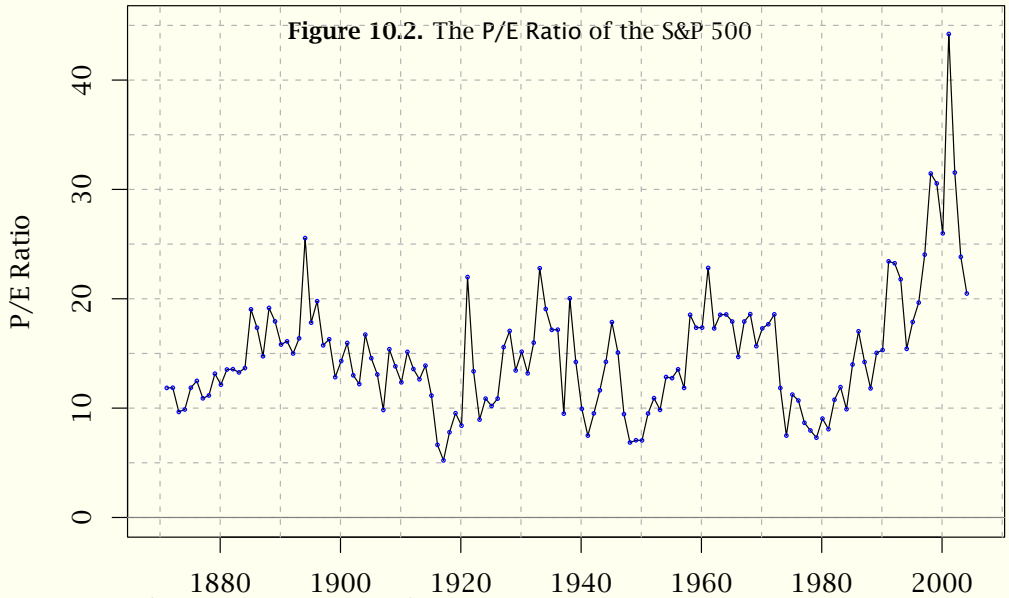
P/E Ratios for the S&P500

Use the theory on the S&P500.

Let us now apply our insights about P/E ratios to the overall stock market, as exemplified by a portfolio consisting of all stocks in the S&P 500. What is the relationship between the expected rate of return in the stock market, firms' earnings growths, and the market P/E ratio? The same intuition should apply—when the market expects corporate earnings growth to be higher, it should cause a higher P/E ratio.

file=comparables.tex: RP

Figure 10.2. The P/E Ratio of the S&P 500



This is the history of the price-earnings ratio for the S&P500. (The S&P500 index contains the 500 largest publicly traded firms in the United States.) It peaked in March 2002 at a value of 46. (The data are from Shiller's website.)

Figure 10.2 graphs the market's P/E ratio. The theory tells us that the growth rate of earnings is positively related to the P/E ratio,

The popular claim in the late 1990s: expect 30% from stock market investments.

$$P = \frac{\mathbf{E}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g})} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - \frac{1}{\text{P/E ratio}} \ . \tag{10.14}$$

(I admit to being casual in omitting time subscripts and the expectation on earnings.) Most finance professors believe that the expected rate of return on the stock market, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})$, has not changed dramatically in the last decades. However, in 1999, bullish analysts proclaimed in the popular press that the expected rate of return in the stock market would be at least 10% per year *in real terms (inflation-adjusted)* forever—after all, the recent experience from the last few years in the nineties had investors earn rates of return closer to 30% than to 10%. It was the era of the "New Economy," where old formulas (and finance professors) no longer applied.

The popular claim in the late 1990s: bizarre.

However, the theory should have told you immediately that something was odd. The stock market's P/E ratio had reached 30 in 2000. Therefore, such optimists must have believed in earnings growth $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_{\mathbf{E}}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - \mathbf{E}/\mathbf{P} = 10\% - 1/30 \approx 6.7\%$ per year, *in real terms* and *forever*. This is a large number, and should have been tough to swallow, because forecasts of GDP growth (based on its historical long-run average) put its expected *real* growth rate at only about 2.0–2.5% per year. Either the expected earnings growth was wildly too high, or the expected rate of return on the market was wildly too high. (Put differently, at the historical 4.5% *real* growth rate, the P/E ratio of 30 should have only implied an expected *real* rate of return in the stock market of only $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) \approx 2.5\% + 1/44 \approx 5.8\%$ per year.) This argument—that either the stock market's $\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E}$ multiple or popular stock return expectations were out of line with reasonable earnings growth estimates (and thus that the stock market was overvalued)—was most forcefully advanced in Robert Shiller's bestseller *Irrational Exuberance*. It was published just before the stock market peaked in 2000.

A more sensible approach.

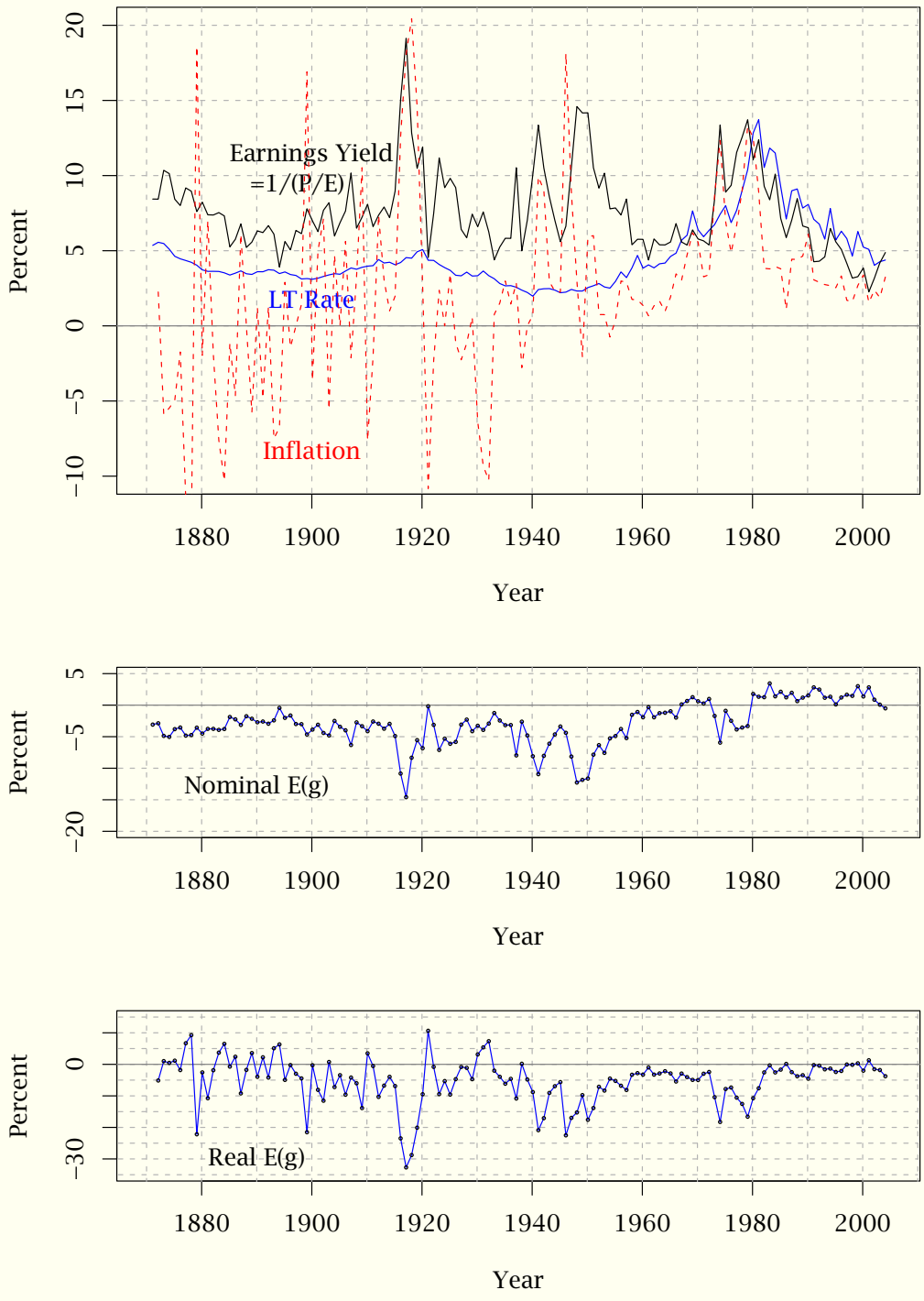
We can use our theory to sharpen our insights. Most importantly, let us now be more reasonable about the expected rate of return on the stock market. In fact, long-run history suggests that the stock market outperformed the long-term bond by a number of "only" 3% to 5% per annum. Let us presume this number is a constant 4%, where the long-term Treasury-bond is called $r_{\overline{20}}$. A similar number is often called the equity premium and will be discussed in great detail in

the next part of our book. Here, we call it the expected rate of return on the market above the risk-free long-term Treasury bond. Then,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - \frac{1}{\text{P/E ratio}} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) - \underbrace{[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\overline{20}}]}_{\text{around 4\%}} = r_{\overline{20}} - \frac{1}{\text{P/E ratio}} \ , \tag{10.15}$$

This gives you the expected growth rate of earnings (net of something like the "equity premium") that is required to justify the market's price-earnings ratio. It is the difference between the expected rate of return and the earnings-yield. More intuitively, when the expected rate of return on the stock market is high relative to the earnings yield, then the market believes the expected future earnings will be much higher than they currently are. When the current earnings yield is high relative to the expected rate of return, then the market believes the expected future earnings will not have to be much higher than today's earnings. The upper graph in Figure 10.3 plots these two inputs, and inflation. The lower graph in Figure 10.3 plots the difference, which is the implied growth rate above the equity premium. When this number is exceedingly high, the theory says that we should scratch our heads and wonder if the market is overvalued. When this number is exceedingly low, the theory says we should scratch our heads and wonder if the market is undervalued. One final wrinkle is that because the growth rate of earnings is a nominal quantity, we can also plot an inflation-adjusted version. Figure 10.3 shows that, with a constant expected rate of return, it no longer appears as if 2000 (or 2002) was so extreme, after all. In fact, neither the real nor the nominal growth rate of earnings necessary to sustain the stock market valuation (P/E ratio) has changed much from 1982 to 2005—and although it seems slightly high, by historical standards, the implied future real growth rate of earnings necessary to sustain the stock market at the current P/E level seems outright ordinary.

Figure 10.3. The S&P500 Earnings-Yield, Long-Term Treasury Rate, and Inflation



The upper figure plots the inverted price-earnings ratio (the earnings yield), as well as the long-term interest rate and inflation. The lower figures plots the nominal and real differences between $r_{\overline{20}}$ and the earnings yield. According to the theory, this represents the expected growth rate of earnings, above the equity premium. The bottom figure shows that since the mid 1980s the stock market P/E ratio (level) has been sustainable at a modestly high, but not at all unusual or extreme required expected inflation-adjusted earnings growth rate. This contrasts with 1918, 1945, 1951, 1975, and 1979, in which the market was very pessimistic; and 1921 and 1932 when the market was very optimistic.

The data are from Robert Shiller's website.

10·2.C. P/E Ratio Application Example: Valuing Beverage Companies

Table 10.2. Financial Newspaper Printed Financials, from May 31, 2002

YTD	52-Week				YLD		VOL		NET
%CHG	HI	LO	STOCK (SYM)	DIV	%	P/E	100s	CLOSE	CHG
13.5	31.91	23.55	Cadbury Schweppes (CSG)	.70g	2.4	21	475	29.20	-0.20
15.4	57.91	42.59	Coca Cola (KO)	.80	1.5	35	47,565	54.39	0.24
4.6	53.50	43.08	PepsiCo (PEP)	.60f	1.2	34	26,539	50.93	0.00

The description of the table states that the P/E ratio is based on the closing price and on diluted per-share earnings ignoring extraordinary items, as available, for the most recent four quarters. Fully diluted earnings means that all common stock equivalents (convertible bonds, preferred stock, warrants, and rights) have been included.

You now apply the P/E ratio valuation method to PepsiCo. You can use common newspaper information.

Let us now apply our newly found comparables valuation technique. Table 10.2 reproduces the stock price report from May 31, 2002, in the same format as that of a prominent financial newspaper. (Actually, the most convenient source of financial information on individual stocks may no longer be the newspaper. The World-Wide-Web, such as Yahoo!*Finance* makes it even easier to find more comprehensive financial information.) From Table 10.2, you can see that the price-earnings ratio for Coca Cola was 35, for PepsiCo 34, and for Cadbury Schweppes 21. The (day's closing) price-per-share for Coca Cola was \$54.39, for PepsiCo \$50.93, and for Cadbury Schweppes \$29.20. Using this information, you can back out Coca Cola's earnings-per-share as

$$\frac{\$54.39}{\mathbf{E}_{KO}} = 35 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \mathbf{E}_{KO} = \left(\frac{\$54.39}{35}\right) \approx \$1.55 \ . \tag{10.16}$$

Task: Value PepsiCo now.

We now proceed with the valuation-by-comparables method, once again using PepsiCo as our guinea pig. Pretend that you do not know PepsiCo's value, but you do know PepsiCo's internal financials (earnings). Your task is to value the shares of PepsiCo in light of the value of shares of Coca Cola. If the P/E comparables valuation method works, you can then check whether your estimated value roughly fits the true value of PepsiCo.

Applying Coca Cola's P/E ratio to value PepsiCo, given PepsiCo's earnings.

So, can you really use Coca Cola as a comparable company for PepsiCo? To do so requires making the heroic assumption that Coca Cola is a company quite similar to PepsiCo in terms of ratios and earnings. (The choice of comparable is discussed in general below.) We are indeed heroes (and heroines), so we assume that Coca Cola's P/E ratio of 35 can be applied to PepsiCo earnings of \$50.93/34 ≈ \$1.50 per share,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathbf{P}_{PEP}}{\$1.50} &= 35 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathbf{P}_{PEP} = 35 \cdot \$1.50 = \$52.50 \\ \left(\frac{\mathbf{P}_{PEP}}{\mathbf{E}_{PEP}}\right) &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{P}_{KO}}{\mathbf{E}_{KO}}\right) . \end{aligned} \tag{10.17}$$

In PepsiCo's case, valuation-by-comparables against Coca Cola seems to work well.

The valuation-by-comparables method suggests that PepsiCo should be worth \$52.50. This is higher than the \$50.93 that PepsiCo shares are currently trading for, but a difference of \$2 (about 5%) is well within the range of typical valuation uncertainty. So, here the method of comparables works quite well in predicting a correct market value for PepsiCo.

In Cadbury Schweppes's case, valuation-by-comparables against either PepsiCo or Coca Cola does not work well.

Now, let us assume that you instead owned Cadbury Schweppes (CSG), that it was not yet publicly traded, and that it had just earned \$1.39 per share. (This can be inferred from CSG's

P/E ratio of 21 and closing price of \$29.20.) Applying the Coca Cola P/E ratio of 35 to Cadbury Schweppes' earnings, you would expect CSG to trade for

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathbf{P}_{CSG}}{\$1.39} &= 35 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathbf{P}_{CSG} = 35 \cdot \$1.39 = \$48.67 \ . \\ \left(\frac{\mathbf{P}_{CSG}}{\mathbf{E}_{CSG}}\right) &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{P}_{KO}}{\mathbf{E}_{KO}}\right) \ , \end{aligned} \tag{10.18}$$

You would be far off! The value of Cadbury Schweppes shares in the public markets is \$29.20 per share, not \$48.67 per share. In effect, if you believe that the financial market offers you the correct price, then the method of comparables has not worked well in predicting the correct market value for shares in Cadbury Schweppes. Our next section will be all about why and when P/E Ratios can break down.

Solve Now!

Q 10.2 *Which is likely to have a higher price-earnings ratio: Microsoft or ConAgra?*

Q 10.3 *A firm has earnings of \$230 this year, grows by about 6% each year, and has a price-earnings ratio of 40. What would its price-earnings ratio be if it could grow by 7% each year instead? How much would its value increase?*

Q 10.4 *A firm has earnings of \$200, and a price-earnings ratio of 20. What is its implied growth rate, if its cost of capital is about 10%?*

10·3. Problems With P/E Ratios

If comparables are dissimilar, either the market is wrong or the comparable is wrong.

So, what went wrong in the Cadbury Schweppes valuation? There are basically two possible explanations. The first explanation is that the stock market valuations—either of CSG or KO, or both—are just plain wrong. In this case, it makes little sense to use the methods of comparables. But this scenario is unlikely. If the market values were systematically wrong, you could presumably easily get rich if you purchased undervalued firms. If it is not obvious, Chapter 19 will explain why getting rich is not easy—and which is why only about half of all investors beat the market—so we will assume that misvaluation is not the principal reason. The second explanation is that your assumption that the two firms were basically alike is incorrect. This is the more likely cause. There is a long litany of reasons why comparables are not really comparable, and why the technique failed you in valuing Cadbury Schweppes. Here is an outline of possible problems, on which the remainder of this chapter focuses:

Problems in Selecting Comparable Firms Comparing businesses is almost always problematic. Every firm is a unique combination of many different projects. Cadbury Schweppes owns Dr. Pepper, 7-Up, A&W Root Beer, Canada Dry, Hawaiian Punch, Snapple, Mott's Apple products, Clamato juice, plus some confectionary brands. This may not be comparable to Coca Cola, which owns Coca Cola Bottling, Minute Maid, Odwalla, and some other drink companies. Each of these businesses has its own profitability and each may deserve its own P/E ratio.

Even for the main business, as any soda connoisseur knows, Pepsi Cola and Coca Cola are not perfect substitutes. Different consumer tastes may cause different growth rates, especially in different countries.

Selection of comparable firms will be discussed in Subsection 10·3.A. P/E ratio aggregation issues with multi-division firms will be covered in Subsection 10·3.B. The worst kind of averaging P/E ratios will be examined in Subsection 10·3.C.

Problems in Comparing Accounting Numbers Not all accounting statements are prepared the same way. Here are a few possible discrepancies in regard to the Cadbury Schweppes valuation:

- Maybe as a British firm, Cadbury Schweppes uses altogether different accounting methods.
- Maybe Cadbury Schweppes has just had an unusual year, or a year in which it plowed most of its cash into advertising, thereby causing unusually lower earnings for now and much higher earnings in the future.
- If you did not use earnings from the most recent four quarters, but instead forecast earnings over the next four quarters, maybe the numbers would then be more comparable. How to adjust better for differences in the timing of reports will be the subject of Subsection 10·3.D.
- Maybe Cadbury Schweppes and Coca Cola have different debt ratios. The influence of debt on P/E ratios will be explained in Subsection 10·3.E.
- Maybe extraordinary items (excluded from this measure of earnings) should be included to make these firms more comparable. The use of other financial ratios will be discussed in Section 10·4.

10·3.A. Selection of Comparison Firms

Finding comparables: general criteria for evaluating similarity.

The single biggest problem with comparables may be the selection of appropriately comparable firms. Say, you own a little soda producer, the *Your Beverage Corporation* (YBC), with earnings of $10 million. You want to select public firms to use as your comparables from the universe of firms. Usually, this means publicly traded companies. So, which of the 10,000 or so publicly traded companies are most comparable to your firm (or project)? Are firms more similar if they are similar in assets, similar in their business products and services, similar in their geographical coverage, similar in their age, similar in their size and scale, etc.? Do they have to be similar in all respects? If so, chances are that not a single of the 10,000 firms will qualify!

Which firm is the single best comparable?

Let us assume that after extensive research and much agonizing, you have identified the (same) three companies: KO, PEP, and CSG. Which one is most similar? You know that depending on which firm you select, your valuation could be $250 million (if Cadbury Schweppes, unlevered, was most similar), $410 million (if PepsiCo was most similar), or $500 million (if Coca Cola was most similar). Which shall it be?

Different conclusions about the value of the same firm: Analyst errors and biases can create wide variations in valuations.

Selecting comparables depends both on the judgment and on the motives of the analyst. In the YBC case, one analyst may consider all three firms (KO, PEP, and CSG) to be similar, but CSG to be most similar because it is the smallest comparison firm. She may determine a good P/E ratio would be 30. Another analyst might consider Coca Cola and Pepsi-Co to be better comparables, because they tend to serve the same market as YBC. He may determine a good P/E ratio would be 40. The owner of YBC may want to sell out and try to find a buyer willing to pay as much as possible, so she might claim Coca Cola to be the only true comparable, leading to a P/E ratio of 50. The potential buyer of YBC may instead claim Cadbury Schweppes to be the only comparable, and in fact attribute an extra discount to CSG: after all, YBC is a lot smaller than CSG, and the buyer may feel that YBC deserves only a P/E ratio of 10. There is no definitive right or wrong choice.

Incorrect, but practical averaging. Let's pray!

Another choice may be not to select either the P/E ratio of 10 or the P/E ratio of 45, but to "split the difference." A reasonable P/E ratio that is better than either 10 or 45 may be 30. This might mean valuations of around $300 to $400 million. Unfortunately, though this may be the best solution, it is not a good solution. The next two section shows you why averaging P/E ratios is really not a good procedure.

file=comparables.tex: RP

10·3.B. (Non-) Aggregation of Comparables

Companies are collections of many projects. Is the P/E ratio of the company the same as the weighted average P/E ratio of its subsidiaries, so that you can seamlessly work with either individual subsidiary P/E ratios or with overall company P/E ratios? Unfortunately, the answer is no.

Can you aggregate (take averages of) P/E ratios? No!

Consider two firms. A has a $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_E) = 5\%$ growth rate and earnings of \$100 (next year); and B has a $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}_E) = 14\%$ growth rate and earnings of \$50 (next year). Both have an $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 15\%$ cost of capital. Their respective values should be

The average of individual P/E ratios is not the overall P/E ratio

$$\begin{aligned} P_A \equiv V_A &= \frac{\$100}{15\% - 5\%} = \$1{,}000 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad P/E = 10 \ , \\ P_B \equiv V_B &= \frac{\$50}{15\% - 14\%} = \$5{,}000 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad P/E = 100 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{10.19}$$

What would happen if these two firms merged into a single conglomerate, called AB? Assume AB does not operate any differently—the two firms would just report their financials jointly. AB must be worth \$6,000—after all, nothing has changed, and you know that NPVs are additive. It would have earnings of \$150. Thus, its P/E ratio would be $\$6{,}000/\$150 = 40$.

$$\text{Correct But Unknown AB P/E ratio:} \quad \frac{P_{AB}}{E_{AB}} = 40 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad P_{AB} = 40 \cdot E_{AB} \ . \tag{10.20}$$

Your goal is to value AB. Fortunately, you just happen to know a perfectly comparable firm for division A (trading at about $P/E = 10$), and a perfectly comparable firm for division B (trading at about $P/E = 100$). You even have a good idea of the relative size of the divisions inside AB (5:1). Knowing the combined earnings of AB of \$150, you want to estimate a value for AB, based on your two comparables. Unfortunately, neither the unweighted average P/E ratio nor the weighted average P/E ratio gives you the correct desired P/E ratio of 40:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Unweighted P/E ratio Average of A and B} \quad \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{P_A}{E_A}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{P_B}{E_B}\right) = 55 \ , \\ &\text{Weighted P/E ratio -Average of A and B} \quad \left(\frac{1}{6}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{P_A}{E_A}\right) + \left(\frac{5}{6}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{P_B}{E_B}\right) = 85 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{10.21}$$

Applying either of these two P/E ratios to your \$150 in earnings would result in price assessment for AB that would be too high.

IMPORTANT:

- *Price-earnings ratios cannot be averaged.*
- *Mergers change the* P/E ratio*, even if they do not create value.*

Lack of easy aggregation makes it difficult to value even well-defined firms, if the comparables are divisions inside larger firms.

The inability to aggregate divisions is not only an issue for the firm that is to be valued, but it also makes it difficult to extract a single comparable ratio from a division from inside conglomerates. In our case, let's assume that you only wanted to value the U.S. Dr. Pepper division, and that the U.S. Coca-Cola soda division was a perfect comparable for the U.S. Dr. Pepper. But how do you extract a P/E ratio for the Coca-Cola division, if all you know is the P/E ratio of the overall Coca Cola company with all its international subsidiaries, Minute Maid, Odwalla, etc.?

The consequences of the aggregation failure mean, strictly speaking, that only the most basic single-product firms should be compared.

You have no good methods to aggregate and disaggregate P/E ratios. Therefore, strictly speaking, you can only compare full firms that are similar, which means that P/E ratios are likely to work well only for simple and well-defined companies, and not so well for complex conglomerates. In retrospect, it would have been a coincidence if your naïve attempt to apply the overall P/E ratio of Coca Cola or PepsiCo to Cadbury Schweppes's overall earnings would have worked. Indeed, in retrospect, it was an amazing coincidence that PepsiCo and Coca Cola had such similar $\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E}$ ratios. We lived in blissful ignorance.

In Part III, we will introduce "market-beta" as a valuation measure. Unlike P/E ratios, market-beta nicely aggregates and disaggregates. This makes it relatively easy to compute betas for conglomerates from their divisions, and to extract a division beta (given the conglomerate beta and comparable betas for other divisions).

10·3.C. A Major Blunder: Never Average P/E ratios

Using a firm with negative earnings as the comparable makes absolutely no sense.

On top of these unavoidable P/E ratio problems, many an analyst has mistakenly created a much worse and avoidable problem by averaging P/E ratios. Averaging overlooks the fact that earnings can be (temporarily) zero or negative, which can totally mess up any P/E ratio analysis. For example, consider the example where the choice of industry comparables for X consists of A and B.

	Value (**P**)	Earnings (**E**)		P/E ratio	E/P yield
Firm A	\$1,000	+\$10	$\Longrightarrow$	100	1.000%
Firm B	\$20	−\$5	$\Longrightarrow$	−4	−0.250%
		Industry Average:		48	0.375%
Firm X	?	\$2			

If Firm B were the only comparable, it would imply a negative value for Firm X,

$$V_X = \mathbf{E}_X \cdot (P_B/\mathbf{E}_B) = \$2 \cdot (-4) = -\$8 \ . \tag{10.22}$$

A value of minus eight dollars for a firm with positive earnings and limited liability is not sensible. Luckily, this comparables-derived valuation is so nonsensical that no analyst would not notice it.

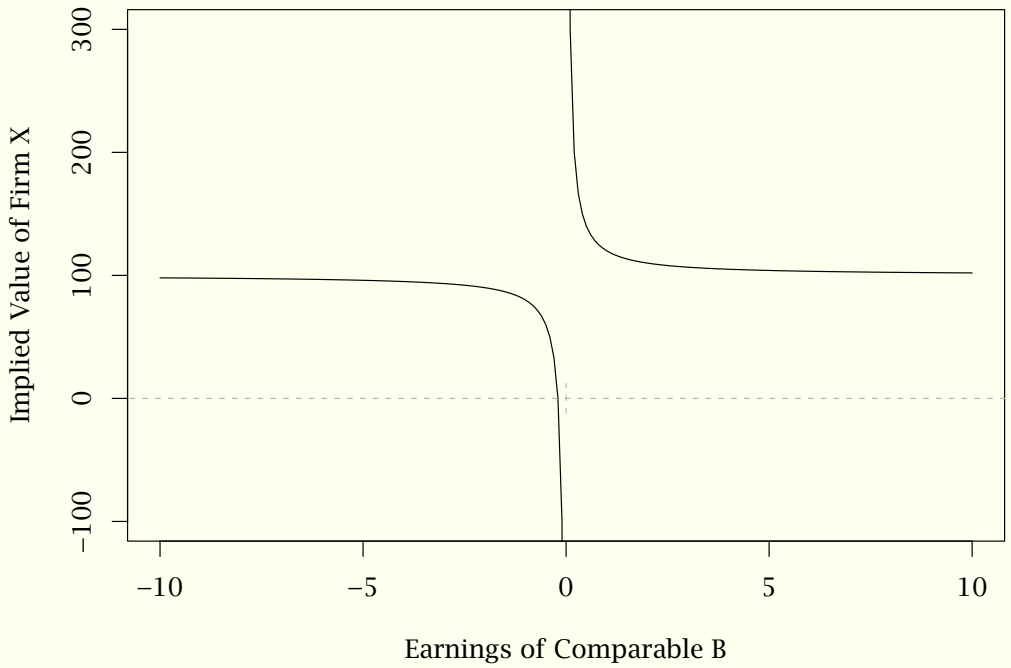
Averaging P/E ratios can look reasonable at first glance...

But the problem is often overlooked when an analyst uses a $\mathbf{P}/\mathbf{E}$ industry average. For example, assume our analyst uses an average of both comparables: Firm A has a P/E ratio of 100, Firm B has a P/E ratio of −4. Thus, the average P/E ratio would be 48 (= [100 + (−4)]/2), which is a reasonable looking average that would not raise a red flag. A thoughtless analyst could conclude that Firm X should be worth $V_X = \mathbf{E}_X \cdot (P_{A,B}/\mathbf{E}_{A,B}) = \$2 \cdot 48 = \$96$.

...but it is not.

Figure 10.4 makes the absurdity of this method even clearer. What happens to the implied value of Firm X if Firm B's earnings change? As Firm B improves its performance from about −\$5 to about −\$1, the average P/E ratio becomes 40, and your implied value remains a seemingly reasonable \$80. Beyond −\$1, earnings improvements in the comparable B create non-sensically huge negative implied firm values for X. Then, further improvements suddenly create non-sensically huge positive firm values. Finally, once the earnings of B are above \$1 or so, you again get seemingly reasonable values (of about \$100) for X. So, small changes in earnings can produce either seemingly sensible or non-sensible valuations. In other examples, even one comparable with earnings close to zero among a dozen comparables can totally mess up an average of many comparable P/E ratios.

Figure 10.4. Implied Value vs. Earnings Changes of One Comparable



If the earnings of the comparable B are \$1, you get a sensible value for your firm X. If the earnings are a little bit lower, you get a non-sensically high number; if the earnings are a little bit lower, you get a non-sensically low number; and if the earnings are yet a little bit lower, you again get a non-sensical number—but one that can appear at first glance to be of reasonable magnitude.

Excluding firms does not help.

In an effort to deal with this problem, a common industry practice is to drop out firms with non-positive earnings from $^{P}/_{E}$ averages. Unfortunately, this is not a good solution, either. First, you want an accurate valuation, and the stock market did value Firm B at \$20. You have no good reason to ignore firms with low earnings. Second, dropping out some firms does not solve the problem: the firm would enter the $^{P}/_{E}$ average if its earnings are +5 cents (leading to a very high industry $^{P}/_{E}$ average), but be dropped out if its earnings are −5 cents (potentially leading to a much lower industry average). A small change in the P/E ratio of one comparable among the industry would have a disproportionately large impact on comparables valuation due to arbitrary inclusion/exclusion of comparables, rather than to closeness of earnings to zero. The reason for all these problems with price-earnings ratios is that earnings are in the denominator. The function $^{1}/_{E}$ is both discontinuous and very steep when earnings are close to zero. In contrast, the price (value) is guaranteed to be positive.

The two better alternatives.

Fortunately, there are two easy overall alternatives to obtain good "pseudo averaged P/E ratios," even if some firms' earnings in the industry are low:

1. Work with earnings yields (E/P yields) instead of P/E ratios.

   In the example, the E/P yield of Firm A is \$10/\$1,000 = 1%; the E/P yield of Firm B if it earned −1 cent is −\$0.01/\$20 = −0.05%. The average E/P yield is thus [1% + (−0.05%)]/2 = 0.475%. Inverting this back into a P/E ratio provides a halfway sensible value for the P/E ratio (1/0.475% ≈ 211).

2. Add up all market capitalizations in the industry and all earnings in the industry, and then divide the two.

   In the example where B earned –1 cent, the total industry earnings would be \$10.00 − \$0.01 = \$9.99, the entire industry market value would be \$1,000 + \$20 = \$1,020, and

the average P/E ratio would be $\$1,020/\$9.99 \approx 102$. Note that in this method, firms are not equally weighted, but weighted by their relative market valuation. This may or may not be desirable: In our example, firm A would become the dominant determinant of your comparable valuation ratio.

Neither of these methods will give a very appealing comparable if the *total* industry average earnings are very small or negative. Our averaging alternatives can only avoid the problem of excessive influence of a small number of negative (or small) earnings firm in the average.

IMPORTANT: *Although neither* P/E ratio*s nor* E/P yield*s can be averaged, strictly speaking, an averaging-like operation can often be performed. We do so only because we lack a better alternative and we do not want to rely on just one single comparable. Never directly average* P/E ratio*s. Instead*

1. *Either average* E/P yield*s and then invert,*
2. *or divide total* **P** *sums by the total* **E** *sums.*

Never take these averages literally. Your goal must be to produce an "intuitively good (industry) average" derived from multiple comparables, not an exact number. You may judge your estimation to be better if you omit outlier firms, for example.

10·3.D. Computing Trailing Twelve Month (TTM) Figures

When comparable firms report annual statements in different months, the time change in economic climate introduces yet another problem.

There is one "small" mechanical detail left: Timing. First, is it meaningful to use annual earnings for a firm if the last annual report was from eleven months ago? Or should you use just the last quarter's numbers? Second, some firms report earnings in June, others in December. Should you compare financials that are timed so differently, especially if the economy has changed during this time lag? For example, consider the following reports:

	2001				2002		
	Q1 (Mar)	Q2 (Jun)	Q3 (Sep)	Q4 (Dec)	Q1 (Mar)	Q2 (Jun)	Q3 (Sep)
Comparable Firm	\$1	\$2	\$3	\$9	\$5	\$6	\$7
				⇒ Ann:\$15			

Your own firm is closing its financial year with annual earnings of \$12 in October 2002. What are the relevant comparable earnings? Should you compare your own annual earnings of \$12 to the dated annual earnings of \$15 from December 2001?

ANECDOTE: What P/E ratio to believe?
Exchange traded funds (ETFs) are baskets of securities, often put together to mimick an index. You can think of ETFs as firms for which you know the value—and price earnings ratio—of each and every division (stock component).

On March 13, 2006, the WSJ reported that Barclays Global Investors calculates the P/E ratio of its iShares S&P500 ETF as 16.4 and that of its iShares Russell 2000 ETF as 19.1. The Russell 2000 includes many mid-market firms. It has garnered nearly \$7.5 billion from investors, and is one of the fastest growing funds in 2006. So, the two funds look comparable in value and/or risk—or do they?

If you compute the weighted sum of the market value of all stocks in the Russell 2000 index and divide that figure by the companies' total earnings, you find that this ETF has a P/E Index of 41. Why the difference? Because the iShares ETF excludes all loss-making companies when calculating the measure—and there were many Russell 2000 components thus excluded. Karl Cheng, an iShares portfolio manager, says investors don't normally look at negative P/E ratios for companies, so they don't include it in the data. Investors should consider other measures, he says. Thanks, Karl!

Source: Wall Street Journal, March 13, 2006 (page C3).

file=comparables.tex: RP

You could try to work directly with quarterly earnings, but this is usually not a good idea. Most firms do more business in December, and December can be the first month in a quarter or the last month in a quarter. Not only are different quarters difficult to compare across firms, but the fourth quarter may be difficult to compare even to the other three quarters of the same firm. So, generally, the best method to adjust flows (such as earnings) into a "most recent annualized equivalent" is to use a **trailing twelve months** (**TTM**) adjustment. In our example, this means adding the earnings from Q4-2001 through Q3-2002,

This time difference can be reduced, even though quarterly accounting statements themselves should be avoided. Instead, use quarterlies and annuals to compute "trailing twelve month" (TTM) figures.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{As If Annual in Sep 2002} &= \$9 + \$5 + \$6 + \$7 = \$27 \\ \text{TTM Earnings} &= \text{Q4-01} + \text{Q1-02} + \text{Q2-02} + \text{Q3-02} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{10.23}$$

Using the reported earnings, you can also compute this

$$\begin{aligned} \text{As If Annual} &= \$15 + (\$5 - \$1) + (\$6 - \$2) + (\$7 - \$3) = \$27 \\ \text{TTM Earnings} &= \text{Ann-01} + (\text{Q1-02} - \text{Q1-01}) + (\text{Q2-02} - \text{Q2-01}) + (\text{Q3-02} - \text{Q3-01}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{10.24}$$

There are two caveats: first, TTM adjusts only "flow" numbers (such as earnings or sales), never "stock" numbers (such as corporate assets). Stock numbers are whatever they have been reported as most recently. Second, firms sometimes change their fiscal year, often to make it intentionally more difficult to compare numbers. In this case, extra care must be exercised.

"Trailing twelve months" only works for "flow" numbers (such as income), not for stock numbers (such as assets).

10·3.E. Leverage Adjustments For P/E Ratios

This section assumes that riskier projects have to offer higher *expected* rates of return. Why this is the case will only fully become clear in Part III. Trust me for now.

Companies can be financed through a mix of debt and equity. You would want to know if the P/E ratio of a firm is changed by its leverage. If the same firm with more debt in its capital structure has a different P/E ratio, then you cannot compare two otherwise identical companies with different debt ratios without adjustment.

Does leverage influence P/E ratios?

Return to a simple example. With \$100 in annual earnings, a growth rate of 0% now, and an appropriate cost of capital of 10%, a hypothetical firm A would be worth \$1,000. A has no debt (leverage). We now work out what happens to the price-earnings ratio of A if it were to recapitalize itself. That is, A takes on a loan of \$500, and pays the cash proceeds from the loan to the equity share owner. This is called a **debt-for-equity** (or **debt-for-stock**) exchange. Such transactions are fairly common.

Recapitalizing a 100-0 firm into a 50-50 firm.

From Chapter 5, you already know that the cost of capital (interest rate) consists of multiple components: the time-premium, the default-premium (on average, zero), and the risk-premium. From Chapter 5·3.B, you know that levered equity is riskier than debt. Also, trust me now when I claim that if investors are not risk-neutral, the cost of capital is generally higher for riskier securities. The *expected* rate of return on risky investments must be higher than the *expected* rate of return on safer investments; it must be higher for equity than for debt; and it must be higher for riskier debt than for safer debt. In the example in this section, we shall assume that the appropriate expected rate of return for a firm financed with 50% debt is 7.5% for the debt, and 12.5% for the remaining 50% "levered equity" (residual ownership).

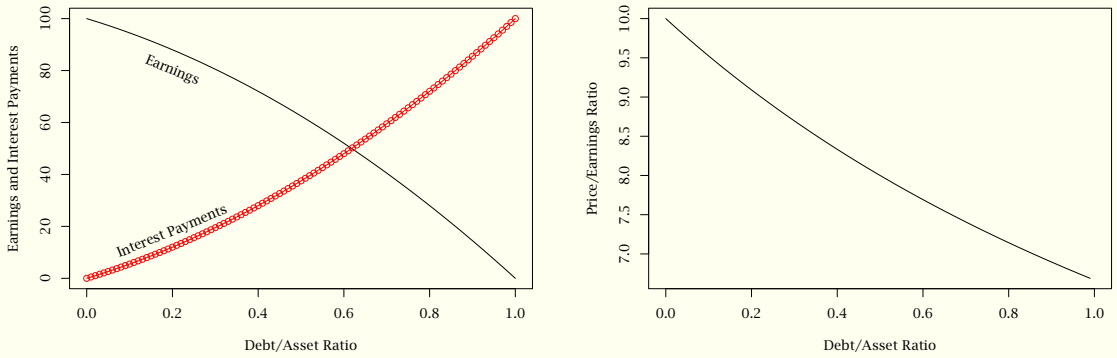
...with different costs of capital for bonds and stocks.

SIDE NOTE: The cost of capital for the firm overall remains at 10% after the firm is financed differently, because

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 50\% & \cdot & 7.5\% & + & 50\% & \cdot & 12.5\% & = & 10\% \\ \text{proportion of debt} & \cdot & \text{cost of capital for debt} & + & \text{proportion of equity} & \cdot & \text{cost of capital for equity} & = & \text{cost of capital for the firm} \end{array} . \tag{10.25}$$

The cost of capital for the overall company has not changed. Section 21 will discuss this in more detail.

Figure 10.5. Earnings, Interest Payments, and Price-Earnings ratios as a Function of Leverage



As the firm's debt ratio goes up, its interest payments increase, its earnings decrease—and so does its price-earnings ratio. The same underlying projects can thus have a price-earnings ratio of, say, 7 or 10.

The changed price-earnings ratio under the 50-50 capital structure.

How much total interest payment does the debt have to promise? The loan value is \$500, the interest rate is 7.5%, and payments are forever. Therefore, the perpetuity formula can be solved as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \$500 &= \frac{\text{Annual Payment}}{7.5\%} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{Annual Payment} = \$37.50/\text{year} \\ \mathsf{PV} &= \frac{\mathsf{CF}}{\mathcal{L}(r)} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{10.26}$$

Having issued debt, the equity no longer receives \$100 per year, but only what is left after interest payments, i.e., \$100 − \$37.50 = \$62.50 per year. Consequently, the price-earnings ratio of this firm's equity shares will be the value of the equity (now \$500) divided by the earnings available to equity,

$$\mathrm{P}/_{\mathrm{E}} = \$500/\$62.50 = 8.0 \text{ (times)} \quad . \tag{10.27}$$

In sum, when the same firm is financed with a 50/50 debt equity ratio, rather than a 0/100 debt equity ratio, its price-earnings ratio is 8 rather than 10. Figure 10.5 shows this graphically for a whole range of different debt-asset ratios: the higher the firm's debt load, the higher the interest payments, the lower the equity earnings, and the lower the price-earnings ratio. (The figure assumes that the expected [not just the promised!] debt interest rate increases in the debt-asset ratio according to the formula $5\% + 5\% \cdot D/A$.)

IMPORTANT: *The price-earnings ratio is higher when the firm has lower leverage (debt-equity ratio).*

Revisiting CocaCola, PepsiCo, and Cadbury: Using leverage information to improve valuation.

To compare firms that you deem to be identical in operations, but different for their capital structures, you need to adjust them to equivalent, unleveraged values. Let us put this insight to practical use. Assume that the companies of Coca Cola, PepsiCo, and Cadbury Schweppes are identical, even if their equities may not be because of their different leverage ratios. Some gathering of information from Yahoo!*Finance* allows you to put together Table 10.3:

Table 10.3. Financial Information from Yahoo

		Leverage		Financials, in billion-$			
STOCK (SYM)	$\mathbf{P/E}$	D/E	$\frac{D}{D+E} = D/A$	Interest Expense	EBITDA	Earnings	Equity Value
Coca Cola (KO)	35	56%	36%	\$0.244	\$6.14	\$3.91	\$136.85
PepsiCo (PEP)	34	33%	25%	\$0.207	\$4.26	\$2.74	\$93.16
Cadbury Schweppes (CSG)	21	49%	33%	\$0.155	\$1.28	\$0.72	\$15.12

Note: The firm's asset value A is the sum of its equity value E and debt value D. The formula to translate debt-equity (D/E) ratios into debt-asset (D/A) ratios is

$$\frac{1}{D/A} = \frac{1}{D/(D+E)} = \left(\frac{D+E}{D}\right) = 1+\left(\frac{E}{D}\right) \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \frac{D}{E} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{D/A}-1\right)} \ . \tag{10.28}$$

In general, debt-equity ratios could either be based on the market value of equity or the book value of equity. The latter is especially problematic—though commonly used.

Translating P/E ratios of levered firms into P/E ratios as if unlevered.

You are now ready to ask what would happen if the three companies were not leveraged, but were financed only by equity. First, the earnings would not be diminished by the interest expense that the firms are currently paying. You must add back the interest expense to the earnings to get "as if unlevered" earnings. Second, the market capitalization of equity would increase. After all, the firm's projects would no longer be financed by debt and equity, but by equity alone. If a firm has a debt/equity ratio of 33% (1/3), for every dollar worth of debt it currently has 3 dollars worth of equity. Thus, an unlevered equivalent firm would be financed with \$4 in equity. To convert a debt/value ratio to an unlevered value, divide the (levered) equity value by one minus the debt/value ratio. In Table 10.4, we can construct "as if unlevered" $\mathbf{P/E}$ ratios by dividing the unlevered firm capitalization by the unlevered equity earnings (all quoted in billion dollars):

Table 10.4. Computing Unlevered $\mathbf{P/E}$ Ratios

STOCK (SYM)	$(\mathbf{P/E})_{\text{Lv}}$	Unlevered Earnings	Unlevered Value	$(\mathbf{P/E})_{\text{UnLv}}$
Coca Cola (KO)	35	\$3.91 + \$0.244 = \$4.15	\$136.85/(1 − 36%) ≈ \$214	52
PepsiCo (PEP)	34	\$2.74 + \$0.207 = \$2.95	\$93.16/(1 − 25%) ≈ \$124	42
Cadbury (CSG)	21	\$0.72 + \$0.155 = \$0.88	\$15.12/(1 − 33%) ≈ \$23	26

SIDE NOTE: These computations are only approximations and wrong for at least two reasons. First, we assume no taxes. If by unlevering the firm incurred more taxes, these taxes should be subtracted from firm value. Chapter 22 will discuss the role of corporate taxes in more detail. Fortunately, in this particular case (for these three companies), not much would change. Second, the unlevering depends on assuming that the firm continues forever, so that the perpetuity formula is applicable. This could also be wrong. Again, fortunately, in this particular case (for these three companies), not much would change for other growth assumptions.

Unfortunately, in our case, after proper adjustment, the P/E ratios have become more different, not more similar.

Does it appear as if Cadbury Schweppes (the underlying unlevered company) now is a lot more like PepsiCo than levered Cadbury Schweppes shares were to levered PepsiCo shares? Unfortunately, the answer is the opposite of what you should have hoped for. The P/E ratios of Cadbury Schweppes are even more different from those of Coca Cola and PepsiCo than they were before. You also have some more information to evaluate your earlier remarkable finding that PepsiCo could be accurately valued with the comparable of Coca Cola. You chose Coca Cola because you believed that the firm of Coca Cola would be similar to PepsiCo, not that the equity shares of Coca Cola would be similar to those of PepsiCo. But, in this case, the firms of Coca Cola and PepsiCo are less similar than the equity shares of Coca Cola and PepsiCo: their unlevered P/E ratios are farther apart than their levered P/E ratios. So, if you had properly applied the valuation ratio of one firm to the other firm, you would have concluded that PepsiCo and Coca Cola are not so similar, after all, and that you should not have compared the two. You just got lucky. You lived in ignorant bliss.

Solve Now!

Q 10.5 *List the main problems with using comparables.*

Q 10.6 *A firm with a* P/E ratio *of 20 wants to take over a firm half its size with a* P/E ratio *of 50. What will be the* P/E ratio *of the merged firm?*

Q 10.7 *The following are quarterly earnings and assets for Coca Cola and PepsiCo:*

	KO				*PEP*			
	Earnings (Qua/Ann)		*Assets (Qua/Ann)*		*Earnings (Qua/Ann)*		*Assets (Qua/Ann)*	
6/2002	*1,290*		*25,287*		*888*		*24,200*	
3/2002	*801*		*23,689*		*651*		*22,611*	
12/2001	*914*	*3,979*	*22,417*	*22,417*	*667*	*2,662*	*21,695*	*21,695*
9/2001	*1,074*		*22,665*		*627*		*23,036*	
6/2001	*1,118*		*22,387*		*798*		*19,503*	
3/2001	*873*		*22,248*		*570*		*18,660*	
12/2000	*242*	*2,177*	*20,834*	*20,834*	*698*	*2,183*	*18,339*	*18,339*
9/2000	*1,067*		*23,141*		*755*		*17,659*	
6/2000	*926*		*23,258*		*668*		*17,492*	

If it is now in July 2002, what would be good comparable earnings and comparable assets for these two firms?

Q 10.8 *A firm that is 100% equity financed is considering a recapitalization to a 50-50 debt-equity ratio. What will happen to its* P/E ratio*?*

Q 10.9 *A firm has a* P/E ratio *of 12 and a debt-equity ratio of 66%. What would its unlevered* P/E ratio *(i.e., the* P/E ratio *of its underlying business) approximately be?*

Q 10.10 *On October 9, 2002, the seven auto manufacturers publicly traded in the U.S. were*

Manufacturer	*Market Cap*	*Earnings*
Volvo (ADR)	*$5.7*	*-$0.18*
Ford	*$14.1*	*-$5.30*
GM	*$18.8*	*$1.83*
Nissan (ADR)	*$27.0*	*$2.55*
DaimlerChrysler	*$32.3*	*$4.63*
Honda (ADR)	*$37.7*	*$3.09*

file=comparables.tex: RP

*(All quoted dollars are in billions. Ignore leverage. **ADR** means **American Depositary Receipt**, a method by which foreign companies can list on the New York Stock Exchange.) On the same day, Yahoo! Deutschland reported that Volkswagen AG had earnings of 3.8 billion euro. In terms of sales, Volkswagen was most similar to Volvo and Ford. What would you expect Volkswagen to be worth?*

Q 10.11 *What are the basic assumptions in applying the* P/E ratio *of one company to the earnings of another company?*

10·4. Other Financial Ratios

Financial ratio analysis is extremely widely used in the real world—unfortunately, often without a good understanding of what ratios mean, what they do not mean, how they can be put to good use, and how they can sometimes obscure the right decision. If you do financial ratio analysis, be very, very careful. Know what it is that you are doing and think about meaning.

You should now understand that price-earnings ratios are very useful, but they are no panacea. They have big shortcomings, too. Still, overall, the P/E ratio is the best ratio I am aware of.

However, there are situations in which other value ratios can give you better value estimates. Moreover, there are non-value based ratios, whose purpose is less to give you an estimate of value and more to give you intuition about the economics of the firm.

10·4.A. Value-Based Ratios

Price-earnings ratios are not the only measure. The goal is to find a measure that is proportional to value.

There are a large number of other ratios in use, and this section presents a potpourri of some popular ones. The list is not exhaustive, as indeed only the imagination limits the quantities that can be used in the denominator. Two ratios that are relatively similar to the P/E ratio discussed in the previous section are

Alternative Price-Earnings or Cash Flow Ratios Earnings can be defined in a variety of ways: with or without extraordinary items, diluted, etc. There is no right or wrong way: the goal is to find a ratio that makes the comparables firm appear to be as similar as possible.

For example, one measure of earnings that from Chapter 9 is EBITDA (earnings before interest and taxes, depreciation, and amortization). The rationale is that accounting depreciation is so fictional that it should not be subtracted out. But EBITDA has problems with leverage (interest expense) and capital expenditures—if you use it, please subtract these. Of course, if you do, you will de-facto use a price over cash flow ratio, which can suffer from the shortcomings that capital expenditures are very "lumpy." This is why we used earnings rather than cash flows in the first place.

Price/Book-Value-of-Equity Ratios This ratio is commonly used, and often abbreviated as the market/book ratio. It should not be recommended for valuation purposes. The reason is that *the book value of equity is often close to meaningless.* Accountants use the book value of equity to balance assets and liabilities, in accordance with all sorts of accounting conventions (such as depreciation). As a result, this measure is especially different across firms with different ages of fixed assets (such as buildings).

Many biotech firms have neither earnings nor sales. So, what to use?

However, sometimes neither earnings nor the book-value of equity are meaningful. For example, biotech firms may need to be valued even before they have meaningful, positive earnings. The idea is to substitute another, more meaningful quantity for earnings. In biotech firms, a better (but still very bad) measure than earnings may be the number of scientists. An analyst might find that biotech firms are worth $1,000,000 per employed scientist. In principle, the comparables valuation method remains the same as it was when used with price earnings ratios. The alternative ratio typically still has price (either equity value or overall firm value)

in the numerator, but a quantity other than earnings (e.g., sales or number of scientists) in the denominator. The analyst chooses comparable firm(s), determines an appropriate typical comparables ratio, and finally multiplies this comparables ratio by the firm's own quantity to determine its value. This may work well only if firms are comparable enough among the chosen dimensions that application of the ratio of some firms to the ratio of others offers a meaningful price.

Price/Sales Ratios This ratio is especially popular for industries that do not have positive earnings. Therefore, it was commonly used during the Internet bubble, when few Internet firms had positive earnings. Presumably, firms with higher sales should be worth more.

One problem was that firms, such as Amazon during the Internet bubble at the turn of the millennium, were known to sell merchandise at a loss. Naturally, it is relatively easy to sell \$100 bills for \$99! So, the more Amazon sold, the more money it lost—but the more valuable Amazon appeared to be. After all, with higher sales, the Price/Sales ratio suggested that Amazon would be worth more.

Price/Employees Ratio This ratio is popular when financials are deemed not trustworthy. Of course, it assumes that the employees at the comparable firm are as productive as the employees in the company to be valued.

Price/Scientists Ratio This ratio is popular for upstart technology firms, which have neither earnings nor sales. One problem is that it induces firms to hire incompetent scientists on the cheap in order to increase their valuations. After all, firms with more scientists are presumed to be worth more.

Price/Anything Else Your imagination is the limit.

This latter set of ratios only makes sense if you compute them for the enterprise value of the firm (that is, the value of all equity plus the value of all debt). If you want to obtain the value of the equity, you should compute these ratios using the enterprise value, and then subtract off the current value of all debt.

Solve Now!

Q 10.12 *On July 28, 2003 (all quoted dollars are in billions):*

Firm	*Cash*	*Sales*	*Dividends*	*Value*	*D/E*
CSG	*n/a*	*\$9.2*	*\$0.4*	*\$12.2*	*153%*
KO	*\$3.6*	*\$20.3*	*\$2.2*	*\$110.8*	*43%*
PEP	*\$1.8*	*\$25.9*	*\$1.1*	*\$81.0*	*22%*

Hansen Natural had \$210,000 in cash, \$9.22 million in sales, zero dividends, and a debt/equity ratio of 10%. What would a price/cash ratio predict its value to be? A price/sales ratio? A price/dividend ratio? Elaborate on some shortcomings.

10·4.B. Non-Value-Based Ratios Used in Corporate Analyses

Other ratios can be used to judge health and profitability.

Not all ratios are used to estimate firm value. Other ratios can help to assess financial health and profitability—or can be merely interesting. They can help in the "art" of valuation if they can help you learn more about the economics of the firm. For example, a number of ratios are often used to judge financial health (proximity to bankruptcy) and profitability. Most ratios vary systematically by industry and over the business cycle. Thus, they should only be compared to similar firms at the same time. On occasion, however, ratios can be so extreme that they can raise a good warning flag. For example, if you find that the firm has ten times its earnings in interest to pay, you might become somewhat concerned about the possibility of bankruptcy, regardless of what is standard in the industry at the time.

Watch out for the meaning of book value of equity, in particular.

Before discussing the ratios, realize that you should be twice as cautious when ratios involve quantities from the balance sheet and four times as cautious when they involve the book value of equity. This quantity is often so far from the true market value that ratios based on the book value can be almost meaningless. (It is not even a good estimate of replacement value, either.) The reason is that after accountants have completed all their bookkeeping, this number will become what is required to equalize the left-hand side and right-hand side of the balance sheet. It is a "placeholder."

We now do ratios on PepsiCo.

Without further ado, here are some of the more interesting and common ratios. For each one, you will find one or more sample computations for PepsiCo in 2001 (which you can compare to the financials from Section 9·1.B), but be aware that many of these ratios exist in various forms. The ratios are sorted, so that the ones at the top tend to reflect financial health and liquidity, while the ones at the bottom tend to reflect profitability. www.investopedia.com offers a nice reference for many of these ratios.

Debt-related ratios.

Let us begin with ratios that consider the firm's debt load. A firm that has high debt ratios (especially compared to its industry) must often be especially careful to manage its cash and inflows well, so as to avoid a credit crunch. Moreover, if you want to borrow more money, then potential new creditors will be very interested in how likely it is that you will not default. They will judge your indebtness relative to your profitability, cash flow, and industry.

Debt/Equity Ratio The ratio of debt over equity. Many variations exist: debt can be just long-term debt, all obligations, or any other kind of liability. Equity can be measured either in terms of book value or in terms of market value.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:}\quad \frac{\text{Long Term Debt}}{\text{Market Value of Equity}} = \frac{2,651}{87,407} \approx 3\% \ . \tag{10.29}$$

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:}\quad \frac{\text{Long Term Debt}}{\text{Book Value of Equity}} = \frac{2,651}{8,648} \approx 31\% \ . \tag{10.30}$$

As stated above, the book value of equity is very problematic. The book value of debt is usually much better—and, as is not the case with equity, you rarely have access to the market value of debt, anyway. (If interest rates have not changed dramatically since issue, this is a good approximation of overall market value.)

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:}\quad \frac{\text{All Liabilities}}{\text{Market Value of Equity}} = \frac{13,047}{87,407} \approx 15\% \ . \tag{10.31}$$

Debt Ratio As above, but adds the value of debt to the denominator. Because market value of debt is rarely available, a common variant adds the book value of debt and the market value of equity. For example,

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:}\quad \frac{\text{Long Term Debt}}{\text{Market Value of Equity + Debt}} = \frac{2,651}{87,407+13,047} \approx 2.6\% \ . \tag{10.32}$$

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:}\quad \frac{\text{Long Term Debt}}{\text{Book Value of Assets}} = \frac{2,651}{21,695} \approx 12\% \ . \tag{10.33}$$

file=comparables.tex: LP

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{All Liabilities}}{\text{Market Value of Equity + Debt}} = \frac{13,047}{87,407+13,047} \approx 13\% \ . \tag{10.34}$$

Interest Coverage The ratio of debt payments due as a fraction of cash flows. Many variations exist: debt payments can be only interest due, or include both principal and interest. Cash flows can be any of a number of choices. Popular choices are pure cash flows, operating cash flows, net income plus depreciation minus capital expenditures, and net income plus depreciation. For example,

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Short Term Borrowings}}{\text{Cash Flow (Table 9.10)}} = \frac{354}{1,556} \approx 23\% \ . \tag{10.35}$$

Times Interest Earned (TIE) The earnings before interest (usually also before taxes) divided by the firm's interest. In some sense, the inverse of interest coverage.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Times Interest Earned}}{\text{TIE}} = \frac{4,021}{219} \approx 18 \ . \tag{10.36}$$

Current Ratio The ratio of **current assets** (cash, accounts receivables, inventory, marketable securities, etc.) over **current liabilities** (interest soon-due, accounts payable, short-term loans payable, etc.) is a measure of liquidity. Often interpreted to be "healthy" if greater than 1.5.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Current Assets (Page 217)}}{\text{Current Liabilities}} = \frac{74}{158} \approx 0.5 \ . \tag{10.37}$$

Do not read too much into this ratio. PepsiCo is very healthy, even though its current ratio is low.

Quick Ratio or Acid-Test is like the current ratio, but deletes inventories from current assets. It is often considered healthy if it is greater than 1.0. The idea is that you are then likely to be able to cover immediate expenses with immediate income.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Current Assets (Page 217)}}{\text{Current Liabilities}} = \frac{7}{158} \approx 0.0 \ . \tag{10.38}$$

The **cash ratio** further eliminates receivables from current assets.

Duration and Maturity You have already used these concepts in the bond context, but they can also apply to projects and even to firms. They can measure what type of investment the firm is really making—short-term or long-term. This is not an ordinary ratio in that it requires projections of future cash flows.

Turnover The ratio of sales divided by a component of working capital.

- **Inventory Turnover**—how often your inventories translate into sales.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Inventories}} = \frac{26,935}{1,310} \approx 21/\text{year} \ . \tag{10.39}$$

  Most financials also provide the components of inventories, so you could further decompose this.

- **Receivables Turnover**—how quickly your customers are paying.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Receivables}} = \frac{26,935}{2,142} \approx 13/\text{year} \ . \tag{10.40}$$

file=comparables.tex: RP

- **Payables Turnover**—how quickly you are paying your suppliers.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Sales}}{\text{Payables}} = \frac{26,935}{4,461} \approx 6/\text{year} \ . \tag{10.41}$$

These measures are sometimes inverted (one divided by the ratio) and multiplied by 365 to obtain a "number of days" measure. For example,

- **Days of Receivables Outstanding** (DRO), also called **Days of Sales Outstanding** (DSO). Accounts Receivables divided by total sales on credit, times number of days outstanding.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{365 \cdot \text{Receivables}}{\text{Net Sales}} = \frac{365 \cdot 2,142}{26,935} \approx 29 \text{ days} \ . \tag{10.42}$$

  PepsiCo collects its bills about every 30 days. A lengthening of this number often indicates that customers are running into financial difficulties, which could impact PepsiCo negatively.

- **Days of Inventories Outstanding**. Inventory divided by total sales on credit, times number of days outstanding:

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{365 \cdot \text{Inventories}}{\text{Net Sales}} = \frac{365 \cdot 1,310}{26,935} \approx 18 \text{ days} \ . \tag{10.43}$$

  PepsiCo turns over its inventory every 18 days.

- **Days of Payables Outstanding** (**DPO**). Accounts Payables divided by total sales on credit, times number of days outstanding.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{365 \cdot \text{Payables}}{\text{Net Sales}} = \frac{365 \cdot 4,461}{26,935} \approx 60 \text{ days} \ . \tag{10.44}$$

  A lengthening of this number could mean that PepsiCo is having difficulties coming up with cash to meet its financial obligations—or found a way to pay bills more efficiently (more slowly in this case).

There are also combined versions, such as the **Cash Conversion Cycle**, which is the sum of inventory processing period and the number of days needed to collect receivables. For PepsiCo, this would be 18 + 29, or about one-and-a-half months.

Turnover ratios and their derivatives (below) are especially important for firms in the commodities and retail sector, such as Wal-Mart. Good control often allows firms to leverage economies-of-scale. In this sense, the above measure corporate efficiency, and help managers judge their own efficiency relative to their competition.

Profit Margin (PM) or Return on Sales The net or gross profit divided by sales.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Sales}} = \frac{2,662}{26,935} \approx 10\% \ . \tag{10.45}$$

Mature cash cow firms should have high ratios; growth firms typically have low or negative ratios.

Return on (Book) Assets (ROA), like return on sales, but divides net income by the book value of assets.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Book Value of Assets}} = \frac{2,662}{21,695} \approx 12\% \ . \tag{10.46}$$

A variant of this measure that adds back interest expense is better, because it recognizes that assets pay out cash to both shareholders and creditors. Nevertheless, both measures are dubious, because the book value of assets is often very unreliable. (The book value of assets contains the book value of equity.)

Return on (Book) Equity (ROE), like return on sales, but divides net income by the book value of equity. You also know that I *really* do not like this measure.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Book Value of Equity}} = \frac{2,662}{8,648} \approx 31\% \ . \tag{10.47}$$

Total Asset Turnover (TAT) A measure of how much in assets is required to produce sales. Again, with book value of assets in the denominator, this is not a reliable ratio.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Assets}} = \frac{26,935}{21,695} \approx 1.2 \ . \tag{10.48}$$

The DuPont Model multiplies and divides a few more quantities into the definitions of ROA and ROE:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ROE} &= \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Book Equity}} = \underbrace{\frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Sales}}}_{\text{Profit Margin}} \cdot \underbrace{\frac{\text{Assets}}{\text{Book Equity}}}_{\text{Equity Multiplier}} \cdot \underbrace{\frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Assets}}}_{\text{Asset Turnover}} \\ &= \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{EBIT - Taxes}} \cdot \frac{\text{EBIT - Taxes}}{\text{Sales}} \cdot \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Sales}} \cdot \frac{\text{Assets}}{\text{Book Equity}} \cdot \frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Assets}} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{10.49}$$

A similar operation can be applied to a variant of ROA:

$$\text{ROA} = \frac{\text{EBIAT}}{\text{Assets}} = \frac{\text{EBIAT}}{\text{Sales}} \cdot \frac{\text{Sales}}{\text{Assets}} \ . \tag{10.50}$$

EBIAT is net income before interest after taxes. With book value of assets and book equity involved, this is often not a particularly trustworthy decomposition, even though it is mathematically a tautology.

The idea of these decompositions is that they are supposed to help you think about what the drivers of ROE and ROA are. Again, I do not like this analysis, because I believe that neither ROA nor ROE are good starting points for an analysis of what drives value. Not everyone agrees with my opinion here—especially not the individuals administering the CFA exam, where the DuPont model remains a staple.

Book-to-Market Ratio The book-value of the equity divided by the market value of the equity. If the book value of equity is representative of how much the assets would cost to replace, then this is a measure of how much the market values the (special) growth opportunities that the company has created from replaceable assets.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Book Equity}}{\text{Market Equity}} = \frac{8,648}{87,407} \approx 10\% \ . \tag{10.51}$$

Dividend Payout Ratio The paid out dividends divided by earnings. The idea is that a firms that pays out more earnings today should pay out less in the future, because—in contrast to a firm that retains earnings—it lacks the paid out cash for reinvestment.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Dividends}}{\text{Net Income}} = \frac{994}{2,662} \approx 37\% \ . \tag{10.52}$$

Payout Ratio The dividend payout ratio can be broadened to also include share repurchases, or even net repurchases (i.e., net of equity issuing) to obtain a net payout ratio.

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Dividends + Equity Repurchasing}}{\text{Net Income}} = \frac{2,710}{2,662} \approx 100\% \ . \tag{10.53}$$

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Dividends + Equity Repurchasing - Issuing}}{\text{Net Income}} = \frac{2,186}{2,662} \approx 82\% \ . \tag{10.54}$$

file=comparables.tex: RP

PepsiCo distributed most of its earnings to shareholders.

Dividend Yield The amount of dividends divided by the share price. Dividends can include share repurchases (in which case, this is called the **payout ratio**). Dividends are a flow measure, while the stock price is a stock measure. Consequently, dividends can be measured at the beginning of the period or at the end of the period (in which case, this is called the **dividend-price ratio**). Incidentally, stock-flow timing was also an issue for some of the measures above, though timing matters more for volatile measures, such as the stock market value. For example,

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Dividends + Equity Repurchasing}}{\text{Market Value}} = \frac{2,710}{87,407} \approx 3.1\% \ . \tag{10.55}$$

Firms that have a low payout yield today either have to see smaller stock price increases in the future (which means a lower expected rate of return), or they have to increase their payout yield sometime in the future. Otherwise, no one would want to hold them today.

Retention Ratios The retained earnings, divided either by sales, assets, or income. A firm that decides to start retaining more earnings should pay out more in the future. Because the retained earnings should be reinvested, such firms should have higher expected earnings growth. These measures are usually calculated as one minus the dividend payout ratio or one minus the sum of dividends and equity repurchases divided by net income or one minus the sum of dividends and net equity repurchases divided by net income. For example,

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Income - Payout}}{\text{Payout}} = \frac{2,662 - 2,710}{2662} \approx -0\% \ . \tag{10.56}$$

PepsiCo also issued \$524 of shares in connection with the Quaker merger, so

$$\text{PepsiCo, 2001:} \quad \frac{\text{Net Income - Net Payout}}{\text{Net Payout}} = \frac{2,662 - 2,710 + 524}{2,662} \approx 19\% \ . \tag{10.57}$$

so its retention rate could be judged to be around 19%.

How useful are these ratios? It depends on the situation, the industry, and the particular ratio for the particular firm—and what you plan to learn from them. If every firm in the industry has almost the same ratio, e.g., a days of receivables average somewhere between 25 and 32 days, and the firm you are considering investing in reports 7 days, you should wonder about the economics of this shorter number. Is your firm better in obtaining money quickly? Does it do so by giving rebates to faster paying customers? Does it mostly work on a cash basis, while other firms in the industry work on credit? If so, why? Or is your firm simply cooking its books?

file=comparables.tex: LP

10·5. Closing Thoughts: Comparables or NPV?

Use both valuation methods, and use common sense to decide what you believe.

Should you use comparables or net present value? In practice, comparables enjoy great popularity, primarily because they do not require much thought. Anyone can look up another firm's P/E ratio and multiply it by the earnings of our own firm. In contrast, even a rough NPV analysis is quite involved. Of course, after reading this chapter, you should understand that both methods rely on inputs that you will almost surely not know perfectly. You will never have the perfect comparable, and you will never know the expected future cash flow perfectly. Fortunately, the cause of errors is different for these two methods. Therefore, if you use both, you can get a better idea of where the true value lies. This does not mean that you should average the valuation estimates obtained from NPV and comparables. Instead, you should perform both analyses, and then take a step back and make up your mind as to which combination of methods seems to make most sense in your particular situation.

Yes, valuation is as much an art as it is a science. It consists of the tools that you have now learned *and* your ability to judge. If you can judge better than others, you will end up a rich person.

10·6. Summary

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The P/E ratio (price-earnings) is the price of the firm divided by the firm's earnings, or equivalently the share price divided by the earnings per share.

  Often, these earnings are not the current but the expected earnings.
- The P/E ratio reflects the firm's growth opportunities and cost of capital. Higher growth firms have higher P/E ratios.
- P/E ratios and other methods based on comparables can provide an alternative valuation of firms and projects.
- Comparables suffer from a variety of problems, some of which can be corrected, and some of which are intrinsic and uncorrectable.
- Never average P/E ratios. Either average E/P yields and then invert, or divide total multiple-firm values by total multiple-firm earnings.
- The comparables valuation techniques and NPV have different weaknesses, which therefore often makes it worthwhile to consider and judge both.
- There are many other ratios that can be used to judge the profitability and the financial health of a company. As far as valuation is concerned, their primary purpose is only to provide useful background information.

A. Advanced Appendix: A Formula For Unlevering P/E ratios

Start with a special case in which firms have comparable leverage.

Return to the example in Section 10·2. Your comparison benchmark firm was

Firm B Financing	E	P	P/E
100-0 Equity-Debt Financed	$100.00	$1,000	10
50-50 Equity-Debt Financed	$62.50	$500	8

So, here is your problem: How do you value firm A, if the underlying projects of firm A are similar to those of firm B? Should you use 8 or 10 as your price-earnings ratio? The answer is easy if A has the same debt equity ratio as B. Then you can just use the comparison firm's price equity ratio as a proxy for your own price equity ratio. That is, if Firm A produced $200 in income *for equity holders* each year, after financing with a 50/50 debt equity ratio, then you would expect its equity value to be about

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Implied A Value} &= \left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{A}} \cdot \text{Earnings}_{\text{A}} \\ &\approx \left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{B}} \cdot \text{Earnings}_{\text{A}} \\ &= \qquad 8 \cdot \$200 \qquad = \$1,600\ , \end{aligned}$$

where we write out Earnings to avoid confusion with equity. As just stated, this equity valuation depends on the assumption that Firm A had borrowed an equal amount in outstanding debt ($1,600), i.e., that it had a 50/50 debt equity ratio to which you could apply your B multiple.

Problem is: leverage may be different. Try to unlever both.

But what do you do if your A, with its reported income of $200 for equity holders, had borrowed $2,500 instead of $1,600? Or, what if A had not borrowed anything? You need to determine an appropriate comparable that you can apply to A and that takes into account the actual leverage of A and of B. The easiest method is to convert all price-earnings ratios to a 0/100 debt equity ratio. In this case, you already know the result that you wish to obtain: a formula should tell you that unlevering B should translate the previous ratio of 8 into a price-earnings ratio of 10. Next, you need to look up the interest rate that A is paying for borrowing. Let us assume that A's records inform you that the interest rate is 8%. This means that A is paying $200 in interest each year, before it paid off the $200 to its equity holders. Consequently, you know that a 0/100 debt equity A would have produced earnings of $200 + $200 = $400. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Implied A Value} &= \left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{A}} \cdot \text{Earnings}_{\text{A}} \\ &\approx \left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{B}} \cdot \text{Earnings}_{\text{A}} \\ &= \qquad 10 \cdot \$400 \qquad = \$4,000 \end{aligned}$$

This would be the value of an all equity firm. Because A has borrowed $2,500, its equity must be worth $1,500.

file=comparables.tex: LP

An attempt at a delevering formula.

So the trick is to convert all debt equity ratios into "all equity" ratios first. Unfortunately, there is no general formula to do so: the translation formula depends on the time when the cash flows are likely to occur. The following formula, based on a plain perpetuity assumption on the firm's earnings, often works reasonably well:

A Debt Adjustment Formula for P/E ratios

$$\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{Relevered}} = \frac{1-(r_{\text{Firm}}-r_{\text{Debt}})\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Debt}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)}{r_{\text{Firm}}} = \left[1-(r_{\text{Firm}}-r_{\text{Debt}})\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Debt}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)\right]\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Price}_{\text{Firm}}}{\text{Earnings}_{\text{Firm}}}\right)$$

where "firm" means an all-equity no-debt financed firm. Let us apply this formula to firm B. Let us assume that you know that B has a value of \$1,000 and a price-earnings ratio of 10 when it has no debt, but it is now considering a move to a 50/50 debt equity ratio. You want to determine this capital structure change on its new price-earnings ratio. Use the formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{Relevered}} &= \left[1-(r_{\text{Firm}}-r_{\text{Debt}})\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Debt}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)\right]\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Price}_{\text{Firm}}}{\text{Earnings}_{\text{Firm}}}\right)\\ &= \left[1-(10\%-7.5\%)\cdot\left(\frac{\$500}{\$62.50}\right)\right]\cdot 10\\ &= [1-0.025\%\cdot 8]\cdot 10\\ &= 0.8\cdot 10 = 8 \quad .\end{aligned}$$

This formula makes it easy to figure out how an all equity firm's price earnings ratio changes when it takes on debt. If you know the debt equity ratio of a firm and want to convert it into a debt-free equivalent price-earnings ratio, then you can use the following conversion.

To convert the observed leveraged P/E ratio into a hypothetical P/E ratio for an unlevered firm, the following approximation formula can be helpful:

$$\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{Firm}} = \frac{1}{\left[1-(r_{\text{Firm}}-r_{\text{Debt}})\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Debt}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)\right]}\cdot\left(\frac{\text{Price}}{\text{Earnings}}\right)_{\text{Equity}} \quad . \tag{10.58}$$

This formula makes very specific assumptions on the type of firm, specifically that earnings are a plain perpetuity. The formula can sometimes be a decent approximation if earnings are not a perpetuity.

1. You would probably value houses by the method of comps—NPV would be exceedingly difficult to do. However, there are often similar houses that have recently sold. You might use a ratio that has price in the numerator and square-foot in the denominator, and multiply this ratio from comparable houses by the square-foot of your new residence.

2. Microsoft is growing faster, so it would have a higher P/E ratio.
3. $E/P = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) \Rightarrow \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = P/E + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) = 1/40 + 6\% = 8.5\%$. Therefore, $E/P = 8.5\% - 7\% = 1.5\%$ and its P/E ratio would shoot from 40 to 66.7. The percent change in value would therefore be $66.6/40 - 1 \approx 66\%$.
4. $E/P = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) \Rightarrow \mathcal{E}(\tilde{g}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) - E/P = 10\% - 1/20 = 5\%$.

5. See the text.
6. Do an example. The acquirer has value of \$100, so it needs to have earnings of \$5. The target has value of \$50, so it needs to have earnings of \$1. This means that the combined firm will have earnings of \$6 and value of \$150. Its P/E ratio will thus be 25.
7. Earnings: The TTM Earnings for KO is $3,979 + (801 - 873) + (1,290 - 1,118) = 4,079$. The TTM Earnings for PEP is $2,662 + (651 - 570) + (888 - 798) = 2,833$. Assets: You would not compute a TTM, but use the most recent assets: \$25,287 for Coca-Cola and \$24,200 for Pepsico.
8. You know from the text that the P/E ratio would go down.
9. This question cannot be answered if you do not know the different costs of capital. For example, if the firm's cost of capital is equal to the debt cost of capital, the P/E ratio would not change at all!
10. Yahoo reported an actual market value of \$10.52 billion euros, and an earnings yield of 36.9% ($\mathbf{P/E}$ of 2.7). The easy part is supplementing the table:

Manufacturer	Market Cap	Earnings	P/E ratio	E/P yield
Volvo (ADR)	\$5.7	-\$0.18	-31.7	-3.2%
Ford	\$14.1	-\$5.30	-2.7	-37.6%
GM	\$18.8	\$1.83	10.3	9.7%
Nissan (ADR)	\$27.0	\$2.55	10.6	9.4%
DaimlerChrysler	\$32.3	\$4.63	7.0	14.3%
Honda (ADR)	\$37.7	\$3.09	12.2	8.2%
Toyota (ADR)	\$87.3	\$4.51	19.4	5.2%
Sum	\$222.9	\$11.13	25.1	6.0%
Average	\$31.8	\$1.59	3.6	0.9%

The hard part is deciding on a suitable $\mathbf{P/E}$ comparable. The first method (average E/P yield, then invert) suggests adopting the astronomical ratio of $1/0.9\% = 111$, due to Ford's enormous loss in terms of market capitalization (Ford had \$85 billion in sales, and a positive EBITDA of \$4.8 billion. But Ford also has ongoing depreciation on the order of \$15 billion per year, but capital and other expenditures on the order of \$18 (2001) to \$37 billion (2000 and 1999).) The second method (sum up E's and P's first) suggests $\$222.9/\$11.1 = 20$, but it weighs the larger [and Japanese] firms more highly. Nevertheless, in this case, the second method came closer to the actual Volkswagen $\mathbf{P/E}$ multiple of 27.
Incidentally, by mid-2003, VW had introduced a couple of flops, and its earnings had sagged to \$2.5 billion, though its market capitalization had increased to \$15 billion. This meant that Volkswagen's $\mathbf{P/E}$ multiple had shrunk from 27 to 6 in just nine months!

11. The firms are alike substitutes in all respects, including product, product lines, and debt ratio.

12. These ratios are usually performed without debt adjustment—the equivalent of surgery without anesthesia. This is a huge problem, but it also makes this exercise relatively easy.

Firm	Value/Cash	Value/Sales	Value/Dividends
CSG	n/a	1.3	30
KO	185	5.5	50
PEP	45	3.1	74

- The cash-based ratio suggests a value between \$10 million and \$39 million. The cash-based ratio values all firms as if only current cash has any meaning, and the ongoing operations are irrelevant (except to the extent that they have influenced current cash).

- The sales-based ratio suggests a value between $12 million, $29 million, and $50.6 million. Because the smaller comparables have lower ratios, one might settle on a lower value. The sales-based ratio ignores that CSG's equity value is relatively low because more of its value is capitalized with debt than with equity.
- The dividend-based ratio suggests a zero value. Obviously, this is not a perfect estimate. Firms can choose different payout policies.

Hansen's actual value on this day was $51.4 million.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

Part III

Investments

"This next song's about spreading risk in a volatile market by diversification."

There is a long version and short version of the Investments part of the book. You are looking at the long version. The short version will appear in a dedicated corporate finance version of the book, and can already be downloaded from the website.

This introduction appears in the Survey text only.

Transition

We are still plagued by one problem: We do not yet know where the cost of capital, the $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$, in the present value formula comes from. We just assumed we knew it.

In the real world, the cost of capital is determined by our investors—and our investors have many choices. So we have to understand their mindset. They can put money in bonds, stocks, projects, etc.—or into our firm's projects. If investors very much like the alternatives, then our firm's cost of capital will be high. Think of our corporate cost of capital as our investors' *Opportunity Cost of Capital*.

To learn more about where the cost of capital comes from, we have to study not just our own project, but more generally how investors think—what they like and dislike.

Of course, it is nice that we are often ourselves investors, so learning how to best invest money in the financial markets has some nice side benefits.

SIDE NOTE: In the Investments part of the book, we will use the terms "stock" and "security" very loosely. Our concern is really the choice among many investment opportunities, which includes bonds, options, futures, real estate, etc. It is just more convenient to use the phrase stock, rather than "any possible investment opportunity."

Please be aware that I have recently changed the naming of securities, and that I am trying to make most security names appear in mathitalic (e.g., $\mathcal{A}$). This has neither been double-checked, yet, nor fully completed (specifically, firms $\mathcal{1}$ through $\mathcal{N}$ must be italic). Please bring mistakes and issues to my attention.

What we want to Accomplish in this Part

The goal of this part of the book is to teach you how public investors think. This is important not only when you are an investor who wants to decide how to allocate money among the thousands of possible financial investments, but also for the corporate manager who wants to get you and other investors to part with their money in order to finance new corporate projects.

- Chapter 11 gives a short tour of historical rates of returns to whet your appetite, and explains some of the setup of equity markets.

  Typical questions: Did stocks, bonds, or cash perform better over the last thirty years? How safe were stocks compared to bonds or cash?

- Chapter 12 describes how you can trade equity securities (a.k.a. "stocks") , and how securities can be combined into portfolios.

  Typical questions: what was the rate of return on a portfolio that invested money into the 30 stocks that form the **Dow-Jones Industrial Average** (**DJIA**) index?

- Chapter 13 shows how to measure the risk and reward of securities.

  Typical questions: if you held a portfolio of the 30 stocks that form the DJIA, what would your risk be?

- Chapter 14 shows how to measure the risk and reward of portfolios.

  Typical questions: How would the risk change if you rearrange how much money you put into each of the 30 stocks of the Dow Jones?

- Chapter 15 shows how holding many stocks in your portfolio can reduce your risk.

  Typical questions: How much lower would your risk be if you held all 30 stocks in the DJIA instead of just a single stock in the DJIA?

- Chapter 16 shows how you can determine the *best* portfolio.

  Typical questions: Can you invest better than just into the 30 stocks in the DJIA? How much risk does PepsiCo contribute to your portfolio? Would it be better if you shifted more money into PepsiCo stock, or should you stick to your current portfolio?

- Chapter 17 shows what expected rates of return securities have to offer *if* investors make smart investment decisions. It gives the formula (cookbook) version of the "Capital Asset Pricing Model" (CAPM) model, which answers this question.

  Typical questions: What is a fair reward for PepsiCo's stock investors, given how much risk it contributes to the overall market portfolio?

- Chapter 18 explains more of the theory behind the CAPM.

- Chapter 19 expands on the efficient markets concept, first mentioned in the introduction. It also explains the difference between arbitrage and good bets.

  Typical questions: what kind of information can you use to beat the market?

CHAPTER 11

A First Look at Investments

Historical Rates of Returns

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:17h)

last major edit: Jan 2005

The subject of investments is so interesting that we are going to break our rule of starting simple. Instead of laying all the foundations before we look at the evidence, we shall first look at some evidence: the world of returns on stocks, bonds, and "cash." My plan is to show you the annual returns on these investment classes (and on some individual stocks), so that you can visualize the main patterns that matter—patterns of risk, reward, and covariation. Don't worry if you cannot follow everything in this chapter. It will all be explained in due course—and you can always come back later.

file=invmotive.tex: LP

11·1. Stocks, Bonds, and Cash, 1970–2004

Common categories.

Financial investment opportunities are often classified into just a few large categories: cash, bonds, and stocks. Cash is actually a misnomer, because it usually designates not physical bills under your mattress, but bonds that are very liquid, very low-risk, and very short-term. Another common designation for cash is **money-market**, a catch-all designation that includes not only very short-term Treasury bills but also a number of other securities (such as CDs, savings deposits, and commercial paper) that are listed in Appendix B.2·6. We will just use the term cash, because it is shorter. We have already talked at length about bonds and their many different varieties. Stocks are often further categorized into a few hundred large-firm stocks that are quite visible, liquid and trade very frequently, and mostly make up the popular S&P500 index; and a few thousand small-firm stocks that trade less frequently.

Categories hide a lot of variation. They are only broadly indicative.

You should not take any of these categories too literally, because each of them is quite diverse. For example, we already know that bonds may include anything from Treasury bonds, corporate bonds, municipal bonds, foreign bonds, to even more exotic instruments. Nevertheless, these categories can be useful in giving a broad perspective—because most, though not all, bonds behave more like other bonds than they behave like stocks. The same holds true for stocks and cash—most, but not all stocks behave more like other stocks, and most, but not all money market instruments behave more like other money market instruments. So let us begin our examination of investments by looking at the historical performances of these asset categories.

11·1.A. Graphical Representation of Historical Stock Market Returns

The time series diagram.

We begin with Figure 11.1, which shows the year-by-year rates of return of the S&P500. It represents the performance of the 500 largest firms in the U.S. stock market. Looking at the data, you would have earned 2.3% in 1970, 13.5% in 1971, and so on. The table in Figure 11.1 allows you to compute the average rate of return over all 35 years as 12.3% per annum—also marked by the red triangle in the graph on the left side, and in the table at the end of the data.

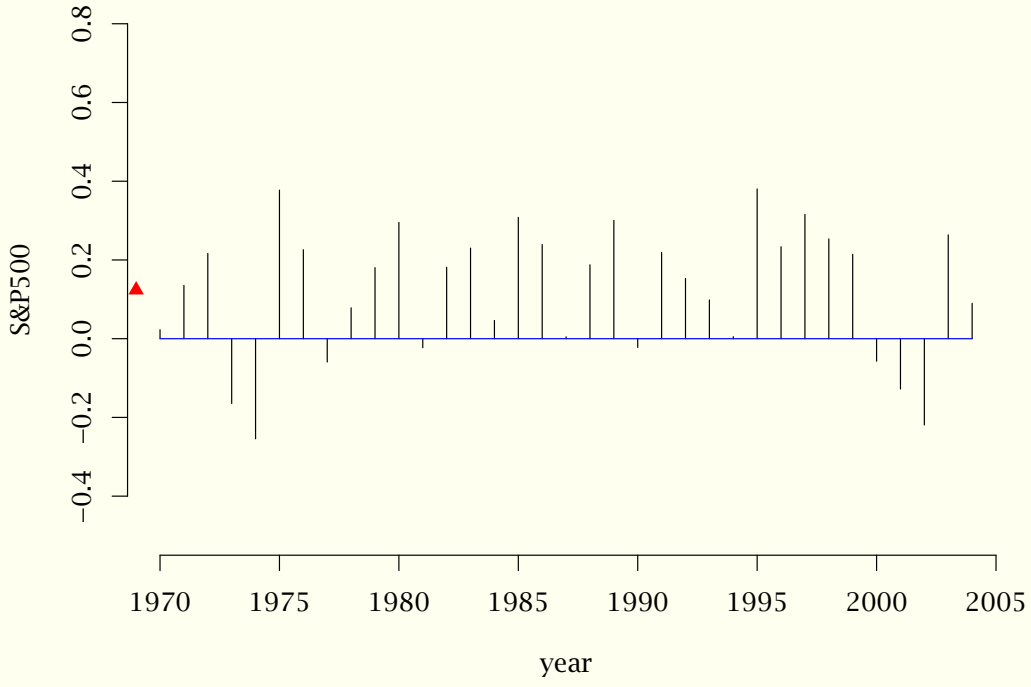
The histogram shows how spread out returns are.

Figures 11.2 and 11.3 take the same data as Figure 11.1, but present it differently. The density function—a smooth version of a histogram—in Figure 11.2 is based on the number of returns that fall within a range. For example, the table in Figure 11.1 shows that only 1971, 1979, 1982, 1988, and 1992 had rates of return between 10% and 20%. In this period, the most frequent return range was between 20% and 30%, but there were also a good number of returns below 10%—and even two years in which you would have lost more than 20% of your money (1974 and 2002). The density function makes it easy to see how spread out returns are.

file=invmotive.tex: RP

Figure 11.1. The Time Series of Rates of Returns on the S&P500, 1970–2004

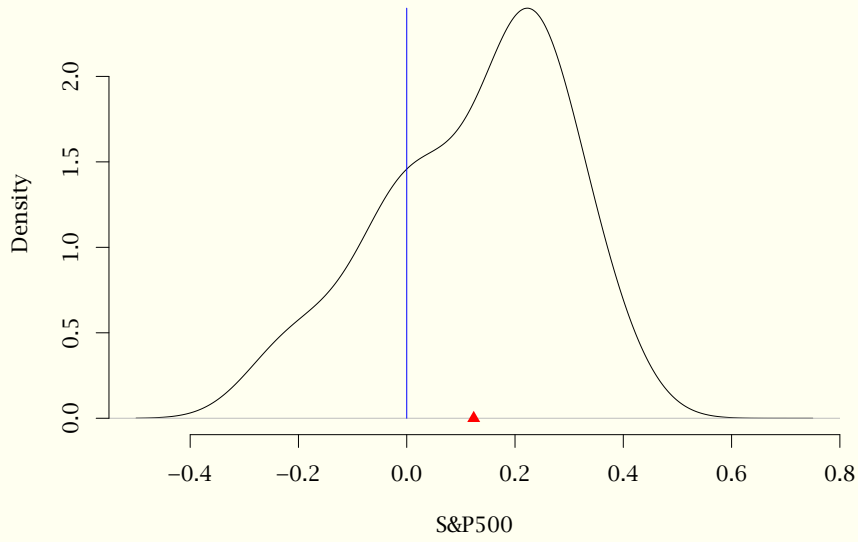
1970	+2.3%	1980	+29.6%	1990	−2.2%	2000	−5.7%
1971	+13.5%	1981	−2.3%	1991	+21.9%	2001	−12.8%
1972	+21.7%	1982	+18.2%	1992	+15.3%	2002	−21.9%
1973	−16.5%	1983	+23.0%	1993	+9.8%	2003	+26.4%
1974	−25.4%	1984	+4.6%	1994	+0.5%	2004	+9.0%
1975	+37.7%	1985	+30.8%	1995	+38.0%	Average	12.3%
1976	+22.6%	1986	+23.9%	1996	+23.4%	Std Dev	16.7%
1977	−5.9%	1987	+0.5%	1997	+31.6%		
1978	+7.8%	1988	+18.8%	1998	+25.3%		
1979	+18.0%	1989	+30.1%	1999	+21.4%		



The graph is a representation of the data below.

file=invmotive.tex: LP

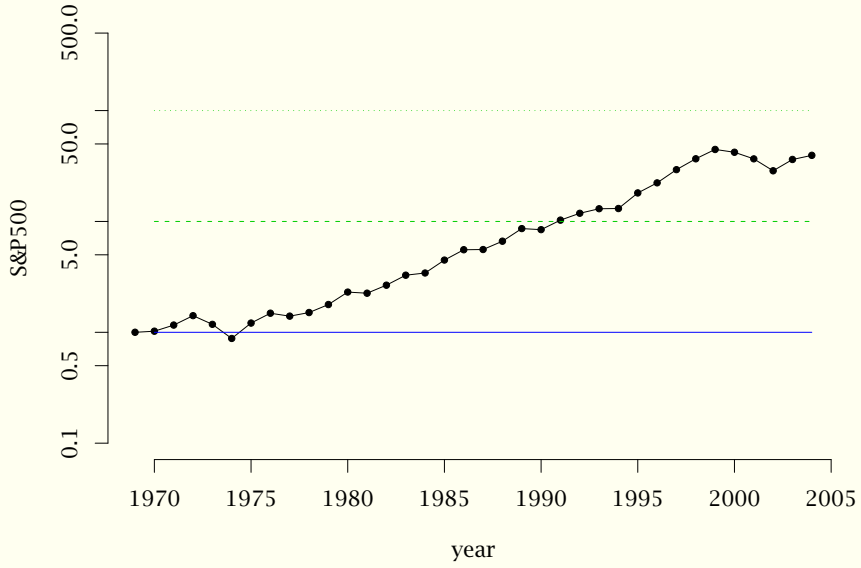
Figure 11.2. Density Function of S&P500 Rates of Return, 1970–2004



Return Range	$< -20\%$	$-20\%, -10\%$	$-10\%, 0\%$	0%-10%	10%-20%	20%-30%	$30\% - 40\%$	$> 40\%$
Number of Years	2	2	4	7	5	10	5	0

The graph and table are just different representations of the data in Figure 11.1.

Figure 11.3. Cumulative Rates of Return For the S&P500, 1970–2004



1970	$1.02	1980	$2.31	1990	$8.43	2000	$42.06
1971	$1.16	1981	$2.25	1991	$10.28	2001	$36.68
1972	$1.41	1982	$2.66	1992	$11.85	2002	$28.64
1973	$1.18	1983	$3.27	1993	$13.02	2003	$36.19
1974	$0.88	1984	$3.43	1994	$13.08	2004	$39.45
1975	$1.21	1985	$4.48	1995	$18.06		
1976	$1.49	1986	$5.55	1996	$22.28		
1977	$1.40	1987	$5.58	1997	$29.31		
1978	$1.51	1988	$6.63	1998	$36.74		
1979	$1.78	1989	$8.62	1999	$44.62		

The graph and table are just different representations of the data in Figure 11.1.

The cumulative rate of return graph shows how long-run investments would have fared.

The cumulative return graph in Figure 11.3 offers yet another perspective. It plots the cumulated annual returns (on a logarithmic scale). For example, by the end of 1973, the compound return of $1 invested in 1970 would have been

$$\begin{aligned} \$1 \;\cdot\; (1+2.3\%) \;\cdot\; (1+13.5\%) \;\cdot\; (1+21.7\%) \;\cdot\; (1-16.5\%) \;&\approx\; \$1.18 \\ I_{1970} \;\cdot\; (1+r_{1970}) \;\cdot\; (1+r_{1971}) \;\cdot\; (1+r_{1972}) \;\cdot\; (1+r_{1973}) \;&. \end{aligned} \tag{11.1}$$

The cumulative return perspective illustrates geometric returns, which adjust for the fact that a return of −50% followed by +100% is a net zero return, even though the average rate of these two returns would be a +25%. The geometric rate of return is always lower than the arithmetic rate of return. For example, our 18% compound rate of return corresponds to a 4.2% annualized rate, which is lower than the 5.25% arithmetic average rate of return from 1970 to 2003. The graph shows that an investment in the stock market of $1 at the start of 1970 would have ended up as $39.70 at the end of 2004—of course, ignoring all taxes.

11·1.B. Comparative Investment Performance

Explore the complex figure first. Stare at it.

What does history tell us about rate-of-return patterns on our three major investment categories—stocks, bonds, and cash? We can find out by plotting exactly the same graphs as those in Figures 11.1–11.3. Figure 11.4 repeats them for a set of historical investment choices *all on the same scale*. It displays a lot of information about the performance of these investments. Do not expect to understand everything at first glance: you need to stare at the elements of Figure 11.4 for a while to comprehend them.

You have already seen the first row—investments in "cash." Only the scale is different to make direct comparison to the other investments in the graphs below easier. Note how tight the distribution of cash returns is around its 7% mean.

The first row is again "cash."

The second row describes investments in 20-year Treasury bonds. The graph in column 3 shows that the bars are now sometimes slightly negative (years in which you would have earned a negative rate of return), but there are also years in which you would have done much better. This is why the histogram is much wider for 20-year bonds than it is for cash securities, and this is why the risk was 12% per year—although the average rate of return was a higher 10% per year. By 2004, your \$1 invested in 1970 would have become \$19.29.

The second row, long-term bonds, offered more reward, but was more risky, too.

The third row describes an investment in an "index fund" that holds stocks to replicate the rate of return on the S&P500 index. Sometimes, this is colloquially called "stocks" or "the stock market," though it is really only "large stocks." Large stocks would have been even more risky (with a mean rate of return of 12% per year and a risk of 17% per year), but your \$1 invested in 1970 would have been worth \$39.45 in 2004.

The third row, stocks overall, offered even more reward, but was even more risky.

Let us see how some individual stock investments would have differed from just the broad category "stocks." The remaining four rows represent the rates of returns for four stalwarts: Coca Cola [KO], PepsiCo [PEP], Sony [SNE], and United Airlines [UAL]. The histograms are all over the place: investing in a single stock would have been a rather risky venture, even for these household names. Indeed, we could not even plot the final year for UAL in the right-most cumulative return graph, because UAL stock investors lost *all* invested money in the 2003 bankruptcy, which on the logarithmic scale would have been minus infinity.

Individual stocks can offer more reward, or be even more risky.

SIDE NOTE: The compound inflation rate from 1970 to 2002 was 5.0. (Put differently, \$1 in 1970 purchased as much as \$5.04 did in 2003.) Therefore, the \$9.69 end result in cash would have been worth \$9.69/\$5.04 ≈ 1.92 in 1970-inflation-adjusted dollars. Over 30 years, you would have only doubled your real purchasing power. You can easily compute equivalent real returns for the other investment opportunities.

Furthermore, the difference between \$39 in stocks and \$9.69 in cash or \$19.29 in bonds is an understatement *for you.* Interest was taxable each year, while the capital gain in stocks was not (the dividend gain would have been taxable). Very roughly, a highly taxed investor would have ended up with about \$5 in "cash," \$13 in bonds, and \$33 in stocks. Therefore, in real *and* after-tax terms, from 1970 to 2004, a highly taxed investor would have ended up just about even if invested in "cash," doubled or tripled if invested in bonds, and quintupled if invested in stocks. This was a great 30 years for stocks!

SIDE NOTE: From 1926 to 2002, the annual risk and reward of some large asset-class investments were approximately as follows:

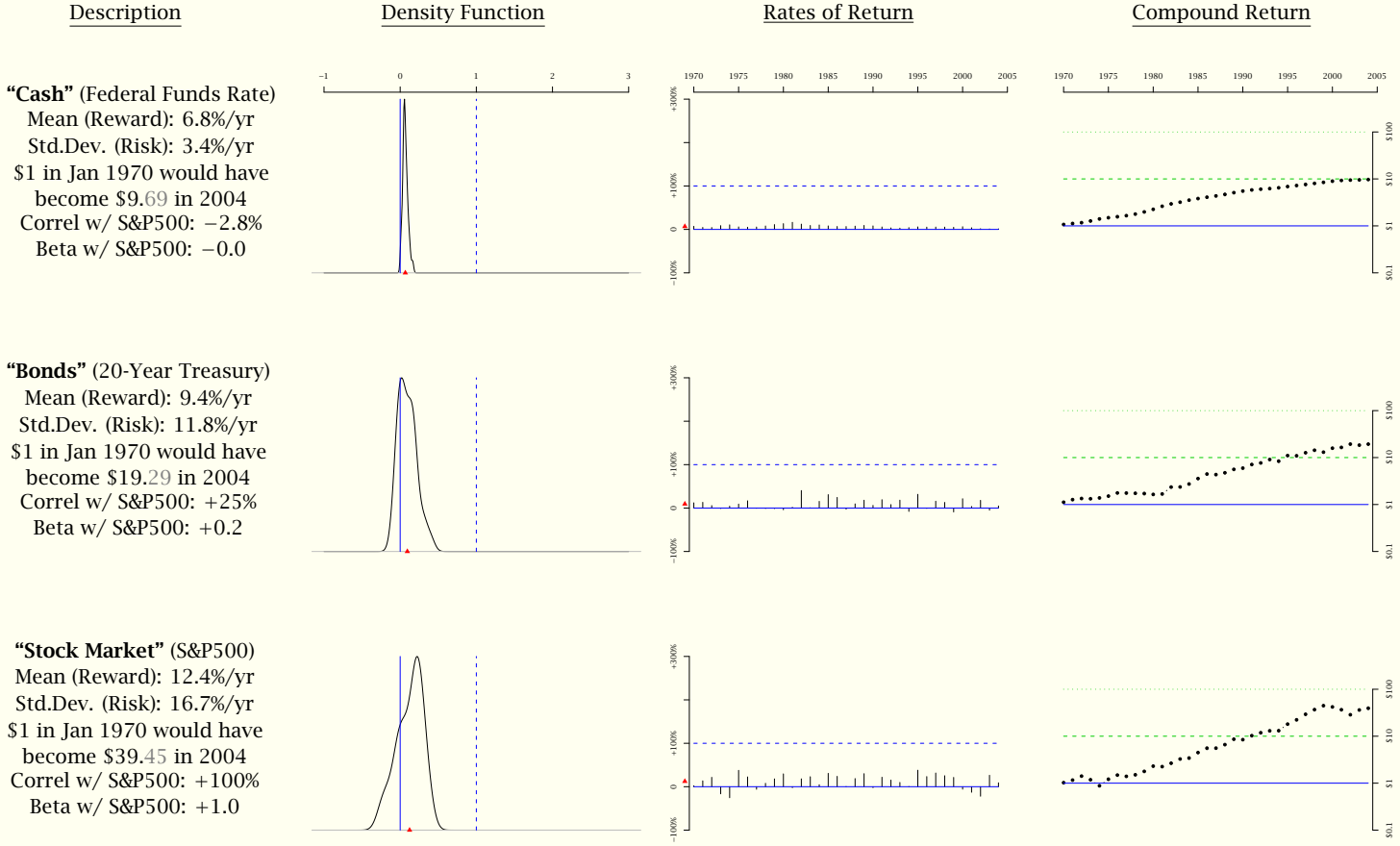
Asset Class	"Reward" $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	"Risk" $Sdv(\tilde{r})$
Short-Term U.S. Government Treasury Bills	4%	3%
Long-Term U.S. Government Treasury Bonds	5%+	9%+
Long-Term Corporate Bonds	6%	9%
Large Firm Stocks	10%	20%
Small Firm Stocks	15%	30%

(Inflation was about 3% per year.)

(Source: Ibbotson Associates, and others.)

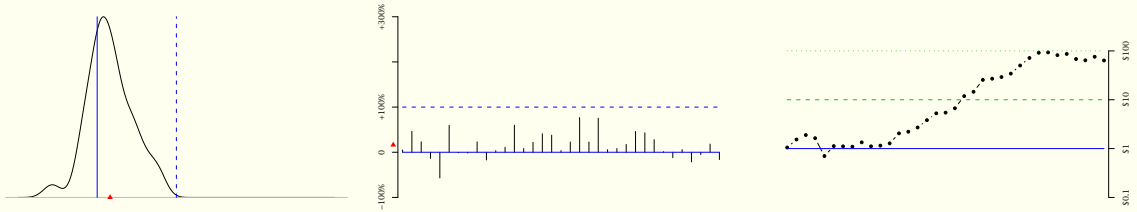
file=invmotive.tex; LP

Figure 11.4. Comparative Investment Performance, 1970–2004

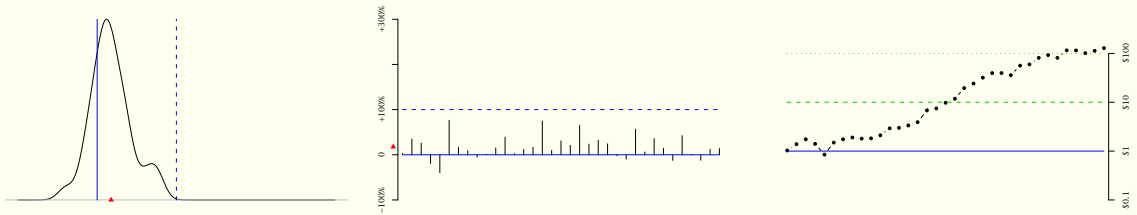


file=invmotive.tex: RP

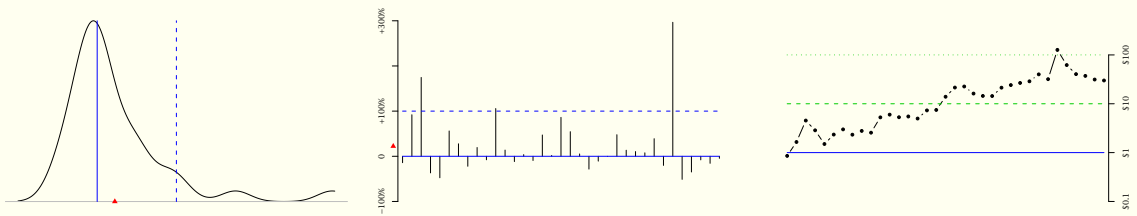
CocaCola (KO)
Mean (Reward): 16.3%/yr
Std.Dev. (Risk): 28.5%/yr
$1 in Jan 1970 would have become $63.71 in 2004
Correl w/ S&P500: +63%
Beta w/ S&P500: +1.0



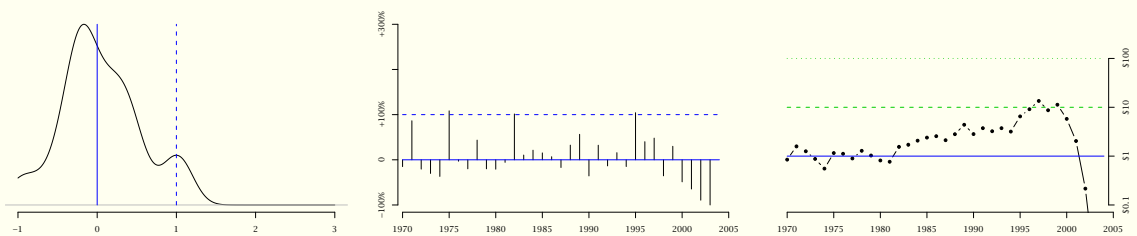
PepsiCo (PEP)
Mean (Reward): 17.6%/yr
Std.Dev. (Risk): 25.5%/yr
$1 in Jan 1970 would have become $128.78 in 2004
Correl w/ S&P500: +59%
Beta w/ S&P500: +0.9



Sony (SNE)
Mean (Reward): 22.3%/yr
Std.Dev. (Risk): 66.9%/yr
$1 in Jan 1970 would have become $29.94 in 2004
Correl w/ S&P500: +37%
Beta w/ S&P500: +1.5



United (UAL)
Mean (Reward): 4.7%/yr
Std.Dev. (Risk): 51.x%/yr
$1 in Jan 1970 would have become $0.00 in 2004
Correl w/ S&P500: +57%
Beta w/ S&P500: +1.7



Description | Density Function | Time Series | Compound Return

11·1.C. Comovement, Beta, and Correlation

What is the correlation mentioned in the figure?

Figure 11.5 highlights the rates of return on the S&P500 and one specific stock, Coca-Cola (KO). The top row redraws the graphs for these two investments from the third column in Figure 11.4. Do you notice a correlation between these two rates of return? Are the years in which one is positive (or above its mean) more likely to also see the other be positive (or above its mean), and vice-versa? It does seem that way. For example, the worst rates of return for both are 1974. Similarly, 1973, 2000, and 2001 were bad years for investors in either the S&P500 or Coca-Cola. In contrast, 1989 and 1975 were good years for both. The correlation is not perfect: in 1979, the S&P500 had a good year, but Coca-Cola had a bad one. It is very common for all sorts of investments to move together with the stock market: in years of malaise, almost everything tends to be in malaise. In years of exuberance, almost everything tends to be exuberant.

Why do we care about comovement?

This comovement of investments is very important if you do not like risk. An investment that increases in value whenever the rest of your portfolio decreases in value is practically like "insurance" that pays off when you need it most. You might buy into such an investment even if it offers only a very low expected rate of return. In contrast, you might not like an investment that does very badly whenever the rest of the portfolio also does badly. To be included in your portfolio, such an investment would have to offer a very high expected rate of return.

Quantifying comovement—Market-beta, the best-fit line.

How can we measure the extent to which securities covary with others? For example, you might want to know how Coca-Cola performs if your current portfolio is the S&P500 (a common stand-in for the market portfolio). Will Coca-Cola also go down if the market goes down (and make a bad situation worse), or will it go up and thereby serve as useful insurance? How can you quantify such comovement? Graphically, you can plot the two return series against one another, as is done in the lower plot in Figure 11.5. The graph also shows the best line between the two series. This line has a slope of 1.07 and is called the market-beta of Coca-Cola's stock. This market-beta is an important measure of comovement for an investor who owns the market portfolio. Loosely speaking, if a stock has a very steep positive slope, say +3, then if the market and our portfolio drops by 10%, this stock would be expected to drop by 30%—it would make a bad situation worse. In contrast, if a stock has a very negative slope, say −1, then if the market drops by 10%, this investment would "rescue" us, earning a positive 10% rate of return. It would act like insurance.

Market-beta, the best-fit line, is related to correlation, too.

Another common measure of comovement is the correlation. A correlation of 100% indicates that two variables always perfectly move together; a correlation of 0% indicates that two variables move about independently; and a correlation of −100% indicates that two variables always perfectly move in opposite directions. (A correlation can never exceed +100% or −100%.) In this case, the correlation is +63%. Slope and correlation are very similar measures—in fact, a positive correlation implies a positive beta and vice-versa. Of course, beta and correlation are only measures of *average* comovement: even for positive beta investments, there are individual years in which the investment and stock market do not move together. We already mentioned 1979 and 2000 as examples in which Coca-Cola and the S&P500 went their different ways. Negative betas are rare. There are only a very few investment categories that are generally thought to be negatively correlated with the market—principally gold and other precious metals.

Solve Now!

Q 11.1 *What can you see in a time-series graph that is lost in a histogram?*

Q 11.2 *What can you see in a histogram that is more difficult to see in the time-series graph?*

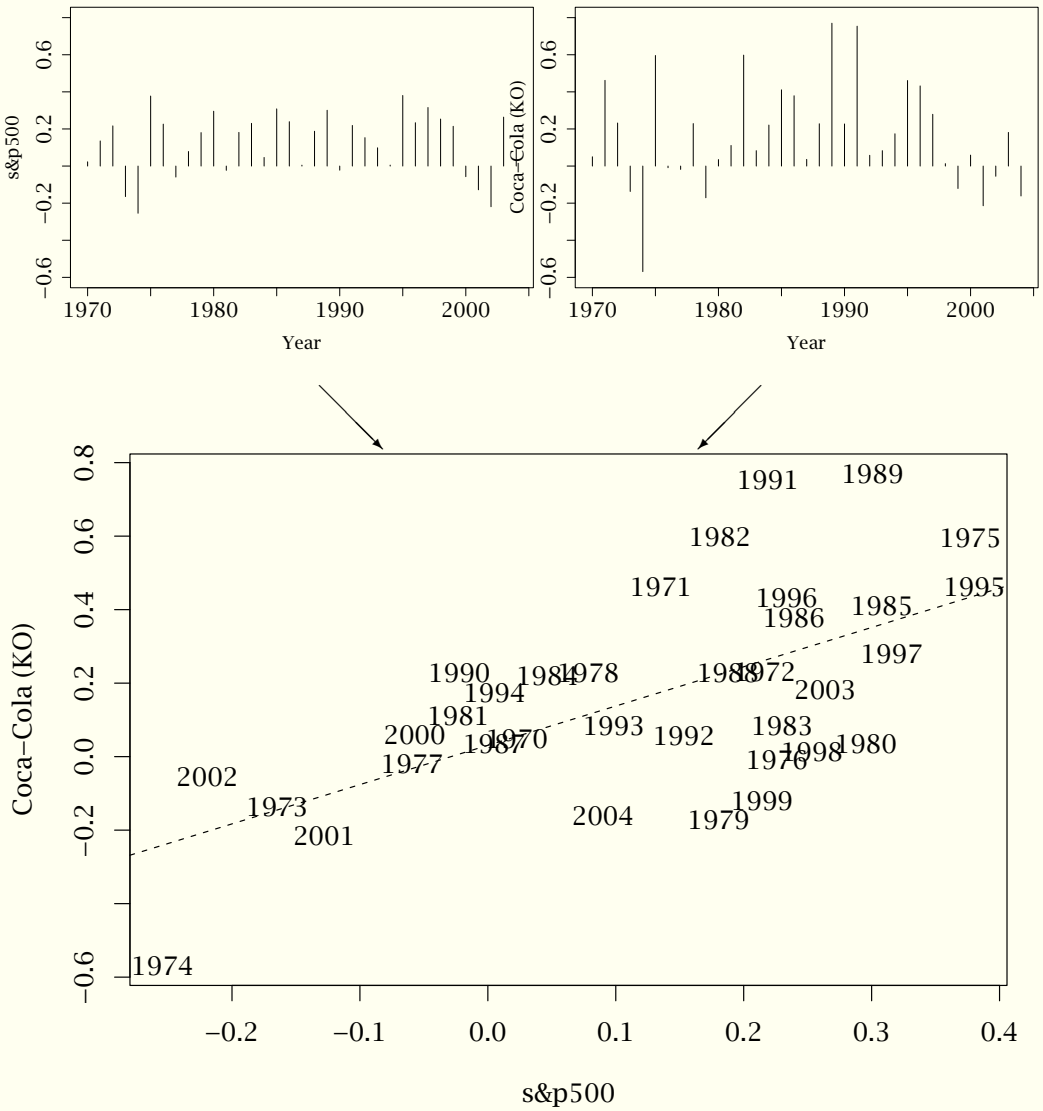
Q 11.3 *What can you see in a cumulative return graph that is difficult to see in the time-series graph?*

Q 11.4 *How do you graph a "market-beta"? What should be on the X-axis, what should be on the Y-axis? What is an individual data point?*

Q 11.5 *What is the market beta of the market?*

file=invmotive.tex: RP

Figure 11.5. Rate of Returns on The S&P500 and Coca-Cola (KO)



The lower graph combines the information from the two upper graphs. The stock market rate of return is on the *X*-axis, the Coca-Cola rate of return is on the *Y*-axis. The figure shows that in years when the stock market did well, Coca-Cola tended to do well, too, and vice-versa. This can be seen in the slope of the best fitting line, which is called the market-beta of Coca-Cola and which will play an important role.

11·2. Visible and General Historical Stock Regularities

The main empirical regularities.

What can you learn from these graphs? Actually, almost everything that there is to learn about investments—and I will explain these facts in great detail soon.

- The history indicates that stocks offered higher average rates of return than bonds, which in turn offered higher average rates of return than "cash." However, keep in mind that this was only *on average*. In any given year, the relationship might have been reversed. For example in 2002, stock investors lost 22% of their wealth, while cash investors gained about 1.7%.
- Although stocks did well (on average), you could have lost your shirt investing in them, especially if you had bet on just one individual stock. For example, if you had invested $1 into United Airlines in 1970, you would have had only 22 cents left in 2002—and nothing the following year.
- Cash was the safest investment—its distribution is tightly centered around its mean, so there were no years with negative returns. Bonds were riskier. Stocks were riskier, yet.

  (Sometimes, stocks are called "noisy," because it is really difficult to predict what they will turn out to offer.)
- There was some sort of relationship between risk and reward: the riskiest investments tended to have higher mean rates of return.

  (However, the risk has to be looked at "in context." Thus, please do not overread the simple relationship between the mean and the standard deviation here.)
- Large portfolios consisting of many stocks tended to have less risk than individual stocks. The S&P500 fund had a risk of 17%, much less than the risk of most individual stocks.

  (This is due to diversification.)
- A positive average rate of return usually, but not always, translates into a positive compound holding rate of return. United Airlines had a positive average rate of return, despite having lost all investors' money.

  (You already know why: A stock that doubles and then halves has rates of return of +100% and –50%. It would have earned you a 0% total compound rate of return. But the average rate of return would have been positive, $[100\% + (-50\%)]/2 = +25\%$.)
- Stocks tend to move together. For example, if you look at 2001–2002, not only did the S&P500 go down, but the individual stocks also tended to go down. In 1998, on the other hand, most tended to go up (or at least not down much). The mid-1990s were good to all stocks. And so on. In contrast, money market returns had little to do with the stock market. Long-term bonds were in between.

  On annual frequency, the correlation between cash and the stock market (the S&P500) was about zero; between long-term bond returns and stock market around 30%; and between our individual stocks and the stock market around 40% to 70%. The fact that investment rates of return tend to move together will be important. It will be the foundation for the market-beta, a measure of risk that we shall propose in Chapter 13.

file=invmotive.tex: RP

11·3. History or Opportunities?

History is only useful over longer horizons, not over just a few years.

Ultimately, finance is not interested in history for its own sake. We want to know more about the future, and history is useful primarily because it is our best available indicator of the future. But which history? One year? Thirty years? One hundred years? Trust me when I state that if we had drawn the graphs beginning in 1926 instead of 1970, our conclusions would have all remained the same. However, if we had started in 2001, what would we have seen? Two awful years for stock investors. We know intuitively that this would not have been a representative sample period. To make any sensible inferences about what is going on in the financial markets, we need many years of history, not just one, two, or three—and certainly not the 6-week investment performance touted by some funds or friends (who also often display remarkable selective memory!). The flip side of this argument is that we cannot reliably say what the rate of return will be over one year. We will be better in forecasting the average annual rate of return over 5 to 10 years than over 1 year. Any single year will be very noisy.

Still, history can be rather misleading. The Nikkei is a good example.

Instead of relying on just one year, relying on statistics computed over many years is much better. However, although 20 to 30 years of performance is the minimum number necessary to learn something about return patterns, this is still not sufficient. Again, we are really interested in what will happen in the next 5 to 10 years, not what did happen in the last 5 to 10 years. Yes, the historical performance can help us judge, but you should not trust it blindly. For example, an investor in UAL in 2000 might have guessed that the average rate of return for UAL would have been positive—and would have been sorely disappointed. Investors in the Japanese stock market in 1990 had seen the Nikkei-225 stock market index rise from 10,000 to 40,000—a four fold increase in just four years—a 40% rate of return every year. If they had believed history, they would have expected $40,000 \cdot (1 + 40\%)^{13} \approx 3.2$ million by the end of 2002. Instead, the Nikkei had fallen below 8,000 in April 2003, and has only recently recovered to 12,000. History would have been a terrible guide.

But, we do not have much choice other than to use some history.

Nevertheless, despite the intrinsic hazards in using historical information in forecasting stock market returns, having historical data is a great advantage. It is a rich source of forecasting power, so, like everyone else, we will use historical statistics. Yet we must also be careful in not overinterpreting them. For example, if we see crazily high or crazily low past historical rates of return, we should try to exercise additional caution.

Historical risk and betas are better predictors of the future risk and betas.

Fortunately for us, though, it turns out that correlations and risk (explained in the following chapters) tend to be more stable than historical mean rates of return. So, even though we do not believe that a $1 investment in PepsiCo will return $100 in 30 years, or that PepsiCo will return 18% next year, or that PepsiCo has an expected rate of return of 18% over the long run, we can believe that PepsiCo has a risk of around 25% to 30% per year, and that its correlation with the S&P500 is around 60%.

Presume we know today the *expected* statistics for the future, although we do not know future realized statistics.

To learn investments, we shall pretend that we know the statistical distributions from which future investment returns will be drawn. That is, we assume that we know the future expected rates of return, their standard deviations, correlations, etc., but we do not know the actual draws. For example, we assume that we may know that the lotto combination "5,10,12,33,34,38" has an expected investment rate of return of -5 cents, but we do not know whether this combination will win the jackpot. Usually, historical statistics will be our guide to future statistics.

Side Note: For the most part, we will work with historical statistics as if they were our expected statistics. So, we will try to slip in "unnoticed" that the historical statistical outcomes tell us something about the future expected statistical outcomes. After the sermon about how historical statistics need not be perfectly indicative of the future statistics, you should realize that equating the two will be a big and not necessarily innocuous jump. Fortunately, as we have already mentioned, historical betas and risks are pretty indicative of future betas and risks. Unfortunately, historical expected rates of return are not too indicative of future expected rates of return. Know what you can and what you cannot trust.

Solve Now!

Q 11.6 *Rank the following asset categories in terms of risk and reward: money-market, long-term bonds, the stock market, and a typical individual stock.*

Q 11.7 *Is the average individual stock safer or riskier than the stock market?*

Q 11.8 *Is it possible for an investment to have a positive average rate of return, but still lose you every penny?*

11·4. Eggs and Baskets

The basic investment choices.

Although the goal of this part of the book is to develop investments in a technical manner, we can explain the intuition with a parable about Easter eggs—a variation of the folk wisdom "Don't put all your eggs in one basket." Assume that you are an Easter-egg-seller and that you have to stock the baskets that you will be carrying to the market tomorrow. Your problem is that you do not know which color eggs will be the most sought after. Say that you can guess that the color that will most likely sell is blue (or colors close to blue)—but you really will not know until you start selling the eggs at the market.

11·4.A. The Overall Basket

Strategies—go for the highest expected rate of return, go for the safest strategy, or choose a little of each.

The first question is, what strategies can you pursue?

- You can paint all your eggs blue. This strategy is the equivalent of purchasing just the investments that have the highest possible expected rate of return. It will work great if you guess right, and this guess is the single most likely outcome—but it also has a very high chance of leaving you entirely destitute. It is a high-risk strategy.
- You can play it safe and not paint your eggs. Uncolored eggs can always be sold for food, so you assume practically no risk. This strategy is the equivalent of purchasing the very lowest-risk investments that also have the very lowest expected rates of return—like Treasury bills. You effectively give up on trying to obtain a high expected rate of return in exchange for more safety. It is a very low-risk strategy.
- You can stock your baskets with eggs of many colors—a strategy called diversification. You will not sell all eggs, but you will likely sell a good number. This strategy is the equivalent of purchasing many different stocks (or a mutual fund that holds many different stocks), where some investments will lose and others will gain. Relative to bringing only blue eggs, you are giving up some expected value today, but you are gaining some extra security, because you will not likely run into a situation where you cannot sell any eggs.

  The more varied the colors that you choose, the safer will be your basket. But you will not want all colors in equal proportions. You will want to tilt the color mix towards blue, because you believe blue offers the highest expected rates of return. Moreover, this basket will probably be similar to the baskets that other smart egg-sellers will choose. In the financial markets, this basket is probably close to something like the market portfolio, which has eggs of all sorts of different colors. Some colors in the market portfolio are relatively more prominent than others. The market portfolio will have relatively more "blue eggs," because they have the highest expected rate of return. Relative to bringing only blue eggs, this strategy is not as high mean, but it is also not as high risk. Relative to bringing only unpainted eggs, it is a higher mean strategy but also with higher risk.

file=invmotive.tex: RP

11·4.B. The Marginal Risk Contribution

A very important question is "How much are you willing to pay to have, say, one more yellow egg in your basket?" If you believe blue eggs offer the highest expected rates of return, would you even bring *any* yellow eggs? Yes! Even if you do not believe that yellow is likely to sell tomorrow, a yellow egg will likely sell precisely when most of your blue eggs won't sell. Yellow provides you with the equivalent of "insurance"—it pays off when the rest of your portfolio is losing. Therefore, you may very well be willing to bring some yellow eggs, and even though you expect to make a loss on them—of course, within reasonable bounds. You may be prepared to lose 5 cents on each yellow egg you bring, but you would not be prepared to lose $100.

You might choose some yellow eggs, even though they are not great investments in themselves.

In sum, yellow eggs are valuable to you *because* they are different from the rest of your portfolio. What matters is the insurance that yellow pay off when your blue investments do not.

Yellow is valuable, because it is different.

Perhaps the most important aspect is that you realize that it is not the own risk of each egg color itself that is important, but the overall basket risk and each color's contribution thereto. In fact, you already know that you may even expect to lose money on yellow eggs (just as you may expect to lose money on your homeowner's insurance). This again emphasizes that having yellow eggs as insurance is useful only *because* most of your eggs are not yellow. The risk contribution of yellow thus inevitably must depend on all the other eggs in your portfolios. Of course, it would make no sense to bring *only* yellow eggs—in this case, you would not only expect to lose 5 cents per egg, you would also most likely *always* lose these 5 cents and on all your eggs. In the financial market, the degree to which one stock investment is similar to others in your portfolio will be measured by the aforementioned beta—and if your portfolio is the market portfolio, then it is called the market beta. You will be willing to hold some stocks in the market portfolio that have a low expected rate of return because they are different from the rest of your portfolio—but only some, and only if their expected rate of return is not *too* low.

The risk of yellow eggs is irrelevant. What matters is risk of the overall basket. Yellow eggs help because they are different. If you bought too many yellow eggs, they would no longer be different from the rest of your portfolio!

In sum, when you look at your final basket, you should consider each egg along two dimensions—how does it contribute to your overall expected rate of return (what is its own expected rate of return?), and how does it contribute to your overall portfolio risk (how does its return covary with that of your overall basket?). In a good portfolio, you will try to earn a high expected rate of return with low risk, which you accomplish by having a balanced mix of all kinds of eggs—a balance that evaluates each egg by its expected rate of return versus its uniqueness in your basket.

Assets matter on the margin on two dimensions: expected return and risk contribution.

11·4.C. The Market Equilibrium

Assume now that you own one factory among many that is selling a particular type of colored egg to many smart egg traders. It would make sense for you to assume that your egg traders are smart, that they like to buy eggs in colors that have high expected rates of return, but that they also like to buy some eggs that are different and unique. In other words, you should assume that your traders do the same optimal basket stocking calculations that we have just gone through. You can even work out how much smart egg traders would be willing to pay for eggs of your factory's color. If your egg color is very different from those of the other eggs in traders' baskets, you can charge more for your eggs than if your eggs are very much like the rest of their eggs. In equilibrium, there should be a relationship—the most unusual-colored eggs should command higher prices and thereby earn egg traders lower expected rates of return, but egg traders still like them because of the insurance such eggs offer them, within reasonable bounds, of course.

If everyone is willing to pay more for unique eggs, then unique eggs will sell for higher prices and therefore earn a lower expected rate of return.

For stocks, this model is called the CAPM. It says that stocks that earn high rates of returns when the (market) portfolio of other stocks does poorly are more desirable, therefore priced higher, and therefore offer a lower expected rate of return. And this is what we are ultimately really after. As corporate executives, we want to know how our investors are valuing our projects. If our projects earn our investors money when the rests of their portfolio are doing poorly, then our investors will want us to take these projects on their behalves even if our projects have a (reasonably mildly) low expected rate of return. In finance-speak, we should use a lower

For stocks, this model is called the CAPM.

cost of capital for these projects, because they have lower market-betas—market-beta being a measure of the similarities of our projects' rates of return with those of other investments in the market. The CAPM gives us the precise formula that relates the market beta to the cost of capital, because it presumes that it can work out exactly what smart egg traders (market investors) like and dislike.

11·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Figure 11.4 showed an analysis of historical rate of return patterns of stocks, bonds, and cash investments.
  - Stocks, on average, had higher average rates of return than bonds, which in turn had higher average rates of return than cash investments.
  - Individual stocks were most risky. Large stock market portfolios had lower risk than individual stock holdings. Bonds had lower risk yet, and cash was least risky.
- Stocks (and many other investments) tended to correlate: when the stock market overall had a good year, most stocks also had a good year.
- Historical data can help us in predicting the future. It is especially useful and reliable in predicting future risk and correlation.
- Investments revolves around the following concepts:
  1. Investors can reduce their overall portfolio risk by diversifying—holding many different types of investments.
  2. An individual investment is more desirable if it has a higher expected rate of return, and if it has a lower correlation with the investor's overall portfolio.
  3. The CAPM is a model that corporations can use to assess the value of their projects to their investors. It assumes that all investors follow smart investment rules, which allows the CAPM to relate the expected rate of return of each investment to the correlation of each investment with an investors' portfolios.

CHAPTER 12

SECURITIES AND PORTFOLIOS

Applications

last file change: Feb 10, 2006 (19:13h)

last major edit: Jul 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

This chapter first explains where stocks come from and where they are traded. It then explains the process of going long (buying an asset to speculate that it will go up) and going short (selling an asset to speculate that it will go down). Finally, it explains portfolios and indexes.

12·1. Some Background Information About Equities Market Microstructure

The topic of investments traditionally focuses on equities (stocks) more than on other instruments. The main reasons may be that data on stocks are relatively easy to come by and that stocks are simply more interesting from a corporate perspective than many other financial instruments (e.g., foreign government bonds). So it makes sense to describe a few institutional details as to how investors and stocks "connect"—exchange cash for claims.

12·1.A. Brokers

Brokers execute and keep track

Most individuals place their orders to buy or sell stocks with a **retail broker**, such as **Ameritrade** (a "deep-discount broker"), **Charles Schwab** (a discount broker), or **Merrill Lynch** (a full service broker). Investors can place either **market orders**, which ask for execution at the current price, or **limit orders**, which ask for execution if the price is above or below a limit that the investor can specify. (There are also many other types of orders, e.g., stop-loss orders [which instruct a broker to sell a security if it has lost a certain amount of money], GTC [good-to-cancel orders], and fill-or-kill orders.) The first function of retail brokers is to execute these trades. They usually do so by routing investors' orders to a centralized trading location (e.g., a particular stock exchange), the choice of which is typically at the retail broker's discretion, as is the particular agent (e.g., floor broker) engaged to execute the trade. The second function of retail brokers is to keep track of investors' holdings, to facilitate purchasing **on margin** (whereby investors can borrow money to purchase stock, allowing them to purchase more securities than they could afford on a purely cash basis), and to facilitate selling securities "short," which allows investors to speculate that a stock will go down.

Prime Brokers break the two main functions apart. They leave execution to others.

Many larger investors, such as **funds** (described in Section 12·3.B), break these two functions apart: the investor can employ its own traders, while the broker takes care only of the bookkeeping of the investor's portfolio, margin provision and the shorting provisions. Such limited brokers are called **prime brokers**.

Side Note: Discount brokers may charge only $10 or so per trade, but they often receive kickback payments from the market-maker [see below] to which they route your order. This is called "payment for order flow." The market-maker in turn recoups this payment to the broker by executing your trade at a price that is less favorable. Although the purpose of such an arrangement seems deceptive, the evidence suggests that discount brokers are still often cheaper in facilitating investor trades—especially small investor trades—even after taking this hidden payment into account. They just are not as (relatively) cheap as they want to make you believe.

12·1.B. Exchanges and Non-Exchanges

The standard process.

Exchanges are centralized trading locations where financial securities are traded. The two most important stock exchanges in the United States are the **New York Stock Exchange** (**NYSE**) and **Nasdaq** (originally an acronym for "National Association of Securities Dealers Automated Quotation" System). The NYSE is an **auction market**, in which one designated **specialist** (assigned for each stock) manages the auction process by trading with individual floor brokers. The specialist is often a monopolist. In contrast to this human process in one physical location on Wall Street, Nasdaq is a purely electronic exchange without specialists. (For security reasons, its location—well, the location of its computer systems—is secret!) For each Nasdaq stock, there is at least one **market-maker**, who has agreed to continuously stand by to offer to buy or sell shares, thereby creating a liquid and immediate market for the general public. Most Nasdaq stocks have multiple market-makers, drawn from a pool of about 500 trading firms (such as J.P. Morgan or ETrade), which compete to offer the best price. Market-makers have one advantage over the general public: they can see the **limit order book**, which contains as-yet-unexecuted orders from investors to purchase or sell if the stock price changes—giving them a good idea at which price a lot of buying or selling activity will happen. The NYSE is the older exchange, and for historical reasons, controls considerably more trading than Nasdaq, especially when it

comes to "blue chip" stocks. ("Blue chip" now means "well established and serious"; ironically, the term itself came from poker, where the highest-denomination chips were blue.) Nasdaq tends to trade smaller and high-technology firms.

Auctions have lower execution costs, but also lower execution speed.

Continuous trading—trading at any moment an investor wants to execute—relies on the presence of the standby intermediaries (specialists or market-makers), who are willing to absorb shares when no one else is available. This is risky business, and thus any intermediary must earn a good rate of return to be willing to do so. To avoid this cost, some countries have organized their exchanges into non-continuous auction systems, which match buy and sell orders a couple of times each day. The disadvantage is that you cannot execute orders immediately but have to delay until a whole range of buy orders and sell orders have accumulated. The advantage is that this eliminates the risk that an (expensive) intermediary would otherwise have to bear. Thus, auctions generally offer lower trading costs but slower execution.

New Alternative Trading Institutions: ECNs and more.

Even in the United States, innovation and change are everywhere. For example, **electronic communications networks** (**ECNs**) have recently made big inroads into the trading business, replacing exchanges especially for large institutional trades. (They can trade the same stocks that exchanges are trading, and compete with exchanges in terms of cost and speed of execution.) An ECN cuts out the specialist, allowing investors to post price-contingent orders themselves. ECNs may specialize in lower execution costs, more broker kickbacks (see the sidenote below), or faster execution. The biggest ECNs are **Archipelago** and **Instinet**. An even more interesting method to buy and trade stocks are **crossing systems**, such as **ITG POSIT**. ITG focuses primarily on matching large institutional trades with one another in an auction-like manner. If no match on the other side is found, the order may simply not be executed. But if a match is made, by cutting out the specialist or market-maker, the execution is a lot cheaper than it would have been on an exchange. Recently, even more novel trading places have sprung up. For example, **Liquidnet** uses peer-to-peer networking—like the original Napster—to match buyers and sellers in real-time. ECNs or electronic limit order books are now the dominant trading systems for equities worldwide, with only the U.S. exchange floors as holdouts. Such mechanisms are also used to trade futures, derivatives, currencies, and even some bonds.

Other markets, especially OTC.

There are many other financial markets, too. There are financial exchanges handling stock options, commodities, insurance contracts, etc. A fascinating segment are the **over-the-counter** (**OTC**) markets. Over-the-counter means "call around, usually to a set of traders well-known to trade in the asset, until you find someone willing to buy or sell at a price you like." Though undergoing rapid institutional change, most bond transactions are still OTC. Although OTC markets handle significantly more bond trading in terms of transaction dollar amounts than exchanges, their transaction costs are prohibitively high for retail investors—if you call without knowing the market in great detail, the person on the other end of the line will be happy to quote you a shamelessly high price, hoping that you do not know any better alternatives. The **NASD** (National Association of Securities Dealers) also operates a semi-OTC market for the stocks of smaller firms, the **pink sheets**. Foreign securities trade on their local national exchanges, but the costs for U.S. retail investors are again often too high to make direct participation worthwhile.

12·1.C. How Securities Appear and Disappear

Firms first sell shares in IPOs.

Most publicly traded equities appear on public exchanges through **initial public offerings** (**IPOs**), whereby a privately traded company first sells shares to ordinary investors. IPOs are usually executed by **underwriters** (investment bankers such as **Goldman Sachs** or **Merrill Lynch**), which are familiar with the complex legal and regulatory process and which have easy access to an investor client base to buy the newly issued shares. Shares in IPOs are typically sold at a fixed price—and for about 10% below the price at which they are likely to trade on the first day of after-market open trading. (Many IPO shares are allocated to the brokerage firm's favorite customers, and can be an important source of profit.)

Money flows into the financial markets through IPOs and SEOs.

Usually, about a third of the company is sold in the IPO, and the typical IPO offers shares worth between $20 million and $100 million, although some are much larger (e.g., privatizations, like British Telecom). About two-thirds of all such IPO companies never amount to much or even die within a couple of years, but the remaining third soon thereafter offer more shares in **seasoned equity offerings** (**SEO**). These days, however, much expansion in the number of shares in publicly traded companies, especially large companies, comes not from seasoned equity offerings, but from employee stock option plans, which eventually become unrestricted publicly traded shares.

Publicly traded companies must report financials, and restrict insider trading.

In 1933/1934, Congress established the SEC through the *Securities Exchange Acts*. It further regulated investment advisors through the *Investment Advisors Act of 1940*. (The details of these acts can be obtained at the SEC website.) Today, publicly traded companies must regularly report their financials and other information to the SEC, and their executives have **fiduciary obligations** to their shareholders. Generally, the SEC prohibits insider trading on unreleased specific information, although more general trading by insiders is legal (and seems to be done fairly profitably by these insiders).

Money flows out from the financial markets in dividends and share repurchases.

Capital flows out of the financial markets in a number of ways—through dividends and share repurchases, or more dramatically, through delistings and bankruptcies. Many companies pay some of their earnings in **dividends** to investors. Dividends, of course, do not fall like manna from heaven. For example, a firm worth $100,000 may pay $1,000, and would therefore be worth $99,000 after the dividend distribution. If you own a share of $100, you would own (roughly) $99 in stock and $1 in dividends after the payment—still $100 in total, no better or worse. (If you have to pay some taxes on dividend receipts, you might come out for the worse.) Alternatively, firms may reduce their outstanding shares by paying out earnings in **share repurchases**. For example, the firm may dedicate the $1,000 to share repurchases, and you could ask the firm to dedicate $100 thereof to repurchasing your share. But even if you hold onto your share, you have not lost anything. Previously, you owned $\$100/\$100,000 = 0.1\%$ of a $100,000 company, for a net of $100. Now, you will own $\$100/\$99,000 = 1.0101\%$ of a $99,000 company—multiply this to find that your share is still worth $100. In either case, the value of outstanding public equity in the firm has shrunk from $100,000 to $99,000. We shall discuss dividends and share repurchases in Part IV.

Shares can also shrink out of the financial markets in bankruptcies, liquidations, and delistings.

Firms can shrink more drastically, too: some firms voluntarily liquidate, determining that they can pay their shareholders more if they sell their assets and return the money to them. This is rare, because managers usually like to keep their jobs—even if continuation of the company is not in the interest of shareholders. More commonly, firms make bad investments, and fall in value to the point where they are delisted from the exchange and/or go into bankruptcy. Fortunately, investors enjoy **limited liability**, which means that they can at most lose their investments and do not have to pay for any further sins of management.

ANECDOTE: Trading Volume in the Tech Bubble

During the Tech bubble of 1999 and 2000, IPO underpricing reached one-day returns of 65% *on average*. Getting an IPO share allocation was like getting free money. Of course, ordinary investors rarely received any such share allocations—only the underwriter's favorite clients did. This later sparked a number of lawsuits, one of which revealed that **Credit Suisse First Boston** (**CSFB**) allocated shares of IPOs to more than 100 customers who, in return for IPO allocations, funneled between 33 and 65 percent of their IPO profits back to CSFB in the form of excessive trading of other stocks (like Compaq and Disney) at inflated trading commissions.

How important was this "kickback" activity? In the aggregate, in 1999 and 2000, underwriters left about $66 billion on the table for their first-day IPO buyers. If investors rebated 20 percent back to underwriters in the form of extra commissions, this would amount to $13 billion in excessive underwriter profits. At an average commission of 10 cents per share, this would require 130 billion shares traded, or an average of 250 million shares per trading day. This figure suggests that kickback portfolio churning may have accounted for as much as 10 percent of all shares traded.

Source: Ritter-Welch (2002).

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

Solve Now!

Q 12.1 *What are the two main functions of brokerage firms?*

Q 12.2 *How does a prime broker differ from a retail broker?*

Q 12.3 *What is a specialist? What is a market-maker? When trading, what advantage do the two have over you?*

Q 12.4 *Describe some alternatives to the main exchanges.*

Q 12.5 *Describe some mechanisms by which more shares appear and disappear in the market.*

12·2. Equities Transaction Costs

12·2.A. Going Long

The costs of buying shares depend on the stock, but typically are less than 0.5 percent (round-trip) for a large firm's stock.

The process of buying stocks is familiar to almost everyone: you call up your broker to purchase 100 shares of a stock (say PepsiCo) with cash sitting in your account, and the shares appear in your account and the cash disappears from your account. When you want to sell your shares, you call your broker again to sell the shares and the appropriate value of the shares returns as cash into your account. There are some transaction costs in the process: the broker collects a commission (typically ranging from about $8 at a discount broker to $100 at a full-service broker); and you are most likely to buy your shares at the **ask price**, which is higher than the **bid price**, at which you can sell the shares. For a stock like PepsiCo, trading around $50, the "bid-ask spread" may be 10 to 20 cents or about 0.2 percent. So, buying and then immediately selling 1,000 shares of PepsiCo ($50,000), a **round-trip transaction**, might cost you **transaction costs** of around $100 to $200 (lost to the bid-ask spread) plus $16 to $200 (lost to your broker). Your $50,000 would have turned into about $49,600 to $49,900.

12·2.B. Going Short: The Academic Fiction

Idealized shorting, as used in academia, gives shortsellers interest on the stock that is being sold.

But, what if you want to speculate that a stock will be going down rather than up? This is called **shorting** a stock. (In optional Section 4·7.B, we have already discussed shorting in the context of Treasury securities and apples.) Optimally, you would want to do the same thing that the PepsiCo company does: give other investors who want to buy shares in PEP the exact same payoffs (including dividends!) that PEP will provide in exchange for them giving you $50. If the share price declines to $30, upon termination of the short, you would have received their $50 upfront and only repaid them $30—you would have earned $20. In addition, you could have earned interest on the $50. This is the idealized world of theoretical finance and of this book, in which borrowing and lending can be done without friction. The upper half of Table 12.1 shows such an example of a particular portfolio that involves idealized, frictionless shorting.

12·2.C. Going Short: The Real World

Real-world shorting requires more than just offering the same cash flows as the stock

In the real world, shorting is not so easy. First, there are rules and regulations that the SEC imposes on short-selling that you have to follow. Second, you need to credibly guarantee that you can give the share purchaser all the cash flows that PepsiCo shares offer. (What have you committed to if the share price triples? Remember that you have unlimited liability as a short!) Third, a real investor in PepsiCo also receives the accounting statements of PepsiCo in the mail and can vote at the annual meetings. How do you offer this service? The answer is that you need to find an investor who already owns the shares and who is willing to lend them to you, so that you can sell the shares—real physical shares—to someone on the exchange. You then owe shares to this lending investor, rather than to the person buying the shares on the exchange.

DIGGING DEEPER: *The most important SEC regulation concerning shorting is that the broker must borrow the shares from a willing owner and then resell them to a third party. It is not enough for another investor to be willing to take the other side of the short trade: instead, the shares have to be actually physically found from an investor holding them. For some smaller stocks, it can occasionally be difficult to find someone willing to lend the shares, which can make shorting difficult or impossible. In addition, there is a second SEC rule that states that shares can only be shorted on an up-tick. The intent is to reduce further short-selling during a stock market crash, when up-ticks are rare.*

Real-world shorting loses the use of (some) proceeds. This is a "friction."

All of the details necessary to execute a short can be arranged by your broker. Unlike buying shares long, execution of a short is often not instantaneous. But more importantly, the broker's service comes at a price. The broker usually does not return to you the $100 paid by the person buying the shares, so that you can invest the proceeds in bonds. That is, if the stock price declines to $90, you still made $10, but the interest on the $100 is earned by your broker, not by you. In addition, as with a purchase of shares, the broker earns commissions and the bid-ask spread goes against you. The lower panel in Table 12.1 contrasts the idealized version of shorting (used in this book) to the grittier real-world version of shorting.

Large fund investors can short at more favorable rates than ordinary investors.

Large clients can usually negotiate to receive at least some of the interest earned on the $100, at least for large, liquid stocks. Hypothetically, if such a large investor were both short one share of a firm and long one share of the same firm, she would lose about 100 to 300 basis points per year. So, on a $100 share, the cost of being long one share and being short one share would typically be $1 to $3 per share per year. This money is shared between the brokerage firm and the investor willing to loan out shares to you for shorting (so that you can sell them to someone else). Nowadays in the real-world, large stock index funds earn most of their profits through lending out shares to shortsellers.

Our theories will assume that shorting is possible—a model simplification that is often but not always acceptable.

Shorting is not ideal in the real world—but it is a whole lot more ideal in financial markets than in non-financial markets. Consider the large long exposure risk that a house purchaser suffers. If the house value drops by 20%, the owner could easily lose more than all his equity stake in the house. So to hedge against drops in the value of the house, it would make sense for this purchaser to go short on equivalent housing in the same neighborhood. This way, if real estate prices were to go down, the short position in the neighborhood would mitigate the own-house loss. For all practical purposes, this is impossible. Trust me—I have tried and failed to figure out how to do this. In effect, the costs of shorting are almost infinitely high. When you use the situation in real estate as your benchmark, it indeed seems reasonable to assume no transaction costs to shorting, after all, at least for our academic purposes.

ANECDOTE: Eternal Shorts?
The short must make good on all promises that the underlying firms make. There are some rare instances in which this can cause unexpected problems. For example, when Heartland Industrial Partners acquired Mascotech for about $2 billion in 2000, the latter promised to dispose of some non-operating assets and distribute the proceeds to the original shareholders. As of 2005, that has not yet happened. Anyone having written a short on Mascotech—including myself—still has an escrowed obligation as of 2005 that cannot be closed out.

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

Table 12.1. Shorting in an Idealized and in the Real World

Idealized Shorting Example

Your Wealth: \$200.

You can sell \$100 worth of KO shares (or an equivalent promise) to another investor, who wants to hold KO shares. This gives you \$200 + \$100 = \$300 of cash, which you can invest into Pepsico.

Portfolio $\mathcal{P}$: $w_{\text{KO}} = -\$100,\ w_{\text{PEP}} = \$300, \quad \Longrightarrow w_{\text{KO}} = -50\%,\ w_{\text{PEP}} = 150\%.$

Hypothetical Rates of Return: KO $= -10\%$, PEP $= +15\%$.

$\Longrightarrow$ Portfolio Rate of Return: $r_{\mathcal{P}} = -50\% \cdot (-10\%) + 150\% \cdot (+15\%) = +27.5\%.$

\$100 KO shares borrowed became a liability of \$90, for a gain of \$10;
\$300 PEP shares invested became an asset of \$345, for a gain of \$45.

$\Longrightarrow$ Your net portfolio gain is \$55 on an original investment of assets worth \$200, which comes to a +27.5% rate of return.

Real World Retail Investor Shorting Example

Your Wealth: \$200.

The broker finds another investor to borrow shares from and sells the shares (on your behalf) for \$100 to another investor, who wants to hold KO shares. The broker keeps \$100, because in our example, the retail investor is assumed to receive absolutely no shorting proceeds. (Institutional investors can typically receive some, but not all of the shorting proceeds.) You still have \$200 in cash (\$100 less than in the idealized case), which you can invest into Pepsico.

Portfolio $\mathcal{P}$: $w_{\text{KO}} = -\$100,\ w_{\text{PEP}} = \$200, \quad \Longrightarrow w_{\text{KO}} = -50\%,\ w_{\text{PEP}} = 100\%.$

Hypothetical Rates of Return: KO $= -10\%$, PEP $= +15\%$.

$\Longrightarrow$ Portfolio Rate of Return: $r_{\mathcal{P}} = -50\% \cdot (-10\%) + 100\% \cdot (+15\%) = +20.0\%.$

\$100 KO shares borrowed became a liability of \$90, for a gain of \$10;
\$200 PEP shares invested became an asset of \$230, for a gain of \$30.

$\Longrightarrow$ The net portfolio gain is \$40 on an original investment of assets worth \$200, which comes to a +20% rate of return.

Both examples ignore trading costs incurred in buying and selling securities.

Solve Now!

Q 12.6 *What are the main differences between academic, theoretical, perfect shorting and real-world, practical shorting?*

Q 12.7 *If you simultaneously buy and short $5,000 of IBM at the beginning of the year, and you terminate these two positions at the end of the year, how much would it cost you in the real world?*

Q 12.8 *Assume you believe that stock in KO will go up by 12% and stock in PEP will go up by 15% over the next year. The current risk-free interest rate is 2% per year. You have $300,000 to invest, and your broker allows you to go short up to $100,000.*

(a) How much could you go long in PEP?

(b) If your forecast comes true, how much money would you earn in a fictional world? What would your rate of return be?

(c) If your forecast comes true, how much money would you earn in the real world?

12·3. Portfolios and Indexes

12·3.A. Portfolio Returns

What exactly is a portfolio? Is it a set of returns? No. The portfolio is a set of investment weights. When these weights are multiplied by their asset returns, you obtain your overall portfolio return.

Important: *A **portfolio** is a set of investment weights.*

Overall portfolio returns are the investment-weighted average returns of its constituents.

You would usually own not just one security but form a portfolio consisting of many holdings. Your ultimate goal—and the subject of the area of investments—is to select good portfolios with high rates of return. But how do you compute your portfolio rate of return? For example, say you hold $500 in PEP, $300 in KO, and $200 in CSG. Your total investment is $1,000, and your portfolio investment weights are 50% in PEP, 30% in KO, and 20% in CSG. If the rate of return on PEP is 5%, the rate of return on KO is 2%, and the rate of return on CSG is -4%, then the rate of return on your overall portfolio ($\mathcal{P}$) is

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} &= \left(\frac{\$500}{\$1,000}\right)\cdot(+5\%) + \left(\frac{\$300}{\$1,000}\right)\cdot(+2\%) + \left(\frac{\$200}{\$1,000}\right)\cdot(-4\%) \\ &\quad (50\%)\cdot(+5\%) + (30\%)\cdot(+2\%) + (20\%)\cdot(-4\%) = +2.3\% \\ &= w_{\text{PEP}}\cdot r_{\text{PEP}} + w_{\text{KO}}\cdot r_{\text{KO}} + w_{\text{CSG}}\cdot r_{\text{CSG}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{12.1}$$

So, when you own multiple assets, your overall investment rate of return is the investment-weighted rate of return on each investment, with the weights being the relative investment proportions. Let us check this. A $500 investment in PEP at a 5% rate of return gave $25. A $300 investment in KO at a 2% rate of return gave $6. A $200 investment in CSG at a -4% rate of return gave -$8. The net dollar return on the $1,000 was therefore $25 + $6 − $8 = $23. The portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ rate of return was $(r_{\mathcal{P},t=1} - r_{\mathcal{P},t=0})/r_{\mathcal{P},t=0} = \$23/\$1,000 - 1 = 2.3\%$. This

also clarifies that the portfolio formula also works with absolute dollar investments instead of relative percentage investments:

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\mathcal{P}} &= (\$500)\cdot(+5\%) + (\$300)\cdot(+2\%) + (\$200)\cdot(-4\%) = +\$23 \\ &= w_{\text{PEP}}\cdot r_{\text{PEP}} + w_{\text{KO}}\cdot r_{\text{KO}} + w_{\text{CSG}}\cdot r_{\text{CSG}} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{12.2}$$

SIDE NOTE: When a security has additional payouts (such as dividends) over the measurement period, its rate of return should really be written as

$$r_{t-1,t} = \frac{(P_t + \text{Dividends}_{t-1,t}) - P_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}} \ . \tag{12.3}$$

Alternatively, you could quote a net price at the end of the period, which includes dividends. Our discussions will mostly just ignore dividends and stock splits. That is, when I write about returns, I usually mean rates of returns that take into account all payments to the investor, but I sometimes abbreviate this as $(P_t - P_{t-1})/P_{t-1}$ for convenience.

Notation: number investments. A portfolio is a set of known weights.

The goal of the subject of investments is to evaluate all possible investment choices in order to determine the best portfolio. So, we need to come up with good notation that does not make discussing this task too cumbersome. Let us use R and r as our designated letters for "rate of return." But with thousands of possible investment choices, it is rather inconvenient to work with ticker symbols (or even full stock names). It would also be tedious to write "average the returns over all possible stocks (ticker symbols) and other securities" and the name them all. Therefore, we often change the names of our securities to the numbers $1, 2, 3, \ldots, N$. We also usually use the letter $\mathcal{P}$ to name a portfolio (or, if we work with multiple portfolios, with a capital letter close by, such as $\mathcal{Q}$ or O). We call the investment weight in security i by the moniker w_i, where i is a number between 1 and N. Finally, we rely on "summation notation": $\sum_{i=1}^{N} f(i)$ is the algebraic way of stating that we compute the sum $f(1) + f(2) + \ldots f(N)$. For example, $\sum_{i=2}^{4} \sqrt{i}$ is notation for $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} + \sqrt{4} \approx 5.15$. (Appendix Chapter 2·3 reviews summations.) Yes, notation is a pain, but with the notation we have, we can now write the rate of return on a portfolio much more easily:

IMPORTANT: *The rate of return R on a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ that consists of N securities named 1 through $\mathcal{N}$ is*

$$r_{\mathcal{P}} = \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot r_i = w_1 \cdot r_1 + w_2 \cdot r_2 + \ldots + w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot r_{\mathcal{N}} \ , \tag{12.4}$$

where w_i is the investment weight in the i-th security (from N choices). If weights are quoted as a fraction of the overall investment portfolio, their sum must add up to 100%,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i = 100\% \ . \tag{12.5}$$

Notation: Abbreviations

OK, we are cheating a little on notation: each rate of return R should really have three subscripts: one to name the financial security (e.g., PEP or i or 4), one for the beginning of the period (e.g., t), and one for the end of the period (e.g., $t + 1$)—too many for my taste. When there is no danger of confusion—or the formula works no matter what periods we choose (as long as we choose the same period for all securities)—let us omit the time subscripts.

12·3.B. Funds and Net Holdings

Funds are themselves portfolios of other financial assets.

One can think of portfolios, consisting of stocks, the same ways as one can think of stocks themselves. Indeed, **funds** are firms which hold underlying stocks or other financial assets and are thus themselves de facto portfolio—and funds can be bought and sold just like any other stocks. Investors often like buying shares in funds because they believe that a professional manager can pick securities better than they can, plus funds in effect allow individual investors to purchase thousands of stocks, even if they only have a small amount of money to invest. Depending on their legal arrangements, funds may be called **exchange-traded funds** (bought and sold on a financial market), **mutual funds** (bought and sold by the general public, but not on an exchange), or **hedge funds** (not marketed to the broad public, and therefore not subject to SEC restrictions). Many mutual funds have prices that are listed daily in the *Wall Street Journal*. Like exchange funds, they can be purchased easily through most stock brokers. An **ADR** (**American Depositary Receipt**) is another common form of fund. It is a relatively easy way by which a large foreign company can trade shares on the New York Stock Exchange. Its domestic shares are put into an escrow, and the U.S. exchange trades the ADR. So, an ADR really operates like an open-end fund which holds shares only in this one company.

Open-ended vs. closed-ended Mutual Funds.

Mutual funds come in two main forms. **Open-ended** funds allow any investor to exchange the fund shares for the underlying assets in the appropriate proportion. For example, if a fund has sold 50 shares, and used the money to purchase 200 shares of PepsiCo and 300 shares of Coca Cola, then each mutual fund share represents 4 PepsiCo shares and 6 Coca Cola shares. The mutual fund share holder can, at her will, exchange her fund share into 4 PepsiCo and 6 Coca Cola shares. This forces an **arbitrage** link between the price of the fund and the value of its assets: if the price of the fund drops too much relative to the underlying assets, then investors will redeem their mutual fund shares. In a **closed-end** mutual fund, redemption is not permitted. If the underlying fund assets are very illiquid (e.g., real-estate in emerging countries), an open-ended like redemption request would be very expensive or even impossible to satisfy. Closed-end funds often trade for substantially less than their underlying assets, and for significant periods of time. Among the explanations for this **closed end fund discount** are the significant fees collected by the fund managers. At the end of 2002, there were about 7,000 open-end mutual funds with $4 trillion in assets. There were only about 500 closed-end mutual funds with about $150 billion in assets, and another 4,500 hedge funds with assets of about $350 billion (most hedge funds are closed-end). Thus, open-ended funds controlled about ten times more money than closed-ended funds.

How to compute net underlying holdings.

Most mutual funds disclose their holdings on a quarterly basis to the SEC (semi-annual is mandatory), which makes it easy for investors to compute their net exposures (at least on the reporting day). For example, assume that Fund $\mathcal{FA}$ holds $500,000 of PepsiCo and $1,500,000 of Coca Cola. Assume that Fund $\mathcal{FB}$holds $300,000 of Coca Cola and $700,000 of Cadbury Schweppes. What is your net portfolio if you put 60% of your wealth into Fund $\mathcal{FA}$ and 40% of into Fund $\mathcal{FB}$? The funds have holdings of

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Fund } \mathcal{FA} \text{ Holdings: } w_{\mathcal{FA},\text{PEP}} = 0.25 \ , \ w_{\mathcal{FA},\text{KO}} = 0.75 \ , \ w_{\mathcal{FA},\text{CSG}} = 0 \ . \\ &\text{Fund } \mathcal{FB} \text{ Holdings: } w_{\mathcal{FB},\text{PEP}} = 0 \ , \ w_{\mathcal{FB},\text{KO}} = 0.30 \ , \ w_{\mathcal{FB},\text{CSG}} = 0.70 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{12.6}$$

ANECDOTE: More funds or more stocks?
In 1999, U.S. equity funds managed roughly 3 trillion dollars of assets, or about one-third of U.S. stock market capitalization. More surprisingly, there were more U.S. equity funds than there were U.S. stocks: In 1999, there were 8,435 equities, but 11,882 equity funds. Source: Harry Mamaysky and Matthew Spiegel.

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

You can compute your net exposures by computing the sum of your holdings multiplied by the fund holdings:

$$\begin{aligned} w_{\text{PEP}} &= 60\% \cdot 0.25 + 40\% \cdot 0.00 = 15\% , \\ w_{\text{KO}} &= 60\% \cdot 0.75 + 40\% \cdot 0.30 = 57\% , \\ w_{\text{CSG}} &= 60\% \cdot 0.00 + 40\% \cdot 0.70 = 28\% , \\ w_i &= w_{\mathcal{FA}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FA},i} + w_{\mathcal{FB}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FB},i} , \end{aligned} \tag{12.7}$$

which adds up to 100%. For example, for a $2,000 investment, you own $300 of shares in PepsiCo, $1,140 of shares in Coca Cola, and $570 of shares in Cadbury Schweppes. In sum, you can think of funds and portfolios the same way you think of stocks: they are investment opportunities representing combinations of assets. You can always compute the underlying stock holdings represented by the funds. In fact, if you wish, you could even see ordinary firms as portfolios bundling underlying assets for you.

12·3.C. Some Common Indexes

Although an Index is a weighted average of stock prices, it is just a number, not a portfolio.

An index is almost like a fund or portfolio, but it is not something that one can invest in *because an index is just a number*. (There are, however, funds that try to mimick the behavior of indexes.) Most commonly, an index is the figure obtained by computing a weighted sum of the prices of a predetermined basket of securities. It is intended to summarize the performance of a particular market or market segment. For example, the **Dow-Jones 30** index is a weighted average of the prices of 30 pre-selected "big" stocks. (Table b on Page 353 below lists them.) If you purchase a portfolio holding the same 30 stocks (or a fund holding the 30 stocks), your investment rate of return should be fairly close to the percentage change in the index—except for one difference. When stocks pay dividends, their stock prices decline by just about the amounts of dividends paid. (If they dropped less on average, you should purchase the stocks, collect the dividends, and then resell them for a profit. If they dropped more, you should short the stocks, pay the dividends, and then cover your shorts for a profit.) Your portfolio mimicking the Dow-Jones 30 should earn these dividends, even though the index would decline by the percent paid out in dividends. Therefore, in theory, you should be able to easily outperform an index. Unfortunately, in the real world, most portfolio managers fail to do so, primarily because of transaction costs and excessive trading.

Some more detail: plain indexes vs. total return indexes.

Most indexes, including the S&P500 and the Dow-Jones 30, are not adjusted for dividends, although they are adjusted for **stock splits**. In a 3:1 stock split, a firm trading at $120 per old share would henceforth trade at $40 per new share. Each investor who held one old share would receive three new shares. The "guardians of the index" would adjust the index formulas by tripling the weight on the stock that split. In contrast to plain price indexes, there are also **total return indexes**. For example, the guardians of the formula for the German **Dax Performance Index** change the formula to reflect the return that a portfolio of Dax stocks would earn through dividends.

ANECDOTE: The Worst of all Worlds: High Losses plus High Taxes

To prevent tax arbitrage—which are basically transactions that create fake losses to reduce taxable income—the IRS has instituted special tax rules for mutual funds. The precise treatment of the taxes is complex and beyond the scope of this book, but the most important aspect is simple: investors must absorb the underlying capital gains/losses and dividend payments received by the funds, as if they themselves had traded the underlying shares themselves.

In the second half of 2000, many mutual funds had lost significant amounts of money in the collapse of the technology bubble. Although their values had declined (and with them, the wealth of their clients), the funds had generally not yet realized these capital losses. But they had realized capital gains earlier in the year. The IRS requires these realized losses to be declared by fund investors as "pass-through" capital gains, which were therefore taxed. Thus, in 2000, many unlucky investors experienced high losses and still had to pay high taxes.

There are more indexes than one can count, and new ones get invented all the time.

There are literally hundreds of indexes, created and published by hundreds of companies. The **Money&Investing** Section of the *Wall Street Journal* lists just a sampling. In the United States, the most prominent stock market indexes are the **S&P 500** (holding 500 large stocks), the aforementioned **Dow-Jones 30** (holding 30 big stocks, selected to cover different industries), and the **Nasdaq** index (holding the largest Nasdaq companies). The **Russell 2000** covers 2,000 small-firm stocks. There are also other asset class indexes. For example, **Lehman Brothers** publishes the **MBS** (Mortgage Bond Securities) index; **Dow Jones** also publishes a corporate bond index; and **Morgan Stanley** publishes a whole slew of country stock prices indexes (**MSCI EAFE**). Furthermore, each country with a stock market has its own domestic index. Some foreign stock market indexes are familiar even to casual investors: the **Financial Times Stock Exchange** Index, spelled **FTSE** and pronounced "foot-sy" for Great Britain; the **Nikkei**-225 Index for Japan; and the **DAX** index for Germany.

12·3.D. Equal-Weighted and Value-Weighted Portfolios

An example of an equal-weighted and a value-weighted portfolio.

Two kinds of portfolios deserve special attention, the equal-weighted and the value-weighted market portfolio. To see the difference between the two, assume that there are only three securities in the market. The first is worth \$100 million, the second \$300 million, and the third \$600 million. An **equal-weighted** portfolio purchases an equal amount in each security. So, if you had \$30 million, you would invest \$10 million into each security. Does it take trading to maintain an equal-weighted portfolio? Table 12.2 shows what happens when one stock's price changes: security $i = 1$ quadruples in value. If you do not trade, your portfolio holdings would be too much in security 1 relative to securities 2 and 3. To maintain an equal-weighted portfolio, you would have to rebalance. In the example, you would have to trade \$40 worth of stock.

Table 12.2. Maintaining an Equal-Weighted Portfolio

	Time 0			Time 1			
Security i	Market Value	Investor Pfio	Rate of Return	Market Value	Investor, No Trade	Investor, Desired	Necessary Trading
1	\$100	\$10	+300%	\$400	\$40	\$20	−\$20
2	\$300	\$10	0%	\$300	\$10	\$20	+\$10
3	\$600	\$10	0%	\$600	\$10	\$20	+\$10
Sum	\$1,000	\$30		\$1,300	\$60	\$40	\$0

Table 12.3. Maintaining a Value-Weighted Portfolio

	Time 0			Time 1			
Security i	Market Value	Investor Pfio	Rate of Return	Market Value	Investor, No Trade	Investor, Desired	Necessary Trading
1	\$100 (10%)	\$3	+300%	\$400 (31%)	\$12	\$12	\$0
2	\$300 (30%)	\$9	0%	\$300 (23%)	\$9	\$9	\$0
3	\$600 (60%)	\$18	0%	\$600 (46%)	\$18	\$18	\$0
Total	\$1,000 (100%)	\$30		\$1,300 (100%)	\$39	\$39	\$0

ANECDOTE: The Presidential Election Market
The University of Iowa runs the Iowa Electronic Market, which are indexes measuring the likelihood for each presidential candidate to win the next presidential election. You can actually trade futures based on these indexes. This market tends to be a better forecaster of who the next president will be than the press.

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

Value-weighted portfolios are easier to maintain.

A **value-weighted** portfolio purchases an amount proportional to the availability of each security. In the example, with \$30 million, a portfolio that invests \$3 million in the first security (weight: \$2/\$20 = 10%), \$9 million in the second security (weight: 30%), and \$18 million in the third security (weight: 60%) is value-weighted. How difficult is it to maintain this value-weighted portfolio? In Table 12.3, the first security has again quadrupled in value, increasing in market capitalization to \$400 million. Without trading, your previously value-weighted portfolio has increased its holdings in this security from \$3 million to \$12 million. The portfolio weight in the first security would therefore have increased to \$12/\$39 ≈ 31%, the second security would have dropped to \$9/\$39 ≈ 23%, and the third security would have dropped to \$18/\$39 ≈ 46%. But these are exactly the weights that a value weighted portfolio of \$39 million, if initiated at time 1, would require! The portfolio weights require no adjustment because any changes in the market values of securities are reflected both in the overall market capitalizations and the weight of the securities in your portfolio. In contrast to the earlier equal-weighted portfolio, a value-weighted portfolio requires no trading. (The only exception are securities that enter and exit the market altogether.) So, even though it may be easier at the beginning to select an equal-weighted portfolio (you do not need to know how much of each security is available), over time, it is easier to maintain a value-weighted portfolio.

> **IMPORTANT**: *To maintain an equal-weighted portfolio, continuous rebalancing is necessary. To maintain a value-weighted portfolio, no rebalancing is usually necessary.*

It is possible for everyone in the economy to hold a value-weighted portfolio, but not an equal-weighted portfolio.

There is a second important feature of value-weighted portfolios: it is possible for everyone in the economy to hold a value-weighted portfolio, but not possible for everyone in the economy to hold an equal-weighted portfolio. Return to the example: with \$1 billion in overall market capitalization, presume there are only two investors: the first has \$100 million in wealth, the second has \$900 million in wealth. Equal-weighted portfolios would have the first investor allocate \$33 million to the first security and have the second investor allocate \$300 million to the first security. In sum, they would want to purchase \$333 million in the first security—but there is only \$100 million worth of the first security to go around. The pie is just not big enough. In contrast, holding value-weighted portfolios, both investors could be fully satisfied with their slices. In the example, for the first security, the first investor would allocate \$10 million, the second investor would allocate \$90 million, and the sum-total would equal the \$100 million available in the economy.

> **IMPORTANT**: *It is possible for all investors in the economy to hold value-weighted portfolios. It is impossible for all investors in the economy to hold equal-weighted portfolios.*

Time Convergence?

Three more points: First, over time, if you do not trade, even a non-value weighted portfolio becomes more and more value-weighted. The reason is that stocks that increase in market value turn into larger and larger fractions of your portfolio, and stocks that decline in market value turn into smaller and smaller fractions. Eventually, the largest firms in the economy will be the biggest component of your portfolio. Second, the most popular and important stock market indexes are more like value-weighted portfolios than equal-weighted portfolios. For example, the S&P500 index behaves much more like the value-weighted than like the equal-weighted market index. Third, over short time frames (say a month or even a year), broad stock market indexes within a country tend to be very highly correlated (say, above 95%), no matter whether they are equal-weighted, value-weighted, or arbitrary (e.g., the Dow-Jones 30 or the S&P500). Therefore, if the newspaper reports the return of the S&P500 yesterday, it is a pretty good estimator either for the return of broader portfolios (like a value-weighted overall stock market portfolio) or for the return of narrower portfolios (like the Dow-Jones 30). It is rare that one goes up dramatically, while the other goes down, and vice-versa.

Solve Now!

Q 12.9 *An investor's portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ consists of 40% of stock A and 60% of stock B. A has a rate of return of $+4\%$, B has a rate of return of $+6\%$. What is the overall portfolio rate of return?*

Q 12.10 *An investor owns \$40 in stock A and \$60 in stock B. A has a return of $\$1.60$, B has a return of $+\$3.60$. What is the overall portfolio return?*

Q 12.11 *An investor owns \$40 in stock A and \$60 in stock B. The first stock has a return of $+4\%$, the second has a return of $+6\%$. What is the overall portfolio rate of return?*

Q 12.12 *Write down the formula for the return of a portfolio, given individual security returns and their weights. First use summation notation, then write it out.*

Q 12.13 *A portfolio consists of \$200 invested in PEP, and \$600 invested in CSG. If the stock price per share on PEP increased from \$30 to \$33, and the stock price per share in CSG declined from \$40 to \$38 but CSG paid a dividend of \$1 per share, then what was the portfolio's return and rate of return?*

Q 12.14 *Fund $\mathcal{FA}$ holds \$100,000 of PEP and \$600,000 of KO, and \$300,000 of CSG. Fund $\mathcal{FB}$holds \$5,000,000 of PEP, \$1,000,000 of KO, and \$4,000,000 of CSG. You have \$500 to invest. Can you go long and short in the two funds to neutralize your exposure to PEP? (This means having a net zero exposure to PEP.) How much of each fund would you purchase? What are your de facto holdings of KO and CSG?*

Q 12.15 *What is $\sum_{j=1}^{5} j^2$?*

Q 12.16 *What is $\sum_{i=1}^{5} 2 \cdot i$?*

Q 12.17 *What is $\sum_{j=1}^{5} (j-5)$?*

Q 12.18 *What is the difference between a hedge fund and a mutual fund?*

Q 12.19 *What is the difference between an open-ended mutual fund and a closed-ended mutual fund?*

Q 12.20 *You hold two funds. Fund $\mathcal{FA}$ has holdings in stocks 1, 2, and 3 of 0.15, 0.5, and 0.35, respectively. Fund $\mathcal{FB}$has holdings in stocks 1, 2, and 3, of 0.4, 0.2, and 0.4, respectively. You would like to have a portfolio that has a net investment weight of 30% on the first stock. If you have decided only to hold funds and not individual stocks, what would your exposure be on stocks 2 and 3?*

Q 12.21 *What is the difference between an index and a mutual fund?*

Q 12.22 *List a few prominent financial indexes.*

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

Q 12.23 *How does an index differ from a portfolio?*

Q 12.24 *Compute the value-weighted dollar investments of the two investors (with wealths $100 million and $900 million, respectively) for the second and third securities in the example on Page 299.*

Q 12.25 *Continuing with this example, what would be the dollar investments and relative investments if the first security were to double in value? Does this portfolio require rebalancing to remain value-weighted?*

Q 12.26 *There are two stocks: stock 1 has a market capitalization of $100 million, stock 2 has a market capitalization of $300 million.*

(a) What are the investment weights of the equal-weighted portfolio?

(b) What are the investment weights of the value-weighted portfolio?

(c) There are 5 equally wealthy investors in this economy. How much of stock 1 would they demand if they all held the equal-weighted portfolio? If they held the value weighted portfolio?

(d) If the first stock appreciates by 10% and the second stock depreciates by 30%, how much trading would such an investor have to do to continue holding an equal-weighted portfolio?

(e) Repeat the previous question with a value-weighted portfolio.

Q 12.27 *To maintain an equal-weighted portfolio, do you have to sell recent winner stocks or recent loser stocks? (Is this a bad or a good idea?)*

Q 12.28 *How different would the one-month performance of an investment in an S&P500 mimicking portfolio be, relative to the performance of the value-weighted market portfolio?*

12·3.E. Quo Vadis? Random Returns on Portfolios

A Road map.

Most of your attention in the next few chapters will be devoted to the case where returns are not yet known: they are still "random variables," denoted with a tilde above the unknown quantity (e.g., $\tilde{r}$). The goal of investments is to select a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ (that is, a set of N investment weights, $w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_N$) which offers the highest likely future performance with the least risk. Using both the tilde and our portfolio sum formula, we can write the uncertain future rate of return to our portfolio as

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i = w_1 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + w_2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2 + \ldots w_N \cdot \tilde{r}_N \ . \tag{12.8}$$

We now need to find

1. a good measure for the reward (likely performance) of a portfolio;
2. and a good measure for the risk of a portfolio.

For this, you shall need statistics, the subject of the next chapter.

12·4. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Securities appear through initial public offerings (IPOs) on exchanges, and disappear through delistings.
- A round-trip transaction is one purchase and one sale of the same security. In the real world, trades incur both brokerage fees and the bid-ask spread. In addition, going short (selling without owning) incurs one extra cost—lack of full use of (interest earnings from) the short-sale proceeds.
- Portfolio returns are a weighted average of individual returns.
- Fund holdings can be deconstructed into individual underlying stock exposures.
- An index is usually computed as the weighted averages of its component price figures. The index is therefore just a number. In contrast, funds and portfolios are collections of underlying assets, the value of which are similarly computed as the weighted average of the underlying component values. Index funds attempt to mimick index percent changes by purchasing stocks similar to those used in the computation of the index.
- Maintaining an equal-weighted index requires constant rebalancing. Maintaining a value-weighted index requires no trading.
- Unlike other portfolios, the value-weighted market portfolio can be owned by each and every investor in equilibrium.

file=secpfios-g.tex: RP

1. The execute orders and keep track of investors' portfolios. They also arrange for margin.
2. Prime brokers are usually used by larger investors, and allow these investors to employ their own traders to execute trades.
3. The specialist is often a monopolist who makes the market on the NYSE. Market-makers are the equivalent on Nasdaq, but usually compete with one another. Both can see the limit orders placed by other investors.
4. The alternatives are often electronic, and often rely on matching trades—thus, they may not execute trades that they cannot match.
5. Shares can appear in an IPO or an SEO. Shares can disappear in a delisting or a repurchase.
6. For academic shorting, you just promise the same cash that the shares themselves are paying. For real-world shorting, you ask your broker to find a holder of the shares, borrow them (i.e., and promise him the same payoffs), and then sell them to someone else. Most importantly, the broker who arranges this will not give you the cash obtained from selling the borrowed shares—that is, the broker will earn the interest on the cash, rather than you. Other important differences have to do with the fact that you can be called upon to terminate your short if the lender of shares wants to sell the shares (you have to return the borrowed shorts), and with the fact that you have to find someone willing to lend you the shares.
7. The bid-ask transaction round-trip costs (bid-ask spread and broker commissions) for either the long or the short would be around 30-60 basis points. In addition, you would have to provide the cash for the share purchase; the cash from the share short is most likely kept by the broker. The loss of proceeds would cost you another 300 to 500 basis points per year in lost interest proceeds, depending on who you are and whether you already have the money or whether you have to borrow the money. So, if the shares cost $5,000, you would have "buy" transaction costs of around $25 and "sell" transaction costs of around $25, for total transaction costs of $50; plus interest opportunity costs of around $100 to $250.
8.
   1. $400,000.
   2. If you use the KO short proceeds to purchase stock in PEP, then $\$400,000\cdot(+15\%)-\$100,000\cdot(+12\%)=\$48,000$. On $300,000 net investment, your rate of return would be 16%.
   3. $\$300,000\cdot(+15\%)-\$100,000\cdot(+12\%)=\$33,000$. On $300,000 net investment, so your rate of return would be 11%. You would be better off forgetting about the shorting and earn the 15% on PEP.
9. $r_{\mathcal{P}}=w_{\mathrm{A}}\cdot r_{\mathrm{A}}+w_{\mathrm{B}}\cdot r_{\mathrm{B}}=40\%\cdot 4\%+60\%\cdot 6\%=5.2\%$.
10. $r_{\mathcal{P}}=r_{\mathrm{A}}+r_{\mathrm{B}}=\$5.20$.
11. $r_{\mathcal{P}}=w_{\mathrm{A}}\cdot r_{\mathrm{A}}+w_{\mathrm{B}}\cdot r_{\mathrm{B}}=\$40\cdot 4\%+\$60\cdot 6\%=\$5.20$. Note that the formula works with dollar investments, too.
12. See Formula 12.4 on Page 295.
13. $r_{\mathrm{PEP}}=10\%$.$r_{\mathrm{CSG}}=(\$38+\$1-\$40)/\$40=-2.5\%$. Therefore, the absolute return and the rate of return on the portfolio was

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\mathcal{P}} &= \$200\cdot(10\%)+\$600\cdot(-2.5\%) \quad = \quad +\$5 \quad . \\ r_{\mathcal{P}} &= \left(\frac{\$200}{\$800}\right)\cdot(10\%)+\left(\frac{\$600}{\$800}\right)\cdot(-2.5\%) \quad = \quad +0.625\% \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{12.9}$$

14. The PEP weights in the two funds are 10% and 50%, respectively. To have zero exposure, you solve

$$w_{\mathcal{FA}}\cdot 10\% \;+\; (1-w_{\mathcal{FA}})\cdot 50\% \;=\; 0 \quad w_{\mathcal{FA}} \;=\; 1.25 \;, \quad w_{\mathcal{FB}} \;=\; -0.25 \;. \tag{12.10}$$

Therefore, your net exposures are

$$w_{\mathrm{KO}} \;=\; 1.25\cdot 60\% \;+\; (-0.25)\cdot 10\% \;=\; 72.5\% \;, w_{\mathrm{CSG}} \;=\; 1.25\cdot 30\% \;+\; (-0.25)\cdot 40\% \;=\; 27.5\% \;. \tag{12.11}$$

If you have $500 to invest, you would short $125 in Fund $\mathcal{FB}$, leaving you with $625 to go long in Fund $\mathcal{FA}$.
15. $\sum_{i=1}^{5} i^2=1+4+9+16+25=55$. (Note that i is just a counter name, which can be replaced by any letter, so this answer is correct.)
16. $\sum_{j=1}^{5}(2\cdot j)=2+4+6+8+10=30$.
17. $\sum_{j=1}^{5}(j-5)=-4-3-2-1-0=-10$.

18. See Page 296.
19. See Page 296.
20.
$$\begin{aligned} w_{\mathcal{FA}} \cdot 15\% + (1 - w_{\mathcal{FA}}) \cdot 40\% &= 30\% \quad w_{\mathcal{FA}} = 40\% \\ w_{\mathcal{FA}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FA},1} + w_{\mathcal{FB}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FB},1} &= w_1 \end{aligned} \tag{12.12}$$
If you purchase 40% in fund $\mathcal{FA}$, your net holdings in each stock are
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Stock } 1\text{:} \quad 40\% \cdot 15\% + 60\% \cdot 40\% &= 30\% \ ; \\ \text{Stock } 2\text{:} \quad 40\% \cdot 50\% + 60\% \cdot 20\% &= 32\% \ ; \\ \text{Stock } 3\text{:} \quad 40\% \cdot 35\% + 60\% \cdot 40\% &= 38\% \ . \\ w_{\mathcal{FA}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FA},i} + w_{\mathcal{FB}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{FB},i} &= w_i \ . \end{aligned} \tag{12.13}$$
21. An index is a series of numbers; a mutual fund holds stocks. A mutual fund can hold stocks to mimick the return on an index.
22. See text for possible indexes to mention.
23. Indexes are numbers, not investments. Their percent change differs from a mimicking portfolio rate of return in that dividends are ignored.
24. In the second security: \$30 and \$270, for the first and second investor, respectively. In the third security: \$60 million and \$540 million, respectively.
25. As already computed in the text, the first security would increase from \$100 million to \$200 million, and thus total market capitalization would increase from \$1 billion to \$1.1 billion. Therefore, the weight of the three securities would be 18%, 27%, and 55%. (Moreover, the portfolio increased by 10% in value, which means that the first investor now has holdings worth \$110 million, and the second investor has holdings worth \$990 million.) The dollar investments are even simpler: the first investor started with \$10, \$30, and \$60 million, respectively, and now holds \$20, \$30, and \$60 million. The second investor now holds \$180, \$270, and \$540 million, respectively.
26.
    1. $w_1 = 50\%, w_2 = 50\%$.
    2. $w_1 = 25\%, w_2 = 75\%$.
    3. Each investor would own \$80 million worth of securities. If each investor held the equal-weighted portfolio, the total demand for stock 1 would be $\$40 \cdot 5 = \$200$. This is impossible. If each investor held the value-weighted portfolio, the total demand for stock 1 would be $\$20 \cdot 5 = \$100$. This is definitely possible.
    4. The equal-weighted portfolio would have started out at $w_1 = \$40m, w_2 = \$40m$. The returns would have made the portfolio $w_1 = \$44m, w_2 = \$28m$ for a total value of $\$72m$. The revised portfolio would have to be $w_1 = \$36m, w_2 = \$36m$. Therefore, the investor would have to sell $\$8m$ in security 1 in order to purchase $\$8m$ in security 2.
    5. The value-weighted investor portfolio started out at $w_1 = \$20m, w_2 = \$60m$, and without trading would have become $w_1 = \$22m, w_2 = 42m$ for a portfolio worth $\$64m$. The investor's weights would be $w_1 = 34.375\%$, $w_2 = 65.625\%$.
       In terms of the market, the first stock would have appreciated in value from \$100 million to \$110 million, while the second would have depreciated from \$300 million to \$210 million. The value-weighted market portfolio would therefore invest $w_1 = \$110/\$320 \approx 34.375\%$ and $w_2 = \$280/\$320 \approx 65.625\%$. Therefore, no trading is necessary.
27. Recent winners have to be sold, recent losers have to be bought. The answer to the question in parentheses is that if the stock market is competitive, past returns should have little predictive power for future returns, so this trading strategy is not necessarily a good or a bad idea. This will be covered in more detail in Chapter 19.
28. The correlation between these two is high. Therefore, it would make little difference.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 13

STATISTICS

last file change: Jan 18, 2006 (11:55h)

last major edit: Aug 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

This chapter attempts to distill the essential concepts of a full course in statistics into thirty-something pages. Thus, it is not an easy chapter, but it is also not as complex and painful as you might imagine.

13·1. Historical and Future Rates of Return

Finance is not philosophy—you have little else but history to guide us.

As an investor, your goal is to find the best possible investment portfolio. Easier said than done. What do you know about how a stock, say, IBM, will perform in the future? Not much. Your prime source of information about how IBM *will* perform is how it *did* perform. If it returned 10% per year over the last 10 years *on average*, maybe it is a good guess that it will return 10% over the next year, too. If it had a risk of plus or minus 20% per year, maybe it is a good guess that it will have a risk of plus or minus 20% over the next year, too. But, is historical performance really representative of future performance?

Don't take history too literally.

Clearly, it makes no sense to assume that future returns will be *exactly* the same as past returns. An investment in a particular six lotto numbers may have paid off big last year, but this does not mean that the exact same investment gamble will work again. More sensibly, you should look at the risk/reward characteristics of the *average* six lotto number investment, from which you would probably conclude that the average six number lotto investment is not a great bet.

For stocks, we use general historical characteristics to indicate future general characteristics.

Similarly, for stocks, it makes more sense to assume that future returns will be *only on average* like past returns in terms of risk and reward. It is not that we believe this to be exactly true, but it is usually our best guess *today*. Of course, we also know that the future will turn out different from the past—some firms will do better, others worse—but we generally have no better information than history. (If you can systematically estimate future risk and reward better than others, you are bound to become rich.)

Sometimes, even general historical characteristics (average) are obviously wrong.

Be warned, though. History is sometimes outright implausible as a predictor of future events. If you had played the lottery for 100 weeks and then won $1 million just by chance, a simple historical average rate of return would be $10,000 per week. Yes, it is a historical average, but it is not the right average *forward-looking*. (Of course, if wyouhad played the lottery 100 million weeks, we would almost surely come to the correct conclusion that playing the lottery is a gamble with a negative expected average rate of return.) Similarly, Microsoft or Wal-Mart are almost surely not going to repeat the spectacular historical stock return performances they experienced over the last 20 years. There are many examples when investors, believing history too much, made spectacularly wrong investment decisions. For example, in 1998-2000, Internet stocks had increased in value by more than 50% per year, and many investors believed that it was almost impossible to lose money on them. Of course, these investors, who believed historical Internet returns were indicative of future Internet returns, lost *all* their money over the following two years.

You have no better choice—so use it, but remain skeptical.

For the most part, the theory of investments—which is the subject of this part of our book—makes it easy on itself. It just *assumes* that you already know a stock's general risk/reward characteristics, and then proceeds to give you advice about what portfolio to choose, given that you already have the correct expectations. The problem of estimating means and variances remains *your* problem. Despite the problems with historical returns, I can only repeat: in many cases, stock's average historical risk-reward behavior is the best guidance you have. You can use this history, even though you should retain a certain skepticism—and perhaps even use common sense to adjust historical averages into more sensible forecasts for the future.

Anecdote: Void Where Prohibited
Persons pretending to forecast the future shall be considered disorderly under subdivision 3, section 901 of the criminal code and liable to a fine of $ 250 and/or six months in prison.

(Section 889, New York State Code of Criminal Procedure.)

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

13·2. The Data: Twelve Annual Rates of Returns

The goal of this chapter is to explain portfolios and stock returns under uncertainty. This is best done with a concrete example. Table 13.1 contains the actual twelve annual rates of returns from 1991 to 2002 for three possible investments: an S&P500 mutual fund, IBM stock, and Sony (ADR) shares.

The data example that is used throughout the Investments part of the book.

Table 13.1. Historical Annual Rates of Returns for S&P500, IBM, and Sony

Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$
1991	+0.2631	−0.2124	−0.1027	1997	+0.3101	+0.3811	+0.3905
1992	+0.0446	−0.4336	−0.0037	1998	+0.2700	+0.7624	−0.2028
1993	+0.0706	+0.1208	+0.4785	1999	+0.1953	+0.1701	+2.9681
1994	−0.0154	+0.3012	+0.1348	2000	−0.1014	−0.2120	−0.5109
1995	+0.3411	+0.2430	+0.1046	2001	−0.1304	+0.4231	−0.3484
1996	+0.2026	+0.6584	+0.0772	2002	−0.2337	−0.3570	−0.0808

Source: Yahoo!*Finance*. (Sidenote: Sony is the SNE ADR.) Numbers are quoted in percent. You will be working with these returns throughout the rest of the investments part.

You should first understand risk and reward, presuming it is now January 1, 2003. Although you are really interested in the returns of 2003 (and beyond), unfortunately all you have are these historical rates of return. So, you have to make the common presumption that historical returns are good indicators of future returns. Further, let us also presume that each year was an equally likely outcome drawn from an underlying statistical process, so that each year is equally informative to us. Formally, future returns are **random variables**, because their outcomes are not yet known. Recall from Sections 5·1 and 12·3.E that you can denote a random variable with a tilde over it, to distinguish it from an ordinary non-random variable, e.g.,

Pretend that historical rates of return are representative of future returns. Introduce tilde notation.

$$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ . \tag{13.1}$$

However, because you only know historical rates of return, you shall use the historical data series in place of the "tilde-d" future variables.

Conceptually, there is a big difference between average historical realizations and expected future realizations. Just because the long-run historical monthly rate of return average was, say, 10% does not mean that it will be 10% in the future. But, practically, there is often not much difference, because you have no choice but to pretend that the historical return series is representative of the distribution of future returns. To draw the distinction, statisticians often name the unknown expected value by a greek character, and the historical outcome that is used to estimate it by its corresponding English character. For example, μ would be the expected future mean, m would be the historical mean; σ would be the expected future standard deviation, s would be the historical standard deviation. After having drawn this careful conceptual distinction, the statisticians then tell you that they will use the historical mean and historical standard deviation as stand-ins (estimators) for the future mean (the expected value) and standard deviation (the expected standard deviation). This is how it should be done, but it can become very cumbersome when dealing with many statistics for many variables. Because we shall mostly work with historical statistics and then immediately pretend that they are our expectations for the future, let us use a more casual notation: when we claim to compute $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$, the notation of which would suggest an expected return, we really compute only the historical mean (unless otherwise stated). That is, in this finance book, we will keep the distinction rather vague.

Please realize that you are going to make a leap of faith here.

DIGGING DEEPER: *As with a history, you can think of the tilde as representing not just one month's outcome, but this distribution of historical outcomes. As of today, next month's rate of return can be anything. (We do not yet have just one number for it.)*

13·3. UNIVARIATE STATISTICS

13·3.A. The Mean

Everyone knows how to compute an average.

If you had invested in a random year, what would you have expected to earn? The reward is measured by the single most important statistic, the expected rate of return (also called **mean** or **average** rate of return). You surely have computed this at one time or another, so let's just state that our means are

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) = 0.101 \ , \ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) = 0.154 \ , \ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) = 0.242 \ . \tag{13.2}$$

Sony was clearly the best investment over these 12 years (mostly due to its spectacular performance in 1999), but IBM and the S&P500 did pretty well, too.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Chapter 4 already showed that the average rate of return is not the annualized rate of return. An investment in Sony beginning in 1999 for three years would have had a compound three-year rate of return of* $(1+297\%)\cdot(1-51\%)\cdot(1-35\%) \approx 26.5\%$*, which is 8.1% annualized. Its average annual rate of return is* $[297\% + (-51\%) + (-35\%)]/3 \approx 70.3\%$.

But, what causes the difference? It is the year-to-year volatility! if the rate of return were 8.1% each year without variation, the annualized and average rate of return would be the same. The year-to-year volatility negatively affects the annualized holding rates of return. For a given average rate of return, more volatility means less compound and thus less annualized rate of return.

For purposes of forecasting a single year's return, assuming that each historical outcome was equally likely, you want to work with average rates of returns. For computing long-term holding period performance, you would want to work with compound rates of return.

13·3.B. The Variance and Standard Deviation

A Tale of three investments.

How can you measure portfolio risk? Intuitively, how does the risk of the following investment choices compare?

1. An investment in a bond that yields 10% per year for sure.
2. An investment that yields −15% half the time, and +35% half the time, but only once per year.
3. An investment in the S&P500.
4. An investment in IBM.
5. An investment in Sony.

You know that the first three investments have a mean rate of return of about +10% per annum. But the mean tells you nothing about the risk.

A naïve attempt at measuring spread fails.

You need a statistic that tells you how variable the outcomes are around the mean. Contestant #1 has no variability, so it is clearly safest. What about your other contestants? For contestant #2, half the time, the investment outcome is 25% below its mean (of +10%); the other half, it is 25% above its mean. Measuring outcomes relative to their means (as we have just done) is so common that it has its own name, **deviation from the mean**. So, can you average the deviations from the mean to measure typical variability? Try it. With two years, and the assumption that each year is an equally likely outcome,

$$\text{Bad Variability Measure} = 1/2\cdot(-25\%) + 1/2\cdot(+25\%) = 0 \ . \tag{13.3}$$

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

The root cause of the problem, and better alternatives: variance and standard deviation.

The average deviation is zero, because the minus and plus cancel. Therefore, the simple average of the deviations is *not* a good measure of spread. You need a measure that tells you the typical variability is plus or minus 25%, not plus or minus 0%. Such a better measure must recognize that a negative deviation from the mean is the same as a positive deviation from the mean. The most common solution is to square each deviation from the mean in order to eliminate the "opposite sign problem." The average of these squared deviations is called the **variance**:

$$\mathit{Var} \;=\; 1/2 \cdot (-25\%)^2 + 1/2 \cdot (+25\%)^2 \;=\; 1/2 \cdot 0.0625 + 1/2 \cdot 0.0625 \;=\; 0.0625 \;. \tag{13.4}$$

The variance and standard deviation measure the expected spread of a random variable.

You can think of the variance as the "average squared deviation from the mean." But the variance of 0.0625 looks nothing like the intuitive spread from the mean, which is plus or minus 25%. However, if you take the square root of the variance, you get the **standard deviation**,

$$\mathit{Sdv} \;=\; \sqrt{\mathit{Var}} \;=\; \sqrt{0.0625} \;=\; 25\% \;, \tag{13.5}$$

which has the intuitively pleasing correct order of magnitude of 25%. Although it is not really correct, it is often convenient to think of the standard deviation as the "average deviation from the mean." (It would be more correct to call it "the square root of the average squared deviation from the mean," but this is unwieldy.)

SIDE NOTE: Aside from its uninterpretable value of 0.0625, there is a second and more important problem interpreting the meaning of a variance. (It did not show up in this example, because rates of return are unitless.) If you are interested in the variability of a variable that has units, like dollars or apples, the units of the variable are usually uninterpretable. For example, if you receive either \$10 or \$20, the deviation from the mean is either −\$5 or +\$5, and the variance is $(\$5)^2 = \$^2 25$, not \$25—the same way by which multiplying 2 meters by 2 meters becomes 4 square-meters, not 4 meters. Square-meters has a good interpretation (area); dollars-squared does not. The standard deviation takes the square root of the variance, and therefore returns to the same units (dollars) as the original series, $\sqrt{\$^2 25} = \$5$ in the example. Note also that I sometimes use "x%%" to denote $x \cdot (\%^2)$—otherwise, there may be confusion whether $x\%^2$ means $(x\%)^2$ or $x \cdot (\%^2)$. So, 1%% is $0.01 \cdot 0.01 = 0.0001$, and $\sqrt{1\%\%} = 1\%$.

Standard deviation and variance have the same ordering.

Because the standard deviation is just the square root of the variance, if the variance of one variable is higher than the variance of another variable, so is its standard deviation.

Table 13.2. Deviations From the Mean for S&P500, IBM, and Sony

Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$
1991	+0.1620	−0.3661	−0.3448	1997	+0.2090	+0.2273	+0.1485
1992	−0.0565	−0.5874	−0.2458	1998	+0.1656	+0.6086	−0.4448
1993	−0.0305	−0.0330	+0.2364	1999	+0.0942	+0.0163	+2.7261
1994	−0.1165	+0.1474	−0.1073	2000	−0.2025	−0.3658	−0.7529
1995	+0.2400	+0.0892	−0.1374	2001	−0.2315	+0.2693	−0.5904
1996	+0.1015	+0.5046	−0.1648	2002	−0.3348	−0.5105	−0.3228
		Mean (of Deviations) over all 12 years			0.0	0.0	0.0

Sometimes-important nuisance: For historical data, do not divide the squared deviations by N, but by N-1.

For contestant #3, the S&P500, you must estimate the variability measures from the historical data series. Recall that to compute the variance, you subtract the mean from each outcome, square the deviations, and then average them. To compute the standard deviation, you then take the square-root of the variance. Table 13.2 does most of the hard work for you, giving you deviations from the mean for the S&P500, IBM, and Sony. Computing variances from these deviations is now straightforward: square and average. Alas, there is one nuisance complication: because there is a difference between historical realizations (which you have) and true expected future outcomes (which you do not have [we pretended to know this perfectly in the "-15%,+35%" example]), statisticians divide by $N - 1$, not by N. Therefore, the estimated vari-

ance (divides by $N-1$) is a little bit higher than the average squared deviation from the mean (divides by N).

SIDE NOTE: The reason for this $N-1$ adjustment is that the future standard deviation is not actually known, but only estimated, given the historical realizations. This "extra uncertainty" is reflected by the smaller divisor, which inflates the uncertainty estimate.

The best intuition comes from a sample of only one historical data point: What would you believe the variability would be if you only know one realization, say 10%? In this case, you know nothing about variability. If you divided the average squared deviation (0) by N, the variance formula would indicate a zero variability. This is clearly wrong. If anything, you should be especially worried about variability, for you now know nothing about it. Dividing by $N-1=0$, i.e., $\mathcal{V}ar = 0/0$, indicates that estimating variability from one sample point makes no sense.

The division by N rather than $N-1$ is not important when there are many historical sample data points, which is usually the case in finance. Thus, most of the time, you could use either method, although you should remain consistent. This book uses the $N-1$ statistical convention, if only because it allows checking computations against the built-in formulas in Excel and other statistical packages.

Executing the formulas on historical data and dividing by N-1 yields variances and standard deviations.

So, to obtain the variance of one investment series, square each deviation from the mean, add these squared terms, and dividing by 11 ($N-1$).

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= \frac{(+0.1620)^2+(-0.0565)^2+...+(-0.3348)^2}{11} = 0.0362 \ ; \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= \frac{(-0.3661)^2+(-0.5874)^2+...+(-0.5105)^2}{11} = 0.1503 \ ; \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= \frac{(-0.3448)^2+(-0.2458)^2+...+(-0.3228)^2}{11} = 0.8149 \ ; \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) &= \frac{[\tilde{r}_{t=0}-\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})]^2+[\tilde{r}_{t=1}-\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})]^2+...+[\tilde{r}_{t=T}-\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})]^2}{T-1} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.6}$$

The square roots of the variances are the standard deviations:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= \sqrt{3.62\%} = 19.0\% \ ; \\
\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= \sqrt{15.03\%} = 38.8\% \ ; \\
\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= \sqrt{81.49\%} = 90.3\% \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.7}$$

So, returning to your original question. If you were to line up your three potential investment choices—all of which offered about 10% rate of return—it appears that the S&P500 contestant #3 with its 19% risk is a safer investment than the "-15% or +35%" contestant #2 with its 25% risk. As for the other two investments, IBM with its higher 15%/year average rate of return is also riskier, having a standard deviation of "plus or minus" 38.8%/year. (Calling it "plus or minus" is a common way to express standard deviation.) Finally, Sony was not only the best performer (with its 24.2%/year mean rate of return), but it also was by far the riskiest investment. It had a whopping 90.3%/year standard deviation. (Like the mean, the large standard deviation is primarily caused by one outlier, the +297% rate of return in 1999.)

Preview: Use of risk measures in finance.

You will see that the mean and standard deviation play crucial roles in the study of investments—your ultimate goal will be to determine the portfolio that offers the highest expected reward for the lowest amount of risk. But mean and standard deviation make interesting statistics in themselves. From 1926 to 2002, a period with an inflation rate of about 3% per year, the annual risk and reward of some large asset-class investments were approximately

Asset Class	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r})$
Short-Term U.S. Government Treasury Bills	4%	3%
Long-Term U.S. Government Treasury Bonds	5.5%	10%
Long-Term Corporate Bonds	6%	9%
Large Firm Stocks	10%	20%
Small Firm Stocks	15%	30%

Corporate bonds had more credit (i.e., default) risk than Treasury bonds, but were typically shorter-term than long-term government bonds, which explains their lower standard deviation. For the most part, it seems that higher risk and higher reward went hand-in-hand.

Solve Now!

Q 13.1 *Use Excel to confirm all numbers computed in this section.*

Q 13.2 *The annual rates of return on the German DAX index were*

1991	+0.1286	*1994*	−0.0706	*1997*	+0.4624	*2000*	−0.0754
1992	−0.0209	*1995*	+0.0699	*1998*	+0.1842	*2001*	−0.1979
1993	+0.4670	*1996*	+0.2816	*1999*	+0.3910	*2002*	−0.4394

Compute the mean, variance, and standard deviation of the DAX.

13·4. Bivariate Statistics: Covariation Measures

13·4.A. Intuitive Covariation

Before we embark on more number-crunching, let us first find some intuitive examples of variables that tend to move together, variables that have nothing to do with one another, and variables that tend to move in opposite directions.

Table 13.3. Covariation Examples

Negative	Zero (or Low)	Positive
Agility vs. Weight	IQ vs. Gender	Height vs. Basketball Scoring
Wealth vs. Disease	Wealth vs. Tail when flipping coin	Wealth vs. Longevity
Age vs. Flexibility	Age vs. Blood Type	Age vs. Being CEO
Snow vs. Temperature	Sunspots vs. Temperature	Grasshoppers vs. Temperature
Your Net Returns vs. Broker Commissions Paid	IBM Returns in 1999 vs. Exxon Returns in 1986	Returns on S&P500 vs. Returns on IBM

Personal statistics (such as weight) apply only to adults. Returns are rates of return on stock investments, net of commissions.

An example of a positive covariation.

Table 13.3 offers some such examples of covariation. For example, it is easier to score in basketball if you are 7 feet tall than if you are 5 feet tall. So, there is a positive covariation between individuals' heights and their ability to score. It is *not* perfect covariation—there are short individuals who can score a lot (witness John Stockton, the Utah Jazz basketball player, who despite a height of "only" 6-1 would almost surely score more points than the tallest students in my class), and there are many tall people who could not score if their lives depended on it. It is only *on average* that taller players score more. In this example, the

reason for the positive covariation is direct causality—it is easier to hit the basket when you are as tall as the basket—but correlation need not come from causality. For example, there is also a positive covariation between shoe size and basketball scoring. It is not because bigger feet make it easier to score, but because taller people have both bigger shoe sizes and higher basketball scores. Never forget: causality induces covariation, but not vice-versa.

An example of a zero and a negative covariation.

Zero covariation usually means two variables have nothing to do with one another. For example, there is strong evidence that there is practically no covariation between gender and IQ. Knowing only the gender would not help you a bit in guessing the person's IQ, and vice-versa. (Chauvinists guessing wrong, however, tend to have lower IQs.) An example of negative covariation would be agility vs. weight. It is usually easier for lighter people to overcome the intrinsic inertia of mass, so they tend to be more agile: therefore, more weight tends to be associated with less agility.

13·4.B. Covariation: Covariance, Correlation, and Beta

A measure of dependence should be positive when two variables tend to move together, negative if they tend to move in opposite directions.

Your goal now is to find measures of covariation that are positive when two variables tend to move together; that are zero when two variables have nothing to do with one another; and that are negative when one variable tends to be lower when the other variable tends to be higher. We will consider three possible measures of covariation: covariance, correlation, and beta. Each has its advantages and disadvantages.

Illustrative Data Series

Work with nine made-up data series.

Start with the nine data series in Table 13.4, the returns on nine assets that I have made up. Let us use asset $\mathcal{A}$ as our base asset and consider how assets C through J relate to $\mathcal{A}$. You want to ask such questions as "if data series $\mathcal{A}$ were the rate of return on the S&P500, and data series C were the rate of return on IBM, then how do the two return series covary?" This question is important, because it will help you determine investment opportunities that have lower risk.

Covariation is best to understand with an extreme, albeit absurd example. But you need two measures of covariation, not just one.

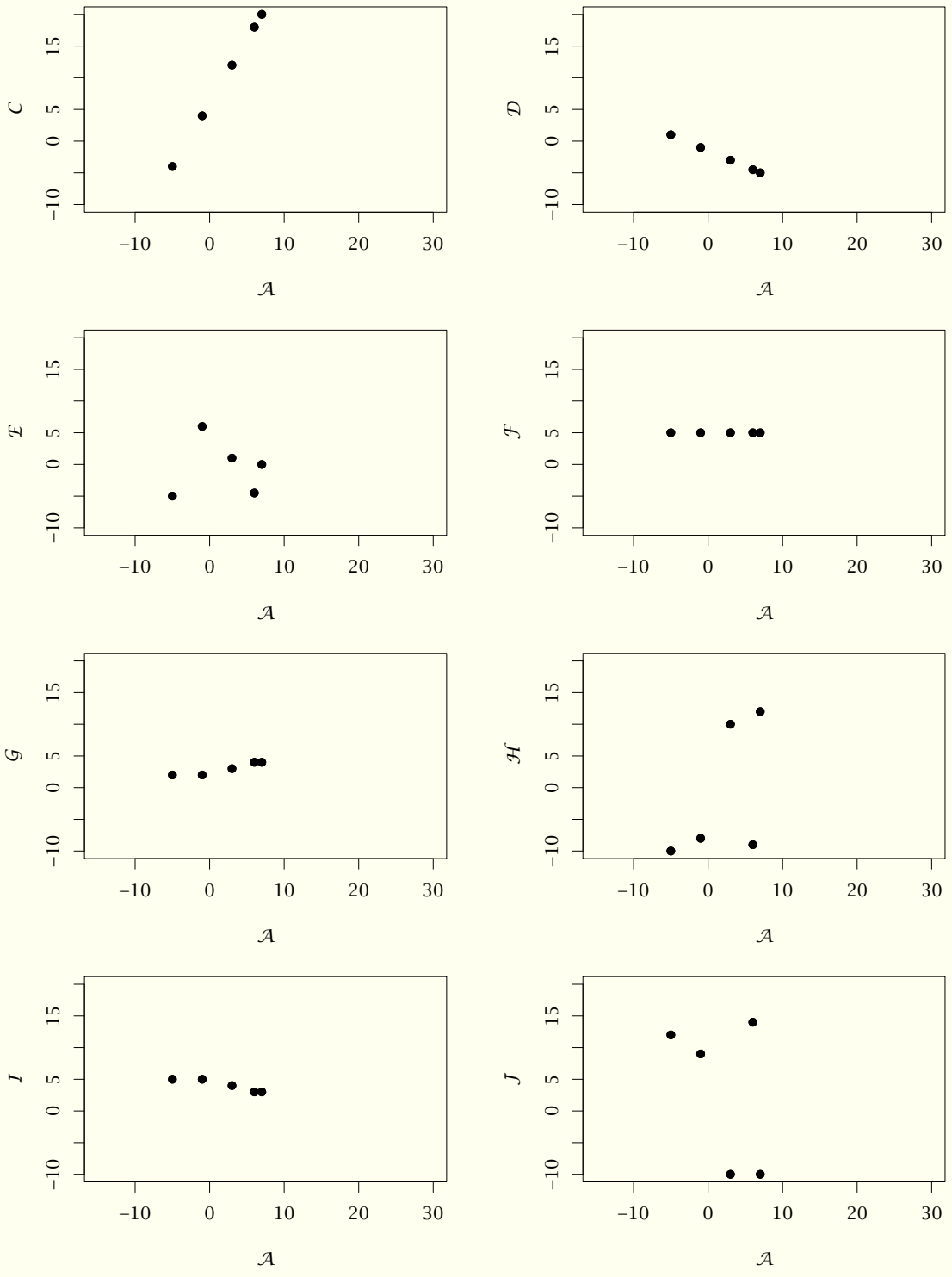
So try to determine how each series covaries with $\mathcal{A}$. Doing this graphically makes it easier, so Figure 13.1 plots the points. If you look at it, you can see that you shall need more than just one covariation statistic: you need one statistic that tells you how much two variables are related (e.g., whether $\mathcal{A}$ has more effect on $\mathcal{G}$ or $\mathcal{H}$); and one statistic that tells you how reliable this relationship is (e.g., whether knowing $\mathcal{A}$ gives you much confidence to predict $\mathcal{G}$ or $\mathcal{H}$). Your first task is to draw lines into each of the eight graphs in Figure 13.1 that best fits the points (do it!)—and then to stare at the points and your lines. How steep are your lines (the relationships) and how reliably do the points cluster around your line? Before reading on, your second task is to write into the eight graphs in Figure 13.1 what your intuition tells you the relation and the reliability are.

Here is what I see.

Figure 13.1 seems to show a range of different patterns:

- C and $\mathcal{D}$ are strongly related to $\mathcal{A}$. Actually, C is just $2 \cdot (\mathcal{A} + 3)$; $\mathcal{D}$ is just $-C/2$, so these two relationships are also perfectly reliable.
- $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ have no relationship to $\mathcal{A}$. Though random, there is no pattern connecting $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{E}$. $\mathcal{F}$ is 5 regardless of what $\mathcal{A}$ is.
- $\mathcal{G}$ and $\mathcal{H}$ both tend to be higher when $\mathcal{A}$ is higher, but in different ways. There is more reliability in the relation between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{G}$, but even a large increase in $\mathcal{A}$ predicts a $\mathcal{G}$ that is only a little higher. In contrast, there is less reliability in how $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}$ covary, but even a small increase in $\mathcal{A}$ predicts a much higher $\mathcal{H}$.
- Figures I and J repeat the $\mathcal{G}/\mathcal{H}$ pattern, but for negative relations.

Figure 13.1. *C* Through *J* as functions of $\mathcal{A}$



The five observations are marked by circles. *Can you draw a well fitting line? Which series have relations with A? What sign? Which series have reliable relations with A?*

Table 13.4. Illustrative Rates of Return Time Series on Nine Assets

	Portfolio (or Asset or Security)								
Observation	$\mathcal{A}$	C	$\mathcal{D}$	$\mathcal{E}$	$\mathcal{F}$	$\mathcal{G}$	$\mathcal{H}$	I	J
Year 1	−5	−4	+1.0	−10	+5	2	−10	+5	+12
Year 2	+6	+18	−4.5	−9	+5	4	−9	+3	+14
Year 3	+3	+12	−3.0	+2	+5	3	+10	+4	−10
Year 4	−1	+4	−1.0	+12	+5	2	−8	+5	+9
Year 5	+7	+20	−5.0	0	+5	4	+12	+3	−10
Mean	+2	+10	−2.5	−1	+5	+3	−1	+4	+3
Var	25	100	6.25	81	0	1	121	1	144
Sdv	5	10	2.5	9	0	1	11	1	12

Which rate of return series (among portfolios C through J) had low and which had high covariation with the rate of return series of Portfolio $\mathcal{A}$?

SIDE NOTE: I cheated in not using my eyeballs to draw lines, but in using the technique of "ordinary least squares" line fitting in Figure 13.3, instead. The lines make it even clearer that when $\mathcal{A}$ is high, C, $\mathcal{G}$, and $\mathcal{H}$ tend to be high, too; but when $\mathcal{A}$ is high, $\mathcal{D}$, I, and J tend to be low. And neither $\mathcal{E}$ nor $\mathcal{F}$ seem to covary with $\mathcal{A}$. (You will get to compute the slope of this line—the "beta"—later.)

How covariance really works: quadrants above/below means.

Of course, visual relationships are in the eye of the beholder. You need something more objective that both of us can agree on. Here is how to compute a precise measure. The first step is to determine the means of each X and each Y variable and mark these into the figure—which is done for you in Figure 13.2. The two means divide your data into four quadrants. Now, intuitively, points in the northeast or southwest quadrants (in white) suggest a positive covariation; points that are in the northwest or southeast quadrants (in red) suggest a negative covariation. In other words, the idea of all of the covariation measures is that two series, call them X and Y, are positively correlated

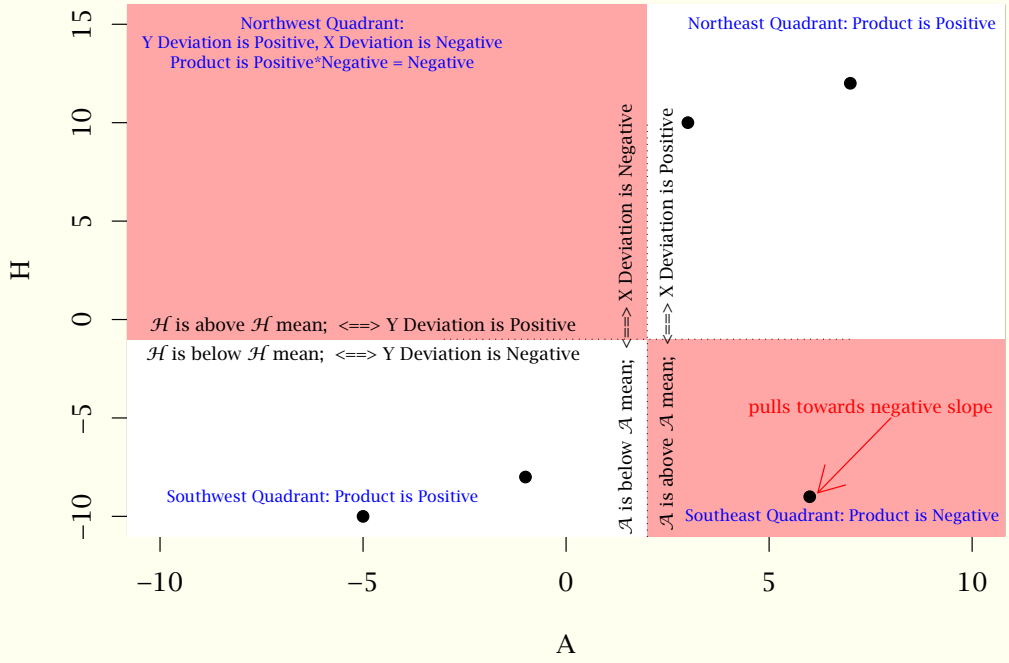
- when X tends to be above its mean, Y also tends to be above its mean (upper right quadrant); and
- when X tends to be below its mean, Y also tends to be below its mean (lower left quadrant).

And X and Y are negatively correlated

- when X tends to be above its mean, Y tends to be below its mean (lower right quadrant); and
- when X tends to be below its mean, Y tends to be above its mean (upper left quadrant).

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

Figure 13.2. $\mathcal{H}$ as Function of $\mathcal{A}$



Points in the red quadrants pull the overall covariance statistics into a negative direction. Points in the white quadrants pull the overall covariance statistics into a positive direction.

Covariance

How can you make a positive number for every point that is either above both the X and Y means, or both below the X and Y means, and a negative number for every point that is above one mean and below the other? Easy! First, you measure each data point in terms of its distance from its mean, so you subtract the mean from each data point, as in Table 13.5. Points in the northeast quadrant are above both means, so both demeaned values are positive. Points in the southwest quadrant are below both means, so both demeaned values are negative. Points in the other two quadrants have one positive and one negative demeaned number. Now, you know that the product of either two positive or two negative numbers is positive, and the product of one positive and one negative number is negative. So if you multiply your deviations from the mean, the product has a positive sign if it is in the upper-right and lower-left quadrants (the deviations from the mean are either both positive or both negative), and a negative sign if it is in the upper-left and lower-right quadrants (only one deviation from the mean is positive, the other is negative). A point that has a positive product pulls towards positive covariation, whereas a negative product pulls towards negative covariation.

The main idea is to think about where points lie, within the quadrants in the figure. Multiply the deviations from the mean to get the right sign for each data point relative to each quadrant.

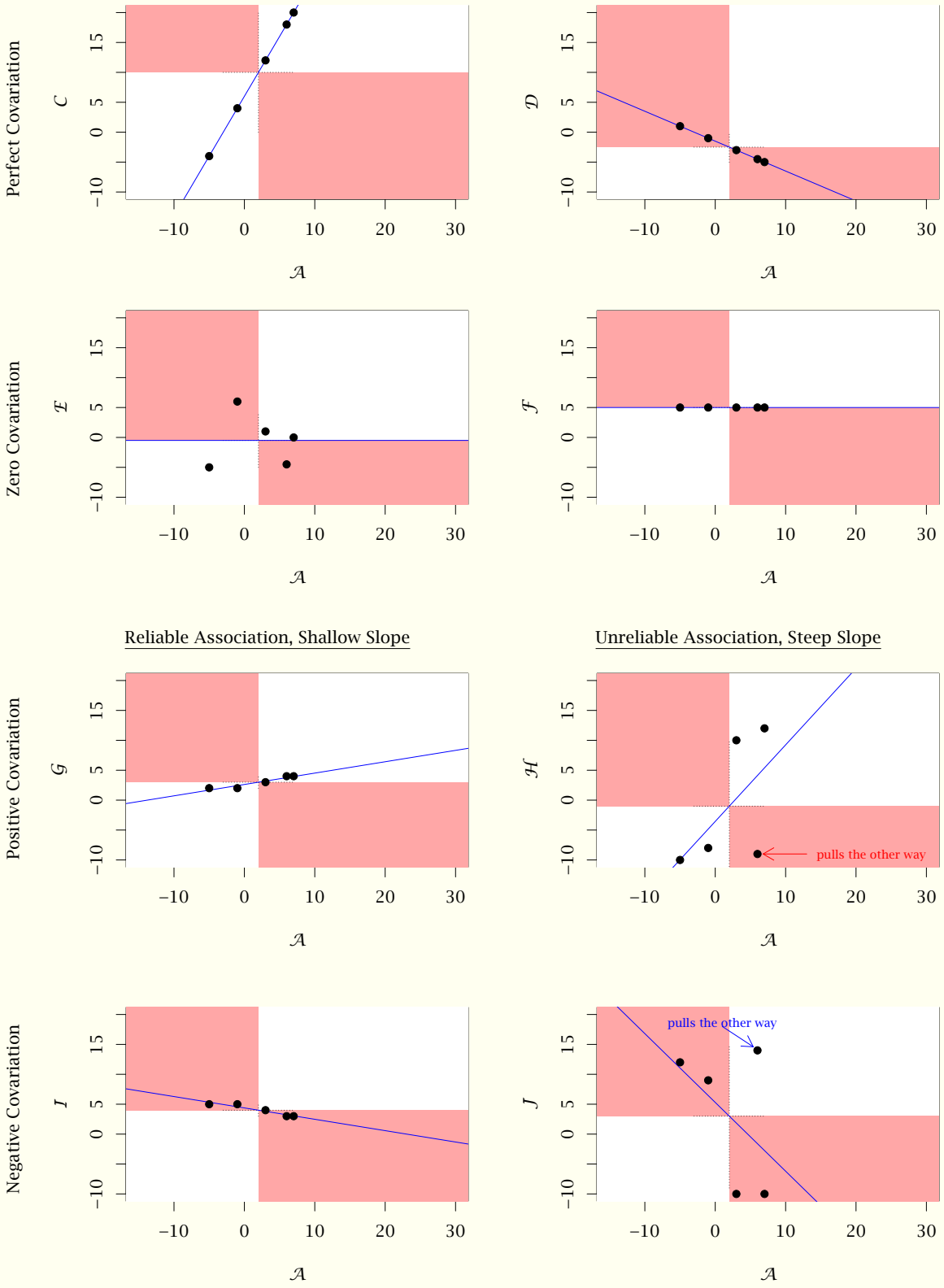
You want to know the average pull. This is the **covariance**—the average of these products of two variables' deviations from their own means. Try it for $\mathcal{A}$ and C (again, following the standard method of dividing by $N-1$ rather than N):

The covariance is the average of the multiplied deviations from their means.

$$Cov(\mathcal{A}, C) = \frac{(-7)\cdot(-14) + (+4)\cdot(+8) + (+1)\cdot(+2) + (-3)\cdot(-6) + (+5)\cdot(+10)}{4} = 50 \tag{13.8}$$

$$Cov(\mathcal{A}, C) = \frac{(a_1 - \bar{a})\cdot(b_1 - \bar{b}) + \ldots + (a_5 - \bar{a})\cdot(b_5 - \bar{b})}{N-1} .$$

Figure 13.3. B Through I as functions of A, Lines Added



The five observations are marked by circles. The areas north, south, east, and west of the X and Y means are now marked. A cross with arm lengths equal to one standard deviation is also placed on each figure.

Which points push the relationship to be positive, which points push the relationship to be negative?

Table 13.5. Illustrative Rates of Return Time Series on Nine Assets, De-Meaned

	Rates of Returns on Portfolios (or Assets or Securities)								
Observation	$\mathcal{A}$	$\mathcal{C}$	$\mathcal{D}$	$\mathcal{E}$	$\mathcal{F}$	$\mathcal{G}$	$\mathcal{H}$	$\mathcal{I}$	$\mathcal{J}$
Year 1	−7	−14	+3.5	−9	0	−1	−9	+1	+9
Year 2	+4	+8	−2.0	−8	0	+1	−8	−1	+11
Year 3	+1	+2	−0.5	+3	0	0	+11	0	−13
Year 4	−3	−6	+1.5	+13	0	−1	−7	+1	+6
Year 5	+5	+10	−2.5	+1	0	+1	+13	−1	−13
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	0	0	0.0	0	0	0	0	0	0
$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r})$	25	100	6.25	81	0	1	121	1	144
$Sdv(\tilde{r})$	5	10	2.5	9	0	1	11	1	12

It will be easier to work with the series from Table 13.4 if you first subtract the mean from each series.

Note how in this $\mathcal{A}$ vs. $\mathcal{C}$ relationship, each term in the sum is positive, and therefore pulls the average (the covariance) towards being a positive number. You can see this in the figure, because each and every point lies in the two "positivist" quadrants. Repeat this for the remaining series:

$$\begin{aligned}
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{D}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(+3.5)+(+4)\cdot(-2)+(+1)\cdot(-0.5)+(-3)\cdot(+1.5)+(+5)\cdot(-2.5)}{4} = -12.5 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{E}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(-9)+(+4)\cdot(-8)+(+1)\cdot(+3)+(-3)\cdot(+13)+(+5)\cdot(+1)}{4} = 0 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{F}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(0)+(+4)\cdot(0)+(+1)\cdot(0)+(-3)\cdot(0)+(+5)\cdot(0)}{4} = 0 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(-1)+(+4)\cdot(+1)+(+1)\cdot(0)+(-3)\cdot(-1)+(+5)\cdot(+1)}{4} = 4.75 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{H}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(-9)+(+4)\cdot(-8)+(+1)\cdot(+11)+(-3)\cdot(-7)+(+5)\cdot(+13)}{4} = 32 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{I}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(+1)+(+4)\cdot(-1)+(+1)\cdot(0)+(-3)\cdot(+1)+(+5)\cdot(-1)}{4} = -4.75 \ ; \\
Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{J}) &= \frac{(-7)\cdot(+9)+(+4)\cdot(+11)+(+1)\cdot(-13)+(-3)\cdot(+6)+(+5)\cdot(-13)}{4} = -28.75 \ ; \\
Cov(X,Y) &= \frac{(x_1-\bar{x})\cdot(y_1-\bar{y})+\ldots+(x_5-\bar{x})\cdot(y_5-\bar{y})}{N-1} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.9}$$

Having computed the covariances, look at Figure 13.3. $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{I}$, and $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{J}$ covary negatively on average; $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{G}$, and $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}$ covary positively; and $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{E}$, and $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{F}$ have zero covariation. Now, take a look at the $\mathcal{A}$ vs. $\mathcal{H}$ figure (also in Figure 13.2) again: there is one lonely point in the lower-right quadrant, marked with an arrow. It tries to pull the line into a negative direction. In the $\mathcal{A}$ vs. $\mathcal{H}$ covariance computation, this point is the $(+4)\cdot(-1)$ term, which is the only negative component in the overall sum. If this one point had not been in the data, the association between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}$ would have been more strongly positive than 4.75.

Covariance gives the right sign, but not much more. It is often abbreviated as a sigma with two subscripts.

The covariance tells you the sign (whether a relationship is positive or negative), but its magnitude is difficult to interpret—just as you could not really interpret the magnitude of the variance. Indeed, the covariance not only shares the weird squared-units problem with the variance, but the covariance of a variable with itself *is* the variance! This can be seen from the definitions: Both multiply each historical outcome deviation by itself, and then divide by the same number,

$$\begin{aligned}
Cov(X,X) &= \frac{(x_1-\bar{x})\cdot(x_1-\bar{x})+\ldots+(x_N-\bar{x})\cdot(x_N-\bar{x})}{N-1} \\
&= \frac{(x_1-\bar{x})^2+\ldots+(x_N-\bar{x})^2}{N-1} = \mathcal{V}ar(X) \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.10}$$

And, just like the variance is needed to compute the standard deviation, the covariance is needed to compute the next two covariation measures (correlation and beta). The covariance statistic is so important and used so often that the Greek letter sigma (σ) with two subscripts has become the standard abbreviation:

$$\begin{array}{rlll} \text{Covariance between } X \text{ and } Y\text{:} & Cov(X,Y) & \sigma_{X,Y} & \\ \text{Variance of } X\text{:} & Var(X) & \sigma_{X,X} & = \sigma_X^2 \quad . \end{array} \tag{13.11}$$

These are sigmas with two subscripts. If you use only one subscript, you mean the standard deviation:

$$\text{Standard Deviation of } X\text{:} \quad Sdv(X) \qquad \sigma_X \quad . \tag{13.12}$$

This is easy to remember if you think of two subscripts as the equivalent of multiplication (squaring), and of one subscript as the equivalent of square-rooting.

Correlation

Correlation is closely related to, but easier to interpret than Covariance.

To better interpret the covariance, you need to somehow normalize it. A first normalization of the covariance gives the **correlation**. It divides the covariance by the standard deviations of both variables. Applying this formula, you can compute

$$\begin{array}{rcccccl} Correlation(\mathcal{A},C) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},C)}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(C)} & = & \dfrac{+50}{10\cdot 5} & = & +1.00 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{D}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{D})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{D})} & = & \dfrac{-12.5}{5\cdot 2.5} & = & -1.00 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{E}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{E})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{E})} & = & \dfrac{0}{5\cdot 9} & = & \pm 0.00 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{F}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{F})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{F})} & = & \dfrac{0}{5\cdot 0} & = & \text{not defined} \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{G})} & = & \dfrac{4.75}{5\cdot 1} & = & +0.95 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{H}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{H})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{H})} & = & \dfrac{32}{5\cdot 11} & = & +0.58 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{I}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{I})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{I})} & = & \dfrac{-4.75}{5\cdot 1} & = & -0.95 \quad ; \\ Correlation(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{J}) & = & \dfrac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{J})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{J})} & = & \dfrac{-28.75}{5\cdot 12} & = & -0.48 \quad ; \\ Correlation(X,Y) & = & \dfrac{Cov(X,Y)}{Sdv(X)\cdot Sdv(Y)} & & & & \quad . \end{array} \tag{13.13}$$

The correlation measures the reliability of the relationship between two variables. A higher *absolute* correlation means more reliability, regardless of the strength of the relationship (slope). The nice thing about the correlation is that it is always between −100% and +100%. Two variables that have a correlation of 100% always perfectly move in the same direction, two variables that have a correlation of -100% always perfectly move in the opposite direction, and two variables that are independent have a correlation of 0%. This makes the correlation very easy to interpret. The correlation is unit-less, regardless of the units of the original variables themselves, and is often abbreviated with the Greek letter rho (ρ). The perfect correlations between $\mathcal{A}$ and C or $\mathcal{D}$ tell you that all points lie on straight lines. (Verify this visually in Figure 13.3!) The correlations between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{G}$ (95%) and the correlations between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{I}$ (−95%) are almost as strong: the points almost lie on a line. The correlation between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}$, and the correlation between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{J}$ are weaker: the points do not seem to lie on a straight line, and knowing $\mathcal{A}$ does not permit you to *perfectly* predict $\mathcal{H}$ or $\mathcal{J}$.

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

SIDE NOTE: If two variable are always acting identically, they have a correlation of 1. Therefore, you can determine the maximum covariance between two variables:

$$1 = \frac{Cov(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y})}{Sdv(\tilde{X})\cdot Sdv(\tilde{Y})} \iff Cov(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) = Sdv(\tilde{X})\cdot Sdv(\tilde{Y}) \ . \tag{13.14}$$

It is mathematically impossible for the absolute value of the covariance to exceed the product of the two standard deviations.

Beta

Beta is yet another covariation measure, and has an interesting graphical interpretation.

The correlation cannot tell you that $\mathcal{A}$ has more pronounced influence on $\mathcal{C}$ than on $\mathcal{D}$: although both correlations are perfect, if $\mathcal{A}$ is higher by 1, your prediction of $\mathcal{C}$ is higher by 2; but if $\mathcal{A}$ is higher by 1, your prediction of $\mathcal{D}$ is lower by only -0.5. You need a measure for the slope of the best-fitting line that you would draw through the points. Your second normalization of the covariance does this: it gives you this slope, the **beta**. It divides the covariance by the variance of the X variable (here, $\mathcal{A}$), i.e., instead of one dividing by the standard deviation of Y (as in the correlation), it divides a second time by a standard deviation of X:

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{C})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{+50}{5\cdot 5} = +2.00 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{D},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{D})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{-12.5}{5\cdot 5} = -0.50 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{E},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{E})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{0}{5\cdot 5} = \pm 0.00 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{F},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{F})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{0}{5\cdot 5} = \pm 0.00 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{G},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{4.75}{5\cdot 5} = +0.19 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{H},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{H})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{32}{5\cdot 5} = +1.28 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{I},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{I})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{-4.75}{5\cdot 5} = -0.19 \ ; \\
\beta_{\mathcal{J},\mathcal{A}} &= \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{J})}{Sdv(\mathcal{A})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{A})} = \frac{-28.75}{5\cdot 5} = -1.15 \ ; \\
\beta_{Y,X} &= \frac{Cov(X,Y)}{Sdv(X)\cdot Sdv(X)} = \frac{Cov(X,Y)}{Var(X)} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.15}$$

The first subscript on beta denotes the variable on the Y axis, while the second subscript on beta denotes the variable on the X axis. It is the latter that provides the variance (the divisor). Beta got its name from the fact that the most common way to write down the formula for a line is $y = \alpha + \beta\cdot x$, and the best-fitting line slope is exactly what beta is. Unlike correlations, betas are not limited to any range. Beta values of $+1$ and -1 denote the diagonal lines, beta values of 0 and ∞ denote the horizontal and vertical line. Inspection of Figure 13.3 shows that the slope of $\mathcal{A}$ vs. $\mathcal{C}$ is *2 to 1*, while the slope of $\mathcal{A}$ vs. $\mathcal{D}$ is shallower *1 to -2*. This is exactly what beta tells us: $\beta_{\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A}}$ is 2.0, while $\beta_{\mathcal{D},\mathcal{A}}$ is -0.5. Unlike the correlation, beta cannot tell you whether your line fits perfectly or imperfectly. But, unlike the correlation, beta can tell you how much you should change your prediction of Y if the X values change. And unlike correlation and covariance, the order of the two variables matters in computing beta. For example, $\beta_{\mathcal{G},\mathcal{A}} = 0.19$ is not $\beta_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G}}$:

$$\beta_{\mathcal{A},\,\mathcal{G}} = \frac{Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{G})}{Sdv(\mathcal{G})\cdot Sdv(\mathcal{G})} = \frac{5.00}{1\cdot 1} = 5 \ . \tag{13.16}$$

DIGGING DEEPER: *In a statistical package, beta can be obtained either by computing covariances and variances and then dividing the two; or by running a* ***Linear Regression****, in which the dependent variable is the Y variable and the independent variable is the X variable.*

$$Y = \alpha + \beta \cdot X + \epsilon \ . \tag{13.17}$$

Both methods yield the same answer.

When it comes to stock returns, you really want to know the future slope, although you usually only have the historical slope.

And, as with all other statistical measures, please keep in mind that you are usually computing a historical beta (line slope), although you usually are really interested in the future beta (line slope)!

Summary of Covariation Measures

Table 13.6 summarizes the three covariation measures.

Table 13.6. Comparison of Covariation Measures

	Units	Magnitude	Order of Variables	computed as	Measures
Covariance	squared	practically meaningless	irrelevant	$\sigma_{X,Y}$	No Intuition
Correlation	unit-less	between −1 and +1	irrelevant	$\sigma_{X,Y} \,/\, (\sigma_X \cdot \sigma_Y)$	Reliability
beta (Y,X)	unit-less	meaningful (slope)	important	$\sigma_{X,Y} \,/\, \sigma_{X,X}$	Slope
beta (X,Y)	unit-less	meaningful (slope)	important	$\sigma_{X,Y} \,/\, \sigma_{Y,Y}$	Slope

All covariation measures share the same sign. If one is positive (negative), so are all others. Recall that $\sigma_{X,X} = \sigma_X^2$, which must be positive.

Figure 13.4 summarizes everything that you have learned about the covariation of your series. It plots the data points, the quadrants, the best fitting lines, and a text description of the three measures of covariation.

13·4.C. Computing Covariation Statistics For The Annual Returns Data

Applying the covariance formula to the historical data.

Now back to work! It is time to compute the covariance, correlation, and beta for your three investment choices, S&P500, IBM, and Sony. Return to the deviations from the means in Table 13.2. As you know, to compute the covariances, you add the products of the demeaned observations and divide by $(T-1)$—tedious, but not difficult work:

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) = \frac{(+0.162)\cdot(-0.366) + ... + (-0.335)\cdot(-0.511)}{11} = 0.0330 \ ;$$

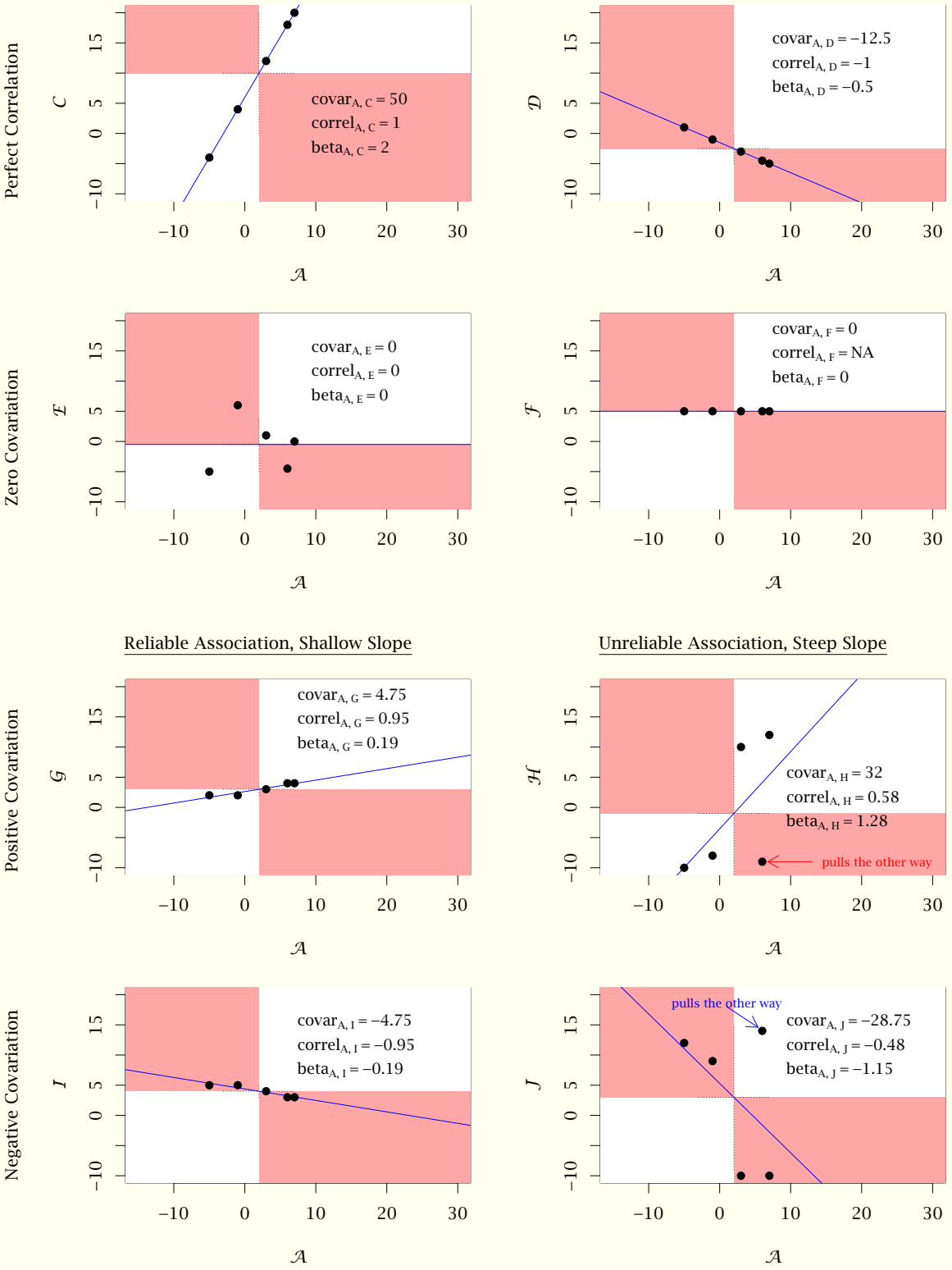
$$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) = \frac{(+0.162)\cdot(-0.345) + ... + (-0.335)\cdot(-0.323)}{11} = 0.0477 \ ;$$

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) = \frac{(-0.366)\cdot(-0.345) + ... + (-0.511)\cdot(-0.323)}{11} = 0.0218 \ ;$$

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) = \frac{(\tilde{r}_{i,s=1} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i))\cdot(\tilde{r}_{j,s=1} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_j)) + ... + (\tilde{r}_{i,s=T} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)\cdot(\tilde{r}_{j,s=T} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_j))}{T-1} \ . \tag{13.18}$$

All three covariance measures are positive. You know from the discussion on Page 317 that, aside from their signs, the covariances are almost impossible to interpret. Therefore, now

Figure 13.4. *C* Through *J* as functions of $\mathcal{A}$ with lines and text



The five observations are marked by circles. The areas north, south, east, and west of the *X* and *Y* means are now marked. A cross with arm lengths equal to one standard deviation is also placed on each figure.

compute the correlations, your measure of how well the best-fitting line fits the data. The correlations are the covariances divided by the two standard deviations:

$$\begin{aligned}
Correlation(\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}, \tilde{r}_{IBM}) &= \frac{3.30\%}{19.0\% \cdot 38.8\%} = 44.7\% \ ; \\
Correlation(\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}, \tilde{r}_{Sony}) &= \frac{4.77\%}{19.0\% \cdot 90.3\%} = 27.8\% \ ; \\
Correlation(\tilde{r}_{IBM}, \tilde{r}_{Sony}) &= \frac{2.18\%}{38.8\% \cdot 90.3\%} = 6.2\% \ ; \\
Correlation(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j)}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_i) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_j)} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.19}$$

So, the S&P500 has correlated much more with IBM, than the S&P500 has correlated with Sony (or IBM with Sony). This makes intuitive sense. Both S&P500 and IBM are U.S. investments, while Sony is a stock that is trading in an entirely different market.

Applying the beta formula to the historical data.

Finally, you might want to compute the beta of $\tilde{r}_{Sony}$ with respect to the $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$ (i.e., divide the covariance of $\tilde{r}_{Sony}$ with $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$ by the variance of $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$), and the beta of $\tilde{r}_{IBM}$ with respect to the $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$. Although you should really write $\beta_{\tilde{r}_{IBM},\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}}$, no harm is done if you omit the $\tilde{r}$ for convenience, and just elevate the subscripts when there is no risk of confusion. Thus, you can just write $\beta_{IBM,S\&P500}$, instead.

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{IBM,S\&P500} &= \frac{3.30\%}{(19.0\%)^2} = 0.91 \ ; \\
\beta_{Sony,S\&P500} &= \frac{4.77\%}{(19.0\%)^2} = 1.31 \ . \\
\beta_{i,j} &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j)}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_i) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_j)} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{13.20}$$

Beta is the slope of the best-fitting line when the rate of return on S&P500 is on the X-axis and the rate of return on IBM (or Sony) is on the Y-axis. Note that although Sony was correlated less with the S&P500 than IBM was correlated with the S&P500, it is Sony that has the steeper slope. Correlation and beta do measure different things. The next chapters will elaborate more on the importance of beta in finance.

The Marquis De Sade would not have been happy. Ok, neither would Mary Poppins.

You have now computed all the statistics that this book will use: means, variances, standard deviations, covariances, correlations, and betas. Only modestly painful, I hope. The next chapter will use no new statistics, but it will show how they work in the context of portfolios.

Solve Now!

Q 13.3 *What is the correlation of a random variable with itself?*

Q 13.4 *What is the slope (beta) of a random variable with itself?*

Q 13.5 *Return to the historical rates of return on the DAX from Question 13.2 (Page 311). Compute the covariances, correlations and betas for the DAX with respect to each of the other three investment securities.*

Q 13.6 *Very advanced Question: Compute the annual rates of return on a portfolio of 1/3 IBM and 2/3 Sony. Then compute the beta of this portfolio with respect to the S&P500. How does this compare to the beta of IBM with respect to the S&P500, and the beta of Sony with respect to the S&P500?*

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

13·5. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Finance often uses statistics based on historical rates of return as standings to predict statistics for future rates of return. This is a leap of faith—often, but not always correct.
- Tildes denote random variables—a distribution of possible future outcomes. In practice, the distribution is often given by historical data.
- The expected rate of return is a measure of the reward. It is often forecast from the historical mean.
- The standard deviation—and its intermediate input, the variance—are measures of the risk. The standard deviation is (practically) the square-root of the average squared deviation from the mean.
- Covariation measures how two variables move together. Causality induces covariation, but not vice-versa. So, two variables can covary, even if neither variable would be the cause of the other.
- Like variance, the covariance is difficult to interpret. Thus, covariance is often only an intermediate number on the way to more intuitive statistics.
- The correlation is the covariance divided by the standard deviation of both variables. It measures how reliable a relationship between two variables is. The order of variables does not matter. The correlation is always between -1 and $+1$.
- The beta is the covariance divided the standard deviation of the variable on the X axis squared (which is the variance). It measures how steep a relationship between two variables is. The order of variables matters: $\beta_{A,B}$ is different from $\beta_{B,A}$.

13·6. Advanced Appendix: More Statistical Theory

13·6.A. Historical and Future Statistics

Physical processes often have known properties. Stock returns do not.

The theory usually assumes that although you do not know the *outcome* of a random variable, you do know the statistics (such as mean and standard deviation) for the outcomes. That is, you can estimate or judge a random variable's unknown mean, standard deviation, covariance (beta), etc. Alas, while this is easy for the throw of a coin or a die, where you know the physical properties of what determines the random outcome, this is not so easy for stock returns. For example, what is the standard deviation of next month's rate of return on PepsiCo?

Use historical statistics as estimators of future statistics.

You just do not have a better alternative than to assume that PepsiCo's returns are manifestations of the same statistical process over time. So, if you want to know the standard deviation of PepsiCo's next month's rate of return, you typically must assume that each historical monthly rate of return—at least over the last couple of years—was a draw from the same distribution. Therefore, you can use the historical rates of return, assuming each one was an equally likely outcome, to estimate the future standard deviation. Analogously, the mechanics of the computation for obtaining the estimated future standard deviation are exactly the same as those you used to obtain an actual historical standard deviation.

This works well for standard deviations and covariation statistics, but not for means.

But, using historical statistics and then arguing that they are representative of the future is a bit of a leap. Empirical observation has taught us that doing so works well for standard deviations and covariation measures: that is, the historical statistics obtained from monthly rates of returns over the last 3 to 5 years appear to be fairly decent predictors of future betas and standard deviations. Unfortunately, the historical mean rates of return are fairly unreliable predictors of the future rates of returns.

Q 13.7 *When predicting the outcome of a die, why do you not use historical statistics on die throws as predictors of future die throws?*

Q 13.8 *Are historical financial securities' mean rates of return good predictors of future mean rates of return?*

Q 13.9 *Are historical financial securities' standard deviations and correlations of rates of return good predictors of their future equivalents?*

13·6.B. Improving Future Estimates From Historical Estimates

Extreme outcomes have more of two components: higher expected outcome and a higher error term (which will not repeat).

The principal remaining problem in the reliability of historical estimates of covariances for prediction is what statisticians call "regression to the mean." That is, the most extreme historical estimates are likely caused not only by the underlying true estimates, but even more so by chance. For example, if all securities had a true standard deviation of 30% per annum, over a particular year some might show a standard deviation of 40%, while others might show a standard deviation of 20%. Those with the high 40% historical standard deviations are most likely to have lower than their historical standard deviations (dropping back to 30%). Those with the low 20% historical standard deviations are most likely to have higher than their historical standard deviations (increasing back to 30%). This can also manifest itself in market beta estimates. Predicting future betas by running a regression with historical rate of return data is too naïve. The reason is that a stock that happened to have a really high return on one day will show too high a beta if the overall stock market happened to have gone up this day and too low a beta if the overall stock market happened to have gone down this day. Such extreme observations tend not to repeat under the same market conditions in the future.

file=statistics-g.tex: RP

Shrinkage just reduces the estimate, hoping to adjust for extremes' errors.

Statisticians handle such problems with a technique called "shrinkage." The historical estimates are reduced ("shrunk") towards a more common mean. Naturally, the exact amount by which historical estimates should be shrunk and what number they should be shrunk towards is a very complex technical problem—and doing it well can make millions of dollars. This book is definitely not able to cover this subject appropriately. Still, reading this book, you might wonder if there is something both quick-and-dirty and reasonable that you can do to obtain better estimates of future mean returns, better estimates of future standard deviations, and better estimates of future betas.

Advice: take the average of the market historical statistic and your individual stock historical statistic. It probably predicts better.

The answer is yes. Here is a two minute non-formal heuristic estimation job: To predict a portfolio statistic, average the historical statistic on your particular portfolio with the historical statistic on the overall stock market. There are better and more sophisticated methods, but this averaging is likely to predict better than the historical statistic of the particular portfolio by itself. (With more time and statistical expertise, you could use other information, such as beta, the industry historical rate of return, or the average P/E ratio of the portfolio, to produce even better guestimates of future portfolio behavior.) For example, the market beta for the overall market is "1.0," so my prescription is to average the estimated beta and 1.0. Commercial vendors of market beta estimates do something similar, too. *Bloomberg* computes the weighted average of the estimated market beta and the number one, with weights of 0.67 and 0.33, respectively, *Value Line* reverses these two weights. *Ibbotson Associates*, however, does something more sophisticated, shrinking beta not towards one, but towards a "peer group" market beta.

An example of shrinking.

Let us apply some shrinking to the statistics in Table 14.7 on Page 353. If you were asked to guestimate an expected annual rate of return for Wal-Mart over the next year, you would not quote Wal-Marts historical 31.5% as your estimate of Wal-Mart's future rate of return. Instead, you could quote an average of 31.5% and 6.3% (the historical rate of return on the market from 1997 to 2002), or about 20% per annum. (This assumes that you are not permitted to use more sophisticated models, such as the CAPM.) You would also guestimate Wal-Mart's risk to be the average of 31.1% and 18.7%, or about 25% per year. Finally, you would guestimate Wal-Mart's market beta to be about 0.95. The specific market index to which you shrink matters little (the Dow-Jones 30 or the S&P500)—but it does matter that you do shrink somehow! An even better target to shrink towards would be the industry average statistics. (Some researchers go as far as to estimate only industry betas, and forego computing the individual firm beta altogether! This is shrinking to a very large degree.) However, good shrinking targets are beyond the scope of this book. Would you like to bet that the historical statistics are better guestimates than the shrunk statistics? (If so, feel free to invest your money into Wal-Mart, and deceive yourself that you will likely earn a mean return 31.5%! Good luck!)

What works reasonably well, what does not.

Here is a summary of some recommendations. Based on regressions using five years of historical monthly data, to predict one-year-ahead statistics, you can use reasonable shrinkage methods for large stocks (e.g., members of the S&P500) as follows:

Mean	Nothing works too well (i.e.,predicting the future from the past).
Market-Model Alpha	Nothing works too well.
Market-Model Beta	Average the historical beta with the number "1." For example, if the regression coefficient (covariance/variance) is 4, use a beta of 2.5.
Standard Deviation	Average the historical standard deviation of the stock and the historical standard deviation of the S&P500. Then increase by 30%, because, historically, for unknown reasons, volatility has been increasing.

Recall that the market model is the linear regression in which the x variable is the rate of return on the S&P500, and the y variable is the rate of return on the stock in which you are interested.

13·6.C. Other Measures of Spread

There are measures of risk other than the variance and standard deviation, but they are obscure enough to deserve your ignorance (at least until an advanced investments course). One such measure is the mean absolute deviation (MAD) from the mean. For the example of a rate of return of either +25% or −25%,

$$\text{MAD} = 1/2 \cdot |(-25\%)| + 1/2 \cdot |(+25\%)| = 1/2 \cdot 25\% + 1/2 \cdot 25\% = 25\% \ . \tag{13.21}$$

In this case, the outcome happens to be the same as the standard deviation, but this is not generally the case. The MAD gives less weight than the standard deviation to observations far from the mean. For example, if you had three returns, −50%, −50% and +100%, the mean would be 0%, the standard deviation 70.7%, and the MAD 66.7%.

Another measure of risk is the semivariance ($\mathcal{SV}$), which relies only on observations below zero or below the mean. That is, all positive returns (or deviations from the mean) are simply ignored. For the example of +25% or −25%,

$$\mathcal{SV} = 1/2 \cdot (-25\%)^2 + 1/2 \cdot (0) = 1/2 \cdot 0.0625 = 0.03125 \ . \tag{13.22}$$

The idea is that investors fear only realizations that are negative (or below the mean).

Finally, note that the correlation has another nice interpretation: the correlation squared is the R^2 in a bivariate OLS regression with a constant.

13·6.D. Translating Mean and Variance Statistics Into Probabilities

Translating standard deviations into more intuitive risk assessments

Although you now know enough to compute a measure of risk, you have not bothered to explore how likely outcomes are. For example, if a portfolio's expected rate of return is 12.6% per year, and its standard deviation is 22% per year, what is the probability that you will lose money (earn below 0%)? What is the probability that you will earn 15% or more? 20% or more?

Stock returns often assume a normal (bell-shaped) distribution.

It turns out that if the underlying distribution looks like a bell curve—and many common portfolio return distributions have this shape—there is an easy procedure to translate mean and standard deviation into the probability that the return will end being less than x. In fact, this probability correspondence is the only advantage that bell shaped distributions provide! Everything else works regardless of the actual shape of the distribution.

An example: Z-score and probability.

For concreteness sake, assume you want to determine the probability that the rate of return on this portfolio is less than +5%:

Step 1 Subtract the mean from 5%. In the example, with the expected rate of return of 12.6%, the result is 5% − 12.6% = −7.6%.

Step 2 Divide this number by the standard deviation. In ths example, this is −7.6% divided by 22%, which comes to −0.35. This number is called the **Score** or **Z-score**.

Step 3 Look up the probability for this Score in the **Cumulative Normal Distribution Table** in Table B.1 (Page 796). For the score of −0.35, this probability is about 0.36.

In sum, you have determined that if returns are drawn from a distribution with a mean of 12.6% and a standard deviation of 22%, then the probability of observing a single rate of return of +5% or less is about 36%. It also follows that the probability that a return is greater than +5% must be 100% − 36% = 64%.

SIDE NOTE: In the real world, this works well enough—but not perfectly. So, do not get fooled by theoretical pseudo-accuracy. Anything between 30% and 40% is a reasonable prediction here.

How well does the Z-score fit in the history?

Now recall portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ in Table 14.1. $\mathcal{P}$ had a mean of 12.6% and a standard deviation of 22%. You have just computed that about one third of the 12 annual portfolio returns should be below +5%. 1991, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, and 1999 performed better than +5%; 1992, 2000, 2001, and 2002 performed worse. So, as predicted by applying the normal distribution table, about one third of the annual returns were 5% or less.

How likely is it that you will lose money?

A common question is "what is the probability that the return will be negative?" Use the same technique,

Step 1 Subtracting the mean of 0% yields 0.0% − 12.6% = −12.6%.

Step 2 Dividing −12.6% by the standard deviation of 22% yields the score of −0.57.

Step 3 For this score of −0.57, the probability is about 28%.

In words, the probability that the rate of return will be negative is around 25% to 30%. And, therefore, the probability that the return will be positive is around 70% to 75%. The table shows that 4 out of the 12 annual rates of return are negative. This is most likely **sampling error**: with only 12 annual rates of return, it was impossible for the distribution of data to accurately follow a bell shape.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Many portfolio returns have what is called "fat tails." This means that the probability of extreme outcomes—especially extreme negative outcomes—is often higher than suggested by the normal distribution table. For example, if the mean return were 30% (e.g. for a multi-year return) and the standard deviation were 10%, the score for a value of* 0 *is* −3*. The table therefore suggests that the probability of drawing a negative return should be 0.135%, or about once in a thousand periods. Long experience with financial data suggests that this is often much too overconfident for the real world. In some contexts, the true probability of even the most negative possible outcome (*−100%*) may be as high as 1%, even if the Z-score suggests 0.0001%!*

13·6.E. Correlation and Causation

Correlation does not imply Causation.

A warning: covariation is related to, but not the same as **Causation**. If one variable "causes" another, then the two variables will be correlated. But the opposite does not hold. For example, snow and depression are positively correlated, but neither causes the other. Instead, there is another variable (winter) that has an influence on both snow and depression.

Solve Now!

Q 13.10 *If the mean is 20 and the standard deviation is 15, what is the probability that the value will turn out to be less than 0?*

Q 13.11 *If the mean is 10 and the standard deviation is 20, what is the probability that the value will turn out to be positive?*

Q 13.12 *If the mean is 50 and the standard deviation is 20, what is the probability that the value will turn out to be greater than 80?*

Q 13.13 *If the mean is 50 and the standard deviation is 20, what is the probability that the value will turn out to be greater than 30?*

ANECDOTE: Long Term Capital Management
Long-Term Capital Management (LTCM), a prominent hedge fund run by top finance professors and Wall Street traders, collapsed in 1999 in what their quantitative models believed to be a "10 sigma" (i.e., a 10 standard deviation) event. According to the normal distribution probability table, such an event that has a score of −10 should occur with a probability of less than 0.0001%, or 1 in 1,000,000 periods of trading.

You can conclude that either their models were wildly over-optimistic, or their assumption of a normal distribution was incorrect, or the 1 in 1,000,000 actually occurred. Chances are that it was a little bit of all three.

(In essence, LTCM's model believed that it would be exceedingly unlikely that all their bets would go sour at the same time. Of course, they did all go sour together, so the LTCM principals lost most of their wealth.)

1. Do it!
2. The mean was 9.837%. The variance was 7.7%. standard deviation was 27.74%.
3. $$Correlation(\tilde{x},\tilde{x}) = \frac{Cov(\tilde{X},\tilde{X})}{Sdv(\tilde{X})\cdot Sdv(\tilde{X})} = \frac{Var(\tilde{X})}{Var(\tilde{X})} = 1 \ . \tag{13.23}$$
4. $$\beta_{\tilde{x},\tilde{x}} = \frac{Cov(\tilde{X},\tilde{X})}{Var(\tilde{X})} = \frac{Var(\tilde{X})}{Var(\tilde{X})} = 1 \ . \tag{13.24}$$
5. $$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= 0.0394 \ , \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= 0.0464 \ , \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= 0.1264 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{13.25}$$
   You have already computed the standard deviation of S&P500, IBM, and Sony as 19.0%, 38.8%, and 90.3%; and for the DAX, as 27.74%. Therefore,
   $$\begin{aligned} Correlation(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= 74.6\% \ , \\ Correlation(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= 43.1\% \ , \\ Correlation(\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= 50.5\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{13.26}$$
   The beta of the DAX with respect to the S&P500 is
   $$\begin{aligned} \beta_{\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}} &= \frac{0.0394}{0.0362} = 1.088 \ . \\ \beta_{\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}} &= \frac{0.0464}{0.388^2} = 0.308 \ . \\ \beta_{\tilde{r}_{\text{DAX}},\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}} &= \frac{0.1264}{0.903^2} = 0.155 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{13.27}$$
6. This is to confirm the digging-deeper on Page 333.
7. Because you know the true distribution of future die throws. The historical values are measured with errors.
8. No.
9. Yes, reasonably so.
10. The score is $(0-20)/15 = -1.3$. Therefore, the probability is 9.68%, i.e., roughly 10%.
11. The score is $(0-10)/20 = -0.5$. Therefore, the probability is around 30% that the value will be negative, or 70% that it will be positive.
12. The score is $(80-50)/20 = +1.5$. Therefore, the probability is around 93% that the value will be below 80, or 7% that it will be above 80.
13. The score is $(30-50)/20 = -1.0$. Therefore, the probability is around 16% that the value will be 30, and 84% that it will be above 30.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 14

STATISTICS OF PORTFOLIOS

last file change: Feb 5, 2006 (17:55h)
last major edit: Aug 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

The previous chapter explained how to measure risk and reward for an investment—standard deviation and expected rate of return. This chapter explains how to measure these statistics in the context of portfolios. It may be the most tedious chapter in the book. But it is also important: these formulas will be used in subsequent chapters, where you will want to find the risks and rewards of many portfolios. You cannot understand investments without having read this chapter—without understanding the rules for working with statistics in a portfolio context. Your ultimate goal in reading this chapter is to ingest (understand how to use) the methods described in Table 14.5.

Admittedly, some of this chapter "overdoes" it—it tries to explain where the algebra comes from, even though in the end you only need to know the rules. Consider the extra pages to be "useful reference."

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

Table 14.1. Historical Rates of Returns and Statistics for S&P500, IBM, Sony, and a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$

Historical Annual Rates of Returns

Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$
1991	+0.263	−0.212	−0.103	−0.1758	1997	+0.310	+0.381	+0.391	+0.3842
1992	+0.045	−0.434	−0.004	−0.2903	1998	+0.270	+0.762	−0.203	+0.4407
1993	+0.071	+0.121	+0.479	+0.2400	1999	+0.195	+0.170	+2.968	+1.1028
1994	−0.015	+0.301	+0.135	+0.2457	2000	−0.101	−0.212	−0.511	−0.3116
1995	+0.341	+0.243	+0.105	+0.1969	2001	−0.130	+0.423	−0.348	+0.1659
1996	+0.203	+0.658	+0.077	+0.4647	2002	−0.234	−0.357	−0.081	−0.2647
				Mean over all 12 years		+0.101	+0.154	0.242	+0.183

Quoted as Deviations from the Mean

Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$
1991	+0.1620	−0.3661	−0.3448	−0.3590	1997	+0.2090	+0.2273	+0.1485	+0.2010
1992	−0.0565	−0.5874	−0.2458	−0.4735	1998	+0.1656	+0.6086	−0.4448	+0.2575
1993	−0.0305	−0.0330	+0.2364	+0.0568	1999	+0.0942	+0.0163	+2.7261	+0.9196
1994	−0.1165	+0.1474	−0.1073	+0.0625	2000	−0.2025	−0.3658	−0.7529	−0.4948
1995	+0.2400	+0.0892	−0.1374	+0.0137	2001	−0.2315	+0.2693	−0.5904	−0.0173
1996	+0.1015	+0.5046	−0.1648	+0.2815	2002	−0.3348	−0.5105	−0.3228	−0.4479
				Mean (of Deviations) over all 12 years		0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

Statistics

The covariances (and variances) computed in the previous chapter:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= 0.0362\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= 0.0330\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= 0.0477\,, \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= 0.0330\,, & \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= 0.1503\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= 0.0218\,, \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= 0.0477\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) &= 0.0218\,, & \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) &= 0.8149\,. \end{aligned} \tag{14.1}$$

The new portfolio P covariances, computed from the twelve historical returns above, are

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= 0.0379\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= 0.1075\,, \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= 0.2862\,, & Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= 0.1671\,. \end{aligned} \tag{14.2}$$

The standard deviations are therefore

$$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) = 19.0\%\,,\ Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) = 38.8\%\,,\ Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) = 90.3\%\,,\ Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = 40.9\%\,. \tag{14.3}$$

The return of portfolio P is $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} = 66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}$. Note: to keep investment weights constant at 66.7% and 33.3%, you must rebalance the portfolio every year.

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

14·1. Two Investment Securities

Our goal in this section is to explore the properties of a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ that invests twice as much into IBM as it invests into Sony. Table 14.1 begins with all the information you computed in the previous chapter: historical rates of return, means, deviations from the means, variances, covariances, and standard deviations. The only novelty is that the performance of a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ in each year is now also in the table—as if it were a stock that you could have purchased. The table also repeats the calculations for the covariances and variances for $\mathcal{P}$. Please check the calculations—do not go on until you have convinced yourself both that you can compute the basic statistics for $\mathcal{P}$ yourself, and that the table contains no mistakes.

Table 14.1 summarizes what you did in the previous chapter, plus it adds statistics for a portfolio $\mathcal{P}$.

Solve Now!

Q 14.1 *Compute the $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$ related statistics from the twelve historical rates of returns in Table 14.1.*

Q 14.2 *Is there an error in Table 14.1? If so, can you find it?*

14·1.A. Expected Rates of Returns

You knew this one even before you ever opened my book. If you expect 20% in your first stock and 30% in your second stock, and you invest half in each, you expect to earn 25%. In our case, in which portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ is defined by

The expected rate of return is the investment-weighted average.

$$\mathcal{P} \equiv (2/3\ \text{IBM}, 1/3\text{Sony}) \ , \tag{14.4}$$

the expected rate of return on $\mathcal{P}$ of 18.3%. You could directly work this out from the 12 observations in the time-series in the first panel of Table 14.1, so you should confirm now that it is also the investment-weighted average of the expected rates of return on our portfolio,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{E}\left(w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \right) \\ &= w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\ &= 66.7\% \cdot 15.4\% + 33.3\% \cdot 24.2\% = 18.3\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.5}$$

IMPORTANT: *Say your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ consists of an investment w_1 in security 1 and an investment w_2 in security 2. Therefore, its rate of return is $r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv w_1 \cdot r_1 + w_2 \cdot r_2$. You can work with expected rates of return of a portfolio by taking the investment-weighted average of its constituents, as follows:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{E}(w_1 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + w_2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= w_1 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.6}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

14·1.B. Covariance

Compute the covariance the slow way: from the twelve historical returns.

A more interesting question is about the covariance of our portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ (2/3 in IBM, 1/3 in Sony) with the returns on some other portfolio, say, the S&P500. In Table 14.1, the covariance worked out from the twelve historical returns is

$$Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\,) \;=\; \frac{(-0.3590)\cdot(+0.1620)+\ldots+(-0.4479)\cdot(-0.3348)}{11} \;=\; 0.0379\ . \tag{14.7}$$

(This computation works with the deviations from the means.) But how does our $\mathcal{P}$ portfolio's covariance with the S&P500 (0.0379) relate to the covariances of its two portfolio components with the S&P500 (0.0330 for IBM, and 0.0477 for Sony)?

The covariance of the rate of return with something else is the investment-weighted average.

In the previous section, you learned that the expected rate of return on our portfolio is the investment-weighted average of the expected rates of the portfolio constituents. Can you do the same for covariance—i.e., is the portfolio covariance equal to the weighted sum of its portfolio constituents' covariances? Yes!

$$\begin{aligned} 66.7\%\cdot 0.0330 \quad &+ \quad 33.3\%\cdot 0.0477 \quad = \quad 0.0379\ , \\ w_{\text{IBM}}\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,) \;&+\; w_{\text{Sony}}\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,) \;=\; Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.8}$$

So, if you want to find out the covariance of our portfolio with the S&P500 (or any other security), all you need to do is compute the weighted average of its constituents. You do not need to recompute the covariance from scratch in the tedious multi-step manner if you want to experiment with different portfolio weights!

IMPORTANT: *Say your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ consists of an investment w_1 in security 1 and an investment w_2 in security 2. Therefore, its rate of return is $r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv w_1\cdot r_1 + w_2\cdot r_2$. You can work with the covariances of your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ with any other portfolio $\mathcal{X}$ by taking the investment-weighted average of its constituents, as follows:*

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{X}}\,) \;&=\; Cov(\,w_1\cdot\tilde{r}_1 + w_2\cdot\tilde{r}_2\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{X}}\,) \\ &=\; w_1\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_1\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{X}}\,) \;+\; w_2\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_2\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{X}}\,)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.9}$$

If you like our σ notation, you can write this as

$$\sigma_{\mathcal{P},\mathcal{X}} \;=\; w_1\cdot\sigma_{1,\mathcal{X}} \;+\; w_2\cdot\sigma_{2,\mathcal{X}}\ . \tag{14.10}$$

As usual, we just omit the $\tilde{r}$ in the sigma subscripts, so that we avoid double subscripts. (Incidentally, this covariance law is only interesting, because we need it to work out the laws for variance and beta.)

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

14·1.C. Beta

Our next question is: what is the beta of our portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ with respect to another security—here again the S&P500? That is, how can you express the portfolio beta for $\mathcal{P}$ in terms of the betas of its two constituents (2/3 in IBM, 1/3 in Sony). Recall from the previous chapter how beta is defined: you divide the covariance between $\tilde{X}$ and $\tilde{Y}$ by the variance of the $\tilde{X}$ variable,

The covariance of the rate of return with something else is the investment-weighted average.

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{\text{IBM,S\&P500}} &= \frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} = \frac{0.0330}{0.0362} \approx 0.91\ , \\
\beta_{\text{Sony,S\&P500}} &= \frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} = \frac{0.0477}{0.0362} \approx 1.32\ , \\
\beta_{\mathcal{P},\text{S\&P500}} &= \frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} = \frac{0.0379}{0.0362} \approx 1.05\ , \\
\beta_{Y,X} &= \frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_X\ ,\ \tilde{r}_Y\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_X)}\ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.11}$$

Note that the second subscript on beta is the variance denominator, and that we again omit the $\tilde{r}$ in the beta subscripts so as to avoid double subscripts.

In the previous subsections, you learned that both the expected rate of return and the covariance of our portfolio with another portfolio are the investment-weighted statistics of the portfolio constituents, respectively. Can you do the same for beta—i.e., is the portfolio beta equal to the weighted sum of its portfolio betas? Yes!

The beta of the rate of return with something else is the investment-weighted average.

$$\begin{aligned}
66.7\% \cdot 0.91 \quad &+ \quad 33.3\% \cdot 1.32 \quad = \quad 1.05\ , \\
w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \beta_{\text{IBM,S\&P500}} \ &+\ w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Sony,S\&P500}} \ = \ \beta_{\mathcal{P},\text{S\&P500}}\ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.12}$$

IMPORTANT: *Say your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ consists of an investment w_1 in security 1 and an investment w_2 in security 2. Therefore, its rate of return is $r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv w_1 \cdot r_1 + w_2 \cdot r_2$. You can work with betas of a portfolio by taking the investment-weighted average of its constituents, as follows:*

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{\mathcal{P},X} &= \beta_{(w_1\cdot\tilde{r}_1 + w_2\cdot\tilde{r}_2\ ,\ \tilde{r}_X)} \\
&= w_1 \cdot \beta_{1,X} \ + \ w_2 \cdot \beta_{2,X}\ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.13}$$

SIDE NOTE: Two points. First, because you know the covariance law, you can easily show this algebraically,

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}},\text{S\&P500}} &= \frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} \\
&= \frac{Cov(\,w_{\text{IBM}}\cdot\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + w_{\text{Sony}}\cdot\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} \\
&= \frac{w_{\text{IBM}}\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,) + w_{\text{Sony}}\cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} \\
&= w_{\text{IBM}}\cdot\frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} + w_{\text{Sony}}\cdot\frac{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})} \\
&= w_{\text{IBM}}\cdot\beta_{\text{IBM}\ ,\ \text{S\&P500}} + w_{\text{Sony}}\cdot\beta_{\text{Sony}\ ,\ \text{S\&P500}}\ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.14}$$

Second, $\beta_{X,P} \neq w_1 \cdot \beta_{X,1} + w_2 \cdot \beta_{X,2}$. Weighted averaging works only for the first beta subscript, not the second.

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

14·1.D. Variance

The variance of the rate of return is not the investment-weighted average.

Our next question is: how does the variance of the rate of return of our portfolio relate to the covariances of its constituents? This time, our trick does not work. The variance of a portfolio is *not* the investment-weighted average of the portfolio constituents:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.1671 \quad &\neq \quad 66.7\% \cdot 0.1503 \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot 0.8149 \quad = \quad 0.3719 \ , \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad &\neq \quad w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \quad + \quad w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.15}$$

(Incidentally, the variance of the portfolio is much lower than just the average of its constituents; you will explore this in great detail in later chapters—after you learn how to work with variances.)

Eliminate the first $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$ from the variance...ahem, the covariance with itself.

So, to find out how the variance can be decomposed, you now have to cleverly use our covariance law. You already know that the variance of a random variable is the covariance with itself—and you have even computed it from the twelve historical returns,

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad = \quad \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad = \quad 0.1671 \quad . \tag{14.16}$$

Now, drop in the definition of our portfolio, but just once,

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad = \quad \mathcal{C}ov(\ 66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ + \ 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad = \quad 0.1671 \quad , \tag{14.17}$$

and use our covariance law to pull out the weights and to create a sum,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad &= \quad \mathcal{C}ov(\ 66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ + \ 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \\ &= \quad 66.7\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \end{aligned} \tag{14.18}$$

Table 14.1 has these covariances, so you can check that we have not committed a mistake yet,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad = \quad & 66.7\% \cdot 0.1075 \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot 0.2862 \quad = \quad 0.1671 \ ; \\ & w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad + \quad w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.19}$$

You are still getting the same number through algebra that you obtained by direct computation of the variance (from the twelve historical rates of return in Table 14.1).

Eliminate the second $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$ from each term.

Now you must handle each of these two covariance terms by themselves: use the covariance law to pull out the weights and distribute the sum, and substitute in the covariance inputs from Table 14.1,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad &= \quad \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ 66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ) \\ &= \quad 66.7\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ) \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ) \\ &= \quad 66.7\% \cdot 0.1503 \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218 \quad = \quad 0.1075 \quad . \\ \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ) \quad &= \quad \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ 66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ) \\ &= \quad 66.7\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ) \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot \mathcal{C}ov(\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\ ) \\ &= \quad 66.7\% \cdot 0.0218 \quad + \quad 33.3\% \cdot 0.8149 \quad = \quad 0.2862 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.20}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

(Again, you can check that the algebra is right, because using the information from Table 14.1 gives you the same answers for $Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$ and $Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$.) Now put it all together,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= 0.1671 \\
&= 66.7\% \cdot 0.1075 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.2862 \\
&= w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot [Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})] \;+\; w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot [Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})] \\
&= 66.7\% \cdot \overbrace{[66.7\% \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218]}^{0.1075} \\
&\quad + 33.3\% \cdot \underbrace{[66.7\% \cdot 0.0218 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.8149]}_{0.2862} \\
&= w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot [\, w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \;+\; w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \,] \\
&\quad + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot [\, w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \;+\; w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \,]
\end{aligned} \tag{14.21}$$

Tedious substitutions—but no higher math required. Take the last expression, multiply out (remembering that the covariance of anything with itself is the variance), realize that the two terms that contain both Sony and IBM are the same, rearrange the terms, and you get

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= (66.7\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; (33.3\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 \;+\; 2 \cdot 66.7\% \cdot 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218 \\
&= 0.1671, \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\text{IBM}}^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \;+\; w_{\text{Sony}}^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \;+\; 2 \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \;.
\end{aligned} \tag{14.22}$$

You are done: this is how the variance of a portfolio is expressed in terms of the variances and covariances of its constituent securities. It is the sum of the variances, each multiplied by its weight squared, plus two times each weight times the pairwise covariance. And you know this is right, because the answer is still the same 0.1671 that you computed directly from the historical rates of return for portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ in Table 14.2!

IMPORTANT: *Say your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ consists of an investment w_1 in security 1 and an investment w_2 in security 2. Therefore, its rate of return is $r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv w_1 \cdot r_1 + w_2 \cdot r_2$. You can work with variances as follows:*

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) \;+\; w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) \;+\; 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) \;. \tag{14.23}$$

This is not the investment-weighted average of its constituents.

If you liked our σ notation, you can write this briefer as

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_P^2 = \sigma_{P,P} &= w_X \cdot \sigma_{X,X} \;+\; w_Y \cdot \sigma_{Y,Y} \;+\; 2 \cdot w_X \cdot w_Y \cdot \sigma_{X,Y} \\
&= w_X \cdot \sigma_X^2 \;+\; w_Y \cdot \sigma_Y^2 \;+\; 2 \cdot w_X \cdot w_Y \cdot \sigma_{X,Y} \;.
\end{aligned} \tag{14.24}$$

To compute the standard deviation, you always have to first compute the variance, and then take the square-root. You *cannot* take any shortcuts here—like computing the average standard deviation of the portfolio's constituents.

Standard Deviation

Solve Now!

Q 14.3 *Assume portfolio S consists of 25% IBM and 75% Sony. Compute the covariance of the rate of return of S with the rates of return on IBM, Sony, and S&P500. (If you feel shaky, do it with both a historical time-series in a table, and with the formulas.)*

Q 14.4 *Continue with portfolio S. Compute the beta of portfolio S with respect to the S&P500, denoted $\beta_{S,S\&P500}$. (If you feel shaky, do it with a historical time-series in a table, then directly from the covariances, and finally with the beta-combination formula.)*

Q 14.5 *Continue with portfolio S. Compute its variance. (If you feel shaky, do it with both a historical time-series in a table, and the formulas.)*

14·2. Three and More Investment Securities

We now work with portfolios of more than two securities, often expressed in summation notation.

Of course, you rarely want a portfolio with just two investments—usually, your portfolio will have more than two investments. Let me remind you of how summation notation works. As in Chapter 12, we later use i as a counter to enumerate each and every possible investment, from N choices (e.g., stocks). w_i are the investment weights that define the portfolio. The return of any portfolio Q defined by these weights in each and every time period is

$$r_Q = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot r_i \ , \tag{14.25}$$

but because you do not yet know the returns,

$$\tilde{r}_Q = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i \ . \tag{14.26}$$

14·2.A. Expected Returns, Covariance, Beta

Expected returns, covariances, and betas can be averaged, using the investment-weighted proportions.

For the three statistics from the previous section that we could average—the expected return, the covariance, and beta—the generalization from two securities to any number (N) of securities is easy: you can just take a weighted sum of all the components, not just of the first two components. This is what our next important box expresses.

IMPORTANT: *(For a portfolio Q that consists of w_1 investment in security 1, w_2 investment in security 2, all the way up to w_N investment in security N, and which therefore has a rate of return of $r_Q \equiv w_1 \cdot r_1 + w_2 \cdot r_2 + ...w_N \cdot r_N = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i r_i$):*

You can work with expected rates of return, covariances, and betas by taking the investment-weighted average of its constituents, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_Q) &= w_1 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) + \ ... \ + w_N \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_N) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \ ; \\
\sigma_{P,X} &= w_1 \cdot \sigma_{1,X} + w_2 \cdot \sigma_{2,X} + \ ... \ + w_N \cdot \sigma_{N,X} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \sigma_{i,X} \ ; \\
\beta_{P,X} &= w_1 \cdot \beta_{1,X} + w_2 \cdot \beta_{2,X} + \ ... \ + w_N \cdot \beta_{N,X} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \beta_{i,X} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.27}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

Checking the formulas for a particular portfolio, that we shall use later, too.

So, let's use these formulas on a new portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$ that has 70% invested in the S&P500, 20% invested in IBM, and 10% invested in Sony. You want to know the expected rate of return of our portfolio ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}})$), its covariance with S&P500 ($Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \equiv \sigma_{\mathcal{Q},\text{S\&P500}}$), and its beta with respect to S&P500 ($\beta_{\mathcal{Q},\text{S\&P500}}$). Corresponding to the formulas' numbering schemes, security 1 is S&P500, security 2 is IBM, and security 3 is Sony. Table 14.1 provided all the necessary expected returns and covariances; betas were in Formula 14.11; and your portfolio investment weights are given. So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}} &= 70\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} + 20\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + 10\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) &= 70\% \cdot 10.1\% + 20\% \cdot 15.4\% + 10\% \cdot 24.2\% = 12.57\% \\
&= w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{3} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = \sum_{\text{S\&P500,IBM,Sony}} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \quad ; \\
\\
\sigma_{\mathcal{Q},\text{S\&P500}} &= 70\% \cdot 0.03622 + 20\% \cdot 0.03298 + 10\% \cdot 0.04772 = 0.03672 \\
&= w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot \sigma_{\text{S\&P500,S\&P500}} + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \sigma_{\text{IBM,S\&P500}} + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \sigma_{\text{Sony,S\&P500}} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{3} w_i \cdot \sigma_{i,\text{S\&P500}} = \sum_{\text{S\&P500,IBM,Sony}} w_i \cdot \sigma_{i,\text{S\&P500}} \quad ; \\
\\
\beta_{\mathcal{Q},\text{S\&P500}} &= 70\% \cdot 1.000 + 20\% \cdot 0.910 + 10\% \cdot 1.317 = 1.0138 \\
&= w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot \beta_{\text{S\&P500,S\&P500}} + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \beta_{\text{IBM,S\&P500}} + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Sony,S\&P500}} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{3} w_i \cdot \beta_{i,\text{S\&P500}} = \sum_{\text{S\&P500,IBM,Sony}} w_i \cdot \beta_{i,\text{S\&P500}} \quad .
\end{aligned}
\tag{14.28}
$$

Table 14.2 gives the historical rates of return of this portfolio next to its constituents. Please confirm from the twelve historical returns for $\mathcal{Q}$ and S&P500 that the above three statistics are correct.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Expectations, covariances, and betas are so-called linear function, because*

$$f(a+b) = f(a) + f(b) \quad , \tag{14.29}$$

For our expectations, covariances, and beta, a would be defined as $w_1 \cdot \tilde{r}_1$, and b as $w_2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2$. For example, $\mathcal{E}(w_1 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + w_2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2) = \mathcal{E}(w_1 \cdot \tilde{r}_1) + \mathcal{E}(w_2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2)$.

It is not difficult to prove that if a function is linear, then it works for more than two securities in a portfolio. Just replace b with $c + d$

$$f(a + (c+d)) = f(a) + f(c+d) \quad , \tag{14.30}$$

and apply formula 14.29 again on the $c + d$ term to get

$$f(a + (c+d)) = f(a) + f((c+d)) = f(a) + f(c) + f(d) \quad . \tag{14.31}$$

Solve Now!

Q 14.6 *Confirm that the computations for the expected rate of return and the covariance in Formula 14.28 are correct by directly computing these statistics from the historical timeseries in Table 14.2.*

Q 14.7 *Consider a portfolio T that consists of 25% S&P500, 35% IBM, and 40% Sony. What is its expected rate of return, its covariance with the S&P500, and its beta with respect to the S&P500? (If you feel shaky, compute this from both the twelve historical rates of return on T, and from the formulas.)*

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

Table 14.2. Historical Annual Rates of Returns for portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$

Historical Annual Rates of Returns

Year	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}$
1991	+0.263	−0.212	−0.103	+0.131	1997	+0.310	+0.381	+0.391	+0.332
1992	+0.045	−0.434	−0.004	−0.056	1998	+0.270	+0.762	−0.203	+0.319
1993	+0.071	+0.121	+0.479	+0.121	1999	+0.195	+0.170	+2.968	+0.468
1994	−0.015	+0.301	+0.135	+0.063	2000	−0.101	−0.212	−0.511	−0.165
1995	+0.341	+0.243	+0.105	+0.298	2001	−0.130	+0.423	−0.348	−0.042
1996	+0.203	+0.658	+0.077	+0.281	2002	−0.234	−0.357	−0.081	−0.243
					Mean over all 12 years	+0.101	+0.154	0.242	+0.1257

Quoted as Deviations from the Mean

Year	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}$
1991	+0.1620	−0.3661	−0.3448	−0.006	1997	+0.2090	+0.2273	+0.1485	+0.207
1992	−0.0565	−0.5874	−0.2458	−0.182	1998	+0.1656	+0.6086	−0.4448	+0.193
1993	−0.0305	−0.0330	+0.2364	+0.004	1999	+0.0942	+0.0163	+2.7261	+0.342
1994	−0.1165	+0.1474	−0.1073	+0.063	2000	−0.2025	−0.3658	−0.7529	−0.290
1995	+0.2400	+0.0892	−0.1374	+0.172	2001	−0.2315	+0.2693	−0.5904	−0.167
1996	+0.1015	+0.5046	−0.1648	+0.156	2002	−0.3348	−0.5105	−0.3228	−0.369
					Mean (of Deviations) over all 12 years	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

The return of portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$ is $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}} = 70\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{S\&P500} + 20\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{IBM} + 10\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{Sony}$.

14·2.B. Variance

Panic Warning!

Here is where it gets more complicated. What is the variance of portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$, consisting of 70% in S&P500, 20% in IBM, and 10% in Sony? Actually, it will get more tedious, but not more complex. All you need to do is to apply the covariance law twice.

I made it easy on us: portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$ is a combination of S&P500 and $\mathcal{P}$.

Recall the portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$ that invested 66.7% in IBM and 33.3% in Sony. If you invest 70% in S&P500 and 30% in $\mathcal{P}$, you end up with portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$, because the remaining 30% in $\mathcal{P}$ are appropriately split ($w_{IBM} = 30\% \cdot 66.7\% = 20\%$ and $w_{Sony} = 30\% \cdot 33.3\% = 10\%$):

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}} &= 70\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{S\&P500} + (\,20\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{IBM} + 10\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{Sony}\,) \\ &= 70\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{S\&P500} + 30\% \cdot (\,66.7\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{IBM} + 33.3\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{Sony}\,) \\ &= 70\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{S\&P500} + 30\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.32}$$

You already know how to work with two securities—and you know the other inputs, too.

With only two securities (S&P500 and $\mathcal{P}$) now, you can use our variance formula 14.23:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) &= \mathcal{V}ar(w_{S\&P500} \cdot \tilde{r}_{S\&P500} + w_{\mathcal{P}} \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\ &= (w_{S\&P500})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}) + (w_{\mathcal{P}})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + 2 \cdot w_{S\&P500} \cdot w_{\mathcal{P}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}\,,\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\,) \\ &= (70\%)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}) + (30\%)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + 2 \cdot 30\% \cdot 70\% \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}\,,\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\,) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.33}$$

Actually, you already know all three remaining unknowns: 0.0362 was the variance of the S&P500, given in Table 14.1. You had worked out $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$ in Formula 14.22,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= (66.7\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 + (33.3\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 + 2 \cdot 66.7\% \cdot 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218 = 0.1671 \,, \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{IBM}^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{IBM}) + w_{Sony}^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{Sony}) + 2 \cdot w_{Sony} \cdot w_{IBM} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{Sony}\,,\,\tilde{r}_{IBM}\,) \,, \end{aligned} \tag{14.34}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

and $Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)$ in Formula 14.8,

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,) \;&=\; 66.7\% \cdot 0.0330 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.0477 \;=\; 0.0379\ ; \\ & w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,) \;+\; w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\,)\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.35}$$

Now just substitute these terms into Formula 14.33 to get

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) \;&=\; (70\%)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \;+\; (30\%)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \;+\; 2 \cdot 70\% \cdot 30\% \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\,) \\ &= (70\%)^2 \cdot 0.0362 \\ &\quad + (30\%)^2 \cdot \underbrace{[(66.7\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; (33.3\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 \;+\; 2 \cdot 66.7\% \cdot 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218]}_{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} \\ &\quad + 2 \cdot 70\% \cdot 30\% \cdot \underbrace{[66.7\% \cdot 0.0330 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.0477]}_{Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}\,)} \\ &= (70\%)^2 \cdot 0.0362 \;+\; (30\%)^2 \cdot 0.1671 \;+\; 2 \cdot 70\% \cdot 30\% \cdot 0.0379 \\ &= 0.0487\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.36}$$

Please confirm this from the twelve annual rates of return for portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$ in Table 14.2.

Although we are done—we have our answer for the variance of our portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$—let's do some more algebra "just for fun." Take the middle form from the previous formula,

A lengthy detailed step-by-step rewrite of the answer shows us what the answer really consists of: three variance terms and three pairwise covariance terms.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) \;&=\; (70\%)^2 \cdot 0.0362 \\ &\quad + (30\%)^2 \cdot [(66.7\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; (33.3\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 \;+\; 2 \cdot 66.7\% \cdot 33.3\% \cdot 0.0218] \\ &\quad + 2 \cdot 70\% \cdot 30\% \cdot [66.7\% \cdot 0.0330 \;+\; 33.3\% \cdot 0.0477] \\ &= 0.04869\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.37}$$

Now, multiply the (30%) and $(30\%)^2$ terms into the parentheses, and pull the 30% and 30%% into the adjacent weights,

$$\begin{aligned} &= (70\%)^2 \cdot 0.0362 \\ &\quad + [(30\% \cdot 66.7\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; (30\% \cdot 33.3\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 \;+\; 2 \cdot (30\% \cdot 66.7\%) \cdot (30\% \cdot 33.3\%) \cdot 0.0218] \\ &\quad + 2 \cdot 70\% \cdot [(30\% \cdot 66.7\%) \cdot 0.0330 \;+\; (30\% \cdot 33.3\%) \cdot 0.0477] \\ &= 0.04869\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.38}$$

Execute the 30% multiplication, multiply in the $2 \cdot 70\%$, eliminate some parentheses, and reorder terms,

$$\begin{aligned} &= (70\%)^2 \cdot 0.0362 \;+\; (20\%)^2 \cdot 0.1503 \;+\; (10\%)^2 \cdot 0.8149 \\ &\quad + 2 \cdot (20\%) \cdot (10\%) \cdot 0.0218 \;+\; 2 \cdot (70\%) \cdot (20\%) \cdot 0.0330 \;+\; 2 \cdot (70\%) \cdot (10\%) \cdot 0.0477 \\ &= 0.04869\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.39}$$

Now stare at this formula, and recall the form of the variance formula in eq:pfiovar-2secs on Page 335. What does this formula consist of? Well, it is just

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) \;=\; & w^2_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \;+\; w^2_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \;+\; w^2_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\ & + 2 \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\,) \\ & + 2 \cdot w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}\,) \\ & + 2 \cdot w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}\,) \end{aligned} \tag{14.40}$$

This generalizes, too!

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

IMPORTANT: *To obtain the variance of a portfolio that invests w_1, w_2, ... , w_N into N securities, do the following:*

1. *For each security, square its weights and multiply it by the variance.*
2. *For each pair of different securities, multiply two times the first weight times the second weight times the securities' covariance.*
3. *Add up all these terms.*

For example, for three securities, the formula is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_Q) \;=\; & w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) \;+\; w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) \;+\; w_3^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_3) \\ & +\; 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_1\;,\;\tilde{r}_2\,) \\ & +\; 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_1\;,\;\tilde{r}_3\,) \\ & +\; 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_2\;,\;\tilde{r}_3\,) \qquad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.41}$$

For portfolios with many securities, there are relatively more covariance than variance terms.

If you do not believe me, feel free to repeat this exercise for four securities. (The principle remains the same, but it becomes a lot more messy.) Incidentally, the number of covariance terms increases more rapidly than the number of variance terms. With four securities, you will have four variance terms, and six pairwise covariance terms. With ten securities, you will have ten variance terms, and forty-five pairwise covariance terms. For one-hundred stocks, there are one-hundred variance terms and 2,475 covariance terms. With more and more securities in the portfolio, there are fewer and fewer "own return variance" terms, and more and more "return covariance terms." Thus, on first glance, it seems that the overall portfolio variance could be driven more by the many covariance terms than the few variance terms. This will play a major role in the next chapters.

Solve Now!

Q 14.8 *Continue with our portfolio T that consists of 25% S&P500, 35% IBM, and 40% Sony. What is its standard deviation of return? Compute this both from the twelve historical rates of return on T, and from the formulas.*

14·2.C. Advanced Nerd Section: Variance with N Securities and Double Summations

The Formal Definitions.

Formula 14.27 used $\sum$ notation to write sums more compactly. The point of this section is to show how to write the variance formula with two summations signs—a lot more compactly, and perhaps easier to remember. We shall first write it down—don't panic—and then explain and use it. The variance of the rate of return of a portfolio is

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_P) \;=\; \mathcal{V}ar\left(\sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i\right) \;=\; \sum_{j=1}^{N}\left\{\sum_{k=1}^{N}\left[w_j \cdot w_k \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\;,\;\tilde{r}_k\,)\right]\right\} \quad . \tag{14.42}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

So what does this formula mean? Let us write out the terms in this formula to eliminate the summation signs. Concentrate on one step at a time. Start with the innermost parentheses: j is still unknown, so leave j untouched. Just write out the sum for k, which consists of N terms,

$$\sum_{k=1}^{N}\Big[w_j \cdot w_{\mathbf{k}} \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathbf{k}}\,)\Big] = \Big\{\underbrace{w_j{\cdot}w_{\mathbf{1}}{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathbf{1}}\,)}_{\text{our } k=1 \text{ term}} + \underbrace{w_j{\cdot}w_{\mathbf{2}}{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathbf{2}}\,)}_{\text{our } k=2 \text{ term}} + \ldots + \underbrace{w_j{\cdot}w_{\mathbf{N}}{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\mathbf{N}}\,)}_{\text{our } k=N \text{ term}}\Big\}\ , \tag{14.43}$$

and plug it back into Formula 14.42,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sum_{j=1}^{N}\left\{\sum_{k=1}^{N}\Big[w_j \cdot w_k \cdot Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_k\,)\Big]\right\} \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{N}\Big\{w_j{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_j{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_j{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,)\Big\}\ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.44}$$

So far, so good. Now this formula tells you that you have N summation terms, each of which is itself N summation terms, so you have a total of N^2 summation terms in the variance. Do what you just did again—write out the sum for j,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = \sum_{j=1}^{N}\Big\{w_j{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_j{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_j{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_j\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,)\Big\} = \\ \text{our } j=1 \text{ term} \rightarrow\quad w_{\mathbf{1}}{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathbf{1}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_1{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_1\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_1{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_1\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,) \\ \text{our } j=2 \text{ term} \rightarrow\quad + w_{\mathbf{2}}{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathbf{2}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_2{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_2\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_2{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_2\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,) \\ \text{our } j=3 \text{ term} \rightarrow\quad + w_{\mathbf{3}}{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathbf{3}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_3{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_3\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_3{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_3\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,) \\ \qquad\quad + \ldots + \ldots + \ldots + \ldots \\ \text{our } j=N \text{ term} \rightarrow\quad + w_{\mathbf{N}}{\cdot}w_1{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_{\mathbf{N}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_1\,) + w_N{\cdot}w_2{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_N\ ,\ \tilde{r}_2\,) + \ldots + w_N{\cdot}w_N{\cdot}Cov(\,\tilde{r}_N\ ,\ \tilde{r}_N\,) \end{aligned} \tag{14.45}$$

This has everything written out, and no longer needs scary summation notation—here it is the length which makes the formula appear intimidating. So, would you rather memorize the long form in Formula 14.45 or the short double summation sign Formula 14.42? They both mean exactly the same thing—the double summation is merely abbreviated notation. I find it easier to remember the short form—if need be, I can always expand it into the long form. Before you forget about the long form, though, is this formula really the same as the step-by-step procedure on Page 340? Look at the terms on the diagonal in Formula 14.45, which are underlined. These are covariances of variables with themselves—which are just the variances multiplied by weights squared. Now look at the off-diagonal terms—each term appears twice, because both multiplication and covariances don't care about order. So, the big-mess Formula 14.45 can also be expressed as

The double summation formula is just an easy-to-remember abbreviation, and is precise. It says exactly what you already knew: variance and pairwise covariance terms.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= [\text{sum up N diagonal variance terms}] \\ &\quad + \Big[\text{sum up remaining } N^2 - N \text{ covariance terms}\Big] \\ &= \Big[\text{for each security } i\text{, sum up each } w_i^2 \text{ times the } i\text{-th variance}\Big] \\ &\quad + \Big[\text{for each possible pair } i \text{ and } j\text{, sum up twice } w_i \text{ times } w_j \text{ times the } i \text{ vs. } j \text{ covariance}\Big]\ , \end{aligned} \tag{14.46}$$

which is exactly what was stated on Page 340: to compute an overall portfolio variance, sum up all the constituent variances ($\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i)$), each multiplied by its squared weight (w_i^2); and then add each pairwise covariance ($Cov(\,\tilde{r}_i\ ,\ \tilde{r}_j\,)$), multiplied by two times its two weights ($2 \cdot w_i \cdot w_j$).

IMPORTANT: *The mean and variance formulas for portfolios deserve memorizing if you want to concentrate in investments:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P) &= \sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \quad , \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_P) &= \sum_{i=1}^{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} w_i \cdot w_j \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i \ , \ \tilde{r}_j) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.47}$$

If you prefer sigma notation, this is even shorter: $\sigma_{P,P} = \sum_{i=1}^{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} w_i \cdot w_j \cdot \sigma_{i,j}$.

Application of the formula makes it clear that it is the same thing.

Before you forget about double summations, let us just confirm that the formula gives us the same variance for our portfolio $\mathcal{Q}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_Q) &= \sum_{i \in \substack{\text{S\&P500}\\ \text{IBM}\\ \text{Sony}}} \left\{ \sum_{j \in \substack{\text{S\&P500}\\ \text{IBM}\\ \text{Sony}}} \left[w_i \cdot w_j \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i \ , \ \tilde{r}_j) \right] \right\} \\ &= \left[w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \right. \\ &\qquad \left. + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) \right] \\ &+ \left[w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \right. \\ &\qquad \left. + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) \right] \\ &+ \left[w_{\text{S\&P500}} \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) + w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \right. \\ &\qquad \left. + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}} \ , \ \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \right] \\ &= \left[70\% \cdot 70\% \cdot 0.0362 + 20\% \cdot 70\% \cdot 0.0330 + 10\% \cdot 70\% \cdot 0.0218 \right] \\ &+ \left[70\% \cdot 20\% \cdot 0.0330 + 20\% \cdot 20\% \cdot 0.1503 + 10\% \cdot 20\% \cdot 0.0218 \right] \\ &+ \left[70\% \cdot 10\% \cdot 0.0477 + 20\% \cdot 10\% \cdot 0.0218 + 10\% \cdot 10\% \cdot 0.8149 \right] \\ &= 0.04869 \quad , \end{aligned}$$

and you have the answer you already knew!

14·2.D. Another Variance Example: PepsiCo, CocaCola, and Cadbury

Table 14.3. PepsiCo, Coca Cola, and Cadbury Schweppes Monthly Return Statistics, from September 1995 to August 2002.

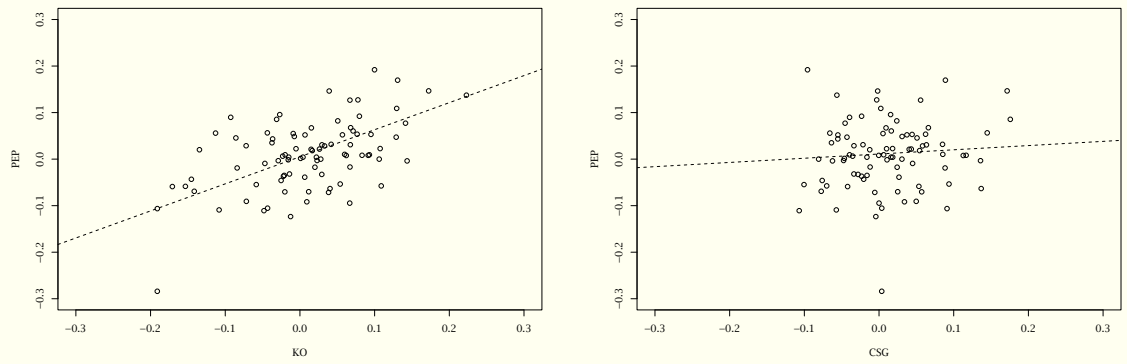
	Investment	Means	Standard Deviations	Correlations PEP	KO	CSG
1	PEP	0.83%	7.47%	100.0%		
2	KO	0.90%	8.35%	53.2%	100.0%	
3	CSG	1.19%	6.29%	10.8%	9.9%	100.0%

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

Let us now use portfolio formulas on a second example with monthly data, based on the historical means, standard deviations, and correlations of Coca Cola, PepsiCo, and Cadbury Schweppes, over the 1995-2002 period. This example is deliberately reminiscent of the example from the previous section, but we are now given only the correlations, not the detailed historical return series themselves. Table 14.3 shows that the average return of each of these three stocks was about 1% per month, or 10%–12% per year. The monthly means were significantly lower than the monthly standard deviations. Over the sample period, Cadbury Schweppes had higher performance and lower risk than either PepsiCo or Coca Cola. Note also how high the 53% correlation between PepsiCo and Coca Cola is, especially relative to the 10.8% and 9.9% Cadbury Schweppes correlations. Figure 14.1 plots the data points. Coca Cola stock seems to behave more like PepsiCo stock than like Cadbury Schweppes stock.

The table provides only statistics for the rates of return, not the series themselves.

Figure 14.1. 1,765 Daily Stock Returns of PepsiCo vs. Coca Cola, and PepsiCo vs. Cadbury Schweppes from August 1995 to August 2002



As always, assume that historical means, standard deviations, and correlations are indicative of future means, standard deviations, and correlations. Now determine the risk and reward of a portfolio $\mathcal{B}$ defined by

A real-world example that computes the risk and reward of a portfolio of three stocks.

$$\mathcal{B} \equiv (20\% \text{ in PEP, } 30\% \text{ in KO, and } 50\% \text{ in CSG}) \quad . \tag{14.48}$$

The unknown rate of return on this portfolio is

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}} = 20\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}} + 30\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{KO}} + 50\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}} \quad . \tag{14.49}$$

The reward is easy. It is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) &= 20\% \cdot 0.83\% + 30\% \cdot 0.90\% + 50\% \cdot 1.19\% = 1.03\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) &= 20\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}) + 30\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{KO}}) + 50\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.50}$$

The portfolio risk is more difficult. As inputs, you need covariances, not standard deviations or correlations. The covariances of variables with themselves (i.e., the variances) of the three stocks can be computed from the standard deviations, by squaring:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}},\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}} &= (0.0747)^2 = 0.005585 \ ; \\ \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{\text{KO}},\tilde{r}_{\text{KO}}} &= (0.0835)^2 = 0.006967 \ ; \\ \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}},\tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}}} &= (0.0629)^2 = 0.003956 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{14.51}$$

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

The covariances have to be computed from the correlations. Recall Formula 13.13,

$$\rho_{1,2} = \frac{\sigma_{1,2}}{\sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2} \iff \sigma_{1,2} = \rho_{1,2} \cdot \sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2 \ . \tag{14.52}$$

With this formula, you can compute the covariances,

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{KO}} &= \rho_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{KO}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{KO}} = 0.532 \cdot 0.0747 \cdot 0.0835 = 0.003318 \ ; \\
\sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} &= \rho_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{CSG}} = 0.108 \cdot 0.0747 \cdot 0.0629 = 0.000507 \ ; \\
\sigma_{\tilde{r}_{KO},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} &= \rho_{\tilde{r}_{KO},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{KO}} \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{CSG}} = 0.099 \cdot 0.0835 \cdot 0.0629 = 0.000522 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.53}$$

You now have all inputs that you need to compute the portfolio return variance:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) &= \mathcal{V}ar\left(20\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{PEP} + 30\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{KO} + 50\% \cdot \tilde{r}_{CSG}\right) \\
&= (20\%)^2 \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{PEP}} + (30\%)^2 \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{KO},\tilde{r}_{KO}} + (50\%)^2 \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{CSG},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot 20\% \cdot 30\% \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{KO}} + 2 \cdot 30\% \cdot 50\% \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{PEP},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} + 2 \cdot 20\% \cdot 50\% \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{r}_{KO},\tilde{r}_{CSG}} \\
&= (20\%)^2 \cdot 0.005585 + (30\%)^2 \cdot 0.006967 + (50\%)^2 \cdot 0.003956 \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot 20\% \cdot 30\% \cdot 0.003318 + 2 \cdot 30\% \cdot 50\% \cdot 0.000507 + 2 \cdot 20\% \cdot 50\% \cdot 0.000522 \\
&= 0.002496 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.54}$$

Therefore, the risk of portfolio $\mathcal{B}$ is

$$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) = \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})} = \sqrt{0.002496} = 5.00\% \ . \tag{14.55}$$

Note that this standard deviation is lower than the standard deviation of each of the three stocks by themselves (Table 14.3). This is caused by "diversification," which is explored in great detail in the next chapter.

Solve Now!

Q 14.9 *Compute the standard deviation (risk) of portfolio $\mathcal{B}$ from Table 14.2 to 4 digits. Is it the same as what we computed in the text?*

Q 14.10 *Compute the expected rate of return (reward) and standard deviation (risk) for another portfolio, called $\mathcal{BF}$, that invests 10.7% in the S&P500, 64.5% in IBM and 24.8% in Sony. Compute this both from the formulas and from a historical rate of return series of this portfolio.*

Q 14.11 *Compute the risk and reward for portfolio $\mathcal{CF}$:*

$$w_{S\&P500} = 0.5, \quad w_{IBM} = 0.5, \quad w_{Sony} = 0 \ . \tag{14.56}$$

Q 14.12 *Compute the risk and reward for portfolio $\mathcal{DF}$:*

$$w_{S\&P500} = 0.614, \quad w_{IBM} = 0.288, \quad w_{Sony} = 0.98 \ . \tag{14.57}$$

Q 14.13 *What is the risk and reward of a portfolio $\mathcal{EF}$ that invests 10% in PEP, 10% in KO, and 80% in CSG?*

Q 14.14 *What is the slope (beta) of the lines in Figure 14.1?*

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

14·3. Historical Statistics For Some Asset-Class Index Portfolios

This section describes the 1997-2002 investment performance of some Vanguard funds.

Enough with statistical torture! Let's look at the historical performances of some realistic investment portfolios. Table 14.4 describes historical rates of return from portfolios managed by **Vanguard** over the January 1997 to October 2002 period. (**Vanguard** is a prominent low-cost provider of **index funds**.) Each Vanguard fund purchases a large number of securities, often simply everything that qualifies in an asset category (e.g., all suitable bonds, all European stocks, all real estate investment trusts, etc.), and without much attempt at picking winners within each class. Naturally, although you really are interested in forward-looking statistics, standing here today, all you have are historical statistics. So, let us look at the properties of historical rates of return of these portfolios.

Side Note: Experience shows that historical means are not good predictors of future means, but historical standard deviations and betas are good predictors of their future equivalents. See the local Nerd Appendix 13·6.A.

Bonds offered only low rates of return.

The first statistic that this chapter described was the mean. The **historical mean** (also called **sample mean**) of the monthly rates of return describes how you would have fared on average. The second column in Table 14.4 shows that over the sample period, the short-term government bond fund earned a rate of return of about 60 basis points (*per year*). The intermediate government bond fund earned 100 basis points; municipal bonds earned 80 basis points; corporate junk bonds earned 180 basis points; corporate convertible bonds earned about 2.4%; and so on.

Part IV explains corporate bonds in more detail.

Equities offered higher rates of return.

Continuing on to pure equity (stock) investments, you can see that the 500 large stocks in Vanguard's S&P500 fund earned about 4.9% per year. The tax-managed version of the same investment strategy minimizes trading (to minimize capital gains). It did even better than the unmanaged version, earning a rate of return of 6.0% per year. **Value firms** are large and unexciting companies, and **growth firms** are small, fast-growing, exciting companies. Yet, following a long-standing historical trend, value firms earned higher rates of return than growth firms. (During this particular sample period, small growth firms did best, though.) Neither could outperform the S&P500 over the sample period. Among industries, **health care firms** earned the highest rates of return, and **utilities** firms earned the lowest rates of return. International investors fared especially poorly in this sample period: Japanese stocks in particular lost 7.4% *per annum* over the sample period.

Side Note: The Vanguard S&P500 index portfolio outperformed the S&P500 index itself (second to last line in the table). This is presumably [a] because the fund also received dividends, which are not counted in the S&P index itself; and [b] because the fund could lend out securities to short-sellers and thereby earn some extra return. Incidentally, to reduce transaction costs, index funds usually do not hold the 500 stocks in the exact right proportion, which causes further **tracking error**—a deviation of the performance of the index fund's rate of return from the index percent change.

Equities were riskier than bonds.

The second set of statistics that this chapter described included the standard deviation. The third column in Table 14.4 shows that short-term and medium-term government bonds and municipal bonds were exceptionally safe. Their monthly rates of return varied only a little over the sample period. A large cluster of investment strategies had risks of about 15% to 25% per year, including the overall S&P500 stock market index investment strategy. The riskiest stock market investment strategy in the sample period would have been U.S. Gold and Metals, whereas the safest would have been **Real Estate Investment Trust** (**REITs**) and **Utilities** firms.

Table 14.4. Asset Class Portfolios, Based on Monthly Rates of Returns, Annualized, January 1997 to October 2002.

	Annualized Returns		Monthly Returns							Ann.Market-Model	
Asset	Mean	StdDev	%Neg	%Pos	Worst	Q2	Median	Q3	Best	α_i	$\beta_{i,S\&P}$
govbonds: short-term	0.6%	2.0%	43%	51%	−1.5%	−0.3%	0.1%	0.4%	1.2%	0.7%	−0.0
govbonds: intermediate	1.0%	4.4%	44%	53%	−3.2%	−0.7%	0.2%	0.8%	2.9%	1.2%	-0.0
bond: long-term munis	0.8%	4.5%	43%	54%	−3.1%	−1.1%	0.4%	0.9%	2.7%	1.0%	-0.0
bond: high-yield (junk) bonds	1.8%	16.2%	46%	54%	−15.0%	−2.3%	0.4%	2.9%	9.9%	−1.5%	0.7
bond: corporate convertibles	2.4%	15.4%	50%	49%	−12.8%	−2.7%	−0.2%	3.2%	10.6%	−0.5%	0.6
u.s. s&p500	4.9%	18.5%	46%	54%	−14.5%	−3.0%	0.7%	4.7%	9.5%	0.1%	1.0
u.s. tax managed	6.0%	21.3%	46%	54%	−17.6%	−3.4%	0.4%	5.2%	9.6%	0.6%	1.1
u.s. value firms	1.6%	18.1%	46%	53%	−16.1%	−3.2%	0.3%	3.8%	8.6%	−2.7%	0.9
u.s. growth firm	−2.1%	25.7%	49%	51%	−21.7%	−5.2%	0.8%	5.6%	15.2%	−8.2%	1.3
u.s. small growth firms	7.7%	25.5%	46%	54%	−19.3%	−4.6%	0.3%	6.3%	20.1%	3.1%	1.0
u.s. small-cap firms	2.7%	22.6%	49%	51%	−19.3%	−4.3%	0.3%	5.2%	16.5%	−1.3%	0.8
u.s. energy firms	5.2%	23.7%	53%	47%	−18.0%	−4.1%	−0.5%	2.8%	19.0%	2.3%	0.6
u.s. gold and metals	3.6%	35.1%	51%	47%	−19.9%	−6.1%	−0.8%	6.0%	39.3%	1.1%	0.5
u.s. health care firms	13.6%	14.0%	36%	64%	−10.5%	−1.0%	1.8%	3.3%	10.3%	11.3%	0.5
u.s. real estate inv. trusts	−0.4%	12.6%	50%	49%	−9.2%	−2.2%	−0.2%	2.0%	9.6%	−1.2%	0.2
u.s. utilities firms	−2.3%	13.9%	57%	43%	−11.9%	−2.5%	−0.7%	2.4%	7.7%	−4.2%	0.4
intl emerging market firms	−4.4%	28.0%	50%	50%	−26.1%	−6.2%	−0.4%	4.5%	15.4%	−9.7%	1.1
intl european firms	1.9%	17.6%	41%	56%	−13.1%	−3.4%	0.3%	3.2%	9.7%	−1.7%	0.7
intl pacific firms	−7.4%	21.3%	59%	40%	−12.1%	−5.3%	−2.0%	4.0%	17.6%	−10.6%	0.7
intl growth firms	−1.6%	17.5%	46%	53%	−13.2%	−3.2%	0.5%	3.1%	9.6%	−5.1%	0.7
intl value firms	−4.2%	18.7%	57%	43%	−15.0%	−3.1%	−0.7%	2.9%	13.0%	−7.5%	0.7
s&p 500 index	4.8%	18.5%	46%	54%	−14.6%	−3.1%	0.5%	5.0%	9.7%	0.0%	1.0
dow jones 30 index	6.3%	18.7%	43%	57%	−15.1%	−3.6%	0.9%	4.0%	10.6%	1.8%	0.9

The third set of statistics that this chapter described was covariation, which included beta. The last column in the Table 14.4 shows the beta of the rate of return of each investment portfolio with the rate of return on the S&P500 index,

An important statistic, used later again, is the covariation of investments with the stock market.

$$\beta_{\mathcal{B},\text{S\&P500}} = \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}\ ,\ \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}})}\ . \tag{14.58}$$

These "market-betas" tell us how much a particular investment portfolio's rate of return covaried with the rate of return on the S&P500. A beta of 1 tells us that the rate of return of a portfolio tended to covary one-to-one with the rate of return in the U.S. stock market. A beta of 0 tells us that the rate of return of a portfolio tended to be unrelated to what happened to the U.S. stock market.

SIDE NOTE: The linear regression by which the beta measure can be obtained is so common that it is called the **market model**, and this particular beta is called the **market beta**. It can be obtained by running the time-series regression

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}} = \alpha + \beta \cdot \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}\ . \tag{14.59}$$

Again, we use a historical beta as estimate for the future beta.

The last column shows that government bonds had practically no covariation with the S&P500. Corporate bonds, energy stocks, precious metals, health care stocks, real estate investment trusts (REITs) and utilities had very mild covariation, indicated by betas around 0.5. The next-most correlated segment are international stocks, having betas of around 0.7. But many other portfolios varied about 1-to-1 with the overall stock market. Note that U.S. growth firms swung even more than 1-to-1 with changes in the stock market: The beta of 1.3 tells us that a 10% increase in the stock market tended to be associated with a 13% increase in the growth firm portfolio. This is typical.

Equities covaried more with the s&p than bonds.

For your curiosity, there are two more tables with the same statistics: Table a describes the historical performance of non-U.S. stock markets; and Table b describes the historical performance of the 30 stocks that constitute the Dow-Jones 30 Index. At this point, you can read and interpret the table as well as I can, so enjoy!

Can you read and understand tables of historical performances now?

SIDE NOTE: Table 14.4 also shows some other statistics, such as the percent of all months that earned a positive rate of return. (Naturally, one minus this percent are the months in which the portfolio had a negative return.) The Table further shows the single worst month, the single best month, the median month (half of all return months were better, half were worse). Finally, although this is beyond what we have covered so far, the alpha (α) in the Table is sometimes interpreted as a risk-adjusted reward measure—the higher the better.

Some other random observations: The table shows no systematic relationship between risk and rate of return over the sample period. However, it is the case that the least risky and least covarying investment strategies (government bonds) provided a very modest, but positive average rate of return. With hindsight, it would have been terrific to invest in U.S. health care stocks: they had the most spectacular return, plus a very modest risk. Naturally, with hindsight, you could have selected the right six numbers for the lottery. So, which numbers can you trust to be indicative of their future equivalent? First and foremost, covariation measures. They tend to be very stable. Next, standard deviations are reasonably stable. Historical means, however, are very untrustworthy as predictors of the future: it is not especially likely that health care firms will continue to outperform other stocks, and that Japanese firms will continue to underperform other stocks.

Solve Now!

All questions refer to Table 14.4.

Q 14.15 *Which investment class portfolio would have done best over the sample period? Do you believe this will continue?*

Q 14.16 *Which investment class portfolio would have done worst over the sample period? Do you believe this will continue?*

Q 14.17 *Assuming you had held only one asset class, which investment class portfolio was safest during the sample period? Do you believe this will continue?*

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

Q 14.18 *Assuming you had held only one asset class, which investment class portfolio was riskiest during the sample period? Do you believe this will continue?*

Q 14.19 *Which asset class portfolio had the lowest covariation with the S&P500 index? Do you believe this will continue?*

Q 14.20 *Which asset class portfolio had the highest covariation with the S&P500 index? Do you believe this will continue?*

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

14·4. Summary

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The formulas in this chapter decompose the statistics of a portfolio return in terms of the statistics of its constituent securities' portfolio returns.

  The formulas are merely alternative computations. You can instead write out the time-series of the portfolio's rates of return and compute the portfolio statistics directly from this distribution.

  You shall use these formulas later, because you want to consider portfolios when you vary the weights. The formulas express the overall portfolio statistics in terms of investment weights, which will make it easier to choose the best portfolio.

- For three statistics, you can take investment-weighted averages:

  1. The portfolio expected rate of return is the investment-weighted average of its components' expected rates of return.
  2. The portfolio covariance with anything else is the investment-weighted average of its components' covariance with this anything else.
  3. The portfolio beta with respect to anything else is the investment-weighted average of its components' beta with respect to this anything else.

- The portfolio variance can not be computed as the investment-weighted average of its components' variances. Instead, it is computed as follows:

  1. For each security, square its weights and multiply it by the variance.
  2. For each pair of different securities, multiply two times the first weight times the second weight times the securities' covariance.
  3. Add up all these terms.

  There are other ways to compute the variance. In particular, you can instead compute the historical portfolio rate of return for each time period, and then compute the variance from this univariate time-series. Or you can use the double summation Formula 14.42.

- For a sense of order-of-magnitude, Table 14.4 on Page 346 provides recent return statistics for some common asset-class portfolios. The appendix gives equivalent statistics for the Dow-Jones 30 stocks and for foreign stock markets.

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

Table 14.5. Summary of Portfolio Algebra in the Context of the Chapter Example

Statistic	Notation	Three Input Securities: S&P500	IBM	Sony	Investment-Weighted Average	Formula	Portfolio of 70% IBM, 20% IBM, and 10% Sony
Expected Return	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$	19.0%	38.8%	90.3%	Yes	$\sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$	$70\% \cdot 19.0\% + 20\% \cdot 38.8\% + 10\% \cdot 90.3\% = 40.9\%$
Covariance, e.g. with x=S&P500	$\sigma_{i,\text{S\&P500}}$	0.0362	0.0330	0.0477	Yes	$\sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_x)$	$70\% \cdot 0.0362 + 20\% \cdot 0.0330 + 10\% \cdot 0.0477 = 0.03672$
Beta, e.g. with x= S&P500	$\beta_{i,\text{S\&P500}}$	1.00	0.91	1.32	Yes	$\sum_{i=1}^{N} w_i \cdot \beta_{(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_x)}$	$70\% \cdot 1.00 + 20\% \cdot 0.91 + 10\% \cdot 1.32 = 1.01$
Variance	$\sigma_{i,i} = \sigma_i^2$	0.036	0.150	0.815	**No**	$\sum_{i=1}^{N} \sum_{j=1}^{N} w_i \cdot w_j \cdot \sigma_{i,j}$	Requires three variance terms and the three mutual covariance terms. The latter are not provided in this table. For method, see Page 340, and Formulas 14.36 and 14.48. It is 0.0487 here.
Standard Deviation	σ_i	19%	39%	90%	**No**		Squareroot of variance (which is $\sqrt{0.0487} = 41\%$ here).

The goal of this chapter was to explain these portfolio rules.
Know what they mean and how to use them!

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

A. Appendix: More Historical Statistics

a. Country Fund Rates of Return

Table 14.6. AMEX Country Funds, Based on Monthly Rates of Returns, Annualized, January 1997 to October 2002.

	Annualized Returns		Monthly Returns							Ann.Market-Model	
Asset	Mean	StdDev	%Neg	%Pos	Worst	Q2	Median	Q3	Best	α_i	$\beta_{i,S\&P}$
australia index fund amex	−0.4%	23.1%	47%	49%	−17.5%	−4.2%	0.0%	3.4%	14.5%	−4.1%	0.8
canada index fund amex	5.0%	23.5%	40%	57%	−22.4%	−4.0%	0.7%	5.5%	11.2%	−0.2%	1.1
sweden index fund amex	1.2%	30.3%	46%	53%	−21.2%	−4.9%	0.6%	5.3%	21.7%	−4.4%	1.2
germany index fund amex	3.9%	28.6%	46%	53%	−24.0%	−4.6%	0.9%	5.1%	24.4%	−1.2%	1.1
hong kong index fund amex	−5.7%	36.0%	56%	41%	−28.1%	−7.4%	−1.3%	5.7%	38.4%	−11.7%	1.2
japan index fund amex	−8.0%	24.2%	59%	41%	−16.5%	−5.9%	−1.2%	3.7%	21.1%	−11.4%	0.7
belgium index fund amex	5.9%	26.6%	44%	56%	−19.0%	−2.7%	0.4%	4.0%	37.9%	2.3%	0.8
netherlands index fund amex	0.2%	22.2%	46%	53%	−17.3%	−3.3%	0.3%	3.6%	14.4%	−3.9%	0.9
austria index fund amex	1.2%	21.0%	47%	49%	−19.7%	−4.2%	0.0%	4.4%	11.9%	−1.0%	0.5
spain index fund amex	6.5%	25.0%	44%	53%	−22.6%	−4.1%	0.3%	4.8%	15.5%	2.0%	0.9
france index fund amex	6.2%	23.5%	43%	57%	−15.0%	−2.5%	0.8%	3.9%	16.8%	2.0%	0.9
singapore index fund amex	−7.5%	37.7%	49%	46%	−27.0%	−6.5%	0.0%	3.6%	40.3%	−13.8%	1.3
uk index fund amex	0.2%	15.4%	43%	54%	−11.9%	−3.2%	0.6%	3.1%	8.6%	−3.1%	0.7
mexico index fund amex	11.3%	36.1%	44%	53%	−35.3%	−7.0%	3.0%	9.0%	20.6%	4.7%	1.4
s&p 500 index	4.8%	18.5%	46%	54%	−14.6%	−3.1%	0.5%	5.0%	9.7%	0.0%	1.0

b. Dow-Jones Constituents

Table 14.7. Dow Jones Constituents, Based on Monthly Rates of Returns, Annualized, January 1997 to October 2002.

	Annualized Returns		Monthly Returns							Ann.Market-Model	
Asset	Mean	StdDev	%Neg	%Pos	Worst	Q2	Median	Q3	Best	α_i	$\beta_{i,S\&P}$
alcoa	15.1%	41.3%	49%	51%	−23.9%	−6.2%	0.4%	8.2%	51.1%	8.8%	1.3
american express	17.3%	31.4%	36%	63%	−29.3%	−3.0%	1.7%	8.4%	16.9%	11.3%	1.2
boeing	−2.9%	34.6%	46%	53%	−34.6%	−7.1%	0.6%	6.6%	20.2%	−6.0%	0.7
citigroup	24.9%	37.4%	43%	57%	−34.0%	−5.8%	2.4%	9.0%	25.8%	17.6%	1.5
caterpillar	9.6%	34.0%	46%	54%	−17.4%	−5.9%	0.8%	6.7%	40.8%	5.7%	0.8
du pont	4.4%	29.0%	50%	50%	−17.0%	−6.1%	−0.2%	6.5%	21.7%	0.6%	0.8
disney	0.3%	32.2%	46%	54%	−26.8%	−6.4%	0.4%	5.0%	24.2%	−4.0%	0.9
eastman kodak	−5.5%	34.6%	53%	47%	−34.4%	−6.6%	−0.5%	5.5%	24.2%	−8.4%	0.6
general electric	12.8%	28.4%	50%	49%	−17.7%	−4.1%	−0.2%	5.9%	19.2%	7.6%	1.1
general motors	5.1%	36.7%	50%	49%	−24.1%	−5.0%	−0.5%	5.8%	25.4%	0.1%	1.0
home depot	22.8%	35.1%	41%	59%	−20.6%	−4.1%	2.8%	8.8%	30.2%	16.8%	1.2
honeywell	6.0%	44.5%	44%	56%	−38.4%	−4.1%	0.7%	6.5%	51.0%	0.1%	1.2
hewlett packard	4.0%	48.2%	51%	49%	−32.0%	−9.1%	−1.4%	8.7%	35.4%	−3.1%	1.5
ibm	20.2%	39.6%	50%	50%	−22.6%	−5.8%	−0.6%	7.8%	35.4%	13.2%	1.5
intel	15.8%	53.1%	46%	54%	−44.5%	−9.6%	0.8%	11.4%	33.9%	7.5%	1.7
international paper	6.0%	36.0%	47%	53%	−22.3%	−6.3%	0.5%	5.3%	27.0%	1.6%	0.9
johnson and johnson	19.5%	26.4%	43%	57%	−16.0%	−2.7%	1.5%	6.2%	17.4%	17.0%	0.5
jp morgan	5.9%	42.5%	46%	54%	−30.6%	−6.3%	0.7%	8.2%	32.9%	−1.9%	1.6
coca-cola	3.7%	30.7%	49%	51%	−19.1%	−4.7%	0.1%	6.7%	22.3%	0.9%	0.6
mcdonalds	0.6%	28.8%	44%	56%	−25.7%	−5.7%	1.0%	5.9%	17.7%	−3.1%	0.8
3m	12.8%	26.0%	44%	56%	−15.8%	−3.9%	1.1%	6.0%	25.8%	10.4%	0.5
philip morris	6.9%	33.0%	41%	57%	−23.7%	−4.6%	0.8%	5.3%	24.4%	5.1%	0.4
merck	12.1%	32.0%	49%	51%	−21.7%	−5.6%	0.1%	6.5%	22.8%	9.3%	0.6
microsoft	28.4%	50.0%	47%	51%	−34.4%	−8.7%	0.1%	11.9%	40.8%	20.0%	1.7
proctor and gamble	13.7%	28.4%	41%	59%	−35.4%	−1.8%	1.4%	5.3%	24.7%	12.6%	0.2
sbc communications	8.1%	34.4%	50%	50%	−18.8%	−7.0%	−0.2%	5.7%	29.3%	4.5%	0.8
att	−5.7%	40.3%	54%	46%	−23.8%	−8.5%	−2.6%	6.1%	39.1%	−10.3%	1.0
united technologies	18.1%	34.1%	40%	60%	−32.0%	−3.4%	1.9%	7.0%	24.6%	12.6%	1.1
wal-mart	31.5%	31.1%	33%	66%	−20.8%	−3.2%	3.0%	8.2%	26.4%	27.2%	0.9
exxon	7.1%	18.3%	50%	50%	−10.2%	−3.5%	−0.1%	4.7%	17.7%	4.9%	0.5
dow jones 30 index	6.3%	18.7%	43%	57%	−15.1%	−3.6%	0.9%	4.0%	10.6%	1.8%	0.9
s&p 500 index	4.8%	18.5%	46%	54%	−14.6%	−3.1%	0.5%	5.0%	9.7%	0.0%	1.0

file=statspfios-g.tex; RP

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

1.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \frac{(-0.176) + (-0.290) + \ldots + (-0.265)}{12} &= 0.183 \ , \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \frac{(-0.359)^2 + (-0.474)^2 + \ldots + (-0.448)^2}{11} &= 0.167 \ , \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \frac{(+0.1620)\cdot(-0.359) + (-0.0565)\cdot(-0.474) + \ldots + (-0.3348)\cdot(-0.448)}{11} &= 0.0379 \ , \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \frac{(-0.3661)\cdot(-0.359)\cdot + (-0.5874)\cdot(-0.474) + \ldots + (-0.5105)\cdot(-0.448)}{11} &= 0.1075 \ , \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \frac{(-0.3448)\cdot(-0.359)\cdot + (-0.2458)\cdot(-0.474) + \ldots + (-0.3228)\cdot(-0.448)}{11} &= 0.2862 \ , \\
Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \sqrt{16.71\%} = 40.9\% \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.60}$$

2. There is no error.

3.

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_S) = 0.05397 \ , \ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_S) = 0.6166 \ , \ Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_S) = 0.04403 \ . \tag{14.61}$$

4.

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{S,\text{S\&P500}} &= Cov(\tilde{r}_S, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) / \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) = 0.04403/0.03622 \approx 1.22 \ . \\
\beta_{S,\text{S\&P500}} &= w_{\text{IBM}} \cdot \beta_{\text{IBM,S\&P500}} + w_{\text{Sony}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Sony,S\&P500}} \\
&= 25\% \cdot 0.910 + 75\% \cdot 1.317 \approx 1.22 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.62}$$

5.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= Cov(\tilde{r}_S, \tilde{r}_S) = \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = (25\%)^2 \cdot 0.15035 + (75\%)^2 \cdot 0.81489 \\
&+2 \cdot 25\% \cdot 75\% \cdot 0.02184 = 0.4760 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{14.63}$$

6. Do it!

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) &= \frac{0.0131 + \ldots + (-0.243)}{12} \approx 12.57\% \ . \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) &= \frac{(-0.006 \cdot 0.1620) + \ldots + (-0.369 \cdot -0.3348)}{12} \approx \text{??}.
\end{aligned} \tag{14.64}$$

7.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_S) &= 25\% \cdot 10.1\% + 35\% \cdot 15.4\% + 40\% \cdot 24.2 \approx 17.59\% \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_S, \text{S\&P500}) &= 25\% \cdot 0.03622 + 35\% \cdot 0.03298 + 40\% \cdot 0.04772 \approx 0.0397 \\
\beta_{S,\text{S\&P500}} &= 25\% \cdot 1.00 + 35\% \cdot 0.9104 + 40\% \cdot 1.3172 \approx 1.096
\end{aligned} \tag{14.65}$$

8. For the historical computation, compute the returns and their deviations:

file=statspfios-g.tex: RP

Year	1991	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996
Historical Return	−0.04965	−0.14210	+0.25130	+0.15549	+0.21218	+0.31198
Deviation from Mean	−0.22556	−0.31801	+0.07539	−0.02043	+0.03626	+0.13607

Year	1997	1998	1999	2000	2001	2002
Historical Return	+0.36708	+0.25242	+1.29560	−0.30389	−0.02390	−0.21557
Deviation from Mean	+0.19117	+0.07651	+1.11969	−0.47980	−0.19981	−0.39148

because the portfolio mean is 17.59%. The variance is therefore

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_S) = \frac{0.0509 + 0.1011 + ... + 0.1533}{11} \approx 0.1725 \quad . \tag{14.66}$$

The alternative calculation is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_S) = & \quad 0.25^2 \cdot 0.03622 + 0.35^2 \cdot 0.15035 + 0.40^2 \cdot 0.81849 \\ & +2 \cdot 0.25 \cdot 0.35 \cdot 0.03298 \\ & +2 \cdot 0.25 \cdot 0.40 \cdot 0.04772 \\ & +2 \cdot 0.35 \cdot 0.45 \cdot 0.02184 \\ = & \quad 0.1516 + 0.02220 \\ \approx & \quad 0.1738 \end{aligned} \tag{14.67}$$

and the difference is rounding error (of which half is in the Sony variance term).

9. The variance is 0.0487, the standard deviation is 0.2207. (Divide by $N-1$, not by N.)
10. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{BF}}) = 17.00\%$, $\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{BF}}) = 35.65\%$
11. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{CF}}) = 12.74\%$, $\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{CF}}) = 25.12\%$.
12. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{DF}}) = 13.00\%$, $\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{DF}}) = 22.90\%$.
13.

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{EF}}) = 10\% \cdot 0.83\% + 10\% \cdot 0.90\% + 80\% \cdot 1.19\% = 1.125\% \tag{14.68}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{EF}}) = & \quad 10\% \cdot (7.47\%)^2 + 10\% \cdot (8.35\%)^2 + 80\% \cdot (6.29\%)^2 \\ & +2 \cdot 10\% \cdot 10\% \cdot 53.2\% + 2 \cdot 10\% \cdot 80\% \cdot 10.8\% + 2 \cdot 10\% \cdot 80\% \cdot 9.9\% \\ = & \quad 0.0004858 \quad , \\ \rightarrow \quad \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{EF}}) = & \quad 6.97\% \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.69}$$

14. We want the slope of a line where KO is the X variable. Therefore, the slope is

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{\text{PEP,KO}} &= \frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{KO}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{KO}})} = \frac{0.003318}{0.006967} \approx 0.48 \quad . \\ \beta_{\text{PEP,CSG}} &= \frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\text{CSG}})} = \frac{0.0005}{0.004} \approx 0.13 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{14.70}$$

15. Health care firms. Unlikely: You know that historical expected rates of return are not reliable predictors of future expected rates of return.
16. Pacific (Japanese) Firms. Unlikely: You know that historical expected rates of return are not reliable predictors of future expected rates of return.
17. Government Bonds, short term. Likely: Historical standard deviations tend to be good predictors of future standard deviations.
18. Gold and Metals, then Emerging Stock Market Investments. (These are stock markets from developing countries.) Likely: Historical standard deviations tend to be good predictors of future standard deviations.
19. Look at the final column, $\beta_{i,\text{S\&P500}}$. Government bonds of all kinds had almost no correlation with the S&P500. Among more risky securities, REITs were almost uncorrelated, too. Likely: historical covariations tend to be good predictors of future covariations.
20. Growth firms. These contain many technology firms. Likely: historical covariations tend to be good predictors of future covariations.

file=statspfios-g.tex: LP

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 15

THE PRINCIPLE OF DIVERSIFICATION

Eggs and Baskets

last file change: Feb 17, 2006 (14:52h)

last major edit: Aug 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

Having the statistical artillery now in place to describe risk (i.e., the standard deviation), you are ready to abandon the previously maintained assumption of investor risk-neutrality. Henceforth, you will no longer be assumed to be indifferent among investments with the same expected rates of return. Instead, you can now prefer the less risky investment *if* two investment options have the same expected rate of return.

file=diversification-g.tex: LP

15·1. What Should You Care About?

What we have assumed about investor preferences?

For the remainder of this book, we are assuming that you care only about the risk and reward of our portfolios, and at one particular point in the future. (You may however reinvest your portfolio at this point to earn more returns.) You care about no other characteristics of your portfolio, or whether a bigger portfolio at this point in time might cause a lower portfolio at the next point in time. What does this mean, and how reasonable are these assumptions?

What non-financial preferences have you assumed away?

First, you are assuming that you do not care about anything other than financial returns. Instead, you could care about whether your portfolio companies invest ethically, e.g., whether a firm in your portfolio produces cigarettes or cancer cures. In real life, few investors care about what their portfolio firms are actually doing. Even if *you* care, you are too small to be able to influence companies one way or the other—and other investors stand ready to purchase any security you may spurn. Aside, if you purchase an ordinary mutual fund, you will hold all sorts of companies—companies whose behavior you may or may not like.

What have you assumed away by looking at the portfolio problem in isolation?

Second, you are assuming that external influences do not matter—you consider your portfolio's outcome by itself without regard for anything else. So you do not seek portfolios that offer higher rates of return if you were to lose your job. *This would not be a bad idea*—you probably should prefer a portfolio with a lower mean (given the same standard deviation), just as long as the better outcomes occur in recessions when you are more likely to lose your job. You should definitely consider such investment strategies—but unfortunately few investors do so in the real world. (If anything, the empirical evidence suggests that many investors seem to do the exact opposite of what they should do if they wanted to ensure themselves against employment risk.) Fortunately, our tools would still work with some modifications if you define your portfolio return to include your labor income.

What return preferences have you assumed away?

Third, you are assuming that risk and reward is all you care about. But it is conceivable that you might care about other portfolio characteristics. For example, the following two portfolios both have a mean return of 20% and a standard deviation of 20%.

Pfio "Symmetric"	with 50% probability, a return of 0%	with 50% probability, a return of +40%
Pfio "Skewed"	with 33% probability, a return of -8%	with 67% probability, a return of +34%

Are you really indifferent between the two? They are not the same. The symmetric portfolio cannot lose money, while the skewed portfolio can. On the other hand, the skewed portfolio has the better return more frequently. By focusing only on mean and standard deviation, you have assumed away any preference between these two portfolios. Few investors in the real world actively invest with an eye towards portfolio return skewness, so ignoring it is acceptable.

What multi-period return processes have you assumed away?

Fourth, you are assuming that you want to maximize your portfolio value at one specific point in time. This could be problematic if, for example, in the symmetric portfolio case it were true that a return of 0% was always later followed by a return of 100%, while a return of +40% was always followed by an unavoidable return of -100% (nuclear war!), then you might not care about the return at the end of the first measurement period. This is so unrealistic that you can ignore this issue for most practical purposes.

IMPORTANT: *The remainder of this book assumes that you care only about the risk (standard deviation) and reward (expected return) of your portfolio.*

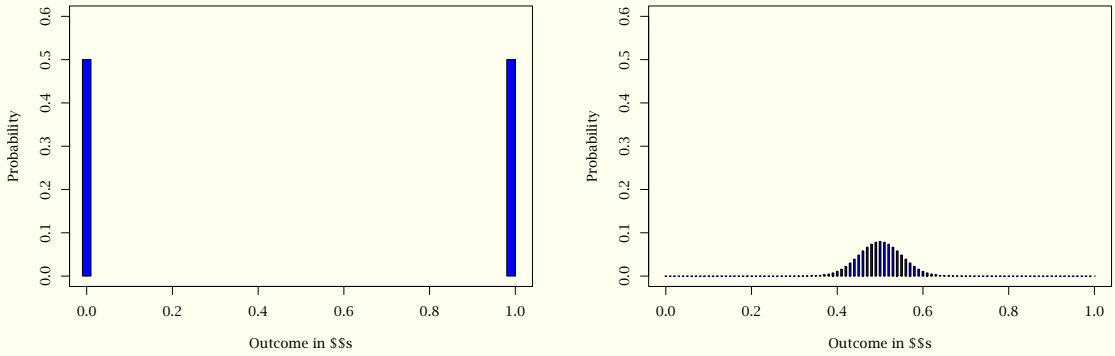
file=diversification-g.tex: RP

15·2. Diversification: The Informal Way

Don't put all your eggs into one basket (on one bet), if you dislike variance!

Let us assume that you dislike wealth risk. An important method to reduce this risk—and the cornerstone of the area of investments—is **diversification**, which means investing not only in one but in many different assets. We shall expound on it in great detail, but it can be explained with a simple example. Compare two bets. The first bet depends on the outcome of a single coin toss. If heads, the bet pays off \$1 (if tails, the bet pays off nothing). The second bet depends on the outcome of 100 coin tosses. Each coin toss, if heads, pays off $1/100$ of a dollar, zero otherwise. The expected outcome of either bet is 50 cents. But, as Figure 15.1 shows, the standard deviation of the payoff—the risk—of the latter bet is much lower.

Figure 15.1. Payoffs Under Two Bets With Equal Means.



The left figure is the distribution of payoff where you bet \$1 on heads for 1 coin throw. The right figure is the distribution of payoff where you bet \$0.01 on heads for each of 100 coin throws.

Anecdote: Risk: Aversion or Las Vegas?
We are assuming that investors dislike risk. Putting money into many different bets, rather than one big bet, accomplishes this goal. But, is this a good strategy on the roulette table, too? Should you bet your entire money on red (one big bet only), or should you bet it one dollar at a time on red? From a purely financial perspective, the answer is that the single bet is better: if you bet one dollar at a time, you are indeed likely to have a lower variance of payoffs around your expected rate of return. Unfortunately, in roulette, your expected rate of return is *negative*. The casino would be perfectly happy to have you pay up your (negative) expected rate of return *without any risk* for each roll of the ball.

Indeed, if your strategy is to gamble until you either are bankrupt or have doubled your money, you are more likely not to go bankrupt if you make fewer but bigger bets.

file=diversification-g.tex: LP

15·3. Diversification: The Formal Way

15·3.A. Uncorrelated Securities

The base case: independent security returns.

Recall from Section 12·3 (Page 294) that a portfolio's return, $r_{\mathcal{P}}$, is

$$r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot r_i \ , \tag{15.1}$$

where $\mathcal{P}$ is the overall portfolio, w_i is the investment weight (proportion) in asset i, and i is a counter that enumerates all assets from 1 to N. If you do not yet know the return outcomes, then your returns are random variables, so

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i \ . \tag{15.2}$$

It is now time to put the laws of expectations and standard deviations (from Section 14·2) to good use. To illustrate how diversification works, make the following admittedly unrealistic assumptions:

1. All securities offer the same expected rate of return (mean):

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = 5\% \quad \text{for all } i \ ; \tag{15.3}$$

2. All securities have the same risk (standard deviation of return):

$$Sdv(\tilde{r}_i) \equiv \sigma(\tilde{r}_i) \equiv \sigma_i = 40\% \quad \text{for all } i \ , \tag{15.4}$$

   which is roughly the annual rate of return standard deviation for a typical U.S. stock;

3. All securities have rates of return that are independent from one another. Independence implies that security returns have zero covariation with one another, so $Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) = 0$ for any two securities i and j—just as long as i is not j:

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) = \sigma_{i,j} = 0 \quad \text{for all different } i \text{ and } j \ . \tag{15.5}$$

   (This last assumption is the most unrealistic of the three.)

The portfolio definition.

What are the risk and return characteristics of the portfolio, $\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$, if it contains N securities? For an equal-weighted portfolio with N securities, each investment weight is $1/N$, so the portfolio rate of return is

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} = \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} (1/\mathrm{N}) \cdot \tilde{r}_i = 1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + 1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \tilde{r}_2 + \ldots + 1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}} \ . \tag{15.6}$$

The Expected Rate of Return.

Let's start with one security. In this case, $r_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv r_1$, so

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) = 5\% \ , \quad Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = Sdv(\tilde{r}_1) = \sqrt{Var(\tilde{r}_1)} = 40\% \ . \tag{15.7}$$

Two securities now. The portfolio consists of a 50-50 investment in securities 1 and 2:

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} = 1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + 1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2 \ . \tag{15.8}$$

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

In this portfolio, it is easy to see that the average expected rate of return on a portfolio is the average of the expected rates of return on its components:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{E}(1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + 1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + 1/2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/2 \cdot 5\% + 1/2 \cdot 5\% = 5\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.9}$$

More generally, it is not a big surprise that the rate of return is 5%, no matter how many securities enter the portfolio:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \mathcal{E}\,(1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \tilde{r}_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} 1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} 1/\mathrm{N} \cdot 5\% = 5\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.10}$$

The base case: Variance and Standard Deviation are lower for 2 securities.

It is when you turn to the portfolio risk characteristics that it becomes interesting. The variance and standard deviation of the rate of return on the portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ are more interesting. Begin with two securities:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{V}ar(1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + 1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= (1/2)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + (1/2)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) + 2 \cdot (1/2) \cdot (1/2) \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/4 \cdot 0.16 + 1/4 \cdot 0.16 + 2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 0 \\ &= 1/4 \cdot 0.16 + 1/4 \cdot 0.16 \\ &= 1/2 \cdot 0.16 \\ \iff Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \sqrt{1/2 \cdot 0.16} = 70.7\% \cdot 40\% = 28.3\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.11}$$

You could drop out the covariance term, because we have assumed security returns to be independent. Pay close attention to the final line: the portfolio of one security had a risk of 40%. The portfolio of two securities has the lower risk of 28.3%. This is important—diversification at work!

SIDE NOTE: If you find it easier to understand the formula if you see some data, below are two sample series that are consistent with our assumptions: each has 5% mean and 40% standard deviation, and they have zero mutual covariance. The final column is the rate of return on the portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ that invests half in each security, thus appropriately rebalanced each year, of course . You can confirm that the standard deviation of this portfolio is indeed the same 28.284% that you have just computed via the formula.

Year	$\tilde{r}_1$	$\tilde{r}_2$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$	Year	$\tilde{r}_1$	$\tilde{r}_2$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}$
1980	25.420	-11.476	6.972	1985	21.268	-35.560	-7.146
1981	39.376	62.064	50.720	1986	-45.524	30.620	-7.452
1982	41.464	-19.356	11.054	1987	42.976	59.616	51.296
1983	30.500	-41.256	-5.378	1988	-10.324	30.360	10.018
1984	-67.552	15.772	-25.890	1989	-27.604	-40.784	-34.194
				$\mathcal{E}$	5.000	5.000	5.000
				Sdv	40.000	40.000	28.284

Variance and Standard Deviation for N securities.

Now, compute the standard deviation for an arbitrary number of securities in the portfolio. Recall the variance formula,

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = \mathcal{V}ar\left(\sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} c_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i\right) = \sum_{j=1}^{N} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \left[c_j \cdot c_k \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_j, \tilde{r}_k) \right] \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) && + && w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) && + \ \ldots \ + && w_{\mathcal{N}}^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) \\
+ \ & 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) && + && 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_3) && + \ \ldots \ + && 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) \\
+ \ & 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_1 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_1) && + && 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_3) && + \ \ldots \ + && 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) \\
+ \ & \ldots && + && \ldots && + \ \ldots \ + && \ldots \\
+ \ & 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot w_1 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_1) && + && 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_3) && + \ \ldots \ + && 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{N}-1} \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}-1}) \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{15.12}$$

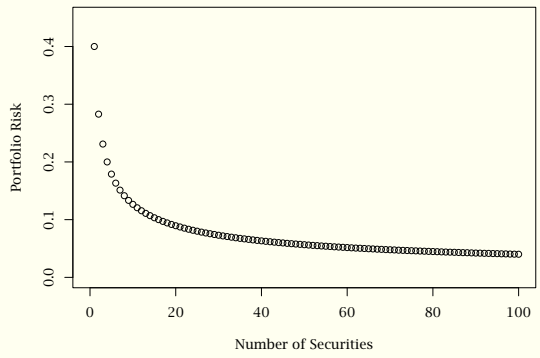
In our example, all the covariance terms are zero, all the weights are $1/\mathrm{N}$, and all individual security variances are the same, so this is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) + \ \ldots \ + (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) \\
&= (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) + (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) + \ \ldots \ + (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) \\
&= N \cdot (1/\mathrm{N})^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) = (1/\mathrm{N}) \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) \ . \\
\iff Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{1/\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i)} = \sqrt{1/\mathrm{N}} \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_i) = \sqrt{1/\mathrm{N}} \cdot 40\% \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{15.13}$$

Reflect on the effectiveness of diversification: a lot for the first few additions, then less and less.

This formula states that for 1 security, the risk of the portfolio is 40%; for 2 securities, it is 28.3% (as also computed in Formula 15.11); for 4 securities, it is $\sqrt{1/4} \cdot 40\% = 20\%$; for 16 securities, it is 10%; for 100 securities, it is 4%, and for 10,000 securities, is 0.4%. In a portfolio of infinitely many securities, the risk of the portfolio gradually disappears. In other words, you would practically be certain to earn the expected rate of return (here 5%). Now take a look at the risk decline in Figure 15.2 to see how more securities help to reduce risk. The square root function on N declines steeply for the first few securities, but then progressively less so for subsequent securities. Going from 1 to 4 securities reduces the risk by 50%. The next 5 securities (going from 4 to 9 securities) only reduce the risk by 17% (from $\sqrt{1/4} = 50\%$ to $\sqrt{1/9} = 33\%$). To drop the risk from 50% to 25% requires 12 extra securities; to drop the risk from 50% to 10% requires 96 extra securities. In other words, *if* security returns are independent, diversification works really well in the beginning, but less and less as more securities are added. It is important to have, say, a dozen independent securities in the portfolio, which drops the portfolio risk by two-thirds; additional diversification through purchasing more securities is nice, but it is not as important, in relative terms, as these first dozen securities.

Figure 15.2. Diversification if security returns were independent.



file=diversification-g.tex: RP

15·3.B. Correlated Securities

When does diversification fail? Recall from Page 319 that the maximum possible correlation of 1 implies that

Diversification fails when security returns are perfectly positively correlated.

$$Correlation(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) = +1 \iff Cov(\tilde{X},\tilde{Y}) = Sdv(\tilde{X}) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{Y}) \ . \tag{15.14}$$

Therefore, the covariance of two perfectly correlated securities' rates of returns (in our example) is

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{r}_i,\tilde{r}_j) &= 40\% \cdot 40\% = 0.16 \ . \\ Cov(\tilde{r}_i,\tilde{r}_j) &= Sdv(\tilde{r}_i) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_j) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.15}$$

The variance of a portfolio of two such stocks is

$$\begin{aligned} Var(\tilde{r}_P) &= Var(1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_1 + 1/2 \cdot \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/2^2 \cdot Var(\tilde{r}_1) + 1/2^2 \cdot Var(\tilde{r}_2) + 2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1,\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/4 \cdot 0.16 + 1/4 \cdot 0.16 + 2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 0.16 \\ &= 1/2 \cdot 0.16 + 1/2 \cdot 0.16 = 0.16 \\ Sdv(\tilde{r}_P) &= \sqrt{Var(\tilde{r}_P)} = 40\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.16}$$

In other words, when two securities are perfectly correlated, diversification does not reduce portfolio risk. It should come as no surprise that you cannot reduce the risk of a portfolio of one PepsiCo share by buying another PepsiCo share. (The returns of PepsiCo shares are perfectly correlated.) In general, the smaller or even more negative the covariance term, the better diversification works.

IMPORTANT:

- *Diversification fails when underlying securities are perfectly positively correlated.*
- *Diversification reduces portfolio risk better when its underlying securities are less correlated.*
- *Diversification works perfectly (reducing portfolio risk to zero) when underlying securities are perfectly negatively correlated.*

Question 15.3 at the end of this section asks you to prove the last point.

15·3.C. Measures of Contribution Diversification: Covariance, Correlation, or Beta?

Covariance, Correlation, and Beta are multiple possible measures of covariation.

It seems that diversification works better when the covariation between investment securities is smaller. The correct measure of overall risk remains, of course, the standard deviation of the portfolio's rate of return. But, the question you are now interested in is "What is the best measure of the contribution of an individual security to the risk of a portfolio?" You need a measure of the risk contribution of just one security inside the portfolio to the overall portfolio risk.

Candidates to measure how a new security helps portfolio diversification.

Let's presume that you already hold a portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$, and you are now considering adding "a little bit" of security $\mathcal{i}$. How much does this new security help or hurt your portfolio through diversification? Because you are adding fairly little of this security, it is a reasonable approximation to assume that the rest of the portfolio remains as it was (even though the new security really becomes part of portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ and thereby changes $\mathcal{Y}$). The three candidates to measure how correlated the new investment opportunity $\mathcal{i}$ is with the rest of your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ are

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{The Covariance:} & \mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_y) & \text{(Uninterpretable)} \\ \text{The Correlation:} & \dfrac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_y)}{\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_i) \cdot \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_y)} & \text{(Interpretable)} \\ \text{The Portfolio Beta:} & \dfrac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_y)}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_y)} & \text{(Interpretable)} \end{array} \tag{15.17}$$

Although all three candidates share the same sign, each measure has its own unique advantage. The covariance is used directly in the portfolio formula (e.g., Formula 15.11, Page 361), but its value is difficult to interpret. The correlation is easiest to interpret, because it lies between -1 and $+1$. However, its real problem as a measure of risk for a new security (which you want to add to your portfolio) is that it ignores a security's relative variability.

Debunking correlation: it is not a good risk measure.

This last fact merits an explanation. Consider two securities that both have perfect correlation with your portfolio. In our example, there are only two equally likely possible outcomes:

	Your Portfolio	Security $\mathcal{A}$	Security $\mathcal{B}$
Outcome 1	+24%	+12%	+200%
Outcome 2	-12%	-6%	-100%
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	+6%	+3%	50%
$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r})$	+18%	+9%	150%

Now assume you had \$75 in your portfolio, but you are adding \$25 of either $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$. Therefore, your new combined portfolio rate of return would be

	Your Portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ Plus Security $\mathcal{A}$	Your Portfolio Plus Security $\mathcal{B}$
Case 1	$75\% \cdot (+24\%) + 25\% \cdot (+12\%) = 21.0\%$	$75\% \cdot (+24\%) + 25\% \cdot (+200\%) = 68\%$
Case 2	$75\% \cdot (-12\%) + 25\% \cdot (-6\%) = -10.5\%$	$75\% \cdot (-12\%) + 25\% \cdot (-100\%) = -34\%$
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{P})$	5.25%	51.00%
$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{P})$	15.75%	153.00%

Adding stock $\mathcal{B}$ causes your portfolio risk to go up more. It adds more portfolio risk. Yet, the correlation between your portfolio and either security $\mathcal{A}$ or security $\mathcal{B}$ was the same. The correlation would not have told you that $\mathcal{B}$ is the riskier add-on.

But the beta of a stock with your portfolio still works as a good risk measure!

In contrast to correlation, our third candidate for measuring risk contribution tells you the right thing. The beta of security $\mathcal{A}$ with respect to your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ is 0.5 (which you can compute either with the formula $\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{A}, \tilde{r}_y)/\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_y)$, or by recognizing that $\mathcal{A}$ is always one-half of $\mathcal{Y}$); the beta of security $\mathcal{B}$ with respect to your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ is 8.33. Therefore, beta tells you that adding security $\mathcal{B}$ would increase your overall portfolio risk more than adding security $\mathcal{A}$. Unlike correlation, beta takes into account the *scale* of investments.

A concrete example that shows that correlation is not a great diversification measure.

You can also find this scale problem within the context of our earlier three-investments scenario with the annual returns of the S&P500, IBM, and Sony. On Page 322, you found that, compared to IBM, Sony had a higher beta with the market, but a lower correlation. So, does a portfolio $\mathcal{I}$ consisting of one-half S&P500 and one-half IBM have more or less risk than a portfolio $\mathcal{S}$ consisting of one-half S&P500 and one-half Sony?

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{I}) &= (1/2)^2 \cdot 3.62\% + (1/2)^2 \cdot 15.03\% + 2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 3.30\% = 5.075\% \ , \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{S}) &= (1/2)^2 \cdot 3.62\% + (1/2)^2 \cdot 81.49\% + 2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 1/2 \cdot 4.77\% = 21.874\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.18}$$

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

Even though Sony has lower correlation with the S&P500 than IBM, Sony's higher variance negates this advantage: the S portfolio is riskier than the I portfolio. The covariances reflect this accurately: the covariance of the S&P500 with Sony is higher than the covariance of the S&P500 with IBM. Beta preserves this ordering, too, because both covariances are divided by the same variance (the variance of $\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}$). It is only the correlation that would have misleadingly indicated that Sony would have been the better diversifier. This, then, is our main insight:

IMPORTANT: *The beta of any security i with respect to our portfolio (called $\beta_{i,\mathcal{Y}}$) is a measure of the security's risk contribution to the portfolio, because it properly takes scale into account. The lower the beta of security i with respect to portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$, the better security i works at diversifying portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$'s overall risk.*

The other two measures.

The covariance would have worked equally well, but it is more difficult to intuitively interpret. Correlation is not suitable as a quantitative measure, because it fails to recognize investment scales.

Beta has a nice slope interpretation, too.

The remainder of this section just provides some additional intuition: Beta has a nice slope interpretation. If you graph the rate of return on your overall portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ (e.g., the S&P500) on the x axis, and the rate of return on the new security i (e.g., Sony) on the y axis, then beta represents the slope of a line that helps you predict how the rate of return of security i will turn out *if* you know how the rate of return on your portfolio turned out.

Beta can be visually judged by graphing the rate of return on a security against the rate of return on the overall portfolio. It is the slope of the line.

Figure 15.3 shows three securities with very different betas with respect to your portfolio. In graph (c), security $\mathcal{POS}$ has a positive beta with respect to your portfolio. You would therefore expect security $\mathcal{POS}$ to not help you much in your quest to diversifiy: when your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ does better, so does $\mathcal{U}$. In the figure, $\mathcal{U}$ has a beta with respect to your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ of 3. This indicates that if $\mathcal{Y}$ were to ear an additional 5% rate of return, the rate of return on the security $\mathcal{POS}$ would be expected to change by an additional 15%. More importantly, if your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ hits hard times, asset $\mathcal{POS}$ would be hit even harder! You would be better off purchasing only a very, very small amount of such a security; otherwise, you could quickly end up with a portfolio that looks more like $\mathcal{POS}$ than like $\mathcal{Y}$. In contrast, in graph (a), you see that if you purchased security $\mathcal{NEG}$ would expect this $\mathcal{NEG}$ to help you considerably in diversification: when your $\mathcal{Y}$ does worse, $\mathcal{NEG}$ does better! With a beta of -3, the security $\mathcal{NEG}$ tends to go up by an additional 15% when the rest of your portfolio $\mathcal{Y}$ goes down by an additional 5%. Therefore, $\mathcal{NEG}$ provides excellent "insurance" against downturns in $\mathcal{Y}$. Finally, in graph (b), the security $\mathcal{ZR}$ has a zero beta, which is the case when $\mathcal{ZR}$'s rates of return are independent of $\mathcal{P}$'s rates of return. You already know that securities with no correlation can help you quite nicely in helping diversify your portfolio risk.

SIDE NOTE: The intercept in Figure 15.3 is sometimes called the "alpha," and it can measure how much expected rate of return the security is likely to offer, holding its extra risk constant. For example, if stocks i and j have lines as follows

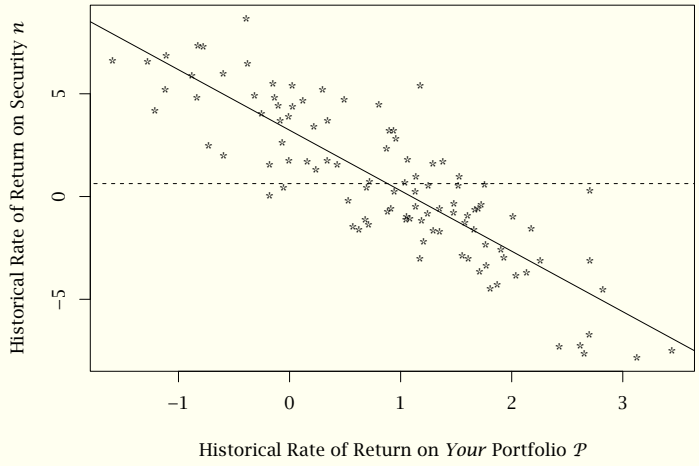
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) &\approx +15\% + 1.5 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{P}) \ , \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_j) &\approx -10\% + 1.5 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{P}) \ , \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_k) &\approx \alpha_k + \beta_{k,\mathcal{P}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{P}) \ , \end{aligned} \tag{15.19}$$

the α of stock i is 15%, while the α of stock j is -10%. It appears that stock i offers a holder of portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ a lot of positive return compared to j, holding its exposure to portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ constant. Naturally, you would like stocks with high alphas and low betas—but such opportunities are difficult to find, especially if you already hold a reasonably good (well-diversified) portfolio.

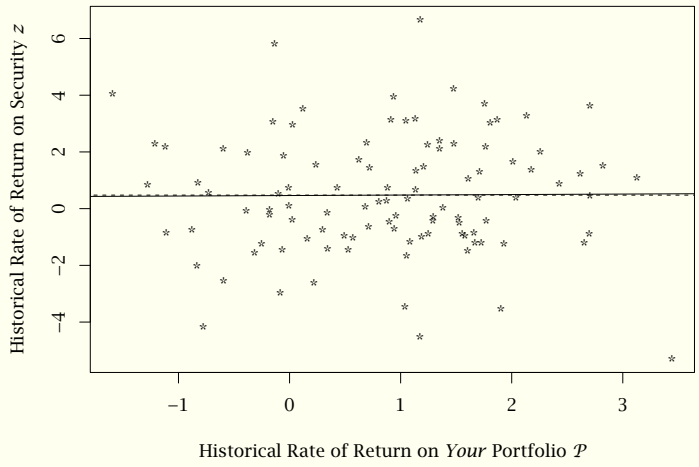
file=diversification-g.tex: LP

Figure 15.3. Three Different Beta Measures of Risk for Security *i*.

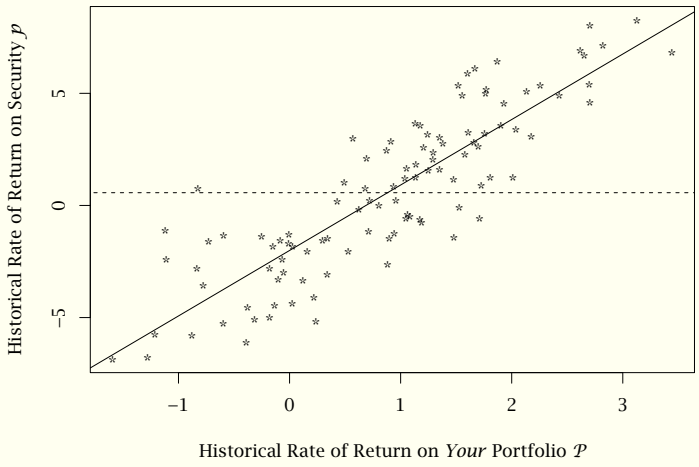
(a)



(b)



(c)



The historical betas of these three securities, *n*, *z*, and *p*, with respect to your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ are based on returns whose true betas with respect to your portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ are -3, 0, and $+3$ in the three graphs, respectively. Historical data is indicative, but not perfect in telling you the true beta.

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

Solve Now!

Q 15.1 *Assume that every security has a mean of 12%, and a standard deviation of 30%. Further, assume that each security has no covariation with any security. What are the risk and reward of a portfolio of N stocks that invests equal amount in each security?*

Q 15.2 *Assume that every security has a mean of 12%, and a standard deviation of 30%. Further, assume that each security has 0.0025 covariation with any security. What are the risk and reward of a portfolio of N stocks that invests equal amount in each security? If you find this difficult, solve this for 2 stocks. Can you guess what the risk is for a portfolio of infinitely many such stocks?*

Q 15.3 *Compute the variance of a two-stock portfolio if the two securities are not perfectly positively, but perfectly negatively, correlated.*

Q 15.4 *You own a \$1,000 portfolio $\mathcal{P}$, whose expected rate of return has a mean of 10% and a standard deviation of 20%. You are considering buying a security $\mathcal{Q}$ that has a mean of 15% and a standard deviation of 50%. The correlation between the rates of return on $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{Q}$ is 20%.*

(a) What is the covariance between the rate of return of $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{Q}$?

(b) What is the beta between the rate of return on $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{Q}$?

(c) Consider purchasing \$1,000 in $\mathcal{Q}$. What would the portfolio risk be?

A new security, named $\mathcal{N}$ has appeared. It has a mean of 150% and a standard deviation of 500%, and the same 20% correlation with $\mathcal{P}$. (Sidenote: Such a security could be created by a fund that borrows in order to purchase more than 100% in $\mathcal{Q}$.)

(d) What is the covariance between the rate of return of $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{N}$?

(e) What is the beta between the rate of return on $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{N}$?

(f) Consider purchasing \$1,000 in $\mathcal{N}$. What would the portfolio risk be?

(g) $\mathcal{Q}$ and $\mathcal{N}$ have equal correlation with portfolio $\mathcal{P}$. Does it follow that they would both be equal risk-contributors, if added to the portfolio?

ANECDOTE: Value-At-Risk (VAR)
The latest in risk measurement techniques among banks and other financial institutions—and a great step forward if executed correctly—is **VaR** (**Value-at-Risk**). It often replaces older risk-scoring systems, in which (for example) all commercial loans received one score, government loans another, etc. The goal of Value at Risk is to compute the risk (standard deviation) when all investment (loans) are evaluated in a portfolio framework. Value at Risk can come to very different conclusions than these older systems, especially if payoffs to loans are very negatively or very positively correlated.

15·4. Does Diversification Work in the Real World?

You now understand the theory. But can you make it work in the real world?

15·4.A. Diversification Among The Dow-Jones 30 Stocks

Diversification depends on the specific portfolio.

To see whether portfolio diversification works in the real world, you should look at some specific securities. Clearly, the degree to which diversification works must depend on the weights of the specific securities you look at within the context of your portfolio.

The risk of investing in a Dow-Jones 30 Stock.

You can get an intuitive feel for the effectiveness of diversification in the U.S. stock markets if you look at the 30 stocks constituting the Dow-Jones 30. The Dow-Jones company has chosen 30 stocks in its Dow-Jones 30 Index (see also Section 12·3.C, Page 297) to avoid industry and firm-type concentration. However, the Dow-Jones contains only very large firms, both in market capitalization and sales.

The average stock in the Dow-Jones has a risk of about 30% to 40%; the overall portfolio has a risk just about half.

Table 15.1 shows the risks (standard deviations of the rate of returns) for the 30 Dow-Jones stocks, measured either from January 1997 to October 2002 or from January 1994 to October 2002. Their risks ranged from about 18% to 50% (annualized); the typical stock's risk averaged about 30% from 1994 to 2002, and 35% from 1997 to 2002. Just investing in one randomly chosen stock is fairly risky. However, when you compute the risk of the index itself, the index's risk was only 16.5% from 1994 to 20002 and 18.7% from 1997 to 2002. Naturally, this is still pretty risky. But the Dow-Jones index risk is only about half the risk of its average stock.

Inferring correlations.

Are the returns of these 30 stocks positively correlated? Note that 18% is only about half of the 35% risk that would obtain if all the securities' returns were perfectly positively correlated. So, diversification works: the correlation among the Dow-Jones 30 stock returns is not close to +1. However, the correlation among the Dow-30 stocks is also not zero. Let us do some back-of-the-envelope calculations. If the Dow-Jones 30 Index were an equal-weighted portfolio (it is not!) of uncorrelated securities (it is not!), you would have expected it to have a risk of about $\sqrt{1/30} \cdot 35\% \approx 6.4\%$ per year. Instead, the risk of the Dow-Jones portfolio is 2.8 times as high at 18% per year. In sum, this evidence suggests that these 30 stocks move together, i.e. that they tend to have mutual positive correlations. This reduces the effectiveness of diversification among them. This is actually a broader effect. When the U.S. stock market does well, most stocks do well at the same time (and vice-versa).

IMPORTANT: *The Dow-Jones 30 Market Index Portfolio has a risk of about 15% to 20% per year. (Broader U.S. stock market indexes, like the S&P500 Index, tend to have slightly lower risks.)*

The 30 component stocks in the Dow-Jones 30 Index are mutually positively correlated, which limits the effectiveness of diversification—but not so much as to render diversification useless.

Make sure not to buy just tech stocks, or just growth stocks, or ...

The square root in the portfolio standard deviation formula suggests that most of the diversification typically comes from the first 10 to 50 stocks. Therefore, it is more important to be suitably diversified across different types of stocks (to avoid mutual positive covariances) than it is to add every single possible stock to a portfolio. If you holds the Dow-Jones 30 stocks if you want to further diversify using U.S. stocks, you should consider adding small or high-growth firm stocks to your portfolio (or, better, invest in a mutual fund that itself holds on many small firms).

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

Table 15.1. Risk and Reward for Dow Jones Constituents, Based on Monthly Rates of Returns, Then Annualized.

	about 10 years 1994/01-2002/10		about 5 years 1997/01-2002/10	
Asset	Mean	StdDev	Mean	StdDev
alcoa	18.4%	36.0%	15.1%	41.3%
american express	21.4%	27.9%	17.3%	31.4%
boeing	8.9%	30.1%	−2.9%	34.6%
citigroup	27.7%	33.6%	24.9%	37.4%
caterpillar	14.0%	31.2%	9.6%	34.0%
du pont	12.2%	26.2%	4.4%	29.0%
disney	6.7%	28.8%	0.3%	32.2%
eastman kodak	4.5%	30.0%	−5.5%	34.6%
general electric	17.1%	25.1%	12.8%	28.4%
general motors	5.2%	32.6%	5.1%	36.7%
home depot	18.5%	31.3%	22.8%	35.1%
honeywell	11.2%	37.9%	6.0%	44.5%
hewlett packard	14.8%	42.9%	4.0%	48.2%
ibm	25.8%	36.0%	20.2%	39.6%
intel	28.7%	46.7%	15.8%	53.1%
international paper	7.5%	31.6%	6.0%	36.0%
johnson and johnson	23.2%	23.9%	19.5%	26.4%
jp morgan	15.0%	36.8%	5.9%	42.5%
coca-cola	13.1%	26.5%	3.7%	30.7%
mcdonalds	6.2%	25.6%	0.6%	28.8%
3m	14.8%	23.2%	12.8%	26.0%
philip morris	13.5%	29.9%	6.9%	33.0%
merck	19.2%	28.6%	12.1%	32.0%
microsoft	35.8%	42.6%	28.4%	50.0%
proctor and gamble	16.7%	24.7%	13.7%	28.4%
sbc communications	9.4%	28.9%	8.1%	34.4%
att	−4.4%	36.5%	−5.7%	40.3%
united technologies	21.9%	29.2%	18.1%	34.1%
wal-mart	20.6%	28.8%	31.5%	31.1%
exxon	10.0%	16.8%	7.1%	18.3%
Average	15.3%	31.0%	10.6%	35.0%
Typical (Median)	14.8%	29.9%	8.1%	34.1%
dow jones 30 index	10.5%	16.5%	6.3%	18.7%

For comparison, the S&P500 index had a mean of 8.6% (risk of 16.1%) from 1994–2002, and a mean of 4.8% (risk of 18.5%) from 1997—2002.

SIDE NOTE: In Chapter 13·6.A (Page 324), I claimed that historical standard deviations of rates of return tend to be relatively stable. This table shows that, although the riskiness of firms does change over time (it is different over 5 years and 10 years), it does change only slowly, even for the individual Dow-30 stocks. (There would be even more stability if you considered asset class portfolios instead of just stocks.) This stability gives us confidence in using historical risk measures (e.g., standard deviations) as estimates of future risk.

A short digression: covariance matters more than variance!

So, what matters more in determining portfolio variance: covariances or variances? The number of covariance terms in the portfolio risk formula 15.12 (Page 362) increases roughly with the square of the number of securities—by $N^2 - N$ to be exact. The number of variances increases lineary—by N. For example, for 100 securities, there are 100 variance terms and 9,900 covariance terms (4,450 if you do not want to double-count the same pairwise covariance). It should come as no surprise that as the number of securities becomes large, the risk of a portfolio is determined more by the covariance terms than by the variance terms.

A short digression: covariance matters more than variance!

The Dow-Jones Index is not alone in benefiting from the effects of diversification. Academic research has shown that if you look at the average stock on the N.Y.S.E., about 75% of its risk can be diversified away (i.e., disappears!), while the remaining 25% of its risk cannot be diversified away. Put differently, undiversifiable co-movements among all stocks in the stock market are responsible for about one-quarter of the typical stocks' return variance; three-quarters are idiosyncratic day-to-day fluctuations, which average themselves away if you hold a highly diversified stock market index like portfolio.

15·4.B. Mutual Funds

There are too many stocks for you to buy them all.

Diversification clearly reduces risk, but it can also be expensive to accomplish. How can you purchase 500 securities with a $50,000 portfolio? The transaction costs of purchasing $100 in each security would be prohibitive. With about 10,000 publicly traded equities in the U.S. stock market, even purchasing just $1,000 in every stock traded would require $10 million, well beyond the financial capabilities of most retail investors.

Mutual funds are investment vehicles to accomplish diversification.

Mutual funds, already mentioned in Section 12·3.B, come to the rescue. As already described in Chapter 12, a mutual fund is like a firm that consists of nothing but holdings in other assets, usually financial assets. In a sense, a mutual fund is a large portfolio that can be purchased as a bundle. However, there is one small catch—isn't there always? On the one hand, investing in a mutual fund rather than in its individual underlying assets can reduce your transaction costs, ranging from the time necessary to research stocks and initiate transactions, to the direct trading costs (the commission and bid-ask spread). But, on the other hand, mutual funds often charge a variety of fees and may force you to realize taxable gains in a year when they would rather not.

15·4.C. Alternative Assets

Other Assets Are Equally or More Important.

A common error committed by investors is that they focus only on the diversification among stocks traded on the major U.S. stock exchanges. But there are many other financial and non-financial instruments that can aid investors in diversifying their risk. Because these instruments are often less correlated with an investor's portfolio than domestic U.S. stocks, these assets can be especially valuable in reducing the portfolio risk. Among possible investment assets are:

- Savings accounts.
- Bonds.
- Commodities (such as gold).
- Other futures (such as agricultural commodities).
- Art.
- Real estate.

ANECDOTE: Portfolios of Finance Professors
Many finance professors invest their own money into passively managed, low-cost mutual funds, often **Index Funds**, which buy-and-hold a wide cross-section of assets and avoid active trading. They also require minimal investment selection abilities by their managers, and usually incur minimal trading costs. Vanguard funds are particularly popular, because **Vanguard** is not only the largest mutual fund provider—though neck-in-neck with **Fidelity**—but it also does not even seek to earn a profit. It is a "mutual" mutual fund, owned by the investors in the funds themselves.

- Mortgage and corporate bonds.
- Labor income.
- International stocks.
- Hedge funds.
- Venture and private equity funds.
- Vulture and bankruptcy funds.

In addition, if you are a smart investor, you would not only consider the diversification within your stock portfolio, but across your entire wealth. Your wealth would include your house, your education, your job, etc. Many of these alternative investments could also have low covariation with your overall wealth.

SIDE NOTE: Some of the above mentioned asset categories may be better held in modest amounts. Furthermore, some of these areas do not resemble the highly liquid, fair, and efficient financial markets that U.S. stock investors are used to. Instead, some are rife with outright scams. Therefore, it might be wise to hold such assets through sophisticated and dedicated professional investors (mutual funds), who have the appropriate expertise.

Solve Now!

Q 15.5 *In Table 15.1, Exxon had the lowest standard deviation among the Dow-30 stocks. Why not just purchase Exxon by itself?*

Q 15.6 *How much does diversifying over all 500 stocks in the S&P500 help in terms of risk reduction relative to investing in the 30 stocks of the Dow Jones-30?*

Q 15.7 *Why do mutual funds exist?*

Q 15.8 *Should you just own U.S. stocks?*

Q 15.9 *Does the true value-weighted market portfolio just contain stocks?*

15·5. Diversification Over Time

Explaining the Figure Illustrating Time Diversification.

Many investors think of diversification across securities within a portfolio, but do not realize that diversification can also work over time—although the sidenote below explains why academics are divided on this issue. Figure 15.4 illustrates this point by showing the risk and reward if you had invested in the S&P 500 from 1990–2002 for x consecutive trading days. The left graph shows your average daily rate of return; the right side your total compounded rate of return. For example, the right figure shows that if you had held an S&P500 portfolio during a random 25 day period (about a month), you would have earned a little less than 1%, but with a risk (standard deviation) of about 5%. Graph (a) quotes this in average daily terms: over 25 days, a 1% mean and 5% risk was an average reward of about 0.04%/day with a risk of about 0.2%/day.

Time Diversification at Work!

Note from graph (b) how the risk-reward trade-off changes with time. Over an investment horizon of a full year (255 trading days), you would have expected to earn about 10% with a risk of about 15%. The risk would have been 1.5 times the reward. In contrast, over an investment horizon of one day, you would have expected to earn about 0.04% with a risk of about 1.1%. Your risk would have been about 30 times your reward! If you stare at graph (b), you should notice that the reward goes up a little more than linearly (the compounding effect!), while the risk goes up like a parabola, i.e., a square root function. Indeed, this is the case, and the rest of this section shows why.

Over periods shorter than a few years, the ordinary portfolio return is roughly the sum of time period returns.

Recall that a portfolio that earns $\tilde{r}_{t=1}$ in period 1, $\tilde{r}_{t=2}$ in period 2, and so on until period T ($\tilde{r}_{t=T}$), will earn an overall rate of return of

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_{t=0,t=T} &= (1+\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}) \cdot (1+\tilde{r}_{t=1,2}) \cdot \ldots \cdot (1+\tilde{r}_{t=T-1,T}) - 1 \\ &\approx \tilde{r}_{t=0,1} + \tilde{r}_{t=1,2} + \ldots + \tilde{r}_{t=T-1,T} + \text{many multiplicative } \tilde{r} \text{ terms} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{15.20}$$

The multiplicative terms reflect the power of compounding—which clearly matters over many years—but perhaps less so over periods of just a few months or years. After all, even monthly returns may typically be only on the order of 1%, so the multiplicative term would be on the order of $1\% \cdot 1\% = 0.01\%$.

Stock returns have to be about independent across time-periods to avoid great money-making opportunities. This determines the riskiness of portfolios over multiple periods.

Now, if you forget about the small multiplicative terms, you already know that if you expect to earn 1% per period, then over x periods you expect to earn x%:

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{t=0,t=T}) = T \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_t) \quad . \tag{15.21}$$

For the variance, let us assume that the return variance in each time period is about the same and can just be called $\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_t)$. Further assume that the covariance terms among returns in different times (e.g., $\tilde{r}_{t=0,1}$ and $\tilde{r}_{t=1,2}$) are about zero. After all, if they were not, this would mean that you could predict future returns with past returns. Suffice it to say that this sort of prediction is not an easy task—if it were, you would quickly become rich! Put this all together and use the variance formula 15.22:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{t=0,T}) &= \mathcal{V}ar\left(\tilde{r}_{t=0,1} + \tilde{r}_{t=1,2} + \ldots + \tilde{r}_{t=T-1,T}\right) \\ &\quad + \text{many covariance terms, all about zero} \\ &\approx T \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_t) \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{15.22}$$

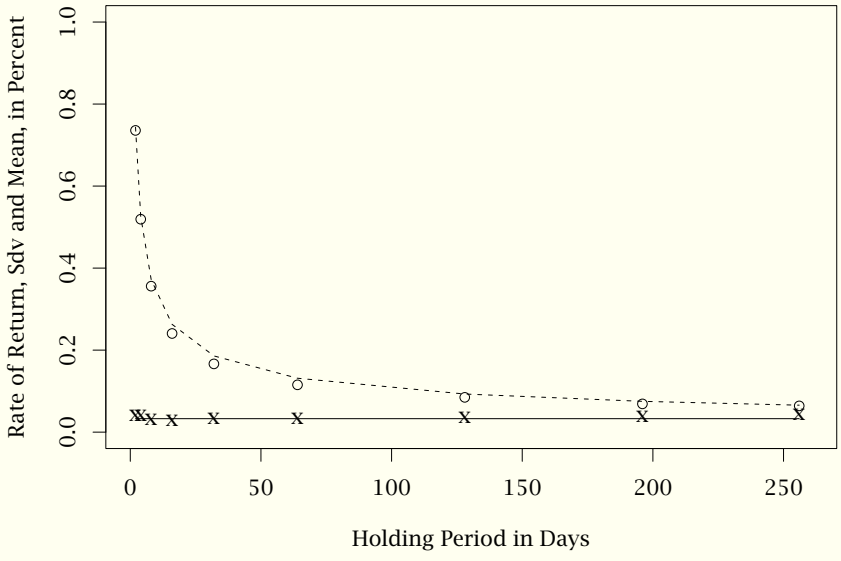
It follows that

$$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{t=0,T}) \approx \sqrt{T} \cdot \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_t) \quad . \tag{15.23}$$

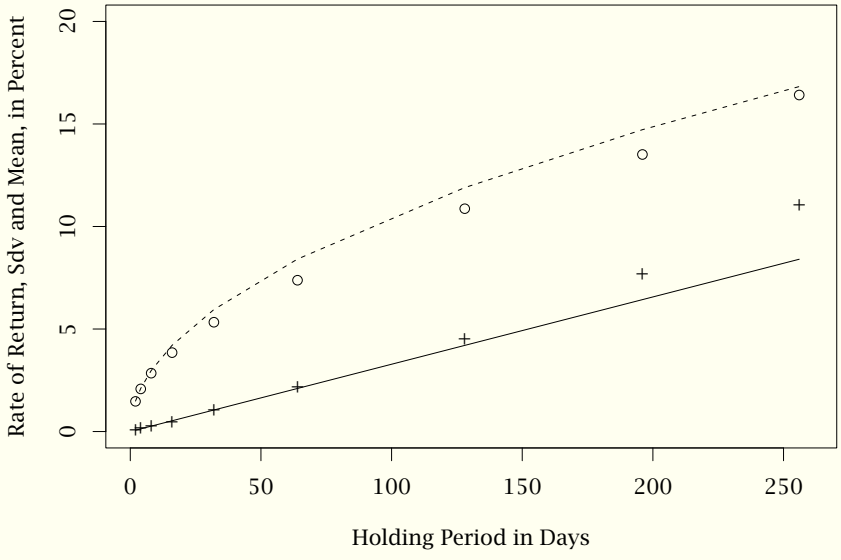
But this is just the relationship in the graph: The risk increases with the square root of time!

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

Figure 15.4. Average Risk and Return over Time in the S&P500, 1990–2002



(a)



(b)

The x-axis is the investment horizon, i.e., the number of consecutive investment days. The two top series (lines and dots) are the standard deviation, the two bottom series are the means. Lines are the theoretical values computed with the formulas below; circles and pluses are from simulated actual investment strategies.

Annualization

Formula 15.23 is commonly used to "annualize" portfolio risk. For example, if an investment strategy has a monthly risk of 5% (i.e., the standard deviation of its rate of return), and the question is what kind of risk such an investment strategy would have per annum, you can compute the implied annual standard deviation to be about $\sqrt{12} \cdot 5\% \approx 17\%$. Conversely, if the five-year variance is 39%, then the annualized variance is 17%, because $\sqrt{5} \cdot 17\% \approx 39\%$.

IMPORTANT: *A quick and dirty (and common) method to annualize portfolio risk (the standard deviation of the rate of return) is to multiply the single-period rate of return by the square root of the number of periods. For example, the annual portfolio risk is about $\sqrt{12}$ or 3.5 times as high the monthly risk.*

The most common method, on Wall Street and in academia, is to compute risk and reward from monthly rates of return, but to report their annualized values.

The Sharpe-ratio is a measure of risk-reward performance.

The most commonly used measure of portfolio performance is the **Sharpe-ratio**, named after Nobel Prize Winner William Sharpe. It is the expected rate of return of a portfolio *above and beyond* the risk-free rate of return ($r_{\mathcal{F}}$), divided by the standard deviation of the rate of the return,

$$\text{Sharpe Ratio} \;=\; \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})}{\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})} \;=\; \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} \quad . \tag{15.24}$$

Be aware that the Sharpe-ratio depends on the time interval that is used to measure returns. In the example with 1% monthly mean and 5% monthly standard deviation, if the risk-free rate were 6% per year, the Sharpe-Ratio of the portfolio would be about $^{(1\%\text{-}0.5\%)}/_{5\%} = 0.1$ if measured over a one month time interval; $^{(12\%\text{-}6\%)}/_{17\%} = 0.35$ if measured over a year; and $^{(60\%\text{-}30\%)}/_{39\%} = 0.77$ if measured over five years. Although the Sharpe ratio makes it clear how mean and standard deviation change with different time horizons, it is just a measure—it does not mean that you are better off if you hold stocks over longer time horizons. More importantly, you should be warned: although the Sharpe ratio is intuitively appealing and although it is in widespread use, it has the near-fatal flaw that it can easily be manipulated. You will find this out for yourself in Question 15.16.

SIDE NOTE: The overall division of assets between stocks and bonds is often called **asset allocation**. Many practitioners suggest that you should put more of your money into risky stocks when you are young. Over the very long run—and young people have naturally longer investment horizons—the expected rate of return vs. risk relationship looks more favorable than it does over shorter investment horizons. After all, the mean goes up with time, while the risk goes up only with the square-root of time. This means that the *average* rate of return is less risky when you are young than when you are old.

But academics are divided on this advice. Some point out that the portfolio rate of return is the product of the individual returns:

$$\tilde{r}_{t=0,T} \;=\; (1 + \tilde{r}_{0,1}) \cdot (1 + \tilde{r}_{1,2}) \cdot \ldots \cdot (1 + \tilde{r}_{T-1,T}) \;-1 \quad . \tag{15.25}$$

It should not matter whether you choose risky stocks over safer bonds at time $t = 0$ (when you are young) or at time $t = T$ (when you are old). That is, even though it is true that the risk of the *average* rate of return declines over longer horizon, you should not be interested in the *average* rate of return, but in the *total* rate of return. This argument suggests that your time horizon should not matter to your asset allocation.

Even more sophisticated arguments take into account that you can adjust better (e.g., by working harder) when you are young if you experience a bad portfolio return; or that the stock market rate of return may be **mean reverting**. That is, the market rate of return may be negatively correlated with itself over very long time periods, in which case the long-run risk could be a little lower than the short-run risk.

Solve Now!

Q 15.10 *What is a reasonable assumption for stock return correlations across different time periods?*

Q 15.11 *Table 14.4 on Page 346 shows that the S&P500 has an annual standard deviation of about 20% per year. As of November 2002, the S&P500 stood at a level of about 900. What would you expect the daily standard deviation of the S&P500 index to be? Assume that there are about 255 trading days in a year.*

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

Q 15.12 *Assume you have a portfolio that seems to have a monthly standard deviation of 5%. What would you expect its annual standard deviation to be?*

Q 15.13 *If the risk-free rate over the 1997-2002 sample period was about 3% per annum, what was the monthly and what was the annual Sharpe-ratio of the Dow-Jones 30 index?*

Q 15.14 *Assume you have a portfolio that seems to have had a daily standard deviation of 1%. What would you expect its annual standard deviation to be? Assume there are 255 trading days in a year.*

Q 15.15 *The S&P500 was quoted in the first two weeks of June 2003 as*

06/02/2003	967.00	06/06/2003	987.7606/12/2003	998.51
06/03/2003	971.56	06/09/2003	975.9306/13/2003	988.61
06/04/2003	986.24	06/10/2003	984.84	
06/05/2003	990.14	06/11/2003	997.48	

Compute the mean and standard deviation of annual returns of a portfolio that would have mimicked the S&P500. Based on these returns, what would you expect to be the risk and reward if you held the S&P500 for one year? Assuming a risk-free rate of return of 3%/annum, what would be the proper estimate for a Sharpe-ratio of daily, monthly, and annual returns? Is this consistent with the statistics in Table 14.4? Can you speculate why?

Q 15.16 *Consider an investment strategy that has returned the following four rates of return:* +5%, +10%, +5%, +20%. *These are quoted above the risk-free rate (or equivalently assume the risk-free rate is 0%.)*

(a) *What was its Sharpe-ratio?*

(b) *Throw away 5% of the rate of return in the final period only. That is, if you had $200 and you had ended up with $240 (20%), you would now be throwing away $10. So you would end up with $230 for a remaining rate of return of 15% only. (How easy is it to throw away money?) What is the Sharpe-ratio of this revised strategy?*

(c) *Which is the better investment strategy?*

file=diversification-g.tex: LP

15·6. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Diversification—investment in different assets—reduces the overall risk (standard deviation).
- Diversification works better when assets are uncorrelated.
- The beta of a new asset (with respect to the existing portfolio) is a good measure of the marginal contribution of the new asset to the risk of the overall portfolio.
- Mutual funds invest in many assets, and thereby reduce retail investors' cost of diversification. However, they charge fees for this service.
- Diversification works over time, too. The portfolio reward (expected rate of return) grows roughly linearly over time, but the portfolio risk (standard deviation) grows roughly with the square-root of time. That is, if the expected rate of return is 1% per month, then the T month expected rate of return is approximately $T \cdot 1\%$. If the standard deviation of the rate of rate of return is 10% per month, then the T month standard deviation is approximately $\sqrt{T} \cdot 10\%$. The latter formula is often used to "annualize" risk.
- The Sharpe-ratio is the most common measure of investment strategy performance—although an awful one. One relatively minor problem is that it depends on the investment horizon on which it is quoted. A Sharpe-ratio based on annual returns is typically about $\sqrt{T}$ higher than a Sharpe-ratio based on monthly returns.

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

1. The mean is 12%, the standard deviation is $30\%/\sqrt{N}$.
2. The mean is 12%. The variance now still has N variance terms, but $N\cdot(N-1)$ terms that are each $1/N\cdot 1/N\cdot 0.001$. Thus, the variance is now

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = N\cdot(1/N^2\cdot(30\%)^2) + N\cdot(N-1)\cdot 1/N\cdot 1/N\cdot(0.0025) \quad . \tag{15.26}$$

Therefore, for 2 stocks, the variance is $1/2\cdot.09 + 2\cdot 1\cdot(1/4\cdot 0.0025) = 0.045 + 1/2\cdot 0.0025 = 0.04625$. $\mathcal{S}dv = 21.5\%$. This is a little higher than the 21.2% from the previous question. For many stocks, $N\to\infty$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= N\cdot(1/N^2\cdot(30\%)^2) + N\cdot(N-1)\cdot 1/N\cdot 1/N\cdot(0.0025) \\ &\approx N\cdot(1/N^2\cdot(30\%)^2) + 0.0025 \\ &= 1/N\cdot(.09) + 0.0025 \quad . \\ \lim_{N\to\infty}\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{0.0025} = 5\% \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{15.27}$$

3.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{V}ar(1/2\cdot\tilde{r}_1 + 1/2\cdot\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/2^2\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + 1/2^2\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) + 2\cdot 1/2\cdot 1/2\cdot\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_1,\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= 1/4\cdot 0.01 + 1/4\cdot 0.01 + 2\cdot 1/2\cdot 1/2\cdot(-0.01) \\ &= 1/2\cdot 0.01 - 1/2\cdot 0.01 = 0.00 \\ \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = 0\% \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{15.28}$$

Therefore, with perfect negative correlation and equal investment weights, diversification works perfect!

4.

(a) The covariance is the correlation multiplied by the two standard deviations. For the $\mathcal{Q}$ portfolio,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \mathcal{C}orrelation(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})\cdot\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}})\cdot\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\ &= 20\%\cdot 20\%\cdot 50\% = 0.02 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{15.29}$$

(b)

$$\beta_{\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{P}} = \frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \frac{0.02}{0.04} = 0.5 \quad . \tag{15.30}$$

(c) Therefore, the new portfolio with weights of 0.5 each is

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r} &= 0.5\cdot\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} + 0.5\cdot\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}} \quad . \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) &= w_{\mathcal{P}}\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + w_{\mathcal{Q}}\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{Q}}\cdot w_{\mathcal{P}}\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\ &= 0.5^2\cdot(20\%)^2 + 0.5^2\cdot(50\%)^2 + 2\cdot 0.5\cdot 0.5\cdot 0.02 \\ &= 0.01 + 0.0625 + 0.01 = 0.0825 \quad . \\ \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}) &= 28.7\% \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{15.31}$$

file=diversification-g.tex: LP

(d) For the $\mathcal{N}$ portfolio,

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= Correlation(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\ &= 20\% \cdot 20\% \cdot 500\% = 0.2 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.32}$$

(e)

$$\beta_{\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}} = \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \frac{0.2}{0.04} = 5 \ . \tag{15.33}$$

(f) Therefore, the new portfolio with weights of 0.5 each is

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r} &= 0.5 \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} + 0.5 \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}} \ . \\ Var(\tilde{r}) &= w_{\mathcal{P}} \cdot Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + w_{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}) + 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot w_{\mathcal{P}} Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{Q}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\ &= 0.5^2 \cdot (20\%)^2 + 0.5^2 \cdot (500\%)^2 + 2 \cdot 0.5 \cdot 0.5 \cdot 0.2 \\ &= 0.01 + 6.25 + 0.1 = 6.36 \ . \\ Sdv(\tilde{r}) &= 252.2\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.34}$$

(g) Even though $\mathcal{N}$ has an equal correlation with portfolio $\mathcal{P}$, its diversification aid is overwhelmed by its scale: $\mathcal{N}$ is just a lot riskier than $\mathcal{Q}$. Thus, the portfolio with $\mathcal{N}$ is definitely more risky than the portfolio with $\mathcal{Q}$. This lesser diversification effect is reflected in the (higher) covariance and the (higher) beta with our portfolio $\mathcal{P}$, but not in the (equal) correlation.

5. This is not a question you might necessarily know how to answer. However, it should get you to think. Exxon is indeed a low-risk stock. However, it is also a low mean stock. You would have done a little better purchasing the diversified Dow-30 index (remember: indexes do not count dividends!). However, it is reasonably likely that in the future, the diversified Dow-Jones 30 index will have lower risk than Exxon. More than likely, Exxon was just lucky over the sample period. For example, oil prices were relatively stable.
6. There is almost no difference in risk between these two indexes. To reduce risk further, you should instead invest in asset classes that are different from large corporate equities.
7. They allow investors with limited amounts of money to own large numbers of securities, without incurring large transaction costs.
8. No. You should hold all sorts of other assets that do not correlate too highly with your existing portfolio (wealth).
9. No. There are many alternative asset classes, such as commodities, art, and real estate, etc., which are part of the market portfolio.

10. That they are zero. If they were not zero, it would mean that you could use past returns to predict future returns. Presumably, this would allow you to earn extra returns.
11. The standard deviation is likely to be

$$\begin{aligned} Sdv_{\text{annual}}(\tilde{r}) &\approx \sqrt{T} \cdot Sdv_{\text{daily}}(\tilde{r}) \\ 20\% &\approx \sqrt{255} \cdot Sdv_{\text{daily}}(\tilde{r}) \\ \Rightarrow \quad Sdv_{\text{daily}}(\tilde{r}) &\approx 1.25\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{15.35}$$

This corresponds to a typical daily movement of about 11 points. In statistical terms, if the S&P500 is about normally distributed, about $^2/_3$ of all days, it should move up or down no more than 11 points. In about $^9/_{10}$ of all days, it should move up or down no more than 22 points.

12. $\sqrt{12} \cdot 5\% \approx 17.3\%$.
13. For the annual Sharpe-ratio, you can use the numbers in the Table 15.1:

$$\text{Annual Sharpe Ratio} = \frac{6.3\% - 3.0\%}{18.7\%} \approx 0.18 \ . \tag{15.36}$$

For the monthly Sharpe-ratio, you need to de-annualize the mean and standard deviation. The excess mean is $3.3\%/12 \approx 0.275\%$. The monthly standard deviation is about $18.7\%/\sqrt{12} \approx 5.4\%$. Therefore, the monthly

$$\text{Monthly Sharpe Ratio} = \frac{0.275\%}{5.4\%} \approx 0.05 \ . \tag{15.37}$$

file=diversification-g.tex: RP

14. $\sqrt{255} \cdot 1\% \approx 16.0\%$.

15. Over 10 real days, you would have earned a compound rate of return of $988.61/967 - 1 = 2.2\%$. With 36.5 such 10-day periods over the year, the compound annual return would have been 124%. As to the daily rates of return, they were 0.47%, 1.51%, 0.40%, –0.24%, –1.20%, 0.92%, 1.28%, 1.03%, –1.00%. The simple arithmetic average rate of return was an even higher 0.35%/day (3.5% over the 10 days). Clearly, this was a great ten days, not likely to repeat. So, you should not trust these 10 day means. The standard deviation is 0.97%/day. This indicates an annualized standard deviation of about $\sqrt{365} \cdot 0.97\% \approx 18.5\%$. (Over 10 days, the estimated standard deviation is 3.07%/(**10 days**).) As is fairly common, the annualized standard deviation is fairly reasonable. Finally a risk-free rate of return of 3% per annum is less than 0.01%./day. The Sharpe-ratio would therefore be approximately $(0.35\% - 0.01\%)/0.97\% \approx 0.35$. Quoted in annual terms, the Sharpe-ratio would be approximately $(0.35\% - 0.01\%) \cdot 365/(0.97\% \cdot \sqrt{365}) = \sqrt{365} \cdot 0.35 \approx 6.7$. Quoted in monthly terms, it would be $\sqrt{30} \cdot 0.35 \approx 1.9$.

16.

    (a) The average rate of return is 10%. The variance is 37.5%%. The standard deviation is 6.12%. Therefore, its Sharpe-ratio is 1.63.

    (b) The new strategy has rates of return of +5%, +10%, +5%, +15%. It is very easy to accomplish this—give me the money. The average rate of return has declined to 8.75%. The standard deviation has declined to 4.146%. Therefore, the Sharpe ratio is 2.11.

    (c) Obviously, the second strategy of throwing money away is terrible. The fact that the Sharpe-ratio comes out higher tells us that the Sharpe-ratio is an awful measure of portfolio performance. And, yes, the Sharpe-ratio is indeed the most common fund performance measure in practical use. Sharpe ratio manipulation is particularly profitable for portfolio managers whose returns until October or November were positive. In this case, managers who want to maximize Sharpe ratios should try to avoid really high positive rates of returns. If it "happens," they can always bring down the return, e.g., by paying themselves more money, or by buying illiquid securities and then marking them down to less than their values.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 16

THE EFFICIENT FRONTIER—OPTIMALLY DIVERSIFIED PORTFOLIOS

How much of each security?

last file change: Feb 5, 2006 (18:24h)
last major edit: Aug 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

You already know the following:

1. Diversification reduces risk.
2. The covariance between investment asset returns determines the effectiveness of diversification. Beta is an equally good measure.
3. Because risk typically decreases approximately by the square root of the number of securities in the portfolio, it is especially important to have at least a handful and better a dozen of very different types of assets.
4. Publicly traded stocks are mutually positively correlated, but not perfectly so. This leaves diversification a useful tool, but not a perfect one.

But you do not yet know the optimal portfolio weights that you should assign to individual assets in their portfolios. For example, should you purchase equal amounts in every security? Should you purchase relatively more of securities with higher expected rates of return, lower variances, or lower covariances? This chapter answers these questions.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

16·1. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier

You know that diversification reduces risk. Therefore, you know that investors like diversification—but this does not tell you how much your investors should purchase in each security. It may be better to purchase 25% in $\mathcal{A}$ and 75% in $\mathcal{B}$, rather than 50% in each. So how do you determine generally good investment weights—and the best investment weights for *you*? This question is the primary subject of this chapter, and the optimal portfolio is the force that ultimately shapes the CAPM formula.

16·1.A. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With Two Risky Securities

You can now tackle the problem of finding the best portfolio, starting with only two possible investment securities.

Graphing Portfolios in Mean-Standard Deviation Space

For two securities, compute the expected rate of return and risk computations for possible portfolios.

With two securities, you have just one decision to make: how much to invest in the first security. (The remainder is automatically allocated to the second security). For example, assume that each security has a risk (standard deviation) of 10%. The first security (call it $\mathcal{A}$) has an expected rate of return of 10%, and the second security (call it $\mathcal{B}$) has an expected rate of return of 5%. Should you ever choose to purchase the second security, which is so obviously inferior to the first? You already know that the second security helps you diversify risk—so the answer may be yes—but let us work out the requisite trade-offs.

Recap the formulas you need.

Recall the formulas for the portfolio risk and reward. The formula for the portfolio reward, or expected rate of return, is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{A}} \cdot 10\% + (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}) \cdot 5\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{A}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}) + (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}) \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{16.1}$$

You have also worked out the formula for the portfolio risk

$$\begin{aligned} \mathit{Sdv}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{w_{\mathcal{A}}^2 \cdot 0.01 + (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}})^2 \cdot 0.01 + 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{A}} \cdot (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}) \cdot \mathit{Cov}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})} \\ \mathit{Sdv}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{w_{\mathcal{A}}^2 \cdot \mathit{Var}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}) + (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}})^2 \cdot \mathit{Var}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) + 2 \cdot w_{\mathcal{A}} \cdot (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}) \cdot \mathit{Cov}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{16.2}$$

where $w_{\mathcal{A}}$ is any fractional weight that you may choose to invest in the first security. These two formulas allow you to work with any combination portfolio between the two securities.

You can compute the possible portfolio choices.

Begin by assuming a particular covariance, say, $\mathit{Cov}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})$ of -0.0075. (Given the standard deviations, this implies a correlation of -75%.) What reward can you achieve and at what risk? You have only one decision variable, the weight $w_{\mathcal{A}}$, but you can choose any weight you desire. Table 16.1 shows various risk/reward "performance pairs" (i.e., the portfolio mean and standard deviation). For example, the portfolio with $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 2/3$ (and thus $w_{\mathcal{B}} = 1/3$) has an expected rate of return of 8.30% and a standard deviation of 4.7%.

You can also draw each portfolio in a coordinate system of risk vs. reward. Each portfolio is one point in x-y space.

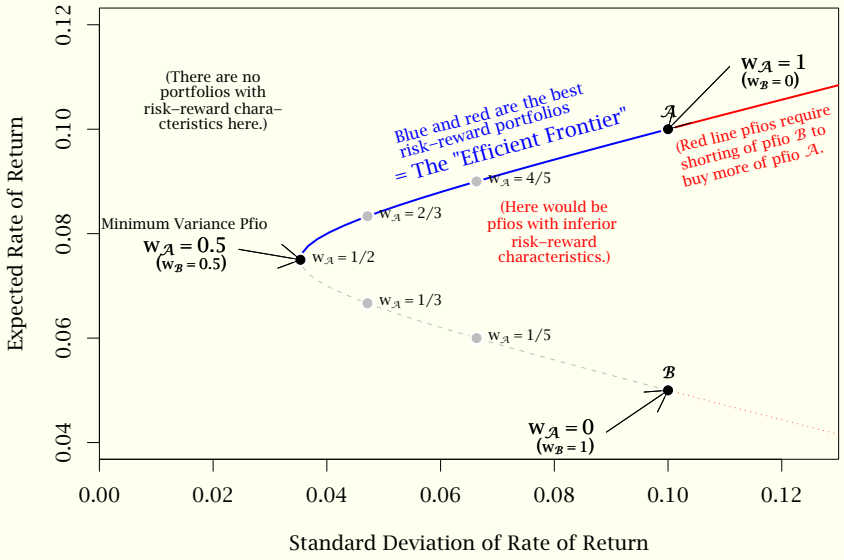
Figure 16.1 plots the data of Table 16.1 into a coordinate system, in which the overall portfolio standard deviation is on the x-Axis, and the overall portfolio expected rate of return is on the y-Axis. Each coordinate is a particular risk and reward characteristic. When you compute more risk-reward trade-offs (as in Table 16.1) that you can invest in, you find a curve that is called a **hyperbola**. The points on the hyperbola are the risk-reward combinations that you can achieve by varying $w_{\mathcal{A}}$. For example, verify visually that your boldfaced portfolio ($w_{\mathcal{A}} = 2/3, w_{\mathcal{B}} = 1/3$) is on the hyperbola: it should be at $x = 4.7\%$ and $y = 8.3\%$. I have made it easier by drawing dashed lines to the X and Y axes for this portfolio. In this example, the smallest risk always obtains when the two securities are equally weighted. Above and below $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 1/2$, the risk steadily increases.

Table 16.1. Portfolio Performance Under a Negative 75% Correlation.

$w_{\mathcal{A}}$	$w_{\mathcal{B}}$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	$w_{\mathcal{A}}$	$w_{\mathcal{B}}$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$
1.0	0.0	10.0%	10.00%	0.5	0.5	7.5%	3.54%
0.9	0.1	9.5%	8.28%	0.4	0.6	7.0%	4.00%
0.8	0.2	9.0%	6.63%	0.3	0.7	6.5%	5.15%
0.7	0.3	8.5%	5.15%	0.2	0.8	6.0%	6.63%
$2/3$	$1/3$	**8.3%**	**4.71%**	0.1	0.9	5.5%	8.28%
0.6	0.4	8.0%	4.00%	0.0	1.0	5.0%	10.00%
Portfolios Involving Shorting							
−0.1	1.1	4.5%	11.77%	1.1	−0.1	10.5%	11.77%
−1	+2	0.0%	28.3%	+2	−1	15.0%	28.3%

The mean and standard deviation of the portfolio $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 2/3$ (and thus $w_{\mathcal{B}} = (1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}) = 1/3$) are in bold. They were computed as follows: The portfolio has a mean of $2/3 \cdot 10\% + 1/3 \cdot 5\% \approx 8.3\%$, a variance of $(2/3)^2 \cdot 0.01 + (1/3)^2 \cdot 0.01 + 2 \cdot (2/3) \cdot (1/3) \cdot (-0.0075) \approx 0.00022$, and thus a risk of $\sqrt{0.00022} \approx 4.71\%$.

Figure 16.1. The Risk-Reward Trade-off With A Correlation of −75%.



The portfolios that invest fully in either $\mathcal{A}$ or $\mathcal{B}$ are marked with arrows and name. Other portfolio combinations are those on the curves. The fat blue curve is the mean-variance efficient frontier for portfolios that do not require shorting—portfolios that maximize reward given a desired level of risk. The fat red curve is also part of the efficient frontier, but consists of portfolios that require shorting $\mathcal{B}$ in order to purchase more of $\mathcal{A}$. The lower part of the hyperbola is not mean-variance efficient—you would never purchase these. Incidentally, if you were allowed to throw away money, you could obtain any portfolio vertically below the efficient frontier—of course, you would never want to do this, anyway.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Similar portfolios are close to one another.

You know even more about where portfolios lie on the curves. Portfolios with similar weights must be close to one another in the graph: after all, both the expected rate of return and the standard deviations of a portfolio with 60% $\mathcal{A}$ and 40% $\mathcal{B}$ are very similar to the expected rate of return and the standard deviations of a portfolio with 61% $\mathcal{A}$ and 39% $\mathcal{B}$. Therefore, the two portfolio points would have to be close. Thus, you can visually judge where a given portfolio combination must lie. For example, a portfolio with 95% weight on the $\mathcal{A}$ security and 5% weight on the $\mathcal{B}$ security would have to lie 95% of the way between the two on any of the curves, i.e., rather close to the $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 1$ portfolio.

Where are portfolios with both long and short positions?

All portfolios that have positive weights in both securities lie between the two portfolios marked by arrows ($w_{\mathcal{A}} = 1, w_{\mathcal{B}} = 0$ and $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 0, w_{\mathcal{B}} = 1$). But Table 16.1 and Figure 16.1 also show portfolios that involve shorting (Section 12·2.B). For example, say you have \$200, but you want to invest \$220 in security $\mathcal{A}$. This means that you have to short \$20 in security $\mathcal{B}$, in order to obtain the money to have the full \$220 to invest in security $\mathcal{A}$. Your investment weights are now $w_{\mathcal{A}} = +110\%$ and $w_{\mathcal{B}} = -10\%$. Please convince yourself that this portfolio—and any other portfolio that involves shorting security $\mathcal{B}$—lie above the upper arrows in Figure 16.1. You can read the mean and standard deviation in Table 16.1, and then mark it in Figure 16.1.

Achievable Combinations, Unachievable Combinations, and The Efficient Frontier

Unobtainable and Inferior Risk-Reward Choices.

Now look again at Figure 16.1. There are some unobtainable regions—for example, combinations that would give you a portfolio with a 4% risk and a 10% reward. Similarly, you cannot purchase a portfolio with a 3% risk and a 7% reward. There are also some portfolios that are outright "ugly." You would never want to purchase more in security $\mathcal{B}$ than in security $\mathcal{A}$—or you end up on the lower arm of the hyperbola. In general, you would also never want any portfolio in the red area (even if you could obtain it, though this is not possible in our example).

The highest achievable expected rates of return for each choice of risk is called the "Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier."

There is really only one set of portfolios that you would choose if you are sane—those on the upper boundary of the achievable set of portfolios. Only the portfolios on the upper arm of the hyperbola give you the highest reward for a given amount of risk. Which of these you would choose is a matter of your taste, however—if you are more risk-tolerant, you would purchase a portfolio farther to the right and top than if you are more risk-averse. The set of points/portfolios yielding the highest possible expected rate of return for a given amount of risk is called the **mean-variance efficient frontier**, or, in brief, the **efficient frontier**. This term will be used so often that we shall abbreviate "mean-variance efficient" as MVE.

Some confusasive namings.

Actually, mean-variance efficient frontier is a doubly bad name. First, the traditional graph draws the standard deviation on the "risk" or x axis. This graph should be called the "mean-standard deviation" graph, but it is commonly called the "mean-variance" graph. Fortunately, the two look fairly similar visually. And it does not matter whether you call it the mean-variance frontier or the mean-standard deviation frontier—they are really the same, in that a portfolio with lower variance also has lower standard deviation. Second, the efficient frontier here has nothing to do with the concept of **efficient markets** that we discussed in Section 6·1.C and which we will revisit in Chapter 19. Because the term *efficient* is so often used in Economics, it is often confusing.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

DIGGING DEEPER: *You can solve for the functional form of all weighted combinations of two portfolios by substituting out $w_{\mathcal{A}}$ from Formula 16.1 (portfolio $\mathcal{P}$'s mean) and Formula 16.2 (portfolio $\mathcal{P}$'s standard deviation). The result is*

$$Sdv[\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})\ ] \ = \ \pm\sqrt{a\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})^2 + b\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + c}\ , \tag{16.3}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
a \ &\equiv \ d^{-1}\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}) - 2\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) + \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})\ , \\
b \ &\equiv \ d^{-1}\cdot 2\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}})\cdot[Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) - \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})] \\
&\quad + \ d^{-1}\cdot 2\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})\cdot[Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) - \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}})]\ , \\
c \ &\equiv \ d^{-1}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})^2\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}) + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}})^2\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}}) \\
&\quad - \ d^{-1}\cdot 2\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}})\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})\ , \\
d \ &\equiv \ [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}})]^2\ .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.4}$$

This formula states that the variance of the rate of return ($Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})^2$) on an arbitrary weighted portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ is a quadratic formula in its expected rate of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$): a ***parabola****. Therefore, the MVE Frontier function is a hyperbola in a graph of the expected rate of return against their standard deviations.*

Of course, the efficient frontier is only the upper arm of the hyperbola. Although this is by no means obvious, it turns out that this is the case even if there are more than 2 securities: the MVE Frontier is always the upper arm of a hyperbola—the combination of two particular portfolios. This only breaks down when there are additional constraints, such as short-sales constraints.

16·1.B. Different Covariance Scenarios

Table 16.2. Portfolio Performance Under Different Covariance Scenarios.

			Correlation is −1.00	−0.75	0.00	+0.75	+1.00
			Risk (*Sdv*) if Covariance is				
$w_{\mathcal{A}}$	$w_{\mathcal{B}}$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	−0.01	−0.0075	0	+0.0075	+0.01
1	0	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%
0	1	5.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%	10.0%
1/5	4/5	6.0%	6.0%	6.6%	8.2%	9.6%	10.0%
1/3	2/3	6.8%	3.3%	4.7%	7.5%	9.4%	10.0%
1/2	1/2	7.5%	0.0%	3.5%	7.1%	9.3%	10.0%
2/3	1/3	**8.3%**	3.3%	**4.7%**	7.5%	9.4%	10.0%
4/5	1/5	9.0%	6.0%	6.6%	8.2%	9.6%	10.0%
Portfolios Involving Shorting:							
−1	+2	0.0%	30.0%	28.3%	22.4%	14.1%	10.0%
+2	−1	15.0%	30.0%	28.3%	22.4%	14.1%	10.0%

This figure shows the risk and reward under different assumptions about the covariance between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$. The first two lines give the characteristics of the two base securities, $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$. ($w_{\mathcal{B}}$ is always $1 - w_{\mathcal{A}}$, and thus could have been omitted.)

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

How do efficient frontiers look like with different correlations.

How do different asset correlations between securities $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ change the shape of the efficient frontier. Table 16.2 is really the same as Table 16.1, except it works out different covariance scenarios. And Figure 16.1 is really the same as Figure 16.2 on Page 387. It plots the data into coordinate systems, in which the overall portfolio standard deviation is on the x-Axis, and the overall portfolio expected rate of return is on the y-Axis. The previous Figure 16.1 is now graph (b), just stretched due to the different axes.

Higher correlations "compress" the function.

Of course, regardless of covariance, when you choose only one or the other security ($w_{\mathcal{A}} = 0$ or $w_{\mathcal{A}} = 1$), the portfolio risk is 10% (as was assumed), and here noted with arrows. So, these points are identical in all graphs. More interestingly, when you repeat the exercise for different covariance scenarios, shown in Table 16.2 and Figure 16.2, you can verify your earlier insight that lower covariance helps diversification. For example, if the two securities are perfectly negatively correlated, which implies a covariance of -0.01, then an equal-weighted portfolio of the two securities has zero risk. (When one security's value increases, the other security's value decreases by an equal amount, thereby eradicating any risk.) If the two securities are perfectly positively correlated, diversification does nothing, and the portfolio standard deviation remains at 10% no matter what weights are chosen. Thus, adding securities with low covariance to your existing portfolio lowers your overall portfolio risk particularly well; adding securities with high covariance to your existing portfolio is less effective.

Solve Now!

Q 16.1 *In the example in Table 16.2, if the covariance is -0.01 (Figure 16.2e), what should you do?*

Q 16.2 *Assuming no transaction and shorting costs, does going short in a security and going long in the same security produce a risk-free investment?*

Q 16.3 *In the example, with risk of 10% for each security, compute the standard deviations of various portfolios' returns if the covariance between the two securities is +0.005. Graph the mean against the standard deviation.*

Q 16.4 *Security $\mathcal{A}$ has a risk (standard deviation) of 20% and an expected rate of return of 6%; Security $\mathcal{B}$ has a risk of 30% and an expected rate of return of 10%. Assume the two securities have +0.80 correlation. Draw the MVE Frontier.*

16·1.C. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With Many Risky Securities

With more securities, the computations become cumbersome...

The MVE Frontier is easy to compute when you can choose only one investment weight, which then determines your relative allocation between the two assets. In contrast, if you can choose from three securities, you must consider combinations of two portfolio weights (the third weight is one minus the other two). This is a two-dimensional choice problem. With four securities, you have three portfolio weights to optimize, and so on.

...but the principle remains the same.

The good news is that the portfolio selection principle remains the same: each portfolio is a point in the graph of portfolio means (expected rates of return, i.e., reward) vs. portfolio standard deviation (i.e., risk). After plotting all possible portfolios, you should choose from those points (portfolios) that lie on the MVE Frontier—which is still the upper half of the hyperbola.

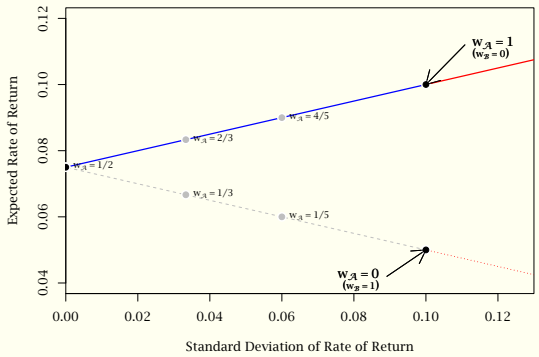
Return to the three stocks, S&P500, IBM, and Sony.

Try out many random investment portfolios from the three stocks from Page 307—S&P500, IBM, Sony—and selecting the best ones. Of course, you would still assume that the historical annual rates of return from 1991 to 2002 are representative of the future, in the sense that we expect the historical means, variances, and covariances to apply in the future. (Otherwise, this would not be an interesting exercise!) These historical statistics were

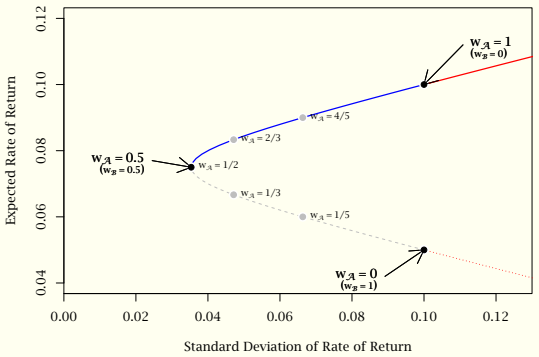
file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

Figure 16.2. The Risk-Reward Trade-off With Different Correlations

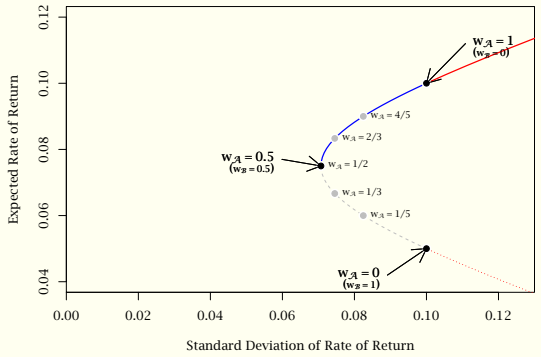
(a) *Correlation* = −1.00 (*Cov* = −0.01)



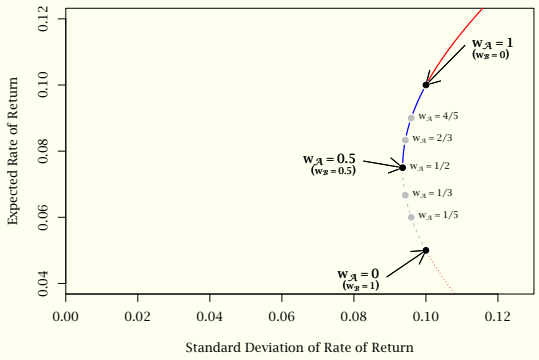
(b) *Correlation* = −0.75 (*Cov* = −0.0075)



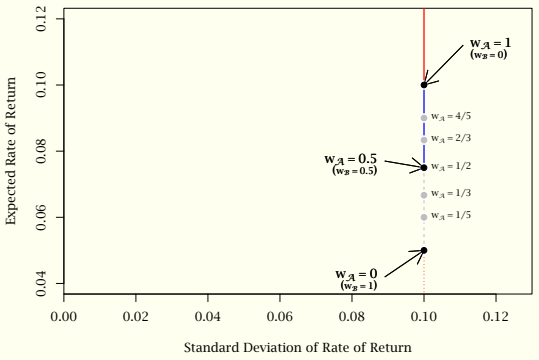
(c) Covariance = 0.0



(d) *Correlation* = +0.75 (*Cov* = +0.0075)



(e) *Correlation* = +1.00 (*Cov* = +0.01)



These figures repeat Figure 16.1, except that they consider different covariances between the portfolios. If the correlation is perfectly negative, you can manufacture a risk-free security by purchasing half of $\mathcal{A}$ and half of $\mathcal{B}$. (If the correlation is perfectly positive, and if you can short $\mathcal{B}$, you could even obtain a virtually infinite expected rate of return. This cannot happen in a reasonable market.)

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

		Covariance between $\tilde{r}_i$ and $\tilde{r}_j$		
Security	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$	1=S&P500	2=IBM	3=Sony
1=S&P500	10.110%	3.6224%	3.2980%	4.7716%
2= IBM	15.379%	3.2980%	15.0345%	2.1842%
3= Sony	24.203%	4.7716%	2.1842%	81.4886%

The diagonal covariance elements are the variances, because of the way each is defined ($Cov(x,x) \equiv \mathcal{V}ar(x)$). What would the risk-reward trade-offs of these portfolio combinations have looked like? Recall the portfolio statistics from Chapter 14. With three securities, the formulas to compute the overall portfolio mean and standard deviation are

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_1 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) + w_3 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_3) \quad , \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) + w_3^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_3) \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_3) \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_3) \quad , \\
\text{and } w_3 &\equiv 1 - w_1 - w_2 \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.5}$$

Pick some portfolios and use the formulas.

Armed with formulas and statistics, you can now determine portfolio means and standard deviations for some portfolios (different weights of $w_{\text{S\&P500}}, w_{\text{IBM}}, w_{\text{Sony}}$). For example, for the portfolio that invests 20% in S&P500, 40% in IBM, and 40% in Sony, the expected rate of return is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &\approx 20\% \cdot 10.110\% + 40\% \cdot 15.379\% + 40\% \cdot 24.203\% \approx 17.85\% \quad , \\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_1 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) + w_3 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_3) \quad ,
\end{aligned} \tag{16.6}$$

and the variance is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &\approx (20\%)^2 \cdot 3.6224\% + (40\%)^2 \cdot 15.0345\% + (40\%)^2 \cdot 81.4886\% \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot (20\%) \cdot (40\%) \cdot 3.2980\% + 2 \cdot (20\%) \cdot (40\%) \cdot 4.7716\% \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot (40\%) \cdot (40\%) \cdot 2.1842\% \approx 0.1758 \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) + w_3^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_3) \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_3) \\
&\quad + 2 \cdot w_2 \cdot w_3 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_3) \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.7}$$

Therefore, the risk of the portfolio is $Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \approx 41.93\%$.

Plot the mean and standard deviations of these portfolios.

Table 16.3 lists some more randomly chosen portfolio combinations, and Figure 16.3 plots the data from this table. Looking at the set of choices, if you were extremely risk-averse, you might have chosen just to invest in a portfolio that was all S&P500 (1,0,0). Indeed, from the set you already know, the portfolio with the absolute lowest variance among these 16 portfolios seems to be mostly an investment in the S&P500. If you were more risk-tolerant, you might have chosen a portfolio that invested 20% in the S&P500, 40% in IBM, and 40% in Sony (0.2,0.4,0.4). However, regardless of your risk aversion, the (0.5,0,0.5) portfolio, which invests 50% in S&P500, zero in IBM, and 50% in Sony, would have been a poor choice: it would have had a lower portfolio mean *and* higher standard deviation than alternatives, such as the (0.2,0.4,0.4) portfolio.

Similarity in portfolio weights means proximity in the Figure.

Note also that again, portfolios with very similar portfolio weights have similar means and standard deviations, and therefore lie close to one another. For example, the portfolio that invests (0.5,0.5,0) is relatively close to the portfolio (0.4,0.4,0.2).

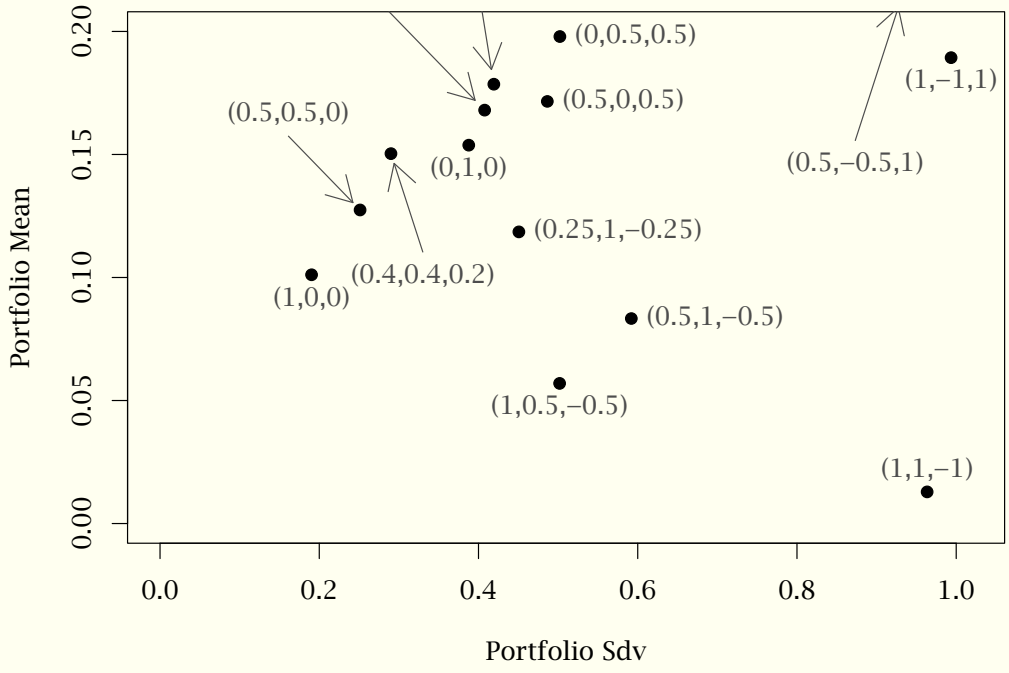
file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

Table 16.3. Risk and Reward of Hypothetical Portfolios Consisting Only of S&P500, IBM, and Sony

Weights $(w_{S\&P500}, w_{IBM}, w_{Sony})$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P)$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_P)$	Weights $(w_{S\&P500}, w_{IBM}, w_{Sony})$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P)$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_P)$
(1,0,0)	0.1010	0.1903	(-1,1,1)	0.2947	0.9401
(0,1,0)	0.1537	0.3877	(1,-1,1)	0.1893	0.9936
(0,0,1)	0.2420	0.9027	(1,1,-1)	0.0128	0.9635
(0.5,0.5,0)	0.1274	0.2513	(1,0.5,-0.5)	0.0569	0.5018
(0.5,0,0.5)	0.1715	0.4865	(0.5,1,-0.5)	0.0833	0.5919
(0,0.5,0.5)	0.1979	0.5022	(0.5,-0.5,1)	0.2156	0.9332
(0.2,0.4,0.4)	0.1785	0.4193	(-0.5,0.5,1)	0.2683	0.9051
(0.4,0.2,0.4)	0.1680	0.4077	(0.4,0.4,0.2)	0.1503	0.2901
			(0.99,0.024, -0.014)	0.1004	0.1896

Portfolio means ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P)$) and standard deviations ($Sdv(\tilde{r}_P)$) are quoted in percent per annum—and based on historical data. Of course, your computations are only useful if you presume the history to be representative of the future, too.

Figure 16.3. The S&P500, IBM, and Sony Portfolio Combinations From Table 16.3



Numbers in parentheses are the investment weights in the three portfolio assets (S&P500, IBM, Sony). For example, a $200 portfolio that invests $200 in S&P500, $200 in IBM, and –$200 in Sony is (+1,+1,-1), has a mean of about 1.3% and a standard deviation of about 96%, which places it in the lower right corner.

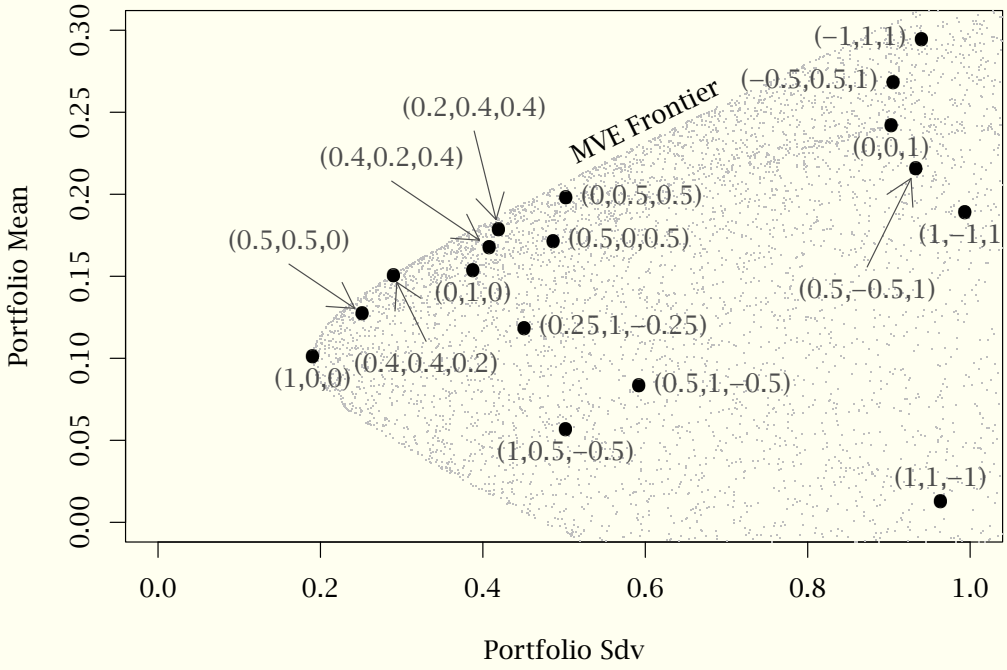
file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Plotting the mean and standard deviations of many random portfolios shows that the set of feasible portfolios produces a cloud of points, with a distinct border: the MVE Frontier.

Figure 16.4 plots 10,000 further portfolios, randomly chosen. The possible investment choices are no longer the single curve of points that they were with two assets, but a cloud of points. Nevertheless, the MVE Frontier—the upper left portion of the cloud of points—looks remarkably similar to the hyperbolic shape it had with just two assets. You should never purchase a portfolio that is a point inside the cloud but not on the frontier: there are better portfolios with higher rewards and lower risks towards its upper left. The **minimum variance portfolio** is the portfolio with the lowest variance. It is mostly invested in the S&P500, although a magnifying glass reveals that adding a little of IBM and shorting a little of Sony is slightly better—specifically, 99% of S&P500, 2.4% of IBM, and −1.4% of Sony could reach as low a risk as 18.96%.

SIDE NOTE: The technique for obtaining the MVE Frontier can remain the same for more than three securities: select many possible portfolio combinations and plot the outcomes. However, the number of possible portfolio weights quickly becomes overwhelming. If the portfolio optimization is done through such trial-and-error, commonly called a **Monte-Carlo simulation**, it would be better to draw not just totally random portfolio weights, but to draw portfolio weights that lie closer to the best portfolio combinations already obtained. In this case, you can use a more convenient way to obtain the MVE Frontier, using matrix algebra. This is done in Nerd Appendix a.

Figure 16.4. 10,000 Randomly Chosen Portfolios Involving Only S&P500, IBM, and Sony



Numbers in parentheses are the investment weights in the three portfolio assets (S&P500, IBM, Sony). For example, a $200 portfolio that invests $100 in S&P500, $200 in IBM, and –$100 in Sony (which is the point marked (0.5,1,–0.5)) has a mean of about 8% and a standard deviation of about 60%, which places it about in the middle of the grey area. If you randomly drew another trillion portfolios, the entire region inside the hyperbola would be gray. That is, for any mean/standard deviation combination that is inside the hyperbola, you can find a set of portfolio weights that achieve it.

The historical MVE frontier, usually used, is not the same as what you really want to know: the future MVE frontier.

Forgive me for repeating myself, but you should keep in mind that this plot is *ex-post*, i.e., based on historical data. Your real interest is of course not the past, but the future. Unfortunately, you do not have a much better choice than to rely on history. In the real world, where you would use many more securities, the historical MVE Frontier would tend to be an *indicator* of the future MVE Frontier, but not a perfect *predictor* thereof. Use common sense!

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

SIDE NOTE: The historical portfolio mean estimates tend to be less reliable than the portfolio standard deviation estimates. Perhaps not surprisingly, academic research has found that the minimum variance portfolio (among broadly diversified portfolios) tends to do rather well—it often outperform other portfolio choices. That is, not only is its risk often lower than that of other portfolios (as might have been expected), but even its actual expected rate of return has often beaten its predicted expected rate of return (and other portfolios) out-of-sample.

Solve Now!

Q 16.5 *For the three stocks, in Excel, randomly draw 1,000 random investment weights into the first security, 1,000 weights into the second security, and compute 1 minus these two weights to be the investment weight into the third security. Use the formulas and the following table to compute the risk and reward of each of the 1,000 portfolios in two separate columns.*

		Covariance between $\tilde{r}_i$ and $\tilde{r}_j$		
Security	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$	*1*	*2*	*3*
1	*10.0%*	*0.010*	*0.001*	*0.003*
2	*5.0%*	*0.001*	*0.010*	*0.006*
3	*7.5%*	*0.003*	*0.006*	*0.010*

Now plot the means and standard deviations of each portfolio in an X-Y graph.

Q 16.6 *Continued: What is the* ***Minimum Variance Portfolio****?*

Q 16.7 *Continued: What is the best portfolio with an expected rate of return of about 11%?*

Q 16.8 *Continued: Would any investor purchase the portfolio (-12%,32%,81%) ?*

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

16·2. Real-World Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier Implementation Problems

Unfortunately, many portfolios on the MVE Frontier require shorting securities, and often massive amounts so.

Figure 16.4 also hints at the main practical drawback of MVE portfolios. Many points on the MVE Frontier require shorting of securities (the weight is negative), but this may or may not be possible in the real world. Even if modest shorting is possible, the portfolio optimization often recommends strange portfolios that suggest shorting huge amounts in one security in order to go long a huge amount in another security.

Here is why.

Chances are that this is not because these are great portfolios, but because the historical covariance and mean estimates are not perfect predictors of future covariances and means. The historical covariance estimates cannot be easily relied upon, not so much because they are bad in themselves in an absolute sense, but because the optimization technique is very sensitive to *any* covariance estimation errors. This can be explained with a hypothetical bet optimizer: assume that you throw a coin 100 times, and observed 51 heads. A naïve portfolio optimizer relying on historical realizations would determine that the "heads bet" is much better than the "tails bet," and might recommend betting a million dollars on heads and against tails. This is not because the bet optimizer has made a mistake—after all, if it were truly 51%, this would be a pretty good bet. It is also not because 51% is a bad estimate of the true probability (of 50% if the coin is fair). Instead, it is the interaction: the bet optimizer is just very sensitive to historical data and therefore sampling error.

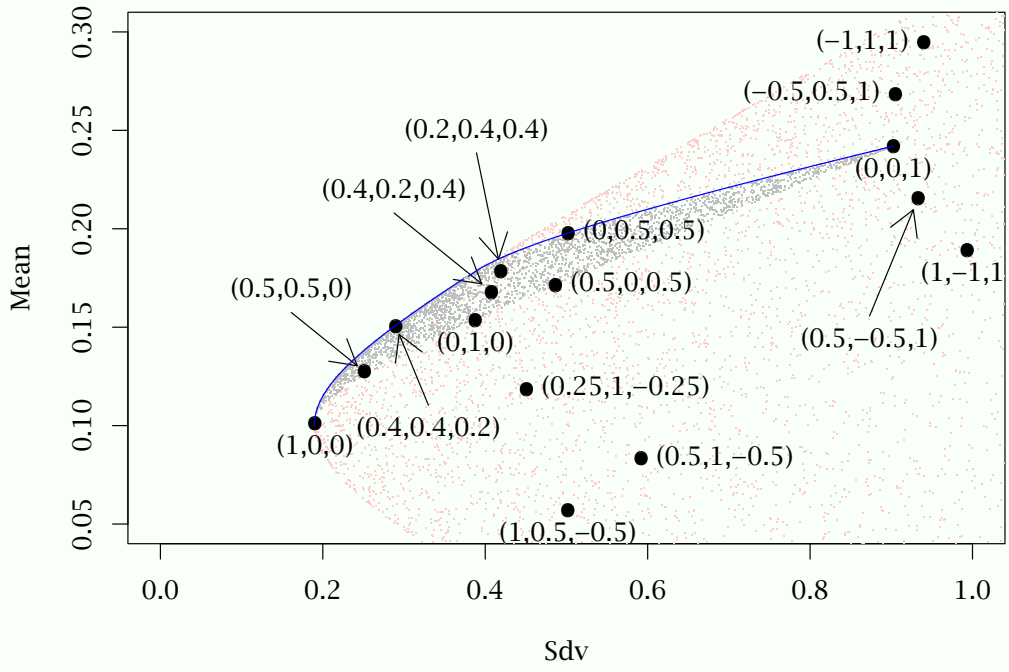
There are two solutions to the problem.

There are some methods which try to address this problem in order to make portfolio optimization a more useful tool. They rely on complicated statistical analysis, but simple ideas:

1. You can improve the estimates of future covariances and means, and not just rely blindly on their historical equivalents. In essence, these improvements rely on techniques that try to "pull in" extreme outlier returns. In the end, these techniques usually yield decent variance and covariance estimates.
2. You can use a model, like the CAPM (to be discussed in the next chapter) to better estimate means and variances.
3. You can use a portfolio optimizer that restricts the amount that can be shorted. This can be done by assuming a (high) cost of shorting, or by disallowing short-sales altogether. (See also the upcoming digging-deeper note.)

However, these techniques often still fail, especially when it comes to reliable *expected* rate of return estimates. In any case, you are warned—you should not blindly believe that the historical mean rates of return are representative of future mean rates of return. No one really knows how to estimate future expected rates of return *well*. So, in the real world, you must use your own judgment when the portfolio optimization result—your efficient frontier—seems reasonable and when it does not.

DIGGING DEEPER:



The portfolios with only positive investment weights (no shorting) are highlighted in grey in the graph on the right. It shows that an investor who is not permitted to short assets has a different MVE frontier. The short-constrained MVE frontier usually lies entirely inside the unconstrained MVE frontier.

There is a closely related other problem with optimization. To obtain meaningful results, you need to have at least as many time periods (return observations) as there are terms in the covariance formula, just as you would need at least as many equations as you have unknowns to pin down a system of equations. Alas, with 10,000 securities, there are 50 million terms in the covariance formula. If you use daily returns, you would have to wait 196 thousand years to have just one data point per estimated covariance. (Mathematically, you could do the estimation with 10,000 daily data points—still 40 years. These would be fairly unreliable, of course.) Therefore, you cannot reliably estimate a good variance-covariance matrix with historical data for too many assets.

There is not enough data to estimate a good covariance matrix for 10,000 securities.

Consequently, mean-variance optimization can only be used when there are just a few portfolios—preferably broad asset-class portfolios—to choose from. Fortunately, such broad asset-class portfolios also tend to have low *and more reliable* historical variances and covariances estimates. Unfortunately, you must narrow down your investment choices into a small number of asset class portfolios *before* you can use the MVE Frontier toolbox. So, in sum, portfolio optimization is a very usable technique—as long as you restrict yourself to just a few big asset classes for which you have good historical data. You should not use mean-variance optimization with poor variance-covariance estimates. If you try to use it for individual stocks, and/or when you do not have long historical returns data, and/or if you apply it blindly, chances are that your results will not be very satisfying. Enhanced mean-variance optimization techniques, such as those discussed in this section, are indeed in common use among professional investors. For example, one class of **hedge fund** called a **fund of funds** invests itself in other hedge funds. Many fund of funds first determine their hedge fund investment candidates, and then allocate their money according to an estimated mean-variance frontier among their candidates.

It is better to use portfolio optimization on asset classes than on many individual securities.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

16·3. Combinations of Portfolios on The Efficient Frontier

Any combination of MVE portfolios is itself also MVE.

If you purchase two different portfolios on the MVE Frontier, is the resulting portfolio still on the MVE Frontier? Put differently, when two MVE investors marry, is their total portfolio still MVE?

Table 16.4. Two Base MVE Portfolios and Two Portfolio Combinations

	Portfolio:	$\mathcal{E}_1$	$\mathcal{E}_2$	$\mathcal{E}_3$	$\mathcal{E}_4$
	Weight in $\mathcal{E}_1$:	+100%	0%	+50%	-25%
	Weight in $\mathcal{E}_2$:	0%	+100%	+50%	+125%
(net	S&P500	+99.448%	-90.620%	+4.414%	-138.138%
hol-	IBM	+2.124%	+135.770%	+68.910%	+169.088%
dings)	Sony	-1.573%	+54.925%	+26.676%	+69.049%
Reward	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	10.000%	25.000%	17.500%	28.750%
Risk	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	18.969%	67.555%	37.498%	83.271%
	$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_1}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_2}) = 0.03508$				

Four specific MVE portfolios are defined by their relative investment weights into $\mathcal{E}_1 = (99.448\%, 2.124\%, -1.573\%)$ and $\mathcal{E}_2 = (-90.620\%, +135.770\%, +54.925\%)$ in S&P500, IBM, and Sony, respectively. They are named $\mathcal{E}_1$, $\mathcal{E}_2$, $\mathcal{E}_3$, and $\mathcal{E}_4$ for convenience. $\mathcal{P}$ is a variable that can be any of these four portfolios.

The specific portfolio example (Figure 16.5).

Let's try it with our three security example. I tell you two MVE portfolios, and you get to compute the expected rates of return and standard deviations of portfolios that are combinations of these two. My part is in Table 16.4. Portfolio $\mathcal{E}_1$ is the minimum variance portfolio—you already knew that it would be mostly S&P500, and we have already mentioned it on Page 390. Portfolio $\mathcal{E}_2$ has a higher risk (67.6%) but also a higher expected rate of return (25%). Looking at its components, $\mathcal{E}_2$ requires shorting a large amount in the S&P500, but in your perfect world of zero transaction costs and under the assumption that the historical estimates are correct estimates of the future, this is not a problem. Now, because you know the investment weights, you can write down their twelve annual historical rates of return to compute the covariance between $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$ —which would come to 0.035. You could also write down the historical realizations of any weighted combination portfolio between $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$ in order to compute the new portfolio's mean and standard deviation—or you can use the portfolio formulas, which is much quicker. For example, the portfolio that invests half in $\mathcal{E}_1$ and half in $\mathcal{E}_2$ would have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= 50\% \cdot 10\% + 50\% \cdot 25\% = 17.5\% \\
\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= (50\%)^2 \cdot (18.969\%)^2 + (50\%)^2 \cdot (67.555\%)^2 + 2 \cdot (50\%) \cdot (50\%) \cdot 0.03408 = 0.1406 \\
Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= \sqrt{0.1406} = 37.498\% \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.8}$$

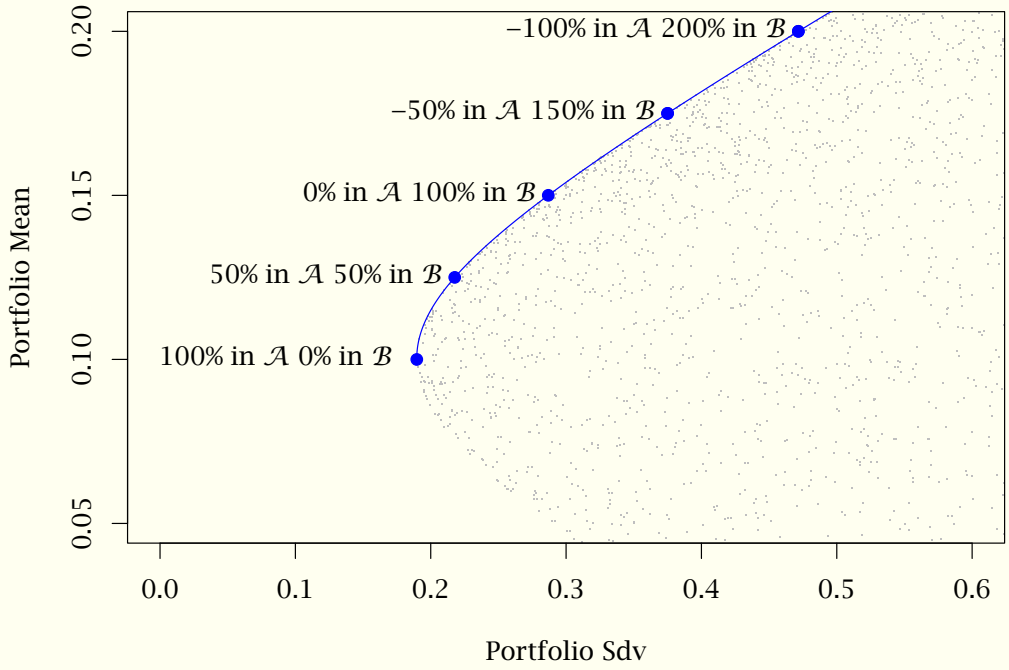
(If you do not recall the middle formula, look back to Formula 14.23 on Page 335.) Please confirm the numbers for the $\mathcal{E}_4$ portfolio—or better yet, create a small spreadsheet that allows you to get quick mean/standard deviation values for any weight $w_{\mathcal{E}_1} = 1 - w_{\mathcal{E}_2}$ that you want to try.

It appears visually as if the combinations of two MVE portfolios is itself MVE.

After you have computed many such portfolio combinations, you can overlay their means and standard deviations onto Figure 16.4. This should give you something like Figure 16.5. Visually, it indeed appears as if combinations of the two MVE portfolios $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$ "trace out" the entire MVE Frontier.

Visual confirmation is not a mathematical proof, but you can trust me that this is more general—the answer to our original question is indeed yes.

Figure 16.5. S&P500, IBM, and Sony Portfolio Combinations



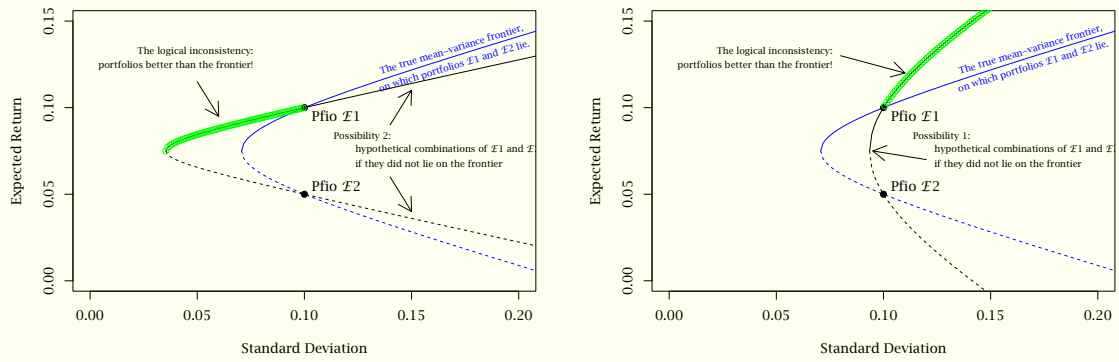
Portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ invests 99.448% in S&P500, 2.124% in IBM, and -1.573% in Sony. Portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ invests -90.62% in S&P500, +135.77% in IBM, and +54.925% in Sony. Other portfolios along the efficient frontier are combinations of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. Points to the right of the "100% in $\mathcal{E}2$ " portfolio require shorting portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ in order to obtain the money to purchase more of portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$.

IMPORTANT: *If two investors hold portfolios that are mean-variance efficient, then the merged portfolio is also mean-variance efficient.*

The non-graphical explanation.

Unfortunately, it requires Nerd Appendices b and c to prove that the combination of two MVE Frontier portfolios is also MVE. However, although the proof itself is not important, the following may give you an idea of how the proof works. You *must* believe me that the combination of two securities always forms a nice hyperbola without kinks—this is actually what Formula 16.4 states. There are also only three parameters that pin down the hyperbola, and limit how different inputs can stretch it. For convenience, my argument will work with the MVE-Frontier from Figure 16.2. Assume that this MVE-Frontier is the solid line in Figure 16.2, and contains the two MVE portfolios $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. The question is whether combinations of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ have to also lie along the solid line. Let's presume that they do not. The hyperbola can then extend beyond the efficient frontier, as in graph A—but then, the combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ would best the original frontier. Or the hyperbola can lie inside the efficient frontier—but then shorting $\mathcal{E}2$ to purchase $\mathcal{E}1$ would extend the hyperbola above the original MVE frontier and best the original frontier. The only combinations of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ that do not break the original MVE Frontier are the portfolios that lie on the MVE Frontier. This is what we stated: the combination of two MVE portfolios must itself be MVE.

Figure 16.6. Two MVE Portfolios



This figure illustrates that if $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ lie on the MVE frontier, then their combinations must be MVE. A hyperbola is defined by three points. Two points are already pinned down by $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. A hyperbola whose minimum variance portfolio is to the left of the current MVE would contradict the current MVE. A hyperbola whose minimum variance portfolio is to the right of the current MVE would contradict the current MVE if $\mathcal{E}2$ is shorted to buy more of $\mathcal{E}1$.

It is now easy to determine other portfolios on the MVE Frontier.

Because the combination of MVE portfolios is MVE, your task of finding the best portfolio—given your specific risk tolerance—is a lot easier. For example, if you want to know what the best portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ is that offers an expected rate of return of 15%, determine how much of portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ and how much of portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ you have to purchase in order to expect a rate of return of 15%. The answer is

$$\begin{aligned} w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot 10\% + (1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})\cdot 25\% \quad &= \quad 15\% \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad w \;=\; {}^{2}/_{3} \\ w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + (1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \;&=\; \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{16.9}$$

So, portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ should consist of ${}^{2}/_{3}$ of portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ and therefore ${}^{1}/_{3}$ of portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$. If you wish, you can think of portfolios $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ as two funds, so you can use the method from Section 12·3.B to compute the underlying net investment weights of portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$:

Portfolio:	$\mathcal{E}1$	$\mathcal{E}2$	$\mathcal{E}3$
Weight in $\mathcal{E}1$	100%	0%	${}^{2}/_{3}$
Weight in $\mathcal{E}2$	0%	100%	${}^{1}/_{3}$
S&P500	+99.448%	-90.620%	+36.092%
IBM	+2.124%	+135.770%	+46.648%
Sony	-1.573%	+54.925%	+17.260%
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	10.000%	25.000%	15.000%
$Sdv(\tilde{r})$	18.969%	67.555%	28.684%

$\mathcal{P}$, which invests 36% in S&P500, 47% in IBM, and 17% in Sony, is the best portfolio that offers an expected rate of return of 15% per annum; it requires you to take on 29% risk per year.

Solve Now!

Q 16.9 *Among the three stocks, what is the portfolio that yields an expected rate of return of 12.5% per year?*

Q 16.10 *Among the three stocks, what is the portfolio that yields an expected rate of return of 20% per year?*

16·4. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With A Risk-Free Security

If a risk-free security is available, it turns out that the portfolio optimization problem becomes a lot easier. From a practical perspective, you can always assume that you can find a Treasury bond that is essentially risk-free. So, you can proceed under the assumption that you have access to one such security. This also means that you know already one MVE portfolio—after all, you should not be able to get a higher interest rate for a risk-free investment—or you could become rich.

Risk-free securities do exist.

Side Note: The special role applies *only* to the risk-free security, not to any other kind of bond. Although we did discuss these *risky* bonds in the preceding parts of the book (Chapters 5), you should look at them the same way you would look at any equity stock or fund you might purchase. They are just other risky components inside your larger investment portfolio.

16·4.A. Risk-Reward Combinations of Any Portfolio Plus the Risk-Free Asset

So, what are the achievable risk-reward combinations if there is a risk-free security? For example, consider portfolios from the combination of a risk-free security (called $\mathcal{F}$) which pays 6% for sure, with only one risky security (called $\mathcal{R}$) which pays a mean rate of return of 10.56% and has a standard deviation of 12%. The formulas for portfolio mean and standard deviation are

It is very easy to compute the expected rate of return and risk for a portfolio in which one of the two securities is risk-free.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= (1-w_{\mathcal{R}})\cdot 6\% &+ w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot 10.56\% \\ &= 6\% &+ w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot 4.56\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= (1-w_{\mathcal{R}})\cdot \mathcal{E}(r_{\mathcal{F}}) &+ w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) \\ &= r_{\mathcal{F}} &+ w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot\left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})-r_{\mathcal{F}}\right] . \end{aligned} \tag{16.10}$$

Easy. More interestingly,

$$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = \sqrt{w_{\mathcal{F}}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(r_{\mathcal{F}}) + w_{\mathcal{R}}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}, r_{\mathcal{F}})} . \tag{16.11}$$

But a risk-free rate of return is just a constant rate of return, so it has no variance and no covariance with anything else—it is what it is. Now combine your portfolio $\mathcal{R}$ with the risk-free rate, purchasing $w_{\mathcal{F}}$ in the risk-free asset and $w_{\mathcal{R}} = (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})$ in $\mathcal{R}$.

$$\begin{aligned} Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{\cancel{w_{\mathcal{F}}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(r_{\mathcal{F}})} + w_{\mathcal{R}}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) + \cancel{2\cdot w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}, r_{\mathcal{F}})}} \\ &= \sqrt{w_{\mathcal{R}}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})} = w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) = w_{\mathcal{R}}\cdot 12\% . \end{aligned} \tag{16.12}$$

This is nice: the standard deviation of the rate of return on any portfolio is simply the weight times the standard deviation of the risky asset. This makes the calculations much easier. Figure 16.7 uses Formulas 16.10 and 16.12 to plot the mean and standard deviation of portfolio pairs for your particular security $\mathcal{R}$. Note how all portfolio combinations lie on a straight line, which starts at the risk-free rate (at Sdv=0%, $\mathcal{E}$=6%) and goes through the risky portfolio $\mathcal{R}$ (at Sdv=12%, $\mathcal{E}$=10.56%).

The combinations are a straight line in the mean-standard deviation graph.

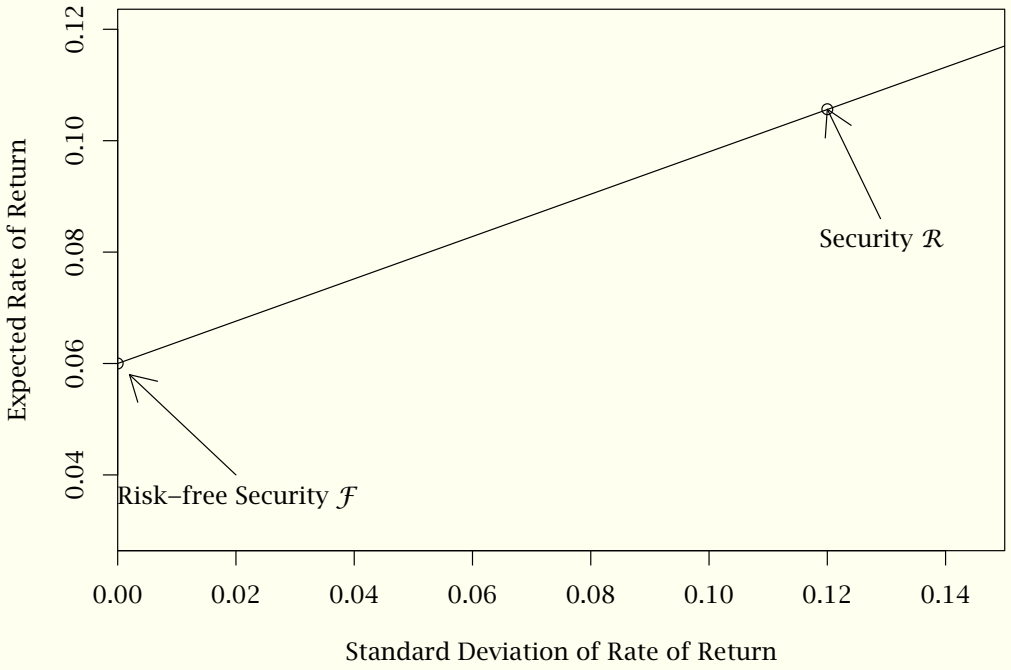
It is easy to show that the combination of portfolios that consist of the risk-free security and a risky security have risk/reward trade-offs that lie on a straight line. Solve for $w_{\mathcal{R}}$

You can prove the linearity, too!

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Figure 16.7. Combinations of the Risk-Free Security ($\mathcal{F}$) and a Risky Asset ($\mathcal{R}$)

Risky Weight	0	1/4	1/2	3/4	1	3/2
Mean (Expected Rate of Return)	6%	7.14%	8.28%	9.42%	10.56%	12.84%
Standard Deviation	0%	3%	6%	9%	12%	18%



$(= Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})/Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}))$ in the standard deviation formula 16.12, and substitute it into the expected return formula 16.10,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + w_{\mathcal{R}} \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] = r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left[\frac{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})}\right] \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \\
&= r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})}\right] \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\
&= 6\% + \left[\frac{10.56\% - 6\%}{12\%}\right] \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\
&= 6\% + 38\% \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \\
&= a + b \cdot Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.13}$$

This is the equation for a line, where a ($= r_{\mathcal{F}} = 6\%$, the risk-free rate) is the intercept and b ($= [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]/Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) = 38\%$) is the slope. You have actually already encountered the slope in Formula 16.13 on Page 374! It is the **Sharpe Ratio**,

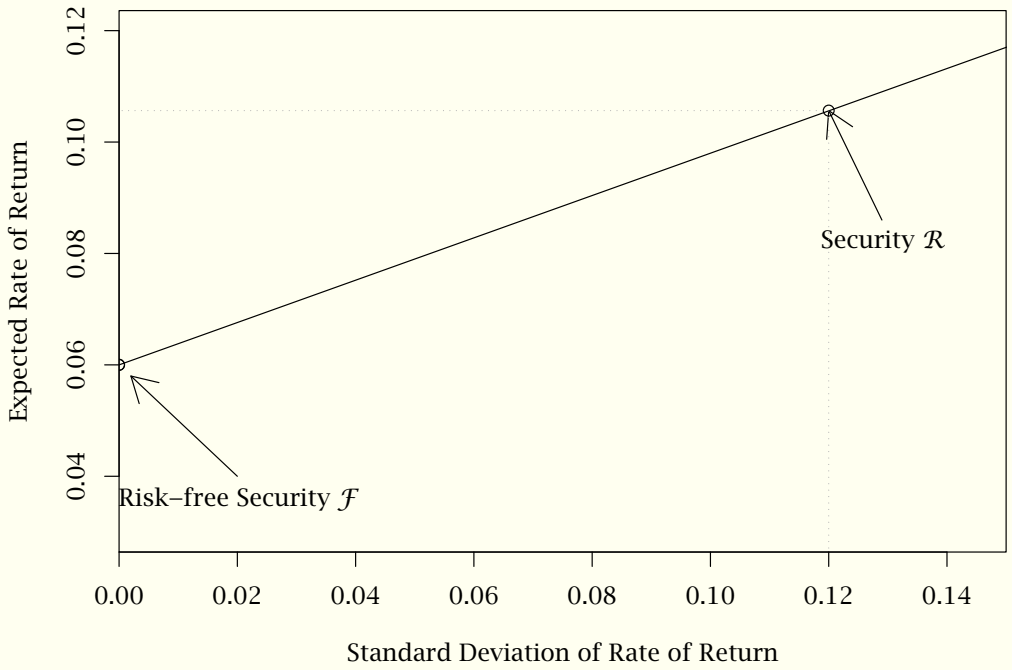
$$b = \text{Sharpe Ratio} \equiv \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})} \quad . \tag{16.14}$$

For a given portfolio $\mathcal{R}$, $[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]/Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}})$ is the ratio of the expected reward over the required risk. (Theoretically, you can also compute the Sharpe ratio by first subtracting the risk-free rate from all returns, called excess returns, and then dividing its mean by its standard deviation, because $Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}}) = Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{R}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})$. This is the more common practical way to compute the Sharpe ratio.) Please be aware that although the Sharpe ratio is a common measure of the

risk-reward trade-off of individual portfolios, it is not a good one.

16·4.B. The Best Risk-Reward Combinations With A Risk-Free Asset

Figure 16.8. Combinations of The Risk-Free Security ($\mathcal{F}$) And a Risky Asset ($\mathcal{R}$)



The MVE among risky assets is based on the example from Table 16.2 with a covariance of −0.0075. (This means the first security has a reward of 5% and a risk of 10%; the second has a reward of 10% and a risk of 10%.)

Would you still purchase a combination of $\mathcal{R}$, if you could instead purchase any other combination of $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$?

Now return to the efficient frontier from Table 16.2 and Figure 16.2, and assume the covariance is −0.0075. Portfolio $\mathcal{R}$ happens to be among the portfolios that you can purchase, combining $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$. Figure 16.8 repeats the last graph, but also plots the other securities you could purchase, putting together two base securities, $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$. This raises an interesting question: Presume that you have drawn the MVE Frontier using all risky assets. (It will always looks like a sideways hyperbola, so the drawn figure is accurate even for the more general case.) Now a risk-free asset becomes available, so that you can draw a line between the risk-free rate and whatever portfolio you want to purchase. How does your new achievable MVE Frontier look like? Would you ever purchase portfolio $\mathcal{R}$ in Figure 16.8, which is on the previous MVE Frontier (or any combination of the risk-free security and portfolio $\mathcal{R}$)?

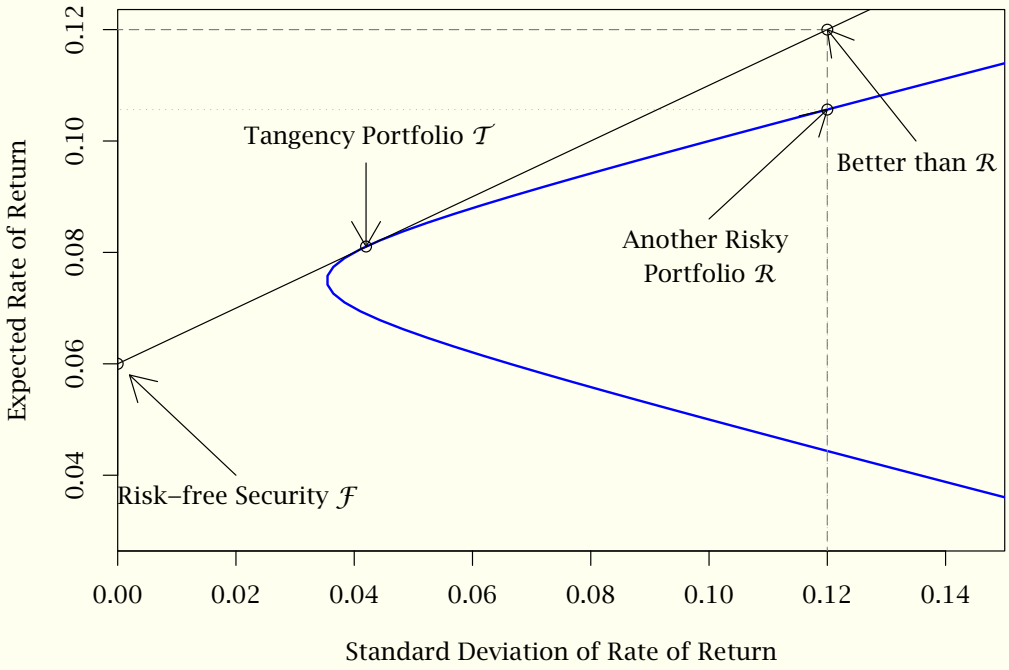
The true MVE Frontier is a line from the risk-free rate to the "tangency" portfolio.

No! You can do better than this. Figure 16.9 draws the "tangency portfolio," $\mathcal{T}$. By combining portfolio $\mathcal{T}$ and the risk-free asset, you can do better than purchasing even a tiny bit of $\mathcal{R}$. In fact, the figure shows that you would draw a line from the risk-free asset to this **Tangency Portfolio** ($\mathcal{T}$)—which is the true MVE frontier—and you would only purchase combinations of these two. No risky portfolio other than $\mathcal{T}$ would ever be purchased by *any* rational investor.

IMPORTANT: *If there is a risk-free security, every investor would purchase a combination of the risk-free security and the Tangency Portfolio. No combination of risky assets other than the Tangency Portfolio $\mathcal{T}$ would ever be purchased by any investor.*

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Figure 16.9. The Mean-Variance Efficient Frontier With a Risk-Free Asset



Note how you can do better if you buy a combination of $\mathcal{T}$ and the risk-free asset instead of portfolio $\mathcal{R}$. It follows that you would never purchase risky assets in any other weight combination than that packed into the tangency portfolio $\mathcal{T}$.

16·4.C. The Formula to Determine the Tangency Portfolio

It is not difficult to figure out the tangency portfolio. It is the portfolio on the MVE Frontier that has the maximum slope, i.e., the highest Sharpe ratio. Let us find the tangency portfolio for our three by-now familiar stocks. Recall the first three MVE portfolios for S&P500, IBM, and Sony from Table 16.4 on Page 394. Recall that

Portfolio:	$\mathcal{E}_1$	$\mathcal{E}_2$	$\mathcal{E}_3$
Weight in $\mathcal{E}_1$:	+100%	0%	+50%
Weight in $\mathcal{E}_2$:	0%	+100%	+50%
S&P500	+99.448%	-90.620%	+4.414%
IBM	+2.124%	+135.770%	+68.910%
Sony	-1.573%	+54.925%	+26.676%
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P)$	10.000%	25.000%	17.500%
$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_P)$	18.969%	67.555%	37.498%
Sharpe Ratio @ $r_\mathcal{F} = 6\%$	$\frac{10\% - 6\%}{19\%} = 0.21$	$\frac{25\% - 6\%}{67.6\%} = 0.28$	$\frac{17.5\% - 6\%}{37.5\%} = 0.31$

The Agenda. Work out the Sharpe ratio, so mean first, covariance next, and standard deviation last.

First, you should determine the covariance between two efficient frontier portfolios—here between $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$. You can do this either by computing the twelve historical portfolio returns and compute it, or you can read the nerd note below, or you can just trust me that the $Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_1}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_2}) = 0.03505$. You also know that you can trace out the MVE Frontier by purchasing any combinations of these three portfolios. Your goal is to find, for a given risk-free interest

rate, the tangency portfolio. First, write down again the risk and reward of portfolios of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. For any portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ itself comprised of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot 10\% + (1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})\cdot 25\% = 25\% - 15\%\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1} \\ &= w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + (1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{16.15}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{E}1}^2\cdot(18.969\%)^2 + w_{\mathcal{E}2}{}^2\cdot(67.555\%)^2 + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}2}\cdot 3.505\% \ . \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{E}1}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + w_{\mathcal{E}2}{}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}2}\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{16.16}$$

With a risk-free rate of 6%, the Sharpe Ratio for $\mathcal{P}$ is therefore defined to be

$$\mathrm{SR}(w_{\mathcal{E}1}) = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \frac{25\% - 15\%\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1} - 6\%}{\sqrt{w_{\mathcal{E}1}^2\cdot(18.969\%)^2 + (1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})^2\cdot(67.555\%)^2 + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot(1-w_{\mathcal{E}1})\cdot 3.505\%}} \ . \tag{16.17}$$

You can now use Excel (or calculus) to determine the $w_{\mathcal{E}1}$ that maximizes this fraction. The solution is $w_{\mathcal{E}1} \approx 68\%$, which means that the net portfolio weights in this tangency portfolio are

$$\begin{aligned} w_{\mathrm{S\&P500}} &= 0.68\cdot(+99.448\%) + 0.32\cdot(-90.620\%) = 38.791\% \ , \\ w_{\mathrm{IBM}} &= 0.68\cdot(+2.124\%) + 0.32\cdot(135.770\%) = 44.751\% \ , \\ w_{\mathrm{Sony}} &= 0.68\cdot(-1.573\%) + 0.32\cdot(54.925\%) = 16.458\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{16.18}$$

The mean rate of return of this tangency portfolio is 14.8%, the standard deviation is 28%, and the Sharpe ratio is 0.3138. So, you should henceforth only purchase a combination of the risk-free security and this tangency portfolio, with relative weights determined by your taste for risk.

DIGGING DEEPER: *There are two methods to extract the covariance: one is brute force to manipulate the component security covariances. The more clever approach recognizes that you already know*

$$\begin{aligned} (18.969\%)^2 &= 1^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + 0^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot 1\cdot 0\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \\ (67.555\%)^2 &= 0^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + 1^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot 0\cdot 1\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \\ (37.498\%)^2 &= 0.5^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + 0.5^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot 0.5\cdot 0.5\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_{\mathcal{E}1}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + w_{\mathcal{E}2}{}^2\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}1}\cdot w_{\mathcal{E}2}\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \ , \end{aligned} \tag{16.19}$$

which simplifies into

$$\begin{aligned} (18.969\%)^2 &= \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) \\ (67.555\%)^2 &= \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \\ (37.498\%)^2 &= 0.25\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1}) + 0.25\cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) + 2\cdot 0.5\cdot 0.5\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \\ &= 0.25\cdot(18.969\%)^2 + 0.25\cdot(67.555\%)^2 + 0.5\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{16.20}$$

Solving, you find that $Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}1},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) = 0.03505$.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

16·4.D. Combining The Risk-Free Security And the Tangency Portfolio

The special case with a risk-free security.

If a risk-free security exists, so that the "true" MVE Frontier is the straight line tracing out all combinations of the risk-free security and the tangency portfolio $\mathcal{T}$, then the fact that the combination of two MVE portfolios is still MVE is easy to understand. Say, we want to marry two portfolios. The groom owns \$100 in the tangency portfolio $\mathcal{T}$, and \$900 in the risk-free asset. The bride owns \$2,000 in $\mathcal{T}$, purchased partly with \$500 worth of debt. The couple then owns $\$100 + \$2,000 = \$2,100$ in $\mathcal{T}$ and $\$900 - \$500 = \$400$ in the risk-free asset. This is still an MVE portfolio, because it consists only of the risk-free asset and the risky tangency portfolio $\mathcal{T}$. The fact that the combination of MVE portfolios is itself MVE is the key to the CAPM, as you shall learn in the next section.

DIGGING DEEPER: *However, the opposite statement—if the merged portfolio is mean-variance efficient, then the individual components are mean-variance efficient—is not true. It is possible that $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$ do not invest in $\mathcal{T}$, but that their merged investment-weighted stock market portfolio is $\mathcal{T}$. For example, allow the tangency portfolio to consist itself of two securities, X and Y, say in proportions $1/3$ and $2/3$, respectively. If the groom holds \$300 in X and the bride holds \$600 in Y, then the couple's portfolio is MVE. But each individual's portfolio was not. Who says marriage does not pay?*

Solve Now!

Q 16.11 *For the three securities, S&P500, IBM, and Sony, what is the Sharpe ratio of a portfolio that invests 50% in the risk-free security and 50% in the tangency portfolio $\mathcal{T}$?*

Q 16.12 *What is the tangency portfolio if the risk-free rate were not 6%, but 3%? Before solving it, think where it should lie geometrically.*

Q 16.13 *What is the tangency portfolio if the risk-free rate were not 6%, but 9%? Before solving it, think where it should lie geometrically.*

16·5. What does a Security need to offer to be in an Efficient Frontier Portfolio?

16·5.A. What if the Risk-Reward Relationship is Non-Linear?

Return to Figure 16.4 on Page 390, which graphs the risk and reward for many portfolios. Among them are

Some Portfolios.

Portfolio	$w_{\text{S\&P500}}$	w_{IBM}	w_{Sony}	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_P)$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_P)$
G	0.4000	0.2000	0.4000	16.80%	40.77%
$E3$	0.0414	0.6891	0.2668	17.50%	37.50%
I	0.000	1.000	0.000	15.38%	38.77%

The G portfolio is clearly inefficient: it has a lower expected rate of return and a higher standard deviation than the $E3$ portfolio. Comparing the two portfolios, it appears as if the G portfolio has too much of the S&P500, too little of IBM, and too much of Sony. Put differently, if you were holding portfolio G, then S&P500 and Sony would really be too expensive for you, while IBM would be a bargain. You would be better off rebalancing away from the S&P500 and Sony securities, and towards IBM.

Portfolio $E3$ is better than G. The investor should buy less in "expensive" stocks and buy more of "cheap" stocks.

Whether a stock is too expensive depends on your current portfolio. You can choose an example of a portfolio in which IBM appears too expensive, instead. For example, say that you are holding portfolio I—IBM only. Again, you would be better off with portfolio $E3$ instead, but it has smaller holdings in IBM (compared to I), not more. So, from your perspective as an owner of portfolio I who wants to get the better portfolio $E3$, the S&P500 and Sony would look like bargains, because they would help you to reduce your portfolio risk, while IBM would look too expensive.

Whether a stock is too expensive or too cheap depends not just on the stock itself, but on the portfolio for which it is begin considered.

IMPORTANT: *The risk contribution of a security depends on the particular portfolio. For some portfolios, a security may appear like a bargain, for others like a gouge. The process by which you can improve your portfolio is to purchase securities that appear like a bargain—high reward given their risk contribution to your portfolio; and to divest securities that appear too expecsive—low reward given their risk contribution to your portfolio.*

It turns out that this insight is the basis for an important method to measure the risk/reward characteristics of an individual security, i.e., whether this individual security is a bargain, given your specific overall portfolio. Assume you are holding portfolio G. Its annual rates of return would have been

The annual portfolio returns, including portfolio $E1$:

Year	S&P500	IBM	Sony	Pfio G	Year	S&P500	IBM	Sony	Pfio G
1991	0.263	−0.212	−0.103	0.022	1997	0.310	0.381	0.391	0.356
1992	0.045	−0.435	−0.004	−0.070	1998	0.267	0.762	−0.203	0.178
1993	0.071	0.121	0.478	0.244	1999	0.195	0.170	2.968	1.299
1994	−0.015	0.301	0.135	0.108	2000	−0.101	−0.212	−0.511	−0.287
1995	0.341	0.243	0.105	0.227	2001	−0.130	0.423	−0.348	−0.107
1996	0.203	0.658	0.077	0.244	2002	−0.234	−0.357	−0.081	−0.197
					$\mathcal{E}$	0.101	0.154	0.242	0.168
					$\mathcal{V}ar$	0.037	0.150	0.815	0.166
					Sdv	0.190	0.388	0.903	0.408

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Compute the beta of each stock with respect to portfolio $\mathcal{G}$, and graph each beta against its expected rate of return.

Now compute your measure of how each security helps diversifying portfolio $\mathcal{G}$—the covariance between each security and portfolio $\mathcal{G}$. These covariances may be tedious to compute, but they are not difficult, and you have done this before (e.g., in Formula 13.18 on Page 320),

$$\begin{aligned}
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{(+0.2631 - 0.101) \cdot (0.0217 - 0.168) + ... + (-0.2337 - 0.101) \cdot (-0.1971 - 0.168)}{11} \\
&= 0.0402 \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{(-0.2124 - 0.154) \cdot (0.0217 - 0.168) + ... + (-0.3570 - 0.154) \cdot (-0.1971 - 0.168)}{11} \\
&= 0.0520 \\
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{(-0.1027 - 0.242) \cdot (0.0217 - 0.168) + ... + (-0.0808 - 0.242) \cdot (-0.1971 - 0.168)}{11} \\
&= 0.3494
\end{aligned} \tag{16.21}$$

Although you could work directly with covariances, betas are easier to interpret. So, as the measure for how each stock contributes to the risk of portfolio $\mathcal{G}$, let us adopt the beta of each stock *with respect to* portfolio $\mathcal{G}$. To obtain this beta, divide each of these securities' covariances by the same number, the variance of $\mathcal{G}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})} = \frac{0.0402}{0.1662} = 0.2417 \\
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})} = \frac{0.0520}{0.1662} = 0.3129 \\
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{G}})} = \frac{0.349}{0.1662} = 2.1023
\end{aligned} \tag{16.22}$$

Now, plot the expected rates of return against the betas (for portfolio $\mathcal{G}$, of course), and try to draw a line through these three points. Figure 16.10 shows that the three points do not lie on one line. IBM seems to have too high an expected rate of return for its beta (it lies above the line), while the S&P500 has too low an expected rate of return. Therefore, as you already knew from comparing portfolio $\mathcal{G}$ and $\mathcal{E}_3$, it appears that good advice to portfolio $\mathcal{G}$ owners would be to rebalance away from the expensive S&P500 and towards the cheaper IBM. (Thereafter, you should recheck the relative expected pricing of these securities relative to your new portfolio.)

MVE of a pfio means its securities must lie on a line in a beta vs. exp.ret. graph.

Indeed, as it turns out, the fact that the three securities do not perfectly lie on one line is proof-positive that portfolio $\mathcal{G}$ can be improved upon, i.e., that portfolio $\mathcal{G}$ is not on the MVE Frontier.

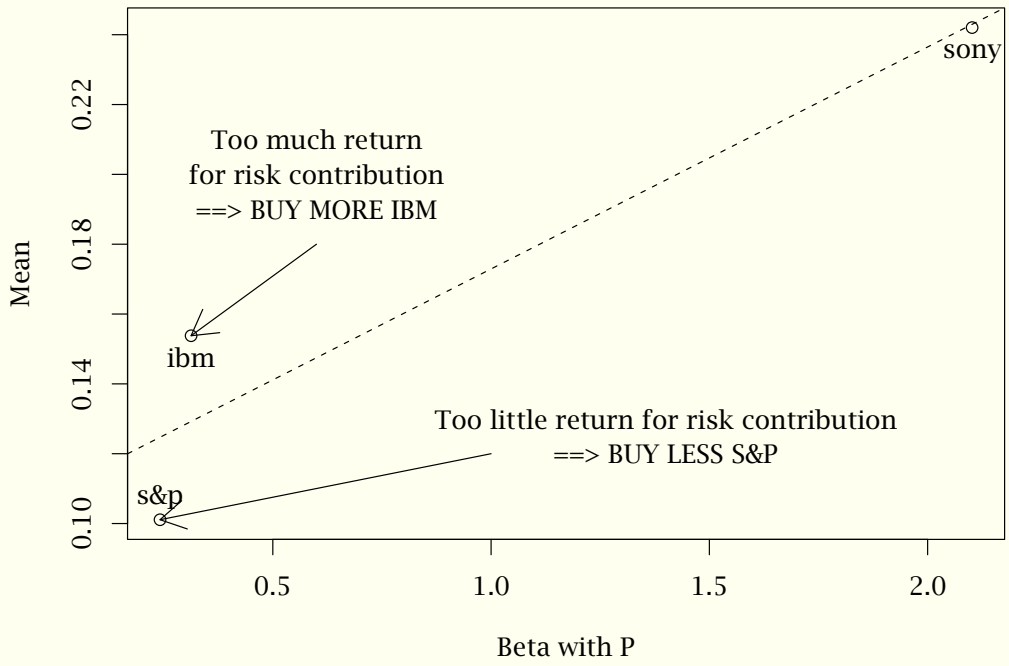
16·5.B. What if the Risk-Reward Relationships is Linear?

For the MVE portfolio $\mathcal{E}_3$, when graphing expected rate of return against beta (with respect to portfolio $\mathcal{E}_3$), all stocks lie exactly on one straight line.

If you repeat the same exercise for portfolio $\mathcal{E}_3$, which you will confirm in Exercise 16.14, you will find that needs to be changed; earlier H=Y pfio was at 17%, not 17.5%

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})} = \frac{0.0370}{0.1275} = 0.2909 \ , \\
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})} = \frac{0.1059}{0.1275} = 0.8330 \ , \\
\beta(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3}) &= \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}_3})} = \frac{0.2213}{0.1275} = 1.7403 \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{16.23}$$

Figure 16.10. Means of Stocks vs. Betas with respect to non-MVE $\mathcal{G}$ portfolio



$\mathcal{G}$ is a poor portfolio, because it bought too little of IBM, given its risk contribution to $\mathcal{G}$; and too much of S&P500, given its risk contribution to $\mathcal{G}$. Portfolios that have either higher mean and the same risk, or the same mean and lower risk, could have been achieved by buying more IBM and less of S&P500.

Figure 16.11 plots the beta of each stock with respect to portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$ against the expected rate of return of each stock. All securities lie on a single line. This actually means that if you hold portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$, each security offers an expected rate of return (reward) that is appropriate for its beta (risk). There is no way to improve upon portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$ by changing these portfolio weights. Therefore, portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$ is MVE.

An example of an MVE portfolio: each stock offers the right expected return for its beta.

This linear relationship between the expected rate of return of each security with its beta with a portfolio, *if the portfolio is mean-variance efficient*, will play a profound role in the CAPM, which will be discussed in the next chapters.

Preview: This will be the CAPM equation.

DIGGING DEEPER: *If you had worked with covariances instead of betas, the slope of the line would change, but not the fact that all points either lie on a line or do not lie on a line.*

IMPORTANT: *If all securities' expected rates of return lie on a line when plotted against the beta with respect to some portfolio, then this portfolio is MVE. If they do not lie on a line, then this portfolio is not MVE.*

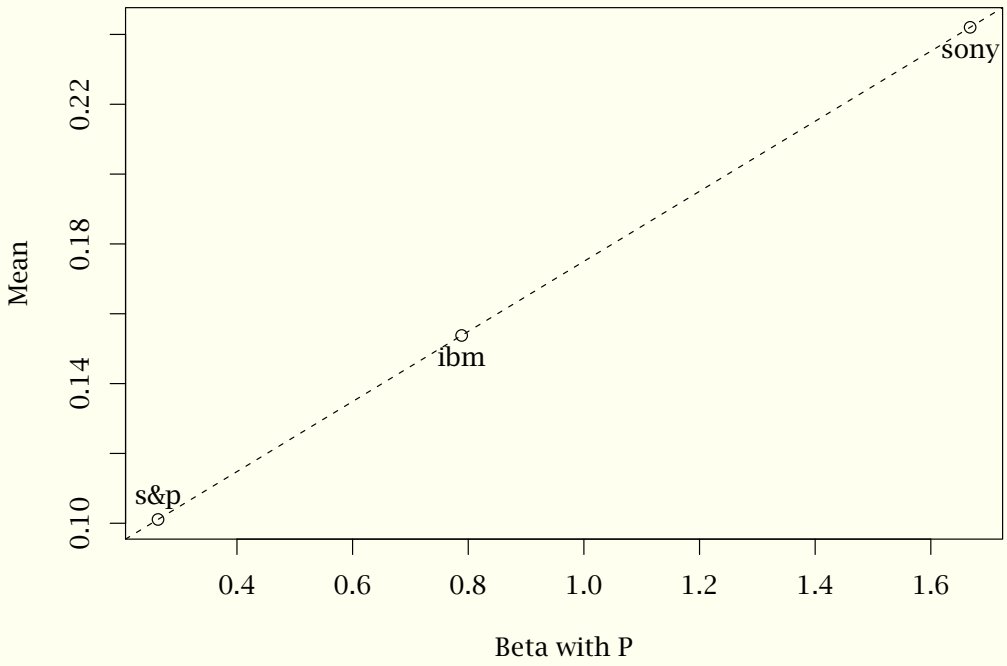
Reflect on the example more generally. You know that the security holdings are optimized for each security i in a mean-variance efficient portfolio $\mathcal{E}$—or else $\mathcal{E}$ would not be MVE! The exact relationship if all the components in Portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ are optimized is

To enter the tangency portfolio, each stock must follow a particular relationship

$$\text{Portfolio } \mathcal{E} \text{ is MVE} \iff \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = a + b \cdot \beta_{\tilde{r}_i,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}}, \tag{16.24}$$

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Figure 16.11. Means of Stocks vs. Betas with respect to MVE $\mathcal{E}_3$ portfolio



$\mathcal{E}_3$ is an MVE portfolio. You cannot do better by purchasing more or less of S&P500, IBM, or Sony in terms of your mean/variance trade-off. (This also means that to obtain more mean, you would also have to accept more risk.)

where i is an index naming each and every stock. (Nerd Appendix d proves Formula 16.24.) The formula contains two constants, a and b, which are numbers that depend on the portfolio $\mathcal{E}$. Formula 16.24 relates how the expected rate of return for each and every single available security must be related to its beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$, i.e., lie along a straight line.

A different way to think about portfolio optimization: given a portfolio, rebalance from more expensive towards cheaper stocks.

Here is a different way to think of the relationship. If you purchase an MVE portfolio, the relationship between each security's expected rate of return and its beta with respect to your own portfolio comes about automatically. It could even be stated that you purchase a best possible (MVE) portfolio, *if and only if* you always add more of stocks that seem relatively cheap for your portfolio (securities with too high an expected rate of return for their betas, i.e., that lie above your portfolio's line); and always reduce stocks that seem relatively expensive (securities with too low an expected rate of return for their betas, i.e., that lie below your portfolio's line).

16·5.C. The Line Parameters

You can determine the numbers a and b.

You can yet learn more about the "Line Formula 16.24": you can even determine the two constant numbers a and b. If $\beta_{i,\mathcal{E}}$ (the covariance) is zero for a particular investment i, then a is the expected rate of return of this investment. If a risk-free security is available it would have such zero covariance, so

$$\text{Portfolio } \mathcal{E} \text{ is MVE} \iff \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = a + b \cdot 0 = r_{\mathcal{F}} \ . \tag{16.25}$$

So you can replace a with $r_{\mathcal{F}}$,

$$\text{Portfolio } \mathcal{E} \text{ is MVE} \iff \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + b \cdot \beta_{\tilde{r}_i,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}} \ . \tag{16.26}$$

You can also consider an investment in portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ itself. (Naturally, buying more or less of it does not improve the portfolio performance.) The beta of portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ with respect to itself is 1. Therefore

$$\text{Portfolio } \mathcal{E} \text{ is MVE} \iff \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + b \cdot 1 = r_{\mathcal{F}} + b \ . \tag{16.27}$$

You can solve Formula 16.27 for b and find $b = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})$. Putting this all together, the line equation must be

$$\text{Portfolio } \mathcal{E} \text{ is MVE} \iff \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \tag{16.28}$$

Now, for any portfolio on the (upper half) of the MVE frontier, b is positive. This gives the line formula in 16.28 a nice intuitive interpretation. In order to find its way into your MVE portfolio, each security has to offer a reward (expected rate of return) that is appropriate for its contribution to your portfolio's risk:

The formula states that inside any MVE portfolio, each stock must offer an appropriate expected rate of return for its risk.

- A stock that fluctuates a lot with your $\mathcal{E}$ portfolio itself (having high rates of return when your portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ has high rates of return) has a high beta with respect to your portfolio. Such a stock does not help much in diversifying away the risk inside $\mathcal{E}$. Therefore, this stock must offer you a relatively high expected rate of return to enter your $\mathcal{E}$ portfolio.
- A stock whose returns tend to move in the opposite direction from $\mathcal{E}$'s returns has a negative beta. Therefore, this stock can offer a relatively low expected rate of return and it would still be sufficiently desirable to enter into your MVE portfolio.

This "appropriateness" relationship between risk and reward is a peculiar property of MVE portfolios. If you hold a portfolio that is not MVE, some of your stocks offer too low or too high an expected rate of return for their risk contributions to your portfolio.

This is not necessarily the case for non-MVE portfolios.

IMPORTANT: *All securities inside an MVE portfolio have to offer a fair reward for their risk-contribution. If even a single security offered either too much or too little reward for its risk, there would be a better portfolio, and the original portfolio would not have been MVE to begin with.*

Offering a fair risk/reward means that when the expected rates of return are graphed against the beta (with respect to the MVE portfolio $\mathcal{E}$) for each and every security, the relationship must be a straight line,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = a + b \cdot \beta_{\tilde{r}_i,\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}} \ , \tag{16.29}$$

where a is the risk-free rate $r_{\mathcal{F}}$ and b is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}$, so

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \ . \tag{16.30}$$

Be warned: we have covered a lot of variances and covariances in many different aspects now. Do not confuse them. To recap, the efficient frontier graphs in Figures 16.2–16.4 had standard deviation on the x-Axis. The lines in Figures 16.10 and 16.11 had β on the x-Axes. It is important to remember that *you are only interested in minimizing your overall portfolio variance, given your desired overall portfolio expected rate of return.* You are not interested in the expected rate of return of an individual stock per se. You are not interested in the standard deviation of an individual stock per se. You are not interested in the beta of an individual stock per se. The individual stock statistics—means, betas, etc.—are useful information only insofar as they help you in determining your best overall portfolio.

Keep The Forest in Mind: The goal is to find the best overall portfolio.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

DIGGING DEEPER: *If there is no risk-free security, then $r_{\mathcal{F}}$ is simply replaced by the expected rate of return of a zero-beta stock. For Portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ from Figure 16.11, this means that you could only state that the line is*

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) \;=\; a \;+\; [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - a] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \quad . \tag{16.31}$$

An Example to Illustrate This Formula.

How can you use the linear risk-reward relationship? Easy. Say, you own a mean-variance efficient portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ that has a mean $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})$ of 8% and a standard deviation of 4% (variance of 0.0016). Further, the risk-free rate of return is 6%. What is the relationship between the expected rate of return of each security and the beta of each security that is available to you? The answer is that Formula 16.24 states that every security should have an expected rate of return of

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; 6\% + [8\% - 6\%] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \quad . \tag{16.32}$$

You did not need to use the information about the 4% risk, although it might come in handy when you have to compute $\beta_{i,\mathcal{E}}$. For example, if a particular security—call it Oscar—has an expected rate of return of 10%, then it must have a beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$ of 2. Another security, Meyer, which has a beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$ of 3, must have an expected rate of return of 12%.

Solve Now!

Q 16.14 *Portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$ contains 4.41% S&P500, 68.9% IBM, and 26.7% Sony. Confirm Figure 16.11—that is, first compute and then plot the beta of each security with respect to $\mathcal{E}3$ against each security's expected rate of return. Note that you can either put together a historical data table, similar to how you computed it on Page 403; or you can use the covariance tools from Table 14.5 on Page 350, and the covariances themselves, e.g., from Page 386 or Table 14.1. Use the standard deviation of the rate of return on $\mathcal{E}3$ as given on Page 403 as* oldG *35.65%.*

Q 16.15 *Assume that you are told that portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ is MVE. Further, you are told that $\mathcal{E}$ has an expected rate of return of 14%. Finally, you are told that security 1 has an expected rate of return of 8% and a beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$ of 0.5. What expected rate of return would a security i with a beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$ of $\beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} = 2$ have to have, in order for portfolio $\mathcal{E}$ to be MVE (i.e., not able to be improved upon)?*

Q 16.16 *A new security, $\mathcal{E}5$, has appeared. Recall also the mean-variance efficient portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$:*

Portfolio	$w_{S\&P500}$	w_{IBM}	w_{Sony}	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$	$Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$
$\mathcal{E}5$	-0.146	0.734	0.286	18.00%	39.38%
$\mathcal{E}2$	+99.448%	+2.124%	-1.573%	10.00%	18.969%

$\mathcal{E}5$'s variance-covariance is

	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}5}$	$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}$
$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	3.622%	3.298%	4.772%	4.362%	3.698%
$\tilde{r}_{IBM}$	3.298%	15.034%	2.184%	4.866%	10.587%
$\tilde{r}_{Sony}$	4.772%	2.184%	81.489%	57.956%	22.124%
$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}5}$	4.362%	4.866%	57.956%	41.978%	17.974%
$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}$	3.698%	10.587%	22.124%	17.974%	12.707%

The new stock has a mean rate of return of 21.029%. Recall that the mean rate of return of the MVE portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ was 17%.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

(a) *Compute the beta of portfolio E5 with respect to portfolio E2 .*

(b) *Plot this new stock into Figure 16.11. Does it lie on the line? What does this mean?*

(c) *Add a little bit of stock E5 to portfolio E2 . That is, buy 99% of E2 and 1% of E5. Compute the risk and reward of this combination portfolio. Does this combination portfolio offer superior risk/reward characteristics than portfolio E2 alone?*

(d) *Subtract a little bit of stock E5 from portfolio E2 . That is, buy 101% of E2 and -1% of E5. Compute the risk and reward of this combination portfolio. Does this combination portfolio offer superior risk/reward characteristics than portfolio E2 alone?*

Q 16.17 *Repeat this question, but assume that the expected rate of return on stock E5 is only 10%.*

16·6. SUMMARY

This was a long and complex chapter, so this summary is more detailed than our usual chapter summaries:

1. Each portfolio is a point in a graph of overall portfolio expected rate of return (reward) against overall portfolio standard deviation (risk).

   Portfolios with similar compositions are close to one another.

2. For two securities, the possible risk vs. reward choices are a curve (called a hyperbola).

   For more than two securities, the possible risk vs. reward choices are a cloud of points.

3. The mean-variance efficient frontier is the upper left envelope of this cloud of points. You should not purchase a portfolio that is not on the MVE frontier.

4. In real life, computing the historical MVE Frontier is useful especially when choosing among a small set of asset classes. Otherwise, the historical standard deviations and expected rates of return are too unreliable to produce good forecasts of the future MVE Frontier.

5. If there is a risk-free security, the combination of the risk-free security and any other portfolio is a straight line.

6. If there is a risk-free security, the MVE Frontier is the line between the risk-free rate and the Tangency portfolio. You should not purchase a portfolio that is not on this line.

7. The combination of two MVE portfolios is also MVE.

8. If two MVE portfolios are known, finding other MVE portfolios is a matter of taking weighted combinations of these two MVE portfolios.

9. MVE portfolios have an important property: Each security *inside* the MVE portfolio offers a fair reward for its risk contribution.

   · If any single security were too cheap, you could do better by buying more of it—which means that the portfolio would not have been MVE to begin with.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

- If any single security were too expensive, you could do better by buying less of it—which means that the portfolio would not have been MVE to begin with.

10. The reward of each security is suitably measured by its expected rate of return. The risk of each security inside the MVE portfolio is suitably measured by its beta *with respect to* your specific MVE portfolio.

    To be fairly priced, every security in the portfolio must lie on a straight line when the expected rates of return are plotted against these betas. Algebraically, this means that the relation is

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; a + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - a] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \;, \tag{16.33}$$

    for every security i inside the MVE portfolio $\mathcal{E}$. If there is a risk-free security offering an expected (actual) rate of return $r_{\mathcal{F}}$, then this line becomes

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \;. \tag{16.34}$$

    This relationship will play a prominent role in the subsequent CAPM chapters.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

A. Advanced Appendix: Excessive Proofs

a. The Optimal Portfolio Weights Formula

Warning: Linear Algebra.

This section relies on algebra (matrices and vectors). This is necessary, because it is simply too messy to deal with 10,000 individually named securities, with their requisite 10,000 expected rates of return and the requisite 50 million covariance terms. Unless you already know linear algebra inside out, and/or you want to write a computer program to determine the MVE Frontier, please ignore this section. It is not necessary to an understanding of this book.

Variable Definitions and the Problem Setup.

Using matrix notation, the portfolio mean and variance can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &\equiv \vec{w}'\vec{m} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot Exp(\tilde{r}_i) \quad , \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &\equiv \vec{w}'\mathbf{S}\vec{w} \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}}\sum_{j=1}^{\mathcal{N}} w_i \cdot w_j \cdot \sigma_{i,j} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{16.35}$$

where $\mathbf{S}$ is the matrix of variance-covariances, $\vec{m}$ is the vector of expected rates of return on each security (which is easier to write than $\overrightarrow{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})}$), and $\vec{1}$ is a vector containing only the scalar 1 in each of N positions. A prime denotes a row rather than a column vector. The problem to solve is therefore

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min\limits_{\vec{w}} & \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) & \equiv & \vec{w}'\mathbf{S}\vec{w} & \text{minimize portfolio variance,} \\ \text{subject to} & \vec{1}'\vec{w} & = & 1 & \text{portfolio weights add to 1,} \\ & \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) & \equiv & \vec{m}'\vec{w} & \text{user wants mean return } \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}). \end{array} \tag{16.36}$$

This problem is usually solved via Lagrangian Optimization techniques. Introduce λ and γ as two new Lagrangian multiplier parameters, and optimize

$$\min_{\vec{w},\lambda,\gamma} L(\vec{w},\lambda,\gamma) \equiv \vec{w}'\mathbf{S}\vec{w} - \lambda \cdot \left(1 - \vec{1}'\vec{w}\right) - \gamma \cdot \left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) - \vec{m}'\vec{w}\right] \quad . \tag{16.37}$$

The MVE set is obtained by differentiating with respect to the weights $\vec{w}$ and the two Lagrangian constants.

Digging Deeper: *If you are not familiar with Lagrangian techniques, differentiating with respect to the two Lagrangian multipliers produces the two original constraints, thereby ensuring that the optimization really works across the constrained set only. For example, $\partial L/\partial\lambda = 1 - \vec{1}'\vec{w}$, which if set to zero (as it is in the first-order condition) reimposes the constraint $1 = \vec{1}'\vec{w}$.*

The solution are the optimal portfolio weights, $\vec{w}^*$.

After some manipulation, the solution is

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{w}^* &= \lambda^* \cdot \mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{1} + \gamma^* \cdot \mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{m} \\ \lambda^* &= \frac{C - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \cdot B}{D} \\ \gamma^* &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) \cdot A - B}{D}, \end{aligned} \tag{16.38}$$

where A, B, CF, and D are simple numerical constants (scalars):

$$\begin{aligned} A &\equiv \vec{1}'\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{1} \qquad B \equiv \vec{1}'\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{m} \\ C &\equiv \vec{m}'\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{m} \qquad D \equiv A \cdot C - B^2 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{16.39}$$

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Using this formula, you can obtain the formula relating the mean and variance, the parabola

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \vec{w}'^{*}\mathbf{S}\vec{w}^{*} = \vec{w}'^{*}\mathbf{S}\left(\lambda^{*}\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{1} + \gamma^{*}\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{m}\right) \\ &= \lambda^{*} + \gamma^{*}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) = \frac{A\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})^{2} + 2\cdot B\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + C}{D} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{16.40}$$

This formula generalizes Formula 16.4 on Page 385.

The minimum variance portfolio.

The weights of the minimum variance portfolio are worth writing down. They are the solution when the mean constraint $\vec{m}'\vec{w} = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})$ is not imposed. The minimum variance portfolio is then

$$\vec{w}^{*}_{\substack{\min\\ \text{var}}} = \frac{\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{1}}{A} \quad . \tag{16.41}$$

Note that this portfolio does not depend on any security's expected rate of return.

b. The Combination of MVE Portfolios is MVE — With Risk-Free Security.

Combining two MVE portfolios is MVE again.

It is difficult to prove that the combination of MVE portfolios is MVE—except in the special case in which a risk-free security exists. Call the MVE tangency portfolio "$\mathcal{T}$." Because $\mathcal{T}$ is MVE,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{i}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{i,T} \qquad \forall i \quad . \tag{16.42}$$

Now invest $w_{\mathcal{F}}$ in the risk-free security ($\mathcal{F}$) and $(1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})$ in $\mathcal{T}$. Call this portfolio $\mathcal{E}4$.

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4} = w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}} \quad . \tag{16.43}$$

Both $\mathcal{F}$ and $\mathcal{T}$ are MVE portfolios. The question is whether portfolio $\mathcal{E}4$ is also MVE. The expected rate of return of $\mathcal{E}4$ is

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4}) = w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}}) \quad . \tag{16.44}$$

The beta of any security i with respect to this portfolio $\mathcal{E}4$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}4} &= \frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{i},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4})} = \frac{\mathcal{C}ov[\tilde{r}_{i},\ w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}}]}{\mathcal{V}ar[w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}}]} \\ &= \frac{(1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{i},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}})}{(1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})^{2}\cdot\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}})} = \left(\frac{1}{1 - w_{\mathcal{F}}}\right)\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_{i},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}})}\right] \\ &= \frac{\beta_{i,\mathcal{T}}}{1 - w_{\mathcal{F}}} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{16.45}$$

because the risk-free rate has neither a variance nor a covariance with any other return series. The new portfolio $\mathcal{E}4$ is also MVE, if and only if

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{i}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{i,\mathcal{E}4} \quad \forall i \quad . \tag{16.46}$$

(A security i can have weight zero in the portfolio, so this really means for all securities.) Substitute Formula 16.44 for $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4})$, and Formula 16.45 for $\beta_{i,\mathcal{E}4}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{i}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left\{[w_{\mathcal{F}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4})] - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right\}\cdot\left(\frac{\beta_{i,T}}{1 - w_{\mathcal{F}}}\right) \\ &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [(1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4}) - (1 - w_{\mathcal{F}})\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\left(\frac{\beta_{i,T}}{1 - w_{\mathcal{F}}}\right) \\ &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}4}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{i,\mathcal{T}} \qquad \forall i \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{16.47}$$

This is true if and only if a portfolio is MVE. Therefore, the new portfolio $\mathcal{E}4$ is also MVE.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

c. The Combination of Mean-Variance Efficient Portfolios is Mean-Variance Efficient — Without Risk-Free Security.

The combination of any two risky portfolios is a parabola in mean-variance space.

There are many ways to prove that the combination of two MVE portfolios is also MVE. The brute-force method is the linear algebra solution from the previous section. In Formula 16.38, $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{1}$ is one portfolio (a vector of [unnormalized] portfolio weights), $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\vec{m}$ is another portfolio (another vector of portfolio weights). λ and μ determine the relative investment proportions in each.

Start with an "intuitive" proof.

The rest of this subsection is an alternative conceptual argument which may or may not help you to get some more intuition. Ignore it if you wish. Return to Formula 16.4, which shows that the relationship between two risky investment assets is

$$\mathcal{V}ar[\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})\ ] \ = \ a \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})^2 + b \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) + c \quad , \tag{16.48}$$

where a, b, and c are constants that depend on the particular expected rate of return between two securities, their individual variances, and their mutual covariance.

Being only a parabola means that the combination portfolio of any two MVE Frontier portfolios has to curve at the same rate as the MVE Frontier.

The question you should ponder is whether the combination of two MVE portfolios is itself MVE. You already saw the argument in Figure 16.6: it must be so. Imagine two portfolios on the MVE frontier—call them portfolios $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. Portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ could be on the upper half of the parabola, portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ could be its equal-variance counterpart on the lower part of the parabola. Name the actual minimum variance portfolio by the letter $\mathcal{E}0$. The question is whether the combination of the $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ portfolios traces out the MVE Frontier. You already know that the combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ is a quadratic equation. The previous section showed that the MVE Frontier is a quadratic equation, too. The question is whether the quadratic frontier between $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ can define a set other than the MVE Frontier. In a quadratic equation, three points define the parabola. Thus, if $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ are already chosen as two portfolios with equal risk, then all possible combinations of these portfolios would have to lie on a parabola, and the minimum variance portfolio based only on $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ would have to lie on the same horizontal line that the actual minimum variance portfolio $\mathcal{E}0$ lies on. What would happen if the combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ produced a minimum variance portfolio with lower variance than $\mathcal{E}0$? Then the original statement that $\mathcal{E}0$ is the minimum variance portfolio would be false. What would happen if the combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ produced a minimum variance portfolio with higher variance than $\mathcal{E}0$? Then, the parabola would overshoot the MVE Frontier when either $\mathcal{E}1$ or $\mathcal{E}2$ is shorted. However, then the real MVE Frontier would not be a simple quadratic equation, but one quadratic equation to the left of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ and another quadratic equation to the right of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$. You already know that this cannot be the case, either.

Therefore, any combination of any two risky MVE portfolios traces out the MVE Frontier.

Therefore, the combinations of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ trace out the MVE frontier. In other words, the combination of the two MVE risky portfolios $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ is the full and sole MVE. Any other portfolio, say $\mathcal{E}4$, that is a weighted combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}4$, can be represented by a unique weight on $\mathcal{E}1$ vs. $\mathcal{E}4$. Combining many arbitrary portfolios consisting of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$ is still a weighted combination of $\mathcal{E}1$ and $\mathcal{E}2$, and therefore still MVE.

d. Proof of the Linear Beta vs. Expected Rate of Return Relationship for MVE Frontier Portfolios

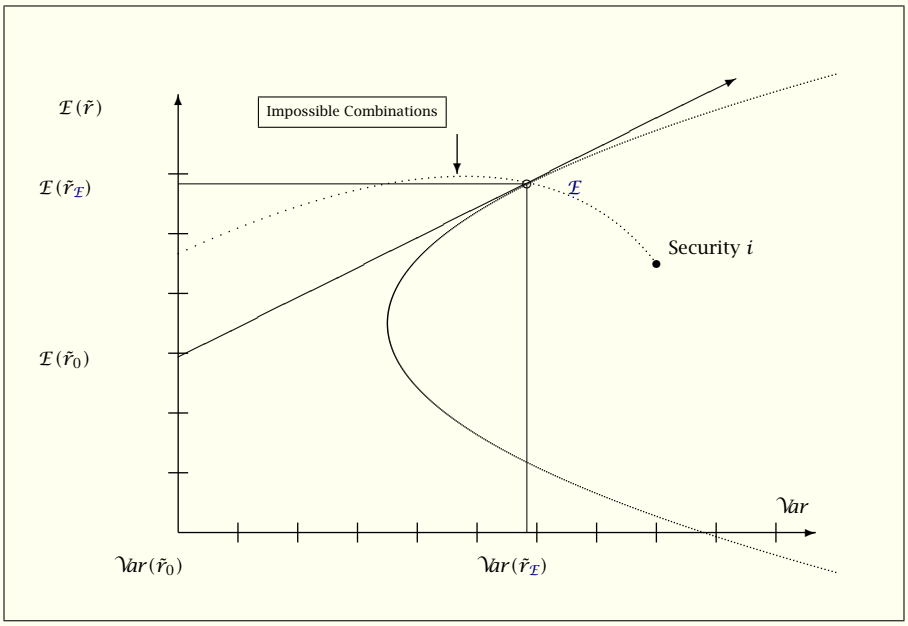
Consider the combination of the MVE Portfolio and a new security.

Our intent is to prove that all securities in an MVE portfolio must follow a linear beta-expected return relationship. It is the mathematical relationship that is required for every stock to be at just its optimal level, so that you are indifferent between purchasing one more or one less cent of this security. The derivation relies on the envelope theorem, which states that adding a little, little bit or subtracting a little, little bit at the optimal investment choice $w_i^\star$ should make only a minimal difference *for the optimal portfolio.* If the expected rate of return were too high or too low for a security, given its beta, you could do better than $\mathcal{E}$—either buying a little bit more or a little bit less of this security. But then, $\mathcal{E}$ would not be MVE.

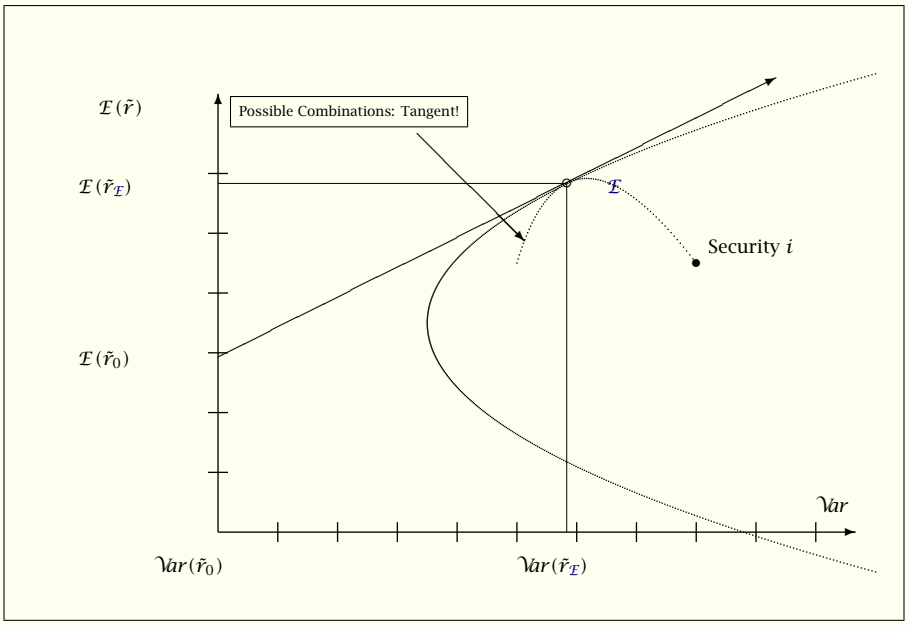
file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Figure 16.12. Possible and Impossible Combinations of a New Security with a Mean-Variance Efficient Portfolio

Impossible Combinations of a New Security with a Mean-Variance Efficient Portfolio:



Possible Combinations of a New Security with a Mean-Variance Efficient Portfolio:



file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

If you combine an MVEportfolio with a little bit of another portfolio, you should not be able to perform better.

Figures 16.12 shows a MVE portfolio called $\mathcal{E}$. You are considering adding w_i of a security i (security i *alone* does not have to be MVE). Could it be that the combination portfolio were not tangent to the frontier, i.e. where $w_i \approx 0$ and $w_{\mathcal{E}} \approx 1$? The answer must be no—or it would be possible to purchase a combination portfolio that outperforms the MVE Frontier. Perturbing the weight in the $\mathcal{E}$ by adding security i (where $w_i = 0$) has to result in a mean-variance trade-off that is tangent to the MVE Frontier, as shown in the graph in Figure 16.12. You can use this insight to prove the linear relationship between the expected rate of return on security i and its beta with respect to $\mathcal{E}$.

1. By inspection, the slope of the MVE Frontier at $\mathcal{E}$ is

$$\text{Slope} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0)}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - Sdv(\tilde{r}_0)} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0)}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})} , \tag{16.49}$$

   because $Sdv(\tilde{r}_0)$ is 0.

2. Consider an arbitrary combination portfolio (call it $\mathcal{P}$). It is defined by

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} = w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i + (1 - w_i) \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}} . \tag{16.50}$$

   The characteristics of this portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ are

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) + (1 - w_i) \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) \\ Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}}) &= \sqrt{w_i^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) + (1 - w_i)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) + 2 \cdot w_i \cdot (1 - w_i) \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})} . \end{aligned} \tag{16.51}$$

   How do the mean and standard deviation of $\mathcal{P}$ change with w_i?

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) , \\ \frac{\partial Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i} &= \left\{ \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) + w_i \cdot [\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) - 2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) + \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})]}{\sqrt{w_i^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_i) + (1 - w_i)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) + 2 \cdot w_i \cdot (1 - w_i) \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}} \right\} . \end{aligned} \tag{16.52}$$

   Now, compute the slope of the curve that defines the sets of combination portfolios $\mathcal{P}$, i.e., how its expected rate of return changes as its standard deviation is changed. Because you can only change w_i, you need to compute this slope by dividing the two derivatives in Formula 16.52:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} = \frac{\frac{\partial \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i}}{\frac{\partial Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i}} . \tag{16.53}$$

   What you really need to know is the slope when $w_i = 0$, i.e., when the weight is solely on the MVE Frontier portfolio $\mathcal{E}$. So, substitute $w_i = 0$ into this messy expression, and you get

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{w_i \to 0} \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})} \right] &= \frac{\lim_{w_i \to 0} \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i} \right]}{\lim_{w_i \to 0} \left[\frac{\partial Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}})}{\partial w_i} \right]} \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}{\left[\frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})} \right]} . \end{aligned} \tag{16.54}$$

3. You can now use the fact that the slope of portfolio $\mathcal{P}$ at $w_i = 0$ has to be the same slope as the MVE Frontier. That is, the line defined in equation 16.49 and the curve defined in equation 16.54 must be tangent.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Slope of Tangent Line} &= \text{Slope of Curve at } w_i = 0 \\ \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0)}{Sdv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}{\left[\frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})} \right]} . \end{aligned} \tag{16.55}$$

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

Use $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) = \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) \cdot \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})$ to simplify this equation to

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0) + \left[\frac{\mathcal{C}ov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}})}\right] \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0)] \\ &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0) + \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_0)] \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{16.56}$$

which is Formula 16.24 that we wanted to prove! This formula has to hold for every available security i. Indeed, a portfolio is MVE *if and only if* this equation holds for all available investment opportunities i.

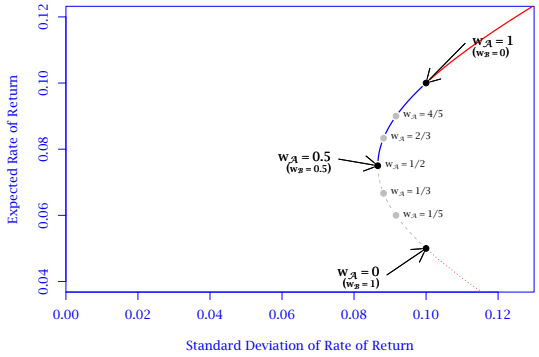
DIGGING DEEPER: *Figure 16.12 is drawn for better illustration, not for accuracy. To avoid eventually intersecting the MVE Frontier, the possible combinations would necessarily have to intersect $\mathcal{E}$ from below, not from above (as drawn).*

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: RP

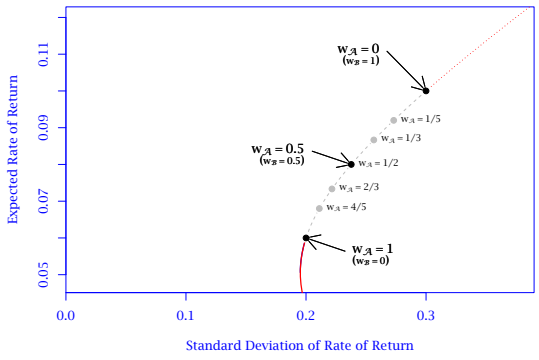
1. The risk is always 10%. By shorting the security with lower expected rate of return and buying the security with higher expected rate of return, you can invest in an opportunity with an infinite expected rate of return. This is *expected*, but it is not certain. (If you are curious: by choice of portfolio, you can guarantee yourself any positive rate of return, but you have still standard deviation, because you do not know whether you will earn a very large amount or a very large amount plus or minus a little. The only risk is now how much you will earn, not whether you will earn a positive or a negative return.)
2. Indeed, going long and going short is risk-free. However, it is also a zero-investment and zero-payoff strategy (except for frictions, of course).
3. The portfolios have the following risks:

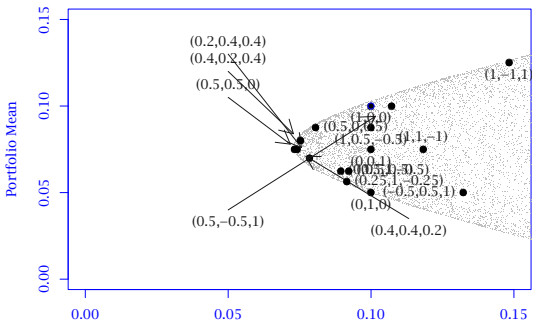
Weight $w_{\mathcal{A}}$	-1	0	$1/3$	$1/2$	$2/3$	1
Risk ($\sigma_{\mathcal{P}}$)	17.3%	10%	8.8%	8.7%	8.8%	10%

A graph of these portfolios (and weights in between) is:



4. First, compute the covariance: $Correlation_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{B}} = Cov_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{B}}/(Sdv_{\mathcal{A}} \cdot Sdv_{\mathcal{B}}) \Rightarrow Cov(\mathcal{A},\mathcal{B}) = 20\% \cdot 30\% \cdot 80\% = 0.048$. The MVE frontier is:





5.

6. The Minimum Variance Portfolio in this world is a portfolio that invests about 45% into security 1, about 38% into security 2, and the rest (about 17%) into security 3.
7. An investor with more taste for risk would choose a portfolio higher up along the MVE Frontier. The least risky portfolio with an expected rate of return of 11% invests about 97% into security 1, shorts 42% in security 2, and invests 45% into security 3.

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

8. No, because it is inside the main "cloud" of points. There are better portfolios that offer higher expected rates of return for the same amount of risk. The three "pure" portfolios, which invest in only one stock are not on the MVE Frontier, either. However, the portfolio that invests 100% in security 1 and nothing in the other two securities comes fairly close *by accident*.

9. You can save time if you work directly off combinations of portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ and portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$.

	$\mathcal{E}1$	$\mathcal{E}3$	$1/2\cdot\mathcal{E}1 + 1/2\cdot\mathcal{E}3$
S&P500	99.5%	36.1%	67.770%
IBM	2.1%	46.6%	24.386%
Sony	-1.6%	17.2%	7.844%
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	10.0%	15.0%	12.500%
$Sdv(\tilde{r})$	19.0%	67.6%	30.949%

10. You can save time if you work directly off combinations of portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ and portfolio $\mathcal{E}3$.

	$\mathcal{E}2$	$\mathcal{E}3$	$1/2\cdot\mathcal{E}1 + 1/2\cdot\mathcal{E}3$
S&P500	-90.6%	36.1%	-27.264%
IBM	135.7%	46.6%	91.172%
Sony	54.9%	17.2%	36.092%
$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$	25.0%	15.0%	20.000%
$Sdv(\tilde{r})$	19.0%	67.6%	59.266%

11. Still the same: 0.35. Indeed, this is the case for any MVE portfolio now.

12. If you sketch it, the intuition is that when the risk-free rate is lower, the tangency portfolio should have less risk and less reward. With $r_{\mathcal{F}} = 3\%$, the weight on portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ is now 81.606%. The tangency portfolio has a mean rate of return of 12.759% (excess return, 9.759%), and a standard deviation of 22.344%. The Sharpe ratio is about 0.4368.

13. If you sketch it, the intuition is that when the risk-free rate is higher, the tangency portfolio should have more risk and more reward. With $r_{\mathcal{F}} = 3\%$, the weight on portfolio $\mathcal{E}1$ is now -23.949%. The tangency portfolio has a mean rate of return of 28.592% (excess return, 19.592%), and a standard deviation of 82.607%. The Sharpe ratio is about 2371.

14. needs to be changed from 17% G to 17.5% H

$$\begin{aligned}
Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}3}) &= Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, 10.7\%\cdot\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}} + 64.5\%\cdot\tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}} + 24.8\%\cdot\tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\
&= 10.7\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) + 64.5\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) + 24.8\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\
&= 10.7\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}) + 64.5\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{IBM}}) + 24.8\%\cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_{\text{S\&P500}}, \tilde{r}_{\text{Sony}}) \\
&= 10.7\%\cdot 0.0362 + 64.5\%\cdot 0.0330 + 24.8\%\cdot 0.0477 \\
&\approx 0.0370
\end{aligned} \tag{16.57}$$

so the beta of S&P500 with respect to $\mathcal{E}3$ is $0.0370/0.3565^2 \approx 0.29$, which confirms the computations in Formula 16.23. The other betas are correct, too.

15.
$$8\% = \alpha + (14\% - \alpha)\cdot 0.5 \iff \alpha = 2\% \ . \tag{16.58}$$

Therefore,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = 2\% + (14\% - 2\%)\cdot 2 = 26\% \ . \tag{16.59}$$

16.

(a) $\beta_{\mathcal{E}5,\mathcal{E}2} = Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}5}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2})/\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) = 17.974\%/12.707\% = 1.414$.

(b) Yes, stock $\mathcal{E}5$ does lie exactly on the line. This means that portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ is still MVE: you cannot do better.

(c) The mean rate of return of this combination portfolio is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 99\%\cdot 17\% + 1\%\cdot 21.029\% = 17.040\%$. For $\mathcal{E}2$ to remain MVE, the combination portfolio must not be more risky. It is $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) = (99\%)^2\cdot 12.707\% + (1\%)^2\cdot 41.978\% + 2\cdot 1\%\cdot 99\% = 12.814\%$. This is higher than the variance of

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}$$

alone. Therefore, this combination portfolio is not superior to

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}$$

.

(d) The mean rate of return of this $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 101\%\cdot 17\% + (-1\%)\cdot 21.029\% = 16.960\%$. This portfolio already has lower mean, so it cannot dominate portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$. You do not even have to compute the risk. (The *Sdv* happens to be $\sqrt{0.126}$.)

17.

(a) Beta has not changed. $\beta_{\mathcal{E}5,\mathcal{E}2} = Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}5}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2})/\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}2}) = 17.974\%/12.707\% = 1.414$.

(b) No, stock $\mathcal{E}5$ does not lie on the line. This means that portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ is no longer MVE: you can do better.

(c) The mean rate of return of this combination portfolio is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 99\%\cdot 17\% + 1\%\cdot 10.0\% = 16.93\%$. This portfolio already has lower mean, so it cannot dominate portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$.

(d) The mean rate of return of this combination portfolio is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 101\%\cdot 17\% + (-1\%)\cdot 10.0\% = 17.07\%$. The variance of the combination portfolio is $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) = (101\%)^2\cdot 12.707\% + (-1\%)^2\cdot 41.978\% + 2\cdot(-1\%)\cdot 99\% = 12.603\%$. Thus, this combination portfolio has both higher mean and lower risk than portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$. Therefore, portfolio $\mathcal{E}2$ is no longer MVE!.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=optimalpfio-g.tex: LP

CHAPTER 17

THE CAPM: A COOKBOOK RECIPE APPROACH

How much expected return should investments offer?

last file change: Feb 5, 2006 (18:22h)

last major edit: Sep 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

The previous chapters explored *your* best investment choices. This chapter explores the economy-wide consequences if *all* important investors in the economy were to engage in such good investment choices—a fair relationship between expected rates of return and market beta, called the CAPM.

This chapter offers the "recipe version" of the CAPM. That is, it will show you how to use the model even if you do not know why it is the right model or where it comes from. Chapter 18 will explain and critically evaluate the theory behind the CAPM. Chapters 21 and 22 will show how to use the CAPM in a capital budgeting context.

Warning—this chapter is long and covers a lot of ground.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

17·1. The Opportunity Cost of Capital

Knowing what (all) other investors do is less important to an investor, than it is to a firm that wants to sell to investors.

Why is it important what portfolios other investors are buying? It is not important if you just want to invest and *buy* your own portfolio. Regardless of what other investors are holding, you can make your own investment decisions. But it is very important for corporations who want to *sell* investments. They need to know what investors in the aggregate will want.

The firm must know the opportunities available to investors to know what they like and dislike.

So put yourself into the shoes of a company that wants to act in the best possible way on behalf of its owner. The capital that investors have given the firm has an opportunity cost—investors could put their money into alternative projects elsewhere. Thus, a manager acting on behalf of the investors needs to determine what projects investors find worthwhile and what projects investors do not find worthwhile—which projects investors would want to buy and which projects they would want to pass up. If the firm's projects are not good enough, it is better to not adopt these projects and instead return the money to investors.

This is why the appropriate expected rate of return is called the cost of capital.

So, thinking about opportunity costs is how managers should determine the price at which their investors—representative investors in the economy—are willing to purchase projects. This is how managers should make the decision of what projects to take and what projects to avoid. This task of "finding a fair price" is the process of determining an appropriate "cost of capital" (expected rate of return) for a project. (See also Section 8·3.) The **Capital Asset Pricing Model** (or CAPM) provides this number.

IMPORTANT: *The* CAPM *stipulates an* ***opportunity cost of capital****. This opportunity cost helps corporate managers determine whether a particular project is beneficial or detrimental for the corporate investors—whether the corporation should take the project or instead return cash to its investors for better uses elsewhere.*

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: RP

17·2. THE CAPM

Higher Risk can mean higher reward...but not always.

For the most important CAPM insight, you do not need a formal model. After the principle that diversification reduces risk, the second most important principle of investments is that it takes extra compensation to get investors to accept extra risk. This does not mean that, as an investor, you can expect to receive extra compensation for risks that you do not need to take. You can easily avoid betting in Las Vegas, so you are unlikely to receive extra compensation—a high expected rate of return—when betting there. But it does mean that when a firm wants investors to accept risks that they cannot easily diversify away, the firm must offer a higher expected rate of return in order to get investors to accept this risk. The CAPM is a model that translates this principle into specific costs of capital.

17·2.A. The Premise and Formula

The CAPM Formula is similar to the Formula from Section 16·5, except the efficient portfolio is $\mathcal{M}$.

The basic premise of the Capital Asset Pricing Model is that investors—to whom the firm wants to sell its projects—are currently holding a well-diversified market portfolio. The CAPM further stipulates that this market portfolio is also mean-variance efficient. For a new project to be desired by investors and become part of their mean-variance efficient portfolio, it must offer a fair risk/reward trade-off. You already know from Section 16·5 what fair risk/rewards trade-offs mean in specific terms—a relationship between the project's market-beta and the project's expected rate of return. Recall that the project's risk contribution is measured by beta with respect to the investors' portfolio, here assumed to be the stock market $\mathcal{M}$,

$$\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \equiv \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} \quad . \tag{17.1}$$

It is common to call this the beta, rather than the market-beta. Now, this beta is a parameter which you are assumed to know—though in real life, you can only estimate it. Stocks that strongly move together with the market (high beta) are relatively risky, because they do not help investors—already holding the widely diversified market portfolio—to diversify. The project's reward contribution is measured by its expected rate of return, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$. In the CAPM, securities that contribute more risk have to offer a higher expected rate of return.

IMPORTANT: *The* CAPM *states that the relationship between risk contribution ($\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$) and reward ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$) is*

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad , \tag{17.2}$$

where $r_{\mathcal{F}}$ is the risk-free rate, and $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})$ is the expected rate of return on the stock market. Through its choice of beta, this formula assumes that the relevant portfolio held by investors is the overall market portfolio.

*$\left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right]$ is also called the **Equity Premium** or **Market Risk Premium**.*

The CAPM Formula is about the suitable risk/reward trade-off for an investor holding the market portfolio.

The CAPM specifically places little importance on the standard deviation of an individual investment (a stock, project, fund, etc.). A stock's own standard deviation is only a measure of how risky it is *by itself*, which would only be of relevance to an investor who holds just this one stock and nothing else. But our CAPM investors are smarter. They care about their overall portfolio risk, and keep it low by holding the widely diversified overall stock market portfolio. To them, the one new stock matters only to the extent that it alters their market portfolio's risk—which is best measured by the stock's beta.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

SIDE NOTE: Market-beta has an interesting use outside the CAPM. For example, if you believe IBM will outperform the stock market, but you do not know whether the stock market will do well or do poorly, you may want to **hedge** out the market risk. If β is 2, for example, it would mean that for each 10% rate of return in the stock market, IBM would move 20%. If you purchase \$100 in IBM and go short $\beta \cdot \$100 = \$200$ in the stock market, then you have neutralized the systematic stock market risk and therefore are left only with the idiosyncratic risk of IBM.

Solve Now!

Q 17.1 *If the stock market has gone up by 16%, and the risk-free rate of return is 4%, then what would you expect a firm i with a stock-market beta of 1.5 to have returned?*

The CAPM has three inputs.

So, to estimate an appropriate CAPM expected rate of return for a project or firm, i.e., the cost of capital, you need three inputs:

1. The risk-free rate of return, $r_{\mathcal{F}}$.
2. The expected rate of return on the market, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})$.
3. A firm's or project's beta with respect to the market, $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$.

As always, you are really interested in the future expected rate of return on the market, and the future beta of a firm/project with respect to the market, and not in the past average rates of return or beta. And, as always, you usually have no choice but to rely on estimates based on historical data. In Section 17·4, we shall discuss in more detail how to best estimate each CAPM input. But first we will explore the model itself, assuming we already know the inputs.

17·2.B. The Security Markets Line (SML)

An example of what rate of returns individual securities should offer.

Let us apply the CAPM in a specific example. Assume that the risk-free rate is 3% per year, and that the stock market offers an expected rate of return of 8% per year. The CAPM formula then states that a stock with a beta of 1 should offer an expected rate of return of $3\% + (8\% - 3\%)\cdot 1 = 8\%$ per year; that a stock with a beta of 0 should offer an expected rate of return of $3\% + (8\% - 3\%)\cdot 0 = 3\%$ per year; that a stock with a beta of $1/2$ should offer an expected rate of return of $3\% + (8\% - 3\%)\cdot 0.5 = 5.5\%$ per year; that a stock with a beta of 2 should offer an expected rate of return of $3\% + (8\% - 3\%)\cdot 2 = 13\%$ per year; and so on.

The Security Markets Line, or SML, is just the CAPM formula.

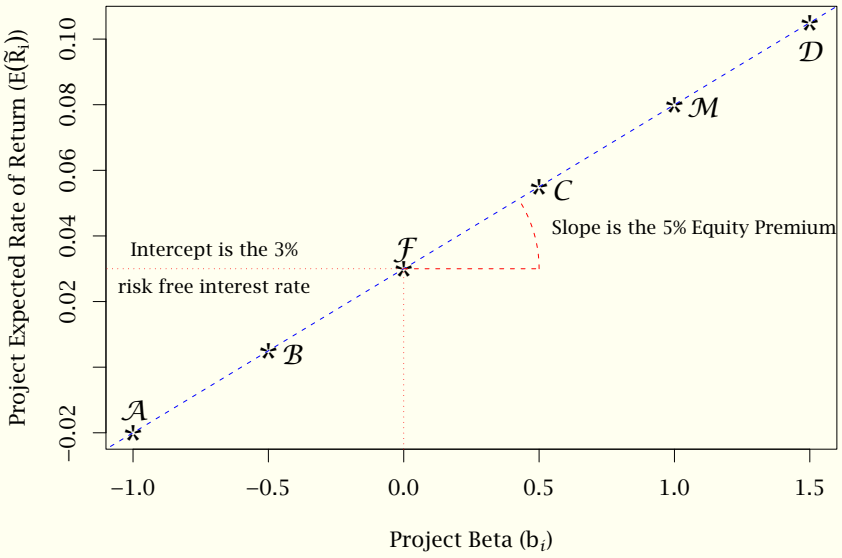
The CAPM equation is often graphed as the **security markets line**, which shows the relationship between the expected rate of return of a project and its beta. Figure 17.1 draws a first security markets line, using stocks named $\mathcal{A}$ through $\mathcal{F}$. Each stock (or project) is a point in this coordinate system. Because all securities properly follow the CAPM formula in our example, they must lie on a straight line. In other words, the SML line is just a graphical representation of the CAPM Formula 17.2 on Page 423. The slope of this line is the equity premium, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}$, the intercept is the risk-free rate, $r_{\mathcal{F}}$.

The "Security Market Line" in an Ideal CAPM World

Alas, in the real world, even if the CAPM holds, you would not have the data to draw Figure 17.1. The reason is that you do not know true expected returns and true market-betas. So, Figure 17.2 plots two graphs in a perfect CAPM world. Graph (A) repeats Figure 17.1 and presumes you know CAPM inputs—the true market-betas and true expected rates of return—although in truth you really cannot observe them. This line is perfectly straight. In Graph (B), presume you know only observables—estimates of expected returns and betas, presumably based mostly on historical data averages. Now, you can only plot an "estimated security market line," not the "true security market line." Of course, you hope that our historical averages are good, unbiased estimates of true market-beta and true expected rates of return (and this is a big if), so the line will look at least approximately straight. (Section 13·1 already discussed some of the pitfalls.) A workable version of the CAPM thus can only state that there should roughly be a linear relationship between the data-estimated market beta and the data-estimated expected rate of return, just as drawn here.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: RP

Figure 17.1. The Security Market Line For Securities $\mathcal{A}$–$\mathcal{F}$



Stock	$\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$
$\mathcal{A}$	−1.0	−2.0%
$\mathcal{B}$	−0.5	0.5%
$\mathcal{F}$	0.0	3.0%

Stock	$\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$	$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i)$
$\mathcal{C}$	0.5	5.5%
$\mathcal{M}$	1.0	8.0%
$\mathcal{D}$	1.5	10.5%

This graph plots the CAPM relation $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 3\% + (8\% - 3\%) \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$. That is, we assume that the risk-free rate is 3%, and the equity premium is 5%. $\mathcal{M}$ can be the market, or any security with a $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 1$. $\mathcal{F}$ can be the risk-free rate or any security with a $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 0$.

Solve Now!

Q 17.2 *The risk-free rate is 4%. The expected rate of return on the stock market is 7%. What is the appropriate cost of capital for a project that has a beta of 3?*

Q 17.3 *The risk-free rate is 4%. The expected rate of return on the stock market is 12%. What is the appropriate cost of capital for a project that has a beta of 3?*

Q 17.4 *The risk-free rate is 4%. The expected rate of return on the stock market is 7%. A corporation intends to issue publicly traded bonds which promise a rate of return of 6%, and offer an expected rate of return of 5%. What is the implicit beta of the bonds?*

Q 17.5 *Draw the security market line if the risk-free rate is 5% and the equity premium is 4%.*

Q 17.6 *What is the equity premium, both mathematically and intuitively?*

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Figure 17.2. The Security Market Line in an Ideal CAPM World

Historical average returns and historical betas are estimated from the data—and hopefully representative of the true underlying mean returns and true betas, which in turn means that they are also indicative of the future mean returns and betas.

17·3. Using the CAPM Cost of Capital in the NPV Context: Revisiting The Default Premium and Risk Premium

We usually use the CAPM expected rate of return in the NPV denominator.

An important reason why you worked through the CAPM in the first place was to obtain the quantities that you need in the denominator of the NPV formula,

$$\text{NPV} = \text{CF}_0 + \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_1)}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{0,1})} + \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_2)}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{0,2})} + \ldots \tag{17.3}$$

The CAPM tells you that cash flows that correlate more with the overall market are of less value to your investors, and therefore require a higher expected rate of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$) in order to pass muster (well, the hurdle rate).

Do not lose the forest: the CAPM has nothing to do with default risk.

Although mentioned before in Chapter 5, it is important to reiterate that the CAPM expected rate of return (based on beta) does not take default risk into account. In the NPV formula, the default risk enters the valuation in the expected cash flow numerator, not in the expected rate of return denominator. So, recall the important box on Page 92, which decomposed rates of return into three parts:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Promised Rate of Return} &= \text{Time Premium} + \text{Default Premium} + \text{Risk Premium} \ . \\
\text{Actual Earned Rate} &= \text{Time Premium} + \text{Default Realization} + \text{Risk Premium} \ . \\
\text{Expected Rate of Return} &= \text{Time Premium} + \text{Expected Risk Premium} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{17.4}$$

The CAPM gives you the expected rate of return, which consists of the time premium and the expected risk premium. It does not give you any default premium. This is important enough to put in a box:

> **IMPORTANT**: *The CAPM provides an expected rate of return. It does not include a default premium. The probability of default must be handled in the NPV numerator through the expected cash flow, and not in the NPV denominator through the expected rate of return.*

A specific example.

How do you put the default risk and CAPM risk into one valuation? Here is an example. Say you want to determine the PV of a corporate zero bond that has a beta of 0.25, and promises to deliver \$200 next year. This bond pays off 95% of the time, and 5% of the time it totally defaults. Assume that the risk-free rate of return is 6% per annum, and the expected rate of return on the market is 10%. Therefore, the CAPM states that the expected rate of return on your bond must be

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Bond},t=0,1}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - r_{\mathcal{F}}) \cdot \beta_{\text{Bond},\mathcal{M}} = 6\% + 4\% \cdot 0.25 = 7\% \ . \tag{17.5}$$

Of course, this has not yet taken the bond's default risk into account. You must still adjust the numerator (promised payments) for the probability of default—you expect to receive not \$200, but

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{\text{Bond},t=1}) &= 95\% \cdot \$200 + 5\% \cdot 0 = \$190. \\
&= \mathcal{P}rob(\text{No Default}) \cdot \text{Promise} + \mathcal{P}rob(\text{Default}) \cdot \text{Nothing} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{17.6}$$

Therefore, the CAPM states that the value of the bond is

$$\text{PV}_{\text{Bond},t=0} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}_{\text{Bond},t=1})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Bond},t=0,1})} = \frac{\$190}{1+7\%} \approx \$177.57 \ . \tag{17.7}$$

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Given this price, you can also compute the promised (or quoted) rate of return on this bond,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Promised } r_{0,1} &= \frac{\$200 - \$177.57}{\$177.57} \approx 12.6\% \\ &= \frac{\text{Promised CF}_1 - \text{CF}_0}{\text{CF}_0} . \end{aligned} \tag{17.8}$$

Although you rarely need to decompose quoted interest rates in practice, quantifying the three components in this example helps to better conceptualize the magnitudes of the components of quoted rates. For your bond, the time-premium of money is 6% per annum—it is the rate of return that an equivalent-term Treasury bond offers. The time-premium plus the risk-premium is provided by the CAPM, and it is 7% per annum. Therefore, 1% per annum is your "average" compensation for your willingness to hold this risky bond, rather than the risk-free Treasury bond. The remaining 12.6% − 7% ≈ 5.6% per annum is the default premium: you do not expect to earn money from this part "on average;" you only earn it if the bond does not default.

$$\begin{aligned} 12.6\% &= 6\% + 5.6\% + 1\% . \\ \text{Promised Interest Rate} &= \text{Time Premium} + \text{Default Premium} + \text{Risk Premium} . \end{aligned} \tag{17.9}$$

As in the example, in the real world, most bonds have fairly small market betas and thus risk premia. Instead, most of the premium that risky bonds quote above equivalent risk-free Treasury rates is due to default risk.

SIDE NOTE: In the real world, corporate bonds also have important liquidity premia built-in, which compensates investors for not being able to easily buy/sell these securities. The broker/market-makers tend to earn this premium. The liquidity premium differs across investors: retail investors are charged higher liquidity premia than bond funds. As a retail investor, it is best not to purchase individual bonds.

Solve Now!

Q 17.7 *A corporate bond with a beta of 0.2 will pay off next year with 99% probability. The risk-free rate is 3% per annum, the risk-premium is 5% per annum. What is the price of this bond, and its promised rate of return?*

Q 17.8 *Continue: Decompose the bond's quoted rate of return into its components.*

Q 17.9 *Going to your school has total additional and opportunity costs of $30,000 this year and up-front. With 90% probability, you are likely to graduate from your school. If you do not graduate, you have lost the entire sum. Graduating from the school will increase your 40-year lifetime annual salary by roughly $5,000 per year, but more so if the stock market rate of return is high than when it is low. For argument's sake, assume that your extra-income beta is 1.5. Assume the risk-free rate is 3%, the equity premium is 5%. What is the value of your education?*

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

17·4. ESTIMATING CAPM INPUTS

Let us now discuss how we can obtain reasonable estimates of the three inputs into the CAPM formula,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad . \tag{17.10}$$

17·4.A. The Equity Premium $\left(\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right)$

The equity premium must be provided as a CAPM input. Estimates are all over the map; reasonable ones can range from 2% to 8% per year.

The most-difficult-to-estimate input in the CAPM is the equity premium. It measures the extra expected rate of return that risky projects are offering above and beyond what risk-free projects are offering. The value you choose for the equity premium can have a tremendous influence on your estimated costs of capital. Of course, the CAPM model assumes that you know the *expected* rate of return on the market, not that you have to estimate it. Yet, in real life, the equity premium is not posted anywhere, and *no one really knows the correct number*. There are a number of methods to guesstimate it—but they unfortunately do not tend to agree with one another. This leaves me with two choices: I can either throw you one estimate and pretend it is the only one, or I can tell you the different methods that lead to differing estimates. I prefer the latter, if only because the former would eventually leave you startled to find that someone else has used another number and has come up with another cost of capital estimate. We will discuss the intuition behind each method and the specific estimate the intuition would suggest. In this way, you can make up your own mind as to what you deem to be an appropriate equity premium estimate.

Method 1: Historical Averages.

Historical Averages I: The first estimation method simply relies on historical average equity premia as good indicators of future risk premia. As of 2003, the arithmetic average equity premium since 1926 was about **8.4%** per annum. However, if you start computing the average in 1869, the equity premium estimate drops to around **6.0%**. Maybe you should start in 1771? Or 1971? Which is the best estimation period? No one really knows what the right start date should be. If you choose too few years, your sample average could be unreliable. For example, what happened over the last 20 or 30 years might just have been happen-stance and not representative of the statistical process driving returns. Your estimate of the mean would carry a lot of uncertainty. The more years you use, the lower would be your uncertainty (standard error about the mean). However, if you choose too many years, the data in the earlier part of your sample period may be so different from those today that they are no longer relevant—that is, you may incorrectly believe that the experience of 1880 still has relevance today.

Method 2: Inverse Historical Averages.

Historical Averages II: The second estimation method looks at historical equity premia in the opposite light. You can draw on an analogy about bonds—if stocks become more desirable, perhaps because investors have become less risk-averse, then more investors compete to own them, drive up the price, and thereby lower the future expected rates of return. High historical rates of return are therefore indicative of low future expected rates of returns. An extreme version thereof may even that high past equity premia are not indicative of high future equity premia, but rather indicative of **bubbles** in the stock market. The proponents of the bubble view usually cannot quantify the appropriate equity premium, except to argue that it is lower after recent market run ups—exactly the opposite of what proponents of the *Historical Averages I* argue.

SIDE NOTE: A bubble is a run-away market, in which rationality has temporarily disappeared. There is a lot of debate as to whether bubbles in the stock market ever occurred. A strong case can be made that technology stocks experienced a bubble from around 1998 to 2000. No one has yet come up with a rational story based on fundamentals that can explain *both* why the Nasdaq Index had climbed from 2,280 in March 1999 to 5,000 on March 27, 2000, *and* why it then dropped back to 1,640 on April 4, 2001.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Method 3: Dividend or Earnings Yields.

Current Predictive Ratios: The third method tries to actively predict the stock market rate of return with historical dividend yields (i.e., the dividend payments received by stockholders). Higher dividend yields should make stocks more attractive and therefore predict higher future equity premia. The equity premium estimation is usually done in two steps: first, you must estimate a statistical regression that predicts next year's equity premium with this year's dividend yield; then, you substitute the currently prevailing dividend yield into your estimated regression to get a prediction. Unfortunately, as of 2003, current dividend yields are so low that the predicted equity premia are negative—which is not a sensible number. Variations of this method have used interest rates of earnings yields, typically with similar results. In any case, the evidence suggests that this method has yielded poor predictions—for example, it had predicted low equity premia in the 1990s, which was a period of superb stock market performance.

Method 4: What is reasonable reward for risk?

Philosophical Prediction: The fourth method wonders how much rate of return is required to entice reasonable investors to switch from bonds into stocks. Even with an equity premium as low as 3%, over 25 years, an equity investor would end up with more than twice the money of a bond investor. Naturally, in an efficient market, nothing comes for free, and the reward for risk-taking should be just about fair. So, equity premia of 8% just seem too high for the amount of risk observed in the stock market. This philosophical method generally suggests equity premia of about **1%** to **3%**.

Method 5: Just ask.

Consensus Survey: The fifth method just asks people or experts what they deem reasonable. The ranges can vary widely, and seem to correlate with very recent stock market returns. For example, in late 2000, right after a huge run up in the stock market, surveys by Fortune or Gallup/Paine-Webber had investors expect equity premia as high as 15%/year. (They were acutely disappointed: the stock market dropped by as much as 30% over the following two years. Maybe they just got the sign wrong?!) The consulting firm, McKinsey, uses a standard of around 5% to 6%, and the social security administration uses a standard of around 4%. In a survey of finance professors in August 2001, the common equity premium estimate ranged between **3.5%** for a 1-year estimate to **5.5%** for a 30-year estimate. A more recent joint poll by Graham and Harvey (from Duke) and CFO magazine found that the 2005 average estimate of CFOs was around 3% per annum, although there was quite some dispersion in this number.

Some recent estimates.

What to choose? Welcome to the club! No one knows the true equity premium. On Monday, February 28, 2005, the C1 page of the WSJ reported the following average annual after-inflation forecasts over the next 44 years:

ANECDOTE: The Power of Compounding
Assume you invested $1 in 1925. How much would you have in December 2001? If you had invested in large-firm stocks, you would have ended up with $2,279 (10.7% compound average return). If you had invested in long-term government bonds, you would have ended up with $51 (5.3%). If you had invested in short-term Treasury bills, you would have ended up with $17 (3.8%). Of course, inflation was 3.1%, so $1 in 2001 was more like $0.10 in real terms in 1926. Source: Ibbotson Associates, Chicago. U

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

Name	Organization	Stocks	Gov. bonds	Corp. bonds	Equity Premium
William Dudley	Goldman Sachs	5.0%	2.0%	2.5%	3.0%
Jeremy Siegel	Wharton	6.0%	1.8%	2.3%	4.2%
David Rosenberg	Merrill Lynch	4.0%	3.0%	4.0%	1.0%
Ethan Harris	Lehman Brothers	4.0%	3.5%	2.5%	0.5%
Robert Shiller	Yale	4.6%	2.2%	2.7%	2.4%
Robert LaVorgna	Deutsche Bank	6.5%	4.0%	5.0%	2.5%
Parul Jain	Nomura	4.5%	3.5%	4.0%	1.0%
John Lonski	Moody's	4.0%	2.0%	3.0%	2.0%
David Malpass	Bear Stearns	5.5%	3.5%	4.3%	2.0%
Jim Glassman	J.P. Morgan	4.0%	2.5%	3.5%	1.5%
				Average	2.0%

The equity premium is usually quoted with respect to a short-term interest rate, because these are typically safer and therefore closer to the risk-free rate that is in the spirit of the CAPM. This is why you may want to add another 1% to the equity premium estimate in this table—long-term government bonds usually carry higher interest rates than their short-term counterparts. On the other hand, if your project is longer term, you may want to adopt a risk-free rate that is more similar to your project's duration, and thus prefer the equity premium estimates in this table.

Pick a good estimate, and use it for all similar-horizon projects.

You now know that noone can tell you one authoritative number for the equity premium. Everyone is guessing, but there is no way around it—you have to take a stance on the equity premium. I am only able to give you the arguments that you should contemplate when you are picking *your* number. I can however also give you my own take: First, I have my doubts that equity premia will return to the historical levels of 8% anytime soon. (The twentieth century was the American Century for a good reason: there were a lot of positive surprises for American investors.) So, I personally prefer equity premia estimates between 2% and 4%. Interestingly, it appears that I am not the only one, as the above table shows. (It is my impression that there is relatively less dispersion in equity premia forecasts today than there was just five to ten years ago.) But realize that reasonable individuals can choose equity premia estimates as low as 1% or as high as 8%—of course, I personally find such estimates less believable the further they are from my own, personal range. And I find anything outside this 1% to 8% range just too tough to swallow. Second, whatever equity premium you choose, *be consistent*. Do not use 3% for investing in one asset (say, project A), and 8% for investing in another (say, project B). Being consistent will often reduce your relative mistakes in choosing one project over another.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

The CAPM is about relative pricing, not absolute pricing.

Unfortunately, you cannot allow our limited knowledge of the equity premium stop you from using the CAPM—in fact, you cannot allow it to stop you from making investment choices. Yes, the equity premium may be difficult to estimate, but there is really no way around taking a stance. Indeed, you can think of the CAPM as telling you the *relative* expected rate of return for projects, not their *absolute* expected rate of return. Given an estimate of how much risky projects should earn relative to non-risky projects, the CAPM can tell you the right costs of capital for projects of riskiness "beta." But the basic judgment of the appropriate spread between risky and non-risky projects is left up to you.

No way around it: the equity premium is the most important number in finance, and we need to pull it out of our hats.

The need to judge the appropriate reward for risky projects relative to risk-free projects is not even just exclusive to the CAPM and corporations. It also matters for your personal investments: if you believe that the equity premium is high, you should allocate a lot of your personal assets to purchasing stocks rather than bonds. So, it is not only because of the CAPM formula that the equity premium may be the single most interesting number in finance.

We shall use the S&P500 as our market.

Finally, I have been deliberately vague about the "market." In CAPM theory, the market should be all investable assets in the economy. In practice, we typically use only a stock market index. And among stock market indexes, it often does not matter too much which index is used—be it the value-weighted stock market index, the S&P 500, or the Dow-Jones 30. The S&P500 is perhaps the most often used standin for the stock market, because its performance is posted everywhere and historical data are readily available. In sum, using the S&P500 as the market is a reasonable simplification from the perspective of a corporate executive.

Solve Now!

Q 17.10 *What are appropriate equity premium estimates? What are not? What kind of reasoning are you relying on?*

ANECDOTE: The American Century?
Was this really the "American Century?"

The inflation-adjusted compound rate of return in the United States was about 6% per year from 1920 to 1995. In contrast, an investor who would have invested in Romania in 1937 would have experienced not only the German invasion and Soviet domination, but also a real annual capital appreciation of about −27% per annum over the 4 years of Hungarian stock market existence (1937–1941). Similar fates befell many other East European countries—but even countries not experiencing political disasters often proved to be less stellar investments. For example, Argentina had a stock market from 1947 to 1965, even though its only function seems to have been to wipe out its investors. Peru tried three times: from 1941 to 1953, its stock market investors lost all their money. From 1957 to 1977, its stock market investors again lost all their money. But three times is a charm: From 1988 to 1995, its investors earned a whopping 63% real rate of return. India's stock market started in 1940, and offered its investors a real rate of return of just about −1% per annum. Pakistan started in 1960, and offered about −0.1% per annum.

Even European countries with long stock market histories and no political trouble did not perform as well as the United States. For example, Switzerland and Denmark earned nominal rates of return of about 5% per annum from 1921 to 1995, while the United States earned about 8% per annum.

The United States stock market was indeed an unusual above-average performer in the twentieth century. Will the twenty-first century be the Chinese century?

Source: Goetzmann and Jorion.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

17·4.B. The Risk-Free Rate and Multi-Year Considerations ($r_{\mathcal{F}}$)

Which risk-free rate?

The second input of interest is the risk-free rate of return. The risk-free rate is relatively easily obtained from Treasury bonds. There is one small issue, though—which one? What if Treasury bonds yield 2%/year over 1 year, 4%/year over 10 years, and 5%/year over 30 years? How would you use the CAPM? Which interest rate should you pick in a multi-year context?

Advice: Pick the closest-term interest rate.

Actually, the CAPM offers no guidance, because it has no concept of more than one single time-period. It therefore does not understand why there is a yield curve (different expected rates of return over different horizons). However, from a practical perspective, it makes sense to use the yield on a Treasury bond that is of similar length as a project's approximate lifespan. So, a good heuristic is to pick the risk-free rate closest in some economic sense (maturity or duration) to our project. For example, to value a machine that produces for three years, it makes sense to use an average of the 1-year, 2-year, and 3-year risk-free interest rates, perhaps 2.5% per annum. On the other hand, if you have a 10-year project, you would probably use 4% as your risk-free rate of return. This heuristic has an intuitive justification, too—think about the opportunity cost of capital for a zero-beta investment. If you are willing to commit your money for 10 years, you could earn the 10-year Treasury rate of return. It would be your opportunity cost of capital. If you are willing to commit your money only for 3 months, you could only earn the 3-month Treasury rate—a lower opportunity cost for your capital. One important sidenote, however, is that you should use the same risk-free rate in the calculation of the equity premium—so, if you use a higher risk-free rate because your project is longer-term, you would want to use a lower equity premium where the risk-free rate enters negatively.

Solve Now!

Q 17.11 *What is today's risk-free rate for a 1-year project? For a 10-year project?*

Q 17.12 *Which risk-free rate should you be using for a project that will yield $5 million each year for 10 years?*

17·4.C. Investment Projects' Market Betas ($\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$)

Unlike the risk-free rate and the equity premium, beta is specific to each project.

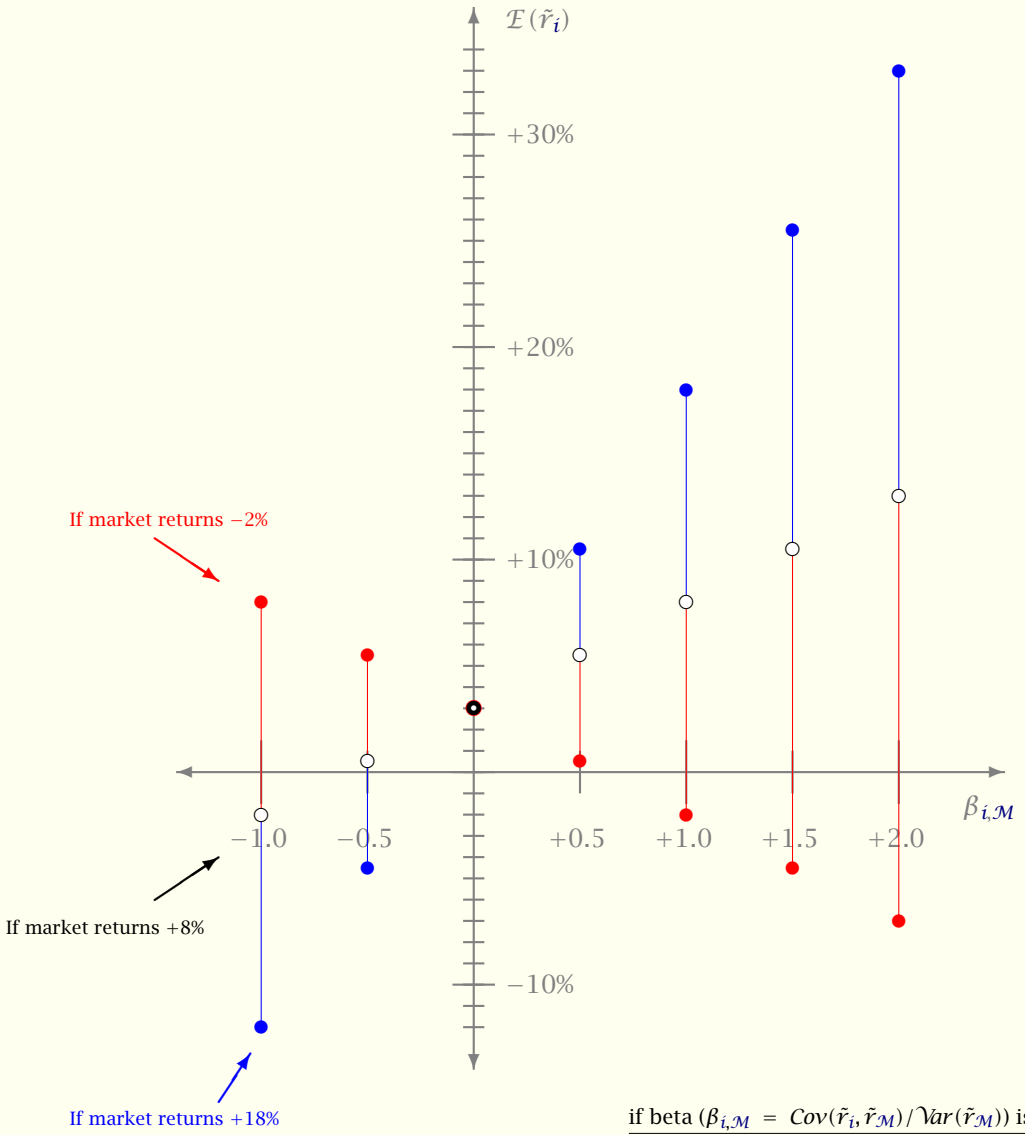
Finally, you must estimate your project's **market beta**, which measures how your project rates of return fluctuate with the market. Unlike the previous two inputs, which are the same for every project/stock in the economy, the beta input depends on your specific project characteristics: different investments have different betas.

Beta creates both a mean rate of return, and an "amplification factor" of the market rate of return.

Let us gain some intuition on how the market-beta should relate the returns of individual stocks to those of the market. The market-beta has both an influence on the expected return of projects and on the range of observed returns. (This works through the part of a stock's price movement volatility that is caused by the market. There is also very important idiosyncratic price movement, but we shall ignore it in this example.) Say the risk-free rate is 3%, the expected rate of return on the market is 8%, and therefore the equity premium is 5%. A stock with a beta of -1 would therefore have an expected rate of return of -2%, a stock with a beta of $+2$ would have an expected rate of return of $+13\%$. However, more than likely, the stock market rate of return will not be exactly 8%. So, let us entertain one positive and one negative market scenario as a standin for market volatility. If the stock market were to drop by 10% relative to its mean of 8%—i.e., return an absolute -2%—then our first stock would not earn -2%, but $-2\% + \beta_i \cdot (\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})) = -2\% + (-1) \cdot (-2\% - 8\%) = +8\%$, and our second stock would not earn $+13\%$, but $+13\% + (+2) \cdot (-10\%) = -7\%$. Conversely, if the stock market were to increase by 10% relative to its mean—i.e. return an absolute $+18\%$—we would expect our negative beta stock to do really poorly ($-2\% + \beta_i \cdot (\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})) = -2\% + (-1) \cdot (+18\% - 8\%) = -12\%$) and our positive beta stock to do really well ($+33\%$).

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Figure 17.3. The Effect of Market Beta on Stock Returns in Good and Bad Markets



	if beta ($\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_\mathcal{M})/Var(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{M})$) is			
	−1.0	0.0	+1.0	+2.0
The stock's expected rate of return	−2%	+3%	+8%	+13%
If market outperforms its mean of 8% by 10% ($\tilde{r}_\mathcal{M} = +18\%$), then our stock $\tilde{r}_i$ is expected to return	−2% − 10% = −12%	3% ± 0% = 3%	8% + 10% = 18%	13% + 20% = 33%
If market underperforms its mean of 8% by 10% ($\tilde{r}_\mathcal{M} = -2\%$), then our stock $\tilde{r}_i$ is expected to return	−2% + 10% = +8%	3% ± 0% = 3%	8% − 10% = −2%	13% − 20% = −7%

Each line represents the range of return outcomes for one stock (with one particular market beta) if the market rate of return were to be between −10% and +10%. The black circle is the unconditional expected rate of return (or conditional on the market turning in its expected performance of 8%)—i.e., points on the security markets line $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_\mathcal{F} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_\mathcal{M}) - r_\mathcal{F}]\cdot\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 3\% + 5\%\cdot\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$. The red solid circles show the expected rate of return conditional on a market rate of return of −10%. Stocks with negative beta are expected to perform well in this case. The blue solid circles show the expected rate of return conditional on a market rate of return of +10%. Stocks with a negative beta are expected to perform poorly in this case.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

In Figure 17.3, we repeat this computation for stocks with different market-betas. It shows how they are expected to perform, conditional on whether the market beats its mean (of 8% by 10%, i.e., +18%), hits its mean (of 8%), or misses its mean (of 8% by 10%, i.e., −2%). You can see how beta determines both the stock's expected rate of return—the mean given by the CAPM—and how it dampens or amplifies the effect of the stock market performance on our stock. The latter is really just our definition of market-beta—it measures how a project comoves with the stock market. The sign of the market-beta determines whether the investment tends to move with or against the stock market. And it is of course the CAPM that posits how the expected rate of return should be increasing with the market-beta.

Beta can be thought of as an amplifier of market movements.

Depending on the project for which you need a beta, the estimate can be easy or difficult to obtain. We now discuss the three most common sources for beta estimates.

Our plan: discuss various methods to find betas

17·4.D. Betas For Publicly Traded Firms

For publicly trading stocks, finding a market-beta is easy. There are many services (e.g., Yahoo!*Finance*) that publish betas. The average beta in the stock market is 1, and most stocks have betas somewhere between about 0 and 3. Large, low-tech firms tend to have lower betas than small, high-tech firms, but this is not always the case. In Chapter 13, we have already talked about beta estimation, and even about shrinkage to improve on estimates. Some sample market betas on asset classes, country portfolios, and Dow-Jones 30 stocks were in Tables 14.4–14.7 (Page 346, Page 352, and Page 353). The published betas themselves are estimated from historical time-series regressions, often monthly data, using our statistical technique that fits the best α and β for the "regression" line $\tilde{r}_i = \alpha_i + \beta_i \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} + \epsilon$. The regression estimator does exactly what we did in Section 13·4.B: it computes the covariance and divides it by the variance. (Some more sophisticated data providers improve on this simple regression estimate with a little bit of extra statistical wizardry called shrinkage, which we shall ignore.)

Beta is easy to get for publicly traded stocks.

Solve Now!

Q 17.13 *If you had representative historical project returns, how would you obtain the stock market beta?*

Q 17.14 *Look up the beta for IBM at Yahoo!Finance. How does it compare to the beta of a young upstart growth company? (Pick one!)*

17·4.E. Betas From Comparables and Leverage Adjustments: Equity Beta vs. Asset Beta

Individual betas are very noisy. For example, a pharmaceutical whose product happened to be rejected by the FDA (usually causing a large negative return) in a month in which the market happened to go up (down) may end up having a negative (positive) market beta estimate—and this would likely be totally unrepresentative of the future market beta. (This month would be a "statistical outlier" or "influential regression observation.") In the long-run, such announcements would appear randomly, so beta would still be the right estimate—but in the long-run, we will all be dead. To reduce such noise in practice, it is common to estimate not just the beta of the firm, but to estimate the beta of a couple of similar firms (comparables similar in size and industry, perhaps), and then to use a beta that reflects some sort of average among them.

Individual Betas can be noisy—we often use similar company betas.

Indeed, if your project has no historical rate of return experience—perhaps because it is only a division of a publicly traded company or because the company is not publicly traded (although the CAPM is only meaningful to begin with if the owners need to hold most of their wealth in the market portfolio)—you may have little choice other than to consider comparable firms. For example, if you believe your new soda company is similar to PepsiCo, you could adopt the beta of PepsiCo and use it to compute the CAPM expected rate of return. Realizing that smaller firms than PepsiCo tend to have higher betas, you might increase your beta estimate.

Using comparable publicly traded stocks with unlevered Betas.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Leverage Adjustments: An Intuitive Example.

It is however very important that you draw a clear distinction between equity betas and asset betas. Usually, you have an intuition that your **project beta** (also called **asset beta**) is the same as that of the publicly traded company—but all that you get to see is the comparable's equity beta. You must adjust the **equity beta** for the comparable's leverage, because stocks that are more levered have higher equity market-betas—they are riskier. Recall the example from Chapter 5: when a project was split into debt and equity, the debt became less risky, while the equity became more risky. This turns out to matter for betas, too.

Table 17.1. The Effect of Leverage on Beta

		Choice of Capital Structure		
		(A) Unlevered	(B) Split Project	
	Stock Market	Project	$150 Debt	Equity
Value Today	$10.0 trillion	$200	$150	$50
if Good Times	$13.0 trillion	$230	$156	$74
if Bad Times	$9.0 trillion	$190	$156	$34
Expected Value	$11.0 trillion	$210	$156	$54
if Good Times	+30%	+15%	+4%	+48%
if Bad Times	−10%	−5%	+4%	−32%
Expected Rate of Return	+10%	+5%	+4%	+8%
Dollar Spread	$4 trillion	$40	$0	$40
Relative Spread	40%	20%	0%	80%
Market Beta	1.0	0.5	0.0	2.0

Work one full example.

To determine how leverage changes beta, consider Table 17.1. In this example, the stock market, worth $10 trillion today, is expected to increase by 10% to $11 trillion next year. However, relative to this expected value, the market can either underperform or overperform (by plus or minus 20%). Now, your own unlevered project is worth $200 today and has a beta of $1/2$. Therefore, it is expected to return $210, but either 10% above or 10% below its mean of 5%, and depending on the stock market rate of return. This makes sense: for a 40% difference in the rate of return on the stock market, your project would suffer a 20% difference in its rate of return.

The beta of levered equity scales with leverage.

Now finance your project differently. Use an alternative capital structure that consists of $150 in debt and the rest in equity, i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Value}_{\text{Project}} &= \text{Value}_{\text{Debt}} + \text{Value}_{\text{Equity}} \quad , \\ 100\% &= \frac{\text{Value}_{\text{Debt}}}{\text{Value}_{\text{Project}}} + \frac{\text{Value}_{\text{Equity}}}{\text{Value}_{\text{Project}}} \\ 100\% &= w_{\text{Debt}} + w_{\text{Equity}} \\ 100\% &= 75\% + 25\% \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{17.11}$$

where the weight of each security in the capital structure is called w.

The WACC remains the same regardless of capital structure.

The debt is default-free, so it can command the risk-free rate, which we now assume to be 4% per annum. But being risk-free also means that the debt beta is 0. The value of the levered equity must then be the remaining $50. Working through the remaining cash flows, we find that its expected rate of return is 8%, which is both above the risk-free rate and the unlevered project's expected rate of return. This higher expected rate of return is necessary to compensate investors for risk. More importantly, note how your levered equity has a higher market-beta than the original unlevered project. Instead of translating a market fluctuation of 40% into a project fluctuation of ±20%, the levered equity translates the market fluctuation of 40% into a rate of return fluctuation of ±80%! The beta is now 2, not 0.5.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

This example shows that the weighted expected rate of return and the weighted average beta add up to their overall project equivalents:

The weighted average beta is the overall beta.

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} 5\% & = & 75\% \cdot 4\% & + & 25\% \cdot 8\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Project}}) & = & w_{\text{Debt}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Debt}}) & + & w_{\text{Equity}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Equity}}) \quad . \\ 0.5 & = & 75\% \cdot 0 & + & 25\% \cdot 2 \\ \beta_{\text{Project}} & = & w_{\text{Debt}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Debt}} & + & w_{\text{Equity}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Equity}} \quad . \end{array} \tag{17.12}$$

The first equation is called the firm's weighted-average cost of capital, abbreviated WACC, and discussed in detail in Chapter 21. In our perfect world, the cost of capital remains invariant to whatever capital structure you may choose. The latter equation is just a special version of a general linear property of betas: as you learned earlier, you can take weighted averages of betas. (On Page 333, we already discussed that the beta of a portfolio is the value-weighted beta of its component securities.) Therefore, if you know how the firm is financed, and if you can guess the beta of the debt, it is easy to translate an equity beta into an asset beta.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \beta_{\text{Project},mkt} & = & w_{\text{Debt}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Debt},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\text{Equity}} \cdot \beta_{\text{Equity},\mathcal{M}} \\ & = & 75\% \cdot 0 + 25\% \cdot 2.0 = 0.5. \end{array} \tag{17.13}$$

But, in general, where would you get the debt beta from? For large firm stocks that are not in financial distress, it is reasonable to presume that debt betas are reasonably close to zero. This is because the debt is likely to be repaid—and, if not, repayment may not be contingent as much on the stock market overall, as it may depend on the firm's circumstances. For small firm stocks or stocks in financial distress, bond betas can, however, become significantly positive.

IMPORTANT: *If project $\mathcal{A}$ consists of part $\mathcal{B}$ and part C,*

$$\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{B} + C \tag{17.14}$$

then the overall market beta of the combined project $\mathcal{A}$ is the weighted average market beta of its components,

$$\beta_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{M}} = w_{\mathcal{B}} \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{M}} + w_C \cdot \beta_{C,\mathcal{M}} \quad , \tag{17.15}$$

where w are weights according to value today, and add up to 1. The components could be any type of investments, and in particular be the debt and equity of the same firm. Therefore,

$$\begin{array}{rcccl} \textit{Project} & = & \textit{Debt} & + & \textit{Equity} \\ \Longrightarrow \beta_{\textit{Project},\mathcal{M}} & = & w_{\textit{Debt}} \cdot \beta_{\textit{Debt},\mathcal{M}} & + & w_{\textit{Equity}} \cdot \beta_{\textit{Equity},\mathcal{M}} \quad . \end{array} \tag{17.16}$$

Solve Now!

Q 17.15 *A project i is likely to go up by 20% if the stock market goes up by 10%. It is also likely to go down by 20% if the stock market goes down by 5%. If the risk-free rate of return is 4%, what would you expect the beta to be?*

Q 17.16 *A comparable firm (in a comparable business) has an equity beta of 2.5 and a debt/asset ratio of 2/3. The debt is almost risk-free. Estimate the beta for our firm if projects have alike betas, but our firm will carry a debt/asset ratio of 1/3.*

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Q 17.17 *(Continued.) If the risk-free rate is 3% and the equity premium is 2%, what is the expected rate of return on the comparable firm's equity and on our own equity?*

Q 17.18 *A comparable firm (in a comparable business) has an equity beta of 2.5 and a debt/equity ratio of 2. The debt is almost risk-free. Estimate the beta for our firm if projects have alike betas, but our firm will carry a debt/equity ratio of 1/2.*

Q 17.19 *(Continued.) If the risk-free rate is 3% and the equity premium is 2%, what is the expected rate of return on the comparable firm's equity and on our own equity?*

Q 17.20 *You own a stock market portfolio that has a market beta of 2.4, but you are getting married to someone who has a portfolio with 0.4. You are three times as wealthy as your future significant other. What is the beta of your joint portfolio?*

Q 17.21 *Assume that you can short. If your portfolio has a market beta of 0.6 and you can short a fund with a market beta of 1, what portfolio do you have to purchase to eliminate all market risk?*

17·4.F. Betas Based on Economic Intuition

Intuitive Betas Guestimating.

Sometimes, there are projects for which there are no good publicly traded firms from which you can extract a beta estimate. In such cases, you need to make a judgment: how will the rate of return of your project covary with the stock market? To find out, rearrange the CAPM Formula:

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}} \quad . \tag{17.17}$$

The right side of this formula helps translate your intuition into a beta estimate. You can ask such questions as "What rate of return (above the risk-free rate) will your project have if the stock market were to have +10% or –10% rate of return (above the risk-free rate)?" Clearly, such guess work is difficult and error-prone—but it can provide a beta estimate when no other is available.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

17·5. Value Creation and Destruction

Most of our CAPM applications will be explored in Chapters 21 and 22. Chapters 21 explains how to use the CAPM in a perfect world without taxes. Chapter 22 explains how to use the CAPM in the presence of (corporate) income taxes. Because the primary use of the CAPM is to determine appropriate costs of capital in corporations, it is only in these later chapters that this book offers enough examples to familiarize you with CAPM applications.

We delay applications until later.

However, there are at least two important and basic concepts that were first raised in Chapter 7 that we can finally discuss now, given that the CAPM illuminates the cost of capital. The first concept is almost trivial—it is the question of whether managers should seek to reduce idiosyncratic firm risk. The second concept relates to the simplest of insights—that the total net present value of two projects combined without project externalities is the sum of the project's net present value. As always, the concept is straightforward, but the devil is in the details.

Important: How to add value!

17·5.A. Does Risk-Reducing Corporate Diversification (or Hedging) Create Value?

In the 1960s through 1970s, many firms became **conglomerates**, that is, companies with widely diversified and often unrelated holdings. Can firms add value through such diversification? The answer is "usually no." Diversification indeed reduces the standard deviation of the rate of return of the company—so diversified companies are less risky—but your investors can just as well diversify risk for themselves. For example, if your \$900 million firm $\mathcal{ABC}$ (e.g., with a beta of 2, and a risk of 20%) is planning to take over the \$100 million firm $\mathcal{DEF}$ (e.g., with a beta of 1, and also risk of 20%), the resulting firm is worth \$1 billion dollars. $\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}$ has indeed an idiosyncratic risk lower than 20% if the two firms are not perfectly correlated, but your investors (or a mutual fund) could just purchase 90% of $\mathcal{ABC}$ and 10% of $\mathcal{DEF}$ and thereby achieve the very same diversification benefits. If anything, you have robbed investors of a degree of freedom here: they no longer have the ability to purchase, say, 50% in $\mathcal{ABC}$ and 50% in $\mathcal{DEF}$. (In a CAPM world, this does not matter.) The CAPM makes it explicit that the cost of capital does not change unduly. Say both firms follow the CAPM equation, and say that the risk-free rate is 3% and the equity premium is 5%,

Diversification reduces risk, but does not create value.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}}) &= 3\% + 5\% \cdot 2 = 13\% ,\\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{ABC},\mathcal{M}} ,\\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{DEF}}) &= 3\% + 5\% \cdot 1 = 8\% ,\\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{DEF}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{DEF},\mathcal{M}} .
\end{aligned} \tag{17.18}$$

The newly formed company will have an expected rate of return—cost of capital—of

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}}) &= 90\% \cdot 13\% + 10\% \cdot 8\% = 12.5\% ,\\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}}) &= w_{\mathcal{ABC}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}}) + w_{\mathcal{DEF}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{DEF}}) ,
\end{aligned} \tag{17.19}$$

and a market-beta of

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF},\mathcal{M}} &= 90\% \cdot 2 + 10\% \cdot 1 = 1.9\\
\beta_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF},\mathcal{M}} &= w_{\mathcal{ABC}} \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{ABC},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\mathcal{DEF}} \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{DEF},\mathcal{M}} .
\end{aligned} \tag{17.20}$$

The merged company will still follow the CAPM,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}}) &= 3\% + 5\% \cdot 1.9 = 12.5\%\\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF},\mathcal{M}} .
\end{aligned} \tag{17.21}$$

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Its cost of capital has not unduly increased or declined. In an ideal CAPM world, no value has been added or destroyed—even though $\mathcal{ABC}+\mathcal{DEF}$ has a risk lower than the 20% per annum that its two constituents had.

Synergies or Dis-synergies drive M&A value, not diversification. Managers also have agency conflicts in M&A activity.

In the real world, diversified firms often do not operate as efficiently as stand-alone firms, e.g., due to limited attention span of management or due to more bureaucratization. Such mergers destroy firm value. Of course, other mergers can add value due to synergies, as we discussed in Chapter 7. More often, however, the unspoken rationales for mergers are that managers prefer the reduced idiosyncratic uncertainty and higher salaries guaranteed by larger firms to the higher risk and lower salaries in sharply focused, smaller firms. In our context, to justify a merger, managers will want to argue for a lower cost of capital any way they can—including incorrectly using the acquirer's cost of capital. (This is another example of an agency conflict, which we have seen in Chapter 7 and which we will see again in our Chapter 28 on corporate governance.)

IMPORTANT: *If there are no cash flow synergies, combining firms into conglomerates may reduce firm risk, but does not create value for our investors. Investors can diversify risk themselves.*

Managers who want to create value through risk reduction should instead seek to lower their firms' market betas—of course avoiding proportionally similar or higher reductions in their firms' rewards.

Hedging against stock market risk.

Firms can also reduce their overall risk by **hedging**. The simplest example of a hedge would be if the firm itself shorted the stock market. For example, it could sell a contract that promises to deliver the index level of the S&P500 multiplied by 1,000 in one year. Between now and next year, whenever the stock market goes up, the value of this contract goes up. The contract has a negative beta. Because the hedged firm would consist of the unhedged firm plus this contract, the market-beta (or risk) of the hedged firm would be lower than the market-beta of the unhedged firm. In fact, the firm could sell the exact amount of contracts that make the firm's market beta zero or even negative. But, this hedging contract would not create firm value—the firm's expected rate of return would decline proportionally, too. If investors wanted to have less exposure to the overall stock market, they could sell such hedging contracts themselves.

Hedging against other risks.

Firms do sometimes hedge against other risks. For example, oil companies often sell contracts on oil that promise delivery in one year. This insulates them from the volatility of the price of oil. In itself, in a perfect market, such fairly priced hedging contracts neither add nor subtract value. But if the market is imperfect, as we noted in Chapter 6, a hedge may allow a firm to operate more efficiently (e.g., generating cash which avoids the need to borrow money), and thereby add value. (Corporate hedging is further discussed in the web chapter on options.)

ANECDOTE: Risk and Conglomeration

In the 1970s, a lot of firms diversified to become conglomerates. Management argued that conglomerates tended to have lower risk, which created value for shareholders. This argument was, of course, total nonsense: Investors could diversify for themselves. It was the managers who valued lower risk, with the lower chance to lose their jobs and the higher compensation due to running a bigger company. Worse, because conglomerates often operate less efficiently than individual stand-alone, focused companies, diversification actually often destroyed firm value. In the 1980s, there were many "bust-up buyouts," which created value by purchasing conglomerates to sell off the pieces.

A good example of such a conglomerate was Gulf and Western. It was simultaneously involved in oil, movies (Paramount), recording (Stax), rocket engines, stereo components, finance, publishing (Simon and Schuster), auto parts, cigars, etc. It promptly crashed and split up in the 1980s. A more current example is Tyco, which has over 260,000 employees in 50 (!) separate business lines, including electronics, undersea fiber optic cables, health care, adhesives, plastics, and alarm systems. (Its former executive, Dennis Kozlowski, became famous for his extravagant looting of Tyco's assets. With so many business lines, no wonder no one noticed for years!) The most interesting conglomerate, however, is General Electric. It has hundreds of business lines, but unlike most other conglomerates, GE seems to have been running most of its divisions quite well.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

17·5.B. Avoiding Cost-of-Capital Mixup Blunders That Destroy Value

When Acquiring Another Company

Common misuse of CAPM: a uniform cost of capital.

Section 7·1.B dropped a cryptic hint that practitioners sometimes forget that NPVs are additive. You may have wondered what was meant. You are now ready to see why this is such a common mistake. The most common abuse of the CAPM arises from the use of the firm's overall cost of capital for individual projects, and here is an example why.

What happens if the firm uses its overall cost of capital for projects, rather than a project specific cost of capital?

For IRR, see Chapter 8.

The Solution: Compute the NPV of the project.

Assume the risk-free rate of return is 3% and the equity premium is 4%. Your old firm, cleverly named O, is worth \$100 and has a market beta of 0.5. An acquisition target (or just a new project), cleverly named $\mathcal{N}$, costs \$10 and is expected to pay off \$11 next year. (Its rate of return is therefore 10%.) The beta of this new project is 3.

The simplest method to compute the value of project $\mathcal{N}$ relies on the fact that NPVs are additive. You value the new project using its own expected cash flows and own cost of capital. *Who* owns it should matter little: the project is worth what it is worth. So, N should offer an expected rate of return of

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\text{Correct Cost of Capital:}} \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) &= 3\% + 4\% \cdot 3 = 15\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{N}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{N},\mathcal{M}} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{17.22}$$

and the true NPV of the new project is

$$\text{NPV}_{\mathcal{N}} = -\$10 + \frac{\$11}{1+15\%} \approx -\$0.44 \quad . \tag{17.23}$$

Therefore, if firm O adopts project N, N's owners would be -\$0.44 poorer than they would be if their managers did not adopt it (i.e., \$100 vs. \$99.56).

Bad Company Policy.

Unfortunately, this is not obvious to some practitioners. In many firms, it is standard policy to evaluate *all* projects by the firm's overall cost of capital. Would such a firm take the N project? Evaluated with a market beta of 0.5, the hurdle rate for the project would be

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\text{Incorrect Cost of Capital:}} \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) &= 3\% + 4\% \cdot 0.5 = 5\% \ . \\ &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{O,\mathcal{M}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.24}$$

With its internal rate of return of \$11/\$10 − 1 = 10%, a (poor) manager would indeed take this project.

The loss if the firm makes the mistake.

If the O firm did take project N, how would its value change? With a beta of 0.5, the old firm had an expected rate of return of 3% + 4%·0.5 = 5%. Its expected value next year would be \$105. Using PV, we see that the present value of the combined firm would be

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV}_{\text{combined}} &= \frac{\$105}{1+5\%} + \frac{\$11}{1+15\%} \approx \$109.56 \ . \\ &= \text{PV}_{O} + \text{PV}_{\mathcal{N}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.25}$$

This is \$0.44 less than the original value of \$100 plus the \$10 acquisition cost of the new project. Taking the project has made the N owners 44 cents poorer.

Real World Exceptions.

However, contrary to the perfect CAPM world, it is not always true in the real world that mergers *never* add value on the cost-of-capital side. If capital markets are not as efficient for small firms as they are for large firms, it would be possible for a large acquirer to create value. For example, if a target previously had no access to capital markets, as explained in Section 6·1 (Page 112), then the cost of capital to the target can change when it is acquired. The correct cost of capital for valuing the acquisition (the target), however, is *neither* the cost of capital of the acquirer, *nor* the blended post-acquisition cost of capital of the firm. Instead, the correct cost of capital is that appropriate for the target's projects, given the "now ordinary" access to capital markets. For example, if an entrepreneur inventor of holographic displays previously had faced a cost

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

of capital of, say, 303%, primarily due to access only to personal credit card and credit shark financing, and if this inventor's business is purchased by IBM with its cost of capital of 6.5% (market-beta of 1.5), the proper cost of capital is neither IBM's (market-beta based) cost, nor a blended average between 303% and 6.5%. Instead, if part of IBM, the holographic project division should be evaluated at a cost of capital that is appropriate for projects of the market-beta risk class "holographic display projects." This can add value relative to the 303% earlier cost of capital. (Of course, large corporations are often also very adept at destroying all innovation and thereby value in the small companies that they are taking over.)

When Acquiring Another Project

Projects must be discounted by their own beta.

It is important to realize that not only firms-to-be-acquired, but also smaller projects themselves consist of components with different market-betas, which therefore have different costs of capital. For example, when firms keep cash on hand in Treasury bonds, such investments have a zero market-beta, which is lower than the beta for the firms' other projects. These bonds should need not earn the same expected rate of return as investments in the firm's risky projects. (The presence of this cash in the firm lowers the average beta of the firm and thus the average cost of capital for the firm by the just-appropriate amounts.)

Another Example Problem.

Here is another application example: Assume that you consider purchasing a rocket to launch a Telecomm satellite next year. It would take you 1 year to obtain the rocket, at which point you would have to pay \$100 million. Then you launch it. If the rocket fails (25% chance), then your investment will be lost. If the rocket succeeds, the satellite will produce a revenue stream with an appropriate beta of 2. (Telecomm revenues tend to have a high covariance with the market.) Telecomm's expected cash flows will be \$20 million *forever*. Assume that the risk-free rate is 3% per year and the market equity-premium is 4%.

The Example Solution.

The correct solution is to think of the rocket as one project and of the Telecomm revenues as another project. The rocket project has only idiosyncratic risk; therefore, its beta is close to zero, and its discount factor is the same as the risk-free rate of return, 3%. The rocket value (in millions of dollars today is)

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{rocket}} \approx \frac{-\$100}{1+3\%} \approx -\$97 \ . \tag{17.26}$$

You can think of this as the cost of storing the \$100 million in T-bills until we are ready to try our second project. The Telecomm revenues, however, would be a risky perpetuity. With a beta of 2, their cash flows would be discounted at about 11%. However, the cash flows will only occur with a probability of 75%. Therefore,

$$\mathsf{PV}_{\text{Telecomm}} \approx \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{Telecomm Profits})}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{Telecomm Revenues}})} = \frac{75\% \cdot \$20}{3\% + 4\% \cdot 2 = 11\%} = \frac{\$15}{11\%} = \$136 \ . \tag{17.27}$$

Consequently, this project has a net present value of about \$39 million dollars.

17·5.C. Differential Costs of Capital — Theory and Practice!

In practice, a good number of firms do not use differential costs of capital.

There is no doubt that projects must be discounted by their project-specific cost of capital. Yet, Graham and Harvey found in their 2001 survey (the same survey you saw in Chapter 1) that just about half of surveyed CFOs *always*—and *incorrectly*—use the firm's overall cost of capital, rather than the project-specific cost of capital. And even fewer CFOs correctly discount cash flows of different riskiness within projects. The easy conclusion is that CFOs are ignorant—and though some CFOs may indeed use a uniform cost of capital because they are ignorant, some intelligent CFOs are doing so quite deliberately.

Getting project costs of capital is difficult.

You already know that it is very difficult to correctly estimate the cost of capital. In theory, you just know the market-beta of every project and the other CAPM inputs. In practice, you do not.

1. Even the historical betas of publicly traded corporations are not entirely reliable and indicative of the future. Different estimation methods can come up with different numbers. This is why you may want to use the market betas of similar, publicly traded comparables

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

or the market beta of an entire industry. But many of your projects may be so idiosyncratic, so unusual, or in such far-away locales that no comparable may seem particularly suitable.

2. You could try to estimate your own market beta. To do so, you would need a time-series of historical project values, not just historical project cash flows. This is because you cannot rely on historical cash flow variation as a substitute for historical value variation. You already know that the market values themselves are the present discount value of *all* future cash flows, not just of one period's. Here is an example how this can go awry. Consider a firm whose cash flows are perfectly known. Therefore, its appropriate true discount rate would be close to the risk-free rate. However, if its cash flows occur only every other month ($200, $0, $200, etc.), this firm would have infinite monthly cash flow volatility (−100% followed by +∞%). Its percent changes in cash flows would not be indicative of its value-based rates of returns. Plus, almost surely, it would have an extreme market-beta estimate, indicating a wrong cost of capital. So in order to estimate your market-beta, you would need to somehow obtain a time series of estimated market values from the known time series of cash flows. Of course, you already know that it is difficult to estimate one market value for our firm—but estimating a time-series of how this market value changes every month is entirely beyond anyone's capability. (When only cash flows but not market-values are known, your estimates must necessarily be less accurate. The best way to estimate an appropriate cost of capital relies on the certainty equivalence formula in Section **A**.)

3. Many firms may not have *any* historical experience that you can use, not just for market values, but even for cash flows. There would be nothing you could verifiably and credibly use to estimate in the first place.

So, beta estimates are often difficult to estimate, equity premium estimates are very uncertain, and the CAPM is not a perfect model. These uncertainties may not only distort the overall corporate cost of capital, but also the relative costs of capital across different projects. Quite simply, you must be cognizant of the painful reality that your methods for estimating the cost of capital are often just not as robust as you would like them to be.

Flexible costs of capital can cause arguments and agency conflicts.

Consequently, the problem with assigning different costs of capital to different projects may now become one of disagreement. Division managers can argue endlessly why their projects have a lower cost of capital than the company's. Is this how you want your division managers to spend their time? Managers could even shift revenues from weeks in which the stock market performed well into weeks in which the stock market performed poorly in order to produce a lower market-beta. The cost of capital estimate itself becomes a piece in the game of agency conflict and response—every manager would like to convince himself and others that a low cost of capital for her own division is best. What the overall corporation would like to have in order to suppress such "gaming of the system" would be one immutable good estimate of the cost of capital for each division that cannot be argued with. In the reality of corporate politics, however, it may be easier to commit to one and the same immutable cost of capital for all divisions than it would be to have immutable but different costs of capital for each division. This is not to argue that this one cost of capital is necessarily a good system, but just that there are cases in which having this *one* cost of capital may be a necessary evil.

You will never get this perfectly right. Get it right where it matters!

And finally there is the forest. You know that each component must be discounted at its own discount rate if you want to get the value and incentives right. However, if you want to value each paperclip by its own cost of capital, you will never come up with a reasonable firm value—you will lose the forest among the trees. You need to keep your perspective as to what reasonable errors are and what unreasonable errors are. The question is one of magnitude: if you are acquiring a totally different company or project, with a vastly different cost of capital, and this project will be a significant fraction of the firm, then the choice of cost of capital matters and you should differentiate. However, if you are valuing a project that is uncertain, and the project is relatively small, and its cost of capital is reasonably similar to your overall cost of capital, you can probably live with some error. It all depends—your mileage may vary!

IMPORTANT:

- *Theoretically, all projects must be discounted by their own cost of capital, and not by the firm's overall cost of capital.*
- *Practically, sanity considerations prevent discounting every paper clip by its own cost of capital.*

Therefore, you must judge when it is important to work with different costs of capital and when it is better to use just one cost of capital.

Solve Now!

Q 17.22 *A $300 million firm has a beta of 2. The risk-free rate is 4%, the equity premium is 3%. A supplier has approached the firm for a 1-year loan of $100 million that has a beta of 0. The supplier is willing to pay 6% interest, and there is no default risk. The firm has a policy of only accepting projects with a hurdle rate of 10%.*

(a) *If the firm changes its policy and extends the loan, how would its value change?*

(b) *If the firm changes its policy and extends the loan, approximately how would its beta change?*

(c) *If the firm changes its policy and extends the loan, approximately how would its cost of capital change?*

(d) *If the firm changes its policy and extends the loan, approximately what would its cash flows be expected to be?*

(e) *If the firm changes its policy and extends the loan, can you compute the combined firm's NPV by dividing its expected cash flow by its combined cost of capital?*

(f) *Should the firm change its policy?*

Q 17.23 *Some companies believe they can use the blended cost of capital post-acquisition as the appropriate cost of capital. However, this also leads to incorrect decisions. We explore this now.*

(a) *What is the value of the new project, discounted at its true cost of capital, 15%? (Assume that the combined firm value is around $109.48.)*

(b) *What is the weight of the new project in the firm?*

(c) *What is the beta of the new overall (combined) firm?*

(d) *Use this beta to compute the combined cost of capital.*

(e) *Will the firm take this project?*

(f) *If the firm takes the project, what will the firm's value be?*

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

17·6. Empirical Reality

Now you know what the world looks like and how securities should be priced in a perfect CAPM world. What evidence would lead you to conclude that the CAPM is *not* an accurate description of reality? And what is reality really like?

17·6.A. Non-CAPM Worlds and Non-Linear SMLs

What happens if a stock offers too much or too little expected rate of return?

What would happen from the CAPM's perspective if a stock offered more than its due expected rate of return? Investors in the economy would want to buy more of the stock than would be available: its price would be too low. It would be too good a deal. Investors would immediately flock to it, and because there would not be enough of this stock, investors would bid up its price and thereby lower its expected rate of return. Eventually, the price of the stock would equilibrate at the correct CAPM expected rate of return. Conversely, what would happen if a stock offered less than its due expected rate of return? Investors would not be willing to hold enough of the stock: the stock's price would be too high, and its price would fall.

No CAPM would not mean arbitrage, but it could imply good deals.

Neither situation should happen in the real world—investors are just too smart. However, you must realize that if a stock were not to follow the CAPM formula, buying it would still be risky. Yes, such a stock would offer too high or too low an expected rate of return and thus be a good or a bad deal, attracting too many or too few investors chasing a limited amount of project—but it would still remain a risky investment, and no investor could earn risk-free profit by exploiting the pricing inefficiency.

The "Security Market Line" if the CAPM is the wrong model (with respect to its own functional form).

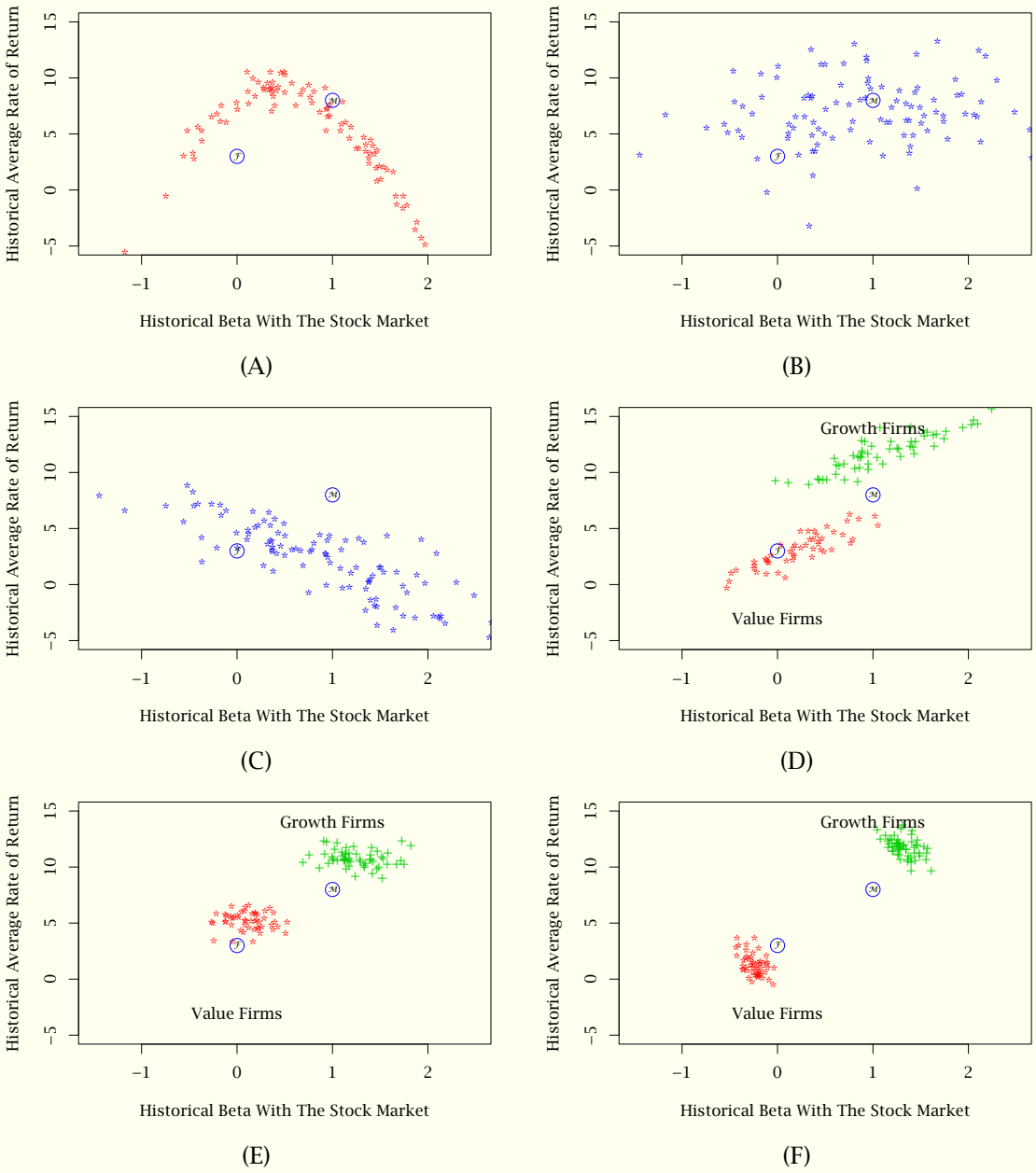
Under what circumstances would you lose faith in the CAPM? Figure 17.4 plots what security market relations could look like if the CAPM did not work. In Graph (A), the rate of return does not seem to increase linearly with beta if beta is greater than about 0.5. Because beta is a measure of risk contribution to your market portfolio, as an investor, you would not be inclined to add stocks with betas greater than 1 or 2 to your (market) portfolio—these stocks' risk contributions are too high, given their rewards. You would like to deemphasize these firms, tilting your portfolio towards stocks with lower betas. In Graph (B), the rate of return seems unrelated to beta, but the average rate of return on the stock market seems quite a bit higher than the risk-free rate of return. In this case, you again would prefer to tilt your portfolio away from the overall market and towards stocks with lower beta risk. This would allow you to construct a portfolio that has lower overall risk and higher expected rate of return than the market portfolio. In Graph (C), higher beta securities offer *lower* expected rates of return. Again, you should prefer moving away from your current portfolio (the market) by adding more of stocks with lower market-betas.

The "Security Market Line" if the CAPM is the wrong model (with respect to a specific better alternative).

Graphs (D) through (F) focus on a distinction between growth firms and value firms. In Graph (D), even though each cluster has a positive relationship between beta and the expected rate of return, growth firms have a different relationship than value firms—but the CAPM says not only that market-beta should matter, but that *market-beta is all that should matter*. If you knew whether a firm was a growth firm or a value firm, you could do better than if you relied on market-beta. Rather than just holding the market portfolio, you would prefer tilting your portfolio towards growth stocks and away from value stocks—for a given beta contribution to your portfolio, you would earn a higher reward in growth firms. Graphs (E) and (F) show the same issue, but more starkly. If you could not identify whether a firm was a growth firm or a value firm, you would conclude that market-beta works—you would still draw a straight positive line between the two clusters of firms, and you would conclude that higher market-beta stocks offer higher rewards. But, truly, it would not be beta that matters, but whether the firm is a growth firm or a value firm. After taking into account what type the firm is, beta would not matter in Graph (E), and even matter *negatively* in Graph (F). In either case, as an investor, you could earn higher expected rates of return buying stocks based on firm type rather than based on beta.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Figure 17.4. The Security Market Line in non-CAPM Worlds



Each point is one stock (or project or fund)—its historical beta and its historical average rate of return. (The market and risk-free rate are noted by a letter inside the circle.) Growth firms are firms with high market values and low sales, earnings and/or book values. Value firms are the opposite.

In these figures, the security market line does not appear to be linear, as the CAPM suggests. Therefore, if these patterns are not just statistical mirages, you should be able to invest better than just in the market: from the CAPM perspective, there are "great deal" stocks that offer too much expected return given their risk contributions to your (market) portfolio, which you would therefore want to overemphasize; and "poor deal" stocks that offer too little expected return, given their risk contribution, which you would therefore want to underemphasize.

file=capmrecipe-joint.tex: RP

Historical Patterns can be deceptive.

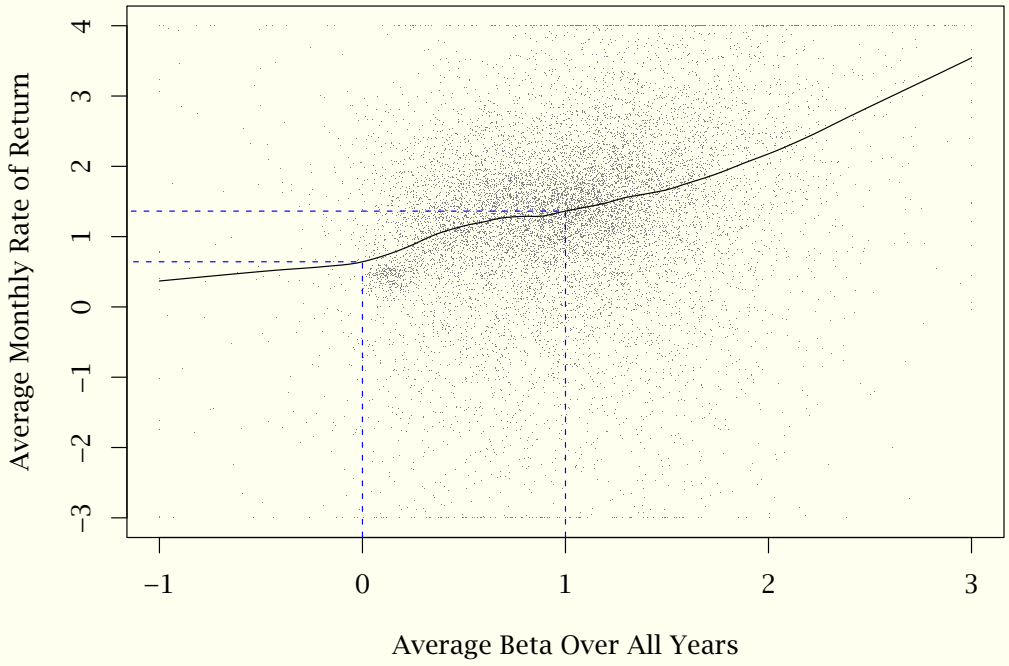
But be warned: these relationships could also appear if your procedures to estimate beta or expected rates of return are poor—after all, when you plot such figures with real-world historical data, you do not have the true beta or true expected rates of return. Even if your statistical procedures are sound, statistical noise makes this a hazardous venture. In particular, in real life, although you can estimate market-betas pretty reliably, you can only roughly estimate expected rates of return from historical rates of return.

17·6.B. How Well Does the CAPM Work?

A model is a model.

A model is just a model—models are never perfect descriptions of reality. They can be useful within a certain domain, even if on closer examination they are rejected. For example, we do not live in a world of Newtonian gravity. Einstein's model of relativity is a better model—though it, too, is not capable of explaining everything. Yet no one would use Einstein's model to calculate how quickly objects fall. The Newtonion model is entirely appropriate and much easier to use. Similarly, planetary scientists use Einstein's model, even though we know it, too, fails to account for everything—but it does well enough for the purposes at hand and there are as yet no better alternatives (even though string theory is trying). This latter situation is pretty much the situation in which corporations find themselves—the CAPM is not really correct, but there are no clear better alternatives. However, ultimately, your concern has to be about the domain within which the CAPM *is* useful, and it usually is very useful for corporate capital budgeting.

Figure 17.5. Average Historical Rates of Return Against Historical Market Beta, 1970–2000.



Note: The returns are monthly and *not* annualized. Betas are with respect to the value-weighted stock market. Extreme observations were cut: at -1 and +3 for beta, and at -3% and +4% for monthly returns. The solid black line is "smoothed" to fit points locally, allowing it to show non-linearities. The dashed blue line indicates that this smoothed line suggests that a "beta=0" security had an approximate rate of return of 64 basis points per month, or about 8% per annum. The typical "beta=1" security had an approximate rate of return of 136 basis points per month, or about 18% per annum.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

The empirical relation looks reasonably linear and upward sloping.

So, what does the security market line (SML) really look like? Figure 17.5 plots the relationships from 1970 to 2000. The typical stock with a beta of 0 earned a rate of return of about 8% per annum, while the typical stock with a beta of 1 (i.e., like the market) earned a rate of return of about 18% per annum. Not drawn in the figure, the average stock with a beta of 2 earned about 217 basis points per month (30% per annum), and the average stock with a beta of 3 earned about 354 basis points per month (50% per annum). You can see that these 30 years were a very good period for financial investments! The figure shows also how there was tremendous variability in the investment performance of stocks. More importantly from the perspective of the CAPM, the relationship between average rate of return and beta was not exactly linear, as the CAPM suggests, but it was not far off. If we stopped now, you would conclude that the CAPM was a pretty good model.

But this is deceptive—the CAPM fails against specific better alternatives.

But look back at Figure 17.4. The empirical evidence is not against the CAPM in the sense of the first three plots (linearity)—it is against the CAPM in the sense of the last three plots (better alternative classifications). So, although you cannot see this in Figure 17.5, the CAPM fails when stocks are split into groups based on different characteristics. The empirical reality is somewhat closer to the latter three figures than it is to the idealized CAPM world. For example, there is good empirical evidence that firms that are classified as "growth firms" (they have low sales and book value but high market value) generally underperform "value firms" (the opposite)—but we do not really know why, nor do we know what we should recommend a corporate manager should do about this fact. Maybe managers should pretend that their firms are growth firms—because investors like this claim so much they are willing to throw money at too cheap a cost of capital at growth firms—but then act like value firms and thereby earn higher returns. In any case, the firms that lie above the CAPM line are disproportionally value firms, and those below the CAPM line are disproportionally growth firms. Market beta seems to matter *only if* we do not control for this growth-value and some other firm characteristics. The "only little problem" (irony warning) is that we finance academics are not exactly sure what all these characteristics are, why they matter, and how a CFO should work in such a world.

My personal opinion—and the world out there.

Different academics draw different conclusions from this evidence. Some recommend outright against using the CAPM, but most professors recommend "use with caution." Here is my personal opinion:

For a Corporate Manager Although the CAPM is likely not to be really true, market-beta is still a useful cost-of-capital measure for a corporate finance manager. Why so? Look again at the last three plots in Figure 17.4: If you have a beta of around 1.5, you are more than likely a growth firm with an expected rate of return of 10% to 15%; if you have a beta of around 0, you are more than likely a value firm with an expected rate of return of 3% to 7%. Thus, beta would still provide you with a decent cost of capital estimate, even though it was not market-beta itself that mattered, but whether your firm was a growth or a value firm. (Market beta helped by indicating to you whether the firm was a growth or a value firm.) Admittedly, using an incorrect model is not an ideal situation, but the cost-of-capital errors are often reasonable enough that corporate managers generally can live with them. If you recall from the manager survey in Chapter 1, 73.5% of the CFOs reported that they always or almost always use the CAPM. CAPM use was even more common among large firms and CFOs with an MBA, and no alternative method was used very often. So, you ultimately have no choice but to understand the model well—it is the benchmark model that your future employer will expect you to understand and understand well. In any case, if you cannot live with the fact that the CAPM is not perfectly correct, I really do not know what to recommend to you as a clearly better alternative!

For An Investor In contrast, my advice to an investor would be *not* to use the CAPM for investing (portfolio choice). Although it is true that wide diversification needs to be an important part of *any* good investment strategy, there *are* better investment strategies than just investing in the market.

Solve Now!

Q 17.24 *Draw some possible security markets relations which would not be consistent with the* CAPM.

17·7. Robustness: How Bad are Mistakes in CAPM Inputs?

Where will we inevitably go wrong?

You know that you do not really know the inputs for the CAPM perfectly. You can only make educated guesses. And even *after* the fact, you will never be sure—you observe only actual rates of returns, never expected rates of return. So, how robust is the CAPM with respect to errors in its inputs?

Errors in the risk-free rate tend to be very small.

The Risk-Free Rate Errors in the risk-free rate ($r_{\mathcal{F}}$) are likely to be modest. The risk-free rate can be considered to be almost known for practical purposes. Just make sure to use a risk-free rate of similar duration and maturity as your project.

This leaves you with having to judge the influence of errors in estimating betas ($\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$), errors in estimating the expected market rate of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})$), and model errors (i.e., that the CAPM itself is false).

Errors in beta estimates tend to be modest.

Market-Beta Reasonable beta estimates typically have some uncertainty, but good comparables can often be found in the public market. If due care is exercised, a typical range of uncertainty about beta might be about plus or minus 0.4. For example, if the equity premium is 3% and if you believe your beta is 2, but it is really 1.6 instead, then you would overestimate the appropriate expected rate of return by $2 \cdot 3\% - 1.6 \cdot 3\% = 1.2\%$. Although this level of uncertainty is not insignificant, it is tolerable in corporate practice.

Disagreement on the equity premium tends to be large, and these differences in equity premium estimates can have a large influence.

Equity Premium Estimates Reasonable equity premium estimates can range from about 2% per year to about 6% per year—a large range. *To date, there is no universally accepted method to estimate the expected rate of return on the market, so this disagreement cannot be easily settled with data and academic studies.* Unfortunately, reasonable differences of opinion in estimating the expected rate of return on the market can have a large influence on expected rate of return estimates. For example, assume the risk-free rate is 3%, and take a project with a beta of 2. The CAPM might advise this corporation that potential investors demand either an expected rate of return of 5% per year (equity premium estimate of 1%) or an expected rate of return of 19% per year (equity premium estimate of 8%), or anything in between. This is—to put it diplomatically—a miserably large range of possible cost of capital estimates. (And this range does not even consider the fact that *actual* future project rates of return will necessarily differ from *expected rates of return*!) Of course, in the real world, managers who want to take a project will argue that the expected rate of return on the market is low. This means that their own project looks relatively more attractive. Potential buyers of projects will argue that the expected rate of return on the market is high. This means that they claim they have great opportunities elsewhere, so that they can justify a lower price offer for this project.

Use the CAPM as guidance, not as gospel!

Model Errors So, what about the CAPM as a model itself? First, you need to realize again that there are really no better alternatives. No matter how poor or imprecise the CAPM estimates are, without a better alternative, you have little choice but to use it. Second, as a CAPM user, you need to be aware of its limitations. The CAPM is a model that can often provide a "*reasonable* expected rate of return," but not an "*accurate* expected rate of return." Anyone who believes that CAPM expected rates of return should be calculated with more than one digit after the decimal point is deluded. The CAPM can only offer expected rates of returns that are of the "right order of magnitude." The CAPM also often tends to be better in ranking projects than in providing a good absolute cost of capital. In this case, estimating the equity premium to be too low or too high tends to bias the valuation of all projects—though not necessarily equally so.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Put together NPV and CAPM robustness considerations.

You will often use the CAPM expected rate of return as our cost of capital in an NPV calculation. Here, you combine errors and uncertainty about expected cash flows with your errors and uncertainty in CAPM estimates. What should you worry about? Recall that in Chapter 5, you saw the relative importance of getting the inputs into the NPV formula correct. The basic conclusion was that for short-term projects, getting the cash flows right is more important than getting the expected rate of return right; for long-term projects, getting both right is important. We just discussed the relative importance of getting the equity premium and the project beta right. Now recall that your basic conclusion was that the CAPM formula is first and foremost exposed to errors in the market risk premium (equity premium), though it is also somewhat exposed to beta estimates. Putting these two conclusions together suggests that for short-term projects, worrying about exact beta estimates is less important than worrying about estimating cash flows first and the appropriate equity premium second. For long-term projects, the order of importance remains the same, but the difference in the relative importance of good estimates of expected cash flows and good estimates of the equity premium estimates shrinks. In contrast, in most cases, honest mistakes in beta, *given reasonable care*, are relatively less problematic.

Solve Now!

Q 17.25 *To value an ordinarily risky project, that is, a project with a beta in the vicinity of about 1, what is the relative contribution of your personal uncertainty (lack of knowledge) in: the risk-free rate, the equity premium, the beta, and the expected cash flows? Consider both long-term and short-term investments.*

ANECDOTE: "Cost of Capital" Expert Witnessing

When Congress tried to force the "Baby Bells" (the split up parts of the original AT&T) to open up their local telephone lines to competition, it decreed that the Baby Bells were entitled to a fair return on their infrastructure investment—with fair return to be measured by the CAPM. (The CAPM is either the de facto or legislated standard for measuring the cost of capital in many other regulated industries, too.) The estimated value of the telecommunication infrastructure in the United States is about $10 to $15 billion. A difference in the estimated equity premium of 1% may sound small, but even in as small an industry as local telecommunications, it meant about $1,000 to $1,500 million a year—enough to hire hordes of lawyers and valuation consultants opining in court on the appropriate equity premium. Some of my colleagues bought nice houses with the legal fees.

I did not get the call. I lack the ability to keep a straight face while stating that "the equity premium is exactly x point y percent," which was an important qualification for being such an expert. In an unrelated case in which I testified, the opposing expert witness even explicitly criticized my statement that my cost of capital estimate was an imprecise range—unlike me, he could provide an exact estimate!

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: RP

17·8. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The CAPM provides an "opportunity cost of capital" for investors, which corporations can use as the hurdle rate (or cost of capital) in the NPV formula. The CAPM formula is

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad . \tag{17.28}$$

  Thus, there are three inputs: the risk-free rate of return, the expected rate of return on the stock market, and the project market-beta. Only the latter is project specific.

- The line plotting expected rates of return against market-beta is called the security-markets line (SML).

- Use a risk-free rate that is similar to the approximate duration or maturity of the project.

- There are a number of methods to estimate market-beta. For publicly traded firms, it can be computed from stock return data or obtained from commercial data vendors. For private firms or projects, a similar publicly traded firm can often be found. Finally, managerial scenarios can be used to estimate market-betas.

- The expected rate of return on the market is often a critical input, especially if market-beta is high—but it is difficult to guess.

- The CAPM provides an expected rate of return, consisting of the time-premium and the risk-premium. In the NPV formula, the default-risk and default-premium works through the expected cash flow numerator, not the cost of capital denominator.

- Corporations can reduce their risk by diversification—but if investors can do so as easily, diversification per sé does not create value.

- To value a project, corporations should not use the cost of capital (market-beta) applicable to the entire firm, but the cost of capital (market-beta) applicable to the project. However, because the effort involved can be enormous, you should use individual, project-specific costs of capital primarily when it makes a difference.

- Certainty equivalence is discussed in the appendix. You must use the certainty-equivalence form of the CAPM when projects are purchased or sold for a price other than their fair present market-value.

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

A. Appendix: Valuing Goods Not Priced at Fair Value via Certainty Equivalence

How to value a project if the efficient price today is not known?

The CAPM is usually called a pricing model—but then it is presented in terms of rates of return, not prices. This turns out to have one perplexing consequence, which leaves us with one important and difficult conceptual issue best illustrated with a brainteaser: What is today's value of a gift expected to return \$100 next year?

a. Finding The True Value of A Good That is Not Fairly Priced

At a price of zero, is the appropriate cost of capital in the CAPM formula infinite?

How do you even compute the beta of the gift's rate of return with the rate of return on the stock market? The price is \$0 today, which means that your actual rate of return will be infinite! But we clearly should be able to put a value on this gift. Indeed, our intuition tells us that this cash flow is most likely worth a little less than \$100, the specifics depending on how the cash flow covaries with the stock market. But, how do we compute this value? The solution to this puzzle is that the *price* of the gift may be \$0 today, but its *value* today (PV_0) is not—and it is the latter, i.e., the fair value, that is used in the CAPM, not the former.

IMPORTANT:

- *The CAPM works only with expected rates of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_{i,t=1}) - P_{i,t=0}]/P_{i,t=0}$) that are computed from the true perfect market asset values today ($\mathsf{PV}_{t=0}$) and tomorrow ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_{i,t=1})$).*
- *If either the price today or next period is not fair, then you cannot work with the standard CAPM formula, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}}$.*

Of course, in a perfect and efficient market, what you get is what you pay for ($P_0 = \mathsf{PV}_0$ and $P_1 = \mathsf{PV}_1$), so this issue would never arise. But, if you buy an asset at a better or worse deal ($P_0 < \mathsf{PV}_0$ or $P_0 > \mathsf{PV}_0$), e.g., from a benevolent or malevolent friend, then you can absolutely not use such a P_0 to compute the expected rate of return in the CAPM formula. The same applies to $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)$: the expected value tomorrow must be the true expected value, not a sweetheart deal value at which you may let go of the asset, or an excessive price at which you can find a desperate buyer.

We need to rearrange the CAPM formula into the Certainty Equivalence Formula: We work out an expected value that we can discount with the risk-free rate.

Now, return to our question of how to value a gift. Our specific computational problem is tricky: we could compute a rate of return for the cash flow if we knew PV_0, then from the rate of return we could compute the project beta, which we could use to find the discount rate to translate the expected cash flow back into the price PV_0 today. Alas, we do not know PV_0, so we cannot compute a rate of return. To solve this dilemma, we must use an alternative form of the CAPM formula, called its **certainty equivalence** form. It is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})/\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})] \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + r_{\mathcal{F}}} \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - \lambda \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + r_{\mathcal{F}}} \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{17.29}$$

where λ is $\{[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]/\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})\}$, and all three quantities pertain to the period from time 0 to time 1. So, if we believe that the expected annual equity premium is 5%, and that the variance of the rate of return on the market is around 0.04 (a standard deviation of 20%), we

would choose a lambda of around 1.25. (It is the equity premium (8% − 3% = 5%) divided by the variance of the rate of return on the stock market, $[(28\% - 8\%)^2 + (-12\% - 8\%)^2]/2 = 0.04$). If the risk-free rate today is 3%, we would value projects as

$$\mathsf{PV}_0 = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - 1.25 \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + 3\%} = \underbrace{\frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)}{1 + 3\%}}_{\text{as-if-risk-free}} - \underbrace{\frac{1.25 \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + 3\%}}_{\text{risk discount}} . \tag{17.30}$$

The name "certainty-equivalence" is apt. The first form shows that, after we have reduced the expected value of the future cash flow ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)$) by some number that relates to the cash flow's covariance with the market, we can then treat this reduced value as if it were a perfectly certain future cash flow and discount it with the risk-free rate. The second form shows that we can decompose the price today into an "as-if-risk-neutral" value discounted only for the time-premium (with the risk-free rate) and an additional discount for covariance risk with the stock market.

Watch out: the covariance is different in this form!

The covariance between the future value $\tilde{P}_1$ and the rate of return on the market is related, but not identical to the project's market-beta. It is *not* the covariance of the project's *rate* of return with the market rate of return, either. It is the covariance of the project's *cash flow* with the market rate of return, instead.

Our problem solved with zero covariance.

With the certainty equivalence formula, we can now value the $100 expected gift. Assuming that the risk-free rate is 3% per annum, and that the lambda is the aforementioned 1.25,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\$100 - 1.25 \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + 3\%} \\ \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - \lambda \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + r_{\mathcal{F}}} . \end{aligned} \tag{17.31}$$

If we believe that the gift's payout does not covary with the rate of return on the market, so $Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = 0$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\$100 - 1.25 \cdot 0}{1 + 3\%} = \frac{\$100}{1 + 3\%} = \$97.09 \\ \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - \lambda \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1 + r_{\mathcal{F}}} . \end{aligned} \tag{17.32}$$

Our problem solved with positive covariance.

But what if we believe that our windfall does covary with the market? How can we guesstimate the cash flow's covariance with the rate of return on the stock market? The answer is that we need to write down some scenarios, and then use our covariance computation formula (from Section 13·4.B). This is easiest to understand in an example. Let us assume that we believe that if the market goes up by 28%, our gift will be $200; if the market goes down by 12%, our gift will be $0. We also believe these two outcomes to be equally likely.

Prob:	1/2	1/2			
	Bad	Good	Mean	*Var*	*Sdv*
Stock Market	-12%	+28%	8%	4%	20%
Our Windfall	$0	$200	$100	^{2} 10,000	$100

Now use the covariance formula to compute the average product of deviations from the mean. This is

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) &= \frac{(\$200 - \$100) \cdot (28\% - 8\%) + (\$0 - \$100) \cdot (-12\% - 8\%)}{2} = \$20 \\ &= \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N} [\tilde{P}_{1,\text{outcome j}} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)] \cdot [\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M},\text{outcome j}} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})]}{N} \end{aligned} \tag{17.33}$$

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

Lambda is still 1.25, and we can now use the certainty equivalence formula to value our expected windfall of \$100 next year. It is worth

$$\begin{aligned} PV_0 &= \frac{\$100 - 1.25 \cdot \$20}{1+3\%} = \frac{\$75}{1+3\%} = \$72.82 \\ PV_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - \lambda \cdot Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{1+r_{\mathcal{F}}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.34}$$

An alternative method to write the CEV formula.

Finally, note that a different way to write the certainty equivalence formula is

$$PV_0 = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)}{1+r_{\mathcal{F}}} - \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{1+r_{\mathcal{F}}}\right] \cdot b_{\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}} \quad , \tag{17.35}$$

where $b_{\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}}$ is the beta of a regression in which the value (not the rate of return) is the dependent variable.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Knowing the fair price of \$72.82, we can now easily check that we have really just recomputed the CAPM formula. The project will either provide a rate of return of \$200/\$72.82 − 1 = 174%, or a rate of return of −100%, for an average rate of return of 37%. The beta computed with rates of return is*

$$\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} = \frac{\frac{(+174\%-37\%)\cdot(+28\%-8\%)+(-100\%-37\%)\cdot(-12\%-8\%)}{2}}{\frac{(+28\%-8\%)^2+(-12\%-8\%)^2}{2}} = \frac{0.274}{0.04} = 6.85 \quad . \tag{17.36}$$

The ordinary CAPM formula states that the expected rate of return, given this beta of 6.85, should be

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 0.03 + (0.08 - 0.03) \cdot 6.85 \approx 0.37 \quad , \tag{17.37}$$

which is indeed what we had computed above. Here is a proof of the certainty equivalence form. Start with the CAPM formula:

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,m} \quad . \tag{17.38}$$

Rewrite beta

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} \quad . \tag{17.39}$$

Rewrite the rate of return, $\tilde{r}_i = \tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1$,

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \frac{Cov(\tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} \quad . \tag{17.40}$$

We want to simplify $Cov(\tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})$. Covariances are easy to manipulate: if a and b are known constants, then $Cov(a\cdot\tilde{x} + b, \tilde{y}) = a\cdot Cov(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y})$. (The constant b does not comove with y, so it disappears.) $1/PV_0$ plays the role of the constant a, -1 plays the role of the constant b. So we can write $Cov(\tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})/PV_0$. We already know how to manipulate expectations, so $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1/PV_0 - 1) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)/PV_0 - 1$. Substitute back in these unrolled expectation and covariances, and you get

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1)/PV_0 - 1 = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \frac{Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})}{PV_0 \cdot Var(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} \quad . \tag{17.41}$$

If you solve this equation for PV_0, you will arrive at Formula 17.29.

Solve Now!

Q 17.26 *Although you are a millionaire, keeping all your money in the market, you have managed to secure a great deal: if you give your even richer Uncle Vinny \$10,000 today, he will help you buy a Ferrari, expected to be worth \$200,000, if his business can afford it. He is an undertaker by profession, so his business will have the money if the stock market drops, but not if it increases. For simplicity, assume that the stock market drops 1 in 4 years and by -10% when it does and increases by 18% per annum if it does not drop. (Write it out as four separate possible state outcomes to make your life simpler.) The risk-free rate is 6%. What is your Uncle's promise worth at market value?*

b. An Application of the Certainty Equivalence Method

The opportunity cost of capital of a privately held corporation.

You are asked to advise a firm on its appropriate cost of capital. The owners of this firm are very wealthy and widely diversified, so that their remaining portfolio is similar to the market portfolio. (Otherwise, our investor's opportunity cost of capital may not be well represented by the CAPM—and therefore, the calculations here are not relevant for the typical cash-strapped entrepreneur.) To make this a more realistic and difficult task, this firm is either privately held or only a division, so you cannot find historical public market values, and there are no obvious publicly traded comparable firms. Instead, the firm hands you its historical annual cash flows:

Year	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	Average
S&P500	+21.4%	−5.7%	−12.8%	−21.9%	+26,4%	+9.0%	+2.7%
Cash Flows	$8,794	$5,373	$8,397	$6,314	$9,430	$9,838	$8,024

In a perfect world, this is an easy problem: you could compute the value of this firm every year, then compute the beta of the firm's rate of return with respect to the market rate of return, and plug this into the CAPM formula. Alas, assessing annual firm value changes from annual cash flows is beyond my capability. You can also not presume that percent changes in the firm's cash flows are percent changes in the firm's value—just consider what would happen to your estimates if the firm had earned zero in one year. So, what cost of capital are you recommending? Having only a time series of historical cash flows (and no rates of return) is a very applied and not simply an obscure theoretical problem, and you might first want to reflect on how difficult it is to solve this problem without the certainty equivalence formula.

Let us attempt to value this.

First, we have to make our usual assumption that our historical cash flows and market rates of returns are representative of the future. To solve our problem, we begin by computing the beta of the firm's cash flows with respect to the S&P500. This is easier if we work with differences from the mean,

Year	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	Average
S&P500	+0.187	−0.084	−0.155	−0.246	+0.237	+0.063	0
Cash Flows	+$770	−$2,651	+$373	−$1,710	+$1,406	+$1,814	$0

To compute the covariance of the S&P500 returns with our cash flows, we multiply these and take the average (well, we divide by $N-1$, because this is a sample, not the population, but it won't matter in the end),

$$\begin{aligned} Cov_{\tilde{CF},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}} &= \frac{(+0.187)\cdot(+\$770)+(-0.084)\cdot(-\$2,651)+\cdots+(+0.063)\cdot(+\$1,814)}{5} \\ &\approx \$235.4 \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{17.42}$$

and compute the variance

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = \frac{(+0.187)^2+(-0.084)^2+\cdots+(0.063)^2}{5} \approx 0.0373 \quad . \tag{17.43}$$

The cash flow beta is the ratio of these,

$$\beta_{\tilde{CF},\mathcal{M}} = \frac{Cov_{\tilde{CF},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}}}{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})} = \frac{\$235.4}{0.03734} \approx \$6,304 \quad . \tag{17.44}$$

It is easiest now to proceed by considering the historical mean cash flow of $8,024. We need an assumption of a suitable equity premium and a suitable risk-free rate. Let us adopt 3% and 4%, respectively. In this case, the value of our firm would be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_0 &= \frac{\$8,024}{1+3\%} - \left[\frac{4\%}{1+3\%}\right]\cdot\$6,304 \\ &\approx \$7,791 - \$245 = \$7,546 \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{CF})}{1+r_{\mathcal{F}}} - \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})-r_{\mathcal{F}}}{1+r_{\mathcal{F}}}\right]\cdot b_{\tilde{CF},\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}} \end{aligned} \tag{17.45}$$

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

The certainty equivalence formula tells us that because our firm's cash flows are correlated with the market, we shall impute a risk discount of \$245. We can translate this into a cost of capital estimate—at what discount rate would we arrive at a value of \$7,546?

$$\begin{aligned} \$7,546 &= \frac{\$8,024}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 6.3\% \ . \\ \text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathcal{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})} \end{aligned} \tag{17.46}$$

We now have an estimate of the cost of capital for our cash flow for next year. We can also translate this into an equivalent returns-based market-beta, which is

$$\begin{aligned} 3\% \ &+ \ 4\% \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \ = \ 6.3\% \quad \Rightarrow \quad \beta \approx 0.8 \ . \\ r_{\mathcal{F}} \ &+ \ [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \end{aligned} \tag{17.47}$$

Are we close? Now I can reveal who the firm in this example really was—it was IBM. Because it is publicly traded, we can see how our own estimate of IBM's cost of capital and market beta would have come out if we had computed it from IBM's annual market values. Its rates of return were

Year	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	Average
IBM's Rate of Return	+17.5%	−20.8%	+43.0%	−35.5%	+20.5%	+7.2%	+5.3%

If you compute the market-beta of these annual returns, you will find an estimate of 0.7—very close to the estimate we obtained from our cash flow series. (For IBM, this is a very low market-beta estimate. If we used monthly cash flows or monthly stock returns, we would obtain a considerably higher market-beta estimate.)

Solve Now!

Q 17.27 *A firm reported the following cash flows:*

Year	*1999*	*2000*	*2001*	*2002*	*2003*	*2004*	*Average*
S&P500	+21.4%	−5.7%	−12.8%	−21.9%	+26,4%	+9.0%	+2.7%
Cash Flows	+\$2,864	+\$1,666	−\$1,040	+\$52	+\$1,478	−\$962	+\$997

(Note that the cash flows are close to nothing in 2002 and even negative in 2004, the latter preventing you from computing percent changes in cash flows.) What cost of capital would you recommend for this firm?

1. You can use the CAPM formula here: $4\% + (16\% - 4\%) \cdot 1.5 = 22\%$.
2. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 4\% + (7\% - 4\%) \cdot 3 = 13\%$.
3. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 4\% + (12\% - 4\%) \cdot 3 = 28\%$.
4. Solve $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 4\% + (7\% - 4\%) \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 5\%$. Therefore, $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 1/3$.
5. Do it!
6. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}$ is the premium that the stock market expects to offer, above and beyond the rate that risk-free investments offer.

7. It does not matter what you choose as the per-unit payoff of the bond. \$100 is expected to return \$99. So, the price of the bond is

$$\text{PV} = \frac{\$99}{1 + (3\% + 5\% \cdot 0.2)} \approx \$95.19 \tag{17.48}$$

   Therefore, the promised rate of return on the bond is $\$100/\$95.19 - 1 \approx 5.05\%$.
8. The risk-free rate is 3%, so this is the time premium. The expected risk premium is 1%. The remaining 1.05% is the default premium.
9. The cost needs to be discounted with the current interest rate. Since payment is upfront, this cost is \$30,000 now! The appropriate expected rate of return for cash flows (of your earnings) is $3\% + 5\% \cdot 1.5 = 10.5\%$. You can now use the annuity formula, to determine the PV if you graduate.

$$\frac{\$5,000}{10.5\%} \cdot \left[1 - \left(\frac{1}{1 + 10.5\%}\right)^{40}\right] = \$47,619 \cdot 98.2\% \approx \$46,741.46 \ . \tag{17.49}$$

   With 90% probability, you will do so, which means that the appropriate risk-adjusted and discounted cash flow is about \$42,067.32. The NPV of your education is therefore about \$12,067.

10. An estimate between 2% and 8% per year is reasonable. Anything below 0% and above 10% would be unreasonable. For reasoning, please see the different methods in the chapter.
11. Use the Treasury rate for the 1-year project, e.g., from the *Wall Street Journal*. Because the 10-year project could have a duration of flows anywhere from 5 to 10 years, depending on use, you might choose a risk-free Treasury rate that is between 5 and 10 years.
12. A 5-year interest rate is a reasonably good guess. You should not be using a 30-day Treasury bill, or a 30-year Treasury bond.
13. You could run a time-series regression of project rates of return on the stock market.

$$\tilde{r}_p = \alpha + \beta \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} \ . \tag{17.50}$$

    (PS: Although not discussed, a slightly better regression would be $\left(\tilde{r}_p - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right) = \alpha + \beta \cdot \left(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right)$.) The statistical package (or Excel) would spit out the project beta. The digging-deeper note explains that if you want to improve the forward-looking estimate, you might want to shrink this beta towards 1.
14. Beta can be found in Yahoo!*Finance*'s "Profile." In June 2003, IBM's beta was 1.48. Most upstart growth companies have higher betas.
15. Rearrange the CAPM formula to $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}}$. So, the first beta estimate would be $\frac{20\% - 4\%}{10\% - 4\%} \approx 2.7$. The second beta estimate would be $\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = \frac{-20\% - 4\%}{-5\% - 4\%} = 2.7$. Therefore, a reasonable estimate of beta would be the average, here 2.7.
16. You can compute an unlevered beta.

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{P,\mathcal{M}} &= \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) \cdot 0 + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \cdot 2.5 \\ \beta_{P,\mathcal{M}} &= w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \beta_{\text{DT},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\text{EQ}} \cdot \beta_{\text{EQ},\mathcal{M}} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{17.51}$$

    Therefore, $\beta_{P,\mathcal{M}} = 0.83$. We assume our project has the same beta, but a smaller debt ratio:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.833 &= \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \cdot 0 + \left(\frac{2}{3}\right) \cdot \beta_{\text{EQ},\mathcal{M}} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \beta_{\text{EQ},\mathcal{M}} = 1.25. \\ \beta_{P,\mathcal{M}} &= w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \beta_{\text{DT},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\text{EQ}} \cdot \beta_{\text{EQ},\mathcal{M}} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{17.52}$$

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

17. The comparable project's equity expected rate of return would be $3\% + 2\% \cdot 2.5 = 8\%$. Our own equity's expected rate of return would be $3\% + 2\% \cdot 1.25 = 5.5\%$

18. A debt/equity ratio of 2 is the same as the debt asset ratio of 2/3: two parts debt, one part equity. A debt/equity ratio of 1/2 is the same as the debt asset ratio of 1/3: one part debt, two parts equity. To convert a debt-equity ratio into a debt-asset ratio, recognize that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{D/A} &= \frac{1}{D/(D+E)} = \left(\frac{D+E}{D}\right) = 1 + \left(\frac{E}{D}\right) \\ \Longrightarrow \quad \frac{D}{E} &= \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{D/A} - 1\right)} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{2/3} - 1\right)} \\ &= \frac{1}{\left(\frac{3}{2} - 1\right)} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} = 2 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.53}$$

19. This is the same as above, too.

20. $\beta_{\text{combined},\mathcal{M}} = (3/4) \cdot 2.4 + (1/4) \cdot 0.4 = 1.9$.

21. $$\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = w_p \cdot 0.2 + (1 - w_p) \cdot 1 = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad w_p = 1.25 \quad . \tag{17.54}$$

So, if your wealth is \$100, you want to short \$25 in the fund to increase your own portfolio holdings to \$125. The net portfolio has zero market beta.

22. The CAPM cost of capital is 10%. Its current projects are expected to provide \$30, the new project would provide \$6, \$2 above the risk-free rate. Therefore, the value of the firm would go up by \$2 next year, which has to be discounted to today. The new project "loan" would be about $1/4$ of the new firm. Therefore, the new beta of the firm will be

$$\beta_{\text{FM},\mathcal{M}} = 3/4 \cdot 2 + 1/4 \cdot 0 = 1.5 \quad . \tag{17.55}$$

The firm's cost of capital would therefore decline from 10% to 8.5%. At this cost of capital, the extra \$2 would add about \$1.84 to the firm value. The firm's cash flows would change from \$430 to \$330 + \$106 = \$436. Discounted at the 8.5% interest rate, this comes to about \$401.84. Subtracting off the \$100 cost of the loan confirms the NPV. The firm should change its policy.

23.

(a) The value is \$9.57.

(b) $$w_{\mathcal{N}} = \frac{\text{PV}_{\mathcal{N}}}{\text{PV}_{\text{combined}}} = \frac{\frac{\$11}{1+15\%}}{\$109.48} \approx 8.73\% \quad . \tag{17.56}$$

(c) $$\beta_{\text{combined}} = w_O \cdot \beta_O + w_{\mathcal{N}} \cdot \beta_{\mathcal{N}} \approx 91.26\% \cdot 0.5 + 8.73\% \cdot 3 = 0.718 \quad . \tag{17.57}$$

(d) $$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{combined}}) = 3\% + 4\% \cdot 0.718 = 5.872\% \quad , \tag{17.58}$$

(e) Yes! The IRR of N is 10%. 10% is above the blended cost of capital of 5.872%.

(f) Firm value would be

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$105 + \$11}{1 + 5.872\%} = \$109.56 \\ &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF}_{\mathcal{N}}) + \mathcal{E}(\text{CF}_O)}{1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{combined}})} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.59}$$

So, again, the firm has destroyed \$0.44.

24. See Figure 17.4.

25. For short investments, the expected cash flows are most critical to estimate well (see Section 5·4). For long-term projects, cost of capital becomes more important to get right. Betas and risk-free rates are usually relatively trouble free, having only modest degrees of uncertainty. The equity premium will be the most important problem factor.

26. This is a certainty equivalence question. Although it is not a gift per se, you cannot assume that $10,000 is a fair market value, so that you can compute a rate of return of 1,900%—after all, it is your Uncle trying to do something nice for you. There are four outcomes:

Prob:	1/4	1/4	1/4	1/4	
	Crash	No-Crash	No-Crash	No-Crash	Mean
Stock Market	-10%	+18%	+18%	+18%	11%
Ferrari	$200	$0	$0	$50	

Plug this into the formula

$$\begin{aligned} Cov(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) &= 1/4 \cdot [\$150,000 \cdot (-21\%) + (-\$50,000) \cdot (+7\%) + \\ &\quad (-\$50,000) \cdot (+7\%) + (-\$50,000) \cdot (+7\%)] = -\$21,000 \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{17.60}$$

We also need to determine the variance of the market. It is

$$Cov(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = \frac{(-21\%)^2 + (+7\%)^2 + (+7\%)^2 + (+7\%)^4}{4} = 147\%\% \tag{17.61}$$

(which incidentally comes to a standard deviation of 12% per annum, a bit low.) With the risk-free rate of 6%, lambda (λ) is $(11\% - 6\%)/147\%\% \approx 3.4$.

So, we can now use the certainty equivalence formula: the expected value of the Ferrari is $50,000. If it were a safe payoff, it would be worth $47,170. Because you get more if the rest of your portfolio goes down, it is actually great insurance for you. So, you value it $3.4 \cdot (-\$21,000)/(1+6\%) \approx \$67,358$ higher than $47,170: the Ferrari is worth $114,528. You have to pay $10,000 today, of course, so you have managed to secure a deal for $104,528.

27. The beta of these cash flows is $5,104. Therefore, the risk discount on $997 is about $4\%/1.03 \cdot \$997 \approx \$38.718$, which corresponds to a cost of capital of about 4% (a beta of about 0.25). This firm is Sony. It had returns of −42% (in 2001, computed with the 2000 price), −39%, −10%, +2%, and −8%. (Even these returns depend sensitively on how dividends are reinvested.) The beta computed from market values comes out to just below 0.6. In the real world, the difference of 0.35 would result in about 1% difference in the cost of capital—a reasonable amount of error, especially given that we had to estimate a cost of capital without knowing Sony's historical market values! Yahoo!*Finance* lists a Sony beta of around 1, but also computes this from monthly stock returns.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=capmrecipe-g.tex: LP

CHAPTER 18

THE CAPM: THE THEORY AND ITS LIMITS

Where does the CAPM equation come from?

last file change: Feb 18, 2006 (15:55h)

last major edit: Sep 2004

This chapter appears in the Survey text only.

This chapter explains the CAPM theory in detail *and* its shortcomings. Actually, because we have already discussed all the necessary ingredients—mostly in Chapter 16 which is absolutely necessary background for this chapter—this chapter is surprisingly simple. Really.

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

18·1. THE THEORY

18·1.A. The Logic and Formula

Here are the underlying mathematical facts, which were already explained.

We have already covered every necessary aspect of the CAPM theory in earlier chapters:

- In Section 12·3.D, we learned that the portfolio held by investors in the aggregate is the (market-capitalization) value-weighted portfolio.
- In Section 16·3, we learned that the combination of Mean-Variance Efficient portfolios is itself MVE.
- In Section 16·5, we learned that each stock i in a MVE-portfolio must offer a fair expected rate of return for its risk contribution to $\mathcal{E}$. Formula 16.31 states that for each and every security i in the MVE portfolio $\mathcal{E}$, this means that

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) \;=\; r_{\mathcal{F}} \;+\; \left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \quad . \tag{18.1}$$

Here is the CAPM Theory.

The CAPM is a theory that has only one hypothesis and only one implication.

CAPM Hypothesis The CAPM hypothesis is that each and every investor chooses an MVE portfolio.

Investors may not hold MVE portfolios.

Unlike the method for choosing weights for an MVE portfolio—which are just mathematical optimization techniques and which have to be correct—the CAPM is a real theory that may not hold in practice: investors might have different investment objectives and therefore not hold MVE portfolios.

CAPM Implication If the CAPM hypothesis is correct, then the mathematical implication is that the aggregate value-weighted market portfolio is also MVE.

The CAPM could be wrong in practice.

If the CAPM hypothesis is not correct, there is no particular reason to expect the value-weighted portfolio to lie on the MVE Frontier. Instead, the value-weighted market portfolio could have risk-reward characteristics that place it far inside the MVE Frontier.

This is it: the Capital-Asset Pricing Model, which won the 1990 Nobel Prize in Economics.

> **IMPORTANT**: *The CAPM conjectures that all investors purchase MVE portfolios. As a necessary mathematical consequence, the value-weighted market portfolio is also MVE.*

OK, let's do with algebra and logic.

Put altogether again, the logic of the CAPM is:

Mathematical Fact To enter an MVE Frontier portfolio $\mathcal{E}$, each stock in $\mathcal{E}$ has to offer an appropriate reward for its risk. This formula, which relates its expected rate of return to its covariation with $\mathcal{E}$, is

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; r_{\mathcal{F}} + \left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{E}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{E}} \quad . \tag{18.2}$$

Stocks that offer expected rates of return higher than suggested by this formula would generate too much aggregate investor demand; stocks that offer lower expected rates of return would generate too little aggregate investor demand.

CAPM Theory Assumption Every investor purchases an MVE portfolio.

file=capmtheory-g.tex: RP

⟹ **Implication** The value-weighted market portfolio is MVE.

⟹ **Implication** that

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad . \tag{18.3}$$

In this case, the market portfolio consisting only of risky securities must be the tangency portfolio T.

DIGGING DEEPER: *This is the "Sharpe-Lintner" CAPM. There is also a "Fisher Black" CAPM, in which there is no risk-free rate of return. Everything works the same, except that the risk-free rate is replaced by the constant a. All stocks in the economy follow the CAPM formula*

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \;=\; a + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - a] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} \quad , \tag{18.4}$$

with respect to the value-weighted market portfolio M.

18·1.B. Some Odds and Ends

The market portfolio is theoretically clear, but practically difficult to identify.

- The theoretically correct market portfolio in the CAPM is the market-capitalization value-weighted portfolio, consisting of all possible investment assets in the economy, not just stocks in the U.S. stock market.

  However, in traditional investments use, the assumed goal is to pick the best portfolio among publicly traded stocks. It is as if the CAPM theory was restated to conjecture that investors seek to optimize the risk/reward relationship only within their portfolios of publicly traded domestic stocks. In this case, the proper market portfolio would be the market-capitalization value-weighted U.S. stock market portfolio. However, even this portfolio is difficult to obtain every day. Fortunately, the value-weighted U.S. stock market portfolio has high correlation with other broad stock market indexes, such as the S&P500. Thus, the S&P500 is often used as a reasonably good substitute.

  Although this is reasonable use for CAPM testing and corporate CAPM application, it is *not* good investment advice: you should definitely diversify across more assets than just domestic stocks. International stocks, commodities, real-estate, and even education represent other investment classes that are readily available to join smart investors' portfolios.

  In the real world, different investors have different investment opportunities. For example, you can invest in your house or you can invest your education and reap the rewards—but I cannot invest in *your* house and *your* education. The CAPM ignores this issue altogether. But if you have too much invested in some untraded assets (education or your specific house), you might not want the same kind of stocks to diversify your educational investment risk away. That is, you might not want stocks to minimize your portfolio variance only. Instead, you might want to purchase relatively more stocks that go up when your other untraded assets go down, and vice-versa.

Mutual Funds facilitate holding the market portfolio.

- Transaction costs would be high enough to prevent ordinary small investors from themselves purchasing the widely diversified portfolio prescribed by the CAPM. Mutual Funds (Section 12·3.B), however, have made this relatively easy.

If the market portfolio is not MVE, then the CAPM does not hold and the CAPM formula cannot be used.

- What if the market portfolio does not sit on the MVE Frontier? Then there will be stocks for which the CAPM Formula 18.4 does not hold. And then it should not be assumed that the CAPM formula is the appropriate relation predicting stocks' expected rates of return.

  Indeed, then anything else could conceivably explain higher or lower required rates of return. For example, instead of firms with higher market betas, it may be firms with higher P/E ratios or firms with older CEOs or firms containing the letter "Z" that may end up having to offer higher expected rates of return in order to induce investors to willingly purchase and hold them in equilibrium. Naturally, such a situation would make it very difficult for corporations to determine the appropriate cost of capital that their projects should offer.

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

Higher beta implies higher expected rate of return.

- Because $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) > r_{\mathcal{F}}$, the intuition of the CAPM formula is that stocks with higher stock-market betas have to offer higher expected rates of return. Stocks with high betas are less helpful in reducing the risk of an investor who already holds the market portfolio.

From the perspective of a widely diversified investor, a tiny bit of zero-beta stock is just as good as investment in the risk-free security.

- A risky project that has a beta of zero need only offer an expected rate of return no higher than the risk-free rate itself. This is because each investor would only hold a tiny amount of this security. Having one cent in the risk-free rate or in a security whose return is expected to be the same and with no correlation to the rest of the portfolio is practically the same. In the real and naturally not perfectly CAPM world, this is not exactly correct—but it is often still a reasonably good approximation.

Solve Now!

Q 18.1 *What is the main* CAPM *hypothesis, and what is the main* CAPM *implication?*

Q 18.2 *Write down the* CAPM *formula without looking at the text. You must memorize it!*

Q 18.3 *Under what circumstances is the market-beta a good measure of risk?*

Q 18.4 *What can plotting both the stock-market portfolio and the risk-free rate into the MVE Frontier graph tell you about the model and about the security markets line?*

Q 18.5 *What can checking whether every single security follows the* CAPM *formula (i.e., that every single possible investment is on the security markets line in a graph of expected rate of return against beta) tell you about the MVE Frontier (a graph of expected rate of return against standard deviation)?*

Q 18.6 *If all but one security are right on the security-markets line, is the market portfolio MVE?*

Q 18.7 *Is the* CAPM *market portfolio the value-weighted or the equal-weighted portfolio?*

Q 18.8 *Can the S&P500 be used as a proxy for the market?*

Q 18.9 *In the formula, why do higher beta stocks offer higher expected rates of return?*

Q 18.10 *If there is a risk-free security, does the stock market portfolio have to be the tangency portfolio for the* CAPM *to hold, or can it be any portfolio on the mean-variance frontier of risky assets?*

Q 18.11 *Is it possible for a risky stock to offer an expected rate of return that is less than the risk-free rate?*

file=capmtheory-g.tex: RP

18·2. DOES THE CAPM HOLD?

18·2.A. Listing All the CAPM Assumptions

Let's judge the CAPM Model Assumptions.

We have sneaked in the CAPM assumptions one at a time, perhaps to make them appear more palatable. It is excusable if they have slipped your mind by now. So, to help you judge how likely it is that the CAPM assumptions are reasonably satisfied in the real world, it is worthwhile to repeat them all at once. These are all the assumptions that we have used to conjecture that each and every investor buys an MVE portfolio:

Market Assumptions

- The market is perfectly competitive.
- There are no transaction costs.
- There are no taxes.
- The investment opportunity choices are identical for each investor. Therefore, the value-weighted market portfolio is identical for all investors. It consists of all assets that can be invested in. It includes such assets as real estate, bonds, international markets, etc.
- The previous assumption means that are no untraded assets that only some, but not other investors can hold. That is, you cannot have your own house, or your own children, or your own education, or your own labor income, or your own executive stock options.

Informational Assumptions

- Financial markets *are* efficient: as we mentioned in Section 6·1.C, and as we will discuss further in Chapter 19, this means that the market does not ignore information in the setting of financial prices, which an investor could use to outperform the market securities line. You cannot use public information to pick stocks better than the market can.
- There is no *actual* inside information that allows some investors to pick stocks better than the market can.
- There is no *perceived* inside information. That is, investors do not *believe* that they are able to pick stocks better than the market can.
- All investors share the same "opinion" about security expected rates of return and security variance/covariances.
- All model parameters are perfectly known:
  - The expected rate of return on each and every stock (including the market portfolio) is known.
  - All covariances (and thus betas) are known.
  - If you as a researcher want to test the CAPM, i.e., whether other variables matter, you must also know possible alternative return factors (e.g., firm size) that investors can use.
- There are no managerial agency problems (i.e., managers enriching themselves) that can be changed if a large investor holds more of the particular stock with agency problems.

Preference Assumptions

- Investors care only about their portfolio performance. They do not care about other characteristics of their holdings (e.g., socially responsible corporate behavior).
- Investors like mean and dislike variance. This fully describes their portfolio preferences. (It does assume that investors do not care, e.g., about skewness of their portfolio's future investment rate of return, as we discussed on Page 358.)
- Agents maximize their portfolio performance independently each period. (Although this may appear innocuous, it implies that investors do not choose their portfolios to insure themselves against changes in future investment opportunities. You cannot buy stocks that you believe to pay off more in a recession, because you believe then will be a good time to double up investment.)

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

- Investors do not care about how their portfolios perform relative to other variables, including variables related to their own personal characteristics (except for risk-tolerance). For example, investors must not care about earning a different rate of return in states in which they find themselves ill or states in which inflation is high.

The CAPM is just a helpful model, not perfect reality.

If these assumptions hold, the CAPM will hold. Of course, it could also be that the value-weighted market portfolio just happens to lie on the MVE frontier, in which case the CAPM security markets line would just happen to be a line by accident. Fortunately, the market need not lie *perfectly* on the MVE frontier, nor must the assumptions hold *perfectly* in order for the CAPM to be a useful model. After all, the CAPM is *only* a model, not reality. Only mathematics works the same in theory and in practice—economic models do not. The real question is whether the CAPM assumptions are sufficiently badly violated to render the CAPM a useless model—and in what context.

18·2.B. Is the CAPM a good representation of reality?

You do not hold the stock market portfolio, therefore the CAPM is incorrect. True, but...

In real life, we know that some investors purchase portfolios other than MVE portfolios. This should not come as a big surprise: chances are that you yourself are one of these investors, even if you are only a small investor. Therefore, in the strictest sense, we already know that the CAPM does not hold. But, again, the CAPM is only a model. The question is whether the CAPM simplification of reality is helpful in understanding the world, i.e., whether the model is sufficiently close to reality to be useful. Perhaps most of the real big investors "who matter" do invest in portfolios sufficiently similar to MVE portfolios, so that the value-weighted market portfolio is on the MVE Frontier, meaning that the CAPM "roughly" works.

The empirical relationship is graphed.

Unfortunately, the empirical evidence suggests that the market portfolio does not lie too closely on the MVE Frontier, that the security markets line is not perfectly linear, and that expected security returns relate to other characteristics in addition to beta. Figure 18.1 plots average monthly returns against stock betas. Care must be exercised when viewing these figures, because there are few stocks with betas below 0 and above 2. Therefore, the smoothed lines are not too reliable beyond this range. In the 1970s, the relationship between beta and average (monthly) return was generally upward-sloping, though not perfectly linear. In the eighties, although stocks with betas below 0.5 and 1.5 had similar average rates of return, stocks outside the 0.5 to 1.5 beta range (not too many!) had a clear positive relationship. In the 1990s, firms with positive betas showed a nice positive relationship, though the (few) stocks below $\beta = 0$ did not.

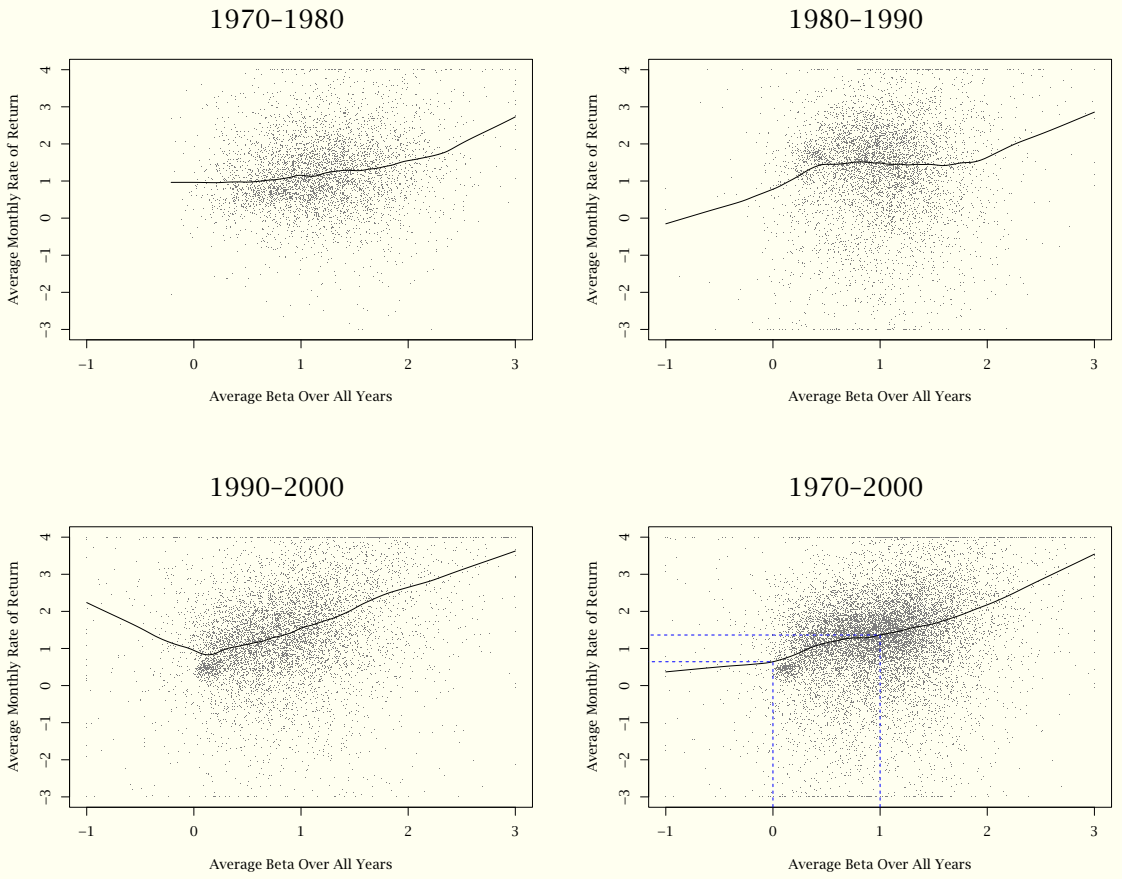
The most interesting plot is the overall graph, plotting the relationships from 1970 to 2000. The typical stock with a beta of 0 earned a rate of return of about 8% per annum, while the typical stock with a beta of 1 (i.e., like the market) earned a rate of return of about 18% per annum. Not drawn in the figure, the average stock with a beta of 2 earned about 217 basis points per month (30% per annum), and the average stock with a beta of 3 earned about 354 basis points per month (50% per annum). These 30 years were an amazingly good period for financial investments! The figure shows also how there was tremendous variability in the investment performance of stocks. More importantly from the perspective of the CAPM, the relationship between average rate of return and beta was not exactly linear, as the CAPM suggests, but it was not far off. If we stopped now, we would conclude that the CAPM was a pretty good model.

But this is deceptive—the CAPM fails against specific better alternatives.

But look back at Figure 17.4. The empirical evidence is not against the CAPM in the sense of the first three plots (linearity)—it is against the CAPM in the sense of the last three plots (better alternative classifications). So, although we cannot see this in Figure 18.1, the CAPM fails when we split these stocks into groups based on different characteristics—and academics seem to come up with about five new different characteristics per year. So, the empirical reality is somewhat closer to the latter three figures than it is to the idealized CAPM world. This implies that market beta seems to matter *if* we do not control for certain other firm characteristics. For example, some evidence suggests that firms that are classified as "small growth firms" by some metrics generally underperform "large value firms"—but neither do we really know why, nor do we know what we should recommend a corporate manager should do about this fact. Maybe managers should pretend that they are growth firms—because investors like this

file=capmtheory-g.tex: RP

Figure 18.1. Average Historical Rates of Return Against Historical Market Beta.



The web chapter on empirical asset pricing examines, among other issues, noise and non-stationarity problems when testing investments models.

so much they are willing to throw money at growth firms—but then act like value firms and thereby earn higher returns?! But we still have another "little problem" (irony warning)—we finance academics are not exactly sure what these characteristics are, and why they matter.

18·2.C. Professorial Opinions on the CAPM

You need to know pros and cons.

Different academics draw different conclusions from this evidence—and it should leave you with a more subtle perspective than we academics would like. See, we professors would be happy if we could tell you that the CAPM is exactly how the world works, and then close the chapter. We would probably even be happy if we told you that the CAPM is definitely *not* the right model to use, and then close the chapter. But it is not so simple. Yes, some professors recommend outright against using the CAPM, but most professors still recommend "use with caution." Now, before I give you my own view, be aware that this is just my own assessment, not a universal scientific truth. In any case, you positively need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of the CAPM, and know when to use it and when not to use it.

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

My personal opinion.

My own personal opinion is that although the CAPM is likely not to be really true, market beta is still a useful cost-of-capital measure for a corporate finance manager. Why so? Look at the last three plots in Figure 17.4 again: If you have a beta of around 1.5, you are more than likely a growth firm with an expected rate of return of 10% to 15%; if you have a beta of around 0, you are more than likely a value firm with an expected rate of return of 3% to 7%. Thus, beta would still provide you with a decent cost of capital estimate, even though it was not beta itself that mattered, but whether the firm was a growth or a value firm. (Market beta helped in indicating to you whether the firm was a growth or a value firm in the first place.) Admittedly, using an incorrect model is not an ideal situation, but the cost-of-capital errors are often reasonable enough that corporate managers generally can live with them. And the fact is, if corporations cannot live with these errors, we really do not know what to recommend as a better alternative to the CAPM!

Why the CAPM continues to be and should be used.

In sum, although the CAPM formula is mistaken, it continues to be the dominant model for the following reasons:

1. Although the market portfolio does not seem to lie directly on the MVE Frontier, it does not appear to be *too* far away.
2. The CAPM provides good intuition for the characteristics that should determine the expected rates of return that have to be offered by stocks: stocks that help diversified investors achieve lower risk should be sellable even if they offer lower expected rates of return.
3. For many purposes and many stocks, the CAPM provides reasonable expected rates of return, not too far off from those gleaned from more complex, difficult, and/or arbitrary models.
4. There is no good alternative model that is either simpler to use or convincingly better in providing appropriate expected rates of return for investments.
5. The CAPM is *the* gold standard for cost-of-capital estimations in the real world. It is in wide use. Understanding it (and its shortcomings) is therefore crucial for any student with an interest in finance.

In contrast, my advice to an investor would be *not* to use the CAPM for investment portfolio choices. There are better investment strategies than just investing in the market, although wide diversification needs to be an important part of *any* good investment strategy.

Another interesting question is *why* the CAPM fails. In my own opinion, most investors do not invest scientifically. They buy stocks that they believe to be undervalued and sell stocks that they believe to be overvalued. Why do even small and relatively unsophisticated investors—often relying on investment advice that qualifies as the modern equivalent of hocus-pocus—believe they are smarter than the financial markets, whilst even professional investors have difficulties beating the market? This is perhaps the biggest puzzle in finance.

Although people's tendencies to categorize choices might have given us some hope that people at least maximize MVE within the domain of their own pure market investment portfolios, perhaps subject to their idiosyncratic estimates of expected rates of return, the evidence suggest that investors are not even internally consistent. Even among the stocks for which they hold opinions about high or low expected rates of return, investors tend not to choose securities to reach their own best MVE Frontiers.

Unfortunately, if every investor behaves differently, it is also not clear what the expected rate of return on a particular investment really should be or has to be—other than that it need not necessarily be that suggested by the CAPM. It could be high, it could be low, it could be anything.

This phenomenon is the domain of behavioral finance, eventually to be further expounded in a web chapter.

18·2.D. Why not Optimization instead of the CAPM?

What are our alternatives to the CAPM? Investors have good, although tedious alternatives...

So, why could we not just rely on optimal portfolio theory (Chapter 16) instead of on the CAPM? From the perspective of an investor, this is a feasible and probably better choice. The only drawback is that instead of believing that the market portfolio is MVE, i.e., that a part of the investor's portfolio should be allocated to it, the investor has to solve the more general problem of where the MVE Frontier is. This is tedious, but possible. Even so, in many situations, i.e., when not too much money is at stake, even though the stock market portfolio is not exactly MVE, it is probably still close enough for most investors to just choose it anyway in order to avoid the pain of computation. Nevertheless, the CAPM should not be used for investment purposes where more than $100 million is at stake. There may be better investment strategies. Again, for smaller investment portfolios, the advice of purchasing a combination of the value-weighted market portfolio (including international stocks and other assets) and a risk-free rate is probably reasonably close to an MVE portfolio.

...while corporations really have few or no alternatives.

From the perspective of a firm, however, relying on optimal portfolio theory is not a feasible choice. Corporate managers need to be able to compute what expected rate of return investors would demand for a particular project. If they do not know what investors want in equilibrium, managers are in a guessing game. So, take the CAPM for what it is useful for: it is a model that provides decent guesstimates of appropriate cost of capital for non-financial projects, in which the exact discount rate is not too critical. Do not use it if a lot of money can be lost if the discount rate is misestimated by a percent or two.

Solve Now!

Q 18.12 *List as many assumptions about the CAPM that you can recall. Which ones are most problematic?*

18·3. Portfolio Benchmarking with the CAPM?

Can the CAPM Formula be beaten in a CAPM world?

The performance evaluation of investment managers is an example of how problematic the application of the CAPM formula can be. The typical CAPM use in **portfolio benchmarking** has investors compute the beta of portfolios held by their investment managers, and check if the manager's portfolio return over the year beat the securities market line. Unfortunately, if the CAPM holds, the security markets line cannot be beaten. After all, the definition of the MVE Frontier is that it is the set of portfolios that offers the best possible combination of risk and return. If the CAPM does not hold, then the security markets line has no reason for living. It would be totally ad-hoc. So, strictly speaking, the CAPM cannot be used for portfolio benchmarking.

There is a good intuitive reason to use the CAPM, anyway.

Nevertheless, the CAPM formula gives good intuition on what constitutes good performance contribution to a widely diversified investor. It also works if the fund manager with the presumably better information and stock picking ability is too small to move prices. This explains why the use of the CAPM formula for performance evaluation continues—despite all its problems.

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

18·4. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The logic of the CAPM is that if every investor holds a mean-variance efficient portfolio, then the (value-weighted) market portfolio is mean-variance efficient. This in turn means that stocks follow the linear relationship between the expected rate of reward and market-beta (the security markets line).
- The CAPM relies on many assumptions. It is only a model.
- The CAPM is a useful simplification in certain contexts (such as capital budgeting), because it is intuitive, easy to use, and often gives a reasonable enough cost-of-capital estimate.
- The CAPM is not a reasonable description of reality in many other contexts. It should not be used for stock investing purposes.
- There are no good alternatives to the CAPM. This is why the CAPM, with all its faults, is still the predominant model in most corporate contexts.

A. Advanced Appendix: The Arbitrage Pricing Theory (APT) Alternative

The **Arbitrage Pricing Theory** (**APT**) is an alternative to the CAPM. This Appendix provides a brief treatment.

Assume that the returns of stocks—here *S1*, *S2* and *S3*—are driven by some (say two) time-series factors:

The price-generation process: a mean plus random factors multiplied.

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{r}_{S1} &= 24\% + (+4)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (+1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S1} \\
\tilde{r}_{S2} &= 5\% + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (+3)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S2} \\
\tilde{r}_{S3} &= 8\% + (+2)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S2} \\
\tilde{r}_{Si} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) + a_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_A + b_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{Si} \ .
\end{aligned} \tag{18.5}$$

What exactly is a **factor**? A factor is just an expected economy-wide outcome (de-facto some time-series) after it has been de-meaned. So, factor $\tilde{f}_A$ could be the actual rate of return on the S&P500 net of the typical (or expected) rate of return on the S&P500. Factor $\tilde{f}_B$ could be the economy's growth rate, or the percent change in the price of a barrel of oil, or the rate of return on IBM. Graham and Harvey surveyed CFOs and found that they are concerned with interest rate risk (especially small firms), exchange rate risk (especially large Fortune-500 type firms), business cycle risk, and inflation risk. To use the APT, we first subtract out the expected value to obtain a "surprise":

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{f}_A) = 0 \qquad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{f}_B) = 0 \ . \tag{18.6}$$

This is just a normalization, and can always be done. To give a feeling for returns that are consistent with our specific APT model, Table 18.1 shows some historical rates of return that would have led to this APT model.

Table 18.1. A Set of Rates of Return Well Described By Our APT Model

	Factors				Rates of Return		
Year	raw $\tilde{f}_A$	raw $\tilde{f}_B$	$\tilde{f}_A$	$\tilde{f}_B$	$\tilde{r}_{S1}$	$\tilde{r}_{S2}$	$\tilde{r}_{S3}$
1980	0.30	0.31	0.58	0.09	2.65	−0.26	1.15
1981	−0.37	−0.82	−0.09	−1.04	−1.14	−2.98	0.95
1982	1.20	0.85	1.48	0.63	6.79	0.47	2.41
1983	−0.54	0.62	−0.26	0.40	−0.38	1.51	−0.83
1984	−1.81	0.12	−1.53	−0.10	−5.97	1.29	−2.88
1985	−0.93	0.56	−0.65	0.34	−2.01	1.71	−1.55
1986	1.39	−0.07	1.67	−0.29	6.63	−2.50	3.72
1987	−1.50	0.19	−1.21	−0.03	−4.64	1.17	−2.32
Mean	−0.28	+0.22	0.00	0.00	+0.24	+0.05	+0.08

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

Epsilons should be uncorrelated. Common variation should be in factors.

Common stock variation when all/many stocks are formed into a portfolio should be only in the factors, not the pricing error, so the pricing error ($\tilde{\epsilon}_{Si}$) for each stock should not only be zero on average, but should outright become zero if the portfolio has a very large number of stocks. If the errors are still not idiosyncratic to each firm, but continue to have common variation with other errors, you need to introduce a new factor that captures this common variation.

Our return generation process intercept is indeed the expected rate of return.

With the assumptions of de-meaned factors ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{f}) = 0$) and mean-zero errors ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{\epsilon}_{Si}) = 0$), the intercept is indeed the expected rate of return on the stock. To see this, take the expectation of both sides of Formula 18.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) &= \mathcal{E}\left[\text{Intercept} + a_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_A + b_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{Si}\right] \\ &= \text{Intercept} + a_{Si}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{f}_A) + b_{Si}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{f}_B) + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{\epsilon}_{Si}) \\ &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{18.7}$$

The a_{Si} and b_{Si} coefficients are called **factor loadings** or **factor exposures**. A stock's factor loadings describe how the stock responds to factor surprises. In our example, stock *S1* responds to surprises in the first factor more and in an opposite way as stock *S2*: if $\tilde{f}_A$ were to turn out as 5%, it would change the actual rate of return on stock *S1* by $+4\cdot 5\% = 20\%$ and change the actual rate of return on stock *S2* by $-1\cdot 5\% = -5\%$. Each stock can be described by how it responds to the two factors—aside from the epsilon, which is just some error or noise that is not supposed to correlate with anything else. Again, this is important: the factors are supposed to capture everything that makes two stocks covary with one another.

The APT question is almost like the CAPM question.

The question that the APT is trying to answer is the same question that the CAPM is trying to answer: given how a stock moves together with something, what should its expected rate of return be? In the CAPM context, this translates into: given the beta of a stock with respect to the stock market, what should its expected rate of return be? In the APT context, this translates into: given the factor loadings of a stock (which describe how a stock comoves with the factors), what should its expected rate of return be?

The APT trick is to diversify away all risk.

The APT trick is to form a portfolio P that has zero exposure with the factors. For example, if we were to invest \$100 into *S1* and \$100 into S2, a 10% factor realization by $\tilde{f}_A$ would increase our *S1* investment by $\$100\cdot(+4)\cdot 10\% = \$40$, and our *S2* investment by $\$100\cdot(-1)\cdot 10\% = -\$10$. Net, we would gain \$30. The rate of return on such a portfolio definitely still depends on the factor $\tilde{f}_A$. But, if we were to invest \$100 into *S1* and \$400 into S2, a 10% factor realization by $\tilde{f}_A$ would increase our *S1* investment by $\$100\cdot(+4)\cdot 10\% = \$40$, and our *S2* investment by $\$400\cdot(-1)\cdot 10\% = -\$40$. For this particular portfolio, no matter what the $\tilde{f}_A$ factor will turn out to be in the future, it will not affect its value. The portfolio has zero net exposure to factor $\tilde{f}_A$.

A portfolio if one stock fails to follow the APT pricing equation.

Now assume that there is also a fourth stock available for investment. This fourth stock has factor exposures of $(+6)$ and (-2), respectively, but we do not yet know its expected rate of return.

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_{S4} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) + (+6)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-2)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S3} \\ \tilde{r}_{Si} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) + a_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_A + b_{Si}\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{Si} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{18.8}$$

Our ultimate goal is to determine what expected rate of return it should offer. Our first step is to determine a portfolio of four stocks (defined by w_{S1}, w_{S2}, w_{S3}, and w_{S4}) which has zero net exposure to the factors. What is the *actual* rate of return of such a portfolio?

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_P &= w_{S1}\cdot\tilde{r}_{S1} + w_{S2}\cdot\tilde{r}_{S2} + w_{S3}\cdot\tilde{r}_{S3} + w_{S4}\cdot\tilde{r}_{S4} \\ &= w_{S1}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + (+4)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (+1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S1}] \\ &\quad + w_{S2}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (+3)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S2}] \\ &\quad + w_{S3}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + (+2)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S3}] \quad . \\ &\quad + w_{S4}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) + (+6)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-2)\cdot\tilde{f}_B + \tilde{\epsilon}_{S4}] \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{18.9}$$

Collect the factor-related terms:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{r}_P = \quad & w_{S1}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + w_{S2}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) + w_{S3}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + w_{S4}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\ & + [\ w_{S1}\cdot(+4) + w_{S2}\cdot(-1) + w_{S3}\cdot(+2) + w_{S4}\cdot(+6)\ ]\cdot\tilde{f}_A \\ & + [\ w_{S1}\cdot(+1) + w_{S2}\cdot(+3) + w_{S3}\cdot(-1) + w_{S4}\cdot(-2)\ ]\cdot\tilde{f}_B \\ & + w_{S1}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S1} + w_{S2}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S2} + w_{S3}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S3} + w_{S4}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S4}\ .\end{aligned} \tag{18.10}$$

To find a portfolio whose return does not depend on the factors, the net exposure on each factor must be zero:

$$\begin{aligned}[\ w_{S1}\cdot(+4) + w_{S2}\cdot(-1) + w_{S3}\cdot(+2) + w_{S4}\cdot(+6)\ ] &= 0\ , \\ [\ w_{S1}\cdot(+1) + w_{S2}\cdot(+3) + w_{S3}\cdot(-1) + w_{S4}\cdot(-2)\ ] &= 0\ .\end{aligned} \tag{18.11}$$

We also do not want to spend any money on this portfolio today, so quote our investment in dollars (rather than in percents), and choose a portfolio so that it costs no money:

$$[\ w_{S1} + w_{S2} + w_{S3} + w_{S4}\ ] = \$0\ . \tag{18.12}$$

There is not just one such portfolio, but many. For example, the portfolio

$$w_{S1} = -\$92.86\ ,\quad w_{S2} = +\$71.43\ ,\quad w_{S3} = -\$78.57\ ,\quad w_{S4} = +\$100 \tag{18.13}$$

happens to be one such a portfolio. It has zero net exposure to each factor and it costs nothing today. Check this:

$$\begin{aligned}&[\ (-\$92.86)\cdot(+4) + (+\$71.43)\cdot(-1) + (-\$78.57)\cdot(+2) + (+\$100)\cdot(+6)\ ] = \$0\ , \\ &[\ (-\$92.86)\cdot(+1) + (+\$71.43)\cdot(+3) + (-\$78.57)\cdot(-1) + (+\$100)\cdot(-2)\ ] = \$0\ , \\ &[\ (-\$92.86) + (+\$71.43) + (-\$78.57) + (+\$100)\ ] = \$0\ .\end{aligned} \tag{18.14}$$

Other portfolios that have zero net exposure and zero costs are multiplies of this portfolio. For example, the following portfolio works equally well:

$$w_{S1} = -\$92.86/2\ ,\quad w_{S2} = +\$71.43/2\ ,\quad w_{S3} = -\$78.57/2\ ,\quad w_{S4} = +\$100/2\ . \tag{18.15}$$

To recap, we have determined a portfolio that costs nothing today and has no factor exposure. Regardless of what the factors will turn out to be, the portfolio will be unaffected.

Now, what is the *actual* rate of return on this portfolio?

If so, our portfolio allows us to earn an arbitrage!

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{r}_P = \quad & w_{S1}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + w_{S2}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) \\ & + w_{S3}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + w_{S4}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\ & + w_{S1}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S1} + w_{S2}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S2} \\ & + w_{S3}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S3} + w_{S4}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S4}\ . \\ = \quad & (-\$92.86)\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + (+\$71.43)\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) \\ & + (-\$78.57)\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + (+\$100)\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\ & + w_{S1}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S1} + w_{S2}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S2} + w_{S3}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S3} + w_{S4}\cdot\tilde{\epsilon}_{S4}\ .\end{aligned} \tag{18.16}$$

We now need to make the big leap of faith that the APT requires: Assume that the epsilons are not just expected to be zero, but that they are *actually* always zero. In a large portfolio of thousands of stocks, the epsilons should be noise that should diversify away. (PS: In reality,

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

even the 5,000 stocks traded in the United States are not enough to make this come true. This APT leap of faith is definitely an approximation.)

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{r}_P \approx\ & (-\$92.86)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + (+\$71.43)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) + (-\$78.57)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + (+\$100)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\
=\ & (-\$92.86)\cdot 24\% + (+\$71.43)\cdot 5\% + (-\$78.57)\cdot 8\% + (+\$100)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\
=\ & (-\$22.29) + (+\$3.57) + (-\$6.29) + (+\$100)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \\
=\ & -\$25.00 + (+\$100)\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}), \\
\approx\ & w_{S1}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S1}) + w_{S2}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S2}) + w_{S3}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S3}) + w_{S4}\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) .
\end{aligned} \tag{18.17}$$

Note that $\tilde{r}_P$ is an *actual* rate of return, while $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4})$ is just a number, known in advance. For this special portfolio, however, we have managed to eliminate all risk! The factor risk was eliminated with clever portfolio choice, and the epsilon risk was assumed to be zero (diversified away). Therefore, we can eliminate the tilde over the rate of return, and write

$$r_P = -\$25.00 + \$100\cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) . \tag{18.18}$$

Now, what would you do if the expected rate of return on the fourth stock were 30% instead of 25%? If you purchased this portfolio, you would be guaranteed a rate of return of

$$r_P = -\$25.00 + \$100\cdot 30\% = +\$5 . \tag{18.19}$$

Remember that this portfolio costs nothing and has no risk. It is an **arbitrage portfolio**. With a positive payoff, such a portfolio would constitute an arbitrage! Indeed, the only expected rate of return on the fourth stock that does not permit arbitrage is 25%. It can be shown that the expected rates of return on each and every stock that prevents the presence of arbitrage must follow the formula

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) &= 1\% + 5\%\cdot a_{Si} + 3\%\cdot b_{Si} \\
\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Si}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + \lambda_a\cdot a_{Si} + \lambda_b\cdot b_{Si} .
\end{aligned} \tag{18.20}$$

If even one stock does not follow this formula, you can construct a profitable arbitrage portfolio. The intercept in this formula must be the risk-free rate, because the risk-free rate does not covary with either factor, and therefore has zero a_{Si} and zero b_{Si}. (It has no exposure to either factor.)

SIDE NOTE: The Arbitrage Pricing Theory is a misnomer. It should be called the Non-Arbitrage Pricing Theory, because it determines the expected rates of returns if there are no arbitrage opportunities.

The APT equation looks like a generalized form of the CAPM.

Note the similarity of Formula 18.20 to the CAPM. If λ_b is zero (meaning that a factor exposure to the second factor does not influence expected rates of return), and if λ_a is the equity premium $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}} - r_{\mathcal{F}})$, then the APT formula is the CAPM formula. So, in some sense, the CAPM can almost be considered to be a special case of the APT, in which there is only factor, which is the excess rate of return on the stock market ("almost" because the two models differ by some technical conditions). But APT flexibility and generality come at a price: you need to specify what the important pricing factors are—and the APT can offer no guidance here.

The APT's main problem: what are the factors?

In the real world, application of the arbitrage pricing theory requires determining what the right factors are, so that the errors are small and diversify away. Some users do so by specifying macroeconomic factors, or industry portfolios; other users rely on a statistical technique called principal component analysis (or factor extraction).

SIDE NOTE: Many academic papers use four factors as predictors of expected rates of returns. (There is a debate about whether these four factors are risk factors, inefficient stock market behavior, or just too many academic researchers finding random past coincidences.) At a minimum, controlling for such factors helps to control for expected rate of return differences that are already known.

The three factors additional to the stock market are **book-to-market ratio**, **market value**, and **momentum** (recent stock returns). It appears as if **value firms** (with high book-to-market ratios) command a premium over **growth firms**, as if small firms command a premium over large firms, and as if firms that have recently appreciated command an expected rate of return premium over stocks that have recently depreciated.

There are also some commercial vendors that rely on dozens of factors, and will sell corporations APT estimates of their cost of capital.

Solve Now!

Q 18.13 *Add the rates of return from security 4 (factor exposures of* $+6$ *and* -2*) with an expected rate of return of 25% to Table 18.1. Then write down the annual rates of return of the arbitrage portfolio.*

Q 18.14 *Assume that you have determined that three stocks are always behaving as follows:*

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{r}_{S1} &= 9\% + (+1)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B \\ \tilde{r}_{S2} &= -4\% + (+2)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (+3)\cdot\tilde{f}_B \\ \tilde{r}_{S3} &= 15\% + (+3)\cdot\tilde{f}_A + (-1)\cdot\tilde{f}_B \end{aligned} \tag{18.21}$$

A new stock has just arrived on the scene, and it has a factor exposure to each of the two factors of $+4$*. What is its expected rate of return?*

Q 18.15 *If the new stock has an expected rate of return of +2%, how could you make money?*

file=capmtheory-g.tex: LP

Solutions and Exercises

1. Because each and every investor purchases an MVE portfolio, the value-weighted market portfolio is MVE.
2. See Formula 18.4
3. It is a measure of risk contribution to an investor's portfolio, if this portfolio is the market portfolio.
4. If the market portfolio lies on the MVE Frontier, then the CAPM holds and all securities must lie on the security markets line.
5. Whether the stock market portfolio is on the MVE Frontier.
6. No.
7. The value-weighted portfolio.
8. Maybe yes, maybe no—but it certainly is *commonly* used as a proxy for the value-weighted domestic stock market portfolio.
9. Because $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) > r_{\mathcal{F}}$: the stock market is assumed to have a higher expected rate of return than risk-free Treasury bonds.
10. It has to be the tangency portfolio.
11. Yes, if this stock helps exceptionally well to diversify the market portfolio (beta is negative).
12. See Subsection 18·2.A.
13. The revised table is

	Factors				Rates of Return				
Year	raw $\tilde{f}_A$	raw $\tilde{f}_B$	$\tilde{f}_A$	$\tilde{f}_B$	$\tilde{r}_{S1}$	$\tilde{r}_{S2}$	$\tilde{r}_{S3}$	$\tilde{r}_{S4}$	Pfio
1980	0.30	0.31	+0.580	+0.089	2.65	−0.26	1.15	3.60	0.05
1981	−0.37	−0.82	−0.085	−1.038	−1.14	−2.98	0.95	1.87	0.05
1982	1.20	0.85	+1.480	+0.632	6.79	0.47	2.41	7.92	0.05
1983	−0.54	0.62	−0.255	+0.401	−0.38	1.51	−0.83	−2.03	0.05
1984	−1.81	0.12	−1.529	−0.096	−5.97	1.29	−2.88	−8.68	0.05
1985	−0.93	0.56	−0.648	+0.337	−2.01	1.71	−1.55	−4.26	0.05
1986	1.39	−0.07	+1.671	−0.294	6.63	−2.50	3.72	10.91	0.05
1987	−1.50	0.19	−1.213	−0.030	−4.64	1.17	−2.32	−6.92	0.05
Mean	−0.28	+0.22	0.000	0.000	+0.24	+0.05	+0.08	+0.25	0.05

14. The formula for the expected rates of return is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) &= 2\% + 3\% \cdot 4\% - 4\% \cdot 4\% = -2\% \ , \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) &= 2\% + 3\% \cdot a_i - 4\% \cdot b_i \ . \end{aligned} \tag{18.22}$$

15. A sample arbitrage portfolio is

$$w_{S1} = \$112.50 \ , \quad w_{S2} = -\$125 \ , \quad w_{S3} = -\$87.50 \ , \quad w_{S4} = +\$100 \ . \tag{18.23}$$

Any portfolio that consists of multiples of these weights also works. The known rate of return on this portfolio is

$$r_{\mathcal{P}} = \$2 + \$100 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{S4}) \ . \tag{18.24}$$

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 19

EFFICIENT MARKETS, CLASSICAL FINANCE, AND BEHAVIORAL FINANCE

Or, Do You Get What You Pay For?

last file change: Feb 24, 2006 (16:56h)
last major edit: Jul 2004

This chapter revisits the concept of competitive, perfect, efficient markets, first mentioned in Section 6·1.C. It develops three basic concepts of finance in more depth: arbitrage, good bets, and efficient markets (**E-M**). No study of finance is complete without an understanding of these concepts.

This chapter also discusses the consequences of the E-M concept: what efficient markets mean for predicting stock performance; how to interpret the success of famous investors; and how to use the efficient markets concept to run an event study to help assess the valuation impact of some corporate events.

file=effmkts.tex: LP

19·1. Arbitrage and Great Bets

Although you may have an intuitive notion of what arbitrage is, it is important that you know precisely what it is:

> **Important**: *An **arbitrage** is a business transaction*
>
> - *that offers positive net cash inflows in some states of the world,*
> - *and under no circumstance—either today or in the future—a negative net cash outflow. Therefore it is risk-free.*

Arbitrage is the "Perpetuum Mobile" of economics. It is defined in terms of cash outlays and risk.

Let's first be clear about what arbitrage is *not*. It is not the same as "earning money without risk": after all, we know that investments in Treasury securities earn a positive risk-free rate of return. But buying safe bets like T-bills requires you to lay out cash today. Arbitrage is also not the same as "money in today": if you are willing to accept risk, you can often receive cash today. For example, insurance companies take money from you in exchange for the possibility that they may have to pay you in the future.

In a sense, positive NPV projects under certainty are arbitrage.

In theory, what would a hypothetical arbitrage opportunity look like? For example, if you can purchase an item for \$1, borrow at an interest rate of 9% (all costs, including your time included), and sell the item tomorrow for \$1.10 for sure, you earn 1 cent for certain today without any possible negative outflows in the future. If you ever stumble upon such an opportunity, please execute it—it is a positive NPV project! More than this, it is an arbitrage because you cannot lose money under any scenario (it is without risk!), but it is obviously not a very important arbitrage. Now, in financial markets, many transactions can be scaled up. If you could repeat this transaction one billion times, then you could earn \$10 million. Of course, it is even more unlikely that you can find such an arbitrage opportunity that works for one billion items than it is to find an arbitrage that works for one item. After all, you are not the only one searching! True arbitrage opportunities are difficult or outright impossible to find in the real world, especially in very competitive financial markets.

Arbitrage could conceivably occur between different financial markets.

Another hypothetical example of arbitrage involves a violation of the **law of one price**, that is, that the same good should cost the same amount. Assume that PEP shares are quoted for \$51 on the Frankfurt Stock Exchange, and for \$50 on the **New York Stock Exchange**. The arbitrage could be executed by selling short one share at a price of \$51 in Frankfurt, taking the \$51, and then investing \$50 in one share of PEP on the N.Y.S.E.. You pocket \$1 today. What you had to promise to the Frankfurt buyer, which is all PEP payouts (such as dividends), will be covered by your ownership of the N.Y.S.E. PEP share. If you can do this with 20,000 PEP shares worth \$1 million, you earn \$20,000 without effort or risk.

Consider the hindrances.

But before you conclude that this is an arbitrage, you still have to make sure that you have not forgotten costs or risks. The arbitrage may be a lot more limited than it seems—or not even present. Consider the following issues:

1. There are the direct and indirect transaction costs. How much commission do you have to pay? Do you have to pay extra fees to short a stock? Is \$51 the Frankfurt **bid price** at which you can sell, and \$50 the NYSE **ask price** at which you can buy? Have you accounted for the value of your own time watching the screen for opportunities?

2. Share prices can move when you want to transact a significant amount of shares. Only the first 100 shares may be available for \$50 for a net profit of \$100. The next 900 shares may cost \$50.50—perhaps still worthwhile, but less profitable. And purchasing the remaining 19,000 shares may cost you \$51 or more.

3. By the time you have shorted the shares in Frankfurt at \$51, the price in New York may have risen to \$52. If such execution timing risk exists, this is not pure arbitrage because

there is a chance of a negative outflow. The real-world evidence suggests that price discrepancies between markets often disappear within a few seconds.

4. You would also have to account for your fixed cost of executing this transaction, such as setting up your own computer operation to do quick arbitrage-like transactions.

My belief is that in the real world, small arbitrage opportunities can occur from time to time, but large financial firms are constantly running automated computer trading programs that search for even tiny arbitrage opportunities in order to exploit them as soon as they appear—and thereby make them disappear.

The difference between arbitrage and a good bet.

The concept of arbitrage is different from the concept of a **good bet**. A good bet would be a chance to win $1,000,000 with 99% probability and to lose $1 with 1% probability. But because there is a chance of losing money in some circumstances, this is "just" a great bet. It is not an arbitrage. The difference is important: everyone would want to take advantage of arbitrage opportunities, but someone sufficiently risk-averse may not like a good bet, even if it is an absolutely wonderful bet. Conversely, a limited arbitrage need not be better than a good bet. For example, a single 1 cent arbitrage that cannot be repeated could be a worse bet than the aforementioned $1 million gain, $1 loss bet.

There are probably neither great bets nor arbitrage in very competitive financial markets.

Unless financial markets are exceedingly strange, we would not expect to find either arbitrage opportunities or great bets. If you agree with this assessment—basically that money does not grow on trees—we can draw some surprisingly strong conclusions about how financial markets work. If you disagree, you should not be sitting in class, but somewhere on a beach, ranking among the richest people in the world. There is little this book can teach you.

Solve Now!

Q 19.1 *Explain when and why you would prefer a good bet to an arbitrage opportunity.*

19·2. Market Efficiency and Behavioral Finance

IMPORTANT: *Warning: Market Efficiency is a different concept from Mean-Variance Efficiency. The reuse of the word "efficiency" is unfortunate.*

19·2.A. Basic Definition and Requirements

Market Efficiency means that markets use all information.

Formally, financial economists call a market efficient when it uses all available information in its price setting. Thus, **market efficiency** is the degree to which prices reflect information. In a fully efficient market, you cannot use available information to predict future returns better than the market can. Unfortunately, this leaves the question vague as to where the market wants to set expected returns. For example, the CAPM might state that the expected rate of return on PepsiCo should be 10% (setting a price of $50 for an expected payoff of $55), but you as an investor could determine when the current price of PepsiCo really offered a rate of

ANECDOTE: Trading Places and Citrus Futures
The 1983 hit comedy **Trading Places**, starring Dan Akroyd and Eddie Murphy, centers around the trading of Orange Juice Frozen Concentrate **Futures Contracts** (securities that promise delivery of oranges) on the **New York Futures Exchange**. If it is going to rain or there is a frost, oranges will be scarcer and the futures price will rise. You can learn more about futures contracts at the website of the **New York Mercantile Exchange** at www.nyce.com.

In a 1984 paper in the *American Economic Review*, Richard Roll found that these citrus futures contracts predict whether the U.S. Weather Service's forecast for central Florida temperatures is too high or too low. It is a great example of how financial markets help aggregate information better than the best non-financial institution. This should not be a surprise. After all, there is a lot of money at stake!

return of 20% (an expected payoff of $60). You could now draw one of two conclusions: first, the CAPM is not the correct model, and the market wanted to set the expected rate of return for PepsiCo at 20% in the first place; second, the stock market is not efficient. In a sense, the problem with market efficiency is that in many circumstances it is almost a matter of faith: if you wish to proclaim a belief in market efficiency, and if you then find that "prices are off," you can still always claim that your model for the appropriate expected returns in financial markets was wrong if you want to deny that the market was inefficient.

Useful?

Even though stock market efficiency is a fairly modest claim—at least as long as we remain vague on what the correct model of appropriate expected rates of return is—it is still a surprisingly useful concept. For example, it is pretty safe to say that no model of financial markets is likely to claim that investors can find great bets "+$1 million with 99% probability" and "−$1 with 1% probability." Such an expected return would be way out of line. Even expected rates of return of 100% per year are surely unreasonable for stocks such as PepsiCo. Few people doubt that the stock market is, to such a first approximation, efficient. Still, there is a large gray zone: we do not know the correct model of expected stock returns well enough to know if the stock market set the price of PepsiCo stock so as to offer an expected rate of return on PepsiCo of 10% a year or 12% a year.

Market Perfection and Market Efficiency.

Market efficiency is intimately related to our perfect markets concept from Chapter 6. It leans particularly heavily on the assumptions that there are no transaction costs. That is, even in the presence of some taxes and opinion differences, if it is just cheap enough to arbitrage mispricings, someone will end up doing so. Conversely, it is easier to believe that markets are *not* (or less) efficient if transaction costs are high. If it costs nothing to trade stocks, it would be easy for any investor to trade on any information that the market has not yet incorporated in the stock price—and thereby to earn an unusually good expected rate of return or even an arbitrage. However, the no-free-lunch axiom applies here, too. Low trading costs would make it less likely that you could expect to find violations of efficient markets. But if it is very expensive to trade and therefore if the market is not efficient and does not respond to news immediately, it would also be very difficult for you to take advantage of such inefficiencies. Of course, we also already know from Chapter 6 that if the market is not perfect, it is not even clear what "value" means. There would be a whole range of possible values for financial securities, both now and in the future. As we learned, no market is perfect or perfectly imperfect—market perfection is always a shade of gray. Thus, the range of possible valuations is determined by the extent to which the market is imperfect.

We can assume reasonably efficient markets for large corporate stocks.

In any case, modern financial markets for large corporate stocks and index funds in the United States seem very competitive. There are millions of buyers and sellers, transaction costs are low, and few investors know in advance whether the market will go up or down. It is difficult to believe that you or I could outsmart the prices in such markets. After all, thousands of other traders are likely equally as smart and would flock to good bargains and avoid bad bargains along with us. Of course, the smaller the firm, the less perfect and the less efficient the market in its stock is likely to be. Most stocks on Nasdaq trade only rarely, and can have large transaction costs. (Not only are the bid-ask spread and commissions often very high [which is the instant cost of a roundtrip transaction], but it may be particularly difficult and expensive to short these stocks, i.e., speculate that they will decline.) It is unlikely that these stocks will immediately and fully reflect all information appropriately. So, market efficiency is never white or black, but always a shade of gray—just as it is for perfect markets.

Noise Traders.

One conceptual question that vexed academics for a long time was how markets can be efficient to begin with. After all, if there is no money to be made, why would anyone bother collecting information on firms? And if no one bothers to collect information on firms, how can the market be efficient? Eventually, the resolution to this puzzle was that markets can never be 100% efficient—they can only be, say, "99%" efficient. In equilibrium, good information collectors should earn just about enough trading profits to break even on their costs of information collecting. They earn this money trading against **noise traders**, who do not collect information and who may trade for idiosyncratic reasons (e.g., to pay for a new car).

file=effmkts.tex: RP

We will discuss consequences of market efficiency below, but one we can mention right away. The fact that large-firm stock markets are pretty efficient means that, by and large, you can trust these financial markets to get asset values about right—at least within the limits of the arbitrage transaction costs listed in the previous section—and to get it right *immediately*.

In an efficient market, the announcement stock reaction should be a good estimate of the change in NPV, because the market should accurately reflect value at all times.

Would you not rather face an inefficient market? If it were inefficient, you might be able to find some good bets (opportunities that earn unusually high expected rates of returns). But it would not all be gravy. In an inefficient market, you could not rely on market prices being fair—they could be inappropriately too high or too low. You would never really know whether you are overpaying or underpaying. Investing would be a very messy business. The advantage of efficient markets is that if you hold a portfolio of many large and liquid stocks, you do not have to spend a lot of time and money to perform **due diligence** in order to determine whether stocks are fairly priced. All you need to do is to make sure you are appropriately diversified to meet your risk-reward preference. You can probably accomplish this goal by purchasing just a few large index-mimicking portfolios.

The advantage of an efficient market.

19·2.B. Classifications Of Market Efficiency Beliefs

Almost all financial economists believe in basic market efficiency for large markets and liquid securities. No respectable economist believes that it is easy to get very rich trading on easily available information. Instead, the disagreement is, loosely, about whether stock markets are "99% efficient" or "97% efficient." The school of thought that proposes the 99% view is often called **Classical Finance** or **Rational Finance**; the school of thought that proposes the 97% view is often called **Behavioral Finance**. Of course, you can trade millions of dollars in large firm stocks or market indexes relatively easily and at low transaction costs. Thus, it does not require huge efficiency violations for behavioral finance economists to be right and for classical finance economists to be wrong. Exploiting just the tiny—say, 3%—violations from market efficiency could make you a star investor. (This is also not coincidentally why so many fund managers show great interest and publicly proclaim their faith in behavioral finance.) However, don't take me too literally here—the 99% vs. 97% is an analogy, and there is really a spectrum of beliefs in market efficiency among economists and fund managers. Let us now look at some such rough groupings, although you should realize that any classification schemes really identify just segments on a continuous line.

Financial markets are probably close to efficient.

19·2.C. The Fundamentals Based Classification

I like to grade financial economists into camps based on their degrees of belief in market efficiency:

My preferred taxonomy.

True Believer Financial prices always reflect the best estimate of net present value of all future cash flows. This means that stock prices should change only if news about fundamentals appears.

Firm Believer Financial prices may sometimes deviate from the appropriate best estimate of future cash flows. However, transaction costs make it practically impossible to find unusually good bets.

A special form of this argument, named after Grossman and Stiglitz, resolves the paradox that in an efficient market, it would not be worthwhile for any investor to pay for information—but if no one pays for information, how can the market be efficient? This argument is that markets are so competitive that the expected costs to learning and trading on more information are exactly equal to the trading profits.

Mild Believer Financial prices occasionally deviate from the appropriate best estimate of future cash flows (and the financial price next period). When they do, the transaction costs are not high enough to prevent investors from obtaining unusually good bets, although the profitabilities of these bets generally remain within economically reasonable magnitudes—maybe a couple of percentage points a year.

Non Believer Financial prices regularly deviate from the appropriate value, and thereby allow investors to obtain arbitrage opportunities or incredibly great bets.

A firm believer need not be a true believer: financial price changes may indeed be unpredictable, but not because of news about fundamentals. (There could be unrelated noise in stock price changes, especially in the short-run.) Occasionally, we are even handed evidence that refutes the true believer—but only in certain specific situations. The most dramatic such example occurred in 2000, when the network company 3COM spun off the PDA company Palm. 3COM retained 95% of Palm's stock—and announced that each shareholder of 3COM would soon receive 1.525 shares of Palm. After the IPO, Palm closed at $95.06 per share. Therefore, 3COM should have been worth at least $145—instead, 3COM shares closed at $81.81. (It was impossible to exploit this discrepancy, because it was impossible to find Palm shares to short. I know—I tried.) A mild believer need not be a firm believer: transaction costs may be low enough to permit great trading strategies based on E-M violation. A non-believer need not be a mild believer: financial markets may just beg to be exploited.

Our best estimate is that we are somewhere between the mild and firm believer camps.

In this classification of market efficiency, virtually no academic is a non-believer, and only a very few remain in the true believer camp. Instead, most finance professors are somewhere between the "mild believer" camp (the center of behavioral finance) and the "firm believer" camp (the center of classical finance). The debates between the two more extreme side of these camps—the "rationalists" and "behavioralists"—is intellectually exciting. After all, bringing new evidence to bear on these disagreements is the process by which we learn more.

My opinion.

Setting the facts aside for a moment, let me tell you my personal views. I sit right in the middle between the two schools of thought, somewhere in the firm-to-mild camp. In my view, most investors believe that they have more knowledge and control than they actually have. This is why I believe that trading in the stock market seems so (inexplicably) active. Investors seem to believe that they can predict when stocks are going to go up or down. Some pundits like to call this **investor psychology**. However, I also believe that an individual investor is unlikely to be able to find rate of return patterns in the stock market to earn high excess returns. A very few sophisticated funds may be able to systematically earn a few extra basis points per year. But these funds are scarce. Even after decades of academic research to identify better performing funds, academics usually find that only about half of all funds outperform the market and half underperform the market—and even before fund transaction costs.

ANECDOTE: The Limits of Arbitrage in the Internet Bubble

In May 2005, an Experian-Gallup national survey finds that 65 percent of Americans haven't heard anything about a possible "housing bubble." Another 12 percent have heard "only a little." Indeed, 70 percent expect home prices to keep rising, while only 5 percent think they will slip. However, when the facets of a housing bubble are described to them, about 40 percent go on to say that the scenario is likely to occur in their area in the next three years.

Source: Business 2.0 at cnn.com.

Even in cases where it is probable that the market mispriced stocks, such as technology stocks during the famous "Internet bubble" at the turn of the millennium, it was almost impossible for an individual investor to take advantage of the market inefficiency. Believe me, I know. In 1999, I believed *Yahoo!* (YHOO) was worth less than what it was trading for. So, I speculated that its stock would go down. After I had lost more than three times my original investment, I realized that I had to either close my bet or risk personal bankruptcy. So, I terminated my bet, having lost a lot of money. Yes, I would have been right in the end and made a lot of money if I had held on longer, but I simply could not afford the risk (and mental anguish) any longer. I learned from this episode—after 15 years as a financial economist—that even if the stock market is irrational and even if it overvalues a stock by three times, it can also be irrational enough to overvalue it by yet another three times.

ANECDOTE: A Conversation with Eugene Fama

The book website has an impromptu email conversation between myself and Eugene Fama (perhaps the most famous finance professor alive and a strong defender of market efficiency) at welch.econ.brown.edu/academics/famaconversation.html. This will give you an authentic impression of the ongoing dialogue among finance professors.

The low signal-to-noise ratio causes the dispute.

So why is this debate so tough to settle? The reason is that the **signal-to-noise ratio** in financial returns is low. The signal-to-noise description draws on an analogy from physics—the signal (the appropriate average price change that a smart fund manager could predict) is small compared to the noise (the day-to-day price **volatility** that clouds our senses). Here it means that a typical stock may have the signal of an expected rate of return of 0.05% per trading day (14% per year), but the noise of a typical standard deviation of 2-3% per trading day, which is about 50 times as high. This low signal-to-noise means it is difficult for researchers to determine whether a particular trading strategy has earned high returns [a] because it took on risk, and the researcher has just not recognized the risk appropriately; [b] because it had a lucky outcome, which will not repeat; or [c] because the market was inefficient. Although these choices allow us finance professors to continue to write papers to argue one side or the other, most finance professors now agree that when individuals earn an unusual amount of money in a day or a week, it is more likely due to luck than to ability. The burden of proof is on the side claiming superior ability—and a number of former finance professors have taken up the challenge and started their own funds.

IMPORTANT: *On a typical day, the typical stock moves up or down by about 10 to 100 times as much as it offers in expected rate of return. Therefore, it is not easy to attribute past observed stock price performance to investor ability or inability.*

DIGGING DEEPER:

Our example was about a model that states that a particular kind of stock should increase by 5 basis points, but has a 200 basis point volatility. If the noise is uncorrelated (which usually means returns on different days), how many trading days would we need to determine whether the true expected rate of return is 5 basis points?

If you have T days, your volatility will decrease with the square-root of T. With 10,000 trading days (about 40 years), the volatility would be roughly $\sqrt{10,000} \cdot 2\% \approx 2$ *basis points. This level of volatility would allow you to determine whether the daily expected rate of return on your stocks is 1 basis point, 5 basis points, or 9 basis points, but not whether it is 4 basis points or 6 basis points. Of course, 4 basis points per day is a whopping 3% per year different from 5 basis points per day. To tell apart the difference between 4 basis points and 5 basis points, you would want no larger a volatility than about 0.5 basis points—requiring about 160,000 independent observations. We do not have these 600 years of return history, and even if we did, who would believe that these daily returns were still drawn from the same distribution? So, we usually have to work with "tricks"—primarily forming portfolios that have less than 200 basis points volatility on an average day, which leads to arguments about what proper portfolios for testing market efficiency are. Can you see now why testing for whether stock returns follow one or the other model is such a difficult and contentious task?*

19·2.D. The Traditional Classification

The traditional classification of market efficiency.

In contrast to my definition of market efficiency above, which focuses on how rational market prices reflect underlying values, the more standard historical definition of market efficiency focuses on information. This distinction is between weak-form, semi-strong-form, and strong-form market efficiency.

- **Weak Market Efficiency** presumes that markets are efficient enough not to allow the use of historical stock price information to earn inappropriately high rates of return. This means that **technical analysis** (trading based solely on historical price patterns) would not earn excess returns. Put another way, the weak form assumes that all past prices of a stock are reflected in today's price so that technical analysis cannot be used to beat the market.
- **Semi-Strong Market Efficiency** presumes that markets are efficient enough not to allow the use of any publicly available information to earn inappropriately high rates of return. This means that **fundamental trading** (trading based on price and underlying firm information) would not earn excess returns. Put another way, the semi-strong form assumes that all public information is reflected in today's stock price, so that neither fundamental trading nor technical analysis can be used to beat the market.

- **Strong Market Efficiency** presumes that the market incorporates even the most private information held by the deepest insiders in corporations. This means that no trading would earn excess returns. Put another way, the strong form assumes that all information, both public and private, is reflected in today's stock price, so that nothing—not even insider information—can be used to beat the market.

In this classification of market efficiency, all finance professors believe that most large financial markets are not strong-form efficient: insider trading may be illegal, but it works. However, arguments rage on as to whether markets are semi-strong-form or even weak-form efficient, and even for large and liquid financial markets (such as the N.Y.S.E., Nasdaq, or the CBOE). Finance professors regularly publish papers that find new rules that seem to outperform reasonable average rates of return by a large margin. Some strategies seem to work, in particular some forms of **momentum** (buying stocks that have gone up, selling stocks that have gone down) and **value** (buying boring old-economy stocks, selling glamour high-growth new-economy stocks). Such strategies can offer seeming "excess returns" as high as 1-2% per month. Unfortunately, many strategies disappear almost as quickly as they are discovered—and may have never been real to begin with. Yet other trading strategies require such high transaction costs that they end up not being profitable in the real world. That is, even though prices may not incorporate all information and the market may not be efficient, the inefficiency may be well within the bounds of transaction costs. Yet some other trading strategies seem to have worked and continue to work—but why and for how long? Personally, I am not claiming that none of these trading strategies works. I am just advising caution when real money is at stake.

Solve Now!

Q 19.2 *What does it mean for a stock market to be efficient?*

Q 19.3 *Is it more or less likely for a financial market to be efficient when transaction costs are low?*

file=effmkts.tex: RP

19·3. Efficient Market Consequences

We already mentioned one consequence of efficient markets: You can trust prices and don't have to waste much time checking that they are appropriate. However, there are a number of other important consequences that deserve further expounding.

19·3.A. Stock Prices and Random Walks

Cycles in the market?

Here are some trick questions: Look at the various graphs in Figure 19.1. They seem to show what stock market patterns have looked like, do they not? Perhaps. Does it make sense to think that these are representative for the future? Absolutely not! Graphs A, B, and C display a strong regular cycling pattern. If this were representative for the future, you would quickly become a wealthy technical analyst! The patterns would suggest that you should purchase the stock only when it has "bottomed out"—a pattern that you can reasonably detect if you see a multi-month period of losses followed by about a quarter of stable returns. It need not be the kind of regular cycles in the figure: any good predictable patterns (such as "every time the price hits $22, it drops by $2") would allow you to get rich. Now, if you look hard enough, can you find some stocks in the real world that have behaved like these graphs? Yes—because with over 10,000 stocks currently trading, by pure chance, maybe one or two could show a pattern that would look remarkably similar to a cycle pattern. But, despite assurances from some stock analysts that you could have made money if you had just trusted their cycle patterns and that you should trust them henceforth, the patterns would *not* be representative of the future—they would just be historical coincidence.

Non cycles are more reasonable—though there are ups and downs, too.

On the other hand, Graphs D, E, and F could actually be representative. On average, each price in the next month is just a tiny bit higher than the previous (i.e., the expected rate of return on stocks is positive), but the important thing is that there is a lot of *noise*, up or down—which is by definition unpredictable. Stock prices must largely be unpredictable, or you could outsmart the stock market. Incidentally, one of these three graphs is a real stock price, while the other two are simulated. Can you see which one? I cannot! The real-world price series fits right in with my simulations of patternless day-to-day changes (called random walks and explained below). In fact, whenever we look at graphical representations of stock prices, they usually look very much like Graphs D-F and very unlike Graphs A-C. (Solution: Graph E is the actual stock price series of IBM.)

Can we predict stock prices? The order of magnitude of typical daily stock price changes is tremendous, but the expected price is not much different from today's price.

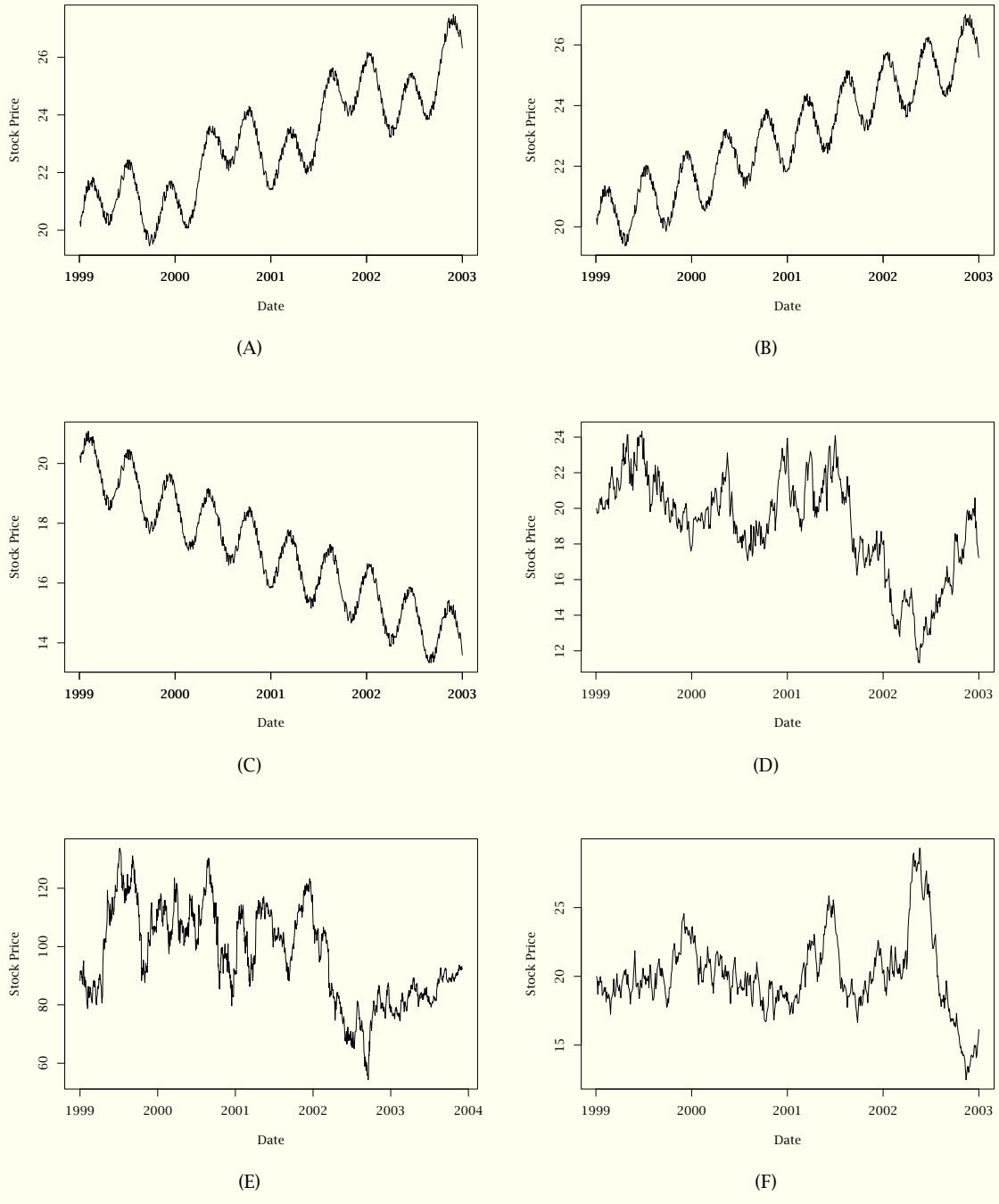
Let's look a bit more closely at magnitudes. May 31, 2002 was a decidedly uneventful day for the stock market. The Dow Jones rose 13.56 from 9,911.69 to 9,925.25, a change of 0.14%. On this day, the most actively traded stocks (but not biggest price movers) were MCI WorldCom (rate of return of −1%), Nasdaq100 (−2%), Palm (−30%), Sun (0%), and Oracle (+6%). So, let's put our statistical and financial expertise to good use and ask a fundamental question of Finance: *In a perfect market, if the shares of a company cost $50 today, what do we expect them to cost tomorrow?* Put another way, could you reasonably expect someone to be able to have predicted this day's stock price movement, e.g., something on the order of ±1% (as was the return of MCI that day)? Think about it: if you could outpredict the stock price by an average of 1% ($50.00 to $50.50) on a typical day, you would be the world's most amazing stock picker. Just 1% per day represents an annual return of

$$1 + r_{0,365} = (1 + r_{0,1})^{365} \approx (1 + 1\%)^{365} = (1 + 3,678.34\%) \quad . \tag{19.1}$$

Too bad. Such magical abilities do not exist in the real world, where you can only expect to earn rates between 2% and 50% per year, depending on what risk you are willing to take. Let me put this in perspective: any fund manager who can consistently outperform her peers by 2% per year would be considered a star! Four percent per year makes a super star. In sum, we can conclude that we do not expect individuals to be able to predict returns by an amount of 1%/day, a typical daily stock movement—at least without divine guidance or its equivalent (inside information).

file=effmkts.tex: LP

Figure 19.1. Potential Stock Price Patterns



If these patterns were systematic, some of them should make you rich. Which ones?

Let us return to MCI. It decreased by 1%. Could the expectation be for MCI to decrease by 1%? If the *expectation* were for MCI shares to trade for \$49.50 tomorrow, would you not want to sell the shares for \$50.00 today, instead? After one year, with such daily rates of return, you would be left with only 2.5% of your original investment. If you could cheaply short the stock, you could even make money from the 1% decline. After all, by selling shares today at \$50.00 and repurchasing them tomorrow for \$49.50 (i.e., selling short; see Chapter 12), you could reap a positive 1% return. Every owner would rush to the market to sell, no one would want to buy, and the price would immediately be lower.

Can the price tomorrow be much lower, on average? No!

These arguments suggest that we would expect very small daily rates of return, not much above 0.1%/day (with 255 trading days, $(1 + 0.1\%)^{255} \approx 29\%$/year), which is much less than the day-to-day noise in stock prices. Intuitively, this is what an efficient stock market is: we do not believe anyone can get rich easily, so it must be mostly impossible to predict where stocks are going, aside from the very small mean (call it m). The best expectation of the price tomorrow must be roughly the price today. Formally, if time 1 is very close, say just 1 day after time 0,

So, what can the price tomorrow be, on average?

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) \approx (1+m)\cdot P_0 \quad &\Leftrightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - P_0 \approx m \cdot P_0 \\ \Leftrightarrow \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{P}_1) - P_0}{P_0} \approx m \quad &\Leftrightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{0,1}) \approx m \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{19.2}$$

where P is the common notation for "price" and m is just a very small number (and determined by a model such as the CAPM). This particular process is just the aforementioned **random walk** (with drift). Thus, we can conclude that in the absence of easy ways to get rich, stock prices approximately follow a random walk, at least in the short run.

> **IMPORTANT**: *In the financial market context, "random walk" refers to a process in which the expected value tomorrow is (almost) the same as the value today. Naturally, actual values tomorrow will most likely be different from the value today.*
>
> *The empirical evidence confirms this. Stock prices tend to follow roughly a random walk in the short run. This means that it is not easy to get rich.*

It is important that you realize that a random walk is a necessary consequence of an efficient market, but you cannot conclude that a market is efficient just because prices follow roughly a random walk. In fact, it could be that the true value follows one random walk process for a long time and the market price follows another. Because market prices follow their own random walk, merging with the fundamental value based random walk only in the very long run, transaction costs would prevent you from getting rich, even though we know that market prices would not always be the best estimate of value, given all information.

Don't wag the tail.

Predicting with past rates of return.

Traders have tried all sorts of strategies in their efforts to become rich. One such strategy is the aforementioned technical analysis, which tries to find patterns in historical stock prices. For example, it is a popular misperception that stocks that rise one day are more likely to fall back the next day. Figure 19.2 shows how the daily rate of return on our three stocks (S&P500, IBM, and Sony) related to the previous day's rate of return from 1985 to 2003. The graphs show no pattern that would allow you to get rich quickly. There is definitely not much juice in trying to predict how a stock will perform tomorrow, given how it performed today. (A small reversal that we occasionally observe seems to be caused by the **bid-ask bounce**. This is because if the stock's closing price is a bid price, on average it will fall back the next day (when it will be either a bid or an ask price with roughly equal probability). If the stock's close price is an ask price, on average it will gain the next day.) Similar conclusions apply if we extend our use of historical price information beyond yesterday, although over longer horizons, it appears as if stocks tend to continue their pattern just a little bit. This is the aforementioned "momentum" effect and covered in an investments course.

It is also unlikely that one stock is expected to go up today, and another stock to go up tomorrow, and so on.

Another variation on attempts to find market efficiency violations tries to predict not which stocks systematically go up every day, but just which ones will for the next day: maybe it is possible to predict that one stock should go up today, and another tomorrow. But, if you reflect on this statement, you realize that you could shift your money from one stock to another to take advantage of different stocks on different days. Again, unless the expected daily returns are tiny, it would be too easy to get rich. And, again, with average rates of return being tiny compared to the ups and downs, a good stock market pick is more likely to come from a lucky or unlucky draw than from a systematic ability.

Transaction costs destroy most hope for high turnover strategies.

Of course, in the real world, there are financial transaction costs that would also prevent you from really exploiting misvaluations. You would have to pay money to the broker to buy the shares, and again to sell shares. (This is why financial markets are not exactly perfectly competitive, only approximately perfectly competitive.) Even small transaction costs can render trading strategies with very high turnover unprofitable. After all, even if the bid-ask spread is only 10 basis points, if incurred 255 trading days a year, you would only be left with $(1-0.1\%)^{255} = 77.5\%$ of your original investment. So, for a daily trading strategy to earn money, it needs to earn at least an annual rate of return of 25% before it can overcome the trading frictions—which seems almost hopelessly large to me.

ANECDOTE: Great Mathematicians and Gambling: The Origin of the Random Walk
In the 1700s, it was not beneath mathematicians to study how to gamble in order to gamble better. Jacob Bernoulli (1654–1705) and Abraham DeMoivre (1667–1754) studied the random walk of a gambler's stake in fair games.

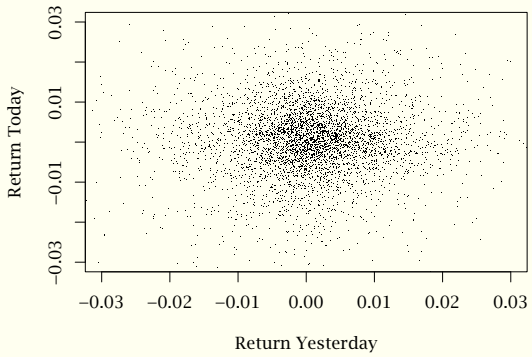
Later reinventions and applications of the random walk concept abound: Jan Ingenhausz (1730-1799), a physician and plant physiologist, placed charcoal powder on an alcohol film and observed that the grains moved randomly. The botanist Robert Brown (1773-1858) reported erratic dancing of small particles in fluids at rest. Albert Einstein (1879-1955) considered such fluids to be composed of discrete molecules, whose many collisions with a "Brownian particle" caused the particle to jump in random directions—a random walk. Einstein's analysis not only explained **Brownian motion**, which has itself become a building block of high tech finance nowadays, but also bolstered the case for the existence of atoms, which was not yet universally accepted. The first recorded use of the phrase "random walk" was by Lord Raleigh (1842-1919) in 1899. (Raleigh made a connection between diffusive heat flow and random scattering and showed that a one-dimensional random walk could provide an approximate solution to a parabolic differential equation.) The name is believed to have originated with the description of a drunk who stands on a ladder. The drunk can walk up or down and does so in a random fashion—just like stocks.

Fortunately, in 1900, Louis Bachelier introduced the random walk theory of financial market fluctuations (although Pearson introduced the term "random walk" only later, in 1905), finding that bond prices could diffuse in the same manner as heat. Unfortunately, this has only pointed out the obvious: it is not easy for an investor to outperform the market. The first rigorous and published investigation of the random walk hypothesis was done by Cowles, an eclectic investor and economist at Yale in the 1930s and 1940s.

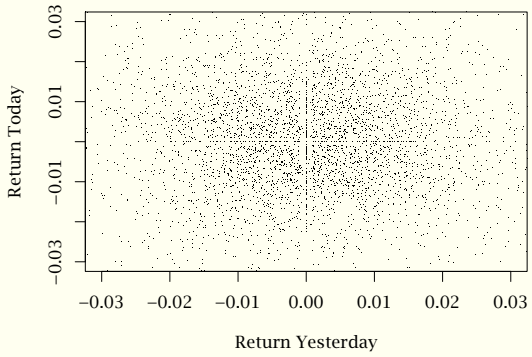
Source: Mostly Michael F. Schlesinger, Office of Naval Research, Scienceweek.com, 2001.

Figure 19.2. The Relation between Lagged and Current Rates of Return for S&P500, IBM, and Sony.

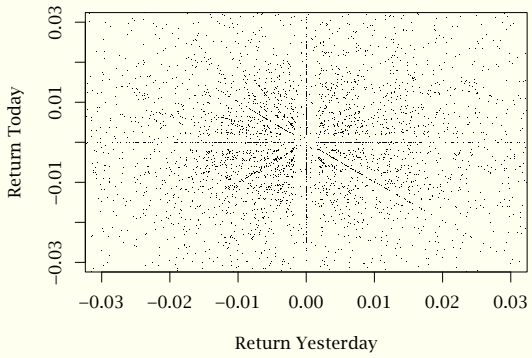
S&P500



IBM



Sony



Note: The figures chop off some outliers, especially the crash of 1987 and mini-crash of 1989, but even if they are included, there is no apparent predictability.

file=effmkts.tex: LP

Solve Now!

Q 19.4 *From memory, write down the formula for a random walk.*

Q 19.5 *If stocks follow a random walk, can the price tomorrow be different from the price today?*

Q 19.6 *What is the typical movement of a stock on an average day?*

Q 19.7 *What is the typical expected rate of return on a stock on an average day?*

19·3.B. Are Fund Managers Just Monkeys on Typewriters?

What about celebrity investors?

So, what about all the televised stock analysts who explain which stocks are undervalued and which stocks are overvalued? And what about the aforementioned **technical analysis**, the art of seeing shoulders, price barriers, etc., in historical prices and using them to forecast future prices? (You can try out your own technical analysis at Yahoo!*Finance*—look up any stock, and choose "Charts," then "Technical Analysis"; it is fun, but useless.) And what about famous investors such as Warren Buffett, George Soros, and many others?

Even top investors can have at most mild predictive ability. None can be expected to have even the ability to foresee systematically a 0.1% movement per day.

First, as already stated repeatedly, we are now talking about tiny deviations from the random walk. Even an ability to forecast by 0.01% (yes, 0.0001) better per day yields an annual rate of return that is 3.7% higher than it would otherwise be. So high a superior performance by a fund would be widely considered to be stellar performance. It is unlikely that anyone has good day-to-day predictive ability that are larger than transaction costs.

Pure chance means that some investors succeed many years in a row.

Second, there are about 10,000 **mutual funds** today, which invest money on their investors' behalf. How many of them are likely to outperform the stock market overall next year (at least before they collect fees)? If they have no ability, about 5,000. How many of these will outperform the year thereafter? About 2,500. Even if there is absolutely no ability, pure randomness will mean that about 10 funds will outperform the market every year for ten years in a row. What will happen to the funds that underperform several years in a row? They disappear quietly. What will happen to the funds that outperform several years in a row? They proudly announce their performances, advertise, boast, and collect more investments from outside investors. They are even better dressed, supported by larger "research teams," appear more "professional," and fly in executive jets. They are the ones that will be most visible. Indeed, if you made money ten years in a row in the stock market, would you not believe yourself that you have the ability to pick stocks? From an investor's or analyst's perspective, both the disappearance of funds that have performed poorly and the expansion of funds that have performed well, will make it appear as if managers with a track record who offer to invest your money indeed tend to have an ability to outperform—and even if they have absolutely no ability. This is called **survivorship bias**.

ANECDOTE: Are women better investors than men?
Analyzing 35,000 households from 1991 to 1997, Terry Odean and Brad Barber found that men trade 45 percent more than women. Apparently men are too overconfident in their trading prowess. (Men also have a higher propensity to suffer from compulsive gambling disorders.) On average, men's investment rates of returns were lower than women's, by a little less than one percent per year. Much, but not all, of the women's better returns could be attributed to the higher transaction costs that the men incurred for transactions that did not gain them higher returns.

Despite strong evidence to the contrary, many investors still believe that stock prices do not follow random walks, as evidenced by the plethora of financial talk shows and investment news letters. It would be better for the general public to watch more sports and cooking shows and fewer investment shows—especially for males like myself!

In truth, maybe there are some individuals who *can* pick stocks, but the evidence suggests that luck is far, far more important than ability. Whenever academics (or the *Wall Street Journal*) have searched for better forward-looking performance among professional fund managers who outperformed in the past, they have found little or no exceptional performance. For example, if managers were truly capable of systematically earning better rates of returns by picking stocks, you would expect those managers who have picked better in the past to also pick better in the future. The evidence is that about 54% of mutual funds that have outperformed their benchmark over the last 1–3 years tend to outperform their benchmark over the following 1–3 years. (This is better than 50%, but not by much. And if we subtract fund fees, the average performance drops significantly below 50%.) But, as fund prospectuses aptly note, and as the evidence suggests, for the most part, **past performance is no predictor of future performance**.

If you look for future performance, past performance may be your best guide, even if it is a very, very poor guide.

Even if the market were inefficient and even if some fund managers could in fact outperform the market, these fund managers would charge appropriately high fees to eliminate investors' advantages. After all, it is the fund manager who would have the scarce skill—picking stocks—and not the typical investor. Investors with money would compete to place money with such managers and accept higher and higher fund fees. In the end, it would be highly unlikely that uninformed investors could earn excess returns by investing in actively trading mutual funds.

If there was superior fund performance, an investor could not earn money therefrom. It would be the fund managers who would earn the profits.

IMPORTANT: *In an efficient market, in which no one can pick stocks better than anybody else, a large number of investors will beat the market. A small number of investors will beat the market again and again. In the real world, there is little evidence that investors who did well picking stocks in the past are better picking stocks in the future when compared to investors who did poorly.*

There are, of course, other ways to make money: Warren Buffett's fund, **Berkshire-Hathaway**, for example, runs an insurance and aircraft business. These businesses make money. But it is money earned the old-fashioned way: through hard work and risk taking. Writing insurance is risky business, and deserves extra return.

Old-fashioned work and liquidity provision work better than stock picking.

Here is my great business idea of the day. I give you stock tips, and I ask for money only if you make money. In fact, I only want 10 percent of your winnings. So "you have nothing to lose." I only get something if I help you make money. Sounds like a deal? Now, if I pick a stock randomly, I have a fifty-fifty chance of making money. If you gain, I get something. If you lose, I pay nothing. I am in effect arbitraging you! Maybe I should give you the advice to buy a stock, and your neighbor the advice to sell it. This way, I will surely make money! My only mistake is that I have told you my plan.

Funds earn money on the upside—is this a good idea?

My business model is not as absurd as it sounds. This is exactly how many funds operate: their managers participate in the upside, but not in the downside. (Of course, funds that charge not only when they make you money, but also when they lose you money are not particularly confidence-inspiring, either. What are their incentives?) So, next time someone gives you a great stock tip, regard it with some skepticism: it probably has a fifty-fifty chance of being right.

Many funds are compensated on the upside, but the alternative is not palatable, either.

Solve Now!

Q 19.8 *If a firm employs 10,000 analysts, how many of them are likely to issue forecasts that beat the market ten years in a row if none of them has any ability and there are no transaction costs?*

ANECDOTE: The Three Top Investment Books of 1996
The three best-selling investment books of spring 1996 were David and Tom Gardner's **Motley Fool Investment Guide**, based on a popular investment web site; Matt Seto's **The Whiz Kid of Wall Street's Investment Guide** (Matt Seto was 17 years of age at the time); and the **Beardstown Ladies' Common-Sense Investment Guide**, authored by septuagenarians whose first book mixed cooking recipes with investment advice. All touted "common sense methods" to beat the market, earning 30 percent per year or more. Not a week went by without dozens of prominent radio and TV shows featuring their sound advice. What did I need my Ph.D. in finance for? It is difficult to argue with performance!

Naturally, best-selling books are a great business. However, the stock performance of these three experts was not.

1. From 1996 to 2002, the *Motley Fool* investment recommendations of a number of hypothetical portfolios have been discontinued. In 1997, they launched a real-money portfolio, called DRIP. From 7/28/1997 to 7/31/2002, it lost about 10%, while the S&P500 lost 2.5% and Nasdaq lost 15%. One should not judge a fund by just 5 years of performance (and certainly not without risk adjustment), but it does appear that the Motley Fool has not exactly found the Holy Grail of investment opportunities.
2. Matt Seto has stopped publishing his investment performance and has decided to pursue a career as a student.
3. The Beardstown Ladies, five books richer, were found to have miscalculated their returns: their returns were not 30 percent, but 9 percent—significantly lower than the 15 percent turned in by the S&P500 stock market index during their investment period.

How disappointing: on average, about one of them should have continued beating the market, one should have done about the same as the market, and one should have underperformed it. Now, where are my five minutes of fame?

Source: Time Magazine.

file=effmkts.tex: RP

19·3.C. Corporate Consequences

If the Market is Efficient

You can learn from your own market price!

If markets are efficient, then managers can obtain valuable information from their own market prices. The market price is the conglomerate assessment of many investors, who put their money where their mouths are. It aggregates a whole lot of information that managers themselves may not see so easily. If the stock price is very high, it probably means that the market sees great opportunities ahead for the firm. Thus, managers should consider growing the business. Naturally, a high firm value typically will also allow them to raise more funds from the financial markets at favorable rates. On the other hand, if the stock price is very low, it probably means that the financial market anticipates the business to go down and managers to waste the remaining money. In this case, managers should think carefully about whether they should reinvest their money into the business, or into repurchasing their (relatively cheap) stock.

You can learn from other market prices.

In addition to learning from your own company's market price, you can also learn from all sorts of other market prices. You can find out how good your competitor's opportunities are, and whether you should get into the fray. Commodity prices are also often very helpful. If the price of oil in the market is \$30/barrel, it probably does not make sense for a firm to plan ahead based on an oil price of \$50/barrel. The market price for oil is indeed fairly efficient. A friend of mine sat on the corporate board for a large multinational oil company when the oil price was \$13/barrel, and the CEO argued that the firm should plan oil exploration for a target oil price of \$20/barrel—the oil price "just had to go up." Not only did this show tremendous hubris, it was also outright stupid. The company could purchase oil in the market at rates of \$13/barrel, and thus did not have to do any oil exploration that cost between \$13/barrel and \$20/barrel. Indeed, if this CEO could predict where the oil price was going, he could make a lot more money as an oil trader than as the CEO of the oil company! Why explore for oil if you can buy oil cheaper in the market?

Adding value cannot be done superficially.

An efficient market also means that it should be impossible to generate value by doing something that investors can do themselves. For example, buying another company to diversify does not add value—investors could buy shares in the target by themselves and thus be themselves diversified. They do not need our firm to recognize that the target is undervalued—in fact, chances are, the target was rightly valued to begin with and it was us who got the target value wrong. In order for us to profitably take over a target, we must have something extra that investors cannot do for themselves—synergies, e.g., in the distribution of product or allocation of overhead.

Fooling investors cannot be done easily.

Market efficiency also means that it should not be easy to fool investors. For example, firms can split their shares—each share trading at \$80 would thereby become two shares trading at \$40. Nothing fundamental about the underlying project would have changed. If the market is efficient, investors would not believe these new shares to be worth more than \$40/share. After all, just renaming shares should add no real value to the projects. A similar argument applies when managers change earnings in ways that investors can see through. For example, if a firm previously reported a foreign division's earnings separately, and now consolidates them into the main earnings, such a change would increase the firm's consolidated earnings on paper, but it would not create anything intrinsically valuable. Such changes should not add or subtract firm value.The same argument applies to dividends. In the absence of taxes or other complications, a \$100 firm that pays \$10 in dividends should be worth \$90 thereafter—no value is magically created or destroyed. However, although these arguments are theoretically appealing, do not believe this too literally. Just because it *should* be this way does not mean that it *is* this way. There is some empirical evidence that paying out money to shareholders and meeting earnings expectations may indeed raise firm value. After all, markets are not perfectly efficient!

file=effmkts.tex: LP

If the Market is Not Efficient

What to do if markets are not efficient?

Loosely speaking, financial markets tend to be fairly, but not always perfectly, efficient. Strong market efficiency is almost surely *not* a good description of reality. Even in a perfectly rational market, executives may know the firm value better than the market—for example, they may know that the company is about to seal a large contract, but this information has not yet been disclosed. What should an executive do if she knows that the stock price is not equal to the appropriate market value? (Of course, most executives *believe* that the financial markets do not fully reflect the value of their companies even if they have no inside information—as an executive, you should be wary of your own perceptions and biases!) The right way to conceptualize your problem is to consider what you would do if you were the primary owner of most shares, so you really care about firm value. In addition, as an executive, you are supposed to maximize the value of all your shareholders.

If your shares are undervalued, you should recognize that your cost of capital is effectively too high, given the true characteristics of your project. The reason is that you cannot raise risky capital at fair prices—especially equity capital. The CAPM clearly is no longer the right model for the cost of capital.

Assume that you know that your current projects will return $500 tomorrow. Also assume that you have no cash, and that you can only raise financing through equity. Now assume you come across a new project that costs $100 and will return a terrific $200 tomorrow. The problem is that your investors do not believe that the firm will return $700, but falsely believe that the combined firm will only be worth, say, $200. Thus, to raise $100, you would have to sell 50% of your firm, and keep only 50% of the true $700 return, for a true $350 share of it. You would therefore be better off passing up this new project and just taking the $500 from the old project. Put differently, the opportunity cost of new capital to fund this project is way too high for you.

You would definitely not want to raise cash at these high prices. Instead, you would want to do the opposite. The best use of corporate cash may now be to repurchase cheap, underpriced shares, e.g., from other investors. However, there is an intrinsic paradox here: as an executive, you are supposed to act on behalf of your shareholders. Therefore, repurchasing underpriced shares from them at bargain prices would not be what would make the selling shareholders better off.

Shares are overvalued. Now your cost of capital would be very low, so you should be tempted to take more projects. This is easiest to see if you again consider what you would do if you were the primary owner of this overpriced firm. You would want to sell more equity shares at higher prices, and pay the money out in dividends to existing shareholders. (Alternatively, you can just invest in Treasury securities.) Here the paradox is of course that just one instant later, as CEO, you are now the representative of these new shareholders that you have just sold overpriced shares to.

You can see that if the firm is misvalued there are no easy recommendations for a CEO acting on behalf of shareholders. The robust insight, however, is that the CEO of an undervalued firm should assume a relatively low cost of capital, the CEO of an overvalued firm should assume a relatively high cost of capital.

file=effmkts.tex: RP

19·3.D. Event Studies Can Measure Instant Value Impacts

Market reactions should be immediate and reflect all value changes.

The immediacy of reaction in an efficient market offers a surprising application: price reactions can allow us to estimate value consequences, using a technique called an **event study**. The idea of an event study is that if the public market is valuing projects appropriately, and if the stock price increases by $1,000,000 on the minute when the firm first announces the event, then the value of the new project is likely to be worth about $1,000,000.

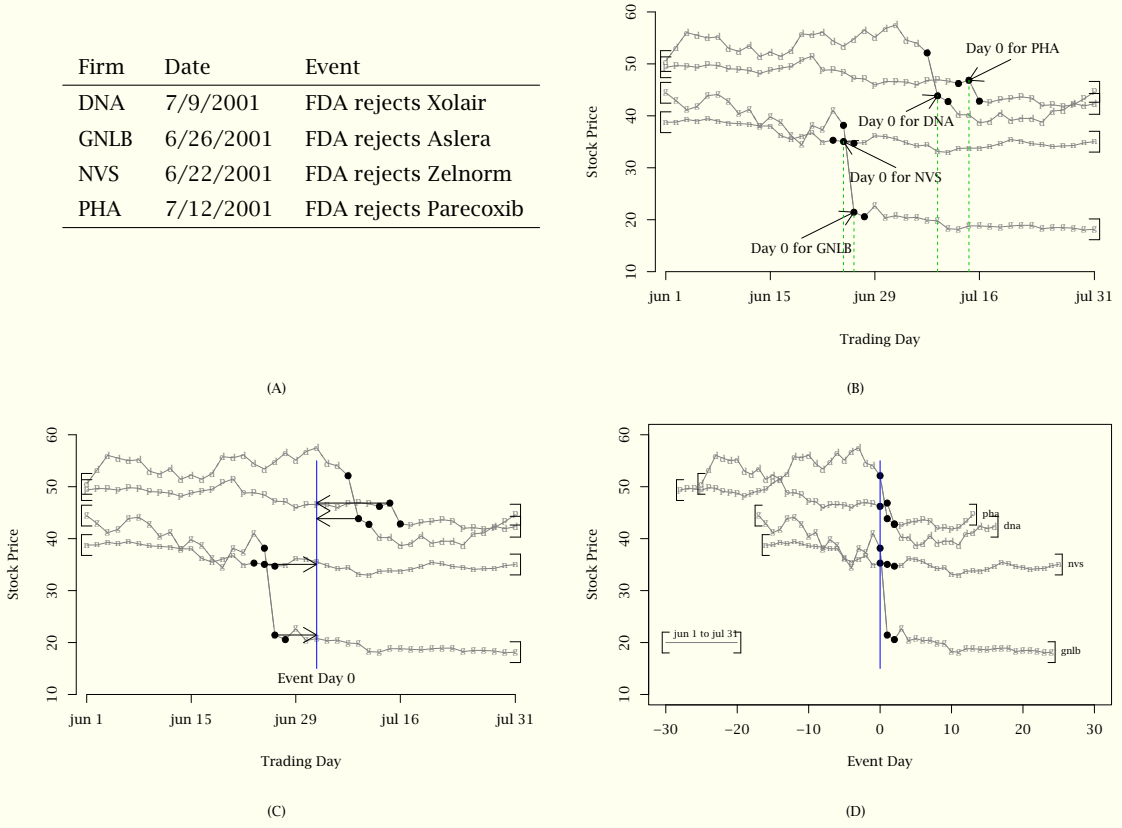
Example: The Value Impact of FDA Drug Rejections

An Example: Estimating the value loss when the FDA rejects a drug application.

For example, say you wanted to know what the value implication of the rejection of a novel drug application by the Food and Drug Administration (F.D.A.) is. You could compute the sudden decline in future expected cash flows, discount it properly, and come up with an appropriate valuation estimate. This is not an easy task. But if stock markets value pharmaceutical stocks appropriately, the stock price reaction to the announcement of the F.D.A. drug application rejection would be a good indicator of the value loss. After all, if the stock market did not react *immediately*, you could on average earn great profits by shorting the relevant stock and waiting for the market to catch up.

Figure 19.3. Event Study: Lining up Event Date Information

Firm	Date	Event
DNA	7/9/2001	FDA rejects Xolair
GNLB	6/26/2001	FDA rejects Aslera
NVS	6/22/2001	FDA rejects Zelnorm
PHA	7/12/2001	FDA rejects Parecoxib



(GNLB's stock price was scaled by a factor of 11 to fit better into this graph.)

Figure 19.3 starts with four events that we have identified: the FDA rejected Xolair, a Genentech (ticker DNA) drug, on July 9, 2001; Aslera, a Genelabs (ticker GNLB) drug, on June 26; Zelnorm, a Novartis (NVS) drug, on June 22; and Parecoxib, a Pharmacia (PHA) drug on July 12. Graph B plots the price history for these four stocks during June and July 2001. The event day itself is marked in this graph. To find out what happens when the FDA rejects a drug, we need to line up all the returns in event time, as illustrated in graphs C and D. When we compute the

file=effmkts.tex: LP

rate of return over the three days around our event date (for we are not sure how accurate our identification of the announcement day is, and whether announcements happen before opening or after closing of the stock market), we discover the following:

Firm	Date	Event	"Couple of Days" Return
DNA	7/9/2001	FDA rejects Xolair	dropped about 18%
GNLB	6/26/2001	FDA rejects Aslera	dropped about 46%
NVS	6/22/2001	FDA rejects Zelnorm	stayed put
PHA	7/12/2001	FDA rejects Parecoxib	dropped about 7%
		Our conclusion	FDA rejections are not always, but often, bad news.

Having lined up everything in event time, we can do more analysis. For example, we can subtract the rate of return on the market on each event date to eliminate noise induced by the general movement on the event date. We can compute the average rate of return on the event, which seems to be around –18%—getting rejected by the FDA is not a good thing for a firm's market value. If you know more statistics, you can compute whether this value drop is "statistically significant." (It is.) You can investigate if bigger firms experience a bigger or a smaller drop. For this, you need to locate the market value at the time:

Firm	Event Return	Equity Market Value
GNLB	−46%	$0.1 billion
NVS	±0%	$2.7 billion
DNA	−18%	$26 billion
PHA	−7%	$58 billion

Therefore, the evidence suggests that smaller firms are harder hit, but that the relationship is not necessarily perfectly monotonic. It would be even more interesting if we knew what fraction of the drug development portfolio the particular rejected drug would constitute—we could then determine whether drug developers whose main portfolio drug was rejected suffer more. We do not have these data, so no such test! We could test whether it has become worse or better over time to have one's drug rejected by the FDA by sorting our events by the event day.

Firm	Event Return	Event Day
NVS	±0%	6/22/2001
GNLB	−46%	6/26/2001
DNA	−18%	7/9/2001
PHA	−7%	7/12/2001

There does not seem to be a clear relationship here—as any sane analyst would have suspected—so the evidence does not suggest that the market looked any more favorably or less favorably upon rejections in June 2001 relative to July 2001. We could investigate returns before or after the event announcement. If information leaks prior to the FDA announcement, we should see a drop even before event day 0. An alternative, though very unlikely, reason for such a pre-announcement price pattern would be if the FDA were more likely to reject a drug if the stock price had recently gone down. We could also investigate whether we can earn profits buying or selling after the event—under market efficiency, this should not be the case. (In a larger sample in Figure 19.4 below, we will examine pre- and post-announcement returns.)

DIGGING DEEPER: *If we had more statistical background, instead of just sorting our events as we did in the in-text tables above, we should run a regression to predict the announcement rate of return with variables we deem to be important determinants of the value change upon FDA rejections.*

file=effmkts.tex: RP

Table 19.1. Sample Event Study of FDA Drug Rejections

	Event		Announcement	Rate of Return		
Symbol	Company	Drug	Day-Day	Stock	Market	Net
AVE	Aventis	Refludan	5/17/00-5/19/00	2.87	−2.82	**+5.69**
AVN	Avanir	Docosanol	12/22/98-12/24/98	−65.56	0.19	**−65.75**
CEPH	Cephalon	Myotrophin	5/7/97-5/9/97	−35.00	1.12	**−36.12**
CRXA	Corixa	Bexxar	3/12/02-3/14/02	−38.32	1.08	**−39.40**
DNA	Genentech	Xolair	7/9/01-7/11/01	−17.96	1.55	**−19.51**
FRX	Forest Labs	Synapton	11/17/98-11/19/98	−3.79	1.17	**−4.96**
GILD	Gilead Sciences	Adefovir	11/01/99-11/3/99	−21.08	0.01	**−21.09**
GNLB	Genelabs	Aslera	6/26/01-6/28/01	−46.11	0.78	**−46.89**
GSK	Glaxo-Smith-Kline	Augmentin	12/14/01-12/18/01	−0.15	1.77	**−1.92**
IMCL	imClone	Erbitux	12/27/01-12/31/01	−20.31	0.08	**−20.39**
JNJ	Johnson& Johnson	Risperdal Consta	6/28/02-7/2/02	−1.24	4.20	**−5.44**
MAXM	Maxim	Maxamine	12/12/00-12/14/00	−44.78	2.20	**−46.98**
NVS	Novartis	Zelnorm	6/22/01-6/26/01	0.35	−0.70	**+1.05**
PFE	Pfizer	Zeldox	6/18/98-6/22/98	−2.51	0.29	**−2.80**
PHA	Pharmacia	Parecoxib	7/12/01-7/16/01	−7.32	0.47	**−7.79**
PRCS	Praecis	Plenaxis	6/11/01-6/13/01	−31.74	1.02	**−32.76**
SCIO	Scios	Natrecor	4/27/99-4/29/99	−57.67	1.47	**−59.14**
SEPR	Sepracor	Soltara	3/6/02-3/8/02	−58.73	0.13	**−58.86**
VPHM	ViroPharma	Picovir	5/9/02-5/13/02	−28.94	0.14	**−29.08**
WPI	Watson	Estradiol/ Progestin	10/30/00-11/1/00	−5.52	1.61	**−7.13**
					Average	−24.96%
					Standard Deviation	±22.31%

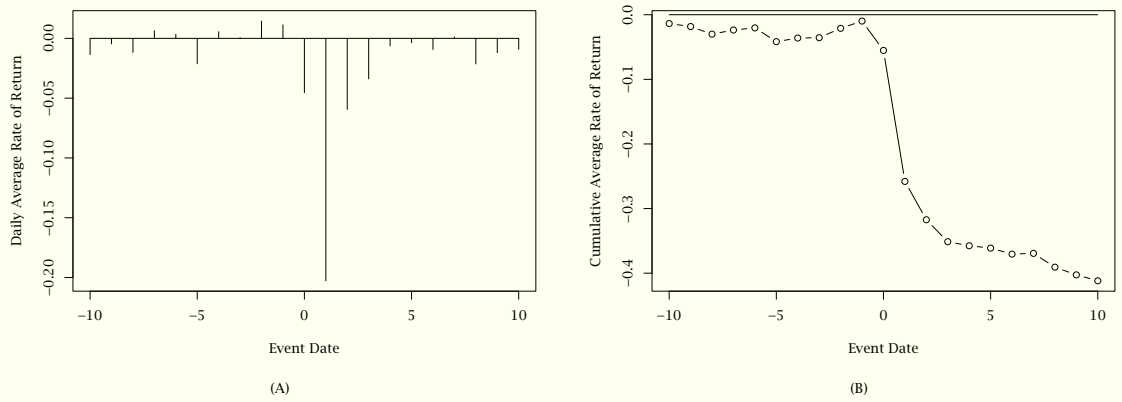
We already know that individual stocks do move around day by day. So four firms may not be representative enough, given typical stock return noise. Instead, we should average the event returns for many FDA rejections, hoping that the noise averages away and the signal becomes more apparent. (Having more firms is like tuning a radio station with a more powerful antenna.) Table 19.1 presents the same event study—to estimate the value consequences of FDA rejections—for 20 pharmaceutical firms. It is usually a good idea to reduce the influence of overall market returns, so we subtract the overall stock market return on the same day from each firm's stock return. After all, we do not want to attribute the fact that the stock market declined by, e.g., 1% on the announcement day, to the drug announcement. (You also have to hope that there are no other major corporate events that *always* occur on the same day as the FDA drug application rejection.) The larger sample event study in Table 19.1 suggests that when firms announce that their drug applications are rejected by the FDA, they lose on average about 25%, plus or minus 22%.

To eliminate noise, average many events from many firms.

Whereas Table 19.1 gives only the average rate of return on the three days of the announcement at the bottom of the table, Figure 19.4 gives the average rate of return on each event day. Graph A indicates that we most likely misidentified the timing of the announcement day: if the announcement happened after market closing, then we only see a market reaction on day +1. On days +2 and +3, however, there appears to be a slight market imperfection: the stocks seem to go down further, by a total of about 5%—if this pattern is systematic, it is not only a violation of market efficiency, but it would be enough to earn us a lot of money! Graph B plots the cumulative return—it adds the return to a running sum. It shows that not much happens

Event Study Graphs—perhaps we can make money?!

Figure 19.4. Average Returns and Cumulative Average Returns in Event Time for 20 FDA Rejections



before the announcement, so there is no evidence of widespread news leakage or insider trading prior to our event, but there is some negative trend post announcement. It appears as if the market "underreacted." This would be worth further investigation, e.g., to see if it holds up in bigger samples and if it is more pronounced for certain, identifiable firms—except that this chapter has now told you (and the investing public) about a possible slow reaction here and a possible money-making opportunity now. If the slow market reaction with its profit opportunity was a real effect, it is likely that it will now disappear as traders will try to exploit it.

Event study are not a panacea.

Event studies are not without drawbacks. There are three significant issues to deal with.

Big problem 1 is that we need to have enough event occurences.

Event Importance Event studies work well only if the event is significant enough to influence the overall stock market valuation: if a \$1 billion stock fluctuates on average by \$10 million a day, it is practically impossible to use an event study to determine the value of a project worth \$100,000. To use our physics analogy, the noise would drown out the signal. A reasonable rule of thumb is to take the ratio of the typical daily stock market value fluctuation (here, \$10 million) divided by the order of magnitude of the value consequence (here, \$100,000, so the ratio is $\$10,000,000/\$100,000 = 100$), and then require 50 times as many event observations as this ratio. For the example, this would require 5,000 event observations—which is likely too many to make such a study feasible for all but the most frequent events.

Problem 2 is that we need to know exactly when news comes out—we want only the unanticipated information.

Event Anticipation Event studies rely on the fact that stock markets react only to news, i.e., the unanticipated component of an information release. There must be a clear event date. But many events are anticipated, announced over a period of time, or never formally announced. For example, if a company was expected with 80% probability to win a contract worth \$1,000,000, the stock price would have already reflected \$800,000. The news that the company actually won the contract would raise the stock price only by \$200,000, not by \$1,000,000. The news that the company would not have won the contract would drop the stock price by \$800,000, however. Isolating market expectations can be very difficult. More than likely, the analyst would not know after the fact how expected the event was by the market at the time. (And, worse: insider trading before the event may have already moved the stock price to the \$1,000,000 before the public announcement.) Therefore, in many cases, the event study technique is better at helping to determine whether an event is good or bad for a company (e.g., the announcement of a new law), than it is in helping to compute an exact value gain.

file=effmkts.tex: RP

Simultaneous Events (Contamination) The event study technique relies on the fact that the event can be precisely isolated from other events. If other events occur in the same time window, any value consequence may stem from these other events, not from the event that is examined. Unfortunately, many events occur at the same time. For example, at the annual meetings, we may get simultaneous announcements of dividend changes, corporate charter changes, institutional votes, information about successions, tough questions from shareholders, etc. So there is always the danger that what our study may attribute to dividend changes really is due to simultaneous announcements of corporate charter changes, instead. We can only hope that the content in these other simultaneous value events is non-systematic, so that it only adds noise that will average out over many different firms.

Problem 3 is that there are often simultaneous events.

Nevertheless, event studies are a very powerful tool to measure the value effects of many changes. Our usual problem of not trusting the CAPM matters little when it comes to a one- to three-day event, because the average CAPM return is only around five basis points for a stock per day. Whether the true expected rate of return is closer four or six basis points is really irrelevant. Such small differences in mean expected returns are hopefully small compared with the signal that we expect from our event.

Event studies work even if the CAPM does not.

Short Preview: Other Event Study Results

There have been event studies on all sorts of events, ranging from new legislation, to corporate name changes, to analysts' opinions, to corporate earnings, to stock splits, to corporate dividends, to corporate debt and equity issuance and retirement, to deaths of the founder, etc. Here are some of the findings. On the day of the announcement, firm values increase on average

Event studies have been used on many different events. We will rely on event studies in later chapters.

- when firms announce increases in dividends, share repurchases, or stock splits (by about 0.1% to 1%);
- when firms are taken over by other firms (and by about 10% to 30%!)
- when the founding CEO dies (by about 3 to 4%).

Conversely, firm values decrease on average

- when firms announce new stock sales (by about 1 to 3%);
- when they overpay for other firms in acquisitions;
- when they announce lower-than-expected earnings;
- when they fend off an acquirer who has made a bid.

Also, we know that certain legislation can systematically have a positive or negative impact on firms, and this value impact can be measured. For example, it is possible to determine which firms were helped and which firms were hurt when telecommunication and airline markets were deregulated. For another example, we know that when the U.S. Congress imposed banking and tax-related sanctions on firms doing business with South Africa's Apartheid regime, there was again little effect on these firms. Despite the boycott's positive moral effect, it was largely not effective in economic terms.

SIDE NOTE: We may wish sanctions on South Africa's Apartheid regime had been effective, but the evidence is clear that they were not—possibly because there were too many loopholes to evade the boycott. Of course, sanctions may still be appropriate on moral grounds regardless of their economic effectiveness. Whether to boycott socially objectionable behavior is a decision that policy makers should make, not economists. The role of the financial economist is only to inform policy makers of the ultimate effectiveness of their actions.

Solve Now!

Q 19.9 *Which of the following are good candidates for ascertaining the value effects with an event study, and why:*

(a) An acquirer wants to buy the firm.

(b) The CEO dies.

(c) The CEO ages.

(d) Positive earnings surprise at the annual meetings.

(e) Purchase of a new machine.

(f) A law is passed to force the company to reduce its emissions.

(g) An ad campaign.

Q 19.10 *What kind of response ("unusual" stock price change and "unusual" rate of return) would you expect when the company announces that it has struck oil and plans to pay it out next month? What reaction do you expect over this month? What reaction do you expect on the day when it pays the dividends?*

Q 19.11 *What are the factors that make an event study more likely to be more or less informative?*

file=effmkts.tex: RP

19·4. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Arbitrage is a riskless bet with no negative outflows under any circumstances. Anyone would like to take an arbitrage opportunity. When and if they appear, they are likely to be very small.
- A great bet can be risky—although it can be very profitable. If not too risk-averse, an individual may prefer a large, great bet to a tiny arbitrage opportunity. Like arbitrage opportunities, great bets are very rare.
- Market efficiency simply means that the market uses all available information in setting prices to offer "appropriate rates of return."
- In the short run, the appropriate expected rate of return on stocks must be small. Therefore, market efficiency prescribes that stocks roughly follow random walks.
- In the long run, it is rarely clear what this "appropriate rate of return" should be. Because noise makes it difficult to measure the average rate of return, it is very difficult to either test models like the CAPM or to test long-run market efficiency.
- Beliefs in efficient markets come in different forms.

  A more current E-M classification emphasizes the rationality of the stock market: true believer (stock prices always reflect underlying project NPVs), firm believer (small deviations, but difficult to take advantage of), mild believer (small deviations, and somewhat possible to take advantage of), or non believer (arbitrage opportunities and great bets abound).

  The standard E-M classification emphasizes what information it would take to beat the market: weak form (just past stock price patterns), semi-strong form (other historical information), and strong form (inside information).
- The overall evidence suggests that it is not easy to become rich—a belief shared by most finance professors. The relative strength of their beliefs in market efficiency—the extent to which professors believe that market prices always reflect underlying value—separates finance professors into "rationalists" (or "classical" economists) and "behavioralists."
- Given the millions of investors, many will beat the stock market by chance, and some investors will beat the stock market many years in a row. Market efficiency does not mean that there are not some investors who will beat the stock market ten years in a row *ex-post*, only that any one particular investor is unlikely to beat the stock market *ex-ante* ten years in a row.
- Managers can learn valuable information from market prices, both from their own share price and from other prices. To improve corporate firm value, managers must create fundamental value—they must undertake positive NPV projects. Simple activities such as purchasing a random firm to lower risk or splitting shares will not add value.
- Event studies allow us to ascertain the corporate value impact of sharp events, such as legislative action (FDA rulings) or corporate events (dividend increases).

Solutions and Exercises

1. If the arbitrage opportunity can only be done once and gains $10, it is probably worse than a good bet that loses 1 cent one percent of the time, and gains $1,000,000 ninety-nice percent of the time.

2. The market uses all available information in the setting of its price.
3. More likely.

4. See Formula 19.2.
5. The price can definitely and most likely will be different. Only the *expected* price is the same as the price today.
6. The typical movement (variation) is around plus or minus 1% to 3% a day. The average rate of return is much lower.
7. If a stock has an expected rate of return of 20% per year—which is definitely on the high side for most firms—the daily rate of return would be
$$(1 + 20\%)^{1/365} - 1 \approx 0.05\%.$$
8. If each of them has a chance of 50-50 in any given year, then the answer is $10,000/2^{10} \approx 10$.
9.
   (a) An acquirer wants to buy the firm: Super. Usually unannounced and big event.
   (b) The CEO dies: Maybe. Depends on suddenness (anticipation) and replace-ability of CEO.
   (c) The CEO ages: Bad. No sudden information release. Value effect not big enough.
   (d) Positive earnings surprise at the annual meetings: Maybe. Problem is many other things may happen at the same time.
   (e) Purchase of a new machine: Probably Bad. Problem is that one machine is usually too small to make a big value difference.
   (f) A law is passed to force the company to reduce its emissions: Maybe. The value consequences could be large enough, but by the time the law passes, it has long since been anticipated.
   (g) An ad campaign: Bad. First, there is no unique date on which to pin down the information release, and the value effects are often not too overwhelming, either.
10. The share price response would immediately be positive. Over the following month, you would not expect any unusual upward or downward drift: it should be about zero. Finally, when the firm pays out the special dividend, the rate of return should be zero on average, too, although its share price will have to drop by the amount of dividend paid to keep the return around zero.
11. The effect should be big, unanticipated, and there should be many other companies that have already experienced similar events in the past.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

Part IV

Financing Choices and Capital Structure

"It's not begging if you've been to college. It's attempting to arrange interim financing while restructuring your debt load."

(A part of all versions of the book.)

Transition

We are still plagued by one problem: Although we know how firms should value projects, and although we know the determinants of our cost of capital, we do not yet know how we can best get new investors to part with their cash. We just assumed that if our firm had the right project (with a positive NPV), then the funds would come by themselves.

In the real world, this may not be the case, but our firm does have many venues for raising funds. We now discuss both the types of securities that our firm can sell to potential investors and the selling process itself.

What You Want to Accomplish in this Part

The goal of this part of the book is to learn how firms should finance projects with debt and equity, and how this influences the firm's cost of capital.

- Chapter 20 explains how you should think of securities that firms sell (issue), and how these securities are sold into the financial markets.

  Typical questions: What rights do stock investors have, e.g., if the underlying firm goes bankrupt? What is preferred stock?

- Chapter 21 shows that *if everything is perfect*, then the value of the firm is the value of its underlying assets and not dependent on whether it is financed with debt or equity.

  Typical questions: How does the value and expected rate of return of the firm's equities change if the firm issues a large bond in order to buy back stock?

- Chapter 22 shows how firms should make capital structure and capital budgeting decisions if they have to pay corporate income taxes.

  Typical questions: What is the firm's cost of capital and value if it finances itself with 50% debt and 50% owner's equity, instead of with 100% owner's equity.

- Chapter 23 explains other considerations that can have important influences on capital structure.

  Typical questions: Should a fast growing firm finance itself with more or less debt than a profitable value firm? If investors are concerned that managers like to raise funds primarily when they know that their current projects are not very good, then what can managers do to calm investor fears in order to be able to raise more money?

- Chapter **??** describes the capital structure landscape in the United States. Primarily, it shows in some detail how IBM's capital structure evolved from 2001 to 2003. Secondarily, it describes how companies generally are financed.

  Typical questions: How should we define debt/equity ratios? How do debt/equity ratios really come about?

- Chapter 25 describes how managers should be thinking about changes in capital structure.

  Typical questions: What mechanisms can managers use to change capital structure and firm size.

- Chapter 26 tries to understand the relative importance of different mechanisms and causes of capital structure change.

  Typical questions: How important are equity issues in determining the debt-equity ratio of the typical company?

- Chapter 27 describes the role of investment banks.

  Typical questions: What do investment bankers really do? Who are the top investment bankers? How much do they charge?

- Chapter 28 focuses on corporate governance in more detail.

  Typical questions: If investors are concerned that managers like to steal or waste money, what can managers do (and what do they do) to calm investor fears?

CHAPTER 20

Corporate Financial Claims

Who owns What?

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (14:59h)

last major edit: Apr 2005

After the firm has determined what projects to take, the question is how they should be financed. This is called the capital structure of the firm. You have already encountered the two basic financing choices that firms have: Current firm owners can accept new partners, which they can accomplish by issuing equity (stock). Or they can borrow money, which they can accomplish by issuing debt (bonds). There are also many other financial claims, most of which are hybrids of these two basic choices.

This chapter describes some of the choices that corporations have, and how to think of them. The next chapters will explain how to choose among them.

20·1. The Basic Building Blocks

Bonds and Stocks are the basic building blocks. Homes and Corporations are really the same.

The capital structure of a firm consists of the financial claims on its future payoffs. Claims have two aspects to them:

Cash Flow Rights, which describe how future project payoffs will be allocated; and

Control Rights, which allow the claim owners to influence corporate decisions, often necessary to enforce their cash flow rights.

When claims are issued by a publicly traded company, they are called **securities**, because they are registered with the **Securities and Exchange Commission** (**SEC**). However, the term is now used much more liberally, e.g., for foreign securities and privately placed securities, which really are not securities in the original sense of the term.

Debt and Equity. Owning the firm really requires owning all claims without further obligations.

The two basic building blocks of capital structure are also the most common financial claims: **bonds** (**leverage**) and **stocks** (**equity**). Just as our buyer from Chapter 5 financed a house purchase with a mortgage and kept the rest as levered equity, so do firms issue bonds and stocks. By definition, you own the firm only if you own *all claims* that the firm has issued. It is not enough for you to own only *all stock*. If you are the levered equity homeowner, you can make a lot of decisions about the house, but you really do not fully own the house, because you cannot dispose of the house and keep the money without repaying the mortgage. It is you plus the mortgage company that together own the house. Similarly, the levered equity holders in a corporation make almost all decisions, but they do not fully own it. The value of the firm is by definition the sum-total value of all its outstanding claims.

20·1.A. Bonds

Bonds are Loans, with specified obligations by the company to its creditors.

In Part I, we have already worked extensively with bonds, though not necessarily corporate bonds. Bonds are just loans that promise specific payoffs at specific times in the future. The borrower (or issuer) receives cash upfront and contractually promises to pay cash in the future. This returned cash can be classified into tax-deductible interest payments and repayment of principal. Most bonds promise payments every 3 or 6 months. At **maturity**, corporate bonds usually pay back the principal. Under the most common arrangement, the **absolute priority rule** (**APR**), bondholders first receive what they have been promised, before more junior claimants (such as equity) can receive anything.

Bondholders have no control rights, unless the firm goes bust.

Control Rights: Unless the firm is near financial distress, bondholders typically do not have the right to participate in the decisions of the firm or the selection of its management. *But* if the firm misses a payment, the bondholders have the right to force the firm into bankruptcy. In the United States, bankruptcy means either corporate reorganization under **Chapter 11** or corporate liquidation under **Chapter 7**, named for their respective chapters in the Federal Bankruptcy Code. In theory, bankruptcy allows bondholders to take over and thereby own the company to recover what they were contractually promised. In practice, this is not as easy as it is in many European countries, but it does happen frequently enough. In any case, few managers survive even Chapter 11 bankruptcy, so they generally try to avoid missing bond payments. In addition to the universal right of repayment through control in default, many lenders contract for additional control rights in the original lending agreement. These are called **bond covenants**. For example, a loan agreement may specify that the firm must maintain a certain liquidity, or its loan can be declared to be in default.

file=corpclaims.tex: RP

20·1.B. Ordinary Equity (Common Stock)

Stock ownership is ownership post-debt, earning dividends and capital gains, and having control rights.

Stock, a common abbreviation for **ordinary equity** or **common equity**, is like ownership: **stock shareholder** (or just **stockholders**) receive whatever is left over *after* the promises to bondholders have been honored. The bad news is that equity typically has the lowest priority in bankruptcy. The good news is that shareholders enjoy unlimited upside. If they are lucky, they receive dividend payments and capital appreciation. Unlike coupon interest payments, dividend payments not only can be omitted at the corporation's discretion, but also have to be paid from *after-tax* earnings. Then, even though the corporation has already paid corporate income tax on its earnings, individuals have to pay personal income tax on their dividend receipts. This is sometimes called the **double taxation of dividends**. The Bush Tax Cuts of 2003 have greatly reduced the double taxation, which has also been the norm in many other countries (such as in the United Kingdom). In sum, you can think of equity holders as corporate owners that are protected by **limited liability** (see also Chapter 5).

Control Rights: In situations outside financial distress, shareholders own the control rights to make almost all decisions for the company. In publicly traded companies, shareholders usually elect (and thereby hire and fire) the **corporate board**, to whom they thereby delegate their control rights. (The legal details to accomplish this vary by corporate charter and country.) The corporate board in turn appoints the managers, to whom they delegate many if not most day-to-day control rights. There is considerable disagreement about whether these control rights also function well in large, diffusely held, older corporations function. (The managerial control rights are the focus of Chapter 28 on **corporate governance**.)

Solve Now!

Q 20.1 *What is a control right?*

Q 20.2 *What is limited liability?*

ANECDOTE: Judge Lifland and Eastern Airlines' Creditors

Absolute Priority is the theory. In practice, bankruptcy courts can and sometimes do violate the pre-agreed priority rules in the bankruptcy process. In turn, because corporate managers can choose where to file for bankruptcy, they usually do so in the court where they expect to fare best.

The *Southern District of New York* Bankruptcy Judge Burton Lifland was so notorious for violating creditors' rights, that he attracted not only *Eastern Airlines*' bankruptcy, but also those of *Manville*, *Orion Pictures*, and *LTV*. But it was Eastern Airlines that was Judge Lifland's crowning achievement: When it went bankrupt in March 1989, it was fully solvent. Unsecured creditors would have likely been satisfied in full. Instead, Judge Lifland allowed Eastern to continue operating for two more years, partially on the basis that closing it would have disrupted Christmas travel. Eastern's ongoing operation evaporated about $1.5 billion through operating losses and another $100 million through legal fees. In the end, unsecured creditors received practically nothing of their $2.3 billion claim.

Despite frequent modest APR violations and despite such occasional spectacular examples of drastic APR violations, APR violations are usually mild. (They may even be necessary. After all, society would not want to see our lawyers starve!) These days, creditors are aware of expected violations and legal fees, and therefore take them into account when they purchase bonds and stocks in the first place. Thus, the presence of lawyers increases corporations' costs of financing.

20·1.C. Debt and Equity as Contingent Claims

Payoff diagrams, again.

In Chapter 5, you learned about the main tool for the analysis of promised payments: payoff tables and payoff diagrams. For example, consider a firm with a capital structure that consists of equity and a single bond that promises to pay $200 next year. The value of the corporation will be the total value promised to bondholders and shareholders. How much each claims holder will receive will depend on the value of the firm. Figure 20.1 shows that if the firm is worth $100, bondholders will receive $100 and shareholders will receive nothing. If the firm is worth $200, bondholders will receive $200 and shareholders will receive nothing. If the firm is worth $300, bondholders will receive $200 and shareholders will receive $100. If the firm is worth $400, bondholders will receive $200 and shareholders will receive $200. And so on. This is the best way to think of the contractual payment obligations of bonds, stocks, and most other financial claims. (There are other important considerations, though, which are covered in subsequent chapters.) Because you can call the future value of the firm (the base asset) the underlying **state**, debt and equity are often called **state-contingent claims**: their value depends on the future state of the firm.

Timing does not matter to the usefulness of these diagrams.

Note that if the market is perfect, it is not important to our analysis whether the firm continues to exist after the bond comes due. You could imagine that the firm is then sold to new owners for its fair value first. The proceeds are then distributed to stockholders and bondholders according to their claims. Of course, stockholders and bondholders could use these proceeds to repurchase the remaining firm if they so desire. (On Page 93, in our tornado/sunshine example, we explained that it does not matter whether the house is sold at the end of time 1.)

Payoff diagrams cannot tell the part of the story that is time-varying, rather than firm-value varying.

However, although payoff diagrams are very useful as conceptual aids for a contract that is on one payment at a given point in time, they are not as good at illustrating features that are themselves a function of time or a function of many different points in time. Our example really made it easy to see the value of a zero bond. It would be more difficult to use the payoff diagram to fully describe a coupon bond, because these have multiple payment dates, which can cause quite a set of interesting complications that we would rather avoid. (Similarly, payoff diagrams are less useful to illustrate the value of a claim that consists of randomly timed future payoffs.) Nevertheless, even in such cases, there is usually a link between the value of the firm and the value of the financial claim—so thinking of financial claims as contingent claims often remains a useful conceptual, if not entirely accurate, tool.

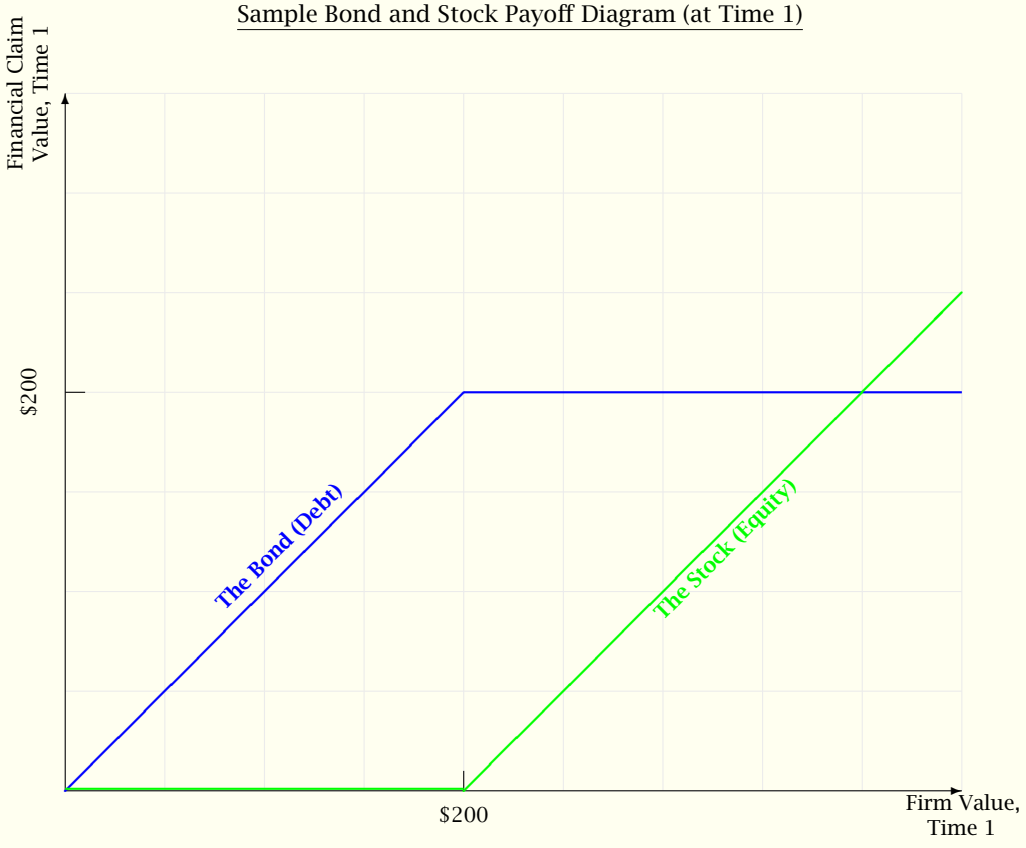
Solve Now!

Q 20.3 *To gain some practice with payoff diagrams, assume your medical insurance pays 90% of your medical expenses, subject to a $500 deductible, and subject to an annuaal limit of $10,000 payout. Write down your insurance payoff table and graph an insurance payoff diagram, as a function of your medical expenses. What is the slope of the line at each segment?*

Figure 20.1. Sample Bond and Stock Payoff Table (at Time 1)

Firm Value	Bond Value	Stock Value
$0	$0	$0
$50	$50	$0
$100	$100	$0
$150	$150	$0
$200	$200	$0
$250	$200	$50
$300	$200	$100
$350	$200	$150
…	…	…

Sample Bond and Stock Payoff Diagram (at Time 1)



20·2. More About Bonds

Firms can choose any claim features they wish.

Over time, many variations and hybrids of the two basic claims have developed. The features of financial claims are not written in stone. Firms can and do experiment. Naturally, if a claim offers more features or protections that are of value to investors, then these investors will be willing to pay more for the claim upfront. In a perfect market, both companies receive and investors pay the appropriate fair share (price), regardless of the features chosen by corporations offering claims for sale. The features described in this chapter are among those that have survived, evolved, and thrived over the years—those that increase value. Of course, corporations could issue claims that do not maximize value, even if they are fairly priced. For example, a claim might offer its owner the right (or obligation!) to become CEO if it were to rain in Los Angeles next April 21. This claim would fetch an appropriate price, but it would probably significantly lower the value of the firm.

20·2.A. Bond Features

Bonds come in a thousand varieties—and then some.

Corporate bonds come in many forms. The issuer can choose what specific rights to offer to buyers and what rights to reserve for the firm. Naturally, the more rights a bond buyer receives, the higher the value of the bond when the issuer sells them, and therefore the lower the cost of capital (the expected interest rate) on the bond. Some bond features are unique to corporations, while others are common. Among the more common are the following:

Bond covenants promise that the firm will keep certain promises, or else it will be forced to repurchase (**redeem**) the bond. Among the more common covenants are restrictions on what the firm can do with its assets, how much in dividends it may pay, how many and what kind of other financial claims it may issue, what kind of financial ratios (e.g., debt/equity ratio) it needs to maintain, who the auditor is, what happens if the corporation defaults on any other bond, and how much of its own bonds it will repurchase each year. This last feature is called a **sinking fund** commitment and is very common.

Bond seniority specifies which bond receives first dip in case of bankruptcy and liquidation. A **senior bond** will have to be satisfied in full before a **subordinated bond** (or **junior bond**) may receive any money. In turn, equity receives its funds only after even the most junior bonds have been fully satisfied.

Collateral or **security** are specific corporate assets pledged to a specific bond in case of default. For example, mortgage bonds are collateralized by the value of the underlying real estate. If the issuer fails to pay, the bondholders may repossess the underlying real estate, and use it to satisfy their claim. If the real estate is not enough to satisfy the claim of the **secured bond**, the remaining claim becomes an ordinary bond, waiting in line with other creditors for payment.

Convertability allows the bond holder to exchange the bond for shares. This is explained in greater detail in the next section.

Puttability allows bondholders to return the bonds to the issuer, in exchange for pre-agreed-upon payment. This is like convertibility, only that the conversion is into cash, not into equity.

Callability allows the issuer (the firm) to "call in" the outstanding bond at a prespecified price. For example, a callable bond contract may state that the firm can redeem the bond by paying back principal plus 10% rate of interest in May 2020. Usually, callable bonds do not allow a call for the first five years in the life of the bond. Callability also often comes in connection with convertibility, so the call can be used to force bond holders to convert: The corporation calls the bonds, and the holder of the bond finds that it is in her interest to convert the bond into equity, rather than to accept repayment.

While a convertible bond gives bondholders extra rights, callable bonds give the firm extra rights. Therefore, when a bond contains a call feature, it is less valuable than an otherwise

file=corpclaims.tex: RP

identical bond, which means that issuers of bonds with call features receive less money when they include the call feature. Put differently, they must pay a higher interest rate upfront. In effect, every mortgage is a callable bond, because the seller of the bond (the homeowner, that is you) can just pay back the remaining loan balance (the **principal**) and be absolved of all further obligations.

The call feature is a good example of where payoff diagrams do not capture the whole situation. The value of the callable bond is often more a function of the prevailing interest rate than it is a function of the firm value. Corporations tend to call bonds when the economy-wide interest rate has dropped so replacement bonds have become much cheaper. (Similarly, homeowners tend to repay their mortgages and refinance when the mortgage interest rate has dropped.) But, because the interest rate is not a one-to-one function of the firm value in the future, the payoff diagram against the firm value at a fixed point in time would not tell the whole story.

Actual calling may depend not just on the value of the firm, but on such things as interest rate.

CFOs must also make decisions on the following corporate bond features. Because these features are shared by non-corporate bonds, we have already described them in Part I.

Bond maturity is the time to final payback. Indeed, borrowing may be very short-term (as little as overnight!), or very long-term (as long as forever). Bonds of different maturities may have different names. For example, **commercial paper** is short-term debt, often guaranteed by a bank's credit line (see below), and therefore is almost risk-free to the lender. On the corporate balance sheet, **funded debt** is the term for debt that has a maturity of less than 1 year. **Unfunded debt** has a maturity of more than 1 year.

Again, our payoff diagrams do not do bond maturity full justice. The reason is that maturity can sometimes be like "super-seniority." That is, a subordinated bond may be repaid before the more senior bond comes due, and, once paid, the money paid to the subordinated bond can often not be reclaimed to satisfy the senior creditor's higher-priority claim.

Bond duration is a measure of how soon payments are made. It was described on Page 74.

Coupon bonds vs. zero bonds: We have already talked extensively about this distinction in Part I of our book. Zero bonds pay a fixed amount of money only at a final date. Coupon bonds make (interest) payments on a regular schedule, typically (but not always) twice a year, and the principal is repaid as a **balloon payment** at the end.

> **SIDE NOTE**: In a practice called **bond stripping**, investment banks sometimes separate the coupon obligations from the final balloon payment. That is, they purchase bonds, put them into an escrow account, and offer two types of new financial claims collateralized by the escrowed bonds: one pays all the coupon, the other pays all the principal. The reason for doing this is to exploit tax loopholes in Japan and other countries.
>
> You can think of a coupon bond as a special kind of unit, consisting only of similar payment obligations. More generally, a **unit** is simply a bundle of multiple types of financial claims that are sold together, usually involving a warrant and another claim (like a stock or a bond). The purchaser can keep both types of claims, or similarly unbundle them and sell them separately.

Fixed interest-rate debt vs. floating interest-rate debt: Bonds can promise to pay a predetermined interest rate over the life, or a spread relative to some other interest rate. Floating debt is often issued at a spread relative to the **prime rate** (an average interest rate that banks usually offer their best customers) or relative to **LIBOR** (**London Interbank Offer Rate**). The interest rate on floating rate debt is often **capped** or **collared**; that is, the interest rate will never exceed a predetermined ceiling. (Highly reputable companies can typically borrow at interest rates that are about LIBOR. More risky companies typically pay interest rates that are about 100-300 basis points (or 1-3%) above LIBOR.)

There is an endless array of possible bond features.

There is no limit to the imagination as far as bond features are concerned. For example, the Russian car maker *Avtovaz* issued *Lada bonds* in 1994, which allowed the holders to convert their bonds into Lada cars. Other bonds' payoffs have been linked to commodities, such as the price of oil, to other financial claims, or to exchange rates.

Bank Loans may be Credit Lines.

Another important dimension along which loans differ is whether there is a relationship between the lender and the issuer. Firms can raise funds with a public debt issue, in which there is typically no relationship between borrower and multiple lenders, or with a bank loan, in which there is only one lender. The advantage of borrowing from the bank is that it may know the firm better, and thereby grant better terms. The disadvantage is that there is less competition among banks for extending loans than there is among public bondholders. Bank loans can also take the form of a **credit line**. Credit lines are like instant debt, permitting borrowers to draw down money (and pay higher interest) only upon need. (Borrowers typically agree to pay a low interest rate even on the unused part of the credit line.) The opposite of a credit line is **negotiated debt**, in which both the bank and the firm commit to a fixed loan. Just as the lines between debt and equity are often blurry, so are the lines between bank and public debt. There is now a large market (more than $135 billion in 2003) for bank loans extended by syndicates of banks, in which multiple banks can share the risk of a loan, and many individual banks routinely resell loans that they have made. And there are vulture investors who purchase public debt and then seek to monitor the actions of the company, behaving much like a bank.

Solve Now!

Q 20.4 *Write down all bond features (variations) that you remember.*

Q 20.5 *A firm is financed with a senior bond that promises to pay $100, a junior bond that promises to pay $200 (of lower seniority but of equal maturity to the senior bond), and equity. Write down the payoff table and then draw the payoff diagrams when the two bonds are due.*

20·2.B. Convertible Bonds

Convertible bonds allow the bondholder to exchange the bond into something else, usually equity. An example.

Convertibility is a common and important corporate bond feature, because it can be thought of as creating a claim that is somewhere between bonds and stocks. A convertible bond permits holders to convert their bonds into equity at a predetermined price at predetermined dates. Here is a simple example, in which a bond can only be converted at one point in time: a firm with 400 outstanding shares of equity also has 200 outstanding convertible bonds that promise $10,000 each in January 2050. Each such bond can be converted, at the bondholder's discretion, into three new shares of stock. If the bond holders convert, the original shareholders will own a lower share of the company. The cost to them would no longer be the money that the firm has to pay to creditors, but a loss in ownership. This is called **dilution**.

Understanding the specific example: at the time the bond comes due.

If you own these bonds, what would you do if the value of the firm's assets in January 2050 were $2 million or less? Your 200 bonds would own everything that is in the firm. It would not be in your interest to exchange their bonds for shares. But what would you do if the value were $1 billion? You would make the following calculation: If you take advantage of the convertibility feature and exchange your 200 bonds for 600 shares, there will be 1,000 shares in total. Your shares will therefore own 60% of the firm or $60 million—a whole lot more than the $2 million that you would receive if you did not request conversion. Therefore, you will exercise your right to convert.

ANECDOTE: Are Convertibles Debt or Equity?
In a 2002 survey in which CFOs were asked to describe why they issue convertible debt, the most frequent answers alluded to the fact that convertibles are "equity in disguise." 58% of the managers answered that it is an inexpensive way to issue "delayed" common stock. 50% answered that they did so because they considered their own stock currently undervalued, which again could be interpreted as managers thinking of convertibles as stock in disguise.

(Source: Graham and Harvey, Duke, 2002.)

file=corpclaims.tex: RP

Can you determine at what firm value you would be indifferent between converting and not converting? It is where 60% of the firm would be equal to $2 million. This occurs when the firm value is equal to $3.3 million. To summarize:

Determining the cutoff at which convertible bondholders will prefer converting.

- Below $2 million, you get everything.
- Between $2,000 and $3,333, you get $2 million and the shareholders get the residual above $2 million.
- And above $3.3 million, the shareholders and bondholders both benefit from higher values, with you receiving 60% of the firm's value and shareholders receiving 40% of the firm's value.

The payoff diagram in Figure 20.2 shows this claim.

One final question: Why would shareholders be willing to give bondholders this right, which in effect deprives them of much upside? The answer must be that by doing so, bondholders are willing to pay more for the bond upfront. And, indeed, we know that if financial markets are competitive, bondholders will get what they pay for.

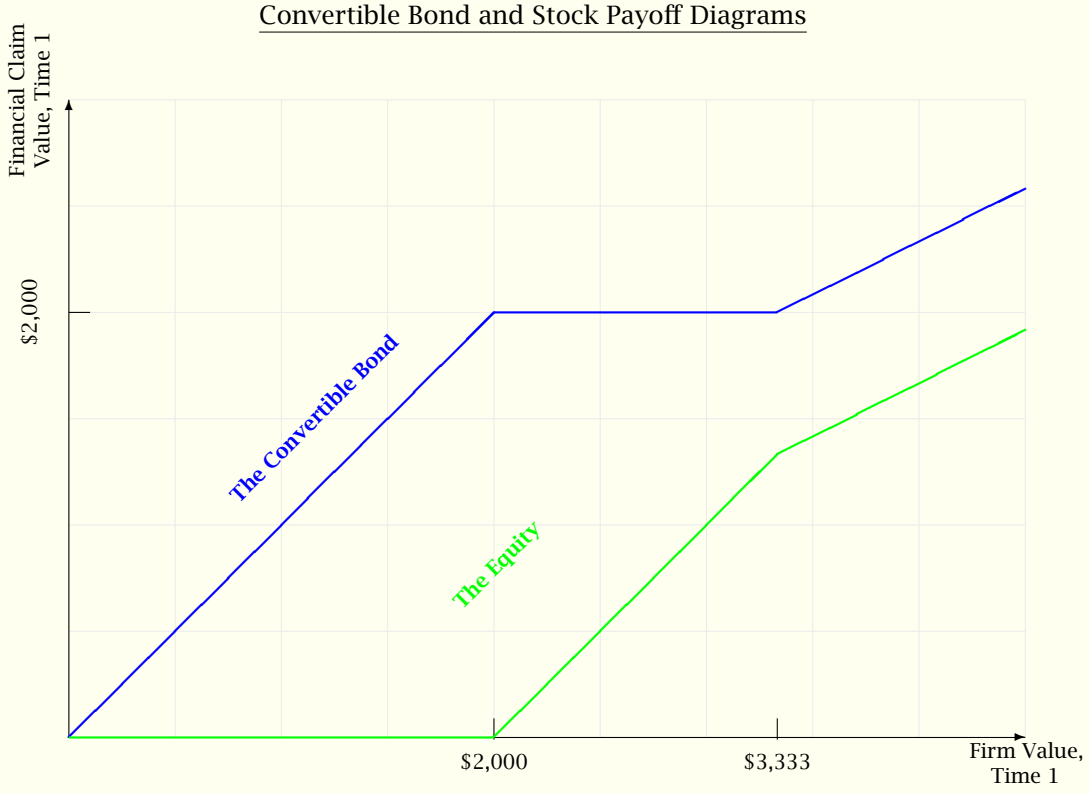
Owners are willing to give the convertible right, because it increases the cash they receive upfront.

Solve Now!

Q 20.6 *A convertible zero bond that promises $10,000 can be converted into 50 shares of equity at its maturity date. If there are 2,000 such bonds and 300,000 shares outstanding, how would the payoff table (and diagram) for both bond holders and equity holders look like?*

Figure 20.2. Sample Convertible Bond and Stock Payoff Diagram at Time 1

Firm Value	Convertible Bond Value	Common Equity Value
$0	$0	$0
$1,000	$1,000	$0
$1,500	$1,500	$0
$2,000	$2,000	$0
$2,500	$2,000	$500
$3,000	$2,000	$1,000
$3,333	$2,000	$1,333
$3,500	$2,100	$1,400
$4,000	$2,400	$1,600
$4,500	$2,700	$1,800
...	...	...



file=corpclaims.tex: RP

20·3. More About Stock

There are fewer variations of equity securities than debt securities, but two should be briefly mentioned.

20·3.A. Preferred Equity (Stock)

Preferred Equity gets better dividend treatment by the corporation.

Many companies also issue **preferred equity**. Preferred equity is an instrument somewhere between debt and equity. Preferred equity holders usually receive higher dividends than ordinary equity holders—hence the description "preferred." Unlike ordinary equity, where dividends are declared annually at the discretion of management, preferred equity dividends are usually specified at issuance (for example, $2.25 per calender quarter per share). Unlike bondholders who fail to receive their promised coupon payment, preferred equity holders cannot force the firm into bankruptcy if dividends are not paid—but their contract usually states that they have priority over common equity holders: the preferred equity holders receive dividends before ordinary equity holders.

Preferred Dividends receive better tax treatment when held by other corporations.

But the real advantage of preferred equity over ordinary equity is that, although not tax-deductible to the issuing corporation, the preferred dividend payments are not fully taxable when received by other firms. The IRS considers only 15–30% of preferred dividends taxable for the recipient. Preferred equity is therefore usually not held by individuals, but by corporations investing in other corporations. (Individuals can earn higher post-tax yields in other claims.)

More preferred equity features.

Preferred equity is junior to the company's bonds, which means that in case of bankruptcy, preferred equity holders will be paid only after bondholders are paid. Preferred equity is often retired on a fixed schedule—even though many preferred equities have no formal maturity. Like common stock, some preferred stock is traded on public stock exchanges. Though preferred equity usually enjoys covenant restrictions (specifically promised dividend payments before common equity), it has neither precedence to bonds, nor control rights, nor unlimited upside (rights to the residual value of the firm). Naturally, any such features can be explicitly added by contract. For example, in many small firms, it is not uncommon for preferred equity to be convertible into common equity ("convertible preferred stock") and to explicitly provide for voting rights. The holders of such claims are usually themselves corporations, often venture capitalists, who can write off the claims if the firm fails and convert them into common equity if the firm succeeds.

Solve Now!

Q 20.7 *In what sense is preferred equity like bonds? In what sense is preferred equity like stocks?*

20·3.B. OPTIONAL: Options and Warrants

There are two more claims that especially smaller and privately held firms are using.

Firms sometime issue **call options** (or just **calls**), or **warrants**. These are usually more junior even than common equity. In publicly traded corporations, they rarely have control rights—except for the right of the owner to convert them into equity. If they do, shareholders will suffer dilution, although calls or options typically require a payment into the firm by call or warrant holders that will raise the value of the overall firm.

Call Options

Call options are rights to purchase equity at a predetermined price in the future.

A call option is a right to purchase ("call in") the shares from the call seller for a given price at or by a given point in time. For example, a call might be the right to purchase 300 shares of the firm for \$50/share on January 15, 2050. If shares will then be worth more than \$50/share, then the call option will have value. Otherwise, the call will be worthless because it will not be in the interest of the call holder to exercise it. (See also the Web chapter on options and derivatives for a longer explanation of call options.)

Working the Example.

Let us look at the call option in more detail. In our context, the call seller is the corporation having raised money by selling it. Figure 20.3 shows a firm that has 1,000 outstanding equity shares as well as call options for 300 shares at \$50/share each. If call option owners were to choose to exercise the call option for 300 shares, they would own the equivalent of 30% of the firm. Now, if the stock price will be \$40/share (total firm value \$40,000) at option expiration, the call option will be worthless, because owning 30% of \$40,000 (\$12,000) in exchange for paying 300 shares times the exercise price of \$50 (\$15,000) would not be in the call owner's interests. However, if the price will be \$60/share, call option holders will exercise their option, and demand 300 shares in exchange for payment of \$50/share. The firm will have to repurchase 300 of its own shares at \$60/share (for \$18,000), but receive only \$50/share (or \$15,000). This will cost old shareholders a net \$10/share for 300 shares, or \$3,000 in total. This net benefit goes to the new shareholders (the original call option owners). Old equity holders will own 70% of the \$60,000 firm which sums to \$42,000, plus the \$15,000 call payment. In sum, their wealth will be \$57,000. New shareholders will own the remaining \$3,000. (An entirely equivalent transaction—without having to go through the repurchasing and handing over exercise—would be for the old shareholders to just hand over to the option holders $\$3,000/\$57,000 = 5\%$ of the firm, the equivalent of 50 out of 1,000 equity shares.)

Warrants

Companies usually issue Warrants, not Call Options.

Companies rarely issue call options, because it is usually easier for them to just issue new shares (to satisfy the option like claim) than it is for them to repurchase existing shares. Such call option-like financial claims are called **warrants**. They give warrant holders exactly the same rights that call option holders would have, except that the money that the warrant holder pays flows into the corporation, and the corporation issues new shares to satisfy the warrants. If the above claim (300 shares at \$50/share) is a warrant rather than an option, and if the firm ends up being worth \$60,000, then the warrant holders would exercise their rights, the firm would be worth \$75,000, and warrant holders would own $300/(1,000+300) \approx 23\%$ of this firm—the equivalent of \$17,307.69 in exchange for their \$15,000 payment. Note that this is less than the \$18,000 in stock that a call option holder would have received in exchange for \$15,000 payment. Therefore, a warrant is worth less than an equivalent call option. Exhibits 20.4 shows the warrant payoff diagram.

Put Options

Put options are rights to sell equity at a predetermined price in the future.

A put option gives the owner the right (but not the obligation) to sell ("put") shares for a given price at or by a given point in time. For example, a put might be the right to sell 300 shares of the firm for \$50/share on or before January 15, 2050. Say you sell me such a put for \$5/put today. If shares will then trade for \$35/share, I can buy the shares on the open market for \$35/share, and exercise my right to sell them to you for \$50/share, i.e., at a profit of \$15/share. If shares will then trade for \$70, the put right will be worthless to me, because it would not be in my interest to exercise it. A put is therefore an instrument to speculate that the shares will decline in value. (See also the Web chapter on options and derivatives for a longer explanation of call options.)

Figure 20.3. Sample Call Option Payoff Diagram at Time 1

Firm Value	Option Value	Equity Value
$0	$0	$0
$10,000	$0	$10,000
$20,000	$0	$20,000
$30,000	$0	$30,000
$40,000	$0	$40,000
$50,000	$0	$50,000
$60,000	$3,000	$57,000
$70,000	$6,000	$64,000
…	…	…

The call option strike price is $50 for 300 shares. With 1,000 shares in total, the option is "payment of $15,000 in exchange for 30% of the firm." At a firm value of $60,000, this means $18,000 minus $15,000 payment. At a firm value of $70,000, this means $21,000 minus $15,000 payment.

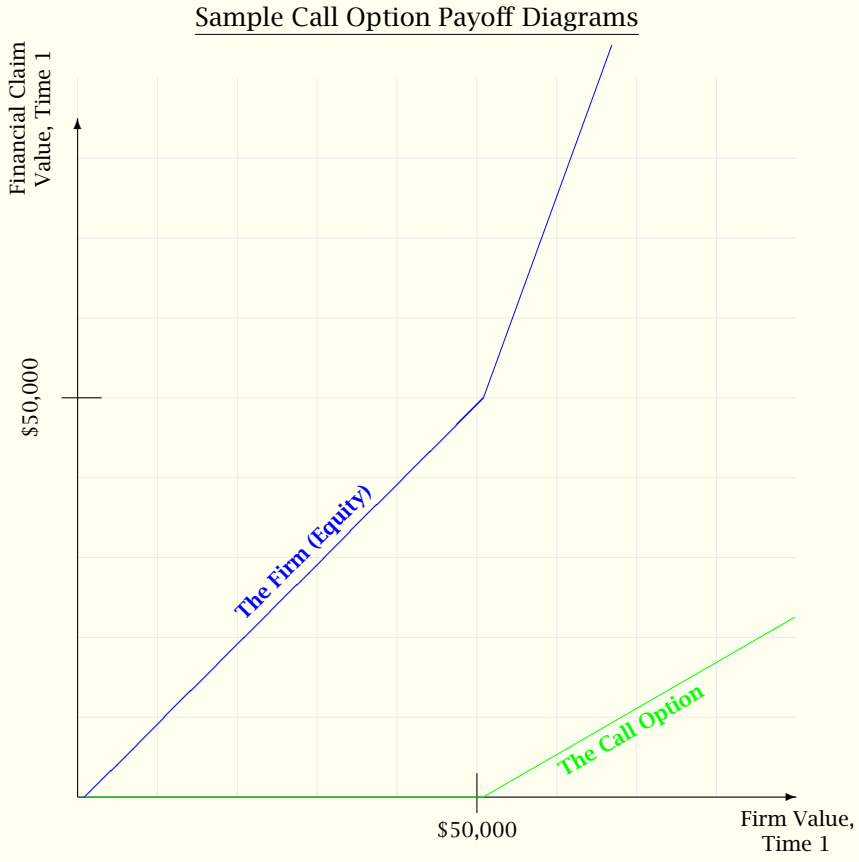
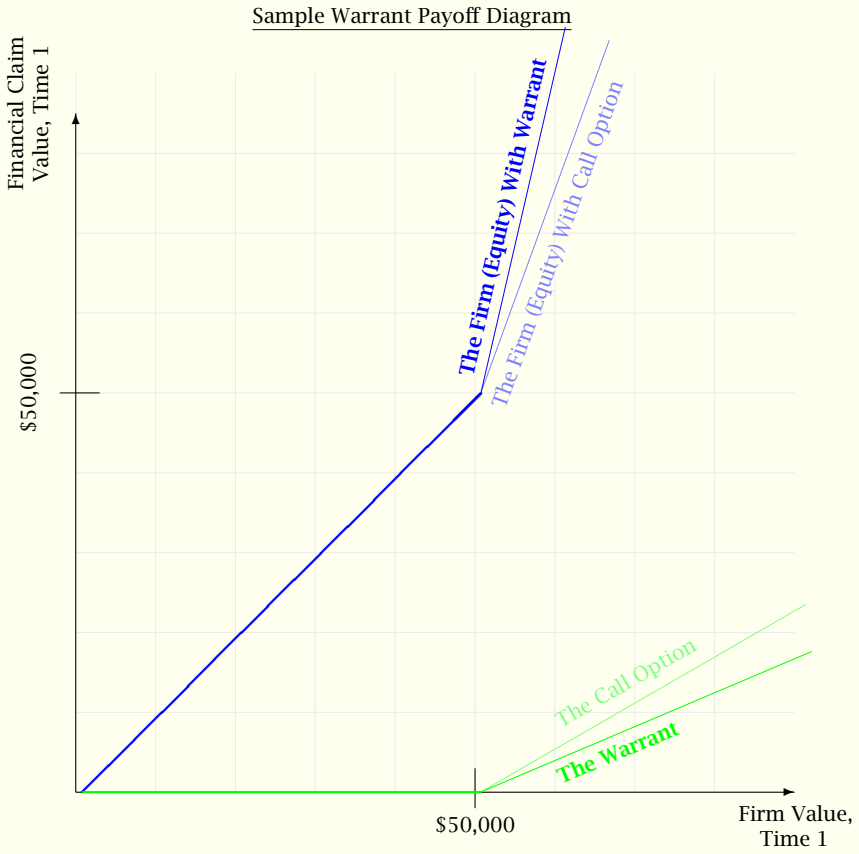


Figure 20.4. Sample Warrant Payoff Diagram at Time 1

Pre-Warrant Firm Value	Post-Warrant Firm Value	Warrant Value	Old Equity Value
$0	$0	$0	$0
$10,000	$0	$0	$10,000
$20,000	$0	$0	$20,000
$30,000	$0	$0	$30,000
$40,000	$0	$0	$40,000
$50,000	$0	$0	$50,000
$60,000	$75,000	$2,308	$57,692
$70,000	$85,000	$4,615	$65,385
...	...	...	

The warrant strike price is $50 for 300 shares. With 1,000 shares in total, the option is "payment of $15,000 in exchange for $300/1,300 = 23\%$ of the firm." At a pre-warrant firm value of $60,000, this means $23\% \cdot \$75,000 \approx \$17,308$ minus $15,000 payment. At a pre-warrant firm value of $70,000, this means $23\% \cdot \$85,000 \approx \$19,615$ minus $15,000 payment. (Old Equity owners now own 77% of a $85,000 firm, which is $65,385.)



A number of companies have sold such put options on their own stock. For example, in 1995, Microsoft generated cash by selling puts that speculated that the share price of Microsoft would drop. By writing these put options on its own shares, Microsoft was able to generate an estimated $2 billion dollars in put premia over a period of five years. Moreover, because Microsoft's share price did not end up dropping, it did not have to pay anything to put purchasers. However, put options can also backfire. In 2000, Microsoft had to pay large premiums to purchase and eliminate put options after its stock price fell below the strike price. The most extreme put loss may have been that of Maytag. Maytag had written around seven million puts on its shares by the third quarter of the year 2000, while its shares traded in the thirty dollar range in 2000. The puts allowed their owners to sell shares at an average price of $51, expiring in 2002. Maytag's losses from its put speculation were then estimated to be above $100 million.

Some specific corporate examples [via Ted Azarmi].

In general, put options remain rare methods for companies to raise funds. (There are also some tax disadvantages to writing puts on one's own stock.)

The Time Dimension

Again, the payoff diagram may fail to capture the fact that time can play an interesting role when the option or warrant contract does not just allow conversion at a particular point in time, but up until a particular point in time. For example, the value of the call or warrant can then depend also on the underlying dividend yield that the stock is paying (and changes therein!)—and indeed the question of when to convert into stock can become quite complex. And, again, although not entirely accurate, the paradigm of thinking of calls and warrants in terms of contingent claims usually remains a very useful one.

Solve Now!

Q 20.8 *We want to compare a plain bond plus a warrant to a convertible bond.*

(a) Firm A has a plain bond that promises to pay $200,000. It has 100,000 equity shares outstanding. The bond buyers also receive a warrant to purchase 25,000 equity shares at a price of $8/share. In other words, the bond and warrant form a unit.

(b) Firm B has a convertible bond that promises to pay $200,000 but that can be converted into one-fifth of the firm's equity.

Write down the payoff tables (and draw the payoff diagrams). Reflect on how they differ.

Q 20.9 *Write down the equity payoff diagram if the firm has the following capital structure:*

- *1,000 senior bonds with promised payoffs of $100 million, convertible into 50 million new equity shares.*
- *500 junior bonds with promised payoffs of $50 million, convertible (at the bond holder's discretion) into 15 million new shares.*
- *100 million equity shares for the rest of the firm.*

It is easiest to work with aggregate figures, i.e., consider the firm value in increments of $50 million. Hint: At what equity value and at what firm value (the two are not the same) would the senior convert?

20·4. SUMMARY

Large firms usually have multiple claims outstanding.

In the real world, firms are financed by a whole set of different financial claims. The same firm may have senior debt, junior debt (perhaps with a conversion feature), equity, and a warrant. The right way to think about all these claims still often involves the "magic" payoff table (and payoff diagram): if the firm ends up worth very little, only the senior debt is paid. If the firm is worth a little more, both the senior and the junior debt are paid. If the firm is worth even more, the equity will become worth something; and finally, the warrant and/or the conversion feature will be valuable.

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The two most basic building blocks of capital structure are debt and equity. These differ in their cash flow rights and in their control rights:
  - Debt has first rights to the distribution of cash flows. It is "senior." It can force the firm into bankruptcy if payments are not made.
  - Equity gets only what is left over after debt has been satisfied. It is "junior." It is in control of the firm, unless the firm finds itself in financial distress.
- Payoff tables and payoff diagrams are often a good way to describe debt and equity, because they are primarily state-contingent claims, where the firm value is the state. The paradigm is not always perfect, because the value of claims can also depend on factors other than firm value.
- Call options and warrants are more junior even than equity. These claims allow their owners to obtain shares at a given price in the future.
- Preferred equity cannot force bankruptcy, but receives its dividends before common equity does. The main advantage of preferred equity is that corporate holders pay lower taxes on preferred equity dividend receipts.
- Convertible bonds allow their owners to convert their bonds into shares. They can therefore be considered as part-debt, part-equity.
- Corporate borrowing comes in thousands of different varieties. It can be plain, convertible, callable, or convertible and callable. It can be fixed-rate or floating-rate. It can be short-term or long-term. It can have detailed covenants of many kinds. And so on.
- The lines between different financial instruments are blurry. Issuers regularly introduce new hybrid securities that carry features that were traditionally associated only with either debt or equity. Nothing is written in stone. Debt vs. equity (or bank debt vs. public debt) are nowadays better understood as concepts rather than as clear categories.

Solutions and Exercises

1. A control right is the right to influence decisions, specifically by changing management and/or the board.
2. The fact that all that the owner can lose is his investment. He cannot forfeit his house or other possessions because the corporation does bad stuff.
3.

Medical Costs	Insurance Payout
$0	$0
$250	$0
$500	$0
$750	$225
$1,000	$450
$2,000	$1,350
…	…
$11,500	$9,900
$11,600	$9,990
$11,611	$10,000
$11,700	$10,000
$12,000	$10,000
$13,000	$10,000
…	…

The "slope" is zero until $500 is reached, then 90% until $11,611.11 is reached, then zero again.

4. See text.
5.

Firm	Senior	Junior	Equity
$0	$0	$0	$0
$50	$50	$0	$0
$100	$100	$0	$0
$150	$100	$50	$0
$200	$100	$100	$0
$250	$100	$150	$0
$300	$100	$200	$0
$350	$100	$200	$50
$400	$100	$200	$100
$450	$100	$200	$150
…	…	…	…

6. If the firm is worth less than $2 million, the bondholders own the entire firm and shareholders receive nothing. If the bonds convert, they will be equivalent to 1/4 of all shares. Therefore, at $8 million, bondholders are indifferent between converting and not converting. The payoff diagram for the debt is therefore a diagonal line until $2 million, then a horizontal line until $8 million, and a line with a slope of 0.25 beyond $8 million. For equity, the line is horizontal until $2 million, then a diagonal until $8 million, and a line with a slope of 75% beyond $8 million.
7. Preferred equity is like a bond in that it does not participate in the upside, and in that common shareholders do not get their dividends until preferred shareholders have received their dividends. Preferred equity is like a stock in that its payments are not tax deductible, and in that preferred shareholders have no ability to force the firm into bankruptcy if their dividends are not paid.
8. All numbers are quoted in thousands.

file=corpclaims.tex: LP

	Firm A				Firm B	
Firm Value	Plain Bond	Equity	Warrant	Plain Bond + Warrant	Convertible Bond	Equity
$0	$0	$0	$0	$0		
$100	$100	$0	$0	$100	$100	$0
$200	$200	$0	$0	$200	$200	$0
$300	$200	$100	$0	$200	$200	$100
$400	$200	$200	$0	$200	$200	$200
$500	$200	$300	$0	$200	$200	$300
$600	$200	$400	$0	$200	$200	$400
$700	$200	$500	$0	$200	$200	$500
$800	$200	$600	$0	$200	$200	$600
$900	$200	$700	$0	$200	$200	$700
$1,000	$200	$800	$0[a]	$200	$200[c]	$800
$1,100	$200	$880	$20[b]	$220	$220[d]	$880
$1,200	$200	$960	$40	$240	$240	$960
$1,300	$200	$1,040	$60	$260	$260	$1,040
$1,400	$200	$1,120	$80	$280	$280	$1,120
$1,500	$200	$1,200	$100	$300	$300	$1,200

Explanations: [a]At $1,000 firm value, Firm A's equity shares are worth $800, which translates into $8/share. At $8 share, warrant holders are indifferent between exercising and not exercising. [b]At $1,100 firm value, Firm A's equity shares are worth $900, which translates into $9/share. At $9/share, warrant holders exercise. They pay in $8 and receive 25,000/(100,000+25,000)=20% of the firm's equity value. [c]Convertible bond holders are indifferent between converting their bond into equity if the firm value is $1,000. After all, they would receive 20% of the firm's total value, which would come to $200. [d]Convertible bond holders prefer to convert their bond into equity, because 20% of $1,100 is more than $200.
In sum, a plain bond plus warrant can be just like a convertible bond.

9. The question seems difficult, but it does become easy once you realize the following:

   - If the junior does not convert, then the senior's 50 million in new equity shares would represent 50/150 or one-third of the equity (not the company!). Thus, the senior would convert if the value of the equity reaches $300 million. This occurs when the firm value reaches $350 million, because the junior creditors still would have their "$50 million first" claim.
   - If the senior has converted, then the junior's 15 million in new equity shares would represent 15/165 of the firm. This is about 9.1% of the firm value. Therefore, at a firm value of $550 million (solve $x \cdot 15/165 = \$50$), the junior would be indifferent between exercising and not exercising.

   These two insights make it easy to write down the payoff table (note my odd stepping when convenient for explanation), all in million dollars:

Firm Value	Senior Bond	Junior Bond	Equity	Remarks
$0	$0	$0	$0	
$50	$50	$0	$0	
$100	$100	$0	$0	
$150	$100	$50	$0	
$200	$100	$50	$50	
$250	$100	$50	$100	
$300	$100	$50	$150	
$350	**$100**	**$50**	**$200**	(at V = $350, senior is indifferent to converting)
$353	$101	$50	$202	(at $353, senior has converted — there are now 150 million shares worth $303 in Equity)
$400	$117	$50	$233	
$450	$133	$50	$267	
$500	$150	$50	$300	
$550	**$167**	**$50**	**$333**	(at V = $550, junior is indifferent to converting)
$561	$170	$51	$340	(at $561, junior has converted — there are now 165 million shares in Equity)
$600	$182	$55	$364	
V	30.30%	9.09%	60.61%	

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 21

Capital Structure and Capital Budgeting in a Perfect Market

Should A Company Issue Stocks or Bonds?

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (15:02h)

last major edit: Feb 2005

This chapter explains how to look at the basics of financing: in a "perfect" world (no transaction costs, no taxes, etc.) the value of the firm is determined by the value of the projects (the NPV), not by whether the firm is financed with equity or leverage. This chapter also explains the basics of the weighted average cost of capital formula (WACC). Subsequent chapters will explain financing in the real world, not in our perfect world.

file=capideal.tex: LP

21·1. Conceptual Basics

21·1.A. The Firm, The Charter, and The Capital Structure

The firm's charter defines the firm structure. The agreement of who receives what part of future corporate income is the Capital Structure

The best way to think about an optimal firm structure is as follows: the current owners of a firm want to sell it today for the highest possible price. Their goal is to design a **corporate charter** that maximizes the total market value of their firm today—that is, the price that new investors are willing to pay to acquire the firm from them. The corporate charter must not only specify the **voting rules** (the procedures to replace incumbent managers or amend the charter in the future), but also how future earnings are to be split among possibly different owners and stakeholders (such as customers, workers, and suppliers). This agreement on how to split up future earnings is the firm's financial structure or **capital structure**: it is the rules that specify who receives the proceeds of (usually uncertain) future cash flows. The capital structure is rarely fully explicit or set in stone. Instead, it also encompasses the rules on how the firm may be governed in the future, which in turn may influence the capital structure in the future, which in turn may influence the financing arrangement today.

21·1.B. Maximization of Equity Value or Firm Value?

Should management maximize shareholder value?

Managers are at least in principle appointed by the shareholders. An important question is whether managers should be directed to see themselves as representative of the shareholders or as representatives of the firm. The common view is that it is the task of management to maximize **shareholder wealth**. But equity is only one part of the firm's capital structure. There are also liabilities that have claims on the firm's assets. There are pension obligations, accounts payable, and financial debt—and many financial instruments with both debt and equity features. (For illustration, we will use financial debt as a standin for all liabilities.) Does it even make a difference as to whom management is representing?

When is there a potential problem?

The legal situation in the United States is that management has a legal fiduciary duty to shareholders—except if decisions made by the firm can threaten its insolvency. In this case, management's legal fiduciary responsibility extends to creditors, too. In general, managers see themselves more as representatives of shareholders than as representatives of creditors. When both bondholders and shareholders benefit from a manager's actions, there is no problem. But what if there are situations in which optimizing shareholder value (i.e., the value of the equity) is not the same as optimizing the overall firm's value? For example, assume it were possible for managers to increase the value of equity by \$1, but at a cost to the value of financial debt by \$3. (You will later learn how easy it is to do exactly this.) This "expropriative" transaction would destroy \$2 in the net value of the firm. But even in our perfect world, this is the type of situation that creates a dilemma for management: should management maximize firm value or shareholder value? Recall that it is shareholders who vote managers into office and allow them to stay there. Whether this transaction destroys firm value or not, when the time comes, managers will find it in their interest to execute this transaction because doing so raises equity value and with it management's chances of being reappointed.

Bond buyers understand future conflicts of interest. If managers ignored bondholder concerns, bondholders demand a higher interest rate upfront.

However, there is a fly in the ointment. Put yourself into the shoes of the old firm owners today, who are trying to set up the corporate charter that maximizes the value of their firm, i.e., for sale to new investors at the highest price. You want to find the best capital structure *today*, i.e., before you have found new investors. Clearly, anyone contemplating purchasing your bonds will take into consideration what managers may do to them in the future, and they will rationally demand compensation. If you cannot commit the firm today *not* to undertake the \$3-for-\$1 transaction in the future, prospective bond buyers will realize today (before the

ANECDOTE: German Stakeholders
In Germany, stakeholders have an explicit role in corporations. In the case of joint stock companies, limited liability companies and cooperatives with more than 500 employees, one third of the members of the **Supervisory Board** must be employees. In the case of companies in the iron, coal and steel industry, provision is made for equal representation on the supervisory board by shareholders and representatives of the work force. A director representing the employees with responsibility for social affairs is also appointed (qualified co-determination).

file=capideal.tex: RP

fact, or **ex-ante**) that you (management) will have the incentive to execute it later (after the fact, or **ex-post**), no matter what you tell them today.

If the firm were believed to undertake this transaction in the future, what would it be worth today? It would be worth less than a firm that will not destroy \$2 of value in the future. Therefore, management today has a choice: it can either find a way to commit today not to exploit bondholders in the future; or it can sell the firm today for a lower net present value, which takes into account value destruction tomorrow—because everyone realizes that managers will be trapped tomorrow into destroying \$2 of firm value. To avoid this, managers should want to do everything in their power to constrain themselves from expropriating bondholders in the future. Constraining themselves will maximize the value of the firm in the future, which in turn maximizes the value of the firm today.

Therefore, managers need to pay attention to the needs of bondholders—even though they are voted into power only by equity holders and are always tempted to focus only on improving equity value.

IMPORTANT:

- *In deciding on an appropriate price to pay, the buyers of financial securities take into account what the firm is likely to do in the future.*
- *The theoretical notion of the **optimal capital structure** is the structure that maximizes the value of the firm, not the value of the equity.*

In this theoretical world, management should maximize firm owner value, not shareholder value. Practically, the two objectives differ only rarely (and usually only when firms are close to financial distress), so the popular mantra of "shareholder value maximization" is fortunately usually synonymous with "total value maximization." But strictly speaking, the best capital structure does not have as its goal maximizing shareholder value but firm value. In any case, in the real world, managers are far more conflicted with respect to their own welfare (the agency conflicts we first discussed in Section 7·6) than they are with respect to favoring shareholders at the expense of bondholders.

Conflicts of interest arise between shareholders and bondholders, but they are dwarfed by the conflict between managers and owners.

The advantage of a firm that is committed to maximizing firm value in the future is that it can obtain a better price for its financial securities (a lower interest rate for its bonds) today. Therefore, the firm has the incentive to commit itself today (ex-ante) to treating bondholders well in the future (ex-post). The ex-ante capital structure that results in the highest firm value today is the optimal capital structure.

Committing to maximizing firm value gives a better interest rate and higher value today.

This is the most important insight with respect to capital structure, and worth repeating: the cost of *ex-post* actions against bondholders is not only borne by bondholders tomorrow, but it is also borne by the owners today. Another consequence is that *caveat emptor* ("buyer beware") applies: bond and stock purchasers can only be hurt to the extent that future opportunistic actions by management are unforeseen surprises. Thus, it is in management's (owners') own interest today to commit not to exploit future owners and bondholders tomorrow—especially if everyone knows that when the time comes, management would like to change its mind.

The basics of capital structure theory is to realize that future events have impact on corporate value today. The goal is to use capital structure to maximize firm value today.

The web chapter on corporate governance will return to this idea.

What would happen if the current management team cannot commit to avoid such bad future \$3-for-\$1 exchanges? In this case, in our perfect world, another management team that has the ability to commit to restrain itself would value the firm more highly than the current management team. It could purchase the firm and make an immediate profit. Therefore, competition among management teams can push firms towards the best capital structure. Again, the general thread emphasized throughout this chapter is that firms that can commit to do "the right thing" tomorrow (*ex-post*) are worth more today (*ex-ante*). It is a direct consequence that firms that maximize firm value are worth more than firms that maximize just shareholder value.

Competition among management teams pressures firms to improve Capital Structures.

file=capideal.tex: LP

Solve Now!

Q 21.1 *Explain the difference between ex-ante and ex-post, especially in the capital structure context. Give an example where the two differ.*

Q 21.2 *Can an ex-post maximizing choice be ex-ante bad?*

21·2. Modigliani and Miller (M&M), The Informal Way

The famous **Modigliani-Miller** (**M&M**) propositions (honored with two Nobel Prizes) are a good start to understanding firms' capital structure decisions. Although the M&M theory involves some complex algebraic calculations, it is actually based on some surprisingly simple ideas—which the following anecdote explains not only in a funnier but also better way than any complex calculations. It is an excerpt from an acceptance speech by Merton Miller for an honorary doctorate at Louvain, Belgium, in 1986. (His coauthor, Franco Modigliani, had just won the first Nobel Prize; Merton Miller would receive his own Nobel Prize a few years later.)

Anecdote: M&M: Milk, Cream, and Pizza

How difficult it is to summarize briefly the contribution of these papers was brought home to me very clearly last October after Franco Modigliani was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics in part—but, of course, only in part—for the work in finance. The television camera crews from our local stations in Chicago immediately descended upon me. "We understand," they said, "that you worked with Modigliani some years back in developing these M&M theorems and we wonder if you could explain them briefly to our television viewers." "How briefly?", I asked. "Oh, take 10 seconds," was the reply.

Ten seconds to explain the work of a lifetime! Ten seconds to describe two carefully reasoned articles each running to more than 30 printed pages and each with 60 or so long footnotes! When they saw the look of dismay on my face, they said: "You don't have to go into details. Just give us the main points in simple, common sense terms."

The main point of the first or cost-of-capital article was, in principle at least, simple enough to make. It said that in an economist's ideal world of complete and perfect capital markets, and with full and symmetric information among all market participants, the total market value of all the securities issued by a firm would be governed by the earning power and risk of its underlying real assets and would be independent of how the mix of securities issued to finance it was divided between debt and equity capital. Some corporate treasurers might well think that they could enhance total value by increasing the proportion of debt instruments because yields on debt instruments, given their lower risk, are, by and large, substantially below those on equity capital. But, under the ideal conditions assumed, the added risk to the shareholders from issuing more debt will raise required yields on the equity by just enough to offset the seeming gain from use of low cost debt.

Such a summary would not only have been too long, but it relied on shorthand terms and concepts, like perfect capital markets, that are rich in connotations to economists, but hardly so to the general public. I thought, instead, of an analogy that we ourselves had invoked in the original paper. "Think of the firm," I said, "as a gigantic tub of whole milk. The farmer can sell the whole milk as is. Or he can separate out the cream and sell it at a considerably higher price than the whole milk would bring. (Selling cream is the analog of a firm selling low yield and hence high-priced debt securities.) But, of course, what the farmer would have left would be skim milk, with low butter-fat content and that would sell for much less than whole milk. Skim milk corresponds to the levered equity. The M&M proposition says that if there were no costs of separation (and, of course, no government dairy support programs), the cream plus the skim milk would bring the same price as the whole milk."

(continues.)

file=capideal.tex: RP

ANECDOTE: (continued.)

The television people conferred among themselves for a while. They informed me that it was still too long, too complicated and too academic. "Have you anything simpler?", they asked. I thought of another way that the M&M proposition is presented which emphasizes the notion of market completeness and stresses the role of securities as devices for "partitioning" a firm's payoffs in each possible state of the world among the group of its capital suppliers. "Think of the firm," I said, "as a gigantic pizza, divided into quarters. If now, you cut each quarter in half into eights, the M&M proposition says that you will have more pieces, but not more pizza."

Again there was a whispered conference among the camera crew and the director came back and said: "Professor, we understand from the press release that there were two M&M propositions. Maybe we should try the other one."

He was referring, of course, to the dividend invariance proposition and I know from long experience that attempts at brief statements of that one always cause problems. The term "dividend" has acquired too great a halo of pleasant connotations for people to accept the notion that the more dividends the better might not always be true. Dividends, however, as we pointed out in our article, do not fall like manna from heaven. The funds to pay them have to come from somewhere—either from cutting back on real investment or from further sales (or reduced purchases) of financial instruments. The M&M dividend proposition offered no advice as to which source or how much to tap. It claimed, rather, that once the firm had made its real operating and investment decisions, its dividend policy would have no effect on shareholder value. Any seeming gain in wealth from raising the dividend and giving the shareholders more cash would be offset by the subtraction of that part of their interest in the firm sold off to provide the necessary funds. To convey that notion within my allotted 10 seconds I said: "The M&M dividend proposition amounts to saying that if you take money from your left-hand pocket and put it in your right-hand pocket, you are no better off."

Once again whispered conversation. This time, they shut the lights off. They folded up their equipment. They thanked me for my cooperation. They said they would get back to me. But I knew that I had somehow lost my chance to start a new career as a packager of economic wisdom for TV viewers in convenient 10-second sound bites. Some have the talent for it; and some just don't.

These simple, common sense analogies certainly do less than full justice to the M&M propositions; crude caricatures or cartoons they may be but they do have some resemblance. So much, in fact, that looking back now after more than 25 years it is hard to understand why they were so strongly resisted at first. One writer—David Durand, the same critic who had so strongly attacked the Markowitz model—even checked out the prices for whole milk, skim milk and cream in his neighborhood supermarket. He found, of course, that the M&M propositions didn't hold exactly; but, of course, empirical relations never do.

file=capideal.tex: LP

21·3. Modigliani and Miller (M&M), The Formal Way In Perfect Markets

Consider a perfect market world.

To begin with, Modigliani and Miller argued that under perfect conditions, the total value of all financial securities is the same, regardless of whether the firm is financed by equity or debt or anything in between. They proved their argument by showing that there would be arbitrage opportunities if the value of the firm depended on how it is financed. Because there should be no arbitrage in real life, it follows that firms should be able to choose any mix of securities without impact on the firms' values. This perfect world that M&M describe relies on the familiar perfect world assumptions (e.g., in Section 6·1).

- There are no transaction costs. In this context, it also means that there are no such frictions as deadweight losses in bankruptcy. (This includes the assumption that there are no costs to financial distress before bankruptcy occurs, either.)
- Capital markets are perfectly competitive, with a large number of investors competing for many securities.
- There are no taxes.
- There are no differences in opinion and information.

We already know that these assumptions imply that borrowing and lending interest rates are equal. Of course, these assumptions do not hold in reality. However, once you understand how the M&M argument works, it becomes easier to understand what happens when these assumptions are violated, and to understand how important such violations can be. Indeed, the next several chapters will show what happens if the world is not perfect.

The proof is simpler if we assume a fixed investment policy for the moment.

Let's see now how the Modigliani and Miller proof works. For simplicity, take it as given that the firm has already decided on what projects to take. M&M believed that this was a necessary assumption, but it turns out not to matter in their perfect market. (We will discuss this at the end of this section.)

The Modigliani-Miller proposition states that capital structure does not matter in this ideal world.

The firm wishes to consider how to finance its projects. Because we all agree on all current and future projects' expected cash flows and proper discount rates, we agree on the present value of these projects today. Call the value of the projects under a hypothetical best capital structure "PV." (This is [almost by definition] the present value that the firm's projects can fetch in our perfect capital market, of course.) The M&M claim is that the present value of the firms' projects must equal the present value of the firms' issued claims today. In other words, if the firm has no liabilities and issues 100% equity, the equity must sell for the PV of the projects. If the firm instead were financed by 50% debt (or by other liabilities) and 50% equity, the two together must sell for the same PV. If the firm issues x% debt and (1-x%) equity, the two together must sell for PV. According to theory, the value of the firm should be determined by the net present value of its projects, regardless of capital structure. So, why does the capital structure not matter?

Arbitrage!

The Full Repurchase (Takeover) Argument Assume that the managers could find—and actually did choose—a capital structure that makes the firm worth $1 less than PV. For example, assume that the firm is worth PV=$100 under the optimal capital structure of 80% equity and 20% debt; and assume further that the firm is worth only $99 under the capital structure of 50% equity and 50% debt that the firm has actually chosen. Then, all you need to do to get rich is to purchase all old equity and all old debt, i.e., the entire firm, for $99. Now issue claims duplicating the optimal capital structure (assumed to be 80% equity/20% debt). These claims will sell for $100, and you pocket an instant arbitrage profit of $1.

Unfortunately, you would not be the only one to notice this opportunity. After all, information is universally shared. So, the old managers would simply ask for bids from other investors. The only price at which no one will overbid you for the right to purchase the firm's current securities is \$100. But notice that this means that the value of the old securities is equal to the price that the firm is worth under the optimal capital structure. So, regardless of the financial structure that managers choose, they can sell their claims for \$100, i.e., the present value of their projects.

Competition: Others would want to arbitrage, too—until the M&M proposition works (firm value is as if it was financed optimally).

The Partial Repurchase (Homemade Leverage) Argument This argument even works if you do not buy 100% of the firm, but only 1% of the firm. That is, if you buy 1% of all the firm's securities, you will receive 1% of the projects' payoffs. You can then sell your securities repackaged to imitate the payoffs under the presumably better capital structure for 1% of the firm's higher value, and receive an arbitrage profit of 1%·\$1.

You will see the gory details in two paragraphs, but there is an important caveat to this argument: it allows you only to obtain the cash flows of securities under any arbitrary and presumably better capital structure, but not the control rights! If the better capital structure has more value because it allows you to fire management and change what the firm is doing, you have to rely on the full repurchase argument.

The Full Repurchase method is more general.

Actually, the M&M argument should not come as a surprise to you. In Section 5·3.B (Page 96), without calling it the M&M argument, we had already made use of it in the context of financing a house. We found that neither the house value nor the cost of capital were influenced by your debt vs. equity choice: the house was worth what it was worth. This was M&M precisely. It is the same argument. So, let us put our general but verbal-only proof into the framework of a more concrete scenario analysis for our \$100 firm. To accomplish this as simply as possible, we assume the world is risk-neutral and all securities have to offer an expected rate of return of 10%. (We will work an example in a risk-averse world in Section 21·5.A.)

You had already seen this argument!

Linking M&M under uncertainty to state-contingent payoffs (under risk-neutral pricing).

The Full Scenario Analysis Table 21.1 shows the value of a firm if the projects will be worth either \$60 or \$160. The expected future value is \$110, the present value is \$100. Under hypothetical capital structure LD ("little debt"), the firm issues debt with face value \$55. Consequently, bondholders face no uncertainty, and will pay \$55/(1+10%) = \$50. Equity holders will receive either \$5 or \$105, and are thus prepared to pay \$55/(1 + 10%) = \$50. Simply adding the value of the firm's claims adds up to the same \$100. Under hypothetical capital structure MD ("much debt"), the firm issues debt with face value \$94. Consequently, bondholders will now receive either \$60 or \$94, and are willing to pay \$70 today. Equity holders will receive \$0 or \$66, and are willing to pay \$30 for this privilege. Again, the value of all claims adds to \$100.

Arbitraging does not require purchase and sale of the entire firm; it also works with a fraction of the firm.

The Partial Scenario Analysis The more surprising fact is that investors can relever securities themselves—they do not need the firm to do it for them. In our example, assume that the firm has chosen capital structure LD, but you really, really like capital structure MD, because you would really, really like to own a security that pays \$0.60 in the bad state and \$0.94 in the good state. This would cost you 1% of the bond's \$70 price, or \$0.70. How can you purchase the existing LD securities to give you the MD security that you prefer *without* any cooperation by the LD firm?

What happens if you purchase d bonds and e stocks in our LD firm? You will receive payoffs of $d \cdot \$55 + e \cdot \$5$ in the bad scenario, and $d \cdot \$55 + e \cdot \$105$ in the good scenario. You want to end up with \$0.60 in the bad scenario, and \$0.94 in the good scenario—two equations, two unknowns:

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} \text{Bad Luck} & d \cdot \$55 + e \cdot \$5 & = & \$0.60 \\ \text{Good Luck} & d \cdot \$55 + e \cdot \$105 & = & \$0.94 \end{array} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \begin{array}{rcl} d & \approx & 0.0034 \\ e & \approx & 0.0106 \end{array} \tag{21.1}$$

file=capideal.tex: LP

Table 21.1. Illustration of the M&M Proposition with Risk-Neutral Investors

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		$1/2$	$1/2$		
Project	FM	\$60	\$160	\$110	\$100
Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$55					
Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	\$55	\$55	\$55	\$50
Equity	EQ	\$5	\$105	\$55	\$50
Capital Structure MD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$94					
Bond(FV=\$94)	DT	\$60	\$94	\$77	\$70
Equity	EQ	\$0	\$66	\$33	\$30

The cost of capital in this example is 10% for all securities, which is equivalent to assuming risk-neutrality. Later in this chapter, we will work an example in which the cost of capital is higher for riskier projects.

So, if you purchase 0.0034 bonds and 0.0106 of the equity, you will end up with \$0.60 in the bad state, \$0.94 in the good state—exactly the same that an MD firm would have given you!. How much would you have to pay to get these payoffs? The cost today would be $d \cdot \$50 + e \cdot \$50 = 0.0034 \cdot \$50 + 0.0106 \cdot \$50 = \$0.70$, exactly the same that your desired payoffs would have cost you if the firm itself had chosen an MD capital structure.

In effect, you have manufactured the capital structure payoffs that you like without the cooperation of the firm itself. By repeating this exercise, you can replicate the payoffs of any claims in *any* kind of capital structure.

From here, it is an easy step to the M&M argument. If the value of the firm were higher under the MD capital structure than it is under the LD capital structure, you could manufacture for yourself at lower cost from the current capital structure the securities that would end up with a higher market value, sell them, and earn an arbitrage profit.

IMPORTANT: *In Modigliani and Miller's perfect world:*

- *Arbitrage restrictions force the value of the firm to be the same, regardless of the firm's mix of debt (liabilities) and equity.*
- *Because financing and investing are two entirely separate issues, managers can ignore financing issues when they make investment decisions.*

If the world is not perfect, neither need be the case.

Know what to care about and what not to care about!

This is good news and bad news. It is good news that you now know where to focus your efforts. You should try to increase the value of the underlying projects—by increasing their expected cash flows, or by reducing their cost of capital, or both. It is bad news that you now know that to the extent that the world is perfect, you cannot add value by fiddling around with how you finance your projects.

file=capideal.tex: RP

The above proof of the Modigliani-Miller proposition followed the M&M 1957 paper in assuming that the firm's real investment decisions had already been decided upon. It turns out that this is not necessary as long as investment decisions are reversible, because the perfect markets assumption also implies that management's project policy should not matter. If the firm were not to undertake all positive NPV projects and reject all negative NPV projects, you could buy all the shares, fire the old management, institute the best underlying firm investment project policy, resell all the shares, and earn the difference in firm value as an immediate arbitrage. Alas, you would again not be the only one: everyone could do this. Therefore, in this perfect world, firms always do the right thing. They maximize the firm's NPV, and they are worth exactly what they should be worth under the optimal operating policy.

In a perfect world, firms always undertake the best projects.

Solve Now!

Q 21.3 *Under what assumptions does capital structure not matter?*

Q 21.4 *Explain the M&M argument to your 10-year old brother.*

Q 21.5 *What does risk-neutrality "buy" us in the M&M argument?*

Q 21.6 *In the example from Table 21.1, how would you purchase the equivalent of 5% of the equity of a hypothetical MD firm, if all that was traded were the securities of the LD firm?*

21·4. DIVIDENDS

The second Modigliani-Miller proposition is even simpler than the first: it states that corporate dividend policy should not matter in a perfect market setting, either. From the corporate perspective, if managers pay $1 in dividends, this money has to come from somewhere. As Merton Miller noted, dividends do not fall like manna from heaven, so no value is created or destroyed when firms pay dividends. Money that was previously owned by investors but held inside the corporate shell is just being moved to the same investors, so that it is now outside the corporate shell. The owners do not have any more or any less wealth because of the dividend payment. From the M&M arbitrage perspective, if managers undertook a dividend policy that destroyed value, then any investor could step in to purchase the firm, fire the management, institute the better dividend policy, and resell the firm for the difference. With many investors vying to do this if even just a penny can be earned, the only firm value and dividend policy that do not allow anyone to arbitrage (get rich without effort) is the value of the firm under an optimal dividend policy.

In a perfect world, dividends do not create value.

Like the M&M capital structure proposition, the point of the M&M dividend proposition is not to argue that dividends do not matter. It is to point out what perfect market violations must be the case for dividend policy to matter, and how much these violations can matter. For example, if it costs a roundtrip premium of $10 million to purchase and then resell a firm, then it cannot be that the wrong dividend policy destroys more than $10 million. If it did, you could make money even in our imperfect world.

The M&M logic helps us think in our imperfect world.

As of 2005, the average dividend yield of large firms is around 1% of firm value per year. This is probably so low that the real-world market frictions are larger than what you could earn by correcting this policy if it were incorrect. That is, if the optimal payout were 0% or 2% instead of 1%, the maximum 1% value increase is too little to overcome the transaction costs that would allow someone to step in and correct it. Interestingly, there is some good evidence that the M&M assumptions are indeed violated: when firms announce dividend increases, their values usually go up, and when they announce dividend decreases, their values usually go down. Can you speculate which M&M assumption is most likely violated? Most finance professors believe that paying dividends sends a credible signal from management about future firm prospects and good managerial behavior (managers will not waste the money on themselves). This violates the M&M assumption that everyone has the same information: in the real world, managers have inside information that investors do *not* have.

The situation today, and a preview.

file=capideal.tex: LP

21·5. The Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) in a Perfect M&M World

Let us do contingent claims under risk-aversion, i.e., usually higher expected rates of return to equity than to debt.

You now understand why the value of the firm does not depend on the financing in a perfect market. This is equivalent to stating that the overall cost of capital to the firm does not depend on the debt/equity ratio of the firm. To show this, we want to repeat the house example from Section 5·3.B. It is important that you realize that our argument also works in the context of a risk-averse world, just as long as the world is still perfect. Therefore, we shall work our earlier examples again but allow riskier securities to have higher expected rates of returns. Our example will draw on your knowledge of net present value, the capital asset pricing model, and capital structure concepts. The reason why this is important is that it introduces the concept of the "weighted average cost of capital" (or WACC) in the corporate context. (In the next chapter, we will generalize WACC to a world in which corporations pay income tax.)

21·5.A. The Numerical Example In a Risk-Averse World Where Riskier Equity Must Offer Higher A Expected Rate of Return

All tools learned in Section 5·3.B still apply under risk aversion.

Our example will again be our house with the mortgage from Section 5·3.A (Page 93), so make sure you remember the concepts from Chapter 5. Briefly, in that Chapter, the *expected* rate of return was the same for projects of all risk classes. In contrast, in this chapter, we take into account the fact that investors are risk-averse, so that riskier securities have to offer higher expected rates of return. The basic tools will be exactly the same as those in Section 5·3.A: payoff tables, promised rates of return, and expected rates of return.

Our goal: show that the weighted cost of capital from debt and equity must be the cost of capital of the firm, and be independent of how the firm is financed.

The **weighted average cost of capital** (or WACC) is the value-weighted average cost of capital of the firm's debt and equity. Not surprisingly, the expected rate of return on the firm is determined by the risk of the assets, the expected rate of return on the bonds is determined by the risk of the bonds, and the expected rate of return on the equity is determined by the risk of the shares. We want to show that if the perfect markets arbitrage condition holds—that is, bonds and stocks together cost the same as the firm—then you can compute the cost of capital for the firm as the weighted cost of capital of stocks and bonds. *Put differently, if you know any two costs of capital, you can compute the third one.* For example, if you know the cost of capital for the firm and the cost of capital for the bonds, then you can determine the cost of capital for the equity. Or, if you know the cost of capital for the debt and equity, you know the cost of capital for the firm—the WACC. And regardless of the firm's debt ratio, the WACC in our perfect world is always constant and determined by the risk of the underlying assets.

This example applies to more than just houses.

From Chapter 27, we know that debt and equity are contingent claims on the underlying project. Although we continue calling this project a house (as we did in Section 5·3.A), you can consider the corporation to be the same as an unlevered house, the mortgage the same as corporate liabilities, the levered house equity ownership the same as corporate equity, and the possibilities of sunshine and tornadoes the same as future scenarios that the firm might face. There is no conceptual difference.

Recap the example parameters.

The probability of sunshine is 80%, and the probability of a tornado is 20%. If the sun shines, the project is worth $100,000; if the tornado strikes, the project is worth only $20,000. The appropriate cost of capital (at which investors are willing to borrow or save) is 10% for the overall project. We will retain this cost of capital for the project. We had also computed earlier that the house must then be worth $76,363.64.

Here we introduce different costs of capital: Risk aversion causes expected interest rates on debt to be lower than the expected rates of return on the project.

The novelty is that we now assume that Treasury bonds pay a lower *expected* rate of return, which is equivalent to assuming that investors are risk-averse. The debt on the house is not exactly risk-free, though. We assume that a particular risky bond that promises to pay $28,125 does require a 6% *expected* rate of return. (This 6% expected rate of return must be higher than the true risk-free rate of return [e.g., 5%], and lower than the 10% required expected rate of return for projects that are of the riskiness of "unlevered house" ownership.) Table 21.2 summarizes our model inputs. Our goal is to determine now what the appropriate cost of capital for the levered equity is.

Table 21.2. All Provided Inputs For Valuing The House

	Financing Scheme 1	Financing Scheme 2	
	100% Equity	Bond promises $28,125	Levered Equity after $28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)= 80% $100,000.00 prob(Tornado)= 20% $20,000.00			
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff			
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)	10%	6%	
Price P_0 Today			

Step 1: Determine how much the house owners receive if they own the entire house (Scheme AE for "all equity") vs. if they promise $28,125 to bond holders and retain only the levered equity (Scheme DE for "debt and equity"). Naturally, in each state, the bond and the levered equity together must own the entire house, so:

Compute the state-contingent payoffs.

	Financing Scheme AE	Financing Scheme DE	
	100% Equity	Bond promises $28,125	Levered Equity after $28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)= 80% $100,000.00	$100,000.00	$28,125.00	$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)= 20% $20,000.00	$20,000.00	$20,000.00	$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff			
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)	10%	6%	
Price P_0 Today			

Step 2: Compute the expected value of each security, using the probabilities of sunshine vs. tornado. Note that the expected payoffs of the bond and the levered stock together must add up to the expected payoff on the house (i.e., as if the house were 100% equity financed).

Compute the expected payoffs.

	Financing Scheme AE	Financing Scheme DE	
	100% Equity	Bond promises $28,125	Levered Equity after $28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)= 80% $100,000.00	$100,000.00	$28,125.00	$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)= 20% $20,000.00	$20,000.00	$20,000.00	$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff	$84,000.00	$26,500.00	$57,500.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)	10%	6%	
Price P_0 Today			

Step 3: Discount the expected cash flows by the appropriate cost of capital demanded by the capital providers:

Discount the expected payoffs on the overall project and on the debt.

	Financing Scheme AE	Financing Scheme DE	
	100% Equity	Bond promises $28,125	Levered Equity after $28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)=80% $100,000.00	$100,000.00	$28,125.00	$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)=20% $20,000.00	$20,000.00	$20,000.00	$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff	$84,000.00	$26,500.00	$57,500.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)	10%	6%	
Price P_0 Today	$76,363.64	$25,000.00	

file=capideal.tex: LP

Determine the value of the levered equity.

Step 4: Invoke our "perfect market" assumptions. Everyone can buy or sell without transaction costs, taxes, or any other impediments. By "absence of arbitrage," the value of the house if financed by a bond plus levered equity must be the same as the value of the house if it is 100% equity financed. Put differently, if you own all of the bond and all of the levered equity ownership, you own the same thing as the house—and vice-versa. Now use the arbitrage condition that the value of the levered equity plus the value of the bond should equal the total house value.

		Financing Scheme AE	Financing Scheme DE	
		100% Equity	Bond promises \$28,125	Levered Equity after \$28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)=80%	\$100,000.00	\$100,000.00	\$28,125.00	\$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)=20%	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff		\$84,000.00	\$26,500.00	\$57,500.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)		10%	6%	
Price P_0 Today		\$76,363.64	\$25,000.00	\$51,363.64

Compute the appropriate expected rate of return on the levered equity.

Step 5: Levered equity ownership, which sells for \$51,363.64 and expects to pay off \$57,500.00, offers an expected rate of return of $\$57,500.00/\$51,363.64 - 1 = +11.95\%$.

		Scheme AE	Scheme DE	
		100% Equity	Bond promises \$28,125	Levered Equity after \$28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)=80%	\$100,000.00	\$100,000.00	\$28,125.00	\$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)=20%	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff		\$84,000.00	\$26,500.00	\$57,500.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)		10%	6%	11.95%
Price P_0 Today		\$76,363.64	\$25,000.00	\$51,363.64

Small Detour: Compute the riskiness of a dollar investment in each financial instrument.

Now summarize the rates of return in the two possible states on each financial claim:

	Contingent		Expected
	Tornado	Sunshine	Appropriate
Unlevered Ownership	$\frac{\$20,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$100,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$84,000}{\$76,364} - 1 =$
	-73.81%	$+30.95\%$	$+10.00\%$
Loan Ownership	$\frac{\$20,000}{\$25,000} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$28,125}{\$25,000} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$26,500}{\$25,000} - 1 =$
	-20.00%	$+12.50\%$	$+6.00\%$
Levered (post-Loan) Ownership	$\frac{\$0}{\$51,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$71,875}{\$51,364} - 1 =$	$\frac{\$57,500}{\$51,364} - 1 =$
	-100.00%	$+39.93\%$	$+11.95\%$

We started knowing only the cost of capital on our bond (6%) and on our firm (10%), and we were able to determine the cost of capital on our levered equity (11.95%).

Debt is less risky than unlevered ownership which is less risky than levered ownership.

As was also the case in the example with risk-neutral investors (Figure 5.2, Page 100), the rates of return to levered equity are more risky than those to unlevered ownership, which in turn are more risky than those to the corporate loan. But, whereas these risk differences did not affect the expected rates of return in our risk-neutral world, they do in our risk-averse world. The **cost of capital** (the expected rate of return at which you, the owner, can obtain financing) is now higher for levered equity ownership than it is for unlevered ownership, which in turn is higher than it is for loan ownership. We had worked out *exactly* how high this expected rate of return

on levered equity ownership must be by resorting to the "absence of arbitrage" argument in the perfect M&M world: Given the expected rate of return on the house and on the bond, we could determine the expected rate of return on levered equity ownership. (Alternatively, if we had known the appropriate expected rate of return on levered equity ownership and the rate of return on the bond, we could have worked out the appropriate expected rate of return on unlevered ownership.)

How the CAPM fits in!

In the real world, house owners would naturally like to pay the lowest rate of return possible on loans. Similarly, anyone selling a firm would like to receive the highest price (lowest cost of capital) possible. What the issuer of the loan can get away with in the end will depend on the demand and supply of capital. Here it was 6% for the debt and 11.95% for the levered equity. However, this does not tell us *why* demand and supply met at 6% for the debt and 11.95% for the levered equity in our example (although one implies the other). So, what model can tell us the appropriate expected rate of return for a risky security? But, *of course*: the CAPM from Chapter 17! To show that everything fits together, we will put the CAPM into the WACC formula in Sections 21·7 and 21·**A**, below.

21·5.B. The WACC Formula (Without Taxes)

A Line-by-line derivation of the WACC formula.

We can now translate the numerical example into a formula for the "weighted average cost of capital," or WACC. No matter which state will come about, the debt (all liabilities) and equity (all stock) together own the firm, which we shall call FM:

$$\begin{array}{lccccc} \text{Sunshine:} & \$28,125 & + & \$71,875 & = & \$100,000 \\ \text{Tornado:} & \$20,000 & + & \$0 & = & \$20,000 \\ \text{Either:} & \mathsf{DT}_{t=1} & + & \mathsf{EQ}_{t=1} & = & \mathsf{FM}_{t=1} \quad . \end{array} \tag{21.2}$$

Therefore, the expected value of debt and equity together must be equal to the expected value of the firm:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \$57,500 & + & \$26,500 & = & \$84,000 \\ \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{EQ}_{t=1}) & + & \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{DT}_{t=1}) & = & \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{FM}_{t=1}) \quad . \end{array} \tag{21.3}$$

You can rewrite this in terms of today's values and expected rates of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$) from time $t = 0$ to $t = 1$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \$57,500 & + & \$26,500 & = & \$84,000 \\ = \$51,363.64 \cdot (1 + 11.95\%) & + & \$25,000 \cdot (1 + 6\%) & = & \$76,363.64 \cdot (1 + 10\%) \\ \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{EQ}_{t=1}) & + & \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{DT}_{t=1}) & = & \mathcal{E}(\mathsf{FM}_{t=1}) \\ = \mathsf{EQ}_{t=0} \cdot [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ},t=0,1})] & + & \mathsf{DT}_{t=0} \cdot [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT},t=0,1})] & = & \mathsf{FM}_{t=0} \cdot [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM},t=0,1})] \quad . \end{array} \tag{21.4}$$

Omit the time subscripts on the expected rates of return to reduce clutter. (There is no risk of confusion because we only consider two time periods anyway.) Divide all three terms by $\mathsf{FM}_{t=0}$ to express this formula in terms of percentages of firm value:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \left(\frac{\$51,363.64}{\$76,363.64}\right) \cdot (1 + 11.95\%) & + & \left(\frac{\$25,000.00}{\$76,363.64}\right) \cdot (1 + 6\%) & = & 1 + 10\% \\ \left(\frac{\mathsf{EQ}_{t=0}}{\mathsf{FM}_{t=0}}\right) \cdot [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})] & + & \left(\frac{\mathsf{DT}_{t=0}}{\mathsf{FM}_{t=0}}\right) \cdot [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})] & = & [1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})] \quad . \end{array} \tag{21.5}$$

$\mathsf{EQ}_{t=0}/\mathsf{FM}_{t=0}$ is the weight of equity in the firm's value, so we can call it $w_{\mathsf{EQ},t=0}$. Similarly, $\mathsf{DT}_{t=0}/\mathsf{FM}_{t=0}$ is $w_{\mathsf{DT},t=0}$. It is common to just omit the time-subscript if the time is now, so we can write our formula as

$$\begin{aligned} 67.26\% \cdot (1+11.95\%) \;+\; 32.74\% \cdot (1+6\%) \;&=\; 1+10\% \\ w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \cdot [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})] \;+\; w_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})] \;&=\; [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})] \;. \end{aligned} \tag{21.6}$$

Multiply the weight percentages into the brackets,

$$\begin{aligned} 67.26\% \;+\; 67.26\% \cdot 11.95\% \;+\; 32.74\% \;+\; 32.74\% \cdot 6\% \;&=\; 1+10\% \\ w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \;+\; w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) \;+\; w_{\mathsf{DT}} \;+\; w_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \;&=\; 1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}}) \;. \end{aligned} \tag{21.7}$$

Because debt and equity own the firm, $w_{\mathsf{DT}} + w_{\mathsf{EQ}} = 1$, and the "+1" terms on both sides cancel. We have arrived at the **weighted average cost of capital** (WACC) Formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{WACC} \;&=\; 67.26\% \cdot 11.95\% \;+\; 32.74\% \cdot 6\% \;=\; 10\% \\ \mathsf{WACC} \;&=\; w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) \;+\; w_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \;=\; \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}}) \;. \end{aligned} \tag{21.8}$$

Almost always, the term WACC is used to describe the expected weighted average rates of return, not the actual weighted average rates of return; no one calls it the expected WACC. Chapter 22 will explain how WACC must be modified in the presence of corporate income taxes.

The promised debt interest rate is not used in the WACC formula; the expected rate is.

One important reminder: the cost of debt in the WACC formula is *not* the interest rate that the bank is charging. The bank's quoted interest rate is the promised rate of return to debt, and therefore higher than the expected interest rate that is in the WACC formula (higher by the default premium). In addition, non-financial liabilities may carry higher or lower expected rates of return. So, how do you find the expected rate of return on debt? Pretty much the same way as you find the expected rate of return on equity or anything else: use the CAPM (if you believe it). Conveniently, the CAPM provides the expected rates of return, which is the sum of the time-premium and the systematic risk premium, and appropriately ignores the debt's idiosyncratic risk and default premium. So you can try to estimate the beta from the debt's historical monthly rates of return, and then substitute it into the CAPM formula. Fortunately, debt betas are often fairly small, especially for short-term and low-risk debt, in which case you will end up with an $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$ reasonably close to the risk-free rate.

21·5.C. A Graphical Illustration

Consider different capital structures now.

You can gain some more intuition by extending our numerical example into a graph. Recall:

		Scheme AE	Scheme DE	
		100% Equity	Bond promises \$28,125	Levered Equity after \$28,125 obligation
prob(Sunshine)=80%	\$100,000.00	\$100,000.00	\$28,125.00	\$71,875.00
prob(Tornado)=20%	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$20,000.00	\$0.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Future Payoff		\$84,000.00	\$26,500.00	\$57,500.00
$\mathcal{E}$ Rate of Return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$)		10%	6%	11.95%
Price P_0 Today		\$76,363.64	\$25,000.00	\$51,363.64
Capital Structure Weight (Security Price/Firm Value)			32.74%	67.26%
Promised Rate of Return (Bond Promise/Bond Price - 1)			12.5%	

How would the promised rate of return, the expected rate of return, and the debt-equity ratio change if the firm changed the amount it borrowed? For illustration's sake, allow me to set the risk-free rate at 5.55%, and to linearly increase the cost of debt capital, so that debt is the entire firm, its cost of capital is 10%. (In our perfect world, this is also the firm's WACC, no matter how it finances itself.) This allows me to set the cost of capital for debt that promises to pay

$28,125 at the 6% that we used in our example. Figure 21.1 shows that we can identify three regions:

A Risk-Free Debt Domain Until the bond promises to payoff $20,000, the debt is risk-free. The debt therefore has a constant cost of capital of exactly 5.55%. But the expected rate of return to equity is not constant. Equity enjoys the 10% cost of capital equal to that of the firm, only if there is exactly zero debt. As soon as the firm takes on any debt, the expected rate of return to the equity has to increase. For example, if the firm takes on $15,000 in debt, the equity requires an expected rate of return of 11.0% to participate. (An exercise below asks you to compute the equity's required rate of return if the firm takes on $10,000 in debt.)

The Risky Debt Domain in Which Debt and Equity Coown the Firm At a debt value today of $18,948.37 today, the debt becomes risky. Once the debt becomes risky, the debt's promised rate of return must exceed its expected rate of return. (If you look carefully, you might also note that the debt ratio changes its slope. This is because a little bit of extra promised payoff does not translate into the same amount of cash raised—even debt investors require both default and risk compensation.) Our example has already worked out some of these numbers. If the debt promises to pay off $28,125, we know that the debt ratio is 32.74%, the debt promised rate of return is 12.5%, the expected rate of return is only 6%, and the expected rate of return on equity is 11.95%. (This again illustrates the mistake of comparing an equity expected rate of return [e.g., from the CAPM] to the interest *quoted* by the bank. The debt has a lower cost of capital, not a higher cost of capital!)

The Debt Owns the Firm If the firm promises $100,000 or more to creditors, equity owners never receive anything. Thus, they are unwilling to provide any capital, which is why the green line ends at $100,000. The bond now assumes the firm's cost of capital of 10%, and any promise to pay more than $100,000 is entirely irrelevant. (This is why the promised bond rate of return increases diagonally.)

In the real world, it would be rare to rely on exactly this figure. Instead, everyone is accustomed to place the firm's debt ratio on the x-axis. The lower graph in Figure 21.1 does this. The vertical rise in the promised rate of return once the debt owns 100% of the firm is because the firm can only offer to pay an expected rate of return 10%, regardless of what rate of return it promises to its creditors.

Switch from the binomial to a more realistic firm example.

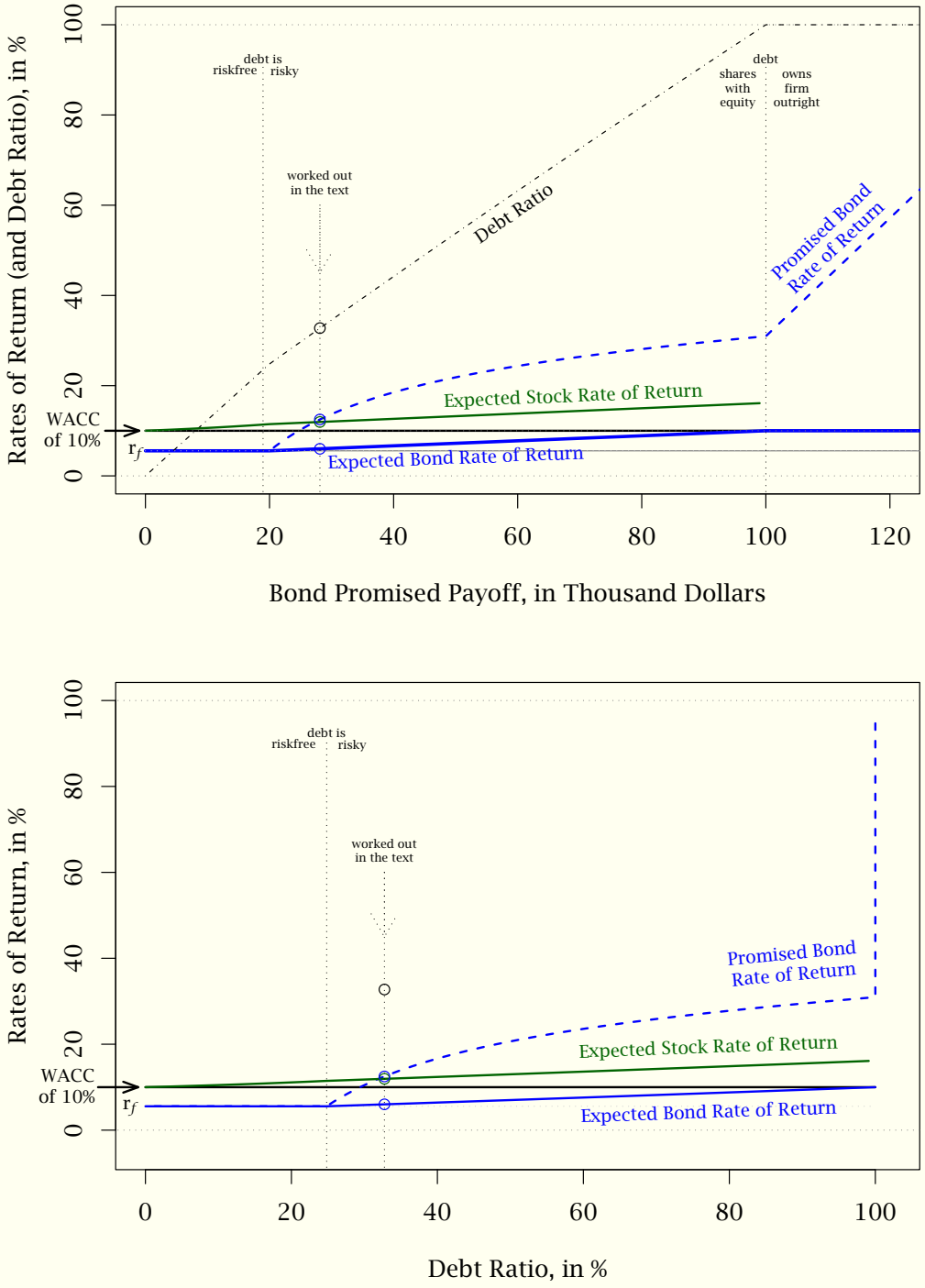
Few firms have binomial payoffs. A more common situation is one in which the firm has normally distributed payoffs—anything between $0 and infinity. Figure 21.2 illustrates such a firm. I chose it to have expected payoffs of $84,000, with a standard deviation of $32,000, which matches the mean and standard deviation of the binomial example. The calculations proceed very similarly to those in the binomial case, except there are now many more cases than just payoffs of $20,000 and $100,000 to work out. (Better trust me on this one!) Again, the risk-free rate is 5.55%, the firm's overall cost of capital is 10%, and the debt's required interest rate rises smoothly with the weight of debt in the firm's capital structure. (However, it is not linear anymore, but relates to the covariance of the debt payoff with respect to the firm payoff.) What remains the same and what changes?

The WACC remains constant. The expected rates of return on debt and equity both increase as the firm takes on debt—and steeply if the debt ratio is high.

The higher the payoffs that the bond promises, the higher is the debt ratio, the higher are the expected rates of return on both the bond and the stock, and the higher is the promised rate of return on the bond. Most importantly, the firm's WACC remains at the firm's cost of capital of 10%! There are some differences, but they are minor. There is now no region in which the bond is risk-free, and equity owns part of the firm even if the bond promises to pay more than $100,000. You might also notice how steeply the expected rate of return on the stock (and the bond's promised [but not expected] rate of return) rises when the debt's weight in the capital structure increases. At a debt ratio of 90%, the equity must offer an expected rate of return of close to 25%. Moreover, even though the expected rate of return on the bond remains below the firm's WACC of 10%, the firm must promise its creditors an interest rate as high as 30% as compensation. Of course, this is not the firm's cost of debt! It is the expected rate of return to creditors paid by the firm that is the firm's cost of debt capital.

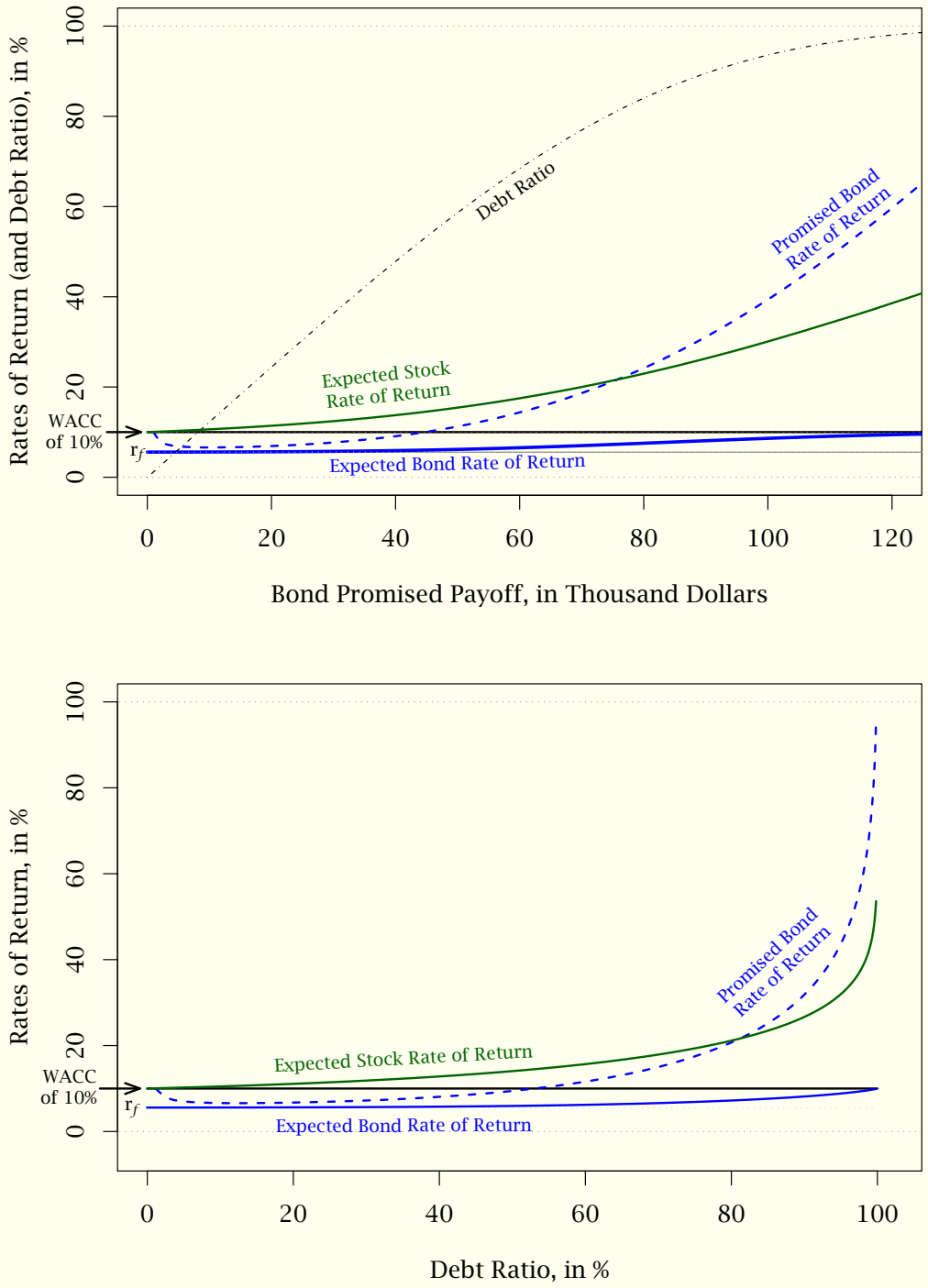
file=capideal.tex: LP

Figure 21.1. Expected and Promised Rates of Return in the House Example



This figure illustrates the binomial house valuation example in a perfect world. The firm's WACC is always 10%. The risk-free rate is 5.55%. (It increases linearly with the fraction of debt in the firm's capital structure.) Below $18,957, the debt is risk-free and pays 5.55%. The equity already requires a higher expected rate of return, however, starting at 10%. The text worked out the case in which the firm has promised to pay $28,125, and requires an expected rate of return of 6%. Therefore, it has to promise a rate of return of 12.5%, and owns 32.74% of the firm. (Equity would have to receive a rate of return of 11.95%.) The lower graph changes the x-axis to the debt ratio, which is also plotted in the upper graph.

Figure 21.2. Expected and Promised Rates of Return in a Normally Distributed Example



This figure illustrates a firm that has normally distributed payoffs. This firm has expected payoffs of $84,000, with a standard deviation of $32,000. (This matches the mean and standard deviation of the binomial example.) The risk-free rate is 5.55%, the firm's cost of capital (WACC) is 10%.

file=capideal.tex: LP

21·5.D. A Major Blunder: If all securities are more risky, is the firm more risky?

More debt does not increase the firm's cost of capital, because it increases both debt and equity cost of capital.

Many practitioners commit a serious logical mistake. They argue as follows:

1. If the firm takes on more debt, the debt becomes riskier and the cost of capital for the debt (r_{DT}) rises.
2. If the firm takes on more debt, the equity becomes riskier and the cost of capital for the equity (r_{EQ}) rises.
3. Because the firm consists of only debt and equity, the firm also becomes riskier when the firm takes on more debt.

The fact that both debt and equity become riskier as the firm takes on more leverage does not mean that the firm becomes riskier.

The first two statements are correct. With higher leverage, the cost of capital on debt increases, because the debt becomes riskier: in default, the debt is less likely to receive what it was promised. The equity also becomes riskier: the cost of capital on equity rises, because in financial default, which is now also more likely to occur, more cash goes to the creditors before equity holders receive anything. It is only the final conclusion—"therefore, the firm becomes riskier"—that is wrong. The reason is that when the firm takes on more debt, the weight on the debt (w_{DT}) increases and the weight on the equity ($w_{EQ} = 1 - w_{DT}$) decreases. Because the cost of capital for debt (r_{DT}) is lower than the cost of capital for equity (r_{EQ}), the weighted sum remains the same. Here is an example, in which I have made up appropriate costs of capital to illustrate the point:

$$\begin{array}{lrcrcr} \text{Low Debt} & 30\% \cdot 5.0\% & + & 70\% \cdot 12.2\% & = & 10\% \\ \text{High Debt} & 60\% \cdot 6.0\% & + & 40\% \cdot 16.0\% & = & 10\% \\ & w_{DT} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{DT}) & + & w_{EQ} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{EQ}) & = & \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{FM}) \ . \end{array} \tag{21.9}$$

This example shows that statements 1 and 2 are correct and statement 3 is incorrect: the costs of capital for both debt and equity are higher when the firm has more leverage, but the overall cost of capital for the firm has not changed. In the perfect M&M world, the overall cost of capital is independent of the mix between debt and equity.

21·5.E. The Effect of Leverage Price-Earnings Ratios (Again)

How earnings are split between debt and equity

We have actually already discussed the effect of leverage on price-earnings ratios in Section 10·3.E, but you had to trust me blindly that debt offered a lower expected rate of return than equity. Let us repeat it quickly with our two capital structures.

$$\begin{array}{lrcrcr} \text{Low Debt} & 30\% \cdot 5.0\% & + & 70\% \cdot 12.2\% & = & 10\% \\ \text{High Debt} & 60\% \cdot 6.0\% & + & 40\% \cdot 16.0\% & = & 10\% \\ & w_{DT} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{DT}) & + & w_{EQ} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{EQ}) & = & \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{FM}) \ . \end{array} \tag{21.10}$$

Say your firm requires a capital investment of \$10 million today, and expects to generate \$11 million in return next year. It exists for only one year, so you have no accruals and the \$1 million extra cash flows is also net income. In the low-debt capital structure, your firm would raise \$3 million from creditors and expect to pay them interest of \$150,000—although its promised interest payments would likely be a little higher to compensate creditors for default. Shareholders would finance \$7 million and expect a return of \$7.84 million. In the high-debt capital structure, creditors would provide \$6 million and expect \$360,000 in interest payments, shareholders would provide \$4 million and expect a net return of \$640,000.

	Equity Share	P/E
Low Debt	70%	8.33
High Debt	40%	6.25

SIDE NOTE: Some other textbooks may talk about the effect of leverage on earnings per share (EPS). However, this is meaningless. The same capital structure can exist under different numbers of shares. Equity can provides its \$7 million with 1 million shares valued at \$7/share (and expected EPS of \$0.70/share) or with 100,000 shares valued at \$70/share (and expected EPS of \$7/share). Any EPS figure is possible.

Solve Now!

Q 21.7 *In Figure 21.1, compute the equity's expected rate of return if the firm borrows \$9,474.18.*

Q 21.8 *In a perfect market, if the cost of equity for a company is 15% and the cost of debt is 10%, and if the company is financed by 80% debt and by 20% equity, what would be the company's cost of equity if it reduced its debt from 80% to 50%, so that it could qualify as a AAA rated firm with a debt interest rate of 8%?*

Q 21.9 *Compared to Firm B, Firm A has both a higher cost of capital for its debt and a higher cost of capital for its equity. Does this necessarily imply that Firm A has a higher cost of capital for the overall firm than Firm B?*

21·6. THE BIG PICTURE: HOW TO THINK OF DEBT AND EQUITY

IMPORTANT: *Think of debt (all liabilities) and equity (all stocks), contingent claims, and contingent claims valuation, in a perfect M&M world, as follows:*

The Value of Claims

- *An "absence of arbitrage" relationship ensures that the total value of a project equals the sum-total of the values of all its financing instruments.*
- *Debt and equity claims "partition" the firm's payoffs in future states of the world. These payoffs are contractually specified.*

The Risk of Claims

- *Levered equity (i.e., the residual claim after the liabilities are satisfied) is riskier than full ownership, which in turn is riskier than the liabilities.*

The Cost of Capital

- *In a world of uncertainty, riskier investments have to offer higher expected rates of return. This implies that levered equity has to offer a higher expected rate of return than outright ownership, which in turn has to offer a higher expected rate of return than the liabilities.*
- *The absence of arbitrage implies that the capitalization-weighted average expected rate of return is*

$$\text{WACC} = w_{Equity} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Equity}) + w_{Liabilities} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Liabilities}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{Firm}) \quad , \qquad (21.11)$$

  where the weights w_{Equity} and $w_{Liabilities}$ are the values of equity and liabilities when quoted as a fraction of the overall firm value today.

- *The project's* WACC *remains the same, no matter how the firm is financed. It is determined by the underlying payoffs of the project.*

file=capideal.tex: LP

Some more factoids.

If the firm's debt ratio is very high, it is also not uncommon to see very high expected rates of return on the equity—multiple times that of the firm's WACC. You should also realize that the *quoted* rate of return on debt can be higher than the *expected* rate of return on equity. It is only the expected rate of return on debt that should not exceed the expected rate of return on equity. (The exceedingly rare exception are companies that have very negative betas.)

21·7. Using the CAPM and WACC Cost of Capital in the NPV Formula

NPV, WACC, and CAPM are often all used together.

We have yet to combine NPV, WACC, and the CAPM. This actually turns out to be easy: we use the CAPM to provide appropriate expected rates of return on debt and equity, compute the weighted average to obtain a WACC, and then use this WACC as the denominator in the NPV formula. For example, consider a project that can be financed with low-risk debt with a market-beta of 0.1, worth \$400 today; and high-risk equity with a market-beta of 2.5, worth \$250 today. The risk-free rate of return is 4%; the equity premium is 3%. What is the cost of capital of this project?

The standard method is to first compute the appropriate expected rates of return for the debt and the equity,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{debt},\mathcal{M}}) &= 4\% + 3\% \cdot 0.1 = 4.3\% , \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{equity},\mathcal{M}}) &= 4\% + 3\% \cdot 2.5 = 11.5\% , \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{i,\mathcal{M}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} . \end{aligned} \tag{21.12}$$

Second, compute the WACC:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= \left(\frac{\$400}{\$400+\$250}\right) \cdot 4.3\% + \left(\frac{\$250}{\$400+\$250}\right) \cdot 11.5\% \\ &= 61.5\% \cdot 4.3\% + 38.5\% \cdot 11.5\% \\ &= 7.1\% . \end{aligned} \tag{21.13}$$

An alternative method relies on the weighted average project beta,

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{\text{firm},\mathcal{M}} &= \left(\frac{\$400}{\$400+\$250}\right) \cdot 0.1 + \left(\frac{\$250}{\$400+\$250}\right) \cdot 2.5 = 1.025 . \\ \beta_{\text{firm},\mathcal{M}} &= w_{\text{debt}} \cdot \beta_{\text{debt},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\text{equity}} \cdot \beta_{\text{equity},\mathcal{M}} . \end{aligned} \tag{21.14}$$

This means that the project's cost of capital is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{firm},\mathcal{M}}) &= 4\% + 3\% \cdot 1.025 = 7.1\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{i,\mathcal{M}}) &= r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} , \end{aligned} \tag{21.15}$$

which is the same as the cost of capital estimate in Formula 21.13. We can now use this cost of capital estimate to discount the project's expected cash flows to obtain a present value estimate. For example, if the project earns \$800 with probability 48% and \$600 with probability 52%, then

$$\text{PV} = \frac{48\%\cdot\$800 + 52\%\cdot\$600}{1+7.1\%} \approx \$650. \tag{21.16}$$

Solve Now!

Q 21.10 *Assume the risk-free rate of return is 3% and the equity premium is 4%. A firm worth $100 (all numbers in millions of dollars) has a market beta of 3. A new project costing $10 appears, which is expected to pay off $11 next year. The beta of this new project is 0.5. However, the firm evaluates all projects by its overall cost of capital. Would this firm take the project? How do the beta and the value of the firm change if it takes the project vs. if it does not take it?*

21·8. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Entrepreneurs have an incentive to set up a capital structure that maximizes firm value, not equity value, even if—or because—managers later would want to behave opportunistically.
- In the perfect market scenario of M&M, the value of all securities is equal to the value of the firm's underlying projects, and thus unrelated both to the financing split between debt and equity and to the firm's dividend policy.
- Arbitrage in this perfect world forces the firm's cost of capital to be invariant to the split between debt (liabilities) and equity. It is equal to the weighted average cost of capital (WACC) of debt (liabilities) and equity.
- Higher leverage does not imply that the overall cost of capital increases, even though both debt (liabilities) and equity become riskier.
- The CAPM is compatible with this perfect-world point of view.

---

file=capideal.tex: LP

A. Advanced Appendix: Compatibility of Beta, the WACC, and the CAPM Formulas in a Perfect World.

Reconciling Beta, WACC, and the CAPM.

For the nerd, we now show that the "leverage adjustment for beta" Formula 17.16 (Page 437), the WACC Formula 21.11 (Page 543), and the CAPM Formula 17.2 (Page 423) are mutually compatible, at least in the perfect markets scenario.

Recap WACC.

In this chapter, we developed the basic WACC formula (the cost of capital for the overall firm FM—not to be confused with $\mathcal{F}$, the subscript for the risk-free security):

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}}) \;=\; w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) + w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) \quad .$$

where FM is the firm, DT is the total debt, and EQ is the total equity of the firm.

Recap CAPM.

Substitute the CAPM Formula 17.2 into the three expected rates of return in the WACC Formula:

$$\begin{aligned} r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{FM},\mathcal{M}} \;&=\; w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot\{r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{DT},\mathcal{M}}\} \\ &+\; w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot\{r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{EQ},\mathcal{M}}\} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

And show the compatibility.

Now pull out the risk-free rates of return,

$$\begin{aligned} & r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{FM},\mathcal{M}} \\ = \; & w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} + w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot\{[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{DT},\mathcal{M}}\} + w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot\{[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{EQ},\mathcal{M}}\} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Recognize that $(w_{\mathsf{EQ}} + w_{\mathsf{DT}}) = 1$, so $(w_{\mathsf{EQ}} + w_{\mathsf{DT}})\cdot r_{\mathcal{F}} = r_{\mathcal{F}}$, so

$$[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{FM},\mathcal{M}} = w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{DT},\mathcal{M}} \;+\; w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{EQ},\mathcal{M}} \quad .$$

Divide by $\left[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}\right]$ to obtain

$$\beta_{\mathsf{FM},\mathcal{M}} \;=\; w_{\mathsf{DT}}\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{DT},\mathcal{M}} + w_{\mathsf{EQ}}\cdot\beta_{\mathsf{EQ},\mathcal{M}} \quad ,$$

which is exactly our relationship in Formula 17.16, which relates betas to one another! Indeed, all three formulas share the same intuition: firms and securities with higher betas are riskier and thus have to offer higher expected rates of return.

Solve Now!

Q 21.11 *A firm consists of 60% equity with a market-beta of 2, and 40% debt with a market-beta of 0.25. The equity premium is 5%, the risk-free rate is 3%. Compute the firm's cost of capital from the overall-firm beta. Then compute the equity's cost of equity capital and debt's cost of debt capital, and compute the firm's cost of capital from these costs of capital.*

Solutions and Exercises

1. Ex-ante means "before the fact"; Ex-post means "after the fact." To the extent that owners can set up a situation (charter) that encourages best (i.e., from a perspective of the firm) ex-post behavior, the ex-ante value (for which the firm can be sold right now) is maximized. However, if the situation (charter) is such that owners will later try to expropriate others or such that managers make bad decisions in the future, the ex-ante value today is less.
2. Yes. See the example of the \$3 for \$1 transaction in the text.

3. A perfect market: no transaction costs, perfect competition, no taxes and bankruptcy costs, and no differences in information.
4. The idea is to explain it really simply. Milk, cream, and pizza are handy metaphors.
5. Nothing really. We do not need it. We only use it because it makes the Tables simpler to compute.
6. $$\begin{array}{lrcl} \text{Bad Luck} & d\cdot\$55 + e\cdot\$5 & = & \$0\cdot 5\% \\ \text{Good Luck} & d\cdot\$55 + e\cdot\$105 & = & \$66\cdot 5\% \end{array} \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \begin{array}{rcl} d & \approx & -0.003 \\ e & \approx & +0.033 \end{array} \tag{21.17}$$
   So you would purchase 3.3% of the LD equity and sell (issue) 0.3% of the equivalent of the LD debt. The equity would cost you $e\cdot\$50 = \$1.65$, the debt issue would give you \$0.15 in proceeds. Your net cost would thus be \$1.50—as it should be, because purchasing 5% of the MD equity would have cost you 5% of \$30, which also comes to \$1.50.

7. The firm must repay \$10,000 at the 5.55% risk-free cost of capital. Therefore, equity expects to receive \$74,000. This requires an investment of \$66,889.46, which is the firm value \$76,363.64 minus the \$9,474.18 that the creditors provide. Therefore, the equity's expected rate of return is 10.63%.
8. First, compute the WACC without taxes: $0.8\cdot 10\% + 0.2\cdot 15\% = 11\%$. We now want to compute the cost of debt that satisfies $0.5\cdot 8\% + 0.5\cdot x = 11\%$, so $x = 14\%$.
9. No. The example in the "Important Error" Section illustrates this fallacy.

10. The solution proceeds the same way as in the text on Page 441. The project should have an appropriate rate of return of
    $$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = 3\% + 4\%\cdot 0.5 = 5\% \ . \tag{21.18}$$
    With a 10% expected rate of return, the project would not be taken if the firm used a beta of 3 (implying a cost of capital of 15%, which is higher than the expected rate of return of 10%). Nevertheless, the project has a net present value of
    $$\text{NPV} = -\$10 + \frac{\$10\cdot(1+10\%)}{1+5\%} = \$0.48 \ , \tag{21.19}$$
    which is lost if the project is not taken. (Please confirm that this is also the outcome if the combined firm value is computed.) The value is destroyed because the firm managers are making the mistake of not taking the positive NPV project, which is because they do not understand that projects should be evaluated by the projects' own costs of capital, not the firm's cost of capital.

11. Using the first method, the overall beta is $60\%\cdot 2 + 40\%\cdot 0.25 = 1.3$. Using the CAPM, the cost of capital is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{i,\mathcal{M}} = 3\% + 5\%\cdot 1.3 = 9.5\%$. Using the second method, the equity's cost of capital is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\text{EQ},\mathcal{M}} = 3\% + 5\%\cdot 2 = 13\%$, the debt's cost of capital is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) = r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\text{DT},\mathcal{M}} = 3\% + 5\%\cdot 0.25 = 4.25$. Therefore, the firm's cost of capital can also be computed as $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) = 60\%\cdot 13\% + 40\%\cdot 4.25\% = 9.5\%$.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=capideal.tex: LP

CHAPTER 22

CORPORATE TAXES AND A TAX ADVANTAGE OF DEBT

The Tax-Adjusted Weighted Average Cost of Capital (APV, WACC)

last file change: Feb 19, 2006 (13:46h)

last major edit: Mar 2005

The presence of taxes may be the most glaring violation of the M&M assumptions in the real world. If the firm has to pay corporate income taxes, managers can use capital structure policy to create value. To do so, they rely either on the APV formula or on the tax-adjusted WACC formula. This chapter explains it all.

Note that the relevant tax that this chapter is concerned with is only the *corporate* income tax, not the *personal* income tax. (You can assume our shareholders—or yourself—to be a tax-exempt pension fund, if this helps you.) The next chapter will consider both corporate and personal income taxes.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·1. Capital Budgeting If Equity and Debt Were Equally Taxed

Table 22.1. Hypothetical Firm

Investment Cost in Year 0	\$200
Before-Tax Return in Year 1	\$280
Before-Tax Net Return From Year 0 to Year 1	\$80
Corporate Income Tax Rate (τ)	30%
Appropriate Cost of Capital From 0 to 1	12%

A Basic Corporate Example

In this chapter, we will follow a simple hypothetical firm that is described in Table 22.1. As in Section 6·5.B, we follow the standard practice to denote the tax rate with the Greek letter τ (tau). We start with a brief discussion of an entirely unrealistic case, in which the firm faces the same tax rate, regardless of how it is financed (i.e., unlike as in the real world, interest payments are not tax-deductible). This helps to illustrate that investors care about after-tax returns, not before-tax returns.

Taxes mean that the after-tax rate of return is lower than the before-tax rate of return.

Consider financing our firm entirely with equity. With \$280 in before-tax earnings on the \$200 investment, our firm has a "before corporate income tax" internal rate of return of (\$280 − \$200)/\$200 = 40%. But, with taxes to the tune of 30% on its net return of \$80, Uncle Sam collects \$24. The firm's "post corporate income tax" net rate of return is therefore only (\$256 − \$200)/\$200 = 28%.

Investors demand a certain rate of return, regardless of how the firm gets there.

Now assume that financial markets are such that investors are willing to provide capital for projects with this riskiness at a rate of $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}}) = 12\%$. (In this chapter, we will again omit time subscripts if there is little risk of confusion.) Naturally, investor-owners do not care what happens inside the firm, only what the firm will pay them in the end. It is all the same to them if the firm earns 12% before-tax and manages to avoid all corporate income taxes; or if the firm earns 24% and pays half of it in corporate income taxes; or if the firm earns 600%, of which 98% is confiscated by the government ($1 + 600\% \cdot (1 - 98\%) = 1 + 12\%$). From the perspective of our small firm, we are "price-takers" when it comes to raising capital—we have to accept the rate of return asked for by our investors, which is determined by the competition among capital providers and capital consumers. The investors care only about the cash that will ultimately return to them—and this (after-corporate income tax) rate of return has to be 12%. Now, if our example firm faces a 30% corporate tax rate, it must earn 17.14% in before-tax rate of return in order to be able to offer investors 12% in actual rate of return. Check this: an investment of \$100 that turns into \$117.14 has to pay Uncle Sam 30% in taxes on income of \$17.14 for a total income tax of \$5.14, which leaves the firm \$112 to return to its investors after the corporate income tax is paid. Returning to our "\$280 before-corporate-income-tax" firm, with its 12% required after-corporate-income tax cost of capital, the firm's actual PV is

$$\mathsf{PV} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathrm{CF}_{\text{after-tax}})}{1 + \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{after-tax}})} = \frac{\$256}{1 + 12\%} = \$228.57 \ . \tag{22.1}$$

Again, note that the present value is calculated with both the after-tax expected cash flows and the after-tax cost of the capital.

22·2. Differential Debt and Equity Taxation in The U.S. Tax Code

Tax codes worldwide violate the M&M no-tax assumption.

We now move on to a more realistic tax code. In many countries—the United States included—individuals and corporations face similar tax treatments, tax schedules, and tax rates. Although tax code details vary from year to year, country to country, state to state, county to county, and even city to city, most tax codes are pretty similar in spirit. Thus, the tax concepts in this book apply relatively universally.

Tax codes subsidize borrowing: firms can pay interest from before-tax income, but pay dividends from after-tax income.

Recall from Chapter 6·4 that when corporations earn money, the form of payout matters. Firms pay taxes on their earnings *net of interest payments*. That is, unlike dividend distributions or money used to repurchase shares or money reinvested, the IRS considers interest payments to be a cost of production. Therefore, it allows the payment of interest to be treated as a before-tax expense rather than as an after-tax distribution of earnings. The result is that a corporation saves on taxes when it distributes its earnings in the form of interest payments. For example, if PepsiCo's operations really produced $100, and if $100 in interest was owed, then PepsiCo could pay the full $100 to its creditors and Uncle Sam would get nothing. However, if not paid out in interest, Uncle Sam would first collect corporate income taxes, say, 30%. PepsiCo could only keep (or distribute) the $70 that would be left over. The point of this chapter is to show how to exploit this difference in the relative tax treatment between payments to debt and all other uses of money. It allows the astute CFO to add value by choosing a clever capital structure.

Preview: With too much debt, other forces may increase the cost of capital.

At this point, you are probably wondering why you would not always finance your firm with as much debt as possible. The short answer is that if you were in a world in which corporate incomes taxes are the only distortion, then having as much corporate leverage as possible would indeed be ideal. However, there is more going on. If you take on too much corporate debt, eventually other forces will raise the firm's cost of capital to the point that further increases in debt are no longer value-increasing. These forces will be the subject of the next chapters. But let us first understand how managers should do capital budgeting when there are only corporate income taxes, and no other taxes or perfect market distortions.

Solve Now!

Q 22.1 *A debt-equity hybrid security is making a payout of $500 to its holders. If the firm is in the 33% tax bracket, how much does the firm have to earn if the IRS designates the payment an interest payment? How much does the firm have to earn if the IRS designates the payment a dividend distribution?*

Anecdote: Special Tax Breaks and Corporate Welfare

"Special Income Tax Provisions" are tax breaks enacted by Congress for specific activities, often on behalf of a single corporation. The special income tax provisions amounts are commonly estimated to be about $1 trillion a year—more than the total amount of federal discretionary spending! These provisions are a main reason why corporations—large corporations, really—have paid less and less in income taxes relative to the rest of the population and relative to other OECD countries. In 1965, corporate income taxes were 4.1% of U.S. GDP; in 2000, about 2.5%; in 2002, about 1.5%. And, for comparison to the 1.5% U.S. tax rate, in 2000, Germany's rate was 1.8%, Canada's rate 4.0%.

It would be wonderful if the low U.S. corporate income tax rate would attract businesses to locate into the United States and to create jobs. Alas, because the low effective corporate income tax rates come about through strange corporate tax shelters (often through relocation of headquarters into foreign countries), the United States often ends up with the worst of both worlds: both incentives for companies to move out of the United States and low corporate income tax receipts. The only president in recent history to buck the trend may have been Ronald Reagan, who slashed both the corporate income tax and the ability of companies to circumvent it.

Source: "Testimony of Robert S. McIntyre" (www.ctj.org), Director of "Citizens for Tax Justice."

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·3. Firm Value Under Different Capital Structures

Introducing an interest tax subsidy leads to a corporate preference for debt.

You know that firms are indifferent between debt and equity in a perfect world. You also know that Uncle Sam subsidizes firms that pay interest, relative to firms that either retain earnings or pay dividends or repurchase shares. Therefore, you know that, *on tax grounds*, firms should have a preference for debt. Your goal now is to determine the exact value of the firm in the presence of this tax subsidy for debt interest payments.

The next chapter describes why too much debt can create other costs, which raise the firm's overall cost of capital. Fortunately, the formulas in this chapter will still hold, because these other costs will be reflected only in the cost of capital ($\mathcal{I}(\tilde{r})$) components.

Table 22.2. Two Financing Scenarios for a Safe 1-Year Firm

Scenario Assumptions:

Investment Cost in Year 0	\$200.00
Before-Tax Return in Year 1	\$280.00
Before-Tax Net Return From Year 0 to Year 1	\$80.00
Corporate Income Tax Rate (τ)	30%
Appropriate Average Cost of Capital From 0 to 1	12%

Scenario EF: 100% Equity Financing.

Taxable Profits Next Year	\$80.00
Corporate Income Taxes Next Year (30% of \$80)	\$24.00
Owners Will Keep *Next Year*	\$56.00

Scenario DF: \$200 Debt Financing at 11%. Rest is Levered Equity.

Interest Payments	\$22.00
Taxable Profits Next Year	\$58.00
Corporate Income Taxes Next Year	\$17.40
Equity Owners Will Keep Next Year	\$40.60
Equity+Debt Owners Will Keep *Next Year*	\$22.00 + \$40.60 = \$62.60

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

22·3.A. Future Corporate Income Taxes and Owner Returns

We begin with Table 22.2, which works out the value of a specific firm under two financing scenarios.

If the firm is debt financed, then there is more money that can be paid to owners-total. This is the money that the IRS does not get.

Equity Financing (EF) Scenario In the all-equity scenario, the firm does not exploit the help of the IRS. It earns \$280 on an investment of \$200. At a 30% corporate income tax rate, it will pay corporate income taxes of 30% · \$80 = \$24. It can then pay out the remaining \$56 in dividends.

Debt Financing (DF) Scenario In the debt financing scenario, the firm borrows \$200 today at an interest rate of 11% for interest payments next year of \$22. Therefore, its corporate profits will be \$80 − \$22 = \$58, on which it would have to pay Uncle Sam \$17.40. This permits owners (creditors and shareholders—and you may be both) to receive \$62.60, the sum of \$22 for its creditors and \$40.60 for its equity holders.

Relative to the 100% equity financed case (in which owners keep \$56.00), the debt financed case (in which owners keep \$62.60) increases the firm's after-tax cash flow by \$6.60. A quicker way to compute the tax savings is to multiply the tax rate by the interest payments: If the IRS allows the firm to deduct \$22 in interest payments, the firm will save \$22·30% = \$6.60 in corporate income taxes. These \$6.60 in tax savings will occur next year, and will therefore have to be discounted back. It is common but not unique to use the firm's cost of capital to discount the tax shelter for a growing firm. The appendix explains the appropriate discount rate in greater detail, but just realize that whether you discount the much smaller tax shelter of \$6.60 by the debt cost of capital (11%) or a higher, say, 15% (the firm's cost of capital), would only make a difference between \$5.95 and \$5.74. In our context, 21 cents on a \$280 expected cash flow is a third-order issue.

Solve Now!

Q 22.2 *A \$1 million construction project is expected to return \$1.2 million. You are in a 45% combined federal and state marginal income tax bracket. Your annual income is \$200,000 per year. If you finance the project with an \$800,000 mortgage at an interest rate of 5%, how much will Uncle Sam receive? If you finance the project with cash, how much will Uncle Sam receive?*

Q 22.3 *Continue. If the appropriate project interest rate is 8%, what is the PV of the tax savings from financing the project with a mortgage?*

ANECDOTE: The RJR Buyout Tax Loophole
In a **Leveraged Buyout** (**L.B.O.** for short) leverage can increase dramatically—and this can significantly reduce corporate income taxes. In 1988, First Boston's plan to take over R.J.R. Nabisco relied on an esoteric tax loophole just about to be closed. By "monetizing" its food operations, a fancy way to increase leverage, the deferring of taxes would have saved an estimated \$3-\$4 billion dollars of R.J.R.'s corporate income taxes—which would have increased the annual federal U.S. deficit by 2 percent!

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·4. Formulaic Valuation Methods: APV and WACC

But we need a formula that works for intermediate leverage. The choices are WACC, APV, or financials.

You now know how to compute the tax cash flows and the tax shelter. You have also thought about reasonable discount rates. Your next goal is to find a valuation formula that allows you to compute the firm value today not only for the current financing arrangement, but also for other financing arrangements that you might contemplate for your firm. You can essentially use three methods to value the firms under different financing scenarios:

1. You can construct the pro formas for the firm under the new hypothetical capital structure, and then value the cash flows directly. Without describing it as such, you have actually already done this in Chapter 9, but we shall work out another example in the next section.
2. You can compute an **adjusted present value** (or **APV** for short), which adds back the tax subsidy. (This is basically what you have been doing above.)
3. You can generalize the **weighted average cost of capital** (WACC) formula to reflect the preferential treatment of debt by suitably lowering the debt's cost of capital.

This section explains the APV and WACC in some detail. The next section will work out a multi-year example that shows how to use them. Properly applied, all methods should provide very similar answers.

Be aware of the many simplifications that we shall make.

Before we start, it is important that you realize that our model will be just that—a model. We will determine the tax savings of a company that come from the presence of debt if the firm faces a fixed marginal income tax rate. This is a first-order financial issue, but our model will ignore many other possibly important tax issues, such as delayed income tax payments, tax-loss carryforwards, recapture of past tax payments, different marginal corporate income tax rates at different income levels, the possibility to default on income tax payments, state taxes, foreign taxes, special tax incentives, or outright tax evasion.

22·4.A. Adjusted Present Value (APV): Theory

The main idea of APV: value the firm, then add the tax subsidy.

APV decomposes the value of the firm into two components: the value of the firm if it were all equity-financed and fully taxed, plus a tax subsidy for each dollar that can be declared as "interest" rather than as "dividend." In our example from Table 22.2, \$256 (\$280 profit minus \$24 in corporate taxes) is the expected cash flow of our firm if it is 100% equity financed. The APV method then adds the tax subsidy. For example,

Zero interest payments If the firm is all equity financed, the tax subsidy is zero.

High interest payments If the firm could have the interest payments of, say a utopian \$80, the IRS would believe that the firm had not earned a penny. Therefore, the owners could keep an extra \$24 above the \$256 all-taxed scenario *next year*.

Normal interest payments If the firm will have interest payments of, say \$19, the IRS would see \$280 − \$19 = \$261 in return minus \$200 investment cost for a net return of \$61. The IRS would therefore collect 30%·\$61 = \$18.30, which is \$5.70 less than the \$24 that the IRS would have collected if the firm had been 100% equity financed. Alternatively, you could have directly calculated the expected tax savings as $\tau \cdot (\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}) = 30\% \cdot (\$19) = \$5.70$.

Computing tax savings, given the debt level.

Let's make a formula out of this method. Your first step to a more general valuation formula in the presence of corporate income taxes is to relate the amount of debt today to the interest payments next year. Let's return to our example, in which you borrow \$200 at an interest rate of 11%. The expected interest payments are now

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Expected Interest Payment} &= 11\% \cdot \$200 = \$22 \\ \text{Expected Interest Payment} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.2}$$

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

One important error to avoid is that you must use the *expected* debt interest (of 11%), not the *quoted* bank interest rate, which could be considerably higher than 11%. (This would not matter for large firms that are not too highly levered, but it would matter elsewhere.) Continuing on, the future tax savings *relative to an all-equity financed firm* is the amount of corporate income tax that the firm will *not* have to pay on the interest.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Expected Tax Saving} &= 30\% \cdot [11\% \cdot \$200] = \$6.60 \\ \text{Expected Tax Saving} &= \tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}] \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.3}$$

In words, Uncle Sam will expect to receive \$6.60 less from the owners of the project, because \$22 in profit repatriation was designated as "interest."

The \$6.60 in tax savings have to be discounted, because they will occur next year. So the APV Formula computes the discounted value of an all-equity financed firm (with after-tax cash flows of \$256 next year), and then adds back the *discounted* tax savings:

APV discounts tax savings and adds them to an all-equity type hypothetical firm.

\$200 debt at 11% interest, i.e.,\$22 interest payment discounted at 11%:

$$\mathsf{APV} = \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\% \cdot \$22}{1+11\%} = \$234.52$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{APV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathrm{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}]}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})} \\ \mathsf{APV} &= \underset{\text{if 100\% equity financed}}{\text{Value as}} + \underset{\text{from Interest Payments}}{\text{Tax Subsidy}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.4}$$

As described at length in Section **a**, you could also reasonably use the firm's cost of capital to discount the tax savings,

\$200 debt at 11% interest, i.e.,\$22 interest payment discounted at 12%:

$$\mathsf{APV} = \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\% \cdot \$22}{1+12\%} = \$234.46$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{APV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathrm{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}]}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} \\ \mathsf{APV} &= \underset{\text{if 100\% equity financed}}{\text{Value as}} + \underset{\text{from Interest Payments}}{\text{Tax Subsidy}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.5}$$

The difference of 6 cents is trivial. APV generalizes easily to multiple years: just compute the tax savings for each year and add them up, the same way that you would add up present values. We will work such a multi-period example in the next section.

IMPORTANT: *The Adjusted Present Value (*APV*) Formula computes an "as if all equity financed" PV (i.e., after corporate income tax) and then adds back the tax subsidy:*

$$\mathsf{APV}_0 = \underset{\text{taxed.}}{\text{Value as if Firm is 100\% equity financed and fully}} + \underset{\text{Payments}}{\text{Tax Subsidies from Interest}} \tag{22.6}$$

If the project lasts for only one period, this translates into

$$\mathsf{APV}_0 = \frac{\mathcal{E}(CF_1)}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} + \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tau \cdot \overbrace{\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot \mathsf{DT}}^{\text{interest payment}})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})} \quad . \tag{22.7}$$

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·4.B. APV: Application to a 60/40 Debt Financing Case

An example of how to value a firm financed with 60% debt.

In our example, the firm with \$200 debt is worth \$234.46 today, which comes to a debt ratio of \$200/\$234.46 ≈ 85%. Now assume that the firm instead considers a new capital structure, in which it would borrow only \$139.16. The firm has determined that this lower-debt capital structure would reduce its debt cost of capital to 9% per annum—after all, at such low levels, it is risk-free, so risk-averse investors would be willing to accept a lower *expected* rate of return. What would the firm's value become?

Problem solved.

According to the APV Formula, you begin with the value of a 100%-equity firm, which is \$256/(1 + 12%), and add back the tax subsidy. Interest payments on \$139.16 of debt will be 9% · \$139.16 = \$12.52 *next year*. Taxes saved will be 30% · \$12.52 = \$3.76 *next year*. This is worth \$3.45 *today*. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{APV} &= \frac{\$256.00}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\% \cdot 9\% \cdot \$139.16}{1+9\%} \\
&= \$228.57 + \$3.45 = \$232.02 \\
\text{APV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot \text{DT}}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})} \\
&= \text{“as if all equity financed” firm} + \text{tax subsidy} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{22.8}$$

If you prefer discounting the expected tax shelter with the firm's cost of capital, use

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{APV} &= \frac{\$256.00}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\% \cdot 9\% \cdot \$139.16}{1+12\%} \\
&= \$228.57 + \$3.36 = \$231.93 \\
\text{APV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot \text{DT}}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} \\
&= \text{“as if all equity financed” firm} + \text{tax subsidy} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{22.9}$$

(Again, the cost of capital on the tax shelter makes little difference, here only \$3.45 − \$3.36 = \$0.09.) This is the APV answer: In the presence of corporate income taxes, a firm financed with \$139.16 in debt would be worth about \$232.

22·4.C. Tax-Adjusted Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) Valuation: Theory

To show that WACC and APV are compatible, we derive the tax-adjusted WACC Formula from the APV Formula.

The second method to compute the value of the firm uses a tax-adjusted weighted average cost of capital formula. If you start with the APV Formula and manipulate it, it will be most apparent that the two methods can yield the same value, at least if you start from Formula 22.9. We will stick with the same parameters: our 60/40 debt/equity financing, a 30% corporate income tax rate, a 9% cost of debt capital, and \$280 in before-tax return (\$256 after-tax return in the all-equity case). As before, the firm borrows \$139.16 at a 9% interest rate for net interest payments of \$12.52. The corporate income tax shield is 30% of \$12.52 or \$3.76. The APV Formula 22.9 values the firm at

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{PV} &= \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{\overbrace{30\% \cdot \overbrace{(9\% \cdot \$139.16)}^{\$12.52}}^{=\$3.76}}{1+12\%} = \$231.93 \\
\text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot \text{DT}]}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} \quad .
\end{aligned} \tag{22.10}$$

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

The main difference between APV and WACC is that the WACC method expresses the debt as a ratio of firm value,

$$\begin{aligned} 60\% &= \$139.16/\$231.93 \qquad \$139.16 = 60\% \cdot \$231.93 \\ w_{\text{DT}} &= \text{DT}/\text{PV} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{DT} = w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \text{PV} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.11}$$

Substitute this DT into the APV formula,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\% \cdot [9\% \cdot (60\% \cdot \$231.93)]}{1+12\%} = \$231.93 \\ \text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} + \frac{\tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot (w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \text{PV})]}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.12}$$

We now have PV on both sides of the equation, so you want to solve for PV. This requires a couple of algebraic steps.

1. Multiply both sides by $[1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})] = (1+12\%)$ to make the denominator disappear,

$$\begin{aligned} (1+12\%) \cdot \$231.93 &= \$256 + 30\% \cdot [9\% \cdot (60\% \cdot \$231.93)] \\ [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})] \cdot \text{PV} &= \mathcal{E}(\text{CF}) + \tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot (w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \text{PV})] \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.13}$$

2. Move the second term to the left side,

$$\begin{aligned} (1+12\%) \cdot \$231.93 - 30\% \cdot [9\% \cdot (60\% \cdot \$231.93)] &= \$256 \\ [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})] \cdot \text{PV} - \tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot (w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \text{PV})] &= \mathcal{E}(\text{CF}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.14}$$

3. Pull out the PV,

$$\begin{aligned} \$231.93 \cdot [1+12\% - 30\% \cdot 9\% \cdot 60\%] &= \$256 \\ \text{PV} \cdot [1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) - \tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot w_{\text{DT}}] &= \mathcal{E}(\text{CF}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.15}$$

4. Divide both sides by the PV multiplier,

$$\begin{aligned} \$231.93 &= \frac{\$256}{1+12\% - 30\% \cdot 9\% \cdot 60\%} = \frac{\$256}{1+10.38\%} \\ \text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) - \tau \cdot [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot w_{\text{DT}}]} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\text{WACC}} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.16}$$

This is the "real" WACC valuation formula, i.e., the WACC formula that also works when firms pay corporate income tax. The big idea of tax-adjusted WACC is to discount the "as-if-100%-equity financed and fully taxed" cash flows (of $\mathcal{E}(\text{CF}) = \$256$), not with firm's cost of capital $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) = 12\%$, but with a reduced interest rate that comes from the corporate income tax subsidy on interest payments. The term which does this—relative to our earlier no-tax WACC Formula 21.11—is $\tau \cdot w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) = 30\% \cdot 60\% \cdot 9\% \approx 1.62\%$. Therefore, your revised discount rate is $1+12\% - 30\% \cdot 9\% \cdot 60\% \approx 1+10.38\%$. 10.38% is the (tax-adjusted) WACC.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

The more common form of WACC also breaks out equity cost of capital.

The WACC formula is often slightly rearranged. Split $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})$ into its cost of equity and cost of debt components, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) = w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) + w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})$. In our example, to keep the weighted average firm cost of capital at the constant $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) = 12\%$, solve $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) = w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) + w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) = 60\%\cdot 9\% + 40\%\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) = 12\%$, and find $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) = 16.5\%$. Substitute this into Formula 22.16, and you get the more common version of the WACC formula,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{PV} &= \frac{\$256}{1+10.38\%} = \frac{\$256}{1+40\%\cdot 16.5\% + (1-30\%)\cdot 60\%\cdot 9\%}\\ \text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\text{WACC}} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) + (1-\tau)\cdot w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})}\ .\end{aligned} \tag{22.17}$$

The tax-adjusted WACC generalizes ordinary WACC.

Your new WACC formula generalizes your old M&M WACC formula, because when the corporate tax rate τ is zero, the tax subsidy is useless, τ is zero, and the tax-adjusted WACC formula simplifies to your older and simpler WACC formula. But your new WACC formula can also handle firms with positive corporate income tax rates. (Incidentally, about half of all publicly traded firms in the United States have a marginal tax rate of zero, e.g., due to tax-loss carryforwards or due to clever tax shelters. For these companies, the corporate tax rate may indeed be close to zero, which means that they cannot use debt to reduce their cost of capital—and they could therefore use the simplified M&M version of the WACC formula which ignores the tax subsidy of interest.)

IMPORTANT:

- *The (tax-adjusted) weighted average cost of capital (*WACC*) formula discounts the future cash flows with a lower cost of capital that reflects the corporate income tax shelter,*

$$PV = \frac{\mathcal{E}(CF)}{1+\text{WACC}}\ , \tag{22.18}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\textit{where}\ \ \text{WACC} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) - \tau\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})\cdot w_{\text{DT}}\\ &= w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) + w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})\cdot(1-\tau)\ .\end{aligned} \tag{22.19}$$

  The expected cash flows must be the cash flows "as if the firm were all equity financed and therefore fully taxed."

- *This formula is a generalization of the* WACC *formula from the perfect M&M world. It is therefore this formula that is usually called the* WACC *formula.*

- *It is not clear how to use the* WACC *formula in a multi-period setting.*

The WACC *formula is so common that it is worth memorizing.*

Unfortunately, you can only use the WACC formula in a multi-period setting *if* the cost of capital, the firm's debt ratio, and the firm's tax rate stay constant. In this case, a present value formula would look something like

$$\text{PV}_0 = \sum_{t=1}^{\infty}\frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF}_t)}{\{1+\ [\ w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot r_{\text{EQ},0,t} + w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT},0,t})\cdot(1-\tau)\ ]\}^t}\ . \tag{22.20}$$

If these quantities are not all constant, no one knows how to compute a proper WACC. It is not unusual for firms to plan on high debt financing upfront that they lateron pay back, which is a situation that the WACC formula can handle. Therefore, the WACC formula can often serve just as a rough approximation. The APV method is generally more flexible than WACC method.

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

DIGGING DEEPER: *The* ***Hamada Equation*** *gives a formula to adjust a firm's beta for both leverage and corporate income taxes:*

$$\beta_{Levered} = \beta_{Unlevered} \cdot [1 + (1 - \tau) \cdot (DT/EQ)] \ . \qquad (22.21)$$

Solve Now!

Q 22.4 *Consider a 25/75 debt/equity financing case for your firm: the before-tax return is \$280, the tax rate is 30%, the overall cost of capital is 12%, and debt when the firm is 25% debt financed must offer an expected rate of return of 8%. First compute the* WACC*, then compute the debt as 25% the* WACC *value, and show how the* APV *yields the same result.*

Q 22.5 *Consider financing your firm with \$100 debt: the before-tax return is \$280, the tax rate is 30%, the overall cost of capital is 12%, and this debt must offer an expected rate of return of 8.7%. First compute the* APV*, then compute the capital structure in ratios, and finally show that the* WACC *yields the same result.*

Q 22.6 *If you are thinking of debt in terms of a (constant) fraction of firm value, would you prefer* WACC *or* APV*? If you are thinking of debt in terms of a (constant) dollar amount, would you prefer* WACC *or* APV*?*

22·4.D. A Major Blunder: Applying APV and WACC to the Current Cash Flows

Another Common Mistake: Make sure you use the correct Cash Flow to Discount.

Unfortunately, both WACC and APV are often used incorrectly. Analysts frequently forget that the correct expected cash flow in the present value numerator is the "as if fully equity financed and fully after-tax" cash flows—\$256 in our example. It is neither the before-tax project cash flows (\$280 in our example), nor the after-tax cash flows under the current financing scheme (e.g., $\$280 - 9\% \cdot \$139.16 = \$267.48$). If you have worked through the examples in this chapter, you should understand why this would provide the wrong answer. Unlike errors in the discount rate applied to the tax shelter—which is a modest error—using the wrong cash flows would be a big error.

IMPORTANT: WACC *and* APV *operate with expected "as if 100% equity-financed and after corporate income tax" cash flows, not the firm's current cash flows (which depend on the current debt/equity financing).*

Solve Now!

Q 22.7 *A firm in the 20% marginal tax bracket is currently financed with \$500 debt and \$1,000 equity. The debt carries an interest rate of 6%, the equity's cost of capital is 12%. The risk-free rate is 4%, the equity premium is 3%. What is the firm's beta? The firm is pondering a recapitalization to \$1,000 debt, which would increase the debt's interest rate to 8%. The firm exists only for 1 more year. What would the new equity be worth?*

Solve Now!

Q 22.8 *A firm in the 40% income tax bracket has an investment that costs \$300 in year 0, and offers a pretax return in year 1 of \$500. Assume that the firm's cost of capital, as provided by the external capital markets, is approximately* $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{DT}) = 15\% + w_{DT} \cdot 5\%$*. Compute the APV, WACC, and a WACC-based value if the firm borrows \$50 to finance it. Repeat if the firm borrows \$100.*

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·5. A Sample Application of Tax-Adjusting Valuation Techniques

Table 22.3. Income Statement of Hypothetical Machine

	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Gross Sales (Revenues)	$70	$70	$70	$70	$70	$70
–	Cost of Goods Sold (COGS)	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
–	Selling, General & Administrative Expenses (SG&A)	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
=	EBITDA (Net Sales)	$60	$60	$60	$60	$60	$60
–	Depreciation	$25	$50	$50	$25	$0	$0
=	EBIT (Operating Income)	$35	$10	$10	$35	$60	$60
–	Interest Expense	$0	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
=	EAIBT (or EBT)	$35	$5	$5	$30	$55	$55
–	Corporate Income Tax (at 40%)	$14	$2	$2	$12	$22	$22
=	**Net Income**	$21	$3	$3	$18	$33	$33

Excerpts From the Cash Flow Statement

	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Net Income	$21	$3	$3	$18	$33	$33
+	Depreciation	$25	$50	$50	$25	$0	$0
=	**Total Operating Activity**	$46	$53	$53	$43	$33	$33
	Capital Expenditures	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-
=	**Total Investing Activity**	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-
	Financing Cash Flow	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Net Equity Issue	+$26	-	-	-	-	-
	Dividends	-	-	–$53	–$43	–$33	–$8
	Net Debt Issue	+$25	-	-	-	-	–$25
=	**Total Financing Activity**	+$51	-	–$53	–$43	–$33	–$33
=	**Net Change In Cash**	+$22	–$22	$0	$0	$0	$0

Let's value a pro forma firm.

We now apply our corporate income-tax related valuation techniques on a multi-year, pro forma firm. (Pro formas will be discussed in detail in Chapter 29. Think of a pro forma as a forward projection of the financial statements.) In Table 22.3, we return to our basic hypothetical machine from Chapter 9, Table 9.6 on Page 209. To make the example more useful, assume an appropriate debt interest rate of 20%, so a loan of $25 must offer an expected $5 in interest per annum. The appropriate overall cost of capital for our firm is 30%. The corporate income tax rate is 40%. Table 22.3 shows that shareholders pay in $26 and receive a total of $137 in dividends. Debtholders invest $25 and receive $25 in total interest payments. (Your firm follows an odd capital distribution policy, but so be it.) What is your firm worth?

22·5.A. The Flow-To-Equity Direct Valuation from the Pro Forma Financials

Method 1: Direct Flows from the Financials.

Our first method to value the firm uses the pro forma cash flows directly. This is sometimes also called the **flow-to-equity** method. First, use the project cash flow formula 9.18 from Page 221, which tells you that the project cash flows that you need for your NPV valuation are

	Computing Project Cash Flows, $25 Debt Financing						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Total Operating Activity	$46	$53	$53	$43	$33	$33
+	Total Investing Activity	-$75	-$75	-	-	-	-
+	Interest Expense	-	$5	$5	$5	$5	$5
=	**Project Cash Flows**	-$29	-$17	+$58	+$48	+$38	+$38

Then discount these cash flows, using the assumed 30% cost of capital on the overall firm:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NPV} &= \frac{-\$29}{1+30\%} + \frac{-\$17}{(1+30\%)^2} + \frac{+\$58}{(1+30\%)^3} + \frac{+\$48}{(1+30\%)^4} \\ &+ \frac{+\$38}{(1+30\%)^5} + \frac{+\$38}{(1+30\%)^6} = \$28.95 \quad .\end{aligned} \tag{22.22}$$

So, you would be willing to pay $28.95 *today* for the right to buy (and finance) the firm, which will initiate *next year* with this exact capital structure. But wait: did you not forget about the tax-shelter that came with the debt? No, you did not! The pro forma itself had already incorporated the correct interest expense, which had reduced the corporate income tax, and thus increased our project's cash flows.

Digging Deeper: *I am using 30% as the post-tax cash flow discount rate here, too. This ignores the fact that the tax shelter cash flows that we are adding to the firm value have a lower discount rate. Fortunately, this is usually a very small discrepancy in terms of the firm's overall cost of capital.*

22·5.B. APV

Method 2, APV demands a detour: we must construct as-if-100%-equity financials.

Our second method to value our firm is APV. But be careful: the cash flows in Formula (22.22) are *not* the cash flows that you need for the APV analysis, because these are not the cash flows *as if 100% equity financed*. APV states that you want to use the *as if 100% equity financed* cash flows, and then add back the tax shield. If you used the cash flows in Formula 22.22 and then added the tax-shield (due to the interest payment designation), you would mistakenly count the tax-shield twice. We must therefore start over to find the correct expected cash flows. You already know that if the firm were fully equity financed, the tax obligation would go up. By how much? You can intuit this even before you write down the full financials. In years 2–6, the taxable net income would be $5 more, so at your 40% corporate income tax rate, you would have to pay not $2, but $4 in taxes. This means that you would have to pay an extra $2 in taxes each year. To make sure this intuition is right, construct the financials of a 100% equity financed firm:

	Abbreviated Income Statement, As If 100% Equity Financed						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
=	EBIT (Operating Income)	$35	$10	$10	$35	$60	$60
-	Interest Expense	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0
=	EAIBT (or EBT)	$35	$10	$10	$35	$60	$60
-	Corporate Income Tax (at 40%)	$14	$4	$4	$14	$24	$24
=	**Net Income**	$21	$6	$6	$21	$36	$36

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

	Abbreviated Cash Flow Statement, 100% Equity Financed						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Net Income	$21	$6	$6	$21	$36	$36
+	Depreciation	$25	$50	$50	$25	$0	$0
=	**Total Operating Activity**	$46	$56	$56	$46	$36	$36
	Capital Expenditures	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-
=	**Total Investing Activity**	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-

We can now reuse our present value cash flow formula on the 100% equity financed version of our firm:

	Computing Project Cash Flows, 100% Equity Financed						
	Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
	Total Operating Activity	$46	$56	$56	$46	$36	$36
+	Total Investing Activity	–$75	–$75	-	-	-	-
+	Interest Expense	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0	$0
	Project Cash Flows	–$29	–$19	+$56	+$46	+$36	+$36

Comparing this to the equivalent table on Page 561, you can see that the project cash flows in your 100% equity financed firm has indeed lost the tax shelter of $2 in each of years 2–6. The intuition was correct!

Return to the main task: APV valuation

Now discount these "as if 100% equity financed" cash flows with the firm's appropriate cost of capital, which is assumed to be 30%. Standing at time 0, this gives you

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NPV}_{\text{Project, 100\% Equity Financed}} &= \frac{-\$29}{(1+30\%)} + \frac{-\$19}{(1+30\%)^2} + \frac{+\$56}{(1+30\%)^3} + \frac{+\$46}{(1+30\%)^4} \\ &+ \frac{+\$36}{(1+30\%)^5} + \frac{+\$36}{(1+30\%)^6} = \$25.20 \quad .\end{aligned} \tag{22.23}$$

The APV formula tells you that you now need to add back the expected tax shield from the debt. The interest tax shields in years 2–6 are the interest payments ($5 per year) multiplied by the corporate tax rate (40%), or $2 per year. What is the value of this tax shelter?

$$\begin{aligned}\text{NPV}_{\text{Tax Shelter}} &= \frac{\$0}{(1+30\%)} + \frac{+\$2}{(1+30\%)^2} + \frac{+\$2}{(1+30\%)^3} + \frac{+\$2}{(1+30\%)^4} \\ &+ \frac{+\$2}{(1+30\%)^5} + \frac{+\$2}{(1+30\%)^6} = \$3.75 \quad .\end{aligned} \tag{22.24}$$

Therefore, the APV method tells you that the firm value is

$$\text{APV}_{t=0} = \$25.20 + \$3.75 = \$28.95 \ . \tag{22.25}$$

This is the same answer that you found in Formula 22.22.

22·5.C. WACC

Our third method to value the firm is WACC. Start again with the firm's cash flows, as if 100% equity financed. Method 3: WACC

Computing Project Cash Flows, 100% Equity Financed						
Year	1	2	3	4	5	6
Project Cash Flows	–$29	–$19	+$56	+$46	+$36	+$36

But you shall now use the appropriate tax-adjusted cost of capital for discounting. There is one tricky issue now: what is the firm's debt ratio? That is, WACC requires $w_{DT} = (1 - w_{EQ})$ as an input. In the real world, you could just look up the current firm values, so trust me (and the Digging-Deeper box below) that the debt is about 35 percent of the firm's value today. You know the other two remaining inputs that you need to compute WACC, which are the overall corporate cost of capital at 30%, and the debt cost of capital at 20%.

You can now compute the firm's weighted average cost of capital as Return to the main task: WACC valuation

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &\approx 30\% - \overbrace{40\%}^{\text{tax}} \cdot \overbrace{35\%}^{\text{debt}} \cdot \overbrace{20\%}^{\text{c.o.c.}} \approx 27.2\% \\ \text{WACC} &\approx \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{FM}) - \tau \cdot w_{DT} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{DT}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.26}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV}_0 = \frac{-\$29}{(1+27.2\%)} + \frac{-\$19}{(1+27.2\%)^2} + \frac{+\$56}{(1+27.2\%)^3} + \frac{+\$46}{(1+27.2\%)^4} \\ + \frac{+\$36}{(1+27.2\%)^5} + \frac{+\$36}{(1+27.2\%)^6} \approx \$29.55 \quad , \end{aligned} \tag{22.27}$$

which is a small 60 cents off the value of the APV formula. Most of the difference comes from the fact that the fraction of debt in the capital structure is 35% in the first year, but a different proportion of the value in subsequent years. Thus, as we noted on Page 558, WACC cannot really apply in this case. In our case, this error is modest—and dwarved by errors in what you have assumed about the tax code and by the uncertainty that such projects would carry in the real world. Here you are 60 cents off—only modest harm done.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Your equity will have payments of $53, $43, $33, and $8 in the final four years. Let's assume for a moment a 35% cost of capital on equity. (We will verify this later.) With a 35% cost-of-equity-capital assumption, the market value of the equity in year 1 (not year 0!) will be*

$$PV_{Equity,t=1} \approx \frac{\$53}{(1+35\%)^2} + \frac{\$43}{(1+35\%)^3} + \frac{\$33}{(1+35\%)^4} + \frac{\$8}{(1+35\%)^5} \approx \$58.28 \quad . \tag{22.28}$$

The market value of the equity in year 1 will not be the $26 that the equity holders have to put in! The equity can be sold for more and is therefore worth the higher $58.28. The debt however is priced right: when discounted appropriately, it is worth $25. So, as a fraction of financing in the capital structure, equity will constitute

$$w_{EQ} = \frac{\$58.28}{\$58.28 + \$25.00} \approx 69\% \quad . \tag{22.29}$$

Now, you know that the debt's cost of capital is 20%. To have a consistent example in which the firm's cost of capital is 30% requires an appropriate rate of return on the equity of around 35% without a tax subsidy:

$$\begin{aligned} 69\% \cdot x + (1-69\%) \cdot 20\% \approx 30\% \quad \Rightarrow \quad x \approx 35\% \quad . \\ w_{EQ} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{EQ}) + (1-w_{DT}) \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{DT}) = \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{FM}) \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.30}$$

so your assumption of a 35% cost-of-equity capital above was correct. Unfortunately, this 35% is correct only in the first year.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

Solve Now!

Q 22.9 *Construct a pro forma for the following firm: A 3-year project costs $150 (year 1), and produces $70 in year 1, $60 in year 2, and $55 in year 3. Depreciation, both real and financial, is 3 years. Projects of this riskiness (and with this term structure of project payoffs) have an 18% cost of capital. The marginal corporate income tax rate is 40%.*

(a) Assume that the firm is 100% equity financed. Construct the pro forma, and compute expected project cash flows.

(b) Compute the Project IRR.

(c) Compute the project NPV.

(d) Assume that this firm expects to receive an extra bonus of $2 in years 2 and 3 from a benevolent donor. What would be the project's cash flows and IRR now?

For the remaining questions, assume that the firm instead has a capital structure financing $50 in debt raised in year 1 at a 10% (expected) interest rate. There is no interest paid in year 1, just in years 2 and 3. The principal is repaid in year 3.

(e) Construct the pro forma now. What is the IRR of this project?

(f) From the pro forma, what is the NPV of the debt-financed project?

(g) Compute the NPV via the APV method.

(h) Via the APV method, how much would firm value be if the firm would have taken on not $50 but $40 in debt (assuming the same interest rate of 10%)?

(i) How much money must the equity provide in year 1? What is the debt ratio of the firm? Does it stay constant over time? Is this a good candidate firm for the WACC method?

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

22·6. The Tax Subsidy on PepsiCo's Financial Statement

Table 22.4. PepsiCo's Income Statement (Revisited).

	Income Statement	December 2000
=	Revenue	25,479
	COGS	10,226
	+ SG&A	11,104
	+ Depreciation and Amortization	147
	+ Unusual Expenses	184
–	= **Total Operating Expenses**	21,661
=	**Operating Income**	3,818
+	Net Interest Income	-57
=	**Income Before Tax**	3,761
–	Income Tax	1,218
=	**Income After Tax**	2,543
–	Extraordinary Items	0
=	**Net Income**	2,543

One can infer the tax subsidy from corporate financial statements.

We now want to apply our theoretical knowledge to a practical example—in fact, the example that you used in Chapter 9 to illustrate how financial statements work. Can you infer the tax subsidy from PepsiCo's Income Statement? The answer is yes. For convenience, Table 22.4 reproduces PepsiCo's Income Statement. In 2000, PepsiCo had \$3.818 billion in operating income, but only had to pay income taxes on \$3.761 billion. With income taxes of \$1.218 billion, PepsiCo's average corporate income tax rate was about 32.4%. If PepsiCo had been purely equity financed, it would have had to pay taxes on its operating income of \$3.818 billion, or about \$1.237 billion. Thus, by having \$57 million in interest, relative to a hypothetical dividend payout of \$57 million, PepsiCo enjoyed a tax shield in 2000 from its interest payments of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Debt Tax Shield} &= \tau \cdot [\text{Interest Payments}] \\ &= 32.4\% \cdot \$57 \text{ million} = \$19 \text{ million} . \end{aligned} \tag{22.31}$$

Note that you did not need to compute $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}$, because you could read the interest payments directly off the financials. Note also that for companies like PepsiCo with high income, the marginal and the average tax rates are practically the same, so you can assume that PepsiCo would have had to pay its average tax rate of 32.4% if it had paid out the \$57 million interest in dividends instead. (Finally note that you are also ignoring more complex tax issues, such as deferred taxes, here.)

Solve Now!

Q 22.10 *Compute the tax shield for a company of your choice (or Coca Cola if you have no favorite!).*

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

22·7. Odds and Ends

You now understand all there is to know about how managers can adjust to the presence of corporate income taxes. But there are a number of issues that are worth discussing, if only because you may wonder about them in the future.

22·7.A. Which Valuation Method is Best?

None of the method dominates.

First, you might wonder which of the three valuation method is best: the pro forma, the APV, or the WACC method. If one were always best, we would not have bothered with the other two, so each must have advantages and disadvantages.

They may provide different answers, but the differences should be modest.

Of course, the three methods should usually come out if not with the same, then at least with very similar results—otherwise, something would be wrong. As the example in Section 22·5 showed, if suitably applied, the differences are usually due to "rounding error." This is especially true if you compare them to the errors that you will inevitably introduce in your simplification of the tax code and your assessment of expected cash flows and appropriate costs of capital.

Here is how I see the three methods:

Pro Forma (Flow to Equity) The advantage of the pro forma is that it is lucid and makes it less likely that you will use an incorrect expected cash flow. The disadvantage of the pro forma is that it requires a lot more effort (you have to construct full financials!), and that it does not break out the tax advantage of debt explicitly. This makes it more difficult to think about the role of changes in contemplated capital structure changes.

APV The APV formula makes it relatively easier to determine how an extra dollar of debt increases firm value. When thinking of a specific addition or project with a specific cost, this may be the easiest formula to use.

WACC The WACC formula makes it relatively easier to determine how an extra percentage in debt increases firm value. When thinking of a target ratio change in capital structure policy, this may be the easiest formula to use.

Personal Author Advice: APV is often simplest.

Still, in many cases, APV is easier to work with than WACC. For example, APV makes it much easier to think about projects that add debt capacity only at some stage in their life. What drives project debt capacity? The simple answer is that more tangible (collateralizable) projects tend to add more debt capacity, because your bank will find it easier to repossess and resell tangible assets. A research and development (R&D) project may require equity investment upfront, followed by the construction of a laboratory that can be debt-financed. The laboratory adds debt capacity, the R&D does not. APV makes it easy to add in the debt capacity only in later stages. APV also makes it easier to assign different discount factors to the firm's projects and to the firm's tax shields (Section **a**).

WACC is often most complex!.

WACC may be the most difficult method. It requires assumptions about the capital structure policy in future years that are not immediately obvious. An assumption of "corporate neglect" won't work, because if the firm does nothing, the value of the firm and thus the value of equity next year will almost certainly be different. To keep a constant debt ratio, a corporation would have to issue more debt when its equity value increases, and repurchase more debt when its equity value decreases. Even if everything turns out as expected, the equity would likely be expected to increase in value more than the debt each year. This means that without corporate action, the debt ratio can go down over time. If the debt ratio is not constant over time, you cannot use WACC, because you do not know how to do multi-year compounding with WACC. (There is indeed some evidence that many publicly traded firms tend not to follow constant debt ratio strategies—but of course you do not care about *other* firms, you care about *your* own firm.) If your firm plans to stick to a constant market-based debt ratio, WACC can indeed be the most convenient way to think about the added tax advantages of debt. On a more technical note, WACC also leans more heavily on the assumptions that borrowing rates are competitive

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

and thus zero NPV. Therefore, WACC works only in "normal" situations in which creditors are paid the appropriate cost of capital on the debt. WACC cannot deal with "below-market" or "above-market" unfairly priced loans—much like the CAPM cannot. (We already know that the CAPM rate of return needs to be replaced by the certainty equivalence in this case.)

22·7.B. A Quick-and-Dirty Heuristic Tax-Savings Rule

Why bother with such puny tax savings?

Do not confuse the question of whether tax savings are important with the question of whether the right discount factor for the tax savings is important. The former is much bigger than the latter. But aren't even the tax savings too small to bother with? Before you draw this conclusion, realize that the firm need not invent anything new or work extra hard to obtain the tax savings. And, tax savings materialize year after year after year. In fact, this provides a nice back-of-the-envelope heuristic of what the firm can gain in value from one dollar extra in debt.

A rule of thumb: Each perpetual dollar of debt increases firm value by the corporate income tax-rate.

Start with the APV formula. If a large firm today takes on and maintains an extra \$1 billion in debt rather than an extra \$1 billion in equity, the interest is on the order of about 6%, or \$60 million per year. The tax rate for many corporation is about 40%, leading to a savings of \$24 million per year—this can pay for a nice executive bonus. But this is only the first year. The \$24 million per year saving is a perpetuity. If the cost of capital on the tax shelter is the cost of capital on the debt (6%), then we can compute the total value increase to the firm today to be \$24/6% = \$400 million.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Value Increase} &= \frac{40\% \cdot 6\% \cdot \$1 \text{ billion}}{6\%} = \$400 \text{ million} \\ \text{Value Increase} &= \frac{\tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot \mathsf{DT}}{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})} = \tau \cdot \mathsf{DT} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{22.32}$$

This is a nice shortcut: for every dollar extra in eternal debt, the value of the firm increases by the tax rate of the firm. And Formula 22.32 is so easy, you can often compute it in your head. For example, compare financing a \$1 million project with 50% debt (rather than all-equity), in which a firm in the 40% marginal tax bracket plans not to repay any of the debt principal or to take on new debt. The tax savings would be $40\% \cdot \$500,000 = \$200,000$.

Problems with the heuristics are the discount rate and the perpetual assumption.

It is important that you recognize that the $\tau \cdot D$ formula for the tax savings is not a perfect calculation, but only a heuristic—that is, a rule that gives you a good but not perfect number very quickly. For example, it has made at least two assumptions that are never perfectly satisfied. The first is that the appropriate discount rate on the debt shelter is exactly the same as the cost of capital on debt. The second is that the debt and its tax shelter are truly perpetual, with constant cash flows and discount rates. Nevertheless, the formula is very useful to quickly get a handle on the long-term benefits of additional debt.

22·7.C. Can Investment and Financing Decisions Be Separate?

If the world is not perfect, projects with different financing options can offer different values. Thus, financing and investment decisions must be considered together, not separately.

In the perfect M&M world, investment and financing decisions can be made independently: Managers can focus on production choices and leave the financing to the nerds in the finance department. Unfortunately, if debt is tax advantaged, this will not be the case outside the M&M world.

An example.

For example, consider two projects with equal costs, equal payoffs, and equal costs of capitals. (Alternatively, just consider their NPVs to be the same.) The first project is a research and development project; the second is a building. In the real world, it is difficult to find a bank to lend money for R&D: after all, if the firm fails to pay its interest payments, there is often little that the bank can collect and resell. Buildings, on the other hand, are easy to repossess. Therefore, the building offers more **debt capacity** than the R&D project. This can make it more valuable than the otherwise equally promising R&D project. Managers cannot choose among projects without taking into consideration how each project aids the debt capacity of the firm.

IMPORTANT: *In an imperfect world, unlike the M&M world, managers cannot ignore or delay financing decisions when making real investment decisions. The two decisions are intertwined.*

A second complication derives from the fact that the value of the debt capacity can depend on who the owner is. Although most profitable and older firms are in the same highest tax bracket, some younger, growing, and unprofitable firms are in lower tax brackets. To these younger firms, the debt capacity is worth a lot less than it is to a large firm like PepsiCo (which can immediately use the tax deduction).

22·7.D. Using Our Tax Formulas

Let us tie up three loose ends.

The One Important Mistake To Avoid

Warning

The one big mistake you should never commit is to use the wrong expected cash flows for APV or WACC. Using the wrong discount rate on the tax shelter or tax liability is forgivable (within bounds)—using the wrong expected cash flow is not. So, let's reemphasize what you must do. In the pro forma method, you already have both the projected debt cash flows and the projected equity cash flows, so your life is simple. You can just use these pro forma cash flows which already take the debt tax shield into account. In contrast, in both the APV and WACC methods, you must not use the expected cash flows of the firm under the current capital structure (much less the expected cash flows to the current equity), but the cash flows that would accrue if the firm was fully equity financed.

What About Personal Income Taxes or Other Issues?!

Do we need more formulas, one for each M&M distortion?

From Section 6·5.C, you know that your owners want you to work only with expected after-tax cash flows and expected after-tax costs of capital. As manager, do you need to adjust the corporate expected debt cost of capital and expected equity cost of capital (from the CAPM) for your investors' income taxes? From your perspective, if you use the CAPM or if you ask your investment banker what the appropriate expected cost of capital is at which you can find financing, are these estimates the costs of capital you need in our WACC or APV formulas, or will you need to make further adjustments to these formulas?

For us as corporate managers, the expected costs of capital already reflect investors' other issues.

It turns out that the WACC and APV are the last formulas that you shall need. The reason is that all other effects will be transparent to you. As managers, the costs of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$ and $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$) demanded by your investors will take into account any other "issues" they may have with your firm. For example, if your investors suffer higher taxes by investing with you, this will be reflected in your seeing higher costs of capital. If your investors believe you will go bankrupt, it will be reflected in your seeing higher costs of capital. If your investors love you, it will be reflected in your seeing lower costs of capital. And so on. But then why were corporate income taxes so special in needing their own formula? Why did they not flow through the costs of capital, too? The reason is that the corporate income taxes already sat fully budgeted as a line item in your own corporate financials. You had already subtracted them off, and just needed to add them back in when you *as corporate managers* could avoid them. Any other concerns that your investors may have with your firm have not been reflected in your financials, and therefore do not need their own formulas.

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

The fact that you will not need another formula does not excuse you from thinking about what else your investors may care about. After all, you can create value for your investors if you can reduce the necessary cost of capital. For example, if you can minimize your investors' personal tax obligations, you as a firm will face a lower cost of capital, because you are creating more value for our investors.

No formula does not mean no thinking!

Combining WACC with the CAPM

Formally speaking, in the presence of taxes (or other imperfections), the CAPM does not hold and should not be used. But this does not help you in the real world. What choice do you have but the CAPM to provide you with an appropriate discount rate?

Formally, it is wrong to use the CAPM in a world of taxes.

So, it has become common practice to combine the tax-adjusted WACC Formula with a cost of capital derived from a CAPM model. Most often, the CAPM provides the cost of capital for the equity ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}})$), while the borrowing interest rate provides the cost of capital for the debt ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}})$).

Informally, no one has a better alternative.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) &= w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) + (1-\tau)\cdot w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \\ &\approx w_{\text{EQ}}\cdot\{r_{\mathcal{F}}+[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})-r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\text{EQ}}\} + (1-\tau)\cdot w_{\text{DT}}\cdot\{r_{\mathcal{F}}+[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}})-r_{\mathcal{F}}]\cdot\beta_{\text{DT}}\}\ .\end{aligned} \tag{22.33}$$

Of course, corporate debt also has a default premium, so you cannot use the bank's *quoted* interest rate. You must use the *expected* interest rate (cost of capital), which is the estimate that the CAPM provides. Fortunately, for large companies with low default probabilities, the two are often close.

22·7.E. Other Capital Structure Related Tax Avoidance Schemes

Wall Street and Main Street employ armies of tax experts to help their clients avoid taxes, but this is really an arms race between the IRS (Congress) and investors. Investors keep looking for new tax avoidance schemes and the IRS tries to close these new loopholes. There are a large number of both past (now closed) and current tax avoidance schemes. Some of the more noteworthy remaining tax reduction schemes are as follows:

There are too many tax schemes in existence to list in just one book. They are also changing all the time. Here are some examples.

- Sometimes, high-tax firms may be able to purchase low-tax firms, and thereby immediately use the acquired firm's existing **net operating losses NOLs**.

  For example, the *Financial Times* reported on February 10, 1994, that the £2.5B GKN corporation made a hostile bid for the £300M Westland corporation, solely because GKN needed Westland's NOLs to reduce its own corporate taxes due.

- Compared to purchasing on credit, **leasing** can be a tax advantageous arrangement. If the borrower does not have enough income to efficiently use the interest deduction, someone else should be the official owner of the asset and "lease" it to the borrower, thereby capturing the full benefit of the interest deductability.

- Multinational corporations can shift difficult-to-value assets producing income from a high-tax country into a low-tax country. For example, corporate income taxes in **Switzerland** (federal and canton) can be as low as 7.8% (for holding companies) and as high as 25%. This contrasts with state and federal corporate income tax rates as high as 45% in the United States.

  For example, consider a company that has just developed a patent worth \$10 million per year. If the U.S. branch owned the patent, the firm would retain only $(1-45\%)\cdot\$10 = \$5.5$ million per year. If the Swiss branch owned the patent, the firm would retain up to $(1-7.8\%)\cdot\$10 = \$9.2$ million per year. Why stop at \$10 million? If the Swiss branch charged the U.S. branch \$20 million per year, the firm's U.S. tax obligations (resulting from profits from other businesses) would decline by \$9 million per year (45% times \$20 million), but Swiss tax obligations would increase by \$1.56 million. Still, this is a healthy \$7.4 million net gain.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

This tax-efficient capital transfer can also be accomplished with capital structure. For example, if the Swiss branch lent funds to the U.S. branch at an interest rate of 36% per year, rather than 6% per year, the effect would be a reduction of the firm's tax liabilities. For every $1,000 in excess interest paid (at the 36% instead of the 6% rate), the company would retain an extra (45% − 7.8% = 37.2%) $372 in profits. Companies can play similar, but less drastic, tax games by choosing the U.S. state and municipality in which they are headquartered.

The IRS is very much aware of these issues. For example, the *Wall Street Journal* reported on June 24, 2002 that the IRS is trying to prevent firms from shifting intellectual property, such as patents, to other countries in which corporations would have fewer taxes to pay.

Should we prevent corporate tax avoidance?

Before such corporate tax avoidance schemes outrage you too much, you should realize that you may even be lucky if tax lawyers and Congress help many U.S. companies succeed in escaping some of their tax burdens. First, corporations are just vehicles owned by investors. Corporate income taxes are really ultimately paid by the investors—often small dispersed investors, like yourself. Second, the United States has no monopoly on corporate locations. If U.S. taxes are too high, some corporations may just leave the United States, others may never come. Many financial services firms have already done so. U.S. disclosure and tax laws and regulations have built strong financial services centers in places like the Bermudas and Cayman Islands, and Switzerland. Greenwich Connecticut is the financial services center that the New York tax code has built. Many European countries have even stronger regulations than the United States and are in fact experiencing dramatic capital flight right now. Of course, this does not mean that the U.S. system cannot be improved. The lawyer-and-accountant-and-legislative-pork method does not seem like the most rational and efficient way to run an economy.

Many firms pay almost no taxes.

So, taking into account debt and other shelters, what tax rates do publicly traded companies ultimately pay? John Graham reports that a large number of firms—but not all—are fully cognizant of how to effectively manage their taxes. In fiscal year 2001, about 6,000 firms had effective tax rates of 5% or less! Between 1,500 and 2,000 firms had tax rates between 5% and 30%. And about 4,000 firms had tax rates between 30% and 40%. These are of course *average* tax rates, and not the *marginal* tax rates that would apply to one more dollar earned. But the nature of the distribution of tax rates (at the two extremes) suggests that the marginal tax rates are probably close to the average tax rates. That is, low-tax firms could likely continue to manage paying low taxes on any extra dollar earned, while high-tax rate firms would likely continue to pay high taxes.

Solve Now!

Q 22.11 *A firm has expected before-tax earnings of $20 per year forever, starting next year. It is financed with half debt (risk-free, at 5% per year) and half equity (at 10% per year), and this is eternally maintained. If the firm is in the 25% tax bracket, then what is its NPV?*

Q 22.12 *(Continued.) If this firm took on $50 in debt and maintained the debt load at $50 forever, rather than maintain a 50/50 debt-equity ratio, then what would this firm's value be?*

ANECDOTE: Stanley Toolworks and Foreign Domiciles
Stanley Toolworks, a hundred-year-old prominent Connecticut-based global manufacturer of tools, was in the process of locating its headquarters to the Bermudas in mid-2002. This would allow Stanley's *foreign* subsidiaries to escape U.S. income taxes. In the end, only unusually strong media attention, public outcries, and the threat of special legislation prevented this departure.

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

22·8. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- In the imperfect real world, the U.S. tax code favors debt over equity. Managers should take this corporate income tax advantage into account.
- The calculation of the income tax advantage can be done either through a full pro forma (via a financing scenario that subtracts the interest and thereafter the tax burden), through an adjusted WACC method, or through the APV method.
- Both the WACC and the APV method begin with cash flows *as if fully equity-financed and thus fully taxed*, which is why they need to put back the tax advantage derived from the presence of debt.
  - WACC does so by lowering the cost of debt capital:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PV} &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\text{WACC}}, \\ \text{WACC} &= \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) - \tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot w_{\text{DT}} \\ &= w_{\text{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) + w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot (1-\tau) \end{aligned} \tag{22.34}$$

  - APV does so by adding back the tax benefit:

$$\text{APV} = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{CF})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}})} + \frac{\mathcal{E}(\tau \cdot \overbrace{\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot \text{DT}}^{\substack{\text{interest} \\ \text{payment}}})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})}. \tag{22.35}$$

    If the firm's debt ratio will shrink over time, use the firm's debt cost of capital to discount the interest payments. If it will remain constant, use the firm's overall cost of capital. If it will increase, use the equity's cost of capital.

- These methods usually arrive at very similar but not exactly identical valuations. We often are not sure about the appropriate discount rate that should be applied to the future tax benefits in the APV formula; and the WACC formula cannot really deal with changing costs of capital or debt ratios over time. However, the errors that an incorrect discount rate on the tax shield would cause are usually dwarved by other simplifications and uncertainty in expected cash flows and discount rates.

  The one error you should never commit is to use the wrong expected cash flows in one of our three methods.
- A constant extra dollar of debt *forever* increases the value of the firm by the firm's marginal income tax rate. A \$100 eternal debt increase will create \$30 in value for a firm in the 30% marginal income tax bracket.
- In the imperfect real world, financing and investment decisions can no longer be separated: projects that add more debt capacity may add value through the financing channel.
- It is common and reasonable to combine the WACC formula or APV formula with the CAPM formula, even if this is not entirely correct.
- As a manager, you will not need a more complex formula than WACC, because other investor considerations are reflected in the cost of capital that the firm faces on its securities. However, not needing a formula does not mean that you do not need to think about how you can address these other investor considerations—quite the opposite.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

Solutions and Exercises

1. \$500 if designated an interest payment. \$750 if designated a dividend distribution, because only \$500 is left after corporate income taxes have been paid.

2. With an internal rate of return of 20%, Uncle Sam would see \$90,000 if you pay cash. If you finance with 80% debt, you will have \$40,000 in interest to deduct from \$200,000 in return, and thus pay taxes only on \$160,000. This lowers your tax bill to \$72,000. (Side Advice: If you borrow \$800,000, you may have to invest your \$800,000 elsewhere. If you do not choose tax-exempts, Uncle Sam may receive more taxes therefrom.)

3. The net subsidy is $\$90,000 - \$72,000 = \$18,000$ next year. At an appropriate cost of capital of 8%, this is an PV of \$16,667.

4. The WACC valuation is

$$\mathsf{PV}_0 = \frac{\$256}{1+12\%-25\%\cdot 30\%\cdot 8\%} = \$229.80 \ . \tag{22.36}$$

The firm has $\$229.80 \cdot 25\% = \$57.45$ of debt and \$172.35 in equity value today. Its APV is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{APV}_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathrm{CF}_1)}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} + \frac{\tau\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})\cdot \mathrm{DT}}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} \\ &= \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\%\cdot 8\%\cdot \$57.45}{1+12\%} = \$229.80 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{22.37}$$

5. The APV valuation is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{APV}_0 &= \frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathrm{CF}_{\mathsf{FM},1})}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} + \frac{\tau\cdot\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})\cdot \mathrm{DT}}{1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})} \\ &= \frac{\$256}{1+12\%} + \frac{30\%\cdot 8.7\%\cdot \$100}{1+12\%} = \$230.90 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{22.38}$$

Therefore, the \$100 debt is 43.3% of the firm's value today, and

$$\mathsf{PV}_0 = \frac{\$256}{1+12\%-43.3\%\cdot 30\%\cdot 8.7\%} = \$230.90 \ . \tag{22.39}$$

6. WACC for ratio, APV for dollar amounts. Look at the previous two questions. You cannot figure out the APV in the first question before you determine the WACC, and the opposite in the second question.

7. • The firm's overall cost of capital today is $6\%\cdot 1/3 + 12\%\cdot 2/3 = 10\%$. (Because $4\% + 3\%\cdot 2 = 10\%$, the beta is 2.) • The easy way is to recognize that the firm is sheltering $\$500\cdot 6\% = \$30$ through interest payments. If it refinanced with \$1,000, it could now shelter $\$1,000\cdot 8\% = \$80$. Uncle Sam would get to see an additional \$50 less in income, which means that the firm would pay $\$50\cdot 20\% = \$10$ less in income tax *next year*. • Now you need to determine the appropriate discount rate for \$10 in tax savings. For convenience, use the debt cost of capital: 8%. This means that our recapitalization increases firm value by $\$10/1.08 \approx \$9.26$. (If you prefer to use the overall firm cost of capital, you would obtain \$9.09.) • The question intentionally gave additional irrelevant information.

8. Because you know that the cost of capital if all financed by debt has to be the cost of capital for the firm, you know that the firm's overall cost of capital is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) = 15\% + 100\%\cdot 5\% = 20\%$. Now, this project will offer \$200 pretax profit in year 1. Discounted back at the firm's cost of capital, the NPV without taxes is $-\$300 + \$500/(1+20\%) = \$116.67$. But, if equity financed, the IRS will declare taxes due on \$200 of profit, or \$80. So, the NPV with taxes and all equity financed is $-\$300 + \$420/(1+20\%) = \$50$.

   Now, right after the investment, the firm has a value of $\$420/1.2 = \$350$. With debt of \$50 (\$100), the firm carries a debt load of around 15% (30%). The cost of debt capital formula given in the question suggests that $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) = 15\% + 15\%\cdot 5\% = 15.75\%$ (16.5%). (Note: the question is a bit ambiguous in that it does not tell you what to use as firm value. The 15% and 30% debt ratios are reasonable values, though.)

   Interest payments on \$50 (\$100) at a cost of capital of 15.75% (16.5%) are \$7.88 (\$16.50) *next year*. Facing a tax rate of about 40%, Uncle Sam would thereby subsidize the project to the tune of $40\%\cdot \$7.88 = \$3.15$ (\$6.60), which in today's value would be worth around $\$3.15/(1+20\%) \approx \$2.63$ ($\$6.6/1.2 \approx \$5.50$). Therefore, under APV, if financed with \$50 in debt (\$100 in debt), the project is worth $\$50 + \$2.63 = \$52.63$ ($\$50 + \$5.50$).

file=capctaxes.tex: RP

The cost of capital, if 15% of the firm is financed by debt at an interest rate of 15.75% is the solution to $15\% \cdot 15.75 + 85\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) = 20\% \to \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) = 20.75\%$. So, the WACC is given by the formula, $w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) + w_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot (1-\tau) = 85\% \cdot 20.75\% + 15\% \cdot 15.75\% \cdot (1-40\%) \approx 19.06\%$. Similarly, if \$100 is borrowed, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) = 21.5\%$, and $\mathsf{WACC} = w_{\mathsf{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}}) + w_{\mathsf{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}}) \cdot (1-\tau) = 70\% \cdot 21.5\% + 30\% \cdot 16.5\% \cdot (1-40\%) \approx 18.02\%$. The WACC based value is thus $-\$300 + \$420/(1+19.06\%) \approx \$52.76$. Note that you have made enough little assumptions and approximations that it would make little sense to now worry about being off by a little in the APV and WACC computations (\$52.76 and \$52.63).

9.

(a) The pro forma for a 100% equity financed firm is

	Income Statement			
		Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
	EBITDA (=Net Sales)	\$70	\$60	\$55
–	Depreciation	\$50	\$50	\$50
=	EBIT (=Operating Income)	\$20	\$10	\$5
–	Interest Expense	\$0	\$0	\$0
–	Corporate Income Tax	\$8	\$4	\$2
=	**Net income**	\$12	\$6	\$3
	Cash Flow Statement			
	Net income	\$12	\$6	\$3
+	Depreciation	\$50	\$50	\$50
=	**Operating Cash Flow**	**\$62**	**\$56**	**\$53**
	capital expenditures	–\$150	\$0	\$0
=	**Investing Cash Flow**	**–\$150**	**0**	**0**
	Economic Project Cash Flows (Operating CF+ Investing CF+ Interest)			
	Project Cash Flows	**–\$88**	**+\$56**	**+\$53**

(b) The IRR of our project solves

$$\frac{-\$88}{1+\mathsf{IRR}} + \frac{+\$56}{(1+\mathsf{IRR})^2} + \frac{+\$53}{(1+\mathsf{IRR})^3} = 0 \ . \tag{22.40}$$

Thus, the IRR of a purely equity financed project is 15.7%.

(c) The NPV of the purely equity financed project is

$$\mathsf{NPV} = \frac{-\$88}{1+18\%} + \frac{+\$56}{(1+18\%)^2} + \frac{+\$53}{(1+18\%)^3} = -\$2.10 \ . \tag{22.41}$$

This is in line with the fact that the project IRR of 15.7% is less than the 18% cost of capital.

(d) The cash flows would increase to $-\$88$, $+\$58$, and $+\$55$. The IRR would increase to 18.6%.

(e) The debt-financed pro forma would now be

	Income Statement			
		Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
	EBITDA (=Net Sales)	\$70	\$60	\$55
–	Depreciation	\$50	\$50	\$50
=	EBIT(=operating income)	\$20	\$10	\$5
–	Interest Expense	**\$0**	**\$5**	**\$5**
–	Corporate Income Tax	\$8	\$2	\$0
=	**Net income**	\$12	\$3	\$0
	Cash Flow Statement			
	Net income	\$12	\$3	\$0
+	Depreciation	\$50	\$50	\$50
=	Operating Cash Flow	**\$62**	**\$53**	**\$50**
	Capital Expenditures	–\$150	\$0	\$0
=	Investing Cash Flow	**–\$150**	**0**	**0**
	Economic Project Cash Flows (Operating CF + Investing CF + Interest)			
	Project Cash Flows	–\$150+\$62	+\$53+\$5	+\$50+\$5
	=	**–\$88**	**+\$58**	**+\$55**
	The Economics of Financing			
	Debt	+\$50	+\$5	+\$55
	Equity	+\$38	+\$53	+\$0

Not surprisingly, these are the same as our aforementioned cash flows, with a \$2 income-tax subsidy in years 2 and 3. So, the IRR is again 18.6%.

(f) The NPV of the debt-financed firm is

$$\text{NPV} = \frac{-\$88}{1+18\%} + \frac{+\$58}{(1+18\%)^2} + \frac{+\$55}{(1+18\%)^3} = +\$0.55 \ . \tag{22.42}$$

So, with the tax subsidy, this project becomes worthwhile.

(g) The APV of this project would be the value as-if-100%-equity-financed, which is –\$2.10 (Formula 22.41), plus the discounted tax subsidies in years 2 and 3. These have a value of

$$\text{Tax Subsidy} = \frac{\$2}{(1+18\%)^2} + \frac{\$2}{(1+18\%)^3} = \$1.44 + \$1.22 = \$2.66 \ . \tag{22.43}$$

Therefore, the APV would be $-\$2.10 + \$2.66 = \$0.56$.

(h) By APV, the expected tax subsidy would shrink from $\tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(IP) = 40\% \cdot \$5 = \$2$ per year to $\tau \cdot \mathcal{E}(IP) = 40\% \cdot \$4 = \$1.60$ per year. The expected value of the tax subsidy would therefore be

$$\text{Tax Subsidy} = \frac{\$1.60}{(1+18\%)^2} + \frac{\$1.60}{(1+18\%)^3} = \$2.12 \ . \tag{22.44}$$

The net project value would be about \$0.02.

(i) In year 0, the weight of the debt is $w_{\text{DT},0} = \$50/\$88 \approx 57\%$. But after year 2 and before year 3, the debt is expected to be 100% of the capital structure, so its weight in the capital structure is drastically changing each year. So, this firm is not at all a good candidate for WACC application.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Do not try to compute a weighted average cost of capital from the debt and equity internal rates of return (10% and 40%, respectively). If the debt would remain at 57% of the firm's capital structure, then the appropriate rate of return of equity would have to be around 30% so that the weighted cost of capital would come out to $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{FM}}) = w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) + w_{\text{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) = 18.6\%$. This is much lower than the equity IRR of 40% (which is the same as its expected rate of return from year 1 to year 2), because from year 2 to 3, the equity becomes a much smaller part of the firm. What bites you in this case is the fact that you have a strong term structure of investment weights.*

10. Do it!

11. The weighted average cost of capital (WACC) is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WACC} &= w_{\text{DT}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot (1-\tau) + w_{\text{EQ}} \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{EQ}}) \\ &= 50\% \cdot 5\% \cdot (1-25\%) + 50\% \cdot 10\% = 6.875\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{22.45}$$

The numerator has to be post corporate income tax; therefore, it is $(1-\tau)\cdot\text{CF} = \$15$. This is an annuity, therefore the NPV is

$$\text{PV} = \frac{\$15}{6.875\%} = \$218.18 \ . \tag{22.46}$$

12. The cost of capital for a fully equity financed firm without a tax subsidy would be 7.5%, because it had 50% debt at 5% and 50% debt at 10%. Therefore, the "as if fully equity financed" value is

$$\text{PV} = \frac{\$15}{7.5\%} = \$200.00 \ . \tag{22.47}$$

Now, we need to add back the tax subsidy. With \$50 in debt, risk-free and therefore with an interest rate of 5%, the interest payments would be $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{DT}}) \cdot \text{DT} = \$2.50$ per year. The taxes saved would be $\tau \cdot \$2.50 = \$0.625$, which is an eternal cash flow. At the interest rate of 5%, the value of the tax subsidy today is \$12.50. Therefore, the value of this firm is \$200+\$12.50= \$212.50.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

A. Advanced Appendix: The Discount Factor on Tax Obligations and Tax Shelters

On Page 553, I stated that it is common (but not unique) to use the firm's cost of capital in discounting the tax shelter. Let's find out why. Start with the firm in Table 22.2. To gain intuition about proper discount rates for tax payments and tax shelters, we must work an example in which claims can be risky, so that they can carry different costs of capital. The example will be easiest if the debt is risk-free, so that only the equity is risky. For convenience, assume that the firm's beta is positive, so the firm's equity cost of capital exceeds its debt cost of capital. Our revised scenario is in Table 22.5.

Table 22.5. Two Financing Scenarios for a Risky 1-Year Firm

Scenario EF: All Equity Financing.

	$\mathcal{E}$(Value)	Bad	Good
Before-Tax Return Next Year	\$280.00	\$250.00	\$310.00
Taxable Profits Next Year	\$80.00	\$50.00	\$110.00
Corporate Income Taxes (τ = 30%) Next Year	\$24.00	\$15.00	\$33.00
Owners Will Keep Next Year	\$56.00	\$35.00	\$77.00

Scenario DF: \$200 Debt Today at 11% for Promised Repayment of \$222. Rest is Levered Equity.

	$\mathcal{E}$(Value)	Bad	Good
Before-Tax Return Next Year	\$280.00	\$250.00	\$310.00
Interest Payments	\$22.00	\$22.00	\$22.00
Taxable Profits Next Year	\$58.00	\$28.00	\$88.00
Corporate Income Taxes (τ = 30%) Next Year	\$17.40	\$8.40	\$26.40
Equity Owners Will Keep Next Year	\$40.60	\$19.60	\$61.60
Equity+Debt Owners Will Keep Next Year	\$62.60	\$41.60	\$83.60

Tax Savings (Scenario EF vs. Scenario DF)

	$\mathcal{E}$(Value)	Bad	Good	
Before-Tax Return Next Year	\$280.00	\$250.00	\$310.00	↔ risky
Scenario 1 corporate income taxes	\$24.00	\$15.00	\$33.00	↔ risky
Scenario 2 corporate income taxes	\$17.40	\$8.40	\$26.40	↔ risky
Relative Net Tax Savings Next Year	\$6.60	\$6.60	\$6.60	↔ safe

We know the future tax-related cash flows. How do you discount them? Let's work a simple example with risky payoffs.

What should you use as the appropriate discount rate (cost of capital) for the future tax obligation (\$24 in EF, \$17.40 in DF) or for the relative tax shelter (the difference of \$6.60)? To answer this, we make the firm risky. Assume that the value of the firm with \$280 in expected profits will be either \$250 (bad) or \$310 (good) with equal probability. Therefore, the \$200 debt at 11% interest is risk-free. Because we have constructed it this way, you know that you can use the debt's (risk-free) cost of capital of 11% for any cash flow that does not covary with the firm's

outcome. And you would use a higher discount rate for any cash flow that covaries positively with the firm's outcome.

The tax payment is as risky as the firm, and thus warrants a higher cost of capital.

The bottom panel in Table 22.5 shows that the income tax obligation is risky and covaries with the firm's return under either financing scenario. Uncle Sam is basically a co-owner, partaking in the good and the bad times. So, you now know that you need to use a discount rate on the tax *obligation* that is higher than the risk-free rate.

For our 1-year, non-growing firm, the tax shelter is safer than the firm, and thus warrants a lower cost of capital.

But what is the cost of capital for the tax *shelter*? Table 22.5 shows that the tax savings (because of the debt) remain the same $6.60, regardless of the firm's performance. Indeed, we have constructed the example so that it would be easy to see that the debt payment and with it tax shelter that the owners get from the presence of debt does not depend on the firm's fortunes. The tax shelter is as safe as the firm's debt. Thus, you should use a discount rate on the tax *savings* that is the same as the one you use on the firm's debt.

Alas, we often use the firm's cost of capital also on the tax shelter. Why?

Nevertheless, it is common practice to apply the firm's cost of capital and not the debt's cost of capital to the firm's tax obligation. Is this an invitation to deliberately use incorrect discount factors in general? No, but it is a good and convenient working assumption in this particular context of discounting the tax shelter. Let me explain why.

1. In general, it is more important to get the discount rate right on larger amounts. If you wanted to get discount rates on individual component cash flows 100% right, why stop with the corporate tax shelter? Why not also determine individual discount rates for every other component of the company (taxes, depreciation, SG&A, marketing, advertising, furniture, paper clips, etc.)? This is not only impractical, but also beyond anyone's capabilities. More importantly, if you want to allow yourself to use a possibly incorrect discount factor, you have to convince yourself that any added valuation precision would be very modest.

   Worry more about the correct discount factor on big amounts.

   How big is the tax shelter relative to the cash flows? The cash flows are $280, the debt is $200. (This is unusually large. More typically, firms have debt ratios around 30%.) The interest paid is 11% thereof, or $22. You need to multiply this further by your corporate income tax rate of 30% to obtain the tax shelter $6.60. And now your "big" question is whether to discount this by the firm's cost of capital (say, 15%) or by the firm's debt cost of capital (say, 11%). This makes the difference between $5.95 and $5.74, which is 21 cents today on cash flows of $280 next year.

   Yes, you should definitely worry about the correct discount rate for the project's cash flows of $280. Yes, the presence and amount of the tax shelter is important. Yes, it would be nice to use the correct discount factor on the tax shelter, too. But, no, it will not make much difference whether you apply the firm's cost of capital or the debt cost of capital to the tax shelter.

2. The firm's overall cost of capital may in fact be more correct than the debt cost of capital, because the risk-free tax-shelter intuition does not easily generalize from the simple one-period scenario to many periods. The reason is that if your firm value doubles by next year, you can probably borrow twice as much then, and thus enjoy higher tax savings henceforth. If your firm follows such an intelligent dynamic borrowing strategy, the tax shelter obtained by debt financing will not remain constant, but will increase with the firm value, too. To compute the lifetime tax shelter afforded to your firm by its ability to take on more debt, you must therefore realize that intelligent capital structure policies will induce the dollar amount of debt (and thus the tax shelter) to also covary positively with firm value. This is why it is often sensible to discount the tax shelter not with the debt's cost of capital, but with the firm's cost of capital (or a discount rate somewhere in between).

   In a normal firm context, corporate debt policy will induce the tax shelter to vary with firm scale.

file=capctaxes.tex: LP

This is a nerdnote within a nerd appendix—how it works.

Because this is a nerd appendix, we may as well go through the argument with a numerical example. Think of a firm that operates for one year, and either doubles or disappears in the following year. It follows a dynamic debt policy so that its one-year debt and one-year-ahead tax shelter is always risk-free. Assume the risk-free rate on the debt is 10%. Further assume the firm's expected tax shelter is \$22 next year. If it doubles, both its risk-free debt and tax shelter will double, too. If it disappears, it will have no tax shelters.

How does the dynamic aspect influence the two-year ahead discount rate for the tax shelter? It would be wrong to discount the stream at the risk-free rate of 11% as $\$22/1.11 + \$22/1.11^2 \approx \$37.68$. Instead, the firm's stream of tax shelter value today is

$$\frac{\$22}{(1+11\%)} + \left[{}^1\!/_2 \cdot \frac{\$44}{[1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})]\cdot(1+11\%)} + {}^1\!/_2 \cdot \frac{\$0}{[1+\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})]\cdot(1+11\%)} \right] \tag{22.48}$$

What is $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$? Because the shelter cash flow \$0 or \$44 depends on the firm's performance in the first period, it cannot be the risk-free rate. Instead, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$ is related to the firm's cost of capital.

You can also think of collapsing our example into the combined PV of all future tax shelters that you will own as of next year. Depending on firm performance this year, next year you will either sit on shelter cash flows totaling of $\$44/1.11 + \$5 \approx \$44.64$. or \$22. Therefore, if you use the expected \$22 as a representative standin for the tax shelter in both future years, you cannot assume that the right interest rate is the risk-free interest rate. Again, because it depends on firm performance in the first year, a discount rate between the debt and the firm's cost of capital would be more appropriate.

Reasonable costs of capital for the tax shelter depend on the dynamic debt policy.

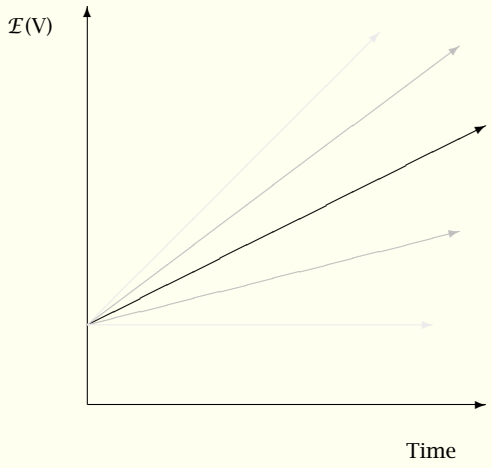
Figure 22.1 should help you to think about reasonable choices for the discount rate on the tax shelter. We assume that we are dealing with a typical firm, which tends to grow over time (upper left).

A Decreasing Debt Target The upper right graph shows a firm that plans to reduce its debt ratio over time. This is the case if a growing firm wants to retain the same absolute dollar interest payments. Such a firm would expect to save about the same dollar amount in taxes each year, regardless of firm performance. In this case, you should use some rate close to the debt cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$).

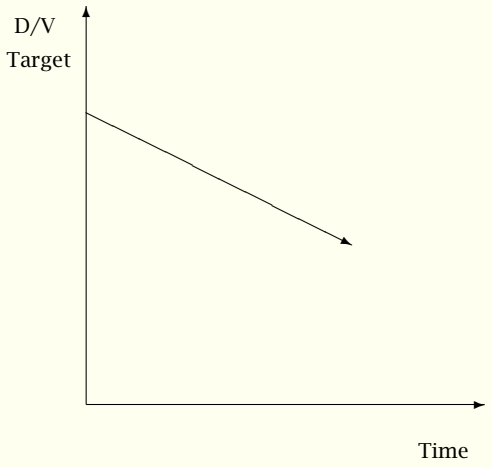
A Constant Debt Target The lower left graph shows a firm that plans to keep a constant debt target. (Many CFOs pay lip service to targeting constant debt ratios.) Firm growth will translate into more and more debt and thus into higher and higher dollar interest payments. Consequently, the tax shelter will grow and shrink with the value of the firm, which means that it will be exposed to about the same risk as the firm overall. In turn, this means that you should use some rate close to the firm's overall cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})$) to discount the tax shelter.

An Increasing Debt Target The lower right graph shows two firms with increasing debt targets. (This kind of debt policy is rare.) The firm with the discontinuous debt target might be a typical R&D project, which will initially provide no debt capacity and thus no debt tax shelter. Thereafter, if the R&D pays off, the firm has positive cash flows and can take on debt financing. The blue continuous line is a firm that wants to become smoothly more aggressive in its debt policy over time. The values of these tax shelters is even more highly correlated with the value of the firm than if the target is constant. Therefore, the tax shelter should be discounted even more aggressively. You should use some rate above the firm's overall cost of capital, perhaps something close to the equity cost of capital, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$.

Figure 22.1. Thinking About Proper Discount Rates For The Tax Shelter

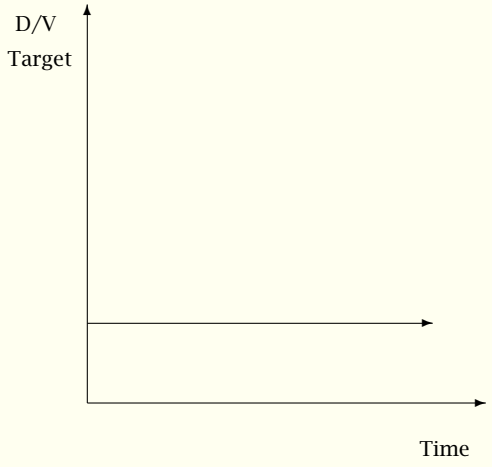


The background of the other three graphs: The typical firm value grows over time.



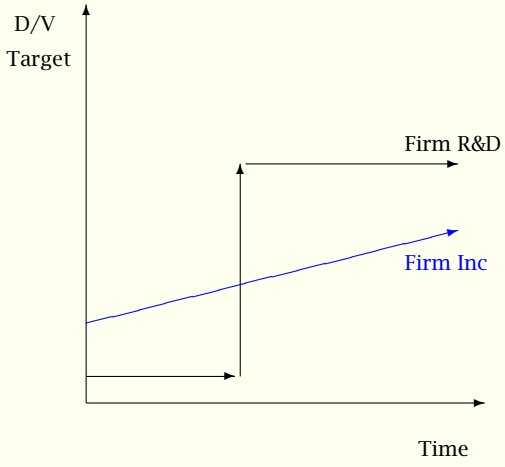
This firm plans to reduce its debt ratio over time, perhaps to keep its dollar debt and its interest payments constant.

⇒ **Use $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$ to discount the tax shelter.**



This firm plans to keep its debt ratio constant.

⇒ **Use $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})$ to discount the tax shelter.**



These two firms, called "R&D" and "Inc" plan to raise their debt ratios over time. Firm R&D wants to sharply increase its debt ratio only after it will have higher tax-deductible income.

⇒ **Use $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$ to discount the tax shelter.**

V is the firm's value. D is the firm's debt. D/V is the firm's debt ratio.
These scenarios illustrate cases in which the firm's leverage changes over time, which in turn influences the discount rate that should be applied to the tax shelter. For example, if the firm wants to keep a constant debt ratio over the years, then it will have more debt and therefore a higher debt tax shelter if the firm experiences good times in the first year. This means that the value of the future tax shelter covaries positively with the firm value in the first year. It is therefore not almost risk-free (as it was in our example in which the firm existed only for one year), but more risky (in fact, almost as risky as the firm is in its first year).
Fortunately, although it would be a first-order error to compute the wrong tax shelter, it is often a second-order error to use the wrong discount factor on the tax shelter. Yes, you should try to get it right anyway, but realize that getting other quantities right is often more important than agonizing whether you should use $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})$ or $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$.

Think about the appropriate discount rate on the tax shelter, but don't torture yourself to get it perfect.

In sum, I hope you are convinced that your overall project valuation will be robust with respect to moderate variations or errors in the choice of discount rate on the tax shelter. (I typically use whatever is most convenient, although I try to keep track of whether I think my assumptions overestimate or underestimate the true firm value.) You should worry primarily about the amount of the tax shelter, and only secondarily about whether the precise discount factor is the firm's cost of capital or the debt cost of capital. So, please, give yourself a break here!

IMPORTANT:

- *The discount rates on the tax obligations and on the tax shelter are usually not exact, but just reasonable and convenient approximations. The value consequences of reasonable errors are minor.*
- *It is common and usually reasonable to value tax liabilities at a discount rate equal to the firm's overall cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})$).*
- *For the tax shelter due to interest payments, assuming that the firm will grow over time, it is common and usually reasonable to*
  - *use the debt cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$) if the firm plans on a decreasing debt ratio;*
  - *use the firm cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{FM}})$) if the firm plans on a constant debt ratio;*
  - *use the equity cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$) if the firm plans on an increasing debt ratio.*

Taxes are important; we are only fudging the divisor, not the numerator!

Be aware that our entire discussion that we can allow ourselves some latitude was only about the discount factor. Importantly, the (expected) amount of the tax shelter itself is not unimportant. This also applies to the idiosyncratic risk in the expected tax shelter, a quantity that figures into the present value numerator of the tax shelter, not the denominator (the discount rate). For example, an R&D project may not generate any tax shelter half the time—in which case, the expected tax shelter (in the PV numerator) to be discounted would be something like

$$\text{Expected Tax Shelter} \;=\; 50\% \cdot \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Tax Shelter If R\&D is Successful}\\ \text{= Tax-Rate Times Interest Paid}\end{array}\right) + 50\% \cdot \$0 \quad . \tag{22.49}$$

CHAPTER 23

OTHER CAPITAL STRUCTURE CONSIDERATIONS

Personal Taxes, Bankruptcy Costs, Inside Information, Behavior

last file change: Mar 2, 2006 (10:59h)

last major edit: Apr 2005

Managers should consider corporate income taxes to be important determinants of capital structure—but not the only one. Personal income taxes, financial distress, agency considerations, and others can all play important roles. They are the subject of this chapter.

Corporate income taxes turn out to be unique in one respect: corporate income taxes distort the debt cost of capital. For example, with a corporate income tax rate of 40%, our corporation would not face the 10% interest rate that it would have to pay creditors, but instead consider the debt cost of capital to be only 6%. In contrast, the capital structure considerations that we shall cover in this chapter work through different conduits—they change the appropriate cost of capital that our corporation has to pay. In other words, they can influence our cost of equity capital $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$, our cost of debt capital $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$, or both. Moreover, their importance is often not easy to quantify—but this does not make them any less important than corporate income taxes.

23·1. The Role of Personal Income Taxes and Clientele Effects

Firms can reduce their cost of capital if they can reduce their investors' taxable income.

We focus only on the U.S. system, although many other countries have similar tax codes. The corporate income taxes that we discussed in the previous chapter are just one side of what Uncle Sam receives: he also wants his share from investors' income. Should corporate managers think about their investors' personal taxes? Yes! It would not be smart to economize on corporate income tax through debt financing on behalf of our investors if Uncle Sam then were to take away 99% of any interest payments the instant they exit the corporation and our investors receive them. Our owners would be left with very little. Therefore, this section will show how investors' personal income taxes can influence the optimal corporate capital structure. The interplay between personal and corporate taxes creates both investor clienteles and firm clienteles: small growth firms should have more equity in their capital structure than large cash-rich firms; and highly-taxed individual investors should invest more in equity-financed firms than tax-exempt investors, while tax-exempt investors should hold more corporate bonds.

23·1.A. Background: The Tax Code For Security Owners

The type of income matters: capital gains income is better for taxable investors than interest income.

When investors receive cash from the company, the form in which this cash arrives matters:

Ordinary Income is taxed at relatively high ordinary income tax rates (up to 35%), and is very difficult to shelter from taxes.

Interest Income is basically taxed like ordinary income.

Dividend Income is taxed at a lower rate. As of 2005, if the corporation has already paid taxes on its earnings, its dividends are considered "qualified," which reduces the personal tax rate required to be paid by the dividend recipients. Individuals in the 10% and 15% ordinary income tax brackets pay a 5% dividend tax, while individuals in higher tax brackets pay a 15% dividend tax. Giving investors credit for dividends paid from already taxed earnings is similar to how the United Kingdom and many other countries have taxed dividends for a long time. However, in the United States, this is not a stable situation. The current dividend taxation scheme was put in place by the Bush tax cuts of 2003—but dividends are scheduled to revert to being taxed at ordinary income tax rates after 2008, just as they were before 2003.

Capital Gains are generally the most tax-advantaged form of income. In 2005, short-term capital gains (on financial assets that you hold for less than 1 year and real assets that you hold for less than 3 years) are federally taxed at 28% (again in 2005), while long-term capital gains are taxed at the same statutory rate as qualifying dividends (i.e., 15% for high-income tax investors). One exception is if the investor is a corporation—it is then taxed at a higher capital gains rate of 25%.

Check the 25% rate. It may be higher.

The advantage of capital gains is not only the relatively low statutory tax rate, but also the tax applicability. Unlike interest or dividend income, capital gains can be offset by capital losses. Moreover, capital gains are not incurred on an annual basis, but only when they are realized. Therefore, the best form of income for investors is long-term capital gains.

Details, details, details...

The tax treatment of financial securities—and especially bonds—is an ongoing cat-and-mouse game between the IRS and corporate tax lawyers. For example, there are some very intricate tax rules on how capital gain income and interest income on bonds must be computed. Such regulations prevent firms from paying out interest income in a form that makes them capital gains for their investors. (The specific loophole that these regulations originally closed were **discount bonds**.) In addition, there are hundreds of special clauses—some pure corporate subsidies in the tax codes (and some targeted at one qualifying company only!), and others penalizing particular situations for no obvious reason. We just noted that even the dividend tax treatment is "sunset" in 2008—plus, the tax code may change every other year before and

after 2008, too! So, it is more important for you to learn how to think about taxes than it is for you to know the detailed tax clauses and rates. Any details will likely be outdated within 10 years—if not sooner.

23·1.B. The Principle Should Be "Joint Tax Avoidance"

The owners care not about where taxes are paid (corporation or personal), just that as little as possible is paid in total.

The main point of this section is that managers, who want to best represent corporate owners, should consider not only their own corporate income taxes, but also their investors' personal income taxes. To see this, pretend that you are the owner of a corner shop ("the corporation") and you are also its manager. Do you care whether the IRS taxes you right at the cash register of your corporate business, or taxes you personally when you move the cash from the corporate register into your personal pocket? Or do you care how much you can ultimately put into your pocket? The finance premise is that you care only about the money in your pocket that you have left over *after* Uncle Sam has had his dip from both. You want to reduce the tax obligation both at the cash register and at your personal pocket. Corporate investors are no different from your corner shop. They really care only about their after-tax personal income in the end, not about whether the corporation pays taxes or they themselves pay taxes.

IMPORTANT:

- *Both corporate and personal taxes that can be avoided translates into cash that the owners can keep.*
- *Reducing the total taxes ultimately collected by Uncle Sam (now and in the future) increases the value of the firm.*

How Personal Taxes Enter The Firm's Cost of Capital

Investors are the corporate owners. Personal taxes matter to the cost of capital demanded by investors.

How do corporate managers find the personal income tax rate applicable to their investors? Importantly, they may not need to bother finding it. This is because whatever the personal income taxes may be, they manifest themselves in the cost of capital that investors demand from the firm. When a firm offers securities that cause a lot of personal tax liabilities, then investors will demand a higher expected rate of return. Securities that cause no personal tax liabilities will be snapped up by our investors even at lower expected rates of return.

Personal taxes do not change the WACC or APV formulas.

How do personal taxes enter the corporate cost of capital formula, i.e., the WACC formula in 22.18 and the APV formula in 22.6? The answer is that *the formulas themselves do not change*. You can continue to use them. That is, as long as you use the two formulas on the "after-corporate-income-tax cash flows as if 100% equity financed" (and not on the "after-corporate-income-tax and after-personal-income-tax cash flows, as if 100% equity financed and fully taxed at both corporate and personal level"), the formulas remain the right ones to use. You can think of your investors' personal income taxes only as influencing the cost of capital inputs into these two formulas—specifically, the appropriate expected rates of return on debt $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$ and equity $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$ that investors demand. (These are the *before*-personal income tax rates of return, as you will see in the next paragraph.)

An example of how to think about personal income taxes.

An example will make this clearer. Assume that the equilibrium is such that investors demand an after-tax expected rate of return of 6% to hold risky equity capital. If the effective personal income tax rate on equity is 50%, then the market equilibrium would have shareholders demand and receive an expected rate of return of $\mathcal{E}(r_{\mathsf{EQ}}) = 12\%$ from the corporation, because $(1 - 50\%)\cdot 12\% = 6\%$. The 12% is the input to the WACC and APV formulas—the rate of return that investors demand before they have to pay their personal taxes. (The 6% rate of return after-personal income tax is what matters to investors, but it does not show up numerically in either formula.)

An example of how to think about a cut in personal income taxes.

How should you as a CFO adjust for the effects of changes in the personal taxation of investors (e.g., the Bush dividend tax cuts of 2003)? For argument's sake, presume that the effective personal income tax rate on equity drops from 50% to 25%. At what rate will the corporation now be able to finance projects? Our investors demand an expected after-tax rate of return of 6%, so at an expected rate of return of $\mathcal{E}(r_{\text{EQ}}) = 8\%$, they will again come out with their required $(1 - 25\%) \cdot 8\% = 6\%$ expected rate of return. From the perspective of the corporation, the necessary and appropriate cost of capital $\mathcal{E}(r_{\text{EQ}})$ in the formulas would have dropped from 12% to 8%. (Of course, this is a simplification. The tax cuts may also change other alternatives available to investors. They could attract more firms and investors into this market, too, which could force the appropriate equilibrium after-tax expected rate of return on equity away from 6%, too.)

IMPORTANT:

- *The* WACC *or* APV *formulas from Chapter 22 remain applicable in the presence of personal income taxes.*
- *Personal income taxes are visible to corporate managers in the cost of capital that they have to pay investors in order to obtain financing. Put differently, they manifest themselves in the expected-rates-of-return inputs to the* WACC *and* APV *formulas.*

In the real world, the financial markets provide managers with costs of capital that reflect not only personal taxes, but also a host of other investor concerns that we will discuss next—but the WACC and APV formulas always remain applicable.

23·1.C. Tax Clienteles

Your Problem — How to Minimize Total IRS Receipts

Investors should care only about value today!

Before we discuss *how* to minimize taxes, should we not weigh doing so (usually by financing with more corporate debt) against such concerns as earnings dilution or the riskiness of the equity? Worrying about these concerns too much is a mistake that the financially naïve often make. The correct view is that reported earnings per sé are a less important concern. Instead, what really matters is the after-tax money that investors get to keep in the end. To the extent that Uncle Sam receives less money, owners ultimately get more money. It is money that ultimately matter to them, not any ephemeral concerns about the debt-equity ratio or the risk split-up or the earnings dilution, or any of a hundred other reasons sometimes given by management. The capital markets are smart enough to know what really matters—money to investors. (There is also good empirical evidence that capital markets indeed appreciate lower income taxes, and reward their reduction with a higher market value.)

Companies can shift tax burdens from themselves to their investors and vice-versa. Distributions in interest save firms money, but not investors. Distributions in capital gains save investors money, but not firms.

You now know the principle of joint tax avoidance, but you do not yet know how to implement it. You know that as manager acting on behalf of your corporate owners, you should try to arrange the capital structure so as to minimize the sum of personal and corporate income taxes, not just your own corporate income tax. You also know that investors cannot shelter interest income, can modestly shelter dividend income, and can easily shelter capital gains income. At this point, you should also realize that you face a dilemma:

- If you plan to pay cash as interest income, you will save on your own corporate income tax—but your investors will face the full brunt of Uncle Sam (and thus demand a relatively higher expected rate of return).
- If you plan to convert cash into capital gains by reinvesting retained earnings, you will pay full corporate income taxes—but your investors can then avoid most personal taxes (and thus demand relatively lower expected rates of return).

Complication: Different investors face different personal tax rates.

To make matters even more interesting, you have to be concerned that, in real life, not every investor faces the same tax rate. There are low-tax investors, like tax-exempt charities and pension funds, who pay low or no (personal) taxes on both dividend and interest distributions. And there are high-tax investors, like most retail investors, who pay especially high taxes on interest income, medium-high taxes on dividends, and lower taxes on capital gains. What should you do?

SimCity Live!

The best way to understand what you should do is to presume for the moment that you are a puppeteer, controlling the private economy. Your opponent is the IRS. Your four pieces are:

1. High-tax corporations—like PepsiCo or R.J.R. Nabisco, bulging with earnings. Often, these are mature "value" firms.
2. Low-tax corporations—like Itar in 1985, a shell company with large tax-loss carryforwards or net operating losses; or Nanotech, a developer of nano-technology with virtual earnings. Growth firms are often low-tax corporations.
3. High-tax investors—like retail investors earning over $100,000 per year.
4. Low-tax or tax-exempt investors—like a pension fund or the money in a tax-advantaged retirement account, like a 401-K.

These are not perfect classifications, because even low-tax investors must eventually pay some taxes, and even low-tax corporations may run out of tax-shelters (or they can immediately use up all their tax credits and thereby become high-tax companies!). But this classification serves us well in thinking about the problem. How would you arrange your pieces? Would you have the high-tax corporation finance with debt or equity? Would you have the low-tax investor own the high-tax corporation or the low-tax corporation?

Your Solution — Rearranging Clienteles

Who should own what is only interesting if tax-exempt investors are not in practically unlimited supply—or else they would own everything.

Clearly, this would not be a difficult problem if 99% of all investors were tax-exempt—you could make all highly taxed corporations issue debt (and thereby avoid corporate income taxes). Neither corporations nor the almost entirely tax-exempt investor sector would end up paying any tax. Corporations would not have to compensate investors for personal taxes, and corporations could offer bonds with the same yield as equivalently risky but tax-exempt entities. However, low-tax investors are not in unlimited supply. The NYSE's Factbook reports that there was $11 trillion in total equities outstanding in 2002, of which 49.8% was held by all institutional investors, 36% by retail investors, and 11% by foreign investors. Almost half of the institutional money, a total 21.5% of the equities market, were tax-exempt pension funds. So, tax-exempt institutions are indeed a force, but also a limited one.

"Clientele effects" mean different firms attract different investors. Carried to extremes, Uncle Sam might not get anything.

With a limited number of tax-exempt investors, as puppeteer with the task of minimizing the IRS' take and maximizing your private sector take, you should sort your pieces into the following clienteles:

ANECDOTE: Tax Reductions for the Needy? For-Profit Corporations with No Tax Obligations

Are all cash-cow corporations in a high marginal tax bracket? The Washington Post reported a study by the Institute on Taxation and Economic Policy which showed that 41 companies not only owed no taxes, but received money back in at least one of the three years studies—1996–1998—although they reported a total of $25.8 billion in pretax profits. 24 companies—nearly one in 10 studied—received tax rebates in 1998 alone, including such household names as Texaco Inc., Chevron Corp., PepsiCo Inc., MCI WorldCom Inc., Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co. and General Motors Corp. Texaco, for example, received a tax rebate of $67.7 million, which meant that it paid taxes at a rate of negative 37.2 percent on the $182 million in profit it reported in 1998. In dollar terms, the study found that tax breaks enabled the companies to reduce their taxes by $98 billion over the three years, with 25 companies receiving almost half of that amount. General Electric Co. topped the list, with $6.9 billion in breaks, which cut its tax bill by 77 percent over the three years. A G.E. spokesman also questioned the report's methodology, noting that of the $6.9 billion in breaks cited, $2.4 billion was deferred taxes "that we will pay."

The twenty-four companies that payed less than zero in federal income taxes in 1998 were

Company	1998 Profit	1998 Tax	1998 Rate
Lyondell Chemical	$80.0	-$44.0	-55.0%
Texaco	$182.0	-$67.7	-37.2%
Chevron	$708.0	-$186.8	-26.4%
CSX	$386.6	-$102.1	-26.4%
Tosco	$227.4	-$46.7	-20.6%
PepsiCo	$1,583.0	-$302.0	-19.1%
Owens&Minor	$46.1	-$7.9	-17.1%
Pfizer	$1,197.6	-$197.2	-16.5%
J.P. Morgan	$481.1	-$62.3	-12.9%
Saks	$83.0	-$7.9	-9.5%
Goodyear	$400.7	-$33.2	-8.3%
Ryder	$227.5	-$16.4	-7.2%
Enron	$189.0	-$12.5	-6.6%
Colgate-Palmolive	$348.5	-$19.6	-5.6%
MCI WorldCom	$2,724.2	-$112.6	-4.1%
Eaton	$478.8	-$18.0	-3.8%
Weyerhaeuser	$405.0	-$9.5	-2.3%
General Motors	$952.0	-$19.0	-2.0%
El Paso Energy	$383.7	-$3.0	-0.8%
WestPoint Stevens	$142.6	-$1.2	-0.8%
MedPartners	$49.6	-$0.4	-0.7%
Phillips Petroleum	$145.0	-$1.1	-0.7%
McKesson	$234.0	-$1.0	-0.4%
Northrop Grumman	$297.7	-$1.0	-0.3%
Total	$11,953.0	-$1,272.9	-10.6%

file=caprest.tex: RP

High-Tax Profitable Firms: Make your "cash cow" value firms in the highest tax bracket issue debt, so that their cash flows can be paid out as interest, thereby avoiding the high corporate income tax.

High-tax, profitable firms should pay via interest (thus, have debt).

Low-Tax Investors: Make your tax-exempt investors hold this corporate debt, so that the interest receipts remain untaxed at the recipient level. (If you instead made your individual investors hold this debt, Uncle Sam would be better off, and you would be worse off.)

Low-tax investors should hold the debt.

You still have low-tax firms and high-tax investors to allocate. What can you do with them?

High-Tax Investors: Make your high-tax individual investors hold stocks instead of bonds. They will then either receive capital gains (taxed very little) or dividends (taxed just a little more). This way, your high-tax investors will suffer only fairly low tax penalties, too.

High-Tax investors should hold the equity.

Low-Tax Firms: Make your growth firms and other firms in the lowest corporate tax bracket finance themselves with equity, not with debt. You need this to satisfy the demand for equity by your high-tax investors. You can make your low-tax firms use their cash flows to reinvest in the corporation, repurchase their shares, or pay dividends (but only until 2007!). In any case, it would allow these firms' predominantly high-tax investors not to suffer much in tax. (If you instead made your low-tax firms finance themselves with debt, the firms would have little use for the corporate income tax shelter provided by debt, at least compared to high corporate tax firms—and your high-tax investors would have nothing to buy.)

Low-tax, unprofitable firms should pay via share repurchases (thus, have equity).

For simplicity, assume that the world is risk-neutral, so that you do not have to worry about higher costs of capital for equity than for debt.

Figures 23.1 and 23.2 try to illustrate the best puppeteering choices for firms and investors—and Uncle Sam's consequent take. All the numbers and tax rates are illustrative only, and not exact. We assign 40% as the ordinary income tax rate for high-tax companies and for high-tax investors' interest receipts. We assign 20% as the high-tax investors' tax on dividend receipts *if* the firm has paid enough in taxes (so investors receive a tax credit). And we assign 10% as the effective capital gains tax rate—partly, because it can be deferred and offset, and partly because the statutory rate is lower. Finally, we fudge some numbers to reflect other freedoms—for example, a firm that reinvests its money may claim that the reinvestment is necessary maintenance and thus not income, or it may receive tax credits for investing (a common situation). Thus, we assign only a 20% effective corporate income tax rate to cash used for reinvestment. Low-tax firm may not mean zero-tax firm—even tax credits have a value, so there is an opportunity cost to using up tax credits today. So, we assign a 10% income tax rate to cash that adds to earnings, and a 5% income tax rate to reinvested cash with its investment/maintenance tax credit.

Illustrative Numbers to show our best allocations.

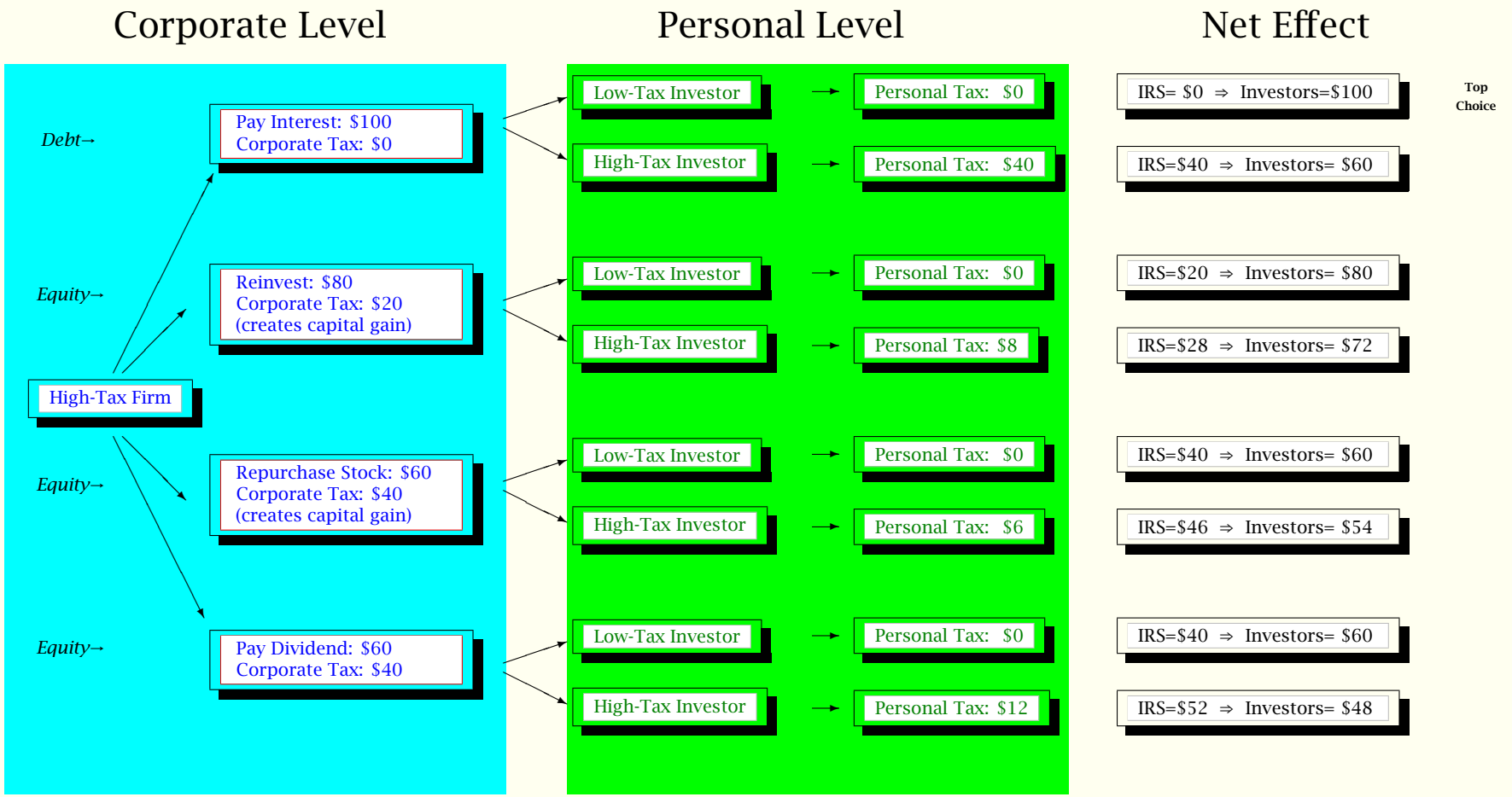
Figures 23.1 shows that the high-tax firm can pay debt from pre-tax earnings without incurring any tax penalty. If the firm reinvests all cash, we have assigned it our 20% effective corporate income tax rate. Investors get \$80 in the form of capital gains. If these are taxed investors, they suffer only a 10% income tax rate (in present value) on this gain, for a net personal tax obligation of \$80· · 10% = \$8. If the firm instead uses the money to repurchase stock, it can do so only from after-tax money. So, the IRS collects \$40 in ordinary corporate income tax. Investors pay 10% capital gains tax on \$60 in share repurchases (i.e., \$6) and twice this on dividends (\$12). Clearly, the best choice here is the top line—the clientele effect we discussed earlier, in which the IRS receives no money.

Do the high-tax firm first.

The low-tax firm in Figure 23.2 can no longer use our low-tax investors—we have already used them up in Figure 23.1. Focus on our high-tax investors. They pay 10% on capital gains, and 25% rather than 20% because the firm has not paid income taxes—under the Bush dividend tax plan, the investor does not receive much of a tax credit.

Do the low-tax firm next.

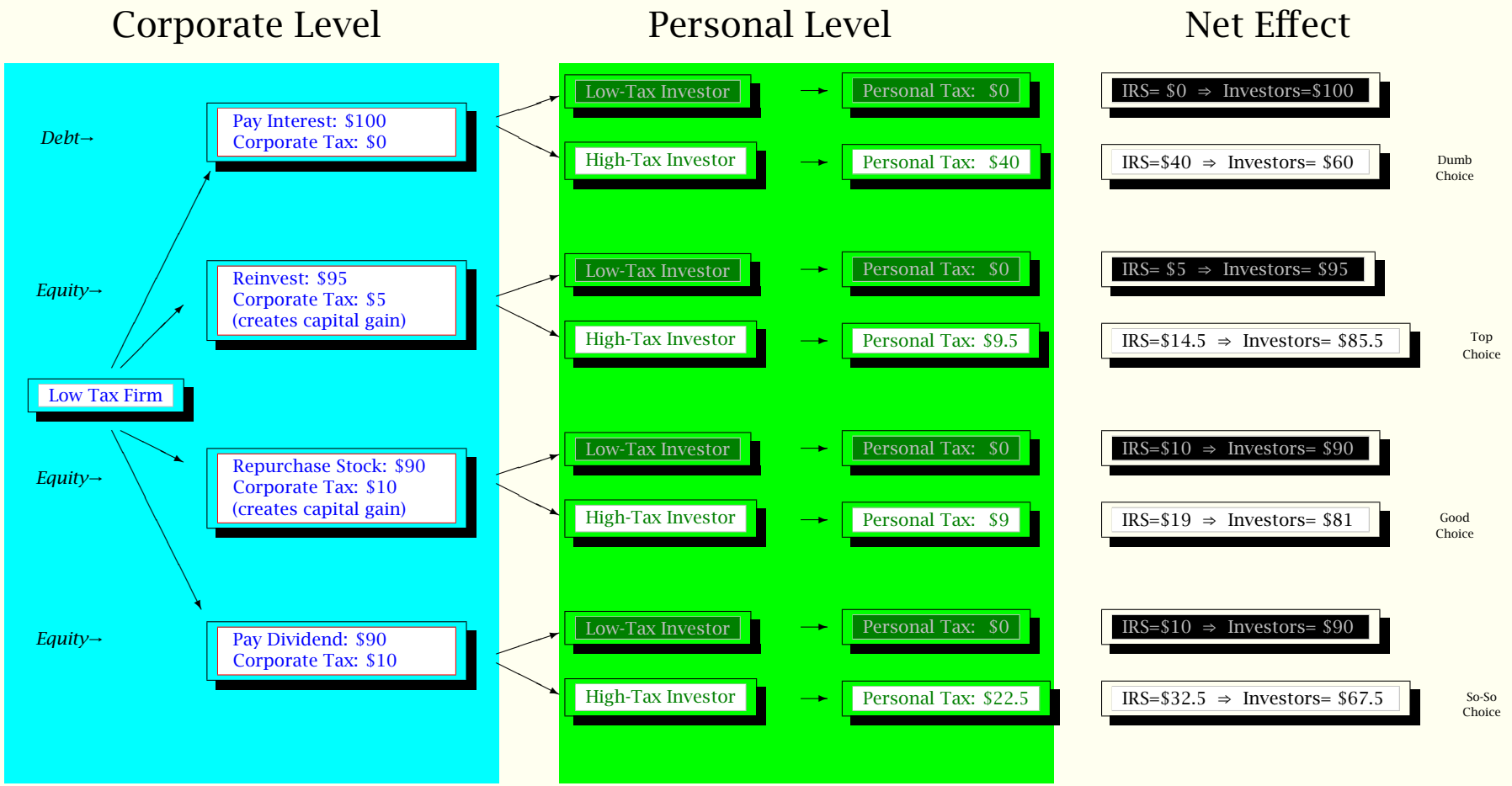
Table 23.1. Taxation Chain of a High Tax Firm



A high-tax firm may be a value firm with lots of earnings and few deductions, such as R.J.R. Nabisco. A low-tax investor may be a tax-exempt pension fund. A high-tax investor may be a typical retail investor.

All numbers are illustrative and not exact! The firm has $100 in cash. Firm Level: If paid as interest, the full $100 can be paid out. If reinvested, some investments and/or maintenance create tax credits. If paid out to shareholders, the firm incurs the full corporate income tax obligation. Personal Level: Low-tax investors never pay. High-tax investors effectively pay 10% on capital gains (in PV terms), 20% on dividend receipts, and 40% on interest receipts.

Table 23.2. Taxation Chain of a Low Tax Firm



A low-tax firm may be a firm with seemingly unlimited tax-loss carryforwards or a growth firm that is unlikely to earn a profit for many years to come. A low-tax investor may be a tax-exempt pension fund. A high-tax investor may be a typical retail investor.

All numbers are illustrative and not exact! The firm has $100 in cash. Dark boxes indicate that we have already used up our low-tax investors on high-tax firms, so that there are few or no low-tax investors left.
Firm Level: Low-tax firms pay no (debt) or almost no corporate income tax (other forms). Personal Level: High-tax investors effectively pay 10% on capital gains (in PV terms), 25% on dividend receipts, and 40% on interest receipts. (The Bush tax cut of 2002 requires the firm having paid dividends, so the dividend tax rate is above the 15% rate after corporate credit.)

file=caprest.tex: RP

file=caprest.tex: LP

Can you do better?

Now, put the two figures together: In sum, our puppets are paying \$9.5 in taxes. Can you find a combination that is better? No! This is the best puppeteering that you can do!

Market Prices as Puppeteers

The extreme tax avoidance is illustrative, but not realistic.

In the real world, *you are not the puppeteer—market prices (for capital) are*! This is what capitalist markets are really good at—they can allocate resources to their best use, and the best use of capital here is where it avoids paying taxes. By adjusting the required costs of capital on debt and equity, capital markets induce investors and firms to sort themselves to where frictions—such as tax losses—are the lowest. (If the market did not sort, you could make money from better rearranging firms and investors by saving on aggregate taxes.) Here is an example of how prices could adjust to accomplish clientele sorting:

Cash Cow Firm The market prices have adjusted so that a firm in the 40% income tax bracket expects a 10% rate of return before corporate income taxes.

Corporate Level

- If it pays out all net cash flow in capital gains, it must pay corporate income tax, and can only offer a 6% rate of return.
- If it pays out all net cash flow in interest, it can pay out the full 10% rate of return.

Personal Level

- A tax-exempt investor can receive 10% in income from this company.
- A 30% taxable investor can receive 7% in income from this company.

Growth Firm The market prices have adjusted so that a firm in the 0% income tax bracket expects an 8% rate of return before corporate income taxes.

Corporate Level

- If it pays out in capital gains, it can offer an 8% rate of return.
- If it pays out in interest, it can still offer only the 8% rate of return—the firm already pays no tax, so deducting interest payments does not help any further.

Personal Level

- A tax-exempt investor can receive 8% in income from this company.
- A 30% taxable investor does not realize capital gain, and thus can keep close to 8% in income from this company.

The result of firm prices, which create such expected rates of returns, will be that tax-exempt investors will decide to invest with the debt-financed cash cow firms offering a 10% expected rate of return (rather than 8% that they could get from the growth firms); and the taxable investors will prefer to invest with the growth firms, where they can earn a rate of return of 8% (rather than the 7% that they could receive from the debt-financed cash cow firm). The financial market has become the puppeteer!

Other forces are also at work, so this is just a partial model.

Of course, in the real world, tax-avoidance is just one force at work—though it is a very important one. In the real world, there are many different types of investors, and they do want to diversify across many different companies. There are also other reasons why tax-exempt investors do not hold only or all of high-corporate-tax firm's debt; reasons why high-tax corporate tax firms have equity in their capital structures; reasons why taxable investors hold debt; and reasons why low-tax bracket firms have debt. But you should now understand the tax rationale for how expected rates of returns will sort firms and investors to minimize taxes. The ultimate effect, from your corporate managerial perspective, is that clientele effects work at reducing the effective personal income tax rates, especially on interest payments. There is good empirical evidence that the tax-clientele ownership effects are important. For example, corporate bonds are indeed overwhelmingly owned by tax-exempt institutions. But the clientele income tax reduction is also not be perfect, which is why corporations find that their bonds have to pay higher yields than they would in a world without any taxes—an effect that will enter the WACC formula in the relative costs of $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$ and $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$.

DIGGING DEEPER: *In equilibrium, security yields and investor holdings are jointly determined, not sequentially as indicated by this discussion. But, profit seeking means that in equilibrium, proper sorting will take place. If tax-exempt investors were to sort themselves into the wrong stocks, the yields on corporate interest-bearing securities would increase, and tax-exempt investors should find it irresistible to pass up on corporate bonds (which, in order to be purchased by taxable retail investors, would really have to offer high rates of return). Tax-exempts would find it in their interest to sell their equities and move into these bonds. In equilibrium, dividend and interest-bearing securities should have lower pre-tax rates of return and higher post-tax rates of return than zero-dividend stocks.*

But even in the United States, with its armies of academic finance researchers, taxes remain a complex and empirically unresolved issue. Academics are still debating who benefits most from tax arbitrage—dividend-paying issuers or tax-exempt investors. If there are many tax-exempt institutions to compete with one another for the privilege of conducting tax arbitrage, firms could borrow at rates as if all their investors were tax-exempt. Yet, if there are too many firms paying dividends, they will compete to pay a premium to find tax-exempt institutions, up to and including the cost of paying taxes—and it would be the tax-exempt investors who would benefit most from their tax-exempt status. As always, the truth is probably in the middle, where the tax-arbitrage benefits are shared by tax-exempt investors and taxed firms.

Can the personal income tax rate enter a modified WACC formula?

I have to admit to one small sin: I have made the cost of debt and equity capital a "deus ex machina"—a number that you, as a corporate manager, should learn from the capital markets. But you can ask where these costs of capital for debt and equity really come from. I have given you the intuition: personal income taxes matter but clientele effects reduce their bites. I have asked you to think about the personal tax issues qualitatively, not quantitatively, and I have told you that reducing your investors' effective personal tax burden will result in a lower cost of financing ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{EQ}})$ and $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathsf{DT}})$) for your company. Quantitatively, I have advised you that, as a corporate manager, you should work with "as if equity financed and fully corporate income taxed" cash flows, which are then adjusted with a WACC that reflects your corporate income tax rate. I have not advised you to work with "as if equity financed and fully corporate income taxed *and personal income* taxed" cash flows, in which case you would need a WACC that reflects both your corporate income tax rate and your investors' personal income tax rate. The latter would have dug down one more layer of depth, but it is one that I do not believe to be very productive for most corporate managers. As a corporate manager, you would have to determine the effective personal income tax rates on both debt and equity financing, and the clientele effects in equilibrium make these effective tax rates much lower than the statutory tax rates (for ordinary taxable investors). You would have to know your own effective investor clientele, which in equilibrium depends on the size of the various corporate sectors and investor sectors—an almost impossible task. Few managers attempt it, and in my opinion rightly so.

Solve Now!

Q 23.1 *Explain the (personal and corporate) tax treatments if a company pays its operating cash flow in interest, repurchase, or dividends.*

Q 23.2 *Would you expect large, stable firms to be predominantly held by pension funds or by individuals? Would you expect young, growing firms to be predominantly held by pension funds or by individuals?*

file=caprest.tex: LP

23·2. Operating Policy Distortions: Behavior in Bad Times (Financial Distress)

Personal income taxes are not the only reason why firms should not necessarily be highly levered, thereby saving on corporate income taxes? Too much debt can make it more likely that a firm will not be able to meet its repayment obligations and go bankrupt. This can create a whole variety of problems, both before and after a possible bankruptcy, that may limit the amount of debt that firms may want to take on.

23·2.A. The Tradeoff in the Presence of Financial Distress Costs

Table 23.3. Illustration of Deadweight Costs in Financial Distress

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/2	1/2		
Project	FM	\$60	\$160	\$110	\$100
Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$55					
Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	\$55	\$55	\$55	\$50
Equity	EQ	\$5	\$105	\$55	\$50
Capital Structure MD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$94 and \$10 Deadweight Costs					
		Distress			
Bond(FV=\$94)	DT	\$60 −\$10 = \$50	\$94 \$94	\$77 −\$5 =\$72	\$70 −\$4.55 =\$65.46
Equity	EQ	\$0	\$66	\$33	\$30

The cost of capital in this example is 10% for all securities, which is equivalent to assuming risk-neutrality.

Let's rework the perfect markets example from Table 21.1.

A firm that has debt in its capital structure is more likely to experience financial distress or even go bankrupt. Table 23.3 shows how such financial distress can matter. If the firm has little debt, as in capital structure LD with its face value of \$55, the firm can always fully meet its debt obligations. Consequently, we assume that it will not experience financial distress, and our LD scenario still matches our perfect world from Table 21.1. However, if the firm has much debt, as in capital structure MD with its face value of \$94, the firm may not pay creditors all it has promised. If the world were perfect, as it had been in Table 21.1, this bankruptcy condition would merely change the payoff pattern. Everyone (including bondholders) would have known that the firm would be transferred to bondholders who would liquidate a full \$60. The firm value would not be impacted by the financial distress and would therefore still be \$100.

MD is worse than LD, so a debt increase can lower the firm value today. Distress per se is not the problem — deadweight costs in financial distress are!

However, bankruptcy matters if we introduce deadweight losses—such as legal fees—that are triggered in financial distress. In the lower part of Table 23.3, we assume that these deadweight bankruptcy costs amount to \$10. How does this matter?

- If you choose LD, you would borrow \$50 and promise \$55. Your cost of capital would be 10%. Your firm value would be \$100 today.
- If you choose MD, you would borrow \$65.46 and promise \$94, for an interest rate of 43.6%. The expected rate of return to creditors would not change—it would still be 10%.

(Every investment has to offer 10% in our risk-neutral world). However, the deadweight bankruptcy cost increases *your* cost of capital. You are giving up \$60 or \$94—for an expected value of \$77—in exchange for a payment of \$65.46. Your cost of capital would have increased from 10% to 17.6%! Thus, you could sell your firm only for \$95.46, not for \$100.

From your perspective, capital structure MD is worse than capital structure LD, in which the firm could never go bankrupt. The important insight with respect to bankruptcy is that it is not bankruptcy *per se* that is the problem, but only the deadweight losses in and around financial distress that matter.

Who ultimately bears the cost of bankruptcy—you or creditors? It would be you, because creditors demand fair compensation upfront. So think about how you want to structure your firm if you face both tax and bankruptcy losses. You should now try to reduce not only the deadweight loss from taxes, but also the deadweight loss from financial distress:

Ceteris paribus, you can increase value today if you reduce future expected financial distress costs—direct and indirect. Capital structures with less debt can do this.

- Too little debt, and you lose too much in taxes.
- Too much debt, and you lose too much in bankruptcy costs.

Therefore, an interior amount of debt will maximize the value of your firm today.

The rest of this section describes the various forms of deadweight losses in financial distress—and it is not just the legal fees if bankruptcy were to occur. It could be that you would spend money prior to formal bankruptcy to avoid worse, or that the fear of bankruptcy will prevent you from taking a positive NPV project if you are sufficiently close to bankruptcy (though not there yet). Indeed, you can think of anything that would distort your choices as a cost. If a particular capital structure induces you to deviate from the optimal set of projects and behavior in the future, the resulting reduction in future cash flows reduces your firm's value. It would be a cost arising from this capital structure. (These are often called **indirect bankruptcy costs**, because they are not direct cash outlays. They can occur even before formal bankruptcy.) But whether they are direct or indirect deadweight costs of financial distress, they all have the same effect—they increase your cost of capital and decrease your firm value today. And of course we already know that the financial distress needs never occur—the probability that it may occur in the future is enough to reduce the value today.

Forms of distress costs to be discussed.

IMPORTANT: *Financial distress costs usually favor equity over debt as a cheaper financing vehicle.*

23·2.B. Direct Losses of Firm Value

The Process

Although the process and history of bankruptcy, both in the United States and worldwide, are fascinating, the full legal details of bankruptcy are beyond the scope of this book. In the United States, there are two legal forms of financial distress: **Chapter 7 Liquidation** and **Chapter 11 Reorganization**. Larger firms usually petition to enter Chapter 11, which gives them a stay from creditors trying to seize their vital assets. If the court determines that the business is still viable, the firm can reorganize its financial claims and emerge from bankruptcy if its creditors vote to agree to the reorganization. Otherwise, the case is converted into Chapter 7 and the firm is liquidated. Both forms are supervised by a Federal Judge (and/or Federal Bankruptcy Trustee) and last on average about 2-3 years. In real life, creditors in Chapter 11 sometimes agree to modest violations from the Absolute Priority Rule—which we have always used to construct our state-contingent tables—in order to reduce running bankruptcy costs. The firm

Two forms of bankruptcy.

file=caprest.tex: LP

typically pays for most of the legal fees of all participants—but even if it did not, creditors would ask for compensation for their expected legal fees upfront, so one way or another, the firm has to carry the expected costs of bankruptcy.

Direct vs. Indirect Costs

Direct legal and administrative direct bankruptcy costs are easily visible. But there are also costs that are not cash outlays.

The direct legal fees are just the most obvious costs: the legal fees that the bankruptcy process consumes. There are also hours spent by management, employees, and experts to deal with the running process. But much of the cost of financial distress is indirect and on the real business side. For example, it may become more expensive to produce (e.g., because suppliers may charge more, fearing delayed or no payment), more difficult to focus (as management is distracted with bankruptcy and more talented employees are leaving), more expensive to sell product (e.g., customers fleeing due to loss of confidence), and more expensive to sell assets (e.g., liquidation sales may mean low fire-auction prices). All these costs reduce the value of the firm, and are real welfare losses caused by financial distress. These costs can also arise even before formal bankruptcy. Many of these costs originate from the fact that firms can shed promised claims in bankruptcy, even if they would like to commit themselves today (ex-ante) not to shed them in the future. This inability to commit causes a loss of value when future distress is possible. Consider the following examples:

- When products require customer investments, customers may be reluctant to purchase the products and invest, knowing that their investments could turn out to be wasted if the firm were to disappear.

  For example, the value of a computer is determined not only by its hardware, but also by the manufacturer's continued provision of hardware and software support and development. End-of-life hardware or software, no matter how good, is often close to worthless. Even if the firm promises to continue development of faster hardware to preserve its customers' software investments, if the firm is liquidated, it would not be able to keep such a promise. The inability of the firm to commit to honoring its promises in the future hurts its sales to customers today—and may even cause the bankruptcy itself.

  This channel also works through the product resale market. If you are deciding whether to purchase a Saturn or a Toyota to drive for five years and then resell it, you should worry about whether General Motors will go bankrupt—after all, in 2005, GM's debt just dropped below investment grade. If GM were to go bankrupt, the resale value of used Saturn cars would then drop further. This in turn should make you less inclined to purchase the Saturn in the first place.

- When product sales require promises of future contact, customers may be reluctant to purchase the product, given that the future promised rebate may fail to materialize.

  For example, airlines depend on frequent flier plans to attract business travellers. When the promise of future free flights loses its credibility, an airline becomes severely handicapped. In effect, any firm whose products require warranties should weigh whether issuing debt might not alarm its customers. Such products may require future service, and customers may be reluctant to purchase the product, knowing that the service may become unobtainable in the future.

- When product quality is difficult to judge, customers become afraid that companies may cut corners in order to avoid financial distress.

  Without trustworthy warranty programs, competing in some businesses is very difficult.

  Have you ever wondered whether an airline in financial distress cuts corner on airplane maintenance? (You should!) The effect here is not the cutting of corners on the maintenance (which we will discuss below), but the fear of customers that the firm may do so. Consequently, the price at which such an airline can sell tickets may be below that of a financially solid airline. Similarly, wholesalers will not deliver their goods to near-bankrupt retailers unless they are assured of payment. Because bankrupt retailers may no longer be able to purchase credit, the costs of their goods may increase—and their competitive advantage may erode.

- Some businesses rely on **trade credit**, in which suppliers sell their goods to buyers in an open credit arrangement. (It is in effect a credit line that is limited to the specific goods the supplier sells.) If suppliers fear that the buyer can go bankrupt, they may not extend trade credit. In some cases, this can hamper business operations to the point where it can itself cause the onset of bankruptcy.

Financial Distress Costs As Transaction Cost?

The limit to the costs' importance is the cost of combining securities.

But there is a limit to the importance of bankruptcy costs. We can muster an argument similar in spirit to the M&M proof: if financial distress costs are too high, someone can purchase all the securities, which eliminates the financial distress and with it all bankruptcy costs. In this sense, distress costs can be considered a special form of transaction costs: the transaction costs caused by bankruptcy must be bounded by the costs of purchasing all securities to eliminate deadweight costs. But in a non-perfect world, this is not easy to do, either. One problem is that when all other creditors agree to a bailout, you—as the final bondholder—would not want to agree. You would insist on your full claim, hoping that the other creditors would agree if they want to execute the bailout. Of course, every creditor realizes this, and would prefer to hold out for the other creditors to organize. Given such bargaining considerations, it may be cheaper for a potential saviour to wait until the firm is run down more and then sold in a fire-sale, rather than to try to acquire securities from inflexible creditors.

Disagreement and bargaining among creditors make efficient reorganization difficult.

One attempt to reduce the transaction cost is for firms to bundle their financial claims into **units** (unit securities) of debt and equity. Each creditor would also be a shareholder. If the firm fails to pay interest in the future, creditors will be more inclined to compromise in order to avoid financial distress—after all, there is little reason to force bankruptcy in order to collect assets from oneself.

Assessing the Magnitude of Direct Bankruptcy Costs

Orders of magnitude calculations.

Let us estimate the magnitude of expected bankruptcy costs for the average Fortune 500 company. Fewer than five Fortune 500 companies enter financial distress (either formal or informal) in a given year. Quadruple this number to get an estimate of 4% probability of bankruptcy at the outset of the year. Further, presume that bankruptcy costs are 5% of the value of such Fortune 500 companies *when they enter bankruptcy*. Although this is a high estimate, again quadruple this number to presume a 20% distress cost. Finally, a Fortune 500 company would drop by about 80% in (market) value before entering financial distress, caused not by deadweight losses but by the fact that the bad state has come about. So, a $1 billion company today would be worth only $200 million in the future, and lawyers' fees of 5% would then come to "only" $10 million—or 1% in expectation of today's value, rather than 5%. Put this all together. At the beginning of the typical year for the typical Fortune 500 company and before there is any indication of financial distress, the expected financial distress costs would be about $4\% \cdot 20\% \cdot 30\% \approx 25$ basis points of value today. This can still be a large amount of money for lawyers to fight over, but it is relatively modest, say, in comparison to the tax savings from another dollar of debt. Bankruptcy costs do not loom too large when a healthy Fortune 500 firm considers taking on another loan in order to save on corporate income taxes.

ANECDOTE: Fear and Relief: Lotus and Chrysler

On May 1, 1995, the computer trade magazine *PCWeek*'s cover story read "Besieged by ongoing financial turmoil...Latest Lotus woes leave some customers skittish." Customers aware of the possibility of bankruptcy may choose an (inferior) product from a competing vendor with a lower possibility of bankruptcy, which in turn reduces the value of the first firm today.

On July 23, 1981, the *Wall Street Journal* reported on Chrysler's first positive quarterly earnings after a long hiatus:

> Telegraphing even this tiny profit via the nightly news to dealers and potential customers is extremely important for Chrysler, which is trying to shore up its image as a viable automaker. In the past, every time Chrysler's losses mounted, customers fled its showrooms, fearing the company would collapse.

The fact that some firms go bankrupt "regularly" speaks for their relatively low bankruptcy costs.

This argument does not, of course, apply to each and every firm. Which firms are likely to suffer high deadweight losses in bankruptcy? We know that many U.S. railroads have declared bankruptcy dozens of times, without interruption in service. Even large retailers, like **Federated Department Stores** (Macy's and Bloomingdales), have been in and out of bankruptcy several times. Airlines have some easily transferable and collaterizable assets (airplanes), and thus may have fewer deadweight losses—many airlines have ceased operations with their planes sold, repainted and turned around for another carrier. Airlines' bankruptcy deadweight losses are relatively modest. In contrast, firms with mostly intangible assets (such as reputation or name recognition) need to be more concerned with reducing the probability of future bankruptcy. For example, if Chanel were to go bankrupt, Chanel Number 5 might acquire the odor of death, rather than the odor of high style, and the entire business might disappear. Chanel should therefore choose a lower-leverage capital structure to avoid the loss of prestige that a bankruptcy could bring about.

Expected bankruptcy costs are probably small for healthy, large companies.

The importance of bankruptcy costs as an important determinant of capital structure remains an empirical issue. The current academic consensus is that bankruptcy costs matter for some firms and some industries, particularly during recessions. They can easily be very large, but for most healthy Fortune 500 firms, their expected costs are probably small—Enron notwithstanding.

23·2.C. Operational Distortions of Incentives

A second set of financial distress costs arises from the fact that shareholders' incentives diverge from bondholders' incentives if the firm gets close to financial distress.

Underinvestment

When there is debt, equity holders may not properly take care of the assets.

The **underinvestment** problem is bondholders' concern that managers will not make necessary investments if the promised debt payments end up being too large. That is, owners may prefer to pay out cash to shareholders than spend their money on maintenance and repair (or other projects). This may be in their interest if the project proceeds would more than likely only go to bondholders. Underinvestment in turn reduces the payoffs bondholders will receive, and thus the firm-value that bond purchasers are willing to pay for lending to the firm today.

Grab as much while you can!

For example, assume a firm has only \$50 in cash and no projects. Worse, it owes creditors a promised \$94 next year. (This is the MD capital structure from Table 23.3.) Fortunately for the shareholders, in our simple example, the managers can pay \$50 in dividends, and leave the bondholders with nothing. Yet, suddenly, managers find an unexpected opportunity. They can pay the \$50 to start a project that will yield either \$60 or \$160 by the time the debt is due. The firm should undertake this project, because it is a positive NPV project. But would managers acting in the interest of shareholders be willing to do so?

		Prob:	1/2	1/2	Exp Value	Present Value
Project	FM		$0	$0	$0	$0
Bond(FV=$94)	DT		$0	$0	$0	$0
Equity	EQ		$0	$0	$0	$0

Firm shareholders own $50 today.

Choice 1 Pay $50 to shareholders.

Choice 2 Take project that costs $50 and pays either $60 or $160.

		Prob:	1/2	1/2	Exp Value	Present Value
Project	FM		$60	$160	$110	$100
Bond(FV=$94)	DT		$60	$94	$72	$65.46
Equity	EQ		$0	$66	$33	$30

The answer is no. Managers would prefer to pay out $50 to shareholders rather than take this positive NPV project. Most of the benefit of the project would go to cover the "debt overhang," which is something that managers who act on behalf of shareholders would not care much about.

Again, this "underinvestment problem" is a cost of debt to the firm. If the firm had chosen a zero debt capital structure ex ante, such profitable future investments would not be ignored, which in turn would increase the value at which our hypothetical owner can sell the firm.

Fearing future lack of care again makes it more expensive for the firm to raise capital via debt.

IMPORTANT: *Ex post reluctance to do the right thing (such as additional maintenance investment) favors equity over debt as the cheaper financing vehicle.*

Reluctance to Liquidate

A similar problem is the *no-liquidation problem*. Managers acting on behalf of equity holders may not wish to liquidate the firm when it has fallen onto hard times, even if this maximizes firm value. Equity holders always prefer more risky payoffs because equity is essentially like an option. If there is even a small chance of improvement and even if deterioration is more likely, equity holders are better off to take their chances than to give up their options and liquidate. For example, assume that the $60 represents the liquidation value of the factory, and the MD debt is due in two years rather than one year. Further assume that managers can continue running the factory, in which case it will be worth either $100 or $0 with equal probability. The optimal unconflicted behavior would be to liquidate the factory. Unfortunately, shareholders prefer to continue operating—they would get nothing in liquidation, but perhaps $6 if the factory were to be worth $100. In effect, equity holders have an option on the firm. In fact, they might even make running interest and principal payments in order to keep their option alive! This inefficient behavior, caused by the presence of debt in the capital structure, reduces the value of a firm with both debt and equity *today*.

Managers may not want to liquidate the firm, even if they should. This is especially bad for debt holders.

IMPORTANT: *Ex post reluctance to liquidate by managers not acting on behalf of the overall firm but on behalf of equity can favor equity as the cheaper financing vehicle.*

Liquidation reluctance can also work against equity.

So far, we have assumed that management acts on behalf of shareholders. They indeed typically care more about equity than about debt, which we just argued may induce them to exploit the debt on behalf of equity. However, managers can also act on behalf of themselves, especially if shareholders would be best served by corporate liquidation, too. Managers may run down the firm's equity substance in order to keep their jobs instead of returning the money to the owners. To reduce the incidence of such behavior, firms may add debt to the capital structure. Debt can limit the ability of managers to run down the entire firm and force them to liquidate and disgorge some of the remaining assets. This can benefit both debt and equity.

IMPORTANT: *Ex post reluctance to liquidate by managers not acting on behalf of the firm but on behalf of themselves can favor debt over equity as the cheaper financing vehicle.*

We discuss agency problems between managers and owners in the next section and in Chapter 28. Such agency issues tend to be more dramatic in good times. But you should realize that conflicts of interest can occur in financial distress, too—in which case the presence of more debt could be as good a cure as it often is in good times.

23·2.D. Strategic Considerations

Debt can change nature of the competition in the product market.

Finally, there are some theories in which debt is a strategic commitment device. This argument is perhaps easiest to understand by analogy. Consider playing a game of chicken (two cars driving towards one another; the first to "chicken" out and get out of the way loses). How can you make sure you win? If you can tie down your steering controls, remove the steering wheel, and throw it visibly out the window, any smart opponent would surely chicken out! The trick is to visibly commit yourself to not give way. (Some people have suggested that driving an old, large and apparently unstable Buick is the equivalent of throwing out the wheel; other cars will be in a hurry to get out of your way.)

An argument that leverage can make firms more aggressive and better off.

The same argument has been made for debt—that by having debt, firms can commit to squash potential entrant competitors in their product markets. Assume for a moment that a monopolist has levered up. Consider the decision of a potential market entrant who knows this. The market entrant also knows that it is in the interest of the shareholders to increase risk—they will gain more of the upside than the downside. A price war is riskier than accommodation—so the monopolist's managers (acting on behalf of equity holders) may prefer the more risky strategy of a price war over accommodation. Consequently, the potential entrant may chicken out, and the monopolist may never have to start the price war. (Of course, if the market entrant is too stupid to understand the message, both players, the monopolist and the entrant, will be hurt badly—the two cars will crash head-on.)

The argument seems not too important. In fact, the opposite may be true. Leverage may make firms less competitive and worse off.

This argument is clever but we do not know if it is also empirically important. We do know know that industry matters—for example, financial services companies tend to rely on a lot of debt. However, we do not know whether managers have strategic intent in mind when they pursue capital structure change. There is not much evidence that managers of highly levered companies have relatively more of a tendency to act in a more risk-seeking fashion in the product market. There is not much evidence that they choose a price war strategy. And there is even less clear evidence whether they consciously lever up ex ante *in order to* commit themselves to a price war. Some empirical research has actually found that more debt tends to hurt firms in the product market. Owners tend to take on much debt when they are severely cash-constrained, and this may prevent them from competing effectively. Indeed, there is some evidence that supermarkets that dramatically increased their leverage were systematically attacked by their competitors with price wars and failed to compete as effectively. To the extent that this weakness reduced their value, it would count as a direct cost of a highly leveraged capital structure. However, the subject of product-market related strategic capital structure choice is still under active investigation, and the final word has not been spoken.

IMPORTANT: *The competitive product market environment of the firm could favor either equity or debt.*

Solve Now!

Q 23.3 *Describe some non-tax based advantages of equity over debt.*

Q 23.4 *Give examples of bankruptcy costs, both direct and indirect.*

Q 23.5 *Give an example of an underinvestment problem.*

Q 23.6 *Give an example of a no-liquidation problem.*

Q 23.7 *Is leverage a strategic advantage? Describe the arguments on both sides.*

23·3. Operating Policy Distortions: Behavior in Good Times

In most of the previous section, debt was usually worse than equity, because it made it more likely that the firm would enter financial distress. But problems in choosing the wrong projects do not arise only when the firm is in trouble. In this section, we discuss what can happen if the firm operates far from financial distress. Just as too much debt can cause the firm—primarily shareholders—to make poor operating decisions when financial distress looms, too little debt can cause the firm—primarily managers—to make poor operating decision when business is going well.

23·3.A. Agency Issues

We already covered agency conflicts in Chapter 7, and will cover more agency conflicts in Chapter 28 on corporate governance.

Free Cash Flow Managers usually prefer spending money internally on their pet projects instead of returning money to shareholders. For example, in the 1980s, many large oil companies continued exploring for oil, even though it was well known that oil companies could be bought on the stock exchange for significantly less than the expected cost of finding equivalent oil reserves. Free cash flow issues are especially a problem in contracting industries—faced with declining markets, managers often desparately search for alternative investing ventures that are not their competitive advantage, rather than returning the money to the rightful owners. How can capital structure counterweigh this? Debt requires coupon payments, which force managers to perform. Managers who fail to generate enough income to pay the coupon are subject to bankruptcy, and (as has been shown empirically) almost always lose their jobs. Therefore, managers who have to service more debt will spend less wastefully, which makes such firms worth more *today*.

Managers like building empires and consumer perks; debt restrains them.

Theft and graft. **Theft (and Verification)** Another important problem is outright **theft**. If you are a passive partner, you are dependent on true and accurate reporting of what profits really are. The active partners or the managers, however, might try to avoid reporting large profits: they might rather use corporate cash to build more of an empire, to compensate themselves better, or just to outright steal it! Debt has the advantage that the creditor may not even need to know what the profits are: if the agreed-upon payments are not made, the creditor can force bankruptcy.

Holdup costs. **Stakeholder Holdup** Higher potential hold-up costs are another important drawback of equity. When a company, especially a public company, rolls in cash, anyone who has the power to hold up business will try to extort more of a share of these profits. For example, a supplier who delivers an important input, a wholesaler who is an important distributor, and any key employees who can bring production to a stop, may want to pressure the firm in order to renegotiate their deals. Yet if the company is financed more via debt than equity, these third parties will recognize that there is less cash to expropriate. After all, if the company does not pay the debt, it can go bankrupt. Thus, in a company with more debt, the equity earnings (which parties can renegotiate) are smaller.

IMPORTANT: *Free cash flow and agency concerns favor debt over equity as the cheaper financing vehicle.*

Solve Now!

Q 23.8 *Give some examples of perks that management might give up when debt load increases.*

ANECDOTE: Airlines, Unions, and Shareholders
In September 2002, American Airlines (AMR) operated over a thousand airplanes, and owned about half of them. It had assets valued about $30 billion, and debt valued at around $15 billion. Still, its equity market value was only $800 million—about the price of three of its forty top-of-the-line Boeing 777 airplanes. And it is not clear if American was worth even this $800 million: bankruptcy was imminent for all other major U.S. carriers (except Southwest).

In 2002, American lost a significant amount of money operating. But if American is ever to make positive profits again, its unions will surely capture the lion share. After all, it only takes one of its unions (e.g., pilots, flight attendants, mechanics) to ground a fleet worth $30 billion and to wreck customer loyalty. The unions will ultimately make sure that shareholders will receive just enough for them not to kill the golden goose.

How airlines continue to exist as public corporations, instead of as employee-owned organizations, remains a mystery to me. (In my opinion, debt may be the only chance that the major airlines have to restrain union demands.)

file=caprest.tex: RP

23·4. Bondholder Expropriation

If there is debt, equity shareholders may want management to exploit the debt holders. This has bad ex ante value consequences.

You already know that managers should structure the firm *at the outset* so as to make it in their interest to optimize firm value in the future. But to raise debt at an attractive interest rate, managers must also take into account that bondholders know that managers might later want to transfer value from bondholders to shareholders. After all, creditors realize that it is the shareholders who vote managers into office, not the bondholders. Managers can expropriate bondholders on behalf of shareholders in two ways:

1. They can increase the risk of the firm's projects (a change in operating policies).
2. They can issue further bonds of equal or higher priority. (Bonds that pay cash earlier are de facto higher priority.)

If potential bondholders believe that they can be expropriated, they will demand a higher cost of capital today. Let's understand this better.

23·4.A. Project Risk Changes

Table 23.4. Risk-Shifting

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/2	1/2		
Project	FM	\$60	\$160	\$110	\$100

Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$55

Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	\$55	\$55	\$55	\$50
Equity	EQ	\$5	\$105	\$55	\$50

Adding Risky Project "New"

		Bad Luck		Good Luck		Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/4	1/4	1/4	1/4		
Project	FM	\$60	\$60	\$160	\$160	\$110	\$100.00
Project	New	\$50	-\$60	\$50	-\$60	-\$5	-\$4.54
Total Projects		\$110	\$0	\$210	\$100	\$105	\$95.45

Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$55

Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	\$55	\$0	\$55	\$55	\$41.25	\$37.50
Equity	EQ	\$55	\$0	\$155	\$45	\$63.75	\$57.95

The cost of capital in this example is 10% for all securities, which is equivalent to assuming risk-neutrality.

file=caprest.tex: LP

Adding a risky, but negative NPV project changes the state-contingent payoffs.

The first expropriation risk that creditors face is called "risk-shifting." Table 23.4 returns to our firm with an LD capital structure from Table 23.3, but allows managers to add project "New" after the original debt has been raised. The new project is independent of the old project and pays either +$50 or −$60 with equal probability. It is negative NPV, so it would not be too hard for managers to find such projects—any Las Vegas casino provides better investment opportunities. Why would a negative NPV project matter? Would the managers not reject this negative NPV project?

The ex post redistribution.

The lower half of the table shows that if the new negative NPV project is taken, the value of the equity would increase from $50 to $57.95. If shareholders are in firm control of their managers and vote them into and out of office, managers would indeed take this project! In essence, the new project would eliminate $50 − $37.50 = $12.50 of bondholder value, waste $4.54, and hand $7.95 extra value to shareholders. The intuition is that this risky project gives existing shareholders relatively more of the upside and existing bondholders relatively more of the downside.

Ex ante Effects.

Everyone—managers, shareholders, and bondholders—recognizes that taking the project will be in the interest of the managers if a bond with a face value of $55 was originally sold. Although *ex post* this is good for equity holders, *ex ante* it is bad for them (and the firm). Skeptical creditors would therefore assume that the debt payoff is only $41.25 (not $55), and thus pay no more than $37.50. The firm would have to pay a cost of capital of 46.7%, even if it wanted to finance itself with debt.

This also works with positive NPV Projects.

If you now conclude that it is good for the corporation to commit itself not to take other projects, you would be wrong. This could backfire, too. If a new project were to come along that either pays off –$60 or +$500, it would be highly positive NPV. If creditors had negotiated a commitment at bond issue, they would insist that the project not be taken, because their wealth would still decline. But this would prevent the firm from taking great projects. Therefore, a wholesale *ex ante* commitment not to take any more projects is not necessarily a good thing for the value of the corporation.

23·4.B. Issuance of Bonds of Similar Priority

Managers may also exploit bond holders by issuing more debt.

The second expropriation risk that creditors face is the issuance of more bonds of equal or higher priority. (Paying out some cash before the original bond comes due is in effect higher priority.) Table 23.5 shows an example, in which the firm issues another bond with a face value of $20 that has equal priority. In bankruptcy (the bad state), the old bond would have to share proceeds with the new bond of equal-priority. Being equal, the "spoils" would be often allocated according to face-value within bonds of the same priority. So, because the $20 bond represents $20/($20 + $55) ≈ 27% of the debt claim, it would receive 27% · $60 = $16; and the $55 bond would receive the remaining 73% · $60 = $44. This means that when the firm announces the issuance of the new bond, the old bond would immediately drop by $50 − $48.18 = $1.82 in value. Would this be in the interest of the equity? It now receives nothing in the bad state and $85 in the good state—plus the one time dividend of $16.36. In total, by issuing new debt of equal priority, equity holders would have increased their wealth from $50 to $38.64+$16.36=$55.

Again, fearing expropriation, the firm has to pay a higher interest upfront to potential bond holders.

This expropriation is not as bad as our risk-shifting example in that no value is destroyed. But it is equally bad insofar as the first creditors will again assume that they will be expropriated, and therefore demand a higher interest rate today. They would demand a quoted interest rate of $55/$48.18 − 1 ≈ 14.2%. To recoup this higher interest rate, the firm has no choice but to indeed issue more bonds that expropriate the first bond purchasers later. In effect, before deciding on any capital structure, the firm has two choices: either issue no bonds, or be dragged into a capital structure that requires issuing more and more leverage. (This can in turn increase financial distress costs.) As before, an *ex post* issue has consequences *ex ante*.

file=caprest.tex: RP

Table 23.5. Issuance of Equal Seniority or Shorter Term Bonds

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		$1/2$	$1/2$		
Project	FM	\$60	\$160	\$110	\$100
Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=\$55					
Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	\$55	\$55	\$55	\$50
Equity	EQ	\$5	\$105	\$55	\$50

Adding an Equal Priority Bond

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		$1/2$	$1/2$		
Project	FM	\$60	\$160	\$110	\$100
Capital Structure LD Plus: Two Equal-Priority Bonds					
Bond(FV=\$55)	DT	$73\% \cdot \$60 = \$44$	\$55	\$53	\$48.18
Bond(FV=\$20)	DT	$27\% \cdot \$60 = \$16$	\$20	\$18	\$16.36
Equity	EQ	\$0	\$85	\$42.50	\$38.64

The cost of capital in this example is 10% for all securities, which is equivalent to assuming risk-neutrality. 73% is the proportional allocation, $\$55/(\$55 + \$20) \approx 73\%$.

SIDE NOTE: Creditors may also face uncertainties if bankruptcy courts do not uphold the agreed-upon **Absolute Priority Rule** (that bond holders are to be paid in full before equity holders receive anything). Known deviations from promised **absolute priority** simply change the contingent payoffs and thus the effective values of the securities. Such known violations do not reduce the total value of the firm. Relative to strict **APR**, the value of the bonds is just lower by the amount that the value of the equity is higher.

23·4.C. Counteracting Forces

Self-commitment can lower interest rates.

Bondholders demand a premium *ex ante* that they would not demand if the firm could commit not to expropriate them *ex post*. The premium may prevent the firm from raising debt at fair interest rates, and thus tilt the optimal capital structure more towards equity. Even managers with the best intentions not to act against bondholders may not be able to shield themselves from the pressures of expropriating creditors later. Who ultimately loses? To the extent that smart bond investors anticipate their fate, they will demand and receive fair compensation. Ultimately, it is the firm that is robbed by itself. Its inability to commit not to expropriate creditors may prevent from issuing debt at fair prices—which may mean it may have to forego debt's other advantages, such as tax savings.

file=caprest.tex: LP

How to align prospective bondholders with the firm.

In the real world, there are a number of mechanisms that can help to reduce the fears of bondholders, and thereby allow the firm to issue debt at acceptable interest rates—and thereby lower the firm's cost of capital.

Managerial Risk Aversion

We noted earlier that shareholders like increases in project risk, because they help them at the expense of bondholders. However, it is not clear if managers really act on behalf of shareholders and thus like higher risk, too. After all, if the project fails and the firm enters financial distress, they might get fired themselves. Thus, managerial risk aversion is a natural counterbalance to the shareholders' incentives to increase risk.

Bond Covenants

Bond covenants reduce exploitational opportunities in the future—but at a cost in flexibility.

A variety of bond covenants have developed to mitigate bondholder skepticism.

- Many bonds prohibit excessive dividend payouts.
- Many bonds prohibit large new debt issues, especially of shorter-term and of equal priority debt.
- Many bonds require the maintenance of certain financial ratios. For example, covenants may mandate maximum debt-equity ratios, maximum payout ratios, minimum earnings retention ratios, minimum liquidity ratios, and so on. These ratio restrictions can all help prevent the firm from taking on riskier projects.

If the covenant is broken, creditors can sue or demand their money back. Covenants are never perfect. It is just impossible to enumerate all the things managers can do. In addition, if the firm enters Chapter 11 bankruptcy, the law says that any new debt issued will automatically receive higher priority, no matter what the covenants of the original bond stated.

Bonds with strong covenants often have a "call" feature, that allows the firm to retire the bond before maturity at an agreed-upon price—and thereby free themselves of the covenant requirements.

Corporate Reputation

And, again, covenants reduce the flexibility of the firm to take advantage of other opportunities. Sometimes, reputation can substitute for covenants.

Covenants are inflexible, so they impose costs, too. For example, if the firm happens to come across a project with $1 billion in NPV, the covenants could prevent it from taking it. Again, a firm that fails to take all profitable projects in the future is worth less today. One alternative to formal covenants is for firms to build a less formal "reputation." This is not easy to do, but firms may realize that it is in their interest not to exploit current bondholders, because any future bondholders would henceforth definitely assume the worst behavior. Put differently, if managers were to take advantage of creditors today, then future financing costs would be so much higher that managers would rather not do so. Reputation is not perfect, though, especially if the advantage that can be taken of creditors today becomes very large. The most prominent example of broken reputation was R.J.R. Nabisco. In the 1980s, it was generally believed to be a safe investment for bondholders. However, when it was bought out in 1988 in the largest LBO ever, R.J.R. tripled its debt overnight, its outstanding bonds went from investment grade to junk grade, and bondholders experienced an announcement month loss of 15%.

Convertible Bonds or Strip Financing

Convertible bonds allow bondholders to participate in the upside, and reduce exploitational incentives in the future.

The final way is to try to allow creditors to partake in the upside of equity. The most common such financing vehicles are convertible bonds. Again, they can limit the *ex post* expropriation of bondholders, while still preserving the firm's option to accept new projects. Instead of straight bonds with strong covenants, "convertible bonds" with weak covenants allow creditors to participate if a great new project were to come along. This reduces the risk expropriation problem. One of the following exercises will ask you to show how a convertible bond can reduce the expropriation. Strip financing, in which individuals purchase debt and equity in equal units, is a similar idea—it eliminates the incentives of shareholders to exploit themselves.

file=caprest.tex: RP

In the real world, firms have to undertake a delicate balancing act. When they issue debt, it can only be issued at favorable terms when the firm can promise not to exploit bondholders after the bonds are issued. Even if such promises can be credibly made, they cause a loss of flexibility, which can be expensive. This can mean that the firm cannot issue debt—and thus that it has to forego some other beneficial effects of debt (such as tax advantages).

Recap: It is in the firm's interest to commit not to take advantage of its creditors in the future. To the extent that the firm fails, debt is too expensive today.

IMPORTANT:

- *Creditors can lose value if*
  - *the firm later undertakes riskier projects; or*
  - *the firm adds more debt of equal or higher priority.*
- *Creditors demand higher interest rates if they fear such expropriation. Thus, it is in the interest of the owners to assure creditors that they will not do so. The prime mechanisms to accomplish this are*
  - *Bond Covenants,*
  - *Reputation, and*
  - *Bond Convertibility.*

Solve Now!

Q 23.9 *Why do bond covenants exist?*

Q 23.10 *What is the advantage of adding convertibility features to a bond?*

Q 23.11 *Describe the two basic mechanisms whereby unprotected bondholders can be expropriated by shareholders, preferably with a numerical example.*

Q 23.12 *Return to a project similar to the firm in Table 23.4. The risk-neutral required interest rate is 10%. The firm is worth either $100 or $120. The bond promises $90.*

(a) Work out the value of the firm. For the bond, create three rows for each state: if bondholders do not convert, if bondholders always convert, if bondholders optimally convert. (Assume project "New" is not available.)

(b) Now project "New" becomes available. It will pay off either +$50 or -$60. Show that it is in the interest of shareholders for this project to be taken if the bond is not convertible.

(c) Now presume that the bond is also convertible into 75% equity. Show that it is no longer necessarily in the interest of shareholders to take the bad project "New."

23·5. Inside Information

New potential partners/shareholders have less information than current managers and owners.

Our next important determinant of capital structure is inside information. Typically, firm managers (acting on behalf of the old owners) have better information than new investors. New investors should be careful that they are not exploited. As the old adage says, "Never bet with someone better informed than yourself."

If owners want partners rather than lenders, the project may not be as good.

Consider this scenario: you are a potential investor in an oil well, and you know that the current owner/manager (who has to raise new capital) already knows whether there is oil or not. You do not know. You have to ask yourself:

- What will you believe about the oil well if the present owner offers to make you a full partner sharing in all future profits?
- What will you believe about the oil well if the present owner asks you for a loan to be paid back that she is willing to collateralize with her present assets?

If you are offered partnership, you should be reluctant to believe that there is oil. If, however, the present owners want to keep the profits and simply borrow, she probably knows that the project is profitable. This is sometimes called the **winner's curse** or **adverse selection**. If you receive the offer to become partner, it does not help you very much. If you do not receive the offer to become partner, you would be better off if you had indeed received it.

Table 23.6. Inside Calculations

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/2	1/2		
Project	FM	$60	$160	$110	$100
Capital Structure LD: Bond with Face Value FV=$55					
Bond(FV=$55)	DT	$55	$55	$55	$50
Equity	EQ	$5	$105	$55	$50

To raise $50, if:

Project is	Creditors Believe	Future Payoffs: Percent of equity to raise $50	Future Payoffs: If equity financed, owners keep	Future Payoffs: If debt financed, owners keep
Good	Good	$50/$145.45 = 34%	$55 + 65.6% · $160 = $160.00	$160
Bad	Good	$50/$145.45 = 34%	$55 + 65.6% · $60 = $94.36	$60
Good	Unknown	$50/$100 = 50%	$55 + 50% · $160 = $135.00	$160
Bad	Unknown	$50/$100 = 50%	$55 + 50% · $60 = $85.00	$60
Good	Bad	$50/$54.55 = 92%	$55 + 8% · $160 = $68.33	$160
Bad	Bad	$50/$54.55 = 92%	$55 + 8% · $60 = $60.00	$60

The cost of capital in this example is 10% for all securities, which is equivalent to assuming risk-neutrality.

file=caprest.tex: RP

This analogy is directly transferable to capital structure. Sharing in the firm's equity is the equivalent of becoming a partner. Table 23.6 again considers our example, but adds the knowledge of owners and your beliefs as a potential investor.

A numerical example of the inside information problem.

If you also know project quality: Not surprisingly, if the project is good and you believe this, the owners end up with $160 next year. Similarly, if the project is bad, the owners end up with $60 next year. Unfortunately, you do not know this.

If you believe either project quality is equally likely: This implies that you are willing to purchase equity based on the expected project payoff of $110. Thus, you would lend $50 in exchange for half the firm.

Now consider what current owners would do. If they knew the project was good and financed through debt, they would be better off ($160) than if they financed through equity ($135). Conversely, if they knew the project was bad and they financed through equity, they would be better off ($85) than if they financed through equity ($60).

It follows that owners that prefer to finance with equity know that their projects are worse than average, and owners that prefer to finance with debt know that their projects are better than average. Therefore, it would not be reasonable for you to believe that the project was equally likely to be good or bad. It would be irrational for you to maintain such beliefs.

If you believe equity-financed projects are bad: If current owners knew the project was good and financed through debt, they would be better off ($160) than if they financed through equity ($68.33). Conversely, if current owners knew the project was bad, no matter how they financed the project, they would end up with $60. For convenience, we can assume that they then prefer to finance with equity. (Think about them getting 1 cent extra.) Thus, your beliefs are confirmed—firms that ask you for equity financing are bad. You would assume that debt-financed firms are better than average, and that equity-financed firms are worse than average.

The "Pecking Order": More equity-like (partner-like) shares are bad news, and can only be sold at a discount.

New equity investors are not inclined to assume that the project is good. They will assume that their new claims are on a project that will eventually develop problems. Thus, when existing owners announce a new equity offering, it releases information that the firm's projects are worse than generally believed, and the new equity can only be sold for a very low price. This is again an example of adverse selection—only companies fearing the future would want to share their prospects. In real life, we indeed observe that when firms announce that they plan to raise about $1 by issuing new equity, their old public equity value declines by about 10 cents. But this argument extends not only to equity, but to other claims as well. The more risky the securities are that insiders want to sell rather than keep, the worse are their beliefs. Sharing in more junior (risky) bonds is the equivalent of the present owners making you a "little partner," when they are not willing to collateralize their loan. Consequently, the announcement of a risky junior security releases information that the firm's projects are not too great, but not too bad, either. In contrast, the new issue of a collateralized loan (or a risk-free senior bond) will indicate that the firm's projects are better than expected. The outcome is that the better the firm's projects are, the more senior the security the managers will offer for sale. This leads to a **pecking order** view of capital structure: the best projects are financed by the most senior debt, worse projects by junior debt, and the worst projects by equity.

Firms may want to avoid issuing more shares of anything, and equity in particular.

What does this imply for the optimal capital structure? Consider a firm that cannot issue debt easily because it has little collateral or because additional debt would unduly increase expected bankruptcy costs. If it cannot issue equity because of these insider concerns, such a firm may have to pass up on some good (but perhaps not stellar) projects, simply because owners do not want to sell their projects at the price of the worst possible scenario. A publicly trading firm thus may take on too much debt (incurring financial distress costs) or ration its projects, failing to take at least some of its positive NPV projects.

IMPORTANT: *Inside information concerns favor debt over equity as the cheaper financing vehicle.*

There is a way out!

When could a firm issue equity without an insider penalty?

- If there is a mechanism—e.g., a detailed audit—by which insiders with good projects can credibly convey the true quality of the project, it would be in their interest to do so. Indeed, if such a mechanism is known to exist, and owners do not undertake it, potential investors should immediately assume that current owners are not doing so because they know that the outcome will be bad.
- If current owners can convince potential investors that they have invested all of their own money, that they have maxed out their personal credit cards, and they just cannot put any more personal capital at risk than they already have, then there is no information in the fact that they are asking to raise equity capital. In this case, external investors can assume that the project is not necessarily bad. Indeed, no venture capitalist will ever invest in a startup in which the current owners do not have most of their personal wealth at stake.

Agency and inside information are closely related.

The pecking order (inside information) and free cash flow (agency) theories have a very close family relationship. The former says that when firms issue equity, managers signal that they believe that the future will be worse. The latter says that when firms issue equity, managers will make the future worse—they will waste the money. Both send information signals to the public about a worse future, although the latter is more causal than the former.

Solve Now!

Q 23.13 *A house up for auction can be worth either \$500 or \$1,000 with 50-50 probability. The other bidder knows the true value; you do not. If you bid for the house in an auction, what should you bid? If you bid \$750, what is your expected rate of return?*

file=caprest.tex: RP

23·6. Transaction Costs and Behavioral Explanations

Transaction costs are everywhere. They definitely can prevent optimal adjustment.

Transaction costs have played an important role in all capital structure examples above: if transaction costs had been zero, external pressures would force management to choose the best capital structure. But if transaction costs are high, managerial mistakes are difficult or impossible to correct for outsiders. It is not just enough for an outsider to purchase shares and then sell them. The appropriate corrective action requires accumulating enough shares and pressuring management to improve the situation. Without the discipline of external pressure, managers and investors can commit mistakes. They may take too much debt or too much equity, and the market may not be able to correct it.

Transaction costs "cause" behavioral finance concerns.

Section 19·2 has already described the link between high transaction costs and **behavioral finance**. In the corporate finance context, the presence of high transaction costs—and, with it, the rarity of correcting mechanisms—means that behavioral finance plays an important role. It can rationalize a lot of managerial behavior, which is otherwise difficult to explain. Unfortunately, on so vague a level, without a further description of what the mistakes are, it is less prescriptive than the above theories. That is, it seems to offer little guidance as to how a smart manager should act differently (i.e., what the best debt/equity ratio is).

Specific behavioral errors can have specific consequences.

Then again, behavioral finance is the most promising new direction in corporate finance. It is still too early to tell where and how it will help us better understand the world. Some early insights suggest that there are certain behavioral mistakes that are more common than others. For example, we now believe that **overconfidence** and **overoptimism** are common traits among both managers and investors. If managers are overoptimistic, it may aggravate agency concerns (they may take some negative NPV projects) and no-liquidation concerns, but alleviate underinvestment problems. If investors are overoptimistic, issuing equity may not be so disadvantageous as the inside information argument suggests. Investors may not necessarily believe the worst—and there is some evidence that such was the case during the Internet bubble at the turn of the millennium. Although it is less likely that markets rather than managers are committing mistakes, there is good evidence that financial markets may be imperfect, too. If markets indeed misvalue securities—either because they are irrational or imperfect—it would be rational for managers to seek to time equity issuing activity.

Dividend policy is probably a behavioral managerial error.

Another domain where behavioral effects seem particularly important are dividends. There are at least some investors out there who seem to prefer dividends, even if this is not a wise choice from a tax perspective. In response, rational managers may want to pay dividends rather than use share repurchases to send cash to their equity holders, even if this incurs a higher tax obligation. In any case, there is little that financial markets can do about the wrong payout policy. The world is how it is.

And then there are also direct transaction costs...

A more traditional view is that transaction costs also play a direct role. For example, the reporting requirements and liabilities imposed by the *1933 Securities Acts* for publicly traded equity securities can be much larger than those for private borrowing. For many small companies, these costs may be large enough to warrant a capital structure consisting exclusively of private securities and bank debt.

> **IMPORTANT**: *Behavioral considerations could favor either debt or equity.*

Solve Now!

Q 23.14 *What are behavioral explanations for dividend payout?*

file=caprest.tex: LP

23·7. Corporate Payout Policy: Dividends and Share Repurchases

You should realize that all these considerations apply to our capital structure, and therefore apply both to the appropriate debt-equity level, as they apply to changes therein—firms may issue debt or equity to send cash into the company, or they may pay out coupon and principal to send cash back to owners. Dividends and equity share repurchases are particularly interesting, because they are at the discretion of management.

Institutional details and "the need for cash"?!

When companies decide to return cash to shareholders, they do so either by dividends or share repurchases. Many public companies pay dividends every quarter, others pay only once a year. Sometimes, firms declare "special dividends" to indicate that they will not repeat. The process to pay dividend is that the board of director votes to pay a dividend (on the declaration date), and then collects the names of all shareholders (on the record date). For shareholders, shares that are owned before the **ex-dividend day** are called **cum dividend** and will receive the dividend payment; shares owned after the ex-dividend date are without the dividend payment. Naturally, shares are worth more with an extra dividend, so the price will fall after the ex-dividend date—usually by just about the value of the dividend itself. Otherwise, a tax-exempt investor can earn close-to-arbitrage profits. For example, if a $40 stock pays an annual dividend of $2 (a dividend yield of 5%), this stock will trade at $38 after the ex-dividend date. Finally, the dividend checks are mailed (on the payment date). Note that it makes no sense to argue that dividends are paid because particular investors "need" money—if you hold 100 shares for $4,000 and receive $200 worth of dividends, you would have $3,800 shares left; but you could just as well have sold 5 shares for $200 on the stock exchange, which would similarly have left you with $3,800 and $200 cash.

Share repurchases and dividends are perfect substitutes in a perfect world.

Share repurchases are direct substitutes for dividend payments. One naïve misconception is that share repurchases are different because they benefit only shareholders tendering their shares into the repurchase—unlike dividends, which benefit all shareholders. This argument is false. A firm with 100 shareholders, each owning $10 worth of shares, could pay $50 worth of dividends (50 cents to each shareholder), and the firm would be worth $950. Each shareholder would have a share worth $9.50 and $0.50 in dividends. If the firm repurchased $50 worth of shares, the firm would now have 95 shareholders, each owning $10 worth of shares. *In the perfect M&M world, without taxes, all shareholders are equally well off with either a repurchase or a dividend payment.*

In the real world, dividends are tax-disadvantaged on the investor side, relative to share repurchases.

Like the debt/equity choice, dividends and repurchases matter only if we leave the M&M world. For example, investors who need money may now save on transaction costs of having to sell shares, or the dividend payout may reduce agency conflicts and money-wasting by managers, or there may be tax differences. We will focus primarily on the role of personal taxes. If taxes mean that there is less money left over for the dividend payments than there is for the share repurchases, it must follow that share repurchases should be preferred from a tax perspective. And, indeed, we know that dividends are more difficult to shelter than share repurchases, if only because the investors that tender into the share repurchase will be those who find it easiest to shelter the capital gains. The effect is that effective personal income taxes are higher on dividends than on share repurchases. Again, the tax clienteles in the economy will evolve to reduce the effective dividend taxes paid. That is, clientele arguments cannot only explain why some investors prefer holding equity over debt (to receive capital gains instead of taxable interest payments), they can also explain why dividend taxes are not as punishing as they would otherwise seem to be. (Some low-tax pension fund investors can avoid the personal tax on dividend receipts.) But the clienteles can just reduce the penalty of dividends relative to share repurchases—they cannot eliminate it. They can therefore not explain why firms pay dividends—share repurchases remain uniformly better, because they can de-facto avoid almost *all* personal income taxes. Share repurchases are both a better and a perfect substitute for dividends.

Share repurchases are becoming relatively more important over time.

Historically, it was an important puzzle why corporations would ever pay dividends. Both the tax advantage of share repurchases over dividends and the average corporate dividend yield in the economy were high. Firms eventually figured this out, too. Bagwell and Shoven (1989) found that big firms paid out about 7 times more through dividends than through share repurchases in 1977—but by 1987, this ratio had dropped to about 1.5. In any case, by today, this payout puzzle has become fairly unimportant. As of 2003, typical **dividend yields** (the amount of dividends divided by the share price) have declined to about two percent per year. Of three tax advantages of capital gains over repurchases—a lower statutory rate, taxation only at realization, and an offset against capital losses—only the latter two remain. The Bush tax cuts (in effect at least until 2008) have much reduced statutory rate differences. Therefore, the effective remaining advantage of capital gains vs. dividends is now fairly small. (A good number of firms responded to the Bush tax cuts in the logical way, most prominently Microsoft—they started paying dividends!) Add to this that some dividend payments are received by tax-exempt institutions (who often purchase shares just before the dividends are paid and sell them just thereafter)—and the question of whether to pay out cash in dividends or share repurchases is no longer a very important for the typical company. Dividends may still not be the smartest method for managers to pay out, but the wasted money is too small to offer large arbitrage opportunities (buying the firm, firing the CFO, changing the payout policy, and selling the firm for a higher price). The presence of dividends is less of a mystery than it once was.

Remaining differences: changes in inside ownership, an informal understanding about persistence of future payments, and "behavioral finance" type investor preferences.

So, with the prime historical difference between dividends and share repurchases (personal income taxes) much reduced, what are the remaining important differences? Not much, but here they are:

1. Executives often receive stock options in the company, whose value depends on the share price. Because share prices drop when companies pay dividends, managers with many options prefer repurchases to dividend payments.

2. Executives and insiders are often not permitted to tender their shares into share repurchase offers, and thus will own relatively more of the company after a share repurchase than after an equivalent dividend payment.

3. Dividends tend to be regular and are expected by shareholders to continue. An ordinary dividend payment therefore informally obliges management to continue, thereby signaling more optimism about the future. In contrast, many share repurchases are done in one-time chunks. The distinction is not perfect, though. Many companies have semi-regular share repurchase programs, which make repurchases almost as regular as dividend payments. And many other companies pay "special dividends," which immediately signal their one-time nature to investors. Such special dividends are as much "one-time" as share repurchases.

4. There is behavioral finance empirical evidence that many retail investors just "like" dividends better than share repurchases.

   Today, this matters less, but it used to paradoxical, when dividend payouts were badly tax-disadvantaged. The argument that investors like dividends "because they need cash" does not hold water. Selling a fraction of the shares in stocks that pay zero dividends provides physical cash, too—except that the investor would not have had to pay as much in personal income tax. Still, it seems that many investors wrongly think only of share sales but not of dividend receipts as reduction in their "investment substance."

   The empirical evidence is still under academic investigation. My guess is that the answer will likely be that these individual investor preference effects are real, but that they are not universal. For example, we also know that many tax-exempt institutions are obliged by their charters to hold *only* dividend paying stocks—just as the clientele theory would have predicted.

Advice? So what payout policy should a company choose? The most important recommendation is that a company should pay out cash when the alternative uses are not positive NPV projects. Of course, many managers will not like to hear this advice or they will assert that all of their projects are high NPV (even if they are not). Compared to the question of whether the firm should pay out or not pay out, the question of whether the form of payout should be dividends or share repurchases is of secondary importance today. In cases of doubt, share repurchases seem better than corporate dividends. If the Bush dividend tax reductions will disappear in 2009, share repurchases would seem *much* better than dividends.

Stock dividends and splits. Before we close, you may sometimes hear of **stock dividends** and **stock splits**—these are really not payouts, at all. For example, a $1 million company whose shares are trading for $100/share may issue a stock dividend of 1 share for every 10 outstanding shares. Its 10,000 shares would become 11,000 shares, each worth $90.91. Or it may splits its shares 2-for-1, which means that its 10,000 shares would become 20,000 shares, each worth $50. Another strange creature is the **dividend reinvestment plan** (**DRIP**), in which shareholders can volunteer to automatically reinvest dividend receipts in the company. They therefore never receive any cash. All that they receive is a tax obligation at the end of the year for the dividends that they presumably received. If the company had just kept all the money, it would have saved its investors the tax obligations. (To complicate this further, if set up with the company rather than a brokerage firm, many DRIPs offer the shares at a discount or at a rate that is not the current market value but the average value over the most recent quarter.)

SIDE NOTE: Tax schemes also apply to investors If personal investors want to hold dividend-paying stocks without paying dividend taxes, they can do so for most of the year—as long as they sell them to institutions prior to the **ex-dividend day**, which is the day on which the owner of the shares is determined for the distribution of the dividend.

In real life, this "tax-arbitrage" indeed happens; tax-exempt funds compete to purchase these shares, driving up the share prices before the ex-dividend date. The *Financial Times* reports that such transactions are known as "bed-and-breakfast" deals for equity, and "bond-washing" for bonds—even though both the IRS and the **Bank of England** have specifically prohibited such tax arbitrage. The latter has imposed a 1-week holding period for tax-free institutions purchasing around dividend dates.

Of course, there are limits to such dividend tax arbitrage. Some high-tax investors would have to pay capital gains taxes when they sell their shares, and thus prefer paying taxes on the dividends instead of on their capital gains. In addition, the round-trip transaction costs limit the possible profits from the avoidance of dividend taxes.

Units are combination securities that consist of a debt security and an equity security. If the firm pays interest, it shifts its tax burden to the unit owners. If the firm pays dividends, it shifts its unit owners' tax burdens to itself.

ANECDOTE: Ralph Nader and Microsoft
On January 4, 2002, Ralph Nader wrote an open letter to William H. Gates, III, Chairman of Microsoft, that begins as follows:

> We are writing to ask Microsoft to change its practice of not paying dividends to shareholders. Our reasons are as follows.
>
> 1. The quantitative failure to pay dividends year after year is an inappropriate and we believe unlawful device to shelter Microsoft earnings from federal income taxes.
>
> By not paying dividends, wealthy Microsoft shareholders such as yourself avoid paying the top marginal tax rate of 39.6 percent that would apply to income distributed as dividends. By taking earnings entirely through stock sales, wealthy shareholders lower their tax rate to the maximum 20 percent that applies to capital gains. According to the most recent SEC reports on insider trades, you personally sold more than $2.9 billion in Microsoft stock last year, benefiting enormously from the lower tax rate that applies to stock sales.

This letter does not even point out that 20% is an overstatement: Bill is taxed only on *realized* capital gains! If Bill does not sell his shares, he suffers zero taxes on increases in his wealth over the year. And, with the **GOP** elimination of the **estate tax**, neither may his heirs. The Bush tax reforms of 2003 have further significantly reduced the taxes on dividend payments. Microsoft promptly started paying dividends in 2003—many billions worth.

Here is an interesting question: Is it the fault of Bill Gates (who is also a prolific political campaign donor) or is it the fault of the U.S. government that Gates has suffered only minimal tax obligations on his wealth gains over the last 20 years?

file=caprest.tex: RP

Solve Now!

Q 23.15 *If a normal investor cannot participate in a share repurchase program, is she better off with a dividend payout than with a share repurchase?*

Q 23.16 *What companies should pay dividends?*

23·8. Further Considerations

Of course, we have not covered *everything* possible about capital structure in our chapter. The real world is considerably more complex than the surgical scenarios we have explored. But, you now have a very good grasp of the most important issues. Let me close our chapter with a number of important issues that did not fit earlier.

23·8.A. Interactions

Typically, firms do not face each of the above problems in isolation, but all at the same time. The presence of one problem—or attempts to reduce it—may worsen another. That is, there can be significant costs to move from a suboptimal to an optimal capital structure.

Executing the value-optimizing strategy may not be possible.

For example, we already know that if a firm is close to bankruptcy, issuing equity could avoid or reduce bankruptcy costs, which in turn would increase firm value. But the infusion of more equity may mostly benefit bondholders, so equity holders may not agree to put in more equity. So, although a reorganization (i.e., a new start) could install a capital structure to increase firm value, there are problems to be resolved to get there, given the current capital structure.

Conflict among different interest groups can prevent optimal solutions.

> **IMPORTANT**: *Interaction effects can make it difficult to optimally adjust capital structure in the future. This can favor a more flexible capital structure (more equity and slack) today.*

Of course, equity infusions to stave off bankruptcy are not always good, either. For example, it could be that it would be more efficient to liquidate the firm, and the equity infusion allows the firm to continue to operate inefficiently. Raising more equity might thus facilitate the *wrong* managerial action.

Equity Infusions are not always good, either, though.

23·8.B. Reputation and Capital Structure Recommendations

We have already mentioned another important factor in the real world—reputation. It can lower financing costs, improve incentives, and increase firm value. Remember an earlier example, in which the presence of the *ex post* ability to expropriate bondholders hurts the firm. If managers had a reputation not to take such bad projects, perhaps overly restrictive covenants could be avoided, in effect lowering financing costs *ex ante*. More importantly, the example assumed that everyone knew exactly what expropriation opportunities existed, and what their probabilities were. But, despite restrictive covenants, bondholders will always have the nagging suspicion that they may be expropriated after all when unforeseen opportunities appear. Only the building of trust and reputation can overcome such suspicions, with their associated increase in financing costs.

Sometimes, owners are best off building a corporate reputation, which can help alleviate investor worries.

Do investors trust managers? Can investors trust managers? Should investors trust managers? When is it worthwhile for a manager/firm to build such a reputation? How can this effectively be accomplished? These are difficult questions to answer empirically, but they are important in the real world.

file=caprest.tex: LP

Choosing the best Capital Structure is a combination of art and science.

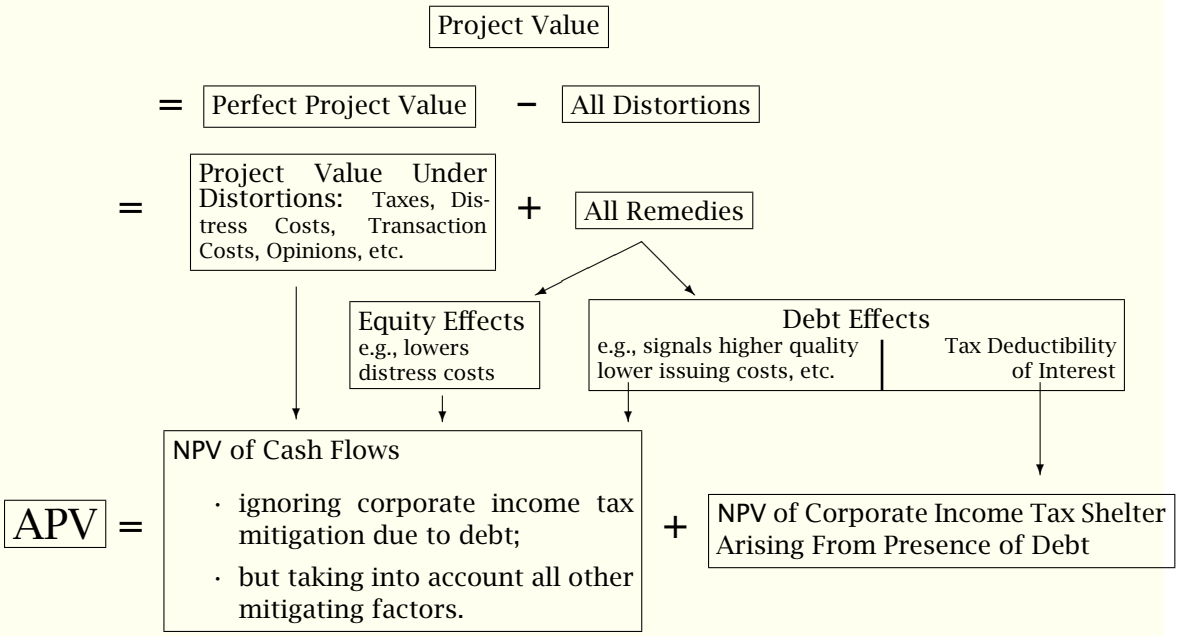
Ultimately, the trick in being a good manager is to judge and weigh the plethora of marginal costs and marginal benefits of projects, of debt, and of equity, and to have sound judgment in deciding on a good combination thereof. Choosing a good capital structure remains as much an "art" as it is a "science." This is good news for today's business students: capital structure choices are unlikely to be taken over by a computer program anytime soon.

23·8.C. Final Note: Cost of Capital Calculations

WACC still works for managers. These factors impact changes in the cost of capital, r, that managers face.

As with personal income taxes, managers need not compute what expected value consequences their decisions will have: if they choose a capital structure leading to inferior future payoffs, they have to give away a larger percentage of the firm today, which manifests itself in the WACC interest rate or APV cash flows that they experience.

Figure 23.1. Capital Structure Effects and Formulas



"ignoring corporate income tax mitigation due to debt" means that cash flows are computed as if no interest payments are tax deductible.

Figure 23.1 again illustrates that even though the tax shelter created by the tax deductibility of interest plays a special role in the APV formula, other factors can play just as important a role. However, they do not manifest themselves as their own algebraic terms in the APV formula; instead, they manifest themselves in the cash flow part of the formula. The reason why these interest payments are broken out is

- the tax shelter can be very large, so some extra emphasis is not harmful;
- it is straightforward to compute the corporate cash flows "as if interest payments were not tax deductible," which in turn makes it easy to add back and understand the quantitative magnitude of the tax shelter.

You could also try to first compute the value of the corporation not taking into account other benefits of debt or equity, and then add back these effects. For example, you could work with cash flows to owners as if they were fully taxed at the personal level, and then add back the personal tax savings created by not paying them out but reinvesting them (thus creating capital

file=caprest.tex: RP

gains). (Indeed, the so-called **Miller Debt and Taxes** formulas have tried to do this.) But such formulas are very difficult to apply in the real world, if only because managers do not know the effective marginal income tax rates of their investors—so few managers would ever do so.

> **IMPORTANT**: *Only corporate income taxes flow directly into the* WACC *or* APV *formulas through their own algebraic terms. All other distortions, ranging from personal investor taxes to bankruptcy distortions, manifest themselves in the cost of capital (the appropriate interest rate) that investors demand, and/or the value of the cash flows of projects. The optimal capital structure allows managers to raise financing at the lowest firm cost of capital, and thereby maximizes the wealth of current owners.*

23·9. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The managerial objective should be to minimize the overall tax burden—the sum of taxes paid by the corporation and its investors.
- Investor clientele effects arise because they reduce overall tax payments. They are

Choice	Low Tax Investors (e.g., Pension Funds)	High Tax Investors (e.g., High-Income Individuals)
Better	Hold bonds (or very high-dividend stocks)	Hold (low-dividend) stocks with high capital gains
Worse	Hold (low-dividend) stocks with high capital gains	Hold bonds (or very high-dividend stocks)

Choice	High Tax Corporations (e.g., "cash cows")	Low Tax Corporations (e.g., "growth firms")
Better	Finance With Bonds	Finance With Stocks (pay out with share repurchases instead of dividends)
Worse	Finance With Stocks	Finance With Bonds

  It is the market prices for the cost of capital that incentivice smart firms and smart investors to arrange themselves in this clientele fashion to reduce taxes.

- Dividends used to be a great mystery, but nowadays they are almost as good as share repurchases. Today, differences between repurchases and dividends are minor.

  One remaining difference is "behavioral": some individual investors just seem to like dividends for their own sake—even when they were severely tax-disadvantaged prior to 2003.

file=caprest.tex: LP

- There are numerous other tax reduction schemes that firms can undertake. Some are mentioned in the final section.

- Capital structure can influence managerial behavior in good times and bad times, and both positively or negatively.
- Equity has the advantage in that it reduces the likelihood of financial distress, and with it deadweight bankruptcy costs in bad times. This includes both direct costs (such as legal fees) and indirect costs (such as underinvestment, reluctance to liquidate, and excessive risk-taking).
- Debt has the advantage in that it imposes discipline on managers and thus reduces money wasting in good times. Managers and employees will work harder if poor performance can lead to bankruptcy.
- Equity has the advantage in that it does not tempt managers to expropriate creditors. If bondholders fear expropriation from subsequent increases in corporate risk or from the issuance of more debt with earlier payments or payments that are equal or higher in priority, they demand a higher cost of capital.
- Debt has the advantage in that it signals confidence. If owners—or managers acting on behalf of owners—prefer to sell partnership shares rather than debt, they probably believe that the project's true quality is worse. Thus, the cost of raising equity is high—new partners will assume the worst.
- Managers can continue to use the WACC or APV formulas from Chapter 22, because the issues described in this chapter flow into the firm's cost of capital through the costs of capital quoted by the financial markets.

A summary of all capital structure effects from Chapter 22 to here is in Table 23.7.

Table 23.7. Summary of Capital Structure Effects

Effect	Favors
Personal Income Taxes	Equity
Debt Expropriation Includes costs arising from the interaction of borrower credibility and borrower flexibility. Includes complete contract specification costs.	Equity
Financial Distress Costs Includes inefficient operations, underinvestment problems, supplier and customer incentives, failure to liquidate or sell at appropriate price, predatory policies by competitors, etc.	Usually Equity
Corporate Income Taxes	Debt
Too Much Cash Flow Sometimes called **Moral Hazard**. Includes overinvestment, free cash flow, excessive managerial perks, verification, etc.	Debt
Inside Information Sometimes called adverse selection. Sometimes called pecking order.	Debt
Behavioral Finance	Situation-Dependent
Transaction Costs	Situation-Dependent

file=caprest.tex: LP

1. The firm first pays taxes on money used for repurchase and dividends, but can use pre-tax money for interest payments. Investors can easily shelter repurchases (as capital gains), but face the full brunt of Uncle Sam on interest or dividend payments.
2. Stable and old: Pension Funds. Young and growing: Individuals.
3. Lower bankruptcy costs, both direct and indirect. Fewer incentive problems to put up extra "maintenance" money. Fewer incentive problems to avoid liquidation and drag on, instead.
4. For example, legal fees and management attention.
5. Neglected maintenance reduces the value of assets relative to the first-best.
6. Shareholders do not want to sell the firm if they are underwater, even if the offer is more than the firm is worth: all benefits would go to the shareholders.
7. It can get the firm to commit to undertake more risky projects. However, it can also make it more difficult to respond when the company is already levered up.
8. Corporate Planes. Large headquarters. Large staff.
9. They help reduce the incentives of equity shareholders to expropriate bondholders.
10. It reduces the need for some bond covenants and thus gives the firm more flexibility in case a great project were to suddenly appear. Bondholders would be happy, because they, too, would benefit.
11. First, issuance of other securities that have an earlier or equal dip on the firm's cash flows in distress. This could be other bonds of equal or higher priority, or a straight out dividend payment. Second, the adoption of risky projects. Numerical examples are in the text.
12.

(a) The bond is convertible into 75% of the firm's equity.

		Bad Luck	Good Luck	Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/2	1/2		
Project	FM	$100	$120	$110	$100
Convertible Bond with Face Value FV=$90					
Bond(FV=$90)	DT	$90	$90		
Converted to 75%	EQ	$75	$90		
Best Choice	DT	$90	$90	$90	$81.82
Equity	EQ	$10	$30	$20	$18.18

(b)

		Bad Luck		Good Luck		Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/4	1/4	1/4	1/4		
Project	FM	$100	$100	$120	$120	$110	$100.00
Project	New	$50	-$60	$50	-$60	-$5	-$4.54
Total Projects		$150	$40	$170	$60	$105	$95.45
Straight Bond with Face Value FV=$90							
Bond(FV=$90)	DT	$90	$40	$90	$60	$70	$63.64
Equity	EQ	$60	$0	$80	$0	$35	$31.82

(c) The bond is convertible into 75% of the firm's equity.

file=caprest.tex: RP

		Bad Luck		Good Luck		Future Expected Value	Today's Present Value
Prob:		1/4	1/4	1/4	1/4		
Total Projects		$150	$40	$170	$60	$105	$95.45
Bond(FV=$90)	DT	$90	$40	$90	$60		
Converted to 75% EQ	DT	$112.50	$30	$127.50	$45		
Best Choice	DT	$112.50	$40	$127.50	$60	$85	$77.27
Equity	EQ	$37.50	$0	$42.50	$0	$20	$18.18

Note that the shareholders are no longer better off if the project is taken, because they receive $18.18 either way. If we made the debt convertible into 75.1% of the firm's equity, then the shareholders would be outright worse off.

13. You should not bid anything (except perhaps $500). If you bid $750, then you will get the house only if it is worth $500, and you would therefore lose 33%.

14. Managers may behave irrationally, and pay dividends even though this is expensive from a personal income tax perspective. Investors may indeed like dividends irrationally, even if it is not in their self-interest.

15. No! Even this investor is better off with a share repurchase, but his increase in wealth now comes from in increase in unrealized (and therefore still untaxed) capital gains.

16. None. If absolutely necessary, it should be firms with many tax-exempt investors.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=caprest.tex: LP

CHAPTER 24

CLINICAL OBSERVATIONS ABOUT CAPITAL STRUCTURE

Debt and Equity in Subject Firms

last file change: Mar 19, 2006 (15:38h)

last major edit: Apr 2005

You now know the considerations that should help management determine the firm's optimal debt-equity ratio. Before we dive into the process, let us first look at the financial structure of one particular company, IBM, to get a better feel of the capital structure in a real company. Thereafter, we shall look at some capital structure summary statistics for other publicly-traded firms.

file=capclinical.tex: LP

24·1. Tracking IBM's Capital Structure From 2001 to 2003

We will follow IBM from 2001 to 2003.

Perhaps the best way to understand capital structure is to follow one company. Table 24.1 shows how IBM's capital structure evolved from 2001 to 2003 . The "change" lines in the table refer to changes in the rows above, and make it easy to see where big changes were happening. Your ultimate goal is to understand the debt ratios at the bottom of the table.

Debt—Total or just Financial Debt?

The top part of Table 24.1 shows how IBM's liabilities evolved. In the context of debt ratios, it is common to consider debt as either all liabilities or just the financial debt. The latter is the sum of long-term financial debt plus any financial debt within short-term liabilities. IBM has debt of

	2001	2002	2003
Financial Debt, in billions	$27.151	$26.017	$23.632
Total Liabilities, in billions	$66.855	$73.702	$76.593

Obviously, the differences are large, but either measure serves a purpose, and this is worth some contemplation.

Claimants become so by providing assets.

Total liabilities include other debt, such as pension or other current liabilities (e.g., accounts payable). How are these different from claims that creditors and shareholders receive? Creditors and shareholders provide assets (value through cash inflows) and receive their claims in exchange. It is this contribution that makes them part owners of the firm. But the same is true for most other obligations. For example, the pension fund is a creditor. Its claim on the assets came about because IBM did not fully pay its employees in cash, but effectively deferred some employee compensation. IBM has, in effect, made its employees creditors. And just like creditors and shareholders, who provided funds directly, the pension fund has provided value (assets) in terms of making IBM's employees produce goods. In other words, the pension obligation arose together with the positive impact of employees on the firm's assets. Just like financial debt, the employees' pension fund should be considered both in terms of its impact on the scale of the firm (increasing both assets and liabilities) and in terms of its impact on the mix of debt and equity—it is not just an obligation that pops out of a vacuum.

Other Liabilities are very similar to financial debt.

It may seem artificial to distinguish liabilities such as pensions from financial debt. Both are subject to the same theoretical issues—for example, both are paid from pre-tax earnings, and both require servicing (or else, bankruptcy looms). Many liabilities also require interest payments and many require repayment on equally as rigid a timetable as financial debt. In this respect, defining debt as just financial debt can seem artificial and perhaps even misleading.

Discretion varies—financial debt can be easily rearranged; pension benefits cannot.

However, financial debt and non-financial obligations do differ, at least a little. First, financial claims are mediated through the financial sector (banks and markets). Second, sharp changes in financial claims are relatively easy and common. For example, a firm can pay off its short-term debt (e.g., by issuing long-term debt). In contrast, although not always and necessarily the case, obligations like pensions or payables tend to march on pretty steadily. You can consider this difference in claims to be linked to the speed of control that financial managers have over these different components of the firm's scale and debt-equity ratio. CFOs probably have relatively little short-term control over the firm's pension obligations, more short-term control over the firm's equity market value and stock price (e.g., by retaining equity), and a lot of short-term control over the firm's debt and equity issuing and repurchasing, and over its dividend policy. This is one reason why we are especially interested in financial debt ratios.

Consider both debt ratios— and book or market value?

By now, I hope it has become clear to you that characterizing capital structure cannot be accurately accomplished by just one number. Instead, capital structure must be seen from different angles. And the distinction between financial debt and total liabilities is merely the first set of angles. The next perspective you should consider is whether you should rely on book values or market values. Unfortunately, market values for liabilities are not readily available, so we must rely on the accounting book values. Fortunately, there is often little difference between the two as far as liabilities are concerned.

file=capclinical.tex: RP

In contrast, for equity, you do have a real choice: do you want to measure equity in terms of book value or market value? In IBM's case, Equity—Book or Market Value?

	2001	2002	2003
Equity, Book Value, in billions	\$23.488	\$22.782	\$27.864
Equity, Market Value, in billions	\$208.437	\$133.484	\$157.047

Again, both book-value and market-value based equity ratios are in common use. Yet, as you can see, when it comes to equity, your choice can make quite a difference. Does IBM carry three times as much debt as equity (per its book value of equity relative to total liabilities), or just one-third to one-half as much debt as equity (per its market value)? Which is "correct"? This book favors the market value. The book value is not a true value. It is the "plug-in" number that equalizes both sides of the balance sheet. In fact, despite equity's limited liability, it can even be negative. If you look deeper, you will discover that the book value of equity is heavily linked to past retained earnings and depreciation, and not to the value of future opportunities. Therefore, our book focuses more on the *market* value of equity—but be aware that this is a judgment call that not everyone shares.

Finally, you can quote debt ratios either relative to the equity value, as in a debt-equity ratio, or relative to the entire firm value, as in a debt-asset ratio. Assets are the sum of total liabilities and total shareholders' equity. The assets on the balance sheet rely on the accounting book value of equity. Thus, it is also common to compute a market value of the firm's assets by adding the book value of total liabilities to the market value of equity. Debt-Equity or Debt-Asset Ratios? And what assets?

The bottom of Table 24.1 shows the effects of some of these choices for IBM. Clearly, in considering whether a firm carries a lot or just a little debt, it matters which definition you choose. If you compute a market-based liabilities-to-equity ratio, IBM first saw its debt-equity ratio increase from Some examples.

$$D/E_{2001} = \frac{\$66,855}{\$208,437} \approx 32\% \tag{24.1}$$

to

$$D/E_{2002} = \frac{\$73,702}{\$133,484} \approx 55\% \ , \tag{24.2}$$

and then decrease back to

$$D/E_{2003} = \frac{\$76,593}{\$157,047} \approx 49\% \ . \tag{24.3}$$

In 2003, you could have also quoted as low a debt ratio as 15%, if you worked with the financial debt/equity ratio. And, if you instead computed a book based measure, you could have instead reported

$$D/BE_{2003} = \frac{\$76,593}{\$27,864} \approx 275\% \ . \tag{24.4}$$

Now look again at the ingredients that go into the liability-based debt ratios. Table 24.1 shows that debt-equity ratio changes themselves are also multidimensional—all sorts of debt and equity changes participated. To understand the evolution of debt ratios, you need to realize the role of these ingredients. Our next goal is to look over each of the participating components one by one to get a feel for how changes in firms' debt ratios come about. This additional information is usually found in the footnotes accompanying financial statements, so we have to rely on the footnotes from IBM's 2002 and 2003 annual reports. If you wish to read any IBM historical financials, you can find them at www.ibm.com/annualreport/. It is not important for you to understand every little detail—IBM is just one company, and every company looks a little different. Your goal is to follow the basics, and be able to look up what else you might want to know. Ingredients.

Table 24.1. Major Components of Debt and Equity for IBM, 2001–2003

Debt

	2001		2002 revised		2003	
Long-Term Debt	$15,963		$19,986		$16,986	see Table 24.2
Change		*+$4,023*		*−$3,000*		
Short-Term Liabilities	$35,119		$34,550 $34,220		$37,900	see Table 24.3
Change		*−$569*		*+$3,350*		
includes Short-Term Financial Debt	*$11,188*		*$6,031*		*$6,646*	
Change		*−$5,157*		*+$615*		
Pension Liabilities	$10,308		$13,215		$14,251	
Change		*+$2,907*		*+$1,036*		
Other Liabilities	$5,465		$5,951 $6,281		$7,456	see Table 24.4
Change		*+$330*		*+$1,175*		
Minority Interest — none						
Negative Goodwill — none						
Total Debt	$66,855		$73,702		$76,593	
Change		*+$9,003*		*+$2,891*		
Financial Debt	$27,151		$26,017		$23,632	
Change		*+$1,134*		*+$2,385*		

Equity

	2001		2002 revised		2003	
Stockholder's Equity (BV)	$23,448		$22,782		$27,864	
Change		*−$666*		*+$5,082*		
Total Issued Shares			1920.96		1937.39	
- Treasury Shares =			- 198.59		- 242.88	
Number of Shares	1723.19		1722.38		1694.51	
Change		*−0.81*		*−27.87*		
Price/Share	$120.96		$77.50		$92.68	
Change		*−$43.46*		*+$15.18*		
⇒ Market Value	$208,437		$133,484		$157,047	
Change		*−$74,953*		*+$23,563*		

Total Firm Value

	2001		2002 revised		2003	
⇒ Book Value of Assets	$88,147		$96,484		$104,457	
Change		*+$8,337*		*+$7,973*		
⇒ Market Value of Assets	$273,136		$207,186		$233,640	
Change		*−$65,950*		*+$26,454*		

Market-Value Based Debt Ratios

	2001		2002		2003	
Total Liabilities-Equity Ratio (MV)	0.32		0.55		0.49	
Change		*+0.24*		*−0.06*		
Total Liabilities-Total Assets Ratio (MV)	0.24		0.35		0.33	
Change		*+0.11*		*−0.02*		
Financial Debt-Equity Ratio (MV)	0.13		0.19		0.15	
Change		*+0.06*		*−0.04*		

file=capclinical.tex: RP

24·2. IBM's Debt

Let's look at the four non-zero components of IBM's liabilities.

Liabilities are usually more colorful than equity, and IBM's debt is no exception. A glance at Table 24.1 tells you that there are four sources contributing to IBM's debt: long-term debt, short-term (or current) debt, pension liabilities, and other liabilities. There are two smaller components: minority interest of our business owned by third parties (which is therefore almost like equity) and negative goodwill (related to an accounting discount at which IBM might have purchased other companies). These two rarely play a large role, and they did not play an important role for IBM, either.

24·2.A. Long-Term Debt

Long-Term debt increased and then decreased, mostly driven by IBM's notes.

IBM is a large Fortune-100 company. Many such large companies have a myriad of publicly traded long-term bonds outstanding. (Small firms tend to rely more on bank debt.) Table 24.2 shows *how* IBM's long-term debt first increased by $4.023 billion and then decreased by $3.0 billion.

Straight Bonds The top part of Table 24.2 are IBM's straight long-term bonds (debentures). (Note how one of IBM's bonds has 90 years remaining to maturity!) These bonds seem not to have either an active call feature (or IBM would surely have retired its 8.375% bond due in 2019), or a sinking-fund provision (because in most of these, the outstanding principal remained constant from 2001 to 2003). The only bond on which IBM retired any principal was its 6.5% bond, due in 2028. As to new debt, on October 1, 2003, IBM issued a 5.875% bond for $600 million dollars at 97.65 (i.e., below par—given the 5.875% coupon, this bond was a discount bond).

Net in net, IBM did not change its straight bond borrowing from 2001 to 2002, and increased it by only $219 million from 2002 to 2003.

Notes There was more financing action in IBM's notes. Notes are very similar to bonds. The difference is that they are usually not issued in one big, underwritten chunk, but instead are sold into the market as the firm wants to raise more money—in other words, "off the shelf." Notes are also often callable. Together, these two features make it easy to expand or contract long-term debt, as needed.

IBM increased its medium-term notes by $3.5 billion from 2001 to 2002, and then decreased it by $2.4 billion from 2002 to 2003. (Relatively lower interest rates may help explain some of the shift from longer-term notes into medium-term notes in 2002, but not in 2003. In any case, the two do not exactly offset one another.)

Net in net, $3.5 billion of IBM's $4 billion increase in long-term borrowing in 2002 and $2.4 billion of IBM's $3 billion decrease came from its medium-term notes. Other notes were used to offset some of this, but, nevertheless, IBM seems to have mostly used its notes program to expand or contract its long-term borrowing needs.

Hybrid Borrowing: Note also that IBM had one hybrid debt-equity instrument—a convertible 3.43% note. It was issued by IBM to the partners of Price-Waterhouse-Coopers Consulting (PwCC), a firm that IBM acquired in late 2002.

Foreign Borrowing Over this time period, IBM repurchased a good deal of Euro debt. The Euro appreciated from about 1.1€/$ in 2001 to about 0.9€/$ by 2002, but the decline in the value of IBM's Euro debt obligations is even steeper. IBM also reduced its Canadian debt, and eliminated its Swiss Franc debt. In contrast, IBM continues to rely heavily on financing in Yen. Nevertheless, you cannot interpret these changes as speculation on exchange rates, because IBM described elsewhere in its financials how it hedges some of its currency risk. Moreover, not only IBM's obligations, but also many of its assets were overseas, so the net exposure of IBM to foreign currency is not easy to determine.

Fair Value Adjustment Usually, long-term debt is carried at historical value, not market value. However, some of IBM's debt was "hedged"—that is, IBM had financial contracts that would

file=capclinical.tex: LP

change opposite in value to those of some or all of its bonds. From 2001 to 2003, short-term interest rates fell, while long-term interest rates remained around 5%. The fair value adjustment reflects the change in value of the hedged bonds. (Somewhere else on IBM's balance sheet will be an opposite item—an asset measuring the value change experienced by the hedge instruments.)

Current Maturities Some of IBM's long-term debt became current (had less than one year left before coming due), and therefore was reclassified. This could account for about $1.1 billion less in long-term borrowing in 2002, and $543 million in 2003.

In sum, there are many long-term financing instruments that can play a role. In IBM's case, the most important factor influencing changes in borrowing was its expansion and contraction of its medium-term notes program.

24·2.B. Current Liabilities

Note the many different short-term obligations!

Table 24.3 breaks out current (i.e., short-term) liabilities, which are due to be paid within one year. The CFO has most influence over short-term debt—at least commercial paper and short-term loan borrowing. We also see the long-term debt that fell into short-term debt. The remaining liabilities are mostly incurred in the course of the firm's operations.

We can see that IBM actively reduced its short-term borrowing from 2001 to 2002, and then expanded it from 2002 to 2003.

24·2.C. Other Liabilities

Table 24.4 shows a set of other obligations that can have an impact on the amount of corporate debt. For IBM, only changes in restructuring actions really mattered in 2002. In 2003, however, both changes in IBM's deferred taxes and deferred income played important roles.

24·2.D. Other Observations and Discussion

Pension obligations are very important for firms with many employees—almost as important as long-term debt for IBM!

Table 24.1 also shows that just under 20% of IBM's obligations in 2003 are pension obligations to its more than 300,000 current employees (and also former employees). This is a very important part of IBM's liabilities, but it would be difficult to discuss in less than a chapter in itself—and it would lead us far away from finance.

The time dimension of IBM's obligations, and the prevailing yield curve.

Interestingly, Table 24.1 can also tell us how IBM's shifted its obligations from short-term debt into medium- and long-term debt in 2002, and then reversed (or no longer continued) this trend in 2003. This can be seen both in IBM's arrangement of long-term vs. current liabilities (Table 24.1), and within its long-term liabilities, in its arrangement between long-term notes and medium-term notes (Table 24.2). However, the passing of time itself makes outstanding obligations shorter-term, so we might like to know how its financial obligations for each year developed. If we dig deeper into the financial statement footnotes, we can find these, too:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009
As of 2001	$11,188	$5,186	$3,106	$1,501	$1,904	$2,261	$6,471	←	←
As of 2002		$6,031	$3,949	$3,613	$1,670	$2,705	$846+$9,940		←
As of 2003			$6,646	$4,072	$3,113	$2,760	$1,289+$225+$7,942		

This shows that IBM changed its capital structure dynamically (e.g., it always financed itself with some short-term debt, so the first-year term is large), but for any given year further out, a static shift (i.e., in a given year, like 2006) is not as obvious. When thinking about obligations, IBM's CFO did not operate in a vacuum, but was probably very concerned with the yield-curve. Relative to 2000, short-term and medium-term interest rates had dropped significantly, but

file=capclinical.tex: RP

Table 24.2. IBM's Long-Term Liabilities

At Dec 31	Maturities	2001		2002		2003
U.S. Dollars:						
Debentures:						
5.875%	2032	–		–		$600
6.22%	2027	$500		$500		$500
6.5%	2028	$700		$700		**$319**
7.0%	2025	$600		$600		$600
7.0%	2045	$150		$150		$150
7.125%	2096	$850		$850		$850
7.5%	2013	$550		$550		$550
8.375%§	2019	$750		$750		$750
		$4,100		$4,100		$4,319
	Change		*±$0*		*+$219*	
3.43% conv.notes*	2007	–		$328		$309
Notes, 6%, 5.9%‡	2003-32	$2,772		$2,130		$3,034
Med Term Notes, 4%, 3.7%‡	2003-18	$3,620		$7,113		$4,690
	Change		*+$3,493*		*−$2,423*	
Other: 4.9%, 4.0%‡	2003-09	$828		$610		$508
		$11,320		$14,281		$12,860
	Change		*+$2,961*		*−$1,421*	
Other currencies†						
Euros (5.4%, 5.3%)‡	2003-09	$3,042		$2,111		$1,174
Yen (1.0%, 1.1%)‡	2003-15	$4,749		$4,976		$4,363
Canadian (5.8%, 5.8%)‡	2003-11	$441		$445		$201
Swiss (4.0%, 4.0%)‡	2003	$151		$180		–
Other (6.6%, 6.0%)‡	2003-14	$726		$730		$770
		$20,429		$22,723		$19,368
	Change		*+$2,294*		*−$3,355*	
Unamort. (Prem)/Disc		$47		-$1		$15
SFAS #133 Fair Value Adj.†		$396		$978		$806
		$20,778		$23,702		$20,159
	Change		*+$2,924*		*−$3,543*	
Less current maturities		$4,815		$3,716		$3,173
Total		$15,963		$19,986		$16,986
	Change		*+$4,023*		*−$3,000*	

§: The appendix contains the Standard&Poor's Bond Report on this particular issue. *: These convertibles notes were issued in the 2002 acquisition of PwCC to PwCC partners, and some began converting into equity in 2003. ‡ The first interest rate is the average from 2001 to 2002, the second from 2002 to 2003. †: This item "marks to market" the value of the debt instruments when interest rates change. The IBM footnotes footnote this further as *In accordance with the requirements of SFAS No. 133, the portion of the company's fixed rate debt obligations that is hedged is reflected in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position as an amount equal to the sum of the debt's carrying value plus a SFAS No. 133 fair value adjustment representing changes recorded in the fair value of the hedged debt obligations attributable to movements in market interest rates and applicable foreign currency exchange rates.*

file=capclinical.tex: LP

Table 24.3. IBM's Current (Short-Term) Liabilities

	2001		2002 revised		2003
Short-term Debt	$11,188		$6,031		$6,646
Change		*−$5,157*		*+$615*	
Commercial Paper	*$4,809*		*$1,302*		*$2,349*
Change		*−$3,507*		*+$1047*	
+ Short-Term Loans	*$1,564*		*$1,013*		*$1,124*
Change		*−$551*		*+$111*	
+ Long-Term Debt, Current	*$4,815*		*$3,716*		*$3,173*
Change		*−$1,099*		*−$543*	
Taxes	$4,644		$5,476		$5,475
Change		*+$832*		*−$1*	
Accounts Payable	$7,047		$7,630		$8,460
Change		*+$583*		*+$830*	
Comp and Benefits	$3,796		$3,724		$3,671
Change		*−$72*		*−$53*	
Deferred Income	$4,223		$5,276* $4,946		$6,492
Change		*+$1,053*		*+$1,546*	
Other Accrued Liabilities	$4,221		$6,413		$7,156
Change		*+$2,192*		*+$743*	
Total Current	$35,119		$34,550 $34,220		$37,900
Change		*−$569*		*+$3,680*	

* This revision shifted $330 from deferred income into other liabilities, which can be seen in Table 24.4.

long-term rates were somewhat sluggish. Here is how the economy-wide rates changed over this period.

	Maturity	2000	2001	2002	2003
Treasury, Short-Term	1 month	>5%	2.47%	1.63%	1.02%
Treasury, Medium-Term	3 year	6.22%	4.09%	3.10%	2.10%
Treasury, Long-Term	20 year	6.23%	5.63%	5.43%	4.96%
Corporate, Short-Term	1 Month	6.3%	3.8%	1.7%	1.1%
Aaa Bonds	Medium Term	7.6%	7.1%	6.5%	5.7%

Some more interesting information.

Finally, the financials also tell a little bit about IBM's interest payments and unused credit lines.

	2001	2002	2003
Interest Paid and Accrued	$1,235	$815	$663
Unused Credit Lines	$16,121	$16,934	$15,883

file=capclinical.tex: RP

Table 24.4. IBM's Other Liabilities

		2001		2002 revised		2003
Deferred Taxes		$1,485		$1,450		$1,834
	Change		*−$35*		*+$384*	
Deferred Income		$1,145		$1,079* $1,409		$1,842
	Change		*−$66*		*+$433*	
Exec Comp Accrual		$868		$851		$1,036
	Change		*−$17*		*+$185*	
Restructuring Actions		$589		$1,024		$871
	Change		*+$435*		*−$153*	
Postemployment, preretirement		$493		$573 $572		$579
	Change		*+$80*		*+$7*	
Disability Benefits		na		na † $304		$349
	Change		*+$0*		*+$45*	
Environmental Accruals		$215		$208		$214
	Change		*−$7*		*+$6*	
Other		$670		$766† $463		$731
	Change		*+$96*		*+$268*	
Total		$5,465		$5,951 $6,281		$7,456
	Change		*+$486*		*+$1,175*	

* This revision shifted $330 from deferred income into other liabilities, which can be seen in Table 24.3. † IBM broke out $330 million disability benefits in 2003, previously classified as "other."

To put the interest paid into perspective, in 2001, IBM earned $7.7 billion; in 2002, it earned $5.3 billion; in 2003; it earned $7.6 billion. To put the credit lines into perspective, they are about equal in size to IBM's long-term debt.

file=capclinical.tex: LP

24·3. IBM's Equity

Changes in the number of shares ultimately were minor.

Table 24.5 shows most of the evolution of IBM's equity. (There is not enough information in the footnotes to track all changes.) Looking at preferred equity, we see that it must have disappeared by 2002. The background is that in 1995, the IBM board had decided to repurchase all its remaining 7.5% callable preferred stock, and this was ultimately completed on May 18, 2001. Moving on to common equity, we note that although 1.9 billion shares of IBM were officially outstanding, IBM itself held about 200 million shares in 2001 and 2002, and 250 million shares in 2003. Thus, if you had owned about 1.7 billion external shares, you would have owned all of IBM's common equity. Interestingly, this number remained fairly constant. Yes, IBM actively repurchased its shares, and although the dollar amount was large, it was only a small fraction of the company's outstanding stock. In addition, IBM then turned around and used these shares in other transactions, e.g., to fund the PwCC acquisition or to fund its employee stock option plans. Consequently, although repurchases and net stock transactions were larger than interest payments and dividend payments combined, the active issuing or repurchasing of shares ultimately did not play much of a role.

Changes in the price per share played a very large role.

Instead, almost all the change in the value of equity came through the one mechanism of changes in the price of each IBM share: from 2001 to 2002, it dropped from \$120.96 to \$77.50, thereby losing about one-third of its market value. From 2002 to 2003, the market value bounced back again by about 20%.

Table 24.5. IBM's Equity and Some Other Information

		2001	2002	2003
Preferred	authorized	150,000,000	–	–
	outstanding	2,546,011	–	–
Common	authorized	4,687,500,000	4,687,500,000	4,687,500,000
	outstanding	1,913,513,218	1,920,957,772	1,937,393,604
	Change		*7,444,554*	*16,435,832*
	treasury	190,319,489	198,590,876	242,884,969
	Change		*8,271,387*	*44,294,093*
	Net	1,723,193,729	1,722,366,896	1,694,508,635
	Change		*−826,833*	*−27,858,261*
	Identifiable Changes			
	PwCC Acquisition Issue, restricted		*−3,677,213*	
	To Pension Fund, from Treasury		*−24,037,354*	
	Repurchase I		*48,481,100*	*49,994,514*
	Repurchase II ESOP		*189,797*	*291,921*
	Issue to ESOP, from Treasury		*−979,246*	*−2,120,293*
	*PwCC Acq Issue**		*−$254*	
	Repurchase I		*$4,212*	*$4,403*
	Repurchase II ESOP		*$18*	*$24*
	To Pension Fund		*−$1,871*	
Retained Earnings		$30,142	$31,555	$37,525
Book Equity		$23,448	$22,782	$27,864
	Cash Dividends Paid		*$1,005*	*$1,085*
	Common Stock Transactions		*$3,087*	*$3,232*
	For Comparison: Interest Paid		*$831*	*$853*
	For Perspective: Taxes Paid		*$1,707*	*$1,841*
Common Price/Share		$120.96	$77.50	$92.68
⇒ Common Market Value		$208,437	$133,484	$157,047

* An additional $30 million is recorded to be issued in future.

file=capclinical.tex: LP

24·4. Assessing IBM's Capital Structure Change

Where changes came from.

We can now make some overall observations. IBM's liabilities evolved fairly steadily. About one-quarter of the total debt were pension and other liabilities. The pension obligations, in particular, marched upwards fairly steadily. In terms of IBM's total debt increase, the pension and other obligations accounted for one-third and three-quarters in 2002 and 2003, respectively. About one-quarter of IBM's total liabilities were its long-term debt; one-half was its short-term debt. In 2002, IBM ratcheted up its medium-term notes borrowing, accounting for a debt increase of $3.5 billion. In 2003, IBM mostly kept its borrowing at the same level, but shifted it relatively from long-term into current debt. These changes in the value of IBM's debt were dwarfed by the changes in the value of IBM's *equity*—and almost all of these came from changes in the per-share price, not from changes in the number of shares outstanding.

Solve Now!

Q 24.1 *How would you define the firm's capital structure?*

Q 24.2 *List some of the bigger factors that go into the firm's capital structure.*

Q 24.3 *To purchase all common equity in a firm, do you need to purchase all outstanding shares?*

Q 24.4 *Is debt or equity value usually "spikier"?*

24·5. The Capital Structure of Other Firms

Obviously, we cannot look at all publicly traded companies at the same level of detail as we did for IBM. Still, you need to know not just the needle, but also the haystack. Is IBM a representative firm, or is it the exception? What are the debt ratios of companies of different size? Are there any patterns?

24·5.A. Very Large Firms

Let's look at the 28 largest firms traded in the U.S. Let's focus on market value, not book value.

Let's start with the largest U.S. traded firms on Yahoo!*Finance*. Table 24.6 shows the 28 firms in 2005 that had more than $100 billion in entity value at the end of 2005. **Entity value** is Yahoo's term for total debt plus market value of equity. It is not the same as assets, because it is only the sum of the market value of equity and financial debt net of cash assets. It ignores all other liabilities. As noted, our focus is on market-value-based debt ratios.

Financial firms tend to have high debt/equity ratios. Non-financial U.S. firms that are not in financial distress tend to have very low leverage.

Eleven companies were primarily in finance-related businesses, one was a large conglomerate, two were in car manufacturing (though financing car purchases could be a large part of their business), and fourteen were in other businesses. IBM is one of the latter. The table shows that, just like IBM, most of these large firms have market values that are two or three times their book values. A quick glance suggests the following:

Financial Firms have very high debt ratios. The most extreme example is Fannie Mae, a mortgage lender, which is also the world's largest firm. It has outstanding debt obligations of $940 billion, twenty times its equity capitalization. (In turn, most of its assets are loans to home owners.) But many banks and other financial companies also have more debt than equity.

Car Manufacturers also have relatively high debt-equity ratios. As of 2005, the two remaining U.S. car manufacturers (General Motors and Ford) are both in real distress. This is why their equity market values are not two or three times their book value—in fact, GM's

file=capclinical.tex: RP

book value is now above its market value. This is a rarity among large U.S. companies. Most of GM's and Ford's remaining assets today are loans extended to customers who are purchasing vehicles.

Non-Financial Firms Many of the remaining large U.S. firms have market-based debt/equity ratios that are in the single digits. The two outliers are Verizon and AT&T, both of which have recently made large acquisitions. (Verizon bought MCI; SBC purchased AT&T and changed its name to AT&T.) IBM does not seem unusual, but it also is among the more indebted companies. (IBM has large financial financing operations, which may explain some of this.)

General Electric is hard to classify.

24·5.B. Smaller Firms

We want to learn debt/equity ratio patterns by firm size.

Even these 28 companies are not fully representative of companies in the U.S. economy. There are thousands of smaller firms. Unfortunately, we cannot look one-by-one at their individual capital structures. So, we need to summarize the information. I propose we look at non-financial companies in 2003, classified as follows:

Name	Total Firm Market Value	Median Size	Number
"Tiny Firms"	Less than $100 million	$35	1,341
"Small Firms"	$100 million to $1 billion	$350	2,195
"Medium Firms"	$1 billion to $10 billion	$4,360	1,597
"Large Firms"	More than $10 billion	$52,409	606

The final category is basically the firms in the S&P500 index, and include the firms analyzed in the previous subsection. Although our main interest are these firms' debt ratios, let us also look at some other relevant ratios.

Debt Components

Small Firms have relatively lower financial debt

You have already seen that you can base debt ratios only on the financial debt or on all liabilities. How do the two compare? We shall also discuss the averages against the IBM estimate, so that you can intuitively compare magnitudes and judge whether the IBM numbers were representative.

Financial Debt vs. Total Liabilities In 2003, IBM had $23.632 billion in financial debt, out of total liabilities of $76.593 billion. Thus, just over 30% of its debt was financial. Was IBM representative, at least among larger firms?

Financial / Total Liabilies	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	24%	27%	46%	45%	30%
25th-75th Percentile Range	0-53%	0-54%	25-63%	30-56%	

This shows that IBM's 30% ratio is relatively small among large companies. More typically, large firms have just under half of their total liabilities in financial debt. In contrast, small firms tend to have relatively more non-financial liabilities. (And many small firms have *no* financial liabilities.)

file=capclinical.tex: LP

Table 24.6. U.S. Firms in December 2005 with at least $100 billion in Entity Value

Ticker	Company	Total Entity	Fin'l Debt	Equity		Debt/Equity	
		(MV)	(BV)	(BV)	(MV)	(BV)	(MV)
	Primarily Financial and Insurance Operations						
FNM	Fannie Mae	985	940	22	47	4,270%	2,020%
FRE	Freddie Mac	713	716	27	46	2,618%	1,550%
BAC	Bank of America	311	425	101	188	420%	225%
AIG	Amer Intl Group (AIG)	238	116	89	176	129%	66%
WFC	Wells Fargo & Co	180	102	40	107	257%	96%
C	Citigroup	177	516	111	249	466%	207%
WM	Washington Mutual	143	115	25	43	456%	267%
WB	Wachovia	114	123	47	83	263%	148%
SLM	SLM (Sallie Mae)	111	89	3	23	2,745%	387%
USB	US Bancorp	108	59	20	56	299%	106%
AXP	American Express	102	44	10	65	445%	68%
	Car Manufacturers and Conglomerates, incl. large financing arms						
GE	General Electric*	722	360	113	374	319%	96%
GM	General Motors	274	278	22	11	1,241%	2,612%
F	Ford Motor	140	142	14	15	1041%	958%
	Primarily Non-Financial Operations						
XOM	Exxon Mobil	338	8	108	354	8%	2%
MSFT	Microsoft	244	0	48	282	0%	0%
WMT	Wal Mart Stores	236	38	50	202	76%	19%
MO	Altria Group	177	25	35	159	72%	16%
PFE	Pfizer	176	12	67	177	18%	7%
JNJ	Johnson And Johnson	168	2	37	181	7%	1%
PG	Procter&Gamble	161	30	13	139	228%	21%
IBM	IBM	144	21	30	131	71%	16%
INTC	Intel	143	1	37	157	2%	0%
CVX	Chevron	131	14	60	128	23%	11%
VZ	Verizon Communic	122	39	39	85	101%	47%
GOOG	Google	118	0	9	127	0%	0%
BRK-A	Berkshire Hathaway	105	15	90	136	17%	11%
T	AT&T Inc.	103	23	38	81	60%	29%

Yahoo!*Finance* reports long-term debt plus debt in current liabilities as overall debt, and quotes entity (or enterprise) value as the sum of financial debt and the market value of equity, minus cash and short-term holdings. It ignores all other liabilites.

file=capclinical.tex: RP

If it is not through financial debt, then how do small firms borrow? Do they use more "day-to-day" borrowing than large firms, and, in particular, more trade credit? They do:

Smaller firms rely more on trade credit.

Short-Term Liabilities vs. Total Liabilities Of IBM's $76.593 billion in total liabilities, $37.9 billion was short-term.

Short-Term / Total Liab.	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	77%	63%	37%	37%	50%
25th-75th Percentile Range	49-98%	36-89%	22-59%	23-51%	

IBM sits on the high end among large companies. More typically, large firms have only about one-third of their total liabilities in short-term liabilities. In contrast, small firms tend to have two-thirds of their liabilities in short-term liabilities. Small firms, indeed, seem to live more precariously than large firms.

Accounts Payables vs. Total Liabilities IBM had $8.46 billion in accounts payables.

Payables / Total Liab.	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	19%	15%	10%	10%	11%
25th-75th Percentile Range	10-34%	7-28%	5-19%	5-14%	

Here, IBM was typical for large firms. In contrast to such large firms, many small firms finance themselves relatively more through trade credit.

Equity Value Measures

Our next question concerns the effect of quoting equity in terms of market or book values. If all firms have similar book/market value ratios, then a market-value based debt-ratio is always the same fraction of a book-value based debt-ratio, and the indebtedness rank of a company relative to other companies would not depend on how you quote indebtedness.

Book values are lower than market values.

Book Value vs. Market Value of Equity IBM had a market value of equity of $157.047 billion, and a book value of $27.864 billion.

Book Equity / Market Equity	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	46%	45%	40%	39%	18%
25th-75th Percentile Range	16-90%	25-72%	24-58%	21-60%	

IBM was relatively low on this ratio—such firms are sometimes called growth firms. Book values tend to be below market values for all types of firms, although there is much variation across firms even within size categories. Thus, firms will rank differently in terms of indebtedness depending on how you quote the book value.

file=capclinical.tex: LP

Debt Ratios

Debt ratios are bigger for larger firms

Our main interest is ultimately debt ratios.

Ratio of Financial Debt To Equity (MV) In 2003, IBM had financial debt of $23.632 billion and equity valued at $157.047 billion.

Financial Debt / Equity Ratio	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	14%	27%	41%	41%	15%
25th-75th Percentile Range	0-70%	1-117%	12-112%	15-113%	

For a firm of IBM's size, 15% is low—although we know from Table 24.6 that such low financial debt-equity ratios are more common among the 28 largest firms than they are among the largest 600 firms. In contrast, small firms are commonly not financed primarily through financial debt.

Ratio of Total Liabilities vs. Asset Value (MV) In 2003, IBM had total liabilities of $76.593 billion on a total market value of assets of $233.640 billion—just about 33%.

Liabilities / Asset Ratio	Tiny	Small	Medium	Large	IBM
Median, 2003	30%	23%	35%	40%	33%
25th-75th Percentile Range	14-53%	10-47%	19-53%	24-59%	

IBM's overall liability asset ratio is fairly common, however. In contrast, small firms are typically less indebted.

Recent performance and industry seem to matter.

We can dissect the liabilities ratio further. I looked at all 416 non-financial firms with more than $10 billion in assets. There were only twelve firms with debt ratios above 90%. Four firms were airlines (United, Delta, Northwest, American); three were car manufacturers or suppliers (GM, Ford, Goodyear); three were energy-related (Calpine, CMS Energy, Mirant). The final two were Charter Cable and Owens-Corning (which had been forced into bankruptcy by its asbestos liabilities). All of them had experienced dramatic declines in their equity values in the prior two years, and were either close to or in bankruptcy. Visual examination of other highly indebted firms shows that this pattern continues. Among the next forty firms with the highest debt ratio, three quarters were in energy, a sector that had suffered a terrible year. Of the remaining quarter, the majority of firms were car-related. We can also look at the 191 financial firms. These had a median debt ratio of 55%—much higher than the 40% reported in the table for the 416 non-financial firms. In sum, industry and recent stock market performance seem to matter.

file=capclinical.tex: RP

24·6. SUMMARY

This chapter covered the following major points:

1. Capital structure can be measured in many different ways. The most important choices are whether market value is measured in terms of book value of equity value, and whether indebtedness is measured in terms of total liabilities or just financial debt.
2. Both capital scale and capital structure dynamics are influenced by factors under management's immediate control (such as debt issuing or share repurchasing), factors related to operations (such as pension obligations and working capital), and factors beyond management's immediate control (such as value changes, aka stock returns).
3. The big liability categories are often long-term debt, short-term debt, pension liabilities (depending on the company), and other liabilities.
4. Financial debt can appear both in long-term debt and short-term debt. It can contain many different types of borrowings simultaneously—bonds, notes, foreign credit, hybrid securities, credit line related borrowing, bank debt, etc. Firms also report the term structure of their liabilities.
5. Short-term debt contains financial debt, tax obligations soon due, accounts payalble, compensation related liabilities, and other items.
6. Firms can and often do take the term structure into account when they issue or retire debt. This is often history dependent.
7. Other liabilities can contain such items as deferred taxes and deferred income, executive compensation, retirement-related items, disability benefits, environmental liabilities, etc.
8. Equity is less colorful than debt. For many companies, it is only one class of common debt.

When we look at a broader section of publicly traded firms in 2003, we find that

1. Industry matters. Many financial firms have very high debt ratios. Many pharmaceutical and computer companies have very low debt ratios.
2. Distressed firms and firms recently having acquired other firms often have high debt ratios.
3. Large firms not in the preceding two categories often have very low debt ratios—as low as the single digits.
4. Large firms tend to have relatively more of their total debt in financial obligations (45%) than small firms (25%).
5. Large firms tend to have relatively less of their total debt in short-term obligations (35-40%) than small firms (60-70%). Small firms rely disproportionally more on trade credit (20% vs. 10%.)
6. Typical financial debt-to-equity ratios are around 15-25% for small firms, and 40% for large firms.
7. The book value of equity is on average less than half its market value. Therefore, book-based debt-asset ratios are often two or three times as high as market-based debt-asset ratios.
8. Small firms tend to have financial-debt to equity ratios of about 15-30%; large firms about 40%.

file=capclinical.tex: LP

9. Small firms tend to have total liabilities equivalent to 30% of their assets (market value); large firms tend to have about 40%.

1. Usually, this is a debt/equity ratio.
2. Debt consists of long-term debt (bonds and notes), short-term debt (financial, taxes, payables, etc.), pension-debt, and other debt. Equity is a number of shares multiplied by the per-share value.
3. No! Many firms have treasury shares, which they themselves hold.
4. Equity.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=capclinical.tex: LP

CHAPTER 25

THE DYNAMICS OF CAPITAL STRUCTURE AND FIRM SIZE

The Issuing and Financing Process

last file change: Mar 30, 2006 (13:02h)

last major edit: Apr 2005

You know the factors that influence optimal capital structure, and you have a general idea of how firms' liabilities structures look like. But knowing where it should be or where it is does not mean that you already know how firms get there. So, how do corporations actually arrive at their current capital structures? And, is it all under the control of managers?

This chapter gives you a basic framework of how to think about the capitalization process of the firm, how changes in debt-equity ratios come about, and some other institutional details that are relevant to the capital issuing process. The next chapter is closely linked, in that it will lay out what we know empirically about how actual corporate capital structure has been developing in the United States.

25·1. THE DYNAMICS OF CAPITAL STRUCTURE AND FIRM SCALE

Most forces are as you would expect—what management chose.

You already know that a firm's capital structure is comprised of the claims on its assets. These claims are typically a mix of various forms of debt (long-term, short-term, operating-related), equity (common and preferred), and hybrid claims (e.g., convertibles). You also know the forces that managers should be aware of when they think about the value-maximizing mix of these claims—forces like taxes and agency concerns. These theories and considerations are mostly about the capital structure *levels*. As the firm operates, both its needs and its debt and equity levels are changing. In the remainder of this chapter, we concentrate on these capital structure *changes*. Table 25.1 organizes many of the relevant forces tugging on the firm's debt-equity ratio and the firm's scale (total value). Many of these are the usual suspects—transactions stemming from active financial market intervention, as orchestrated by the CFO.

Stock returns are not fully under the control of management.

But not every change is under the control of management. We have already noted these factors in IBM's case. Table 25.1 ignores many of the influences operating on the firm's capital structure (and in particular, its liabilities, such as pension liabilities). We still have left one factor that is not fully under the financing control of the CFO: firm value changes (aka stock returns), which affect both the scale and the debt-equity ratio of the firm. For example, a firm that is financed 50-50 by risk-free debt and equity and that doubles would see its debt-equity ratio decline to 50-150. We have already seen the effects of stock returns in IBM's case—when its stock price tumbled from $121 to $78 per share, its equity lost over one-third of its value. This, in turn, dramatically increased IBM's debt ratio. What factors might influence the stock price? Some are beyond the manager's control. For example, investors could become more risk-averse and therefore would no longer be willing to pay $121 for IBM with its level of risk. Other factors that can change IBM's value would be unexpectedly good or bad news (an earthquake). There are also factors that *are* under the manager's control. Perhaps the firm paid out a lot of equity in dividends to shareholders (OK, we know IBM did not!), or managers ran the firm poorly.

Table 25.1. Non-Operating Capitalization and Capital Structure Influences

Debt-Equity Ratio \ Firm Value	Decreases	Constant	Increases
Decreases	**Debt Repurchase (e.g., sinking fund and interest payment)** **Repayment of Principal or Interest** Debt Call	Debt-into-Equity Conversion. Equity-for-Debt Exchange (more equity, less debt; often used in Chapter 11)	**(Exogenous) Firm Value Rise (possibly through retained earnings)** **Primary Seasoned Equity Issue in M&A context** **Share Creation for Employee Compensation Purposes** Primary Seasoned Equity Issue outside M&A context Warrant Exercise
Constant	Simultaneous Debt-Equity Payout.*		Simultaneous Debt-Equity Issue.* **Hybrid Security Issue.***
Increases	**(Exogenous) Firm Value Drop** **Share Repurchase** **Cash Dividend**	Debt-for-Equity Exchange (more debt, less equity)	**Debt Issue**
(Depends)	**Sale of Assets (e.g., carveout)**		**Purchase of Assets (e.g., M&A)**

Boldfaced changes are common, though not necessarily of equal quantitative importance. Starred transactions rarely occur in the precise proportionality to maintain a constant debt-equity ratio.

Note that this table ignores the complex interaction with existing capital structure. In particular, if the firm is 100% equity financed, an increase or decrease in firm value, an equity issue or equity repurchase, and a dividend payment have no influence on the firm's debt-equity ratio—it will remain at 0%.

(Large publicly traded firms cover about 50-90% of their funding needs with retained earnings. The remainder is usually predominantly debt-financed.) As you will see in the next chapter, a considerable proportion of most firms' debt-equity dynamics is determined by such firm value changes, which are reflected most obviously in the firm's stock price.

SIDE NOTE: Table 25.1 not only does not mention changes in operating liabilities, but also ignores the effect of bond price changes. When economy-wide interest rates rise or the firm's credit rating deteriorates, the debt usually declines in value—but so does the equity. Conversely, when economy-wide interest rates drop or the firm's credit rating appreciates, the debt usually increases in value—but again, so does the equity. Thus, the effect of changing interest rates on the debt-equity ratio is usually ambiguous. Moreover, there are situations in financial distress in which the debt wrestles power from the equity—there would be no change in overall capitalization, but a good change in the firm's debt-equity ratio.

Solve Now!

Q 25.1 *Is all debt at the discretion of management?*

Q 25.2 *Describe some of the financial factors that can change capital structure*

25·2. THE MANAGERIAL PERSPECTIVE

An outline.

In this section, assume that you are the CFO of a large firm who wants to achieve an optimal capital structure. You will be dealing with the forces and mechanisms outlined in Table 25.1, and then some. But you are not helpless. Your current capital structure is at least in part the outcome both of your predecessors' and your own actions. In light of the constant historical change of your capital structure, what questions and issues should be on your mind when you think about your active capital policy for this year?

25·2.A. The Holistic View

Don't think "dividends, yes or no?" Think instead of capital inflows vs. outflows; and of debt vs. equity consequences.

As CFO, should you think narrowly about just one action—say, whether to repurchase shares? Probably not. Table 25.1 should make it clear that you should consider components not in isolation, but within a broader context. It would make more sense for you to think about the overall payin/payout policy of the firm. Dividends, coupon payments, repurchases, and issues are *all* mechanisms for transferring cash from inside the corporation to the outside owners, or vice-versa. To think about the overall debt-equity policy of the firm, you should recognize that equity issues, debt repurchases, and interest payments are *all* mechanisms for lowering the firm's debt-equity ratio.

An example of a firm.

Here is an illustration of the multidimensional nature of your choices. For simplicity's sake, start by assuming we are still in a perfect M&M market, where the mix of financing does not influence total firm value. Your firm is currently worth \$1 billion, of which \$400 million is outstanding debt. You may choose to raise \$100 million in new equity, raise \$200 million in new debt, pay out \$30 million to service old debt (principal and interest), pay out \$20 million in dividends, and repurchase \$50 million of the firm's own equity shares. De facto, your firm has

1. transferred \$100 + \$200 − \$30 − \$20 − \$50 = \$200 million of cash from the outside to the inside,
2. and increased its debt-equity ratio from \$400:\$600≈67% to \$570:\$630≈90%.

Of course, the real world is not M&M, and this means that you need to amend your choices. You need to consider the reaction of investors. For example, if investors believe that the corporation suffers badly from agency conflict, then they may react negatively (to the \$200 million increase in extra cash available to managers). On the other hand, if investors believe that the higher debt-equity ratio will save the corporation relatively more in taxes, then they may react positively

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

to the increase in the debt-equity ratio. In fact, you should consider each and every value effect that we discussed in Chapters 21–23. Without knowing more about our particular firm, it would be hard to guess whether the financial markets would look fondly or not so fondly on these capital structure changes. Why does this matter? If your capital structure rearrangement created value, for example, it might well be that the outcome is not $1.2 billion in value and $570:$630 in debt-equity ratio, but, say, $1.3 billion in value and a $570:$730 debt-equity ratio. (In the web chapter on capital market responses, we will look in some depth at how U.S. financial markets have responded to corporate actions.)

An important interaction!

Can you think of equity-issuing activity as a decrease in the firm's debt-equity ratio? It is easy to mentally equate the two, but this is not necessarily the case. There are two basic disconnects to consider.

1. The existing capital structure plays an important role in the effect that issuing has on the capital structure. When a firm with a 100% equity structure issues new equity shares, it does not change its debt ratio. But the same equity issue would induce drastic capital structure changes for an equal-sized firm that was previously 90% debt-financed. Thus, even if there were no other influences, studying equity issues is intrinsically not the same as studying debt-equity decreases.

2. An influence may have an effect through multiple channels. For example, contemplated M&A activity may induce equity-issuing activity—but it also induces debt-issuing activity. Thus, M&A activity may not necessarily positively influence debt-equity ratios at all.

In addition, you already know that there are many other factors influencing firms' debt-equity ratios, which have nothing to do with equity issuing. Thus, although equity-issuing and decreases in the firm's debt-equity ratio are linked, studying (equity-) issuing activity is by no means the same as studying capital structure.

Important secondary effects.

Before we move on, there is one last interesting capital structure effect worth noting. Your investors would also draw some inferences from the fact that our sample firm paid out only $20 million in dividends, but repurchased $50 in shares. Dividends tend to be stickier than share repurchases, and thus the fact that your firm pays out more in repurchases than in dividends may send a mixed signal—either managers want to be smart about tax consequences (good news), or they are worried about the firm's ability to pay out cash again next year (bad news). (We will talk about these non-obvious effects later when we zero in on individual actions in more detail.)

25·2.B. Meaningful Questions

The two important questions.

So, as CFO, what are the most important questions concerning your target capitalization that you should ask? Is it just the question whether you should pay dividends, repurchase shares, or issue equity? You already know that payin/payout policy is a complex issue, but stating this is not much help to you. Ultimately, capital policy really has to be considered on a firm-by-firm basis. If you want to act on behalf of the firm's owners, these are the questions that you must ask:

1. Can you invest the money better than what your investors can find elsewhere?

2. If you are taking an action (e.g., paying out less cash or taking in more cash), do your investors share your beliefs that this will increase value—that the additional money will be well spent?

   If your investors agree with your managerial judgment, as they would in a perfect market, then there is no problem. However, if your investors disagree with you, as they may in an imperfect market, then there is a problem. For example, if you know that investing in a new technology is highly worthwhile but requires cutting dividends, the market may react negatively. This means that all investors would be taking a hit on their market value right now, just as they would if you had thrown away money. If you are correct, investors

file=capdynamics.tex: RP

will eventually realize the value gain, and thus the share price will appreciate again. But this is little consolation to those investors who have to sell their shares this year. Should you represent your current investors or your future investors? There is no easy answer to this difficult question. But note that agency theorists are often skeptical about claims that managers weighed choices and decided to represent the long-run investors—they believe that such claims are often only excuses for managers to represent only themselves. But everyone agrees that good communication from managers to investors can only help.

Worry about operations and disclosure.

In any case, these two questions should point out to you that even our holistic view of capital policy is still too narrow. Capital structure has intricate links to the firm's project opportunities, corporate governance, and disclosure policy. If the firm has great opportunities, if managers are well motivated, and if the firm can convince investors of these great opportunities, then the answer to both questions is often yes. Such firms can even create value by reducing dividends and share repurchases and raising more equity. If the answer to both questions is no, then the firm should not issue equity, and instead seek to increase dividends and share repurchases. And if the answers to both questions are fuzzy—*as they often are*—then you have a tough judgment call to make.

25·2.C. Financial Flexibility and Cash Management

Don't run out of money!

But in many corporations, and especially smaller ones, the CFO faces one issue more important than even long-run capital policy. It is cash management—and fortunately, your goal here is easy and straightforward: Don't let the company run out of cash! We do not mean cash in the cash register, but rather cash necessary to pay creditors. There are many intrinsically profitable companies—especially young, high-growth companies—that have had to fold because of poor liquidity management. The need to pay creditors does not necessarily mean that your company has to have lots of cash on hand. It is enough if you can borrow with ease and rapidity. For example, it is not unusual that when the principal of a bond comes due, it is refinanced by a new bond issue.

Self-fulfilling Prophecy.

But problems can arise when your firm operates too close to the brink of its financial flexibility. This is more often the case for small and private companies. In this instance, it is quite possible that you can get either of two self-fulfilling prophecies ("equilibria") to occur:

1. Lenders are not worried about the company; the company borrows and operates profitably; lenders see their beliefs confirmed and are repaid.
2. Lenders are worried about the company and are unwilling to extend credit; without money, the company goes bankrupt; lenders see their beliefs confirmed that it was wise not to have extended more credit.

Financial flexibility (credit lines, low debt ratios, matching inflows and outflows) helps, but is expensive.

What can you do to avoid the disaster equilibrium? You have a number of options, though all of them are costly:

Match Assets and Liabilities You can try to match expected future income to liabilities. For example, if you are taking out a loan to pay for a new factory, which will come on line and produce income in three years, you could design the loan to require interest and sinking fund payments beginning in three years. Matching future inflows to expected outflows is easier to do if your cash flows are relatively more predictable and if they occur sooner—many lenders would be reluctant to provide long-term credit without any repayment. Moreover, matching inflows and outflows makes more sense on a firm-wide basis, and less sense on a project-by-project basis.

Pay for Flexibility You can pay a bank for an irrevocable credit line. However, although it is often cheap to get a credit line for sunny times, it is often expensive to get one that will hold up (not be revoked) in rainy times. Even IBM's $15 billion credit line, which we mentioned on Page 628, is subject to various bond covenants—and if IBM were to get into trouble and needed it, it might no longer be available.

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

Hold Liquid Investments You can invest cash in assets that have fairly safe values and allow for relatively quick and cheap liquidation. Unfortunately, unless your company is a Treasury bond fund, your business is not likely to need such assets as much as it needs the kinds of assets that are risky and hard to liquidate—for example, your half-constructed laboratory or half-finished R&D would be very difficult to resell.

Adjust Capital Structure You can keep a low debt ratio, which allows you to maintain high interest rate coverage. (That is, your cash flows easily cover your debt obligations.) Firms that have low debt ratios and high interest rate coverage tend to have an easier time borrowing more cash when they need more. Of course, a low debt ratio may not allow your firm to take advantage of the tax subsidy due to debt.

When CFOs are surveyed, they state that they pay close attention to their "financial flexibility"—they care very much about their interest coverage ratios and bond ratings. Such concerns could be good from a liquidity perspective. With high bond ratings and a lot of cash to pay for interest, firms are unlikely to go bankrupt.

The drawback to too much cash.

From the manager's perspective, having more cash is always better than having less cash. But there is also a *very* dark side to this flexibility. Access to cash "lying around" tempts managers to waste money or undertake ventures that they otherwise might not undertake. And investors may not be all that thrilled with insulation from financial default—it can lead to satisfaction with the status quo, as well as inefficient investment. After all, management and employees work harder if they know that the company will go bankrupt if they perform poorly. If the company has enough of a financial buffer, the firm may remain stuck with poor management and unmotivated employees.

25·2.D. Market Pressures Towards the Optimal Capital Structure?

DESCRIBE HOW ON THE MARGIN IT IS OFTEN NOT ENOUGH TO PUSH, BUT THIS DOES NOT MEAN THAT THERE SHOULD BE NO PUSH.

The question

A final interesting question is whether you can just avoid thinking about the optimal capital structure altogether and simply copy the existing capital structure of similar firms.

Intriguing evidence—why are firms not more proactive?

The empirical evidence suggests that firms are very slow to counteract what stock market changes do to them, yet stock market changes are exerting tremendously large changes in firms' debt-equity ratios. This finding has led to an academic debate (still unresolved) about what this implies:

1. Are the transaction costs too high to make it worthwhile to change the capital structure? (If this is true, all our earlier arguments about what should drive capital structure are fairly unimportant.)
2. Does the optimal capital structure itself change one-to-one with the firm's market value (so that no changes are necessary)?
3. Are firms making mistakes by failing to optimize their capital structures?

ANECDOTE: How Bond Ratings Doomed Trust Preferred Securities And Created Ecaps

In 2005, investment bank Lehman introduced a new debt hybrid called an **Ecaps** (Enhanced Capital Advantaged Security). These are securities that have tax-deductible interest payments (which the U.S. IRS disallows for any perpetual bonds), but that are also very long-term and that allow for interest payment postponement. Therefore, these bonds are risky, and in many ways more like equity than bonds. This is a very efficient tax innovation: Firms effectively get interest payment tax deductibility on an equity-like security.

Yet an earlier incarnation of such bonds (known as trust-preferred securities) had stalled because Moody's and S&P had not determined how to treat these securities. The Ecaps deal succeeded because Moody's assigned it into its "Basket D," which counted Ecaps as 75% equity and 25% debt. Therefore, with the extra cash inflow and its modest Moody suggested debt increase, an Ecaps would not likely impact the issuer's rating negatively.

If we believed that an outside investor could make money by fixing a bad capital structure, as in a perfect market, then we would also believe that current capital structures are more than likely fairly close to optimal. Unfortunately, this does not seem to be the case. To "arbitrage" an incorrect financing choice, you would have to mount a corporate takeover. The typical takeover requires a premium of 15 to 30 percent above the current market price, plus another percentage point to the investment banker. To recapture such a large control premium, rectifying an incorrect capital structure would have to create large tangible benefits. If it were just a value increase of 1 to 3 percent per annum, which is not an unreasonably low figure for many firms that are not too far away from the optimal capital structure, it would probably not be enough.

Poor capital structures can persist.

The situation for inside managers are different, because they must not pay a control premium. One to three percent is not an inconsequentially low amount—especially because it is annual and because it requires almost no effort and investment to fix it. For a company like IBM, which is worth several hundred billion dollars, the value created may be "only" a couple of billion dollars per year—certainly enough to cover your consulting fee!

Existing managers can and should fix bad capital structures.

The reason why I am bringing up the fact that 1 to 3 percent is usually not big enough to make a takeover worthwhile is that whatever capital structure managers may choose is not necessarily the outcome of competitive market pressures where the best capital structure prevails. There can be a whole range of capital financing arrangements that persist in the economy—including poor ones—and no one but the managers in charge can fix them. Worse, you already know that managers' incentives differ from those of the shareholders. Managers like free cash flow, financial flexibility, and control over large firms. Unfortunately, this means that there is only so much that we (managers and students) can learn from the capital structures of other firms. Let's assume that a manager knows what his close comparables are. You already know from Chapter 10 that comparable may be an oxymoron, because even seemingly similar firms ultimately tend to be very different upon closer inspection. Let us further assume that there is no value to being different from your competitors, which may again not necessarily be true. Can this manager trust the choices of his peers at his comparables as being optimal? Unfortunately, no. Given that the high costs of capital structure arbitrage can allow bad capital structures to persist for a long time, it may be that other managers do the wrong thing. So, you cannot have blind faith in the "magic of markets" to get the capital structure right. Some modest faith may be appropriate, though. Knowing what other managers are doing can still be helpful. Just take this knowledge with a big grain of salt—and realize that other managers, like you, may have incentives that are not about shareholder value maximization.

Empirical evidence is *not* prescriptive, telling you what to do. It is only descriptive.

Solve Now!

Q 25.3 *A $500 million firm is financed by $250 million in debt and $250 million in equity. If the market value does not change, describe some actions that managers can undertake to increase firm size to $600 million and change its debt-equity ratio to 5:1.*

Q 25.4 *A $500 million firm is financed by $250 million in debt and $250 million in equity. It issues $150 million in debt, and repurchases $50 million in equity. The market believes the $100 million increase in value will result in wasteful spending by managers, which costs $5 million in NPV. However, the higher $150 million in new debt will also create $20 million in additional tax shelter NPV. What is the firm's new value and new debt-equity ratio?*

Q 25.5 *What are the two important questions that a CFO acting on behalf of shareholders should ask?*

Q 25.6 *How can a firm manage cash to avoid running into financial distress? What are the drawbacks?*

Q 25.7 *Are existing capital structures necessarily efficient?*

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

25·3. The Capital Issuing Process

An outline.

Let us now look a little more at the process of capital structure changes, especially issuing. You will learn about some important institutional features of the process, as well as more information about the available securities corporations can issue.

25·3.A. The Pecking Order (and Financing Pyramid)

Pecking order causes a financing pyramid.

A more junior security is paid off in bankruptcy only after the more senior securities are paid off. Equity is usually the most junior security. There is good evidence that the more junior the security, the less firms like to obtain funding with it. Firms tend to finance their projects first with retained earnings, then with debt, and only finally with equity. Put differently, many firms perceive the costs of capital to be lower if the capital comes from internally generated funds than if it has to be raised by debt and even more so by equity. This characterization goes beyond these three base mechanisms. It extends to grades within the larger categories, too. For example, among debt financings,

- Factored receivables (that is, accounts receivable that are sold off) are often safer than debt, so many firms tend to factor their receivables before they issue more debt.
- Collateralized bonds are more senior and safer than ordinary bonds. Therefore, firms tend to first use collateralized bonds before they issue plain bonds.
- Short-term bonds are safer and more senior than long-term bonds. Therefore, firms tend to first use short-term debt before they issue long-term debt.
- Bonds with stronger covenants are safer than bonds without covenants. Therefore, firms first try to issue bonds with strong bond covenants to assure the lenders.

We already mentioned this preference in the previous chapter, calling it a **pecking order**—financial markets like and therefore firms tend to issue first securities that are as safe and as senior as possible. Only after the costs to issuing such senior debt become very large (e.g., if the covenants become strangling or if the firm has too much short-term debt) will firms go to the next instruments. As a result, it is often believed that firms may end up financed like a pyramid—a lot of safe (very senior and short-term) debt at the bottom, somewhat less of more risky debt in the middle, and relatively little equity at the top. This belief is, however, incorrect if the firm has experienced much equity appreciation, because it could then end up with a lot more equity than debt in its capital structure, or if the firm's operating debt decreased because of external factors. It could also be that many firms do follow this pyramid financing arrangement, not because they actively issued debt, but because they incurred many operating liabilities along the way.

Explanations.

There are a number of deeper explanations for a pecking order preference, the two most prominent of which are:

1. **Inside Information** We first learned about the pecking order view in Section 23·5 on Page 606, where we discussed inside information. The idea was that when a company wants to raise more financing, it is in its interest to convince investors that managers and owners are confident in the firm's future. Put differently, managers signal their own confidence in the firm by remaining as heavily invested as possible.
2. **Agency Considerations** This explanation is very closely related to inside information. It merely states that managers will put the raised money to good use—that it will not just become free cash flow to be wasted. The more junior the security that the firm issues, the more free cash flow managers could waste. Thus, managers who plan to profitably invest money will not mind as much the more stringent requirements that come with newly issued senior securities.

The inside information and agency theories are the most convincing explanations as to why new debt issues are greeted more warmly than new equity issues, but they are not exclusive. A more functional explanation is that *any* theories in which equity is greeted by the financial market with more skepticism than debt can explain a pecking order, in which firms are more reluctant to issue debt than equity. After all, if the response to the issuance of more junior securities is more negative, firms prefer the consequently cheaper senior securities. To illustrate, here is an alternative theory. It could be that investors do not value firms at their present values, but instead are satiated with shares of a particular firm—the firm issues more and more shares, and it becomes harder and harder to find investors. (In economics lingo, the demand for shares is not perfectly elastic.) This theory could equally well explain a pecking order, in which managers are reluctant to issue equity and more equity-like instruments, because selling additional shares costs more. (Interestingly, this theory implies that investors can find good bets by investing in neglected stocks.)

Not all companies choose this route.

Not all firms opt for pure pecking-order behavior and/or pyramid-like financing arrangements. For example, many leveraged buyout firms such as **Kohlberg, Kravis, Roberts** (**KKR**) purchased many different companies, but kept each of them in its own insulated shell. KKR's financing scheme had different costs and benefits from those of most ordinary companies. If one of KKR's portfolio companies went bankrupt, it would not bring down KKR's other companies. (This arrangement provided good incentives to the management in these companies not to make mistakes! They would not be rescued by their sibling divisions.) Of course, lenders knew that they could not lay claim to other KKR assets if the management were to make mistakes. And they knew that KKR was not confident enough in the quality of a particular acquisition to pledge KKR's remaining assets to the lenders. If KKR had followed the intuition of the adverse selection/pecking order, they would have been willing to stake all their projects as collateral when they borrowed money for a particular portfolio company. Because they failed to do so, lenders demanded significantly higher interest rates from KKR's individual portfolio companies than they would otherwise have demanded. And KKR had to pay the price in a higher total cost of capital than they otherwise would have had to.

25·3.B. Debt and Debt-Hybrid Offerings

An outline—debt is more important.

We now turn to firms' debt issuing activities. Debt offerings are much more frequent than equity offerings. In fact, except in the context of acquisitions where both equity and debt offerings are common, large, publicly traded firms tend to finance almost all their projects through either retained earnings or debt offerings. Debt offerings are bread-and-butter for both firms and investment banks.

Fair Pricing of Bond Features

Contract provisions are "priced in."

We have already discussed the many features of bonds (such as seniority, security, covenants, collateral, conversion, callability, puttability, maturity, duration, fixed-vs.-floating). IBM's debt structure, described in Tables 24.2 and 24.3, is a good example of the variety of debt claims a firm may have outstanding. For most bond features, the basic finance mantra holds: You get what you pay for. For example, if you give bond buyers more rights (e.g., a conversion feature), you get to pay a lower interest rate. If you want to keep more rights (e.g., retain a call feature), you must pay a higher interest rate. Despite some empirical behavioral finance evidence to the contrary, it seems unlikely that managers can guess what features the market generally overvalues or undervalues, and of course whether interest rates will go up or down. But fair pricing does not mean that you cannot add value by choosing debt securities that employ the features that are most appropriate to your own firm. Consider a bond feature that says that all factories will be permanently closed if the NFC team wins the Superbowl. In a competitive market, you will get a fair price for this bond and any other securities that you might issue, but this is not a great security to issue if you want to maximize market value. The point is that you should offer bonds that have features that are well-suited to your company. But if you stay within the limits of ordinary and frequent bond features (say, choosing a convertibility or callability feature), it is often true that it will matter only modestly which exact features your

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

bonds are offering.

Assembling the Building Blocks into a Real Offering

Issues are complex enough to need an investment banker as manager!

So far, we have pretty much taken the buffet approach to bond features—we have discussed each one by itself. Let's now have a full-course dinner. How do large publicly traded corporations really borrow money? The most common way for many mid- to large-cap companies to borrow is to obtain a bank credit facility and issue multiple bonds ("term debt") at the same time. The financing package consists of two parts, the revolver and the term debt:

The revolver (i.e., a revolving credit line) is a line of credit on which the company can borrow and repay and borrow again until a termination date/maturity. The bank offering the revolving credit line also receives a fee for the unused/undrawn portion of the revolver.

The term debt is structured in one or more **tranches** (French for "slices"). The principal payment schedule and maturity date are different for each of the tranches. Tranche A would begin to amortize right away and would have the shortest term to maturity. The Tranche B term loan would amortize and mature after the Tranche A term loan but before the Tranche C term loan, and so on.

The revolver and Tranche A loan usually carry the same interest rate spread over LIBOR and are marketed as a package. The Tranche B and C lenders receive wider spreads over LIBOR to compensate creditors for the added credit risk of having a longer term loan to maturity.

Sellers. Who sells these instruments? If the bond issue is large, a "lead" investment banker ("underwriter") syndicates a large part of the corporate bond to other investment banks to make it easier to place the bond. (Lead underwriters are often the big money banks, such as J.P. Morgan Chase and Citibank. We will discuss investment banks in Chapter 27.) The deal itself is brought to the capital markets with proposed pricing by the syndicate lead and is priced at whatever price (interest rate) clears the market.

Investors. Who are the investors in these multiple loan instruments (all issued simultaneously)? Because institutions and mutual funds are not set up to provide revolving credit, the "pro rata" revolver piece and Tranche A loan are often purchased by commercial banks. The market for subsequent tranches of term debt is more liquid, and these bonds are typically purchased by mutual funds, commercial banks, hedge funds, etc.

Smaller Companies. Smaller companies usually borrow in simpler ways. They often have a relationship with either a smaller syndicate of commercial banks, or perhaps a regional bank in the case of a very small company. The structure would in all likelihood be less complex—a revolver and only one tranche of term debt, or just a revolver. In terms of pricing, their bond must offer premium pricing to compensate the lenders for the added credit risk of lending to a small company and for holding a less liquid financial claim. (The price is negotiated between the borrower and lender.)

Post Placement and Bond Liquidity

Bonds usually are illiquid—and, when they do trade, do so "over-the-counter."

As with all securities, issuers can raise financing at lower costs if they can give potential investors more information and the ability to liquidate their investment quickly. You already know that equity securities are usually bought and sold on stock exchanges after the original offering. The two most important exchanges in the United States are Nasdaq and the NYSE. Bonds, on the other hand, often do not trade on any exchange (such as the **New York Bond Exchange**). And when they do trade, the markets tend to be not very liquid. (The bond trading volume on exchanges is very low.) Instead, most bonds are traded **over-the-counter**, that is, by large investors who call up individual investment banks' desks. The transaction price is usually not disclosed in such cases, and trading is fairly rare. Because the vast majority of bond transactions take place between brokers rather than on an exchange, accurate bond prices are difficult to come by. Thus, individual investors are typically better off staying away from purchasing individual bonds, unless they wish to be taken advantage of. A better alternative for individual investors would be to purchase a good mutual fund that just holds bonds.

file=capdynamics.tex: RP

Coercive Bond Exchange Offers

Most bonds include contract provisions by which covenants can be changed. These provisions are usually difficult to change, except in financial distress. So, for the most part, firms must live with whatever covenants they write upfront.

Most of the time, covenants are firm.

But there is one mechanism that sometimes allows creditors to take advantage of public bondholders and that you should be aware of: the **exchange offer**. These days, they are rare, because creditors try to protect themselves against such offers. Still, the basics of the mechanism is worth knowing.

But there is one occasional exception, which appears if creditors are "underwater."

Consider a firm worth \$500, which had earlier sold one type of bond with a face value of \$1,000 to 100 creditors. Each bond is a claim on \$10, and it is now really worth only \$5. How can managers reduce the face value of the claim, so that an increase of less than \$500 would allow the equity to be back in the money again? The answer is an exchange offer. For example, if you offer each creditor a higher-seniority (or shorter term) bond for only a claim of \$6 (a total of \$600), it would not be, collectively, a good exchange for them. But consider what *is* in the interest of each creditor.

How to "swindle" the bondholders.

- If no other creditor accepts the exchange offer, then an unexchanged \$10 bond is worth only \$5. If one creditor accepts the exchange bond, it is paid first, so its value increases from \$5 to \$6.
- If the remaining 99 creditors all accept the exchange offer, then an unexchanged \$10 bond would be worth nothing. The new bonds would collectively claim $99 \cdot \$6 = \$594$ of the firm—and with only \$500 in value, nothing would be left for an original, unexchanged, and thus lower-priority bond.

It is in the interest of every bondholder to participate, but that means they will collectively end up worse off. Thus, the bond exchange offer works only if the firm can play off its creditors against one another—it does not work if one single creditor (a bank) holds the entire bond issue. To eliminate such coercive bond exchange offers, many bond covenants now require firms to first obtain approval by majority or super-majority vote before a bond can be exchanged or a covenant be waived. In this case, every bondholder would vote against the exchange offer, and thereby come out better off.

25·3.C. Seasoned Equity Offerings

Most publicly traded shares appear on an exchange in the context of a public equity offering. An **initial public offering** is the first sale of shares to the public. A **seasoned equity offering** is the sale of shares in an already publicly traded company. Seasoned equity offerings are rare events for large publicly traded corporations, except in connection with M&A activity. In contrast to bonds, liquidity is not a big problem for after-market stock investors. Over 10,000 large U.S. firms now have their common stock traded on a major public stock exchange, such as Nasdaq or the NYSE. There, any investor can easily purchase and sell shares, and closing prices for the previous day can readily be found in most newspapers. Not all shares are first issued and sold on an exchange. Some shares may simply be granted to employees or managers, and not necessarily from **treasury stock**, which is the shares that the company itself is still holding, and into which repurchased shares usually go.

Seasoned equity offerings are rare.

The institutional process required to sell new shares in a public offering is lengthy and unwieldy. (For initial public offerings, it is an outright ordeal.) Fortunately, firms with fewer than 100 investors that do not try to sell their claims to the public are not (or are at least less) regulated by the SEC, and thus can avoid the process. (In a famous incident, Google ran into the constraint that it had more than 100 entities owning shares, so it had no choice but to go public, even though it did not need external funds.) Many smaller companies and hedge funds would simply be overwhelmed by the costs of navigating the SEC process.

How to avoid the SEC process.

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

Choices of Issuing.

Public firms can issue seasoned equity through various mechanisms. The three most important ones are:

Ideally, old shareholders would come out the same.

1. **Standard Issue** For example, a firm with 50 million shares representing $400 million in outstanding equity (i.e., $8/share) may announce that its board of directors has approved the issuance and sale of another 10 million shares in 3 months. The shares are to be sold into the market at the then-prevailing stock price three months later. If the stock price will be $10/share at the time of the offering, the firm value will be $500 million just before the offering and $600 million just after the offering. So, both immediately before and after the offering, each old shareholder will still own a claim of $10/share.

Shelf offerings can be "lazy."

2. **Shelf Offering (Rule 415 Offering)** For new equity shares registered with the SEC under Rule 415, the firm does not set one firm date at which the shares are to be sold into the market. Instead, the firm can sell them over a period of up to two years, at its own discretion and without further announcements. This is similar to the way that companies sell debt notes (Page 625), that is, on demand and off the shelf.

The mechanics.

3. **Rights Offerings** Yet another way to sell new equity shares is a **rights offering**. These are rare in the United States, but popular in some other countries (e.g., the United Kingdom). Instead of issuing new shares to anyone willing to purchase them, the company grants existing shareholders the right to purchase one additional share of equity at $2 share. If all 50 million shareholders participate, the company will raise $100 million. Each shareholder will own two shares, so there will now be 100 million shares to represent $600 million in assets. Each share will be worth $6/share, and each old investor will have invested $12 for two shares.

Rights Offerings force participation.

So far, there is no difference between the rights offering and the plain offering: both facilitate the raising of $100 million without loss for existing shareholders. However, what happens to a shareholder who does not participate? This shareholder will then own one share, for which she will have paid $10, and which will only be worth $6. This non-participating shareholder will have been expropriated. Therefore, rights offerings allow the firm to effectively force existing shareholders to participate in the offering.

Like bond offerings, equity offerings are usually orchestrated by an underwriter. We shall look at underwriters in more detail in Chapter 27.

SIDE NOTE: There is also a distinction between **primary shares** and **secondary shares**. These are confusing names, because they do not describe the distinction between an initial public offering and a seasoned offering. Instead, primary shares are shares that are newly minted and sold by the firm itself, in which case the proceeds go to the firm itself. (These are really the kinds of offerings that we just discussed.) Secondary shares are shares that are sold by an investor in the firm (e.g., by the founder), in which case the company does not receive the issue proceeds. Secondary offerings are de facto insider sales, so they are also often smaller than primary offerings. But they are usually greeted especially negatively by the market: an owner who wants to abandon ship and sell out is not good news. Because our book focuses on the firm's capital structure, we are concentrating on primary offerings.

25·3.D. Initial Public Offerings

IPOs are special—a lot riskier and with many separate regulations.

In contrast to a seasoned equity offering, an **initial public offering** is the *first* public sale of shares. There are some features that are unique to IPOs:

1. There is no established price, so it is considerably more difficult and risky to place IPO shares. Without a public price, we cannot measure how the market responds to the announcement of the IPO. (Also, the diversification benefits for the current owners are usually much larger than they are in seasoned equity offerings.)
2. There are many unusual regulations governing the issuance of IPOs. For example, issuer and underwriter are liable not just for false statements, but even for "material omissions."
3. Until recently, shares had to be sold at a fixed price that could not be adjusted upward if demand for shares was strong, or downward if demand for shares was weak. Most IPOs

file=capdynamics.tex: RP

are still conducted this way, although it is now possible for strong issuers to auction their shares into the public markets. (The 2004 IPO of Google was the most prominent auction.)

Some of the process.

In a typical IPO, the issuer must provide audited financials for the most recent three years. Thus, unless the firm is so new that it has no recent history, or unless the firm has carefully planned its IPO years ahead, many firms must go back and create audited financials for activities that happened long ago. Similarly, firms often have a lot of other housecleaning to do—folding in or laying out subsidiaries, untangling relationships between the private owners and the firm, and so on. The real IPO process starts when the firms selects an underwriter (usually after presentations by 3-5 investment bankers). It is the underwriter who orchestrates the offering. Together with the auditor and legal counsel, the underwriter and the firm create a preliminary offering prospectus and file it with the SEC. They then give a set of "roadshow" presentations to solicit interest among potential investors. But neither is allowed to make statements beyond those in the preliminary prospectus. It also does not usually include one fixed price, but only an estimate (a price range). Finally, the underwriter is not allowed to take firm buy orders, but can informally collect a list of interested parties.

IPO Underpricing.

Usually within 48 hours after the SEC approves the prospectus, the offering goes live. The final offer price is set on the morning of the offering. Remarkably, IPOs are usually priced to create excess demand among investors, so shares become rationed. The average IPO experiences a jump of about 10% in one day (not annualized!), called **IPO underpricing**. In the 1999–2000 bubble, however, average underpricing reached as high as 65% *again in just one day*. There are a number of theories that help explain the continued presence of IPO underpricing.

- **Winner's Curse** If uninformed investors ask for allocations, they will disproportionately be stuck with shares in the hard-to-sell offerings. For example, if half the offerings earn +10% and are oversubscribed by a factor of 2, and half the offerings earn –10% and are undersubscribed, it would be 0% on average, but our uninformed investor would receive an allocation of only half as many shares in the +10% offering as in the –10% offering, so the average rate of return would be

$$\underbrace{50\%}_{\substack{\%\text{underpriced}\\ \text{offerings}}} \cdot \overbrace{0.5}^{\substack{\text{expected}\\ \text{share}\\ \text{allocation}}} \cdot \underbrace{(+10\%)}_{\text{underpricing}} + \underbrace{50\%}_{\substack{\%\text{overpriced}\\ \text{offerings}}} \cdot \overbrace{1.0}^{\substack{\text{expected}\\ \text{share}\\ \text{allocation}}} \cdot \underbrace{(+10\%)}_{\text{overpricing}} = -2.5\% \ . \tag{25.1}$$

  So, if shares on average earn a 0% rate of return, uninformed investors should not participate, because their return will be less than 0%. To keep them in the market, underwriters underprice IPOs.

- **Information Extraction** Underwriters need to pay investors for their opinions. Without underpricing as compensation, all investors would tell the underwriter that they believe that the offering is not worthwhile, hoping for the bargain of lower pricing. With underpricing as the currency of compensation, underwriters can pay investors to tell them truthfully their otherwise private reservation price. They must then reward enthusiastic investors with more (and just mildly) underpriced shares. This strategy can actually maximize the offering proceeds.

- **Good Taste in Investors' Mouths** Underwriters want to create goodwill among investors to make it easier to place subsequent offerings. A bad or fraudulent issuer would not want to play this game, because the fraud would likely collapse before the goodwill pays off.

- **Cascading Demand** Investors are eying one another, so that offerings end up either a tremendous success or an utter failure. To avoid the latter, underwriters prefer to ensure success by underpricing.

- **Agency Conflict (Underwriter Selling Effort)** It is more efficient for the issuer to make selling easier by underpricing than it is to price the offering correctly and try to ascertain whether underwriters are doing their best to place the offering.

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

- **Agency Conflict (Additional Underwriter Compensation)** Although it is not in the interest of the issuer, underwriters use IPO underpricing as "currency" to reward their best brokerage customers. This requires that it is the underwriter who is in the driver seat, not the issuer.

Finally, after the firm is publicly trading, the underwriter often tries to "stabilize" the market and promote the firm as well as reasonable trading volume in the after-market. Indeed, for small firms, the underwriter is usually also the Nasdaq market maker, providing investors with the appropriate liquidity.

Other interesting IPO phenomena.

Underpricing is just one among a number of interesting phenomena for IPO firms. We do not yet fully understand all of them, but here is an interesting selection of findings about IPOs:

1. On average, IPO firms drastically underperform similar benchmark firms, beginning about 6 months after the IPO and lasting for about three to five years. (A conservative estimate is a risk-adjusted underperformance of about 5% per annum relative to the overall stock market.) However, it is not only the IPO firms themselves that seem to perform poorly after the IPO, but also firms that are similarly sized and in the same industry. No one really knows why. We do know that this downward drift is considerably stronger for firms that are very aggressive in the reporting of their financials at the IPO.

   Who would be foolish enough to hold onto IPO shares for more than the first 6 months? Because academic researchers cannot find out where equity shares are located (most stock holdings are confidential), we cannot fully study this phenomenon. The "word on the street" is that many of these shares end up in the accounts of very unsophisticated investors, such as "trust accounts" for widows and orphans.

2. Underwriters' analysts routinely issue "buy" recommendations on their IPOs. This is not surprising. What is surprising is why this still seems to matter. Why would anyone pay attention to these obviously conflicted analysts' opinions?

3. Insiders routinely sell their shares as soon as a pre-agreed lock-up period expires. When the lockup expiration week comes around, the IPO stock price predictably goes down by about 2%. Who would want to hold IPO shares through this lockup expiration?

4. IPOs either happen in droves or do not happen at all. When the overall stock market and the firm's industry have recently performed well, IPOs are pouring in. Professionals call this an "open IPO window." When the opposite occurs, the window is closed and there are zero IPOs. IPOs are not just reduced in price or scale, but they are typically withdrawn wholesale. Why?

5. It is not surprising that the average IPO pays 7% in underwriting commission—the maximum allowed by the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD)—though many issuers find some backdoor mechanisms to raise the underwriter commissions further. But it is surprising that *virtually every* IPO pays 7% commission. In such a competitive market, why do underwriters not compete more fiercely on the commission front?

These are all interesting questions for future research.

file=capdynamics.tex: RP

25·3.E. Raising Funds Through Other Claims and Means

Think of hybrids as a mix of the debt and equity.

Debt and equity are not the only claims that corporations can issue to raise funds, but they are the broadest categories and best studied. Investment banks regularly help firms to issue all sorts of debt-equity hybrids, and for the most part, you can think of many hybrids as combinations somewhere along a continuum. For example, a bond may be straight, it may have a conversion feature only at a very high firm value (in which case it is almost like a straight bond), or it may have a conversion feature at a very low firm value (in which case it is almost like equity). The aforementioned Ecaps on Page 646 is a good example.

There are alternative money providers.

Firms can obtain financing not only from public markets (investment banking), but also from plain old commercial banks—and most large publicly traded corporations do. (Small firms rely on banks almost exclusively as their loan providers.) But insurance companies, pension funds, mutual funds, foundations, venture capital funds, private equity funds, and even a multitude of government support programs have also jumped into the fray, and may help provide certain companies with needed capital.

There are ways to avoid financial markets for raising money altogether.

Firms can also obtain funds by the issuing of hedging contracts (which may promise future delivery of a good in exchange for cash today), leasing instead of buying, securitization (in which the firm sells off assets such as its accounts receivables instead of retaining its assets), etc.

Working Capital is often a surprisingly powerful method to raise funds.

An often important method to obtain (or grant) financing is trade credit, in which the seller of a good allows the buyer to delay payment. The customer may even raise capital unilaterally simply by not paying bills on time. But small and shaky firms are not alone. Even large firms may earn an important competitive advantage through better working capital management. For example, Walmart has often been accused of squeezing its suppliers (i.e., by not paying them for a very long time). It can afford to do so because its suppliers dare not risk losing Walmart's large market distribution. From 2000 to 2005, the very large British retailer Tesco increased its accounts payables by £2.2 billion while its inventory stock increased by only £700 million—prompting the British Office of Fair Trading to open an investigation whether this is due to undue and unfair pressure on suppliers or merely an efficiency gain in working capital management, though one does not exclude the other. Amazon actually has negative working capital—it first receives customer payments on the web before it obtains the goods, thereby having capital with which it can either run its business and/or earn a financial rate of return.

These are all plausible and common methods to finance operations—whether they are wise or not depends on the situation and the firm.

25·3.F. The Influence of Stock Returns

Capital structure can come about "passively."

We started this chapter with the observation that stock returns have an influence on capital structure, just as active issuing activity does. We could call this the "direct" effect of stock returns. A firm that is financed by $1 billion in debt and $1 billion in equity and that loses one quarter of its value ($500 million) will experience a debt-equity ratio increase from 1:1 to 2:1. (If so desired, managers can counteract this effect by issuing more equity and retiring some debt.)

Speculation? How could managers know better?

But stock returns and value changes can have a second conduit by which they can influence capital structure. Indeed, the mechanism is entirely different. Although it is tied directly to past stock returns, it is really about how managers respond through issuing to market returns.

Managers seem to believe they know when prices are high or low.

There is some evidence that CFOs *believe* and act as if they can predict ("time") the financial markets. This is not too surprising. Most managers' sense of their firm value is based on the corporate internals, not on how the financial markets have moved recently. If the financial markets have moved up, managers' internal beliefs do not catch up immediately, so they now believe that they can raise equity relatively cheaply at high market valuations. They feel that their stock is relatively more overpriced. Note that this mechanism suggests exactly the opposite behavior to what would be required for the firm to return to its original debt-equity ratio. If the firm wanted to keep a particular debt-equity ratio, it would have to repurchase equity that

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

has gone up and issue more equity that has gone down. If the firm wanted to time the market, it would repurchase equity that has gone down and issue equity that has gone up. Managers similarly seem to try to time interest rates and the yield curve. If interest rates are higher (lower) than they were in the past, companies tend to avoid (seek out) bonds. If the yield curve is steep by historical standards, corporations tend to borrow more at short-term interest rates than issue long-term bonds. In an efficient financial market, there is no benefit to attempts at market timing, but also no cost to doing so. You can look at this attempt at market timing as just another investment, which is a fairly harmless attempt by managers to make profitable investments.

Weird—it seems to have worked!

However, what is surprising is not the fact that managers have tried to time financial markets, *but the empirical evidence that this has actually turned out to be profitable*! Even stranger, managers have been good not only in predicting their own stock price level, but in predicting the overall stock market level—an incredibly difficult feat. (In fact, why be a corporate manager if you have this ability?) There is academic controversy as to whether this success has been the result of coincidence or real timing ability. For example, one counter-argument is that seeming timing ability is merely survivorship bias: firms that failed in their timing disproportionally disappeared. It could also just be that when the financial markets go up, more and more firms raise external funds, and this stops when financial markets go down. Thus, even though managers cannot predict the financial markets, when economists look at when firms raised funds, they will find that they did so before the market went down. Either of these two theories could explain seeming market timing ability when there is none.

Solve Now!

Q 25.8 *What is the financing pecking order?*

Q 25.9 *What is the financing pyramid? Is it a good description of empirical reality?*

Q 25.10 *Does the pecking order imply a financing pyramid?*

Q 25.11 *How does a coercive bond exchange offer work?*

Q 25.12 *How does a coercive seasoned equity rights offering work?*

Q 25.13 *Assume a rights offering for a firm that is worth $500 million and offers its shareholders to buy one extra share for each share that they already own. The "discount" price for the new shares is 1/5 the price of the current shares. Assume that half the investors do not participate. What is the loss to non-participating investors (shares) and the gain to participating investors (shares)?*

Q 25.14 *What are the some of the main empirical regularities about IPOs?*

Q 25.15 *Why are IPOs underpriced?*

file=capdynamics.tex: RP

25·4. SUMMARY

This chapter covered the following major points:

1. Both capital scale and capital structure dynamics are influenced by factors under management's immediate control (such as debt issuing or share repurchasing) and factors beyond management's immediate control (such as value changes, aka stock returns).
2. A CFO should consider a holistic view of capital policy. Many activities influence both the firm scale and debt-equity ratio.
3. Appropriate cash management should be a primary concern in many firms.
4. Many firms follow a "pecking order" financing scheme, in which they first use retained earnings, then progressively less senior debt, and finally equity (as a last resort).
5. Debt offerings come in many varieties, and though we surgically dissect their features, the actual debt offerings are often complex packages.
6. Seasoned equity offerings are rare. They can be standard, shelf-registered, or rights offerings. (Secondary shares are more insider sales than corporate capital structure events.)
7. Initial public offerings appear within certain industries and at certain times, i.e., in waves. The average one-day IPO underpricing is about 10%, but IPOs begin to underperform the market beginning about 6 months after the offering for about three to five years.
8. Debt and equity are not the only venues to raise financing. There are other methods, e.g., stretching out the payment of bills.
9. There is empirical evidence that many managers try to time the financial markets. Remarkably, this has often turned out to be profitable, although we do not yet fully understand why this is so.

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

Solutions and Exercises

1. Yes and no. Firms that operate need to incur debt, so in this sense the answer is no. However, firms could change their operations or refinance their debt by raising equity.
2. See Table 25.1.
3. To have a 5:1 debt-equity ratio with $600 million in overall value, the firm needs to have $500 million in debt and $100 million in equity. One way to accomplish this is to issue $250 million in debt and repurchase $100 million in equity.
4. Before the market reacts, the firm will have $400 million in debt, and $200 million in equity. The market believes these transactions will create $15 million in equity. If all accrued to shareholders, there would be $215 million in equity for $615 million in value, which would be a 65% debt-asset ratio. If none accrued to shareholders, the equivalent debt-asset ratio would be 67.5%. The debt equity ratio would be 1.86.
5. Can you invest money better than your shareholders can on their own? Do your shareholders understand and agree that you are acting in their interest?
6. The firm can match assets and liabilities, obtain a credit line, invest in more liquid assets, and avoid debt. Doing so is costly—in a public company, too much cash also tempts managers to waste assets and not work as hard.
7. No. The market pressures forcing poorly financed companies back to optimal behavior are weak.
8. Managers prefer issuing safer securities first, before proceeding to less safe alternative.
9. Companies are financed predominantly by safer securities. Equity is a small part of the pyramid at the top. The traditional view of the financing pyramid does not apply to many successful companies, because the equity will have grown in size.
10. No! Equity can change in value (and debt can accumulate during operations). Many firms follow a financing pecking order, but their capital structures do not look like a pyramid.
11. It gives existing bondholders the right to exchange their bond for a more senior bond with lower face value. Creditors who do not participate are effectively expropriated.
12. It gives existing shareholders the right to purchase more shares at a given price. Investors who do not participate are effectively expropriated.
13. Assume that the shares are $10 each. You can then purchase shares for $2 each. Of 50 million shares, 25 million will participate. So, you will raise an extra $50 million. Thus, total corporate assets will be $550 million. There are now 75 million shares in total. Therefore, each share will be worth $7.33. Participating investors will own two shares worth $14.67, for which they will have paid $12. This represents a 22% gain. Non-participating investors will own one share each, for which they will have paid $10. This represents a 26.7% loss.
14. On average, they appreciate by 10% from the offer price to the first after-market price, and then lose about 5-10% per annum over the three years. (Other regularities are described above.)
15. There are a number of explanations—such as the winner's curse, payment to investors for revealing information, the intent to leave goodwill for future offerings, highly elastic cascade-related after-market demand, and agency conflicts between the firm and the underwriter.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

A. Appendix: Standard&Poor's 04/24/2005 Bond Report on IBM's 2032 5.875% Coupon Bond

This needs to be cleared for copyright.

file=capdynamics.tex: LP

CHAPTER 26

How Have Firms' Capital Structures Evolved?

Nothing yet!

last file change: Mar 2, 2006 (10:57h)

last major edit: Apr 2005

The goal of this chapter is to describe, in broad strokes, how publicly traded corporations in the United States have financed themselves over the last few decades. (There are very little data and research on how private firms are financed.)

You should realize that this chapter is operating at the cutting edge of research. There are different interpretations of the data, so it is unavoidable that what you are reading is an interpretation of the evidence. My goal is to give you a taste of what we know—and what we do not know.

file=capempirical.tex: LP

26·1. Mechanisms vs. Rationales

What determines the ways by which capital structure can change? Layers of Causality.

We are now interested in exploring empirically how the debt-equity ratios of publicly traded companies have evolved. To do so, we can examine several layers of causality—one can always drill deeper and deeper. (Eventually, if you dig deep enough, you will find yourself in the world of philosophy and theology.) Think about an analogy—say, you want to know why a car is fast. The first layer of causality may be that its speed is due to lots of power, low weight, and low wind resistance. But *why* is there a lot of power? This question brings you to a deeper layer of causality with questions such as how many cylinder and intake valves your engines has. You can then drill down into yet another layer of causality. Why is this particular number of cylinders/valves more powerful? Yet another deeper layer of causality emerges with questions such as why and how gasoline combusts.

Two layers of causality: mechanisms and forces.

We are now going to explore the dynamics of debt-equity ratio changes on two levels. We can call our first, somewhat shallow layer the "mechanistic layer": how important are the various mechanisms through which debt-equity ratios can evolve? These mechanisms are basically the cells you have already seen in Table 25.1, such as debt and equity issuing and repurchasing. The second, deeper layer is more causal and explores the variables, characteristics, and economic forces that induce firms to engage these mechanisms in the first place. There is one factor, which could be classified either in the first or second level—the role of stock value changes: you can think of it either as a mechanism that shifts capital structure around, or as an economic force, partly within and partly outside the domain of the mechanisms that managers can use.

26·2. The Relative Importance of Capital Structure Mechanisms

Stock returns and long-term debt issuing are the most important factors changing debt-equity ratios.

Let us begin with the big picture mechanisms. We have just looked in the last chapter at the various mechanisms that influence capital structure. Now we ask about the relative importance of each of these mechanisms. That is, has the typical company's debt-equity ratio been driven more by the firm's value or by the CFO's net issuing activities (which include issuing, repurchasing and dividends)? This question can be phrased as "If you knew in advance how much every firm would issue over the next x years, what fraction of the change in capital structure could you explain?" Table 26.1 answers this question for five-year horizons. The rest of this section discusses the meaning of this table.

Table 26.1. Relative Importance of Factors Determining Capital Structure Changes Over Five Years

All Net Issuing (and Dividend Activity)		69%
All Net Issuing (without Dividend Activity)		66%
· · · All Net Debt Issuing Activity	40%	
· · · · · · Convertible Debt only	4%	
· · · · · · Short Term Debt only	14%	
· · · · · · Long Term Debt only	32%	
· · · All Net Equity Issuing Activity	16%	
Direct Effect of Stock Returns on Existing Capital Structure		40%

Note: These values measure how much of the change in capital structure from today to five years from now you could explain if you had perfect foreknowledge of each component. Net issuing means issues net of retirements. The samples were all publicly traded U.S. stocks from 1964 to 2003. (The numbers need not add up to 100%, because one component can have information about the other components.) The equity is measured by its market value.
Source: Welch, 2004.

26·2.A. Net Issuing Activity

The first row of Table 26.1 shows that CFOs were by no means inactive in the capital markets. If you had perfectly known how firms had issued and retired debt and equity and paid in and paid out funds, you could have explained 69% of firms' total capital structure changes over a five-year horizon. The remaining 31% are necessarily corporate value changes that have not been directly influenced by managerial issuing and repurchasing. Omitting dividends drops the explanatory power from 69% to 66%, so dividends can explain only a meager 3% of capital structure—as far as debt-equity ratio dynamics in publicly traded corporations are concerned, dividends are a sideshow.

Net Debt Issuing

Net Debt Issuing.

Row 2 in Table 26.1 tells us that 40% of all capital structure changes over five years were due to firms' net debt issuing activity. The next three rows can tell us that long-term debt alone can account for 32% of changes in debt-equity ratios, that short-term debt has been somewhat less important, and that convertible debt has been fairly unimportant. It would be interesting to break these debt issuing activities into their components—issuing and repurchasing—and to break the repurchasing in turn into sinking fund payments, interest payments, and principal repayments, so that we could understand better what part of the mechanism really drives capital structure. Remarkably, despite the obvious importance of debt issuing activity, we really do not know this decomposition.

Net and Pure Equity Issuing

Net Equity Issuing.

The next row in Table 26.1 shows that net equity issuing can explain about 16% of changes in firms' debt-equity ratio, and therefore is less important than net debt issuing as a determinant of capital structure. Nevertheless, equity issues are more glamorous, so economists have studied them in more detail.

Table 26.2. Typical Equity Share Activity Among S&P100 Stocks, 1999-2001

Total Seasoned Equity Offering Activity	+	3.77%
· · · M&A Related, +3.68%		
· · · Not M&A Related, +0.09%		
Executive Compensation	+	1.05%
Convertible Debt	+	0.14%
Warrant Exercise	+	0.05%
Share Repurchases	–	1.44%
= Changes in Equity Outstanding	=	+3.57%

Note: Categories describe equity issued in conjunction with an activity. Equity share activity is measured per annum and as a fraction of total assets. For scale, changes in total liabilities were about 10.07% of assets, and changes in retained earnings were 1.37% of assets.
Source: Fama and French, 2004.

Net Equity Issuing.

Table 26.2 decomposes equity issuing into its components, though only for the very largest publicly traded firms. (Unfortunately, we do not have knowledge of a similar decomposition for smaller firms.) The table dispels the popular myth that most shares occur through plain seasoned equity offerings. Instead, from 1999 to 2001, equity shares appeared most commonly through equity offerings in connection with corporate acquisitions. (We also know that firms commonly issue not only equity but also debt to finance acquisitions, so we cannot conclude that firms' debt-equity ratios declines during acquisitions.) Outside an acquisition, seasoned equity offerings are exceedingly rare. We also saw these patterns in IBM's case in Section 24·1—IBM did not issue equity, repurchased some shares into its treasury, and then used equity shares

file=capempirical.tex: LP

from its treasury in its acquisition of PwCC partners and in its funding of employee stock option plans.

More evidence from elsewhere suggests SEOs are rare in smaller firms, too.

Moreover, other evidence similarly suggests that, even including M&A activity, public equity offerings are rare. The 10,000 or so firms trading on the NYSE and NASDAQ conducted only about 12,000 equity offerings from 1990 to 2000, of which about half were initial public offerings and about half were seasoned equity offerings. With only 300 SEOs in an average year, the typical public firm would issue more equity only about every 20 years.

26·2.B. Firm Value Changes

Value changes are proxied by stock returns.

The final row in Table 26.1 shows the direct effect of stock returns on capital structure. Recall that this is the debt-equity ratio change that a company experiences when it increases or decreases in value— a $200 million firm with $100 million in debt and $100 million in equity, which doubles in value from $200 million to $400 million, will drop its 1:1 debt-equity ratio to a 1:3 debt-equity ratio. As mentioned earlier, corporate stock returns can be viewed both as a mechanism (itself influenced by deeper forces) and as an external force that tugs on firms' debt-equity ratio.

Value changes can account for a little less than half of capital structure changes.

Table 26.1 shows that if you had known perfectly how stock returns would turn out over the next five years, you could have explained 40% of firms' total capital structure changes. (Note how all issuing was able to explain 69%, so a good part of variation must have been explainable by either.) The fact that stock returns are a major factor should not come as a big surprise to you. If your recall our IBM example from Section 24·1, it was changes in the stock price that first reduced IBM's equity value by one-third from 2001 to 2002, and primarily caused its debt-equity ratio to increase from 0.31 to 0.55.

Apparently, managers did not fully rebalance.

Importantly, you can think of these stock returns as the "relevant" changes that were not undone by managers. If firms had undone the value change and rebalanced through issuing and repurchasing, then knowing the stock returns would not have helped in explaining changes in capital structure. Our empirical evidence therefore suggests that even over a five-year horizon, firms do not fully rebalance their capital structure.

Trust me: market timing is only secondary.

You may wonder whether some part of this 40% could also pick up if managers typically tried to time the market, and issued more equity as the stock price goes up. Other empirical evidence suggests that market timing is not a strong force. The reason is that, in response to stock price increases, firms issue not only equity, but also debt, and tend to pay out more in dividends. Therefore, the timing effect on net debt-equity ratios is fairly modest. The 40% that we see is almost entirely the direct value effect of stock returns on debt-equity ratios.

In perspective: observed capital structure today is strongly related to past corporate performance.

Explaining 40% of something that is as variable and firm-specific as corporate debt-equity ratio changes are is quite robust—even though our explanatory variable is conceptually on a fairly shallow level of causality. Consequently, if you want to know why some firms have high debt-equity ratios today and why other firms have low ones, a big part of your explanation has to be not that the former issued a lot of debt and the latter issued a lot of equity, but that the former had experienced negative stock returns and the latter had experienced positive stock returns.

Scale is also not deliberate.

Managers also typically do not pay out large value gains, or raise more funds in response to large value losses. Therefore, like debt-equity ratios, firm scale has a large external component, too—firms that are large today may not be large primarily because they raised a lot of funds, but also because they appreciated in value. In sum, few firms seem to deliberately choose their target scale and target debt-equity ratio, and then act to retain these targets.

A lifecycle? Zero debt for large firms? Maybe not.

This relationship between stock returns and capital structure would suggest a natural debt-equity lifecycle for firms. Most firms should start out being highly levered—the owner must borrow to finance the firm. Eventually, as the firm survives and accumulates equity, its scale should increase and its debt-equity ratio should decline. In Table 24.6, many of the non-financial giant companies indeed seem to have very low debt ratios, often in the single digits. However, we also know from the previous chapter that large firms continue to have debt-equity ratios around 40%, nothing close to zero. Thus, over the very long run—longer than five years—some other factors (e.g., M&A activity and financial distress) must have caused today's firms to retain high

leverage ratios. The relative importance of the mechanisms that have brought us the diversity of firms' capital structures today are still not fully understood.

What can CFOs learn from the fact that stock returns are one major determinant of most firms' capital structures? Let's ask a few pointed questions:

What can a CFO learn that is of immediate guidance?

- *Is the empirically observed failure to rebalance size and debt-equity ratio evidence of poor managerial behavior?* Absolutely not. It might well be that the optimal firm size increases and the optimal debt-equity ratio decreases as the firm's underlying business becomes more valuable. In this case, managers should be happy with their capital structures. Or it might be that such rearrangements are fairly expensive, relative to the costs. In this case, managers may be unhappy with their capital structures, but it would not be profitable to do something about it.
- *Could the failure to rebalance be evidence of poor managerial behavior?* Yes, it could be—but it does not need to be! We just don't know yet one way or the other. In some firms, the evidence that managers are mis-capitalized is fairly suggestive. In other firms, we are not so sure. There is lively academic controversy surrounding this question.
- *Does this failure to rebalance mean that if you run a corporation, you should not worry about capital structure or appropriate corporate scale?* Absolutely not. Even if many other managers are passive and/or do not do the right thing, you still can! Your managerial choices should remain intelligent and dynamic.
- *Does this mean that we cannot use the capital structures of other companies to judge what capital structure our own firm has?* Probably yes. Their capital structures are less indicative of deliberate design than they are of their historical performance.

DIGGING DEEPER: *Stock returns are a good proxy for the value changes we discussed in Section 25·3.F. Theoretically, however, stock returns could miss some of the change in the underlying asset values, if these changes benefited or hurt debt holders by making debt repayment more or less likely. However, unless the firm is in—or close to—financial distress, almost all of a firm's own value change goes to equity owners. In the extreme, risk-free debt would not be affected at all by firm value changes, and stock returns would be exactly equivalent to the value change. In any case, we do not mean that debt value changes cannot occur, just that they tend to be so much smaller that our proxy of stock returns will capture most of how firms differ from one another in terms of value changes at any given point in time. Aside, we do not have good market value data for corporate debt, so we could not really measure the whole change in value even if we wanted to.*

Solve Now!

Q 26.1 *What are the most important financial mechanisms influencing capital structure changes over five-year horizons?*

Q 26.2 *How important is non M&A related seasoned equity issuing activity among Fortune-100 firms?*

Q 26.3 *If firms often do not readjust their capital structure, does this mean that capital structure theories are irrelevant?*

file=capempirical.tex: LP

26·3. Deeper Causality — Capital Structure Influences

What determines are the forces operating on the channels?

You now know how firms change their capital structure—which mechanisms they are using. You can also think of these mechanisms as "channels" through which other forces can operate—forces that are one layer deeper in terms of causality. There are at least five possible mechanisms (channels), so we can ask:

1. What makes firms issue debt?
2. What makes firms retire debt?
3. What makes firms issue equity?
4. What makes firms retire equity (or pay dividends)?
5. What makes firms experience good/bad corporate value performance? (As noted earlier, you might classify value changes as deeper than a managerial mechanism, though.)

(We are ignoring such channels as pension and operating liabilities.) These questions are getting at the deeper issue of *why* capital structure is what it is. We know how important the mechanisms changing debt-equity ratios are, but we do not yet know *why* firms use them. We also know that if we had a choice, we would determine first what drives debt net issuing (especially long-term debt), then what drives net equity issuing and net short-term debt issuing, and only finally what drives convertible debt issuing and dividends—in that order.

The five channels to work with.

If a variable strongly influences one channel, this influence will likely, but not necessarily, percolate into an influence on the overall capital structure. For example, if solar flares were to make firms issue debt, then we would also expect solar flares to increase firms' debt-equity ratios. However, this is not a necessary outcome. If solar flares had a strong positive influence on debt-equity ratios through one channel and a strong negative influence through another, solar flares could end up having no influence on overall capital structure. Moveover, you learned earlier that it is possible for a variable to explain a lot of equity issuing and yet have no influence on typical debt-equity ratios—if the firms that are subject to this variable are already 100% equity-financed, the firm will still remain all equity. The opposite can also be the case. Some variable could have only a weak influence through every single channel and we would be tempted to discard it as too weak, but if it worked for all five channels, it could end up having a strong influence on the firms' overall debt-equity ratios.

26·3.A. A Large-Scale Empirical Study

The Land of Oz.

A recent large-scale empirical study by Hovakimian, Opler, and Titman (2001) explores how different variables exert influences on the first four channels over one-year horizons. The study shows that our knowledge of the empirical determinants of capital structure is weak. The authors document that there are a multitude of variables that seem to play statistically significant roles—*but all of these variables together can explain only a few percentage points of the total variation in capital structures across firms.* For the most part, there is no smoking gun. The determinants of capital structure remain rather murky. We have only a glimpse of what is going on.

Big Findings.

Here is what the study found:

Asset Performance and Industry Benchmark.

The Debt Issuing Channel Firms issue more *long-term* debt if they have high market/book ratios, if they had good recent stock market performance, and if they have much of their existing debt coming due soon. Firms issue more *short-term* debt if they have poor recent asset performance and if they have less short-term debt than their industry peers. In both cases, though, the relationship is very weak—these causes could explain only 2 to 3% of its cross-sectional variation (called R^2)—a minuscule proportion. In sum, we just do not know yet what makes firms issue debt.

file=capempirical.tex: RP

The Debt Retirement Channel For the second channel (debt retirement), the authors found that firms reduce their debt if they are above their industry peers in terms of their debt ratios, and if they have had good recent stock market but bad accounting performance. Interestingly, managers' debt retirement actions are thus the opposite of what it would have taken to rebalance to the previous debt-equity ratio. We must again ask how important these causes are, and here we get a much better 12% in explanatory power (R^2). Industry Benchmark, Recent Performance.

The Equity Net Issuing Channel The third and fourth channels are where most of the academic research has focused—especially insofar as seasoned equity offerings and dividends are concerned. There are three good reasons for this: first, we have robust theories here, specifically the pecking order theory, which seems to be reasonably consistent with some of the evidence; second, the announcement of market-related equity issuing and dividend activity plays a prominent role in the financial press; and third, we have a lot of publicly available data here. Nevertheless, dozens of studies have informed us that equity issuing and retiring activity also remains a mystery. Recent Performance.

The evidence seems to suggest that firms first and foremost do not like to issue equity, consistent with the pecking order theory and any other theory that imputes high costs to equity issuing activity. When firms do announce that they will issue equity, it is on average greeted with a negative return on its outstanding stock—the subject of our next chapter. On balance, firms tend to issue equity (rather than debt) if they have had worse accounting performance and better stock market performance. (Although firms also tend to issue debt in response to positive stock returns, their tendency to issue equity seems stronger—evidence that managers try to "time" the stock market.) Especially firms with more tax obligations tend to prefer issuing debt over equity.

Altogether, the authors could explain 3% of the variation in firm's equity repurchasing activity, and 15% of firm's equity issuing activity.

Putting this (and other) evidence together, here is my overall impression of what factors play important roles in influencing capital structure outcomes, in rough order of their importance: The most important factors explaining capital structure choice, IMHO.

Direct Stock Performance Influence If you classify stock returns as a cause rather than a mechanism, then it is by far the most important variable in non-financial firms. Because firms do not counteract stock returns, firms with good stock price performance tend to end up with lower debt ratios, while firms with poor stock price performance tend to end up with higher debt ratios. (You may want to dig deeper and ask what causes stock performance, but this would again be a difficult predictive exercise.)

Equity Issuance Avoidance Firms seem to want to avoid issuing equity. A seasoned equity offering is a rarity, and even more so outside an M&A transaction. Given that the costs of an equity issue are high (including the often negative market reaction), this is not surprising behavior.

Peer Similarity Firms seem not only to end up with capital structures similar to those of their industry peers due to their commonality in industry stock returns, but also actively seem to *like* being similar. They often issue or retire debt or equity to come closer to their peers. Some industries (R&D heavy with few tangible assets) have avoided debt financing altogether. (You may want to ask what determines peers' ratios, and why firms want to be similar to their peers, but this is an even deeper level of causality—mostly beyond our current knowledge.)

Corporate Income Taxes Firms with high corporate income tax rates tend to actively issue debt and retire equity, i.e., increase their debt ratios.

Nevertheless, high corporate tax firms usually have *low* debt ratios. How can this be? The reason is that good performance translates not only into high profits and therefore high corporate taxes, but also into positive stock price performance. The latter directly reduces the firm's debt ratio. Although the end effect can be complex, on average, net issuing activity is usually not enough to undo the direct stock return effect.

file=capempirical.tex: LP

Accounting Performance Firms prefer net debt issuing over net equity issuing if they have better accounting profitability and more tangible assets (which can be easily collateralized). But as with taxes, good accounting profitability correlates strongly with higher stock prices, which in turn correlates strongly with *lower* debt ratios.

M&A Activity Much debt and much equity are issued in connection with M&A activity, although proportionally more debt is issued than equity. M&A Activity may be the most important reason why most well-performing non-financial firms do not end up with practically no debt. However, because firms usually start acquiring firms after good stock price performance, the overall capital structure effect can be complex. Good operating performance can lower the debt ratio through the value increase, but then increase the debt ratio through acquisitions.

Financial Distress Firms that are in dire straits (not the MTV band) have no choice but to retire some debt and issue equity. This seems to be an unusually solid net issuing influence, but only for firms close to the verge of bankruptcy.

Active Market Timing Firms that experience stock price increases tend to issue more securities—through both debt and equity, so the capital structure consequence is not too strong. Moreover, such firms also tend to pay out more in dividends, so even the net equity issuing effect is not yet clear. Nevertheless, when surveyed, CFOs claim that they do watch their stock market value, and respond to it—perhaps even try to time it. In any case, active market timing is the newest and thus the most interesting factor to explore—as more research comes forth, we may see its importance rise.

Uncertainty Firms with more volatile underlying assets tend to have less debt in their capital structures.

26·3.B. Theory vs. Empirics

What we can learn from what we have.

The above variables are interesting, but they are not exactly what the theories were asking for. For example, an interest coverage ratio is often used as a proxy to measure the proximity to financial distress—but it is not exactly financial distress. Some firms have low interest payments relative to earnings, and are in distress; other firms have high interest payments relative to earnings, and are financially sound. Yet ultimately, we study such specific variables only because they are relatively easy to measure empirically. We would have preferred direct measures of our theories of capital structure, but such measures are usually not as easily available. Most of the time, our variables are a compromise between empirical availability and theoretical construct, and we then try to interpret our empirical findings through the lenses of our theories. From our proxies, we can draw two basic conclusions about the theories: First, it appears that agency concerns, pecking order concerns, financial distress (in very few companies) and corporate taxes all matter, at least a little—or they matter in different ways through different channels. Second, there are some other proxies that matter, but we just do not know why they matter. For example, we do not know why firms do not counteract market influences more strongly, and why they seem to "like" capital structures similar to those of their industry peers.

Why so weak?

In sum, we have learned that we do not yet fully understand the factors that are driving firms to actively change their capital structures. It seems to be a complex process, possibly with a lot of idiosyncratic behavior. Our variables are statistically significant, but they leave a lot to be explained. You can read the situation in a number of ways:

1. Our variables may not matter much, because they are poor proxies for our theoretical constructs (e.g., for tax savings or bankruptcy costs). With more research, we may eventually find better proxies that will help us understand capital structure empirically better.

2. There are other theories and factors that we do not yet know which may be more important than those we have now.

file=capempirical.tex: RP

3. Our variables may not matter much, because capital structure choice is practically irrelevant. Whatever managers may be acting on—whether based on, say, book market ratios or their horoscopes—may have only minimal value consequences. You could think of this as an empirical validation of Modigliani-Miller.

4. Managers may just act poorly and erratically, and there is nothing outsiders can do to correct it.

It is probably a little of each. Right now, capital structure is an especially fertile area for behavioral finance, because idiosyncratic managerial behavior seems important and because there is no easy way for financial markets to arbitrage misbehavior. So, empirical capital structure remains an exciting field of research. We are definitely making progress in learning *how* managers behave, but we also have a long way to go.

26·3.C. Evidence on Equity Payouts: Dividends and Equity Repurchasing

Dividends and repurchases are the payout mechanisms. Typical dividend yields and changes.

Let us now turn towards dividends and share repurchases, both of which increase the debt-equity ratio. Although they are not too important in terms of changing firms' debt-equity ratios, they are the primary mechanisms by which equity shareholders receive a payback on their investment. As of 2000, the typical firm in the S&P500 paid out about 1% to 2% of its market value and half of its earnings in dividends each year. In the mid-1990s, about one in ten quarterly earnings announcements saw a dividend increase, one in one-hundred quarterly earnings announcements saw a dividend decrease, and all others kept the dividends where they were previously.

Repurchases and dividends are now approximately equally important.

As we discussed in Chapter 23, share repurchases were clearly the tax-smart method to pay out cash until 2003, when the Bush administration reduced the dividend tax from 35% to 15%, and largely eliminated double taxation. The empirical evidence suggests that the historical dividend taxation disadvantage had induced many firms to shift away from dividends and towards share repurchases as their primary means to return money to shareholders. This was clearly reversed. The 2003 tax reform has indeed changed corporate payout policy. Chetty and Saez (2004) found that the elimination of the double taxation has induced nearly 150 firms to initiate dividend payments, adding about $1.5 billion in aggregate, regular dividends. In sum, dividend payments are no longer a mystery.

Remaining Differences: changes in inside ownership, an informal understanding about persistence of future payments, and "behavioral finance" type investor preferences.

So, with the tax disadvantage gone or at least drastically reduced, what are the remaining important institutional differences between dividends and share repurchases? Not many.

1. Executives and insiders are often not permitted to tender their shares into share repurchase offers, and thus will own relatively more of the company after a repurchase than after an equivalent dividend payment. In addition, many executive stock option plans are written on stock prices that are not adjusted for dividends. This means that executives prefer a share repurchase to a dividend payment. For example, if a manager of a $60 company has an option that allows her to purchase shares at $50, then the manager would be reluctant to pay a $20 dividends—after all, the share price would drop to about $40, making the right to purchase at $50 a lot less valuable.

ANECDOTE: The Biggest Dividend Payout Ever?
In the most prominent immediate response to the Bush dividend tax cuts of 2003, Microsoft (MSFT) initiated dividends. Fifteen months later, on July 20, 2004—and 7 minutes after the market had closed—it announced a $32 billion special dividend, plus a $30 billion share repurchase, plus an increase in ordinary dividends from 16 cents to 32 cents per share (a yield increase from 0.56% to 1.12%). With a market capitalization of about $300 billion (a P/E ratio of about 20 [forward-looking earnings] and 37 [current earnings], and a cash hoard of $56 billion), the total payout represented about 20% of Microsoft's market value. A few minutes after market opening on July 22, Microsoft's outstanding shares had jumped in value by a little over 3%, so for every dollar changing hands from investors' company to investors' pocket, shareholders also felt 15 cents happier! Interestingly, two days later, Microsoft announced quarterly earnings 82 percent higher than those from its prior year, but still short of expectations—and shares promptly fell back to where they had been before the payout announcement. It appears as if the payout announcement was a positive signal, and the failure to meet earnings expectations—despite huge earnings growth—just about canceled one another. We researchers are all watching for what will happen in 2008, when the dividend tax cuts are scheduled to expire.

file=capempirical.tex: LP

2. Dividends tend to be more regular—because shareholders expect them to continue—while share repurchases can be done in occasional chunks. An ordinary dividend payment therefore informally obliges management to continue, signaling more optimism. Of course, management can also pay a "special dividend," which signals its one-time nature to investors.

3. There is some evidence that retail investors simply "like" dividends better than share repurchases, and institutions like just the opposite—although no one knows why. (This was a perverse ordering of preferences when dividends were more heavily taxed, and many institutions were tax-exempt. It should have been the case that institutions liked dividends and retail shareholders liked dividends—a mystery.) However, some institutional shareholders are obliged by their charters to hold *only* dividend-paying stocks. This provision excluded them from holding such stocks as Microsoft, at least prior to 2003 when Microsoft initiated its dividends.

Disappearing and reappearing dividends.

There were also other long-term trends at work even before 2003. From 1980 to 2000, share repurchases had increased from 5% to 50% of earnings, and had become just about as important as dividends. (Many shares are repurchased but not retired; instead, they are immediately given out again to compensate employees.) In contrast, dividend initiations had declined—a fact that is sometimes dubbed "disappearing dividends." Remarkably, this trend reversed in 2000 as more firms began to initiate dividends again—i.e., *prior* to the Bush tax cuts! The reason for this pattern was the age structure of firms in the market. As many of the new tech firms were maturing, they started paying dividends. (Of course, the Bush dividend tax cuts further aided this trend.) In addition, an important factor in the decision of firms to initiate dividends seems to be the relative premium the market places on dividend payers vs. non-dividend payers. In the tech bubble of the late 1990s, firms paying dividends did not trade at a higher P/E ratio than firms not paying dividends. Consequently, firms did not see large valuation incentives for starting dividends.

26·3.D. Forces Acting Through the Equity Payout Channel

Dividends are paid when firms have cash, but smoothed out.

As with our capital structure questions, we would love to know what makes companies pay out cash. Here, our knowledge is relatively good, especially when it comes to dividends. There are two strong empirical regularities:

1. Ordinary (not special!) dividend payouts tend to be persistent: firms are very reluctant to reduce them. As a result, firms also do not raise ordinary dividends too dramatically, because this could force them to cut them again in the future. Lintner (1956) first formally documented that firms only partly adjust dividends towards a target level if they experience abnormally high or low earnings. This phenomenon is called dividend smoothing. Firms still very much smooth dividends, though less so than 50 years ago.

2. Firms pay out money when they have it. That is, they pay out earnings when they have them and when managers are reasonably confident that good earnings will continue. There is some debate, however, whether dividend changes signal primarily that future earnings will be high (so that the dividend yield can continue), or whether they respond more to past earnings.

   The positive association between earnings and dividend payments also means that firms tend to pay out more in dividends when their stock prices have recently risen. (Interestingly, this may not have debt-equity consequences, because the effect through another channel runs opposite: firms also issue more new stock in response to good stock returns.)

file=capempirical.tex: RP

Solve Now!

Q 26.4 *What deeper characteristics help explain corporate debt-equity ratios?*

Q 26.5 *How good is our empirical knowledge about the deeper determinants of capital structure?*

Q 26.6 *Firms with larger tax obligations are known to be more inclined to issue debt. Does this mean that firms with high tax obligations usually have high debt-ratios?*

Q 26.7 *If our empirical knowledge about the deeper determinants of capital structure is modest, does this mean that capital structure theories are irrelevant?*

Q 26.8 *What remaining tax advantage do share repurchases enjoy over dividends?*

Q 26.9 *What are the other differences between a share repurchase and a dividend payment?*

26·4. Survey Evidence From CFOs

Let's ask the CFOs.

There is another way to approach the question of how managers choose capital structures—just ask them. Of course, we should not blindly believe that just because CFOs publicly proclaim a motive, that it *is* their motive. Graham and Harvey (2001) surveyed 392 CFOs to find out what they proclaim makes them issue equity or debt, and they found both interesting and some rather puzzling results that are difficult to interpret.

CFOs recognizes taxes and financial distress costs.

First, the good news: CFOs do care about the tax benefits of corporate debt, at least moderately. But they seem more concerned about their credit ratings. We know that credit ratings are closely related to interest coverage ratios (interest payments divided by earnings) and are a good proxy for possible financial distress costs. So, managers are cognizant of the basic trade-off between taxes and financial distress.

CFOs do not recognize our other suggestions. They seem to like financial flexibility (more money, more free cash flow!) and less dilution.

Now for the bad news:

1. Many of our other capital structure arguments seem unimportant to managers, from personal income taxes borne by their shareholders, to expropriation concerns by their creditors, to strategic product market factor considerations, to deliberate control of free cash flow incentives, to intentional signaling of good or bad news (inside information), to transaction cost considerations.

   On the one hand, this may not be as bad as it appears. Managers may still care about these considerations, because their cost of capital itself reflects these considerations. (For example, if their investors face higher tax consequences, it increases the firm' cost of capital, and managers do care about their cost of capital.) On the other hand, if a firm does not need to raise money, it is not clear whether managers compute the appropriate cost of capital and hurdle rates for their projects. If they do not take these factors into consideration when estimating the cost of capital that the market would be charging, they could set too high or too low a project hurdle rate.

2. Managers like "financial flexibility," which means that they like having cash around and having untapped debt capacity for possible future activities. Liking this kind of flexibility makes perfect sense from the manager's perspective—but it also hints that free cash flow is a real problem. Managers seem to primarily like this "flexibility" in order to take over other companies—a move that is often not value-enhancing for their shareholders. With almost no chance of bankruptcy in many Fortune 500 companies, it is unlikely that fear of a cash crunch is the driving concern behind the desire for flexibility.

file=capempirical.tex: LP

3. Managers worry about lower earnings-per-share (called **earnings dilution**) if they issue more equity. This makes little sense in itself, because the newly raised funds would presumably also produce earnings.

4. Even managers who claim to target a debt ratio tend not to retire equity if their equity has recently increased in value, or to issue more equity if their equity has recently fallen. This makes little sense, because this is exactly what is required to target a debt ratio.

5. Managers believe that they can time the financial markets.

   - About two-thirds of managers feel that the stock market undervalues their firm—a fact that restrains many from issuing equity. When their stock market values have recently increased, then managers feel that they have a "window of opportunity" for an equity issue. In other words, they believe that they can forecast their stock price, and the stock market's usual pessimism is appropriately corrected.
   - Even more remarkably, CFOs believe that they can time overall market interest rates: they issue more debt when interest rates fall or have fallen.

   Amazingly, although it seems almost absurd to believe that they have this ability, there is some new and actively debated empirical evidence that managers have indeed collectively shown some ability to time the market. To explain such corporate issuing activity *and its success*, it appears that we have to look more towards the field of **behavioral finance**.

A survey on payout policy.

In another survey (by Brav et.al. (2004)) prior to the Bush tax cuts, CFOs generally saw the question of dividends vs. repurchases as one of desirable flexibility—dividends being steady, share repurchases being paid "as available." Other answers mirror those in the Graham and Harvey survey. Here, too, managers pretty much considered personal income taxes on dividends to be fairly irrelevant both to them and to the preferences of their shareholders. CFOs also believed that dividends tended to attract more individual retail shareholders than large institutional tax-exempt investors. If the CFOs are correct, it is investors who are acting irrationally. Once again, this seems like a fruitful area of future research for behavioral finance.

Solve Now!

Q 26.10 *What factors do CFOs claim matters to them?*

Q 26.11 *Are answers from managers "prescriptive," i.e., indicative of what corporations should do?*

file=capempirical.tex: RP

26·5. Leverage Ratios By Firm Size, Profitability, and Industry

This section has been added late, and needs to be edited.

Do these dynamics cause different firms to evolve different leverage patterns over time? For example, do larger firms tend to end up having higher or lower leverage ratios? This is a more nuanced question than it appears to be at first sight, because you can use different definitions of debt and equity. In broad strokes, you have three choices:

- You can see debt narrowly in terms of the firm's financial indebtedness (long term debt plus debt in current liabilities), or widely in terms of all liabilities (which includes other liabilities, such as pension and other liabilities, for example; refer back to the previous chapter for more detail).

  In 2003, just about 50%-60% of the typical firm's total liabilities was financial indebtedness. However, this also differed by firm size. Large firms' total liabilities were mostly financial claims, while small firms' liabilities were mostly other liabilities (such as accounts payables).

- You can see equity in terms of market value or in terms of book value. Although I prefer the former, the latter is also often used in practice.

- You can compute the leverage ratio by dividing only by the value of the financial claims (the sum of financial debt and financial equity claim) or more broadly by the value of all assets.

This gives you six possible measures, but we shall look only at three:

A financial leverage ratio, which we define as long-term debt plus debt in current liabilities, divided by the firm's financial securities' market value.

A broad market-value based leverage ratio, which we define as total liabilities, divided by the sum of total liabilities plus the *market* value of equity.

A broad book-value based leverage ratio, which we define as total liabilities divided by the bookvalue of assets (the sum of total liabilities plus the book value of equity).

Table 26.3 shows the broad patterns of corporate indebtedness ratios in 2003. (When repeated for the year 2001, which was a recession year, the table looks very similar.) Publicly traded firms in the United States had average debt ratios of about 25%, although the typical firm had a median debt ratio of a few percentages less (16% and 20%, based on the measure). There is quite a bit of variation across firms—one standard deviation is either 26% or 20%, indicating that debt ratios of 0% or 50% are fairly common, too.

Table 26.3 also shows that the answer to the question of which types of firms are more levered depends on the leverage measure you adopt.

Larger firms tend to have more financial leverage but not more indebtedness. More profitable firms tend to be less indebtedness.

By Firm Size Larger firms have higher financial leverage ratios. However, if you look at leverage more broadly, you see that larger firms do not tend to be more indebted—and, indeed, by some measures, seem less indebted.

By Profitability More profitable firms are neither more nor less financially leveraged. However, on a broader indebtedness measure, more profitable firms tend to be less indebted.

Table 26.4 splits firms into industries.

By Industry Consumer goods (drugs, soap, perfumes, tobacco), machinery and business equipment makers, and mining and mineral companies tend to have lower debt ratios (market value based). Utilities, steel, and automobile companies tend to have higher financial leverage ratios. Financial services companies are interesting—they tend to have higher

file=capempirical.tex: LP

financial debt ratios, but relatively low broader indebtedness ratios. Note also that there is great variability across firms—the standard deviation is very high. Even within an industry, some firms can have very high and others very low debt ratios. (Of course, these industry definitions are still very broad. It is quite possible that many smaller industries have their own, unique debt ratios. But even if we use much finer industry definitions, we would tend to find great heterogeneity.)

Where do these patterns come from? For utilities, high debt ratios are likely driven by government regulations. For financial companies, leverage is part of the business. For transportation companies, such as airlines, it is partly hard times, partly the fact that airplanes are easy to collateralize. This is very different from drug companies, which tend to have low financial debt ratios, because R&D is difficult to collateralize. Drug development is either hit or miss. In fact, any debt extended to a drug developer may almost be called debt. If the drug fails, chances are that creditors will receive zero, just like equity holders.

In sum, it appears that firm size is a good marker for financial leverage, and profitability is a good marker for a broader indebtedness ratio.

Table 26.3. Leverage Ratios by Firm Size and Profitability, in 2003

		Financial			Broad (MV)			Broad (BV)			
		Mean	Mdn	S.D.	Mean	Mdn	S.D.	Mean	Mdn	S.D.	N
	All	25%	17%	26%	22%	16%	20%	26%	21%	20%	4,551
Firm Market Value	– $100m	22%	9%	27%	29%	22%	24%	35%	26%	27%	1,419
	$100m – $500m	18%	5%	24%	20%	13%	19%	23%	19%	16%	1,249
	$500m – $2,500m	19%	14%	21%	18%	13%	16%	22%	19%	14%	1,083
	$2,500m – $10,000m	24%	19%	21%	20%	16%	16%	22%	20%	13%	493
	$10,000m –	21%	17%	18%	19%	15%	14%	24%	23%	12%	307
	Interpretation	Increasing			Decreasing			Weak/Decreasing			
Firm Book Value	– $100m	16%	4%	24%	23%	16%	23%	33%	25%	26%	1,706
	$100m – $500m	22%	12%	25%	20%	14%	19%	23%	20%	14%	1,223
	$500m – $2,500m	31%	27%	24%	21%	15%	18%	21%	19%	13%	950
	$2,500m – $10,000m	34%	31%	23%	24%	20%	18%	23%	20%	13%	426
	$10,000 –	37%	36%	24%	26%	22%	17%	22%	21%	11%	292
	Interpretation	Increasing			Weak/Increasing			Decreasing/Weak			
Profitability Income/Sales	Negative	24%	10%	29%	26%	18%	24%	30%	23%	24%	1,639
	0% – 5%	27%	22%	24%	28%	24%	18%	27%	24%	15%	1,153
	5% – 10%	20%	15%	21%	17%	14%	14%	24%	20%	15%	844
	10% – 15%	25%	15%	25%	12%	9%	10%	20%	16%	13%	400
	15%–	28%	24%	25%	13%	7%	18%	22%	15%	23%	562
	Interpretation	None			Decreasing			Decreasing			

The **Financial** Leverage ratio is long-term debt plus debt in current liabilities divided by the firm's financial securities' value (the market value of equity plus the long-term debt plus debt in current liabilities). The **Broad (MV)** Leverage ratio is firms' total liabilities divided by the market value of equity plus the book value of total liabilities. The **Broad (BV)** Leverage ratio is firms' total liabilities divided by the book value of assets (which are the sum of the book value of equity plus the book value of total liabilities. Mdn is the median, S.D. is the standard deviation.) The industry definitions are originally by Fama and French. The original data came from the Compustat financial data base.

The table shows that larger firms seem to have higher financial leverage ratios, but (weakly) lower broad leverage ratios. More profitable firms tend to have lower broad leverage ratios.

Table 26.4. Leverage Ratios by Industry, in 2003

		Financial			Broad (MV)			Broad (BV)			
		Mean	Mdn	S.D.	Mean	Mdn	S.D.	Mean	Mdn	S.D.	N
1	Food	27%	23%	23%	24%	19%	19%	24%	21%	21%	122
2	Mining and Minerals	15%	6%	6%	13%	7%	7%	16%	12%	12%	94
3	Oil and Petroleum Products	26%	23%	23%	19%	13%	13%	19%	15%	15%	196
4	Textiles, Apparel	25%	16%	16%	27%	19%	19%	24%	21%	21%	89
5	Consumer Durables	27%	18%	18%	31%	22%	22%	27%	23%	23%	119
6	Chemicals	29%	24%	24%	26%	21%	21%	21%	19%	19%	93
7	Drugs, Soap, Prfums, Tobacco	11%	5%	5%	11%	8%	8%	22%	18%	18%	221
8	Construction	31%	25%	25%	32%	25%	25%	27%	23%	23%	106
9	Steel Works Etc	38%	34%	34%	34%	26%	26%	22%	20%	20%	62
10	Fabricated Products	33%	25%	25%	32%	25%	25%	26%	22%	22%	33
11	Machinery and Business Equip.	15%	6%	6%	19%	13%	13%	26%	21%	21%	693
12	Automobiles	29%	21%	21%	33%	28%	28%	29%	26%	26%	65
13	Transportation	35%	30%	30%	29%	22%	22%	25%	22%	22%	169
14	Utilities	47%	47%	47%	29%	25%	25%	17%	15%	15%	133
15	Retail Stores	23%	14%	14%	28%	21%	21%	29%	25%	25%	293
16	Banks, Insurance, Financials	39%	40%	40%	18%	11%	11%	29%	19%	19%	151
17	Other Industries	18%	7%	7%	21%	14%	14%	28%	22%	22%	1,901
–	Industry Unknown	29%	19%	19%	33%	26%	26%	40%	29%	29%	61

See Table 26.3 for a table description. The table shows that financial leverage ratios are low for mining, consumer goods, and machinery; and financial leverage ratios are high among utilities, financials, and steel. There are no strong industry patterns on broader indebtedness measures.

file=capempirical.tex: RP

26·6. Perspective

What we know.

It is important that you keep the empirical evidence in proper perspective. We *do* know that our theories can explain at least some of the behavior of corporations. So, we should not dismiss them as determinants of observed capital structure. There is a good chance that further refining of our theories and proxies will explain quite a bit more about how firms behave. We also *do* know that we *do not* know why our theories explain relatively little about the differences in behavior across companies. There is a good chance that there are other systematic factors that we do not yet fully understand (probably in the domain of behavioral finance). There is also a good chance that much corporate behavior is just erratic and will never be explained. We should keep an open mind.

It is important that you know what you do not know.

Why torture you in this chapter with something that we do not fully understand? The reason is that capital structure is an important area, and you must know what we do not yet know! As a manager, you will meet many investment bankers mustering arguments about what other firms have been doing, and offering advice as to what you should do. As an investment banker, you should know not only what factors influence firms' capital structures, but also how important or unimportant individual factors are—and how you can measure them to find new potential clients. As a policy maker, you should know how authoritative the capital structure outcomes and choices of firms really are.

The evidence says nothing about the normative implications of the theories—in fact, it may tell you where there is money to be made.

But perhaps most importantly, the empirical evidence here does not suggest that our theories are worthless. For example, does our empirical evidence mean that just because other firms do not exploit the corporate income tax advantage of debt, that you should ignore it, too? Absolutely not! You can still think about how important a corporate income tax advantage is to *your* firm, and what this means for *your* optimal capital structure. Perhaps more important—if many firms are ignoring the factors that they should pay attention to, then over time some will end up with very poor capital structures. In this case, you can think about how you can come in and change these existing firms to increase their value. You can effect change from many different directions. You can work in the firm itself and argue for a capital structure change. You can become an investment banker and advise clients on better capital structures. Or, you can even buy some companies. It has been almost twenty years since there was a wave of "leveraged buyouts," in which many public firms were taken over and restructured to generate value—and much, if not most, of the value was created through better capital structures. Maybe you will start the next wave of takeovers!

file=capempirical.tex: LP

26·7. The Capital Market Response to Issue and Dividend Announcements

On average, equity issues are bad news, debt issues are neutral news, and dividend issues are good news.

Another interesting question that we can ask is how the financial markets are responding to news of an impending equity issue, debt issue, or dividend payment. Is it good news or bad news? There is a web chapter that describes the evidence in great detail. In short, equity issues are bad news (a loss of 1.5% in firm value, which is around 15% of the size of the issue—an effect called **dilution**). Debt issues are just about neutral. Dividend issues are good news. For issues, the size of the issue or firm matters little. However, bigger dividends and dividends issued by small firms are greeted with a relatively more favorable response. There is also considerable heterogeneity in how firms respond. For example, some firms issuing equity are greeted with a very positive market reaction.

The evidence suggests that shareholders like managers to have less cash at their discretion.

How should we interpret these findings? Recall that both debt and equity issues increase the size of the firm, but have opposite effects on firms' debt ratios. Taken together, the evidence suggests that increases in debt ratios are good news and increases in firm size are bad news. For debt issues, the two effects roughly cancel each other out; for equity issues, they act in the same (negative) direction. This indicates that the market believes that, for the *average* publicly traded company, tight finances with high debt burdens and little free cash flow enhance corporate efficiency, supporting the agency perspective of capital structure. (The evidence is also consistent with a corporate tax perspective, and an inside information perspective, but not a financial distress costs perspective.) If you want to understand these issues better, please read the relevant web chapter.

26·8. Summary

This chapter covered the following major points:

- We can explore both the mechanisms of capital structure change and the underlying forces (causes). These causes can themselves work through multiple mechanisms.
- Over a five-year horizon, the two most important mechanisms affecting capital structure are stock returns and long-term debt issuing activity. Both can explain about 40% of the changes in debt-equity ratios.
- Long-term debt can explain about 30% of the changes in debt-equity ratios, short-term debt and equity issuing can both explain about 15%, and both convertible debt and payout policy can explain less than 5%.
- Among the Fortune-100 firms, seasoned equity offerings are rare, and appear almost always in the context of acquisitions. (Executive compensation is remarkably high, and about as important as share repurchasing activity.)
- We know a number of statistically significant forces (potential causes), but they can explain only a very small percentage of capital structure dynamics. Among the more important influences are
  - Stock returns.
  - A reluctance to issue equity.
  - A desire to imitate industry peers.
  - Corporate income taxes.
  - Accounting performance, such as profitability.

file=capempirical.tex: RP

  - M&A activity.
  - Financial distress.
  - Market timing.
  - Uncertainty.

- Although dividends and repurchases have been fairly modest in acting as capital structure channels, we understand them relatively well. They are both about equally important. Their differences mattered more in the past, before the double taxation of dividends was reduced in 2003. Among the remaining differences are that managers can participate in receiving cash from dividends, but cannot tender into share repurchases, that managers with unadjusted stock option plans prefer repurchases to dividends, and that some investors seem to "like" dividends.
- The most important remaining difference between dividends and share repurchases today is that dividends tend to be more persistent ("stickier") than share repurchases.
- Firms tend to pay out dividends when they have retained earnings. That is, they do not typically finance dividends through other capital markets activity, but through operations.
- In surveys, CFOs claim to be very concerned about their credit ratings and financial flexibility. Together with often largely untapped debt capacity, these findings can be evidence of significant free cash flow problems. CFOs also claim not to care about taxes borne by their investors or many other factors suggested by the theories, but they do believe that they can "time" the market.
- Larger firms tend to have higher financial leverage ratios, but lower total indebtedness ratios. More profitable firms tend to have lower total indebtedness ratios.
- Even if firms do not seem to act according to the theories, the capital structure theories still offer good guidance about how you can add value by doing things differently.
- The financial markets respond negatively to the announcement of an equity issue, neutrally to the announcement of a debt issue, and positively to the announcement of dividends. However, there is considerable heterogeneity across firms in this response.

file=capempirical.tex: LP

A. Appendix: A List of Some Recent Empirical Capital-Structure Related Publications

Unlike many other subjects of our book—where our knowledge has solidified over several decades—empirical capital structure remains a largely unresolved but actively researched area. Much of what I know seems to be unusually fluid, and has only recently appeared. My summary in this chapter is my *own* subjective reading thereof.

You will eventually find references to papers, past and current, for all chapters on the book website. However, to allow you to make up your own mind on this very unsettled area, I will now break the rule that references are not in the book but only on the Web site. So here is a short list of papers published after the turn of the millennium. These papers will in turn reference many related, older, but equally (or possibly more) interesting and relevant papers.

- Franklin Allen and Roni Michaely, 2003. "Payout Policy." North-Holland Handbook of Economics, ed. Constantinides, Harris, and Stulz.
- Malcolm Baker and Jeffrey Wurgler, 2002. "Market Timing and Capital Structure." The Journal of Finance 57-1, p.1-32.
- Alon Brav, and John R. Graham and Campbell R. Harvey and Roni Michaely, 2005, "Payout Policy in the 21st century." Journal of Financial Economics 77-3, 483-527.
- Raj Chetty, and Emmanuel Saez, 2005, " Dividend Taxes and Corporate Behavior: Evidence from the 2003 Dividend Tax Cut." Quarterly Journal of Economics 120-3, 791-833.
- Eugene F. Fama and Kenneth French, 2004, "Financing Decisions: Who Issues Equity?" Journal of Financial Economics 76, 549-582.
- John R. Graham, 2003. "Taxes and Corporate Finance: A Review." Review of Financial Studies 16, 1074-1129.
- John R. Graham and Campbell R. Harvey, 2001. "The Theory and Practice of Corporate Finance: Evidence from the Field." Journal of Financial Economics 60, 187-243.
- Armen Hovakimian, Timothy C. Opler, and Sheridan Titman, 2001. "The Debt-Equity Choice." Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis 36, 1-24.
- Brandon Julio and David L. Ikenberry, 2004. "Reappearing Dividends." Working Paper, UIUC.
- Mark T. Leary and Michael R. Roberts, 2004. "Do Firms Rebalance Their Capital Structures?" The Journal of Finance 60-6, 2575-2619.
- Peter MacKay and Gordon M. Philips, 2004. "How Does Industry Affect Firm Financial Structure?" Review of Financial Studies 18-4, 1433-1466.
- Ivo Welch, 2004. "Capital Structure and Stock Returns." Journal of Political Economy 112-1, 106-131.

Solutions and Exercises

1. Debt issuing and repurchasing activity, and the direct influence of stock returns can each account for about 40% of the variation in debt-equity ratios. Long-Term debt net issuing can account for about 30%, and short-term debt and equity net issuing can account for about 15%.
2. Non M&A related seasoned equity issuing activity is trivial in magnitude.
3. On the contrary. It may even mean that there is a lot of money left on the table by managers that have not optimized their capital structures.

4. See Page 667.
5. It is pretty modest.
6. Firms with high tax obligations usually have low equity ratios, because they were highly profitable. These firms have low debt ratios.
7. No—the theories tell us what should matter. There are a number of explanations why they may not translate into observed corporate behavior.
8. The capital gains can be realized by investors who have little capital gains tax.
9. Executives and insiders may often not tender into a repurchase, but will enjoy the relatively higher share price from a repurchase through executive compensation that is linked to the share price. Dividends tend to be more regular than share repurchases. Some retail investors like dividends.

10. Taxes, credit ratings, financial flexibility, and earnings dilution.
11. No. Managers are conflicted. They do not maximize shareholder wealth, but their own welfare.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

file=capempirical.tex: LP

CHAPTER 27

INVESTMENT BANKING

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (17:14h)
last major edit: Apr 2005

This chapter looks at the role of the investment bankers. The subject of investment banking is important enough to deserve its own chapter—even if it is only a brief one. After all, investment banks are not only plum employers of finance graduates, but they are also the most important intermediaries through which corporations tap the capital markets. We will focus on two important functions of investment banks: Facilitating the underwriting of securities and advising firms on mergers and acquisitions.

27·1. Investment Bankers

What an investment bank is.

You can think of an investment banker as pretty much the same thing as an ordinary consumer banker. The primary difference is that investment bankers advise corporations rather than individuals, and therefore operate on a larger scale. Like consumer bankers, investment bankers provide the following services:

- lend capital to corporations;
- act as agents on behalf of other capital providers;
- orchestrate the legal and bureaucratic aspects of the capital raising process;
- offer investment advice—solicited and unsolicited.

The last function is especially important when a firm seeks to undertake a large investment, such as a merger or acquisition. We will therefore discuss this at length in the next section.

27·1.A. Underwriting Functions

Underwriters help sell corporate securities.

If you go back to Table 25.1, you will see that with the exception of the direct role of stock returns and the payment of dividends, investment banks facilitate many of the financing activities that corporations undertake. In particular, the underwriting of new debt and equity issues is one of the main businesses of many investment banks. Virtually all offerings of securities for exchange-traded firms are underwritten these days. The term **underwriter** originally came from the guarantee of the issuing proceeds, equivalent to the fact that an insurance company would underwrite a policy. These days, this guarantee is given only on the morning of the offering, when the underwriter practically knows for certain at what price investors are willing to purchase shares. If it looks as if the issue cannot be sold, the underwriter will demand a lower price and/or refuse to bring the issue to market altogether. So, the actual underwriting guarantee itself is no longer as important as it was historically, when it could take weeks to find investors.

Underwriters help sell corporate securities.

Instead, the main function of underwriters today is to provide the legal expertise in carrying through the process (**issue origination**); to make sure that the securities get placed, often with specific investors such as large institutional ones (**issue placement**); and to signal confidence in the firm by putting their own reputations on the line. Underwriters can help in many ways throughout the process. For example, many investment banks have large brokerage arms, and their analysts can spread "positive hype" through optimistic analyst reports for their investment banking corporate clients. This presumably increases the demand for investment in the company, and is thus good for selling more shares and debt in the future.

Anecdote: The Analyst Recommends: Buy!
The number of analysts' **buy recommendations** outnumbers the number of **sell recommendations** by a ratio of about 5:1; when limited to **strong buy** and **strong sell** recommendations, this ratio changes to over 10:1.

The primary reason for this imbalance is a conflict of interest. Most brokerage firms and by extension their analysts are owned by investment banks. (They are even called "sell-side" analysts, even though their "advice" goes to investors!) The investment banks are well aware that a sell recommendation is likely to induce the targeted firms not only to exclude the particular analyst from obtaining further information about the firm, but also to induce the targeted firm to select a different underwriter. Therefore, the investment banks discourage their analysts subtly and not so subtly from issuing sell recommendations. Although this analyst bias was always widely recognized by professional investors, it had received scant attention in the press and little recognition by small investors—until 2001, when it suddenly became a public scandal. It is still somewhat of a mystery why then, but not before.

In April 2003, ten of the largest investment banks settled a lawsuit by setting aside funds for making independent research available to brokerage clients and promising a separation of their brokerage analysis from their investment banking functions. It is not yet clear how effective these reforms have been.

file=ibanking.tex: RP

Nevertheless, it would be naïve for CFOs to consider underwriters as unconflicted agents on behalf of their clients. Investment banks make their money from financing activity and thus will push for the firm to engage in activity—even if it is value-decreasing. They also sometimes structure transactions in such a way that the valuation is not easy for the CFO to understand. This can even occasionally allow the investment bank to obtain claims on the company at below fair market pricing. (For example, many bonds include a strippable warrant kicker to lower interest rates, and many CFOs may not understand as well as the bank does just how much value they are giving away.) Of course, a good investment bank can work hard and create value for its clients—but it is wise for the client to remain cognizant of the conflicts involved.

Underwriters are also conflicted agents.

27·1.B. The Major Underwriters

Table 27.1. Largest Underwriters in the United States in 2004

Bookrunner (in alphabetical order)	Underwriting		M&A Advising		IPOs	
	$	#	$	#	$	#
Bank of America	$204	780	$73	109	$1.5	16
CSFB	$362	1,359	$201	271	$3.6	23
Citigroup (Salomon-Smith-Barney)	$534	1,892	$485	377	$3.6	19
Deutsche Bank	$335	1,299	$247	218	-	-
Goldman Sachs	$286	855	$577	336	$7.1	29
JP Morgan	$386	1,492	$511	396	$4.0	25
Lazard	-	-	$230	207	-	-
Lehman Bros	$370	1,292	$308	175	$2.4	20
Merrill Lynch	$374	1,564	$381	298	$4.5	31
Morgan Stanley	$414	1,334	$381	298	$7.3	21
Rothschild	-	-	$232	269	-	-
UBS	$300	1,175	$219	289	$2.3	16

Firms are in alphabetical order. All dollar figures are in billions. A dash means the information is not available or the firm is not among the largest players. Underwriting amounts include all debt and equity offerings, corporate and otherwise, for which the underwriter ran the book (was the lead underwriter). IPO underwriting is broken out in the right-side columns. IPOs are small in absolute dollar amounts, but disproportionally rich in commissions and risk. With the exception of *Lazard* and *Rothschild*, who are primarily M&A advisors, the remaining largest investment bankers are also large underwriters.

Source: www.thomson.com (Thomson Financial).

Table 27.1 gives you an idea of who the big investment banks are. This market has an interesting history. Until November 1999, the **Glass-Steagall Act of 1933** and a subsequent 1956 Act had prohibited interstate banking (keeping investment banks outside states with large corporate presence, such as California, New York, Illinois, and Massachusetts, relatively small), and the mixing of retail/commercial and investment banking. Glass-Steagall therefore made it impossible for large consumer banks, such as **Citibank** or **Chase Manhattan Bank**, from effectively competing in the investment banking space. Many other countries never had this distinction—they just had "banks" that performed both consumer/commercial and investment banking. Therefore, the United States was unique in fostering a large number of relatively small investment banks. Beginning in the 1980s, states allowed interstate banking, which was completed around 1994. The separation between ordinary and investment banking disappeared with the repeal of Glass-Steagall in 1999, and the investment banking sector rapidly began to consolidate. For example, in 1998, Citibank and Travelers Insurance group had merged to become Citigroup. In the same year, Smith Barney purchased Salomon Brothers to become Salomon Smith Barney. One year later, with Glass-Steagull repealed, Citigroup then purchased Salomon Smith Barney, so the five formerly independent financial services providers are now all just parts of one large financial conglomerate. Similarly, Chase Manhattan purchased J.P.

How the large came to be large.

Morgan in 2000, and merged with Bank One Corporation (a large credit card issuer) in 2004. CSFB is the combination of Credit Suisse, a very large Swiss bank, and First Boston, an old investment bank. Lehman Brothers and Goldman Sachs still remain independent—and there are even some players that remain independent in just one sub-field of investment banking (specifically, Lazard and Rothschild are just M&A advisors).

Like the rest of the world, we now have conglomerates.

Much competition is no longer just in the investment banking field or even just across a whole range of financial services, but even transcends national borders. The same cast of bankers competes not only in the United States, but also in the bigger global market. Even though the United States remains the biggest underwriting market (debt plus equity), it was followed closely by Europe (with the Middle East and Africa), Asia (without Australia and Japan), Japan, Australia, and Latin America. In billions of dollars, the 2004 market was

United States	Europe (incl. Middle East and Africa)	Asia (excl. Japan)	Japan	Australia	Latin America
$173	166	$69	$61	$17	$4

Moreover, Europe is now the biggest equity offering market, with the United States being the biggest debt offering market. But, again, these are artificial distinctions: investment banking has truly gone global, with many foreign companies issuing securities in the United States and many domestic companies issuing securities in Europe or Japan. About 70% of securities issues in the United States are sold to the public, and 30% are sold to private parties (without SEC involvement).

UK and US banks are the top competitors.

Let us now enlarge our perspective and consider commercial banking in general. Investment banking is just one of the many businesses commercial banks engage in. The general trend has been for consolidation of many activities—few investment banks remain standalone operations. Table 27.2 shows the rankings of global banks by assets under management as of 2004. The table shows some remarkable differences between the more market-oriented banks in the United Kingdom and United States on the one hand, and the more institutionally oriented banks in Europe and Japan on the other hand. For example, Bank of America is at the bottom of this list with "only" $736 billion under management. Mizuho of Japan is at the top of this list with $1.285 trillion under management. Yet Bank of America is worth more than three times as much as Mizuho! There is much evidence that foreign banks have been largely unable to translate their financial reserves (a natural scale advantage) into profitability equal to their American and British counterparts. Indeed, many of them are struggling against the more nimble competition.

Solve Now!

Q 27.1 *How important is the guarantee of securities placement success that underwriters provide their clients?*

Q 27.2 *What are the main functions of underwriters today?*

Q 27.3 *How are the interests of investment banks different from those of their clients (investors and firms)?*

Q 27.4 *How good and unbiased are brokerage buy recommendations?*

Q 27.5 *Name some of the largest underwriters in the United States today.*

Q 27.6 *In relative terms, how important is the American market compared to the European market?*

Q 27.7 *Name some of the largest global banks today. Does it matter whether the criterion is market value or book value of assets under management?*

Table 27.2. The Largest 15 Global Banks in 2003, by Assets under Management

Rank	Bank	Country	Assets	Capital	Value
1	Mizuho	Japan	$1,285	$38	$50
2	Citigroup	USA	$1,264	$69	$243
3	UBS	Switzerland	$1,120	$24	$87
4	Credit Agricole	France	$1,105	$55	$36
5	HSBC Holdings	UK	$1,105	$55	$164
6	Deutsche Bank	Germany	$1,014	$27	$43
7	BNP Paribas	France	$989	$32	$55
8	Mitsubishi	Japan	$975	$47	$57
9	Sumitomo	Japan	$950	$34	$41
10	Royal Bank, Scotland	UK	$806	$35	$87
11	Barclays Bank	UK	$791	$27	$57
12	Credit Suisse Group (CSFB)	Switzerland	$778	n/a	$42
13	JP Morgan Chase	USA	$771	$43	$78
14	UFJ Holdings	Japan	$754	$21	n/a
15	Bank of America	USA	$736	$44	$171

All numbers are in billions of U.S. dollars. Assets are assets under management. Capital is "tier one capital" (also called core equity), which is common stock, disclosed reserves, and retained earnings. Although based on book value and therefore unreliable, it is the most common regulatory definition for bank capitalization. Value is market value as of June 17, 2004. The table shows that American and British firms had relatively high capitalizations.

Source: *The Banker* magazine, July 2, 2004.

27·2. THE UNDERWRITING PROCESS

We now turn to the question: How much does it cost to issue securities?

27·2.A. Direct Issuing Costs

Typical real-world fees.

Table 27.3 describes cost data from 1990 to 1994. (Although no data are available for issuing costs after 1994, it is unlikely that much has changed in relative terms since then.) The table shows that selling equity shares is more expensive than selling bonds. For example, placing a $100 million bond offering may cost the firm direct expenses of $2.3 million in total, while placing a $100 million equity offering may cost $4.2 million. From the perspective of the firm, there seems to be a price for issuing "capital at risk." The more risk for sale, the higher the underwriting costs. There is usually more value at risk in a $1 million equity offering than in a $10 million bond offering. In this context, you can often think of a typical $10 million corporate bond offering as the combination of, say, a $9.5 million risk-free Treasury bond (with very low commissions, below even what corporate bonds charge) and $0.5 million in highly levered equity (with high commission). Therefore, the cost of issuing corporate debt lies between the cost of issuing Treasury-like securities and the cost of issuing risky equity.

Why underwriters charge for risk.

In turn, underwriters have their reasons for charging more for placing riskier securities. First, investors can be found a lot more easily if the securities are safer. In the extreme, safe bond issues are almost substitutes for Treasury bonds, and so investors are not very concerned about risk analysis and so are easy to engage. Second, the underwriter carries some of the risk of the securities he places with his own reputation capital. For example, when an underwriter takes a firm public in an IPO, he partly carries the risk that the firm will go bankrupt later on, which will not play well with investors that the bank solicited. After a couple of such repeats, the underwriter would probably no longer be able to find IPO investors. Therefore, when companies

Table 27.3. Typical U.S. Fees, 1990-1994, in Percent.

Proceeds	Initial Public Offerings			Seasoned Equity Offerings			Convertible Bond Offerings			Plain Bond Offerings		
($ millions)	*N*	UWC	TC	*N*	UWC	TC	*N*	UWC	TC	*N*	UWC	TC
2–10	337	9.1	17.0	167	7.7	13.3	4	6.1	8.8	32	2.1	4.4
10–20	389	7.2	11.6	310	6.2	8.7	14	5.5	8.7	78	1.4	2.8
20–40	533	7.0	9.7	425	5.6	6.9	18	4.2	6.1	89	1.5	2.4
40–60	215	7.0	8.7	261	5.1	5.9	28	3.3	4.3	90	0.7	1.3
60–80	79	6.7	8.2	143	4.6	5.2	47	2.6	3.2	92	1.8	2.3
80–100	51	6.5	7.9	71	4.3	4.7	13	2.4	3.0	112	1.6	2.2
100–200	106	6.0	7.1	152	3.9	4.2	57	2.3	2.8	409	1.8	2.3
200–500	47	5.7	6.5	55	3.3	3.5	27	2.0	2.2	170	1.8	2.2
500–	10	5.2	5.7	9	3.0	3.2	3	2.0	2.1	20	1.4	1.6
All	1,767	7.3	**11.0**	1,593	5.4	**7.1**	211	2.9	**3.8**	1,092	1.6	**2.2**

Source: Lee-Lochhead-Ritter, 1996. *N* is the number of observations. UWC is underwriter compensation (in percent of proceeds). TC is total costs, which includes registration fees, printing fees, and legal and auditing costs (in percent of proceeds).

first sell shares in an initial public offering (IPO), which is the most risky investment banking business around, the costs are usually highest—a fact that Table 27.3 shows quite nicely. As a sidenote, IPO commissions have become considerably more uniform after 1994. Almost all underwriters are now charging *exactly* 7.0% in commission, a fact that has made some observers wonder about how competitive the underwriting market for IPOs truly is. Although there are several dozen underwriters, it could be that the market is segmented enough along the size and industry dimension, so that each IPO really has only one to three natural choices from whom an underwriter can reasonably be selected.

Management Fees! The costs listed in Table 27.3 are, of course, not even complete as far as direct costs are concerned. Importantly, they do not account for the time and focus that management spends on the issuing process, which could otherwise have been spent more productively (an opportunity cost). The effort is relatively more modest in safer offerings—for IPOs, it is a very lengthy and time-consuming task. Similarly, we have no evidence as to how expensive any time delay in funding would be on the values of projects. These two costs are conceivably just as important, but we cannot assess them because we have no data on the costs of management time and project delay. Finally, there are the indirect costs and benefits that the revised capital structure itself creates—the subject of our earlier chapters and subsection 27·2.C.

Bond Rating Agencies. There is one additional direct cost to issuing debt that is worthwhile breaking out. We have already mentioned bond rating agencies in Section 6·2.C on Page 119. Issuers can pay **Moody's**, **Standard&Poors**, or **Fitch** to rate their bonds. This typically costs $5,000 to $25,000 per bond issue. Having a public bond rating helps potential investors gauge the risk. Indeed, many institutions are prohibited from buying any unrated bonds, making ratings a necessity for many large bond offerings. Only the largest and most stable firms can issue **investment grade bonds**. All other firms can only issue **high-yield bonds**, that is, bonds rated BB or worse (see also Table 6.1 on Page 121). To get a better impression of issuing activity, please browse the issuing calendar in the *Wall Street Journal*, as well as a Moody's or S&P Bond Manual in your local library. (The Moody's descriptions are now published by **Mergent**, a sister company of Moody's.)

file=ibanking.tex: RP

27·2.B. Underwriter Selection

Firms are often selected by history. Industry expertise is the next most important factor.

Much of our interest in underwriting is from the perspective of firms wanting to raise capital. So, how do firms select investment bankers? Most of the time, by simple inertia! Firms tend to go with the investment banker that they have always done business with. It is often only when they consider switching—which itself usually occurs after a firm has "outgrown" in capitalization the reputation and size of its original underwriter—that they undertake a comparative analysis. If they do such an analysis, an important factor in the selection process is "industry expertise." Such expertise can help the underwriter navigate the process more smoothly, communicate and understand better the concerns of top management, connect the firm to the right potential investors, and offer the services of specialized analysts who can help hype the offering more to potential retail investors.

Agency issues between managers and the firm may also play a role.

However, there is a puzzle. There is empirical evidence suggesting that it is cheaper for a corporation to ask several investment banks to compete for the underwriting of an issue—but most firms just hire one investment bank (and typically their old investment bank) and stick with it. (The exception are utilities, which are obliged by regulation to bid out their capital raising activities.) Why this inertia? One view is that firms are willing to pay more because hired investment banks provide better service along other dimensions than just underwriting at lowest cost. For example, it may take less management time if the existing underwriter is already well informed about the company through previous interactions. Another view is that firms select their underwriters based on such considerations as personal friendships and convenience. The most cynical view (see Chapter 28 on corporate governance) is that executives like underwriters who "wine and dine" them, give them better and cheaper personal banking services (such as allocations to shares in initial public offerings), and provide a placement network for executives if they want or have to move. After all, an investment banker is not likely to recommend to bigger and better companies those CFO executives who they barely know and who have minimized the investment bank's profits.

27·2.C. Sum-Total Issuing Costs — The Financial Market Reaction

Capital market reactions are a better measure of the overall net cost/gain of an issue.

We have already briefly discussed the financial market reactions to issuing activity in the previous chapter (with more depth in our web chapter), but it is important to bring these reactions into our discussion of the costs of issuing here. The average company dropped by about 1.5% when it announced a new equity issue, which was about 15% in dilution. In a sense, this may be a better measure of the cost of issuing than the direct fees we measured in Table 27.3, because it includes the direct fee. For example, start with a perfect market in which a \$100 million firm raises \$50 million and pays the underwriter \$30 million in commissions. It is the old shareholders who pay the \$30 million. The new shareholders participate only if they can buy at the appropriate price. Because the firm will be worth \$120 million, new shareholders demand 41.7% of the firm. Old shareholders experience an announcement price drop from 100% · \$100 million to 58.3% · \$120 million = \$70 million. In an efficient market, this value drop must

ANECDOTE: Legal Monopolies: Bond Ratings
Prior to 2003, federal securities laws had recognized just three "nationally recognized statistical rating agencies" (NRSRO): Moody's, Standard&Poor's, and Fitch. (In 2003, the SEC added Dominion; in 2005, it added A.M. Best.) In the second half of the twentieth century, the SEC began to rely on ratings to determine what sort of securities certain regulated financial institutions could own. The raters had not always enjoyed such privileged status. At the beginning of the twentieth century, they were simply investment service agencies that provided investors with research for a fee. In the 1970s, the revenue model changed, and Moody's and S&P (by far the larger and more important) began to charge issuers instead of investors.

In 1994, the *Jefferson County School District* No R-1 of Colorado decided not to obtain a Moody's ranking. To their surprise, Moody's decided to publish an unsolicited and unusually detailed "Special Comment," anyway. It was a negative rating that downgraded the school district, and interestingly it occurred on the day of the pricing of the bond. Although Jefferson County sued, a judge later ruled that Moody's was protected by the First Amendment's *freedom of speech* clause.

This legal protection also helped the three major credit rating agencies in Enron's case. They received substantial fees from Enron. Interestingly, even when Enron was already trading at \$3 per share and the market was aware of its trouble, all three agencies still gave investment grade ratings to Enron's debt.

occur in the instant of the announcement, not at the actual issuing. CFOs sometimes make the mistake of adding up the direct cost and the dilution cost to arrive at a total cost of issuing, but this example illustrates that the dilution (announcement drop) is *not* an additional cost, but a total cost.

Adding up costs and benefits.

If we now were to observe that the value of outstanding equity had dropped from $100 million to $60 million instead of to $70 million, then the firm must have lost another $10 million in value through the issuing of the equity elsewhere. In contrast to the direct fees, we usually do not immediately know the causes for the remaining dilution. It could be that existing owners believe that the firm gave away too much in features, or that it chose the wrong securities features, or that the firm or shareholders will now pay more in taxes, or that shareholders learned the bad news that management was doing so poorly that the firm needed to raise more money. Actually, it is not one or the other, but the sum of all the possible value effects. In the end, the point is that the extra loss of $10 million is a cost just like the direct cost of $30 million paid to the underwriter. Of course, if the value of outstanding equity had dropped from $100 million to $80 million, the issue must have cost the $30 million in commissions, but created $10 million of value elsewhere. In the extreme, if the firm value increased upon the announcement from $100 million to $110 million (and we know that some firms increase in value upon the announcement of a new issue), we know that the issue cost $30 million in underwriting fees, but created $40 million in value.

IMPORTANT:

- *A firm that seeks to maximize shareholder value should minimize all costs of issuing—whether underwriter related or deadweight costs (such as taxes)—and maximize all value created by issuing.*
- *In an efficient and perfect market, the instant dilution is a measure of all the costs and benefits of an issue.*

Real Life Difficulties

In real life, it is not so easy to just look at the announcement reaction. First, when managers consider whether to issue, they have not announced it yet, and so they do not know the market's value reaction. Could they perhaps merely announce their intent, and then see what the value consequence is? Unfortunately, if the market can anticipate that managers are just floating a trial balloon, it may not react at all. If the market response is a function of what it believes managers will do, and if what managers will do is a function of what they believe the market will do, then the blind may be leading the blind. The outcome could be anything. If the market believes the managers will carry through an equity offering, responds negatively, and managers then cancel the issue, the net effect is not as bad as carrying through with the bad issue—but firms still end up worse off than if they had never announced an issue to begin with.

Learning from the market response

But can we learn at least something from what other corporations have experienced in the same situation? Yes, we can—and we have. In the previous chapter, we described the following outcomes for publicly traded corporations:

- *On average,* when firms raise more external capital, it is bad news and the stock price drops. Conversely, when a firm pays out capital, it is good news and the stock price rises.
- *On average,* when firms replace equity with debt, keeping firm size steady, the stock price generally increases. Conversely, when these firms replace the (remaining) debt with equity, the stock price generally decreases.

We interpreted this evidence that investors seem to infer that management will waste the extra money, or learn that the firm can no longer produce as much money as they thought it could. Our analysis was based on the following "anchor" estimates for the announcement price reactions for three important and frequent capital markets events for publicly traded firms in the United States from 1980 to 2000:

file=ibanking.tex: RP

- The two-day announcement price change for an equity issue (increasing firm size and decreasing debt-equity ratio) was a drop of about 1.5-2.0%, with a standard deviation of about 6%.
- The equivalent announcement price change for the typical debt issue was about 0.2%, with a standard deviation of about 3%.
- The equivalent announcement price change for a dividend announcement was a price gain of about 0.25%, with a standard deviation of about 4%. The larger the dividend announcement, the more positive the financial market reaction.

Again, these estimates include *all* costs and benefits of issuing (or paying dividends), including but not limited to underwriting and expert fees.

Where our event study knowledge is limited.

Unfortunately, the historical event studies also have considerable practical limitations when it comes to our assessing the costs and benefits of investment banking activity.

1. **Disentangling Value Effects from Noise** In our example, it was easy to compute that our financial market reaction was the sum of \$30 million in underwriting fees, plus other benefits and costs. In the real world, stock prices are very noisy. A \$100 billion company may drop by as much as a \$1 billion in value on a day on which it announces nothing. If the firm had happened to announce an issue, we would have erroneously concluded that our issue created total costs of \$1 billion. (Some of this noise can be reduced if we knew the exact minute of the day when the issue announcement hit the financial market, but this is usually not the case—if only because many announcements occur after trading hours.)

   These problems are borne out by what we see in the data: tremendous heterogeneity in financial market responses. One firm may experience a $+5\%$ response, while another firm may experience a -5% response to the same action. It is not clear whether we can disentangle the part of this heterogeneity caused by noise in stock returns from the valuation effect due to the issue.

2. **Comparability** A big assumption in learning from other companies' responses is that our company is just like these other companies. If you recall our Chapter 10 discussion of comparables, how confident are you in this assessment? Probably not very—every company is different, and every day is different. Are you more like the corporation that increased by 0.4% in value upon the announcement of a new equity issue two years ago, or more like the corporation that decreased by 0.8% in value five years ago?

   As indicated, there are important time and industry effects. For example, at certain times and in certain industries, investors may very much like or dislike issues, i.e., react positively or negatively. A good example is high-tech firms around the turn of the millennium. In 1999, many equity issues by almost any Internet firm were greeted very warmly; in 2001, not even the best and most solid Internet businesses could raise funds.

So, would the average 0.2% drop that we see in the data for debt issues apply to you if you issued debt? Given the plus or minus 3% standard heterogeneity, the context of the debt offering is probably more important than the average reaction. Put differently, with this large a standard deviation and this low a mean, about 48% of the firms would have experienced a positive response and 52% a negative response, and it is not clear where *your* company would fall. For debt issues, in particular, this means that, as financial manager, you should probably not care too much that the *average* debt offering dropped by 0.2%. Similarly, how would your stock react if you announced a dividend? The average response is positive, but plenty of firms experience *negative* stock market reactions. (The exception are very, very large dividend initiations, which are met by a clearly positive shareholder response.) On the other hand, the dividend announcements produced large value increases relative to the money being paid out. The one event where the financial markets have been teaching us that the net costs of issuing are very high are equity offerings. Yes, even though this dilution applies to many firms, it does not apply to every firm, and perhaps not to your firm. With empirical estimates of dilution ranging

between 10% and 20%, issuing costs can be quite substantial. (If we subtract the 7% total direct costs documented in Table 27.3, we still find an additional 3-13% of value destruction.) Net in net, the benefit of equity issuing for the average firm does not seem to outweigh its costs.

Pinpointing the event reduces noise and event contamination, but leans more heavily on immediate market reaction.

We noted that you can reduce the return noise by shortening the event window. If you do, you are leaning more on the efficient markets assumption—that stock markets immediately react—and on your own ability to pinpoint the time or times when the market fully learned of this information. This brings up yet another important drawback:

Event Anticipation Recall that the markets respond only to the unanticipated part of an event—and even though it is still useful to learn whether the effect was net-positive or net-negative, it would be better to learn exactly what the market assesses the value consequences to be.

Most studies look at the 2-3 day announcement return, because they rarely know exactly when the information of the new issue is released.

Use this information, but be careful!

Given these shortcomings, you can draw two conclusions:

1. The measured market reaction provides very useful information as far as the costs of issuing are concerned.
2. The measured market reaction is so noisy that you cannot get around computing your own independent value estimates of any contemplated investment banking transactions.

Solve Now!

Q 27.8 *Roughly, how expensive is selling $100 million worth of equity? $100 million worth of bonds? $100 million in an IPO?*

Q 27.9 *Why is it more expensive to place equity than debt?*

Q 27.10 *What factors seem important when firms select underwriters?*

Q 27.11 *How would you measure the whole cost of issuing, including deadweight costs that capital structure changes create, direct fees, and everything else? Do you see any implementation problems?*

Q 27.12 *What do you expect the price reaction to be on the day that the new seasoned equity offering shares are sold into the market? (This is not the announcement day.)*

file=ibanking.tex: RP

27·3. Mergers and Acquisitions

M&A fits and does not fit.

Though not exclusively a capital raising function, facilitating and advising on mergers and acquisitions (**M&A**) constitutes one of the major functions of the investment banker. It also overlaps with the world of underwriting, because we know that much issuing—and almost all seasoned equity issuing for Fortune-100 corporations—occurs only in the M&A context. Although our focus is the role of the investment banker, we shall start with a brief introduction to M&A.

Various types of M&A.

A merger occurs when two corporations agree to marry on an equal basis. An **acquisition** occurs when one company purchases another. Most mergers and acquisitions are friendly, i.e., the target management agrees to be acquired (often in exchange for extra consideration for managers personally, which is a perfectly legal form of a bribe). Acquisitions are further classified by whether the acquirer pays with cash (a "cash offer") or with the corporation's shares as currency (a "stock offer"). The typical method of execution is the **tender offer**, which simply invites shareholders to present their shares in exchange for cash or stock. Its execution can be contingent on enough shares being tendered. In a **leveraged buyout** (**LBO**), the acquirer is financing the buyout mostly with debt (often high-yield or junk bonds), and the LBO firm usually delists to become a privately owned company. In a **management buyout** (**MBO**), the management is the LBO buyer.

Why Acquire or Merge? Value Gains.

Takeovers naturally increase the scale of the firm (which managers tend to like), but whether they create value (or just more revenue) depends on the situation. Value can come from several sources, the most prominent of which are the following:

Synergies The merging of systems, skills, structures, departments, and staff can improve efficiency. Economies of scale can come from the elimination of duplicate departments or more efficient production and distribution. For example, the merging of ATM networks can attract more bank customers; the elimination of double bureaucracies can reduce overhead; and the reduction in competition can make raising prices easier.

Shutdown Efficiencies Sometimes, it is better to shrink or liquidate a firm, and the current management is unwilling or unable to execute such a drastic measure. A takeover by individuals with less of an institutional history often makes this easier.

Expropriation A transfer of management can allow breaking implicit promises that firms have made but not put into writing. After all, it is difficult to contract out every promise that employers make to employees and vice-versa. Consequently, all companies rely on at least some employee loyalty and all employees rely on at least some company loyalty.

An example of how breaking implicit promises allows a firm to become more profitable is a company that has attracted employees by paying less, but by implicitly promising long-term employment stability and generous pension and health benefits, as long as the firm does well. But as the company and its workers age, these liabilities can become quite significant, and a takeover could allow new management to save money by firing employees, now older and more expensive, or by replacing an overfunded pension fund with a less costly alternative.

Two more value gains come about through the higher leverage often assumed in acquisitions, especially in leveraged or management buyouts:

Tax Benefits Higher debt ratios reduce the amount of profits collected by the IRS.

Better Governance The need to service debt usually makes it easier to convince both managers and employees that they have to work harder and spend less on pet projects—or the firm will go bankrupt. Ironically, management buyouts are often contemplated by the most wasteful managers, who themselves have the incentives to make their own corporations look bad, so that they can buy them on the cheap and improve them.

All of these are important M&A drivers, though not equally in each and every takeover. In some takeovers, it may be primarily synergies; in another, it may be primarily better governance. It

is also often difficult to distinguish synergies from expropriation or better governance. If a long-employed but now unproductive worker (or entire department) is eliminated, is this gain expropriative or efficiency-value-enhancing?

Long-Term Success and Failure.

Some takeovers succeed; others fail. The principal negative when a large company takes over a smaller company is often worse focus and poorer management. There is good evidence that takeover activity in the 1960s and 1970s was driven by the desires of managers to increase firm size and form conglomerates, many of which were then run more poorly after the acquisition than before. In the 1980s, the situation reversed: many of these conglomerates were taken over and again dismembered. In addition, many small companies began buying bigger companies. The principal negatives when a small company takes over a larger company, as in an LBO, are the loss of the benefits of access to capital and the lack of diversification. That is, the buyer often has so much of his capital at stake in the firm that he may have to ration capital even for positive NPV projects, and forego the insurance of diversification.

The cost of acquisition.

Of course, in both cases, the acquirer can make the mistake of overpaying for the target. It turns out that the poster child example for the end of the LBO wave of the 1980s was Campeau's 1988 purchase of Federated Department Stores (e.g., Macy's and Bloomingdales). Campeau went bankrupt in 1992. It is true that Campeau had lost a lot of money in buying Federated, but it seems that even this LBO made money—just not for Campeau. Federated had traded for $4.25 billion in 1988. When it emerged after bankruptcy in 1992, it became clear that Campeau had managed to raise the value to $5.85 billion (adjusting for market movements over the same period)—a $1.5 billion value increase. Unfortunately for Campeau, he had paid $7.67 billion.

Who gets the gains?

This raises the important question of who benefits most from the value gains in M&A's—the acquirer or the target? If the acquirer purchases the target at the prevailing market price before his appearance, all benefits would accrue to the acquirer. If the acquirer purchases the target at a much higher price, many benefits would accrue to the target. Indeed, if the price is high enough, the acquirer may lose money and the target shareholders may gain money.

It is the target! The acquirer often loses.

The empirical evidence suggests that targets make out like bandits. A study by Ernst and Young suggests that the typical announcement price gain is about 25%. From 1996 to 2000, this premium even shot up to between 40% and 50%! It is no surprise, then, that most of the takeover value gains have not accrued to the acquirer. A recent study by Moeller, Schlingemann, and Stulz (2005) looked at publicly trading acquirers. From 1980 to 1998, they lost about 1.6 cents in value for every acquisition dollar. From 1998 to 2001, this shot up to 12 cents per acquisition dollar. (As usual, there was a lot of heterogeneity across M&A, but most of the 12 cent figure was driven by some *really* bad outliers!) For public acquisitions, the total acquisition value gain—the dollar benefit to target shareholders plus the dollar cost to acquiring shareholders (the acquirer is usually larger!)—seems to be just about zero.

OK, not all acquirers lose. But why do so many acquirers do the wrong thing for their shareholders?

Still, there is much heterogeneity in value changes for acquirers, just as there was much heterogeneity in value changes when firms issued securities. Some acquisitions are very good not only for the target, but also for the acquirer. You have to judge acquisitions on a one-by-one basis. Nevertheless, you might ask: Why are bad acquisitions not unusual? The reason is that they are often not only in the interest of the investment banks, who push them because they reap good fees from M&A financing and advice, but also in the interest of the acquiring managers. Running a bigger company usually means more prestige and compensation for target managers. The target management naturally often resists, even though they should be thrilled for their shareholders. The best example of this conflict of interest may have been the merger between Chase and Bank One. The negotiation took place between the Bank One CEO, Dimon, and Chase CEO Harrison, both of whom wanted to become CEO immediately. The original plan was for Dimon to succeed Harrison after two years. Dimon offered to sell Bank One at a zero premium if he just were to become the merged company's CEO immediately. Harrison rejected this offer, and instead paid a $7 billion premium from Chase shareholders to Bank One shareholders in order to retain his post for these two extra years. Chapter 28 will look at M&A activity from a corporate governance perspective.

file=ibanking.tex: RP

27·3.A. M&A Participants, Deal Characteristics, and Advisory Fees

In Table 27.4, there are hard statistics for almost all domestic acquisitions that involved a publicly traded corporations from 1980 to 2003, and classified by the quality of advisor (within the industry in which the takeover occurred). Still, the data are not complete. There were many mergers and acquisitions among firms that were not public, and even for the roughly 15,000 acquisitions having involved a public corporation, we have good data on fees for only 6,000.

Participating Firms

The typical acquirer was about three to four times as large as the typical target. Also, the mean firm size was much larger than the median firm size, suggesting some disproportionally large firms were in the sample. About one-half to two-thirds of M&A's occurred between firms in the same industry (classified by the "two-digit SIC [standard industry classification] code"). About half to two-thirds of M&A's involved public acquirers or targets.

Deal Characteristics

The average deal size was about $800 million, but the top-tier investment banks advised on disproportionally larger deals. About one in five takeovers occurred through a tender offer (the alternative being a negotiated merger with the target, not involving an offer to shareholders). Only a small fraction of all deals were classified as hostile, where the target management resisted. About one third of all deals were paid for in "all cash," and about one-third were paid for with "all stock" (in which the acquirer paid target shareholders with its own shares). Somewhere between about 10% and 15% of acquisitions were abandoned. If successful, it took the typical deal about four months to complete. Note that when the deal was hostile, a much larger fraction of targets seem to have engaged top-tier underwriters.

Fees

The median advising fees were just about half a percent of the amount of the transaction (usually the target size), on average. The mean fee was much larger, suggesting that there were a few large fee outliers. Remarkably, top-tier investment bankers charged about the same proportional fees as their lower-tier brethren—the reason why they earned more fees is simply that their deals were larger.

Solve Now!

Q 27.13 *Why do firms like to acquire other firms?*

Q 27.14 *Do acquirer or target shareholders gain more in a takeover?*

Q 27.15 *What are possible sources of value gains in takeovers?*

Q 27.16 *How large is the typical acquirer relative to target?*

Q 27.17 *What is the typical commission for M&A advice that investment bankers earn? How does it differ across the tier of investment bank retained, and across acquirer and target?*

Table 27.4. Descriptive Statistics of U.S. M&A Transactions from 1980 to 2003

	Acquirer Adviser Tier				Target Adviser Tier			
	Top	Mid	Bot	Total	Top	Mid	Bot	Total
Firm Value ($ million)	$7,642	$5,084	$1,020	$4,916	$2,106	$1,237	$265	$1,395
Median ($ million)	$1,765	$711	$213	$736	$440	$251	$65	$241
Acq and Tgt in same industry	63.6%	62.7%	65.9%	64.0%	49.0%	45.5%	60.5%	52.2%
Prop of public acquirers					64.5%	62.0%	72.0%	66.6%
Prop of public targets	58.5%	50.4%	43.3%	51.3%				
Deal (Tgt) value ($ million)	$1,357	$659	$127	$761	$1,821	$663	$126	$840
Median ($ million)	$275	$132	$37	$120	$403	$138	$48	$127
Prop of tender offers	19.7%	17.7%	9.7%	16.1%	24.9%	23.1%	15.3%	20.8%
Prop of hostile deals	3.6%	3.9%	0.8%	2.9%	10.4%	5.3%	2.0%	5.7%
Num of acquirer advisers	1.20	1.11	1.03	1.12	0.84	0.67	0.49	0.66
Num of target advisers	0.90	0.77	0.59	0.76	1.34	1.16	1.06	1.18
Prob of Completion	88.9%	89.2%	91.8%	90.0%	73.6%	79.5%	85.6%	79.8%
Days to Completion	116	100	102	106	141	132	148	141
Prop of all-cash deals	37.6%	38.3%	32.8%	36.3%	42.8%	48.6%	42.8%	44.5%
Prop of all-stock deals	28.8%	27.8%	39.1%	31.6%	23.4%	22.1%	38.9%	28.9%
Pct of cash	47.3%	48.7%	42.2%	46.2%	53.0%	58.2%	48.8%	53.0%
Pct of other	14.5%	14.3%	10.1%	13.1%	16.1%	14.0%	6.4%	11.8%
Pct of stock	38.1%	36.9%	47.7%	40.7%	30.9%	27.8%	44.8%	35.2%
Fees Paid to advisers, in millions of dollars								
Mean	$4.83	$2.65	$0.77	$2.89	$6.47	$2.79	$0.97	$3.06
Median	$2.38	$1.00	$0.25	$1.00	$3.70	$1.40	$0.44	$1.13
Deal Value, in millions of dollars								
Mean	$2,494	$1,092	$208	$1,345	$2,177	$749	$150	$899
Median	$416	$195	$55	$177	$525	$181	$58	$144
Fees paid as percentage of deal value								
Mean	0.91%	0.90%	0.93%	0.91%	0.87%	1.13%	1.15%	1.06%
Median	0.47%	0.58%	0.52%	0.52%	0.67%	0.80%	0.82%	0.76%
N	733	672	591	1,996	1,124	1,113	1,695	3,932

Rows report means (except where noted otherwise), and can have different numbers of observations. In the top rows, there are typically about 15,000 acquisitions; in the middle panel there are typically about 15,000 acquisitions. These are roughly equally split across categories. There is fee information for only about 6,000 acquisitions, and the distribution is somewhat biased, which is why *N* is reported in the last column, and why the deal values here do not match deal values above.
Source: Walter, Yawson, Young, undated (June 2005).

file=ibanking.tex: RP

27·4. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The market for securities underwriting has become part of a global market for investment banking services. The largest U.S. investment banks underwrite between $300 and $500 billion in securities in a good year.
- The direct costs of underwriting are a function of offering size. An IPO costs around 10% in total costs, a seasoned equity offering about 7%, a convertible bond offering about 4%, and a straight bond offering about 2%.
- There is large heterogeneity in the reaction of the financial markets to the announcement of a new debt or equity issue (or dividend payment).
- The typical firm drops about 2% when it announces a new equity issue. This corresponds to a 10-20% dilution cost for existing shareholders.
- Investment bankers also serve an important advisory function in M&A activity. In an active year, for many investment banks, the M&A they are advising on is often similar in magnitude to the amount they underwrite—$200 to $500 billion. Acquirers often overpay for targets, which means that most of any value gains accrue to target shareholders, not acquirer shareholders.
- Based on information from M&A deals among publicly traded corporations between 1980 and 2003, it appears that:
  - Average advisory fees are about 1% of the target (transaction) size.
  - Median advising fees are about 0.5–0.7% of the transaction size.
  - The 80-90% of proposed deals that ultimately carry through take about 4 months to complete.
  - Fewer than about 5% of all acquisitions are hostile (and most of these occurred in the 1980s).
  - The typical acquirer is about three or four times larger than the target.
  - Between one-half and two-thirds of acquisitions are within the same industry.
  - About one-third to one-half of acquisitions are paid for with all cash, and about 30% are paid for with all stock.

ANECDOTE: An Investment Banking Job?
In "The Making of an Investment Banker," Paul Oyer followed Stanford MBA graduates from the classes of 1960 through 1997. Investment bankers enjoy between $2 million and $6 million in discounted lifetime income (in real 1996 dollars). This is much higher pay than what they can earn if they enter other professions. The average I-banker earned 60% more than a management consultant at graudation, and 300% more than the average Stanford MBA 15 years after graduation.

More interestingly, Oyer finds that stock market conditions at graduation time play a big role not only in obtaining a first job in I-banking, but also in the probability that an individual will *ever* end up on Wall Street. (Many of the individuals graduating in bear years end up as entrepreneurs!)

His findings allow Oyer to conclude that random factors beyond capability are very important in determining individuals' life-time path and compensation; and that there is a very deep pool of potential I-bankers in any given Stanford MBA class.

Solutions and Exercises

1. The guarantee of securities placement sales success is usually fairly unimportant, because it is only given on the day of the offering.
2. Formal process management, selling, certification.
3. Investment bankers like transaction volume and fees, not value creation for their clients. The latter matters primarily to the extent that it helps the former. An investment banker who continually costs its clients money will eventually lose many. For investors, investment bankers are often interested merely in selling securities to, whether they are good or bad investments. For firms, investment bankers are often interested in restructuring, whether it makes sense or not. Furthermore, investment banks sometimes structure issues in a way that makes it hard for firms to value what they are giving away.
4. Most recommendations were not very good, as evidenced by the fact that most recommendations are "buy." This helps the investment banker attract corporate clients.
5. See Table 27.1.
6. They are about equal sized.
7. See Table 27.2. By market value, the U.S. and British banks are far more important.
8. About $4 million (SEO), $1.5 million (bond), and $7 million (IPO) in terms of underwriting costs. Add about $1 million for other costs in an IPO, and $300,000 to $500,000 for bond and seasoned equity offerings.
9. There is more capital at risk, which in turn means that the underwriter has to put more of its reputation on the line and work harder to place the securities.
10. First, inertia. Second, their "outgrowing" their previous underwriter. Third, industry expertise. Fourth, personal relations.
11. Through the degree of dilution at the announcement price reaction! Unfortunately, it is not known by managers before hand, and so depends on comparability assumptions, and stock returns are noisy.
12. It should be about zero, because the share sale is an event that was announced earlier and thus should be almost perfectly anticipated. If the market did not use this information efficiently, and the share price were to go down on the day of the offering, you could short the equity shares the day before the offering, and repurchase them the day after the offering for a profit.
13. Because it can be in the interest of the firm (creating value), or because it can be in the interest of managers (and advising bankers).
14. Target shareholders.
15. Synergies, shutdown efficiencies, and expropriation. In addition, if financed by debt, it could be tax benefits and better governance.
16. About three to four times.
17. The mean is about 1% (0.9% for acquirer, 1.1% for target). The median is about 0.5% (for the acquirer) and 0.8% (for the target). The differences across tier and between target and acquirer seem fairly small.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

CHAPTER 28

CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

More Agency Conflict

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (15:31h)

last major edit: May 2005

For the most part, we have assumed that managers act on behalf of owners and maximize firm value. We have mentioned agency conflict before, as in Chapter 7. In this chapter, we describe the conflict between corporate owners and top management in more detail. In theory, we know that debt should be paid first; equity should receive the residual; and managers should be compensated according to their marginal value to the company. But we did not ask the simplest of all questions: Why do managers return *any* money to investors? After all, a specific investor contributes little to the corporation *after* the corporation has her money.

This question is the domain of **corporate governance**, which concerns itself with the conflict of interest between the managers of the corporation and its capital providers.

It is also important to understand what corporate governance is not—it is not good management. Instead, governance is the mechanism to control management *if* it is bad. Governance mechanisms may never have to spring into action if management is good.

28·1. Less Fact, More Fiction: In Theory

Firms typically start out tightly controlled but eventually become diffusely held, which brings many problems.

Most companies start out with few **conflict of interest** problems—if only because the entrepreneur owns the entire firm, provides most capital, and makes all decisions. As the company grows, the entrepreneur usually needs to raise more outside capital, either to expand the firm or just to start enjoying the new riches. To be able to get investors to part with their cash, the entrepreneur must create a corporate charter and install safeguards that satisfy potential investors, legal requirements, and common practice. Eventually, the founder's personal role begins to fade, more and more capital is raised from the outside, and management becomes "professional" in the sense that it no longer acts solely based on the whim of the entrepreneur. These professional managers also bring with them unique qualifications and specialization benefits. Legally, these managers now become "agents" acting on behalf of the investors (primarily shareholders), the "principals." Practically, as the distinction between capital providers and decision makers grows over time, so do conflict of interest ("agency") problems—and not just between them, but also among them. Although even two or three co-owners can squabble, when there are thousands of shareholders, as in a publicly traded company, the coordination problems take on an entirely new dimension. Shareholders usually agree that they prefer more money to less money, but often on little else. In any case, they are not capable of constantly voting and communicating their desires to their agent managers, much less checking over what their managers are doing day-to-day—and managers know this, too. Thus, investors in large, publicly traded corporations are typically represented not only by managers, but also by a set of institutions (discussed in this chapter), so that they themselves can fade into a more passive role.

To get money back, investors need control rights. To get money in the first place, firms need to give control rights.

Solemn promises of both corporate value maximization and eventual profit participation are not enough for shareholders and creditors. Investors must be able to coerce their managers to honor their promises. This is primarily (but not exclusively) achieved by **control rights**, which give investors power over managers, and especially when managers do not act appropriately. Giving up such control rights is in the interest of owners, because the terms under which they can obtain capital in the first place are better when the control rights are better. This argument is really the same that we used in Chapters 22-23 to justify why owners want to set up an optimal debt/equity ratio.

The equilibrium outcome is second-best, permitting unavoidable managerial self-enrichment.

In real life, control rights are not perfect—it would be impractical or impossible to protect capital providers *perfectly*. The cost of preventing all managerial opportunism would be prohibitive. It would not maximize firm value if the firm spent $10 in audits to prevent $1 in fraud. So corporations and capital providers must live with a **second-best** solution, in which there is a constant tension between investor protection and managerial self-enrichment.

Control rights differ for debt and equity.

Debt and equity are distinct. You already understand the differences in **cash flow rights** between them—debt has first dibs on the promised payments, and the residual cash flows go to equity. But their control rights are distinctly different, too:

Equity Shareholders are legally in charge of decisions, but their primary power is their ability to vote and appoint representatives, usually once a year during the annual meetings. Their elected **corporate board** has the power to hire and fire managers.

Debt The bond contract not only specifies how much the firm obligates itself to repay in the future, but also the immediate legal remedy if the lender fails to do so or fails to meet any number of pre-specified covenants. Usually, this means that the lender receives possession of the firm (collateral)—no ifs, ands, or buts.

When corporate governance usually works and when it does not work.

A firm that has no corporate board may not find shareholders willing to purchase equity shares; a firm that does not give the right to force bankruptcy upon default may not find creditors willing to lend money. But control rights are not all black-and-white. If the firm does not offer perfect protection to its capital providers, it may still be able to obtain capital, although at worse terms that require the surrender of a higher percentage of the firm or the payment of a higher interest rate. This is one important reason why entrepreneurs and firms are interested in good corporate governance in that it enables them to raise capital at better terms. But it

file=governance.tex: RP

also explains when corporate governance is likely to break down—when the entrepreneur (or shareholder-owners) are no longer solidly in charge, and self-interested managers have already taken control. After all, if managers do not care for shareholders, they may not care if they have to give away a larger fraction of the firm to get control of more money from new shareholders. And the problem gets even worse when the firm generates a lot of internal cash and no longer needs to raise much new external capital.

28·2. Managerial Temptations

The human mind for scheming is infinite.

Although the legal fiction is that managers act solely on behalf of the firm and that shareholders own the firm after creditors are paid off, the fact is that all parties act primarily in their own interests. But why is this a problem? How might a manager do harm? Unfortunately, there is a whole battery of tactics managers can employ to enrich themselves at the expense of shareholders. This section outlines a slew of possible managerial self-enrichment schemes. In the next section, we will discuss mechanisms that seek to restrain such managerial behavior.

28·2.A. Illegal Temptations

Theft

Simple Theft is rare, but it does occur.

The most obvious method is simple theft. For example, in March 2003, the *Mercury News* reported that 58-year-old C. Gregory Earls, head of an investment company called USV Partners, simply funneled investor money into a trust fund for his children. What prevents corporate managers from taking corporate diamonds out of the corporate safe? For the most part, it is the law, which criminalizes simple theft, which is therefore fairly rare. (Mr. Earls competes for the prize of "dumbest criminal"—it is hard to leave a clearer paper trail than he did.)

Fraud

Fraud is fairly common...

The next step up is fraud, because it is more complex, and therefore more difficult to detect and prove. For example, in 2003, *Hop-on Wireless* claimed to sell disposable cell phones. It turns out that the prototypes were Nokia phones with plastic cases around them. The CEO raised funding, promising not to take a salary—but promptly used the funds to pay off his credit card debts (see theft above) and gave a company he owned a $500,000 contract (see transfer payments below).

...but earnings management is legal.

Usually, fraud involves manipulation of financials. Unlike Hop-on's extreme case, many accounting choices are not so black-and-white—the line between illegal accounting manipulation and legal earnings management is both wide and gray. There are many judgment calls that corporate executives have to make. There is empirical evidence that *legal* corporate earnings management is particularly aggressive just before the corporation issues more equity, for obvious reasons, and that the most aggressive earnings managers later perform worse. So, appropriate conservatism may not be in the interest of owners, but it could be wise. Nevertheless, too much conservatism is also not in the interest of shareholders. Painting *too* bleak a picture may make the business collapse. What prevents rosy picture painting? GAAP and SEC scrutiny limit the discretion of managers to legally manipulate the financials. And again, there are criminal penalties against fraud.

Insider Trading

Insider trading is very common.

One more step up—and a surprisingly common form of agency conflict—is insider trading. For example, the most well publicized recent insider trading scandal involved Sam Waksal, CEO of ImClone (IMCL). Waksal received advance bad news about clinical tests of an ImClone cancer drug, and proceeded to tip off his family and friends (including Martha Stewart) that they should immediately sell their shares. His next seven years are all booked up now.

Some insider trading is legal and should be allowed—but which?

Like earnings management, insider trading can be either legal or illegal—and again there is a wide gray line. Managers almost always have more information than shareholders. They love to trade on it before the public learns it, and naturally, this does not make other shareholders better off. It would be unwise to prohibit all insider trading, because insiders do need to be able to sell and buy shares just like the rest of us, if only to diversify some of their wealth. But it is illegal for them to trade on information that is not yet public, which is easy to prove if this entails an impending news release. (Because this is so easy to detect and prove, it is curious how someone as smart as Waksal could have made such a big mistake.) More often, the information that executives have is "soft," and the empirical evidence shows that they indeed do well in their private, legal insider trading. They generally tend to buy before the firm gets better and sell before the firm get worse.

Transfers

Complex theft through transfers is more common.

The next step up is yet more difficult to detect and prove—the pilfering of corporate resources through transfers. The CEO of a public company can own private companies that do business with the public company on favorable terms. On occasion, the terms become *so* favorable that they warrant criminal indictment. For example, on May 1, 2003, the U.S. Department of Justice alleged that "in 1997, Fastow [CFO of Enron] conspired with others, including his wife, to create an [entity owned by the Fastows] in order to reap for themselves the profits generated by certain Enron wind farms, while simultaneously enabling Enron to fraudulently receive government financial benefits to which it was not entitled." Naturally, the smarter the manager, the more complex will be the arrangements, so that the true costs and true benefits to the public company are more difficult to assess. Criminal prosecution of such schemes is fairly rare, especially if the corporate executive has followed legal procedures to the letter (e.g., by asking for board approval).

SIDE NOTE: Transfers can also occur to friends of the management or to large shareholders, who then owe more loyalty to the CEO. The ambiguous role of large shareholders in corporate governance is described below.

Bribes

Third parties bribe managers all the time.

Yet another way for executives to get rich at the expense of shareholders, and again one step more difficult to detect is bribes. Managers of publicly traded companies need not even create their own temptations: they practically come to them. For example, during the 1998-2000 technology bubble, receiving IPO share allocations was practically like getting free money. (Normal first-day rates of return were around 50%. Ordinary brokerage clients would rarely receive any allocations.) Citigroup was eager to do investment-banking business with WorldCom, a publicly traded company. It therefore allocated $17 million in 21 offerings into CEO Bernie Ebbers' *personal* account. In one IPO (*Rhythms Net Connections*) alone, Ebbers was allegedly handed $16 million. De facto, Ebbers was "courted" to direct the business of the publicly traded company, WorldCom, to Citigroup.

Preferential allocations to and treatment of executives' personal accounts were and continue to be common practice. Ebbers was an extreme case, but not the only one. Lesser methods of bribing executives are so commonplace in business that they are considered almost ordinary. For example, there is evidence that competitive bids for high-level professional services (such as the hiring of a search firm or the placement of a bond or equity issue) usually result in better contract terms than negotiated contracts for the firm—and yet most companies negotiate rather than bid out contracts. Although negotiation can be better for other reasons, more commonly the reason lies elsewhere, and here is why. Executives of smaller firms naturally want to be on

file=governance.tex: RP

the candidacy list to become executives of bigger companies. It is therefore in their interests to form good relationships with investment banks and executive search firms. An executive who uses competitive bids, which minimize the profits of the professional service firms, and who constantly switches from one low bidder to the next, is unlikely to build much loyalty and subsequent quid-pro-quo support.

28·2.B. Legal Temptations

Most managers are not criminals, though.

If you now have the impression that fraud, theft, insider trading, and bribes are the most important agency conflicts between shareholders and managers, you would be wrong. The most important conflicts arise in the day-to-day execution of business, and are more judgment calls than outright unethical behavior—few CEOs actively seek out behavior that is obviously unethical.

Empire Building

Most managers want to grow the firm at all cost.

Most managers see it as their task to grow the business. There are a whole slew of reasons why they want to do so. Most managers are less loyal to an abstract, ever-changing shareholder, as they are to their very tangible companies. Running bigger companies is also in the self-interest of managers: Executives of bigger companies are more prominent and receive more compensation. Some decades ago, this was even explicit: managerial compensation schemes were directly tied to sales, not earnings! These days, it is more implicit, and comes about through the choice of "comparable managers" when executive pay schemes are set. Unfortunately, corporate growth is not necessarily shareholder value maximizing. For example, in the 1980s, oil companies were flush with both cash and assets (oil reserves). The industry had overcapacity. Most oil companies did not return excess cash to shareholders, but chose to spend $20/barrel exploring for more oil reserves, even though oil could be purchased in the marketplace for $6/barrel. Managers naturally are paid for operating a company—difficult tasks such as oil exploration, growing the firm, acquiring other companies. It is not in the interests of managers to return cash to shareholders, especially when it entails drastic shrinking (asset sales) or when it means being taken over by another company. The reward for being a good manager who maximizes shareholder wealth would often be unemployment!

This growth is enormously costly to shareholders.

Many academics believe that the highest agency costs in American companies today (in terms of expected costs to shareholders) are not illegal actions, but failure to direct corporate assets towards the activities that maximize shareholder wealth. The agency cost is particularly high for firms that have lots of cash and cash flow (e.g., from prior profitable activities) and few good new opportunities.

Corporate Perks

Perks are goodies that managers have the firm buy for themselves.

A closely related, though smaller, problem is that managers disproportionately enjoy spending money on perks. A public company may buy a corporate airplane that costs $100 million and increases productivity by the equivalent of $10 million—just because it gives managers $1 million worth of pleasure. Plush corporate headquarters and fleets of corporate aircraft are usually sure signs of publicly traded companies, especially in slow-growth industries.

Executive Pay

Executive Pay is often excessive.

Naturally, executives are most conflicted when it comes to higher executive pay. Executive compensation comes in many forms: salary, bonus, stock grants, option grants, retirement benefits, perks, and severance packages. For example, in 2002, *Business Week* reported that Archie Dunham of Conoco (COP) earned $30 million in salary and bonus alone; Alfred Lerner of MBNA (the credit card lender, KRB) earned $200 million in salary, bonus, and long-term compensation grants; Jeff Barbakow of Tenet Healthcare (THC) earned $300 million (Tenet is currently under indictment); and Larry Ellison of Oracle (ORCL) earned $800 million from 2000-2002, mostly from stock and options. Since then, executive compensation has grown every year. In December 2005, the *Wall Street Journal* further reported that the income taxes on corporate perks (e.g., cars, jets, loan forgiveness) that many CEOs receive are also often paid by the corporations and reported only as relatively obscure "tax gross-ups." (52% of companies report some gross-ups.) Other recent evidence suggests that pension packages that are usually not reported are larger than the reported executive compensation.

Questions about executive pay.

Why do shareholders in the United States pay so much money? How much worse a manager would the next-best executive have been, and would he have done the job for half the compensation? Why do second-in-commands usually earn only a very small fraction of the CEO's salary, even just one year before they succeed the CEO? And why do European CEOs of even the most successful corporations earn only about 10% as much as their U.S. comparables?

- It could be that U.S. managerial talent is scarcer than European managerial talent. Tougher competition for good management in the United States requires paying higher compensation.
- It could be that a large salary is necessary to attract and retain top CEOs in the United States, and to motivate lower-ranked executives to strive for this prize—but less so in Europe.
- It could be that American CEOs are operating in a governance structure that has allowed them to receive higher salaries than their European counterparts. (This could be because they could capture the corporate board better, or because social norms are different.)
- It could be simple error that is not corrected by the market place. It could be that the Europeans have it wrong and are simply paying too little. Or it could be that Americans have it wrong and are simply paying too much.

As to the first argument, it is hard to believe that executive talent is generally scarcer in the United States than it is in Europe. It is also hard to believe that the marginal contribution (the difference between the best executive and the next-best executive) is typically much larger in the United States than in Europe. As to the second argument, it is possible that European social norms are different from American norms, but there is little evidence one way or another. The latter two arguments seem more plausible. The cultural, ethical, and legal constraints in Europe are different from those in the United States. In most European countries, the chief executive is not the chairman of the board, and social norms prevent too high a managerial salary. (Of course, the same social norms and legal regulations make it more difficult for managers to take drastic actions on behalf of shareholders, e.g., when it comes to downsizing and employee layoffs.)

file=governance.tex: RP

Entrenchment

Take projects where your expertise will be needed!

Managers, like all employees, like to be indispensable. If they decide to take projects for which they are presumably indispensable, their own personal value to the firm and therefore their compensation will likely go up. If they decide to build redundancy—that is, hire someone who can step in for them, thereby making themselves dispensable—their own value to the firm will likely go down. In fact, they might even be replaced by the board. The ability to **hold up** the company, once managers have become indispensable (or at least, very difficult to replace), probably plays an important role in the awarding of high executive compensation contracts. In this case, no managerial board capture is necessary for high executive compensation to occur. The board will not have a choice and will award high compensation "voluntarily."

Bureaucracy often helps promote entrenchment. It can discourage shareholder wealth maximization, but help managers to become indispensable (knowledgeable of the internal process), and even undertake bizarre projects, internally justified by "proper procedure." In contrast, fighting bureaucratization on behalf of shareholders is a painful and prolonged process, with few rewards for the involved executives unless the firm is in dire straits.

Friendship and Loyalty

Nepotism abounds. Few boards have non-friends on them.

Most managers prefer to have loyal friends working around them, instead of gadflies and potential replacements. This natural characteristic naturally promotes nepotism (in the broad sense).

Perverse Incentives

Sometimes, managers even prefer low values.

Though rare, managers can even have the incentive to drive down firm value: they can then negotiate better incentive compensation contracts or even acquire the firm in a **leveraged buyout**, either of which is often followed by seemingly miraculous turnarounds. The most prominent example is that of Ross Johnson, CEO of RJR Nabisco, whose actions are chronicled in the bestselling book *Barbarians at the Gate*.

Ethical Conflicts

A manager may feel special obligations toward many factors that are not in the interest of shareholders: the town in which the factories are located, the workers employed, charitable causes, and so on. Under these circumstances, managers may explicitly or implicitly donate the shareholders' money toward causes that they deem to be more worthwhile than paying dividends.

I am descriptive here and am not stating what is necessarily the most appropriate. The web chapter on ethics deals with this question in more detail.

SIDE NOTE: Some economists' models assume that executives prefer working less (called "shirking"). However, lack of work ethics among executives is rarely a problem in the real world—instead, it is self-enrichment that is the problem.

28·2.C. The Incentive of the Entrepreneur to Control Temptations

We now show that entrepreneurs (i.e., coordinated owners) benefit from good corporate governance.

Are all these problems real? Yes, they are. So, in order to get you, as a private outside investor, to give your money to a firm, it must create mechanisms that will curtail its misbehavior. If these mechanisms are not in place, the firm will be unable to raise more capital at reasonable costs. (Yet, as we shall see later, if manager-agents are already firmly in charge of shareholder-principals, they may not care about "reasonable" costs of capital, either.)

An Example of the Entrepreneur's Incentives

The argument that it is in the interest of the owners to get the governance right is really the same as the argument that it is in the interest of the owners to get the debt-equity ratio right. Here is a simple illustration of how good corporate governance can benefit the original owner:

- Start with a penniless entrepreneur who has an invention that requires $25 million investment but that will be worth $100 million in today's dollars. If the entrepreneur cannot raise the money, the project will be captured by the competition. Without capital, the entrepreneur's wealth would be $0. There are large gains to finding investors. This is why companies go public to begin with: gains from diversification and capital outweigh the costs of agency conflicts.
- If the owner does not need to raise any funds and could avoid all professional management, his net worth is $75 million. Similarly, if the owner can somehow commit to avoid all agency problems, investors can give him $25 million for 25% of the company, leaving him again with $75 million.
- Investors may rationally believe that agency problems will appear as soon as money is raised. The particular agency problem in our example is that the entrepreneur cannot prevent the grabbing of $30 million by management-in-charge after the capital has been raised—including by himself. That is, he cannot commit the corporation to control the agency problem. Furthermore, to hide the managerial scheming, this "theft" will require another $10 million of waste.

  If the entrepreneur must now raise external capital, will investors be satisfied with 25% of the company for a $25 million investment? Probably not: any future manager—*including the entrepreneur himself*—will want to steal the money. Investors expect this, and therefore value the company only at $100 − $30 − $10 = $60 million. To raise $25 million requires the entrepreneur to part with $25/$60 = 42% of the company. The entrepreneur's net worth, if he can remain in charge, will be the 58%·$60 = $35 million that he will own, plus the $30 million that he can steal. The $65 million is $10 million less than what he could have gotten if he could have committed to zero future managerial agency problems—still better than the $0 if he were not to raise any external funding.
- The entrepreneur's situation becomes outright dire if the project duration exceeds his lifetime, and he must hand it over to professional managers. In this case, he will only earn $35 million—the $30 million in theft will go to future management. (The entrepreneur may somehow be able to award the management to the team that agrees to share the $30 million with him—but this will lead to a whole new set of agency conflicts.)

In sum, our entrepreneur is best off if he can just prevent all future managerial theft (his own and future managers') by instituting good corporate governance. Our entrepreneur is worse off if he cannot prevent future theft by himself. Our entrepreneur is even worse off if he cannot prevent future theft by other managers. And our entrepreneur is worst off if he does not take the project. It is also not difficult to construct examples in which future theft completely prevents any ability to raise funds for otherwise productive projects. The main insight from this example is that owner-entrepreneurs have an incentive to control agency problems in order to be able to raise capital at good terms.

file=governance.tex: RP

How Strong are the Entrepreneur's Control Incentives?

The control of agency problems is often neither easy nor worthwhile for the original entrepreneurs.

We know that the original owner-entrepreneur—unlike subsequently hired executives—can capture the gains from agency controls. An important question is to what extent an entrepreneur would write contracts upfront (*ex-ante*) that control all these agency issues. There are at least two limiting factors:

1. It is impossible to write contracts for all future contingencies, especially insofar as managerial schemes are concerned. The human mind can be very creative: What a piece of work is man! how noble in reason! how infinite in faculty. Worse, many agency control clauses could even be counterproductive if they rob executives of flexibility that could be used to increase firm value.

2. The entrepreneur's incentives to write the appropriate contracts may be surprisingly modest. Few companies are designed for greatness in the far future. When Thomas A. Edison designed the corporate charter of *General Electric* in 1880, he probably did not do so with an eye towards General Electric managers in the 21st century. Indeed, most companies that go public will never face large agency problems—most will simply end up bankrupt. Only 1 out of 100 may become large enough to indulge significant agency conflict—say, costing 1% of firm value. One percent of a $100 billion company is $1 billion (say, $100 million a year as a 10% perpetuity), but in *ex-ante terms*, it is a cost of $1/100 \cdot 1\% \approx 0.01\%$ of the entrepreneur's value.

   Moreover, it is unlikely that the entrepreneur could even capture this much. The question is to what extent investors would understand better corporate governance controls and be willing to pay for them. How many investors would have paid Edison more money for GE in the year 1900 if GE had put better incentives into place for the year 2000? In the next section, we will discuss some mechanisms, such as takeovers, by which shareholders can rein in poor management in already publicly traded companies. Suffice it to say here that these mechanisms are expensive and therefore no panacea, either.

This leads us to a mixed conclusion: The entrepreneur's incentive to control immediate managerial agency conflicts is probably fairly strong. However, the entrepreneur's incentive to set up an effective charter for the long run—if even possible—is modest. Thus, it is not surprising that we see many older Fortune 500 companies in which the entrepreneurs' design no longer plays much of a role in shareholders' control over management. Thus, we need to look towards other mechanisms that can substitute for the failing role of upfront corporate design as the corporation ages.

Solve Now!

Q 28.1 *What are the main control rights of debt and equity*

Q 28.2 *Describe the main illegal and legal temptations that managers face in their duty to maximize shareholder wealth.*

Q 28.3 *When are the incentives to control agency conflict strongest? Can you give a numerical example?*

Q 28.4 *What limits are there to writing a corporate charter that eliminates future agency conflict?*

28·3. Equity Protection

The primary control right of equity is its vote, but there is also the need to raise funds and some external mechanisms.

After the firm has gone public and shareholdings have become diffuse, what can control management? We will discuss a number of possible mechanisms. We begin by reexamining the need to raise financing after the IPO. Recall that the sale of the firm was the primary mechanism to motivate the entrepreneur to control conflict of interest when the firm starts. We then discuss mechanisms that are based on the most important formal control right of public equity, which is its right to vote. Ultimately stemming from the right to vote are three further control mechanisms:

1. Shareholders can vote in the corporate board, which can replace the management or liquidate the firm.
2. Unfortunately, in a widely held company, gathering votes to control management and corporate change is not cheap. The right to vote is therefore of much use only during unusual situations, such as a proxy contest or a hostile takeover. We therefore look at this "external market for corporate control" in more detail.
3. Large-block shareholders can more easily influence management, because managers know that poor performance can lead them to withdraw their support and throw it to a potential buyer. However, large shareholders can also do more harm than good.

Finally, we look at two external control mechanisms:

1. The legal environment regulates what managers and board member can and must do.
2. Ethical considerations and adverse publicity can constrain the norms that govern the behavior of managers.

28·3.A. Subsequent Equity Offerings

Among publicly traded, older, cash cow companies, even the need to raise capital need not help.

We first continue with the example from the previous section. We want to ask whether the need to raise capital provides managers with the incentives to control agency conflicts, just as it provides the incentives for the entrepreneur to control agency conflicts. The answer is often no. Unlike the owners, the managers of an already publicly traded corporation typically own little of the firm. Therefore, their incentives to curtail agency issues are weak or even perverse—they are the immediate beneficiaries of agency problems. Once they are in charge, their desire for more power and control is likely to quickly overcome their desire to control agency issues. This is especially pertinent in widely held, large, old, cash-rich firms, in which the executives/boards have enjoyed long tenure. In this case, the need to raise capital is not necessarily an inducement to institute good corporate governance. In fact, quite the opposite can happen.

- Assume that professional managers are now firmly in charge of our \$60 million firm from above. They now happen to find another project that costs \$50 million, which produces cash flows of \$50 million in today's dollars for an NPV of \$0, but which allows for an additional \$20 million of managerial theft, leaving owners with only \$30 million. (Such projects are easy to find.)

  We know that the existing company is worth \$60 million. If the new project is taken, new shareholders will own a claim on \$30 million in value from the new project and \$60 million in value from the old project. To raise \$50 million in capital for a \$90 million company requires issuing shares worth 55% of the company. Old shareowners will now own only 45% of the company for 45%·\$90 = \$40 million in the new firm, down from \$60 million. In effect, the \$20 million agency cost is now paid to buy corporate growth at the expense of old shareholders—growth that the managers will enjoy.

file=governance.tex: RP

- In fact, fearing similar expropriation in the future, new shareholders may demand even more than 55% of the company—and managers have the incentive to give it to them in order to execute this new project.

Thus, the need to raise capital is not a guarantee that the management of a publicly traded corporation will want to control agency problems. On the contrary, raising capital can become yet another mechanism that helps managers extract shareholder wealth for themselves. Old capital in effect allows new capital to be raised, and thereby allows managers to expand the firm for a long time. Even if managerial looting has reduced the value of $10 million of old equity into just $1 million now, managers might still want to raise another $1 million in capital for their personal consumption by promising 51% of the new firm, leaving old shareholders with only $490,000.

28·3.B. The Corporate Board

The board is supposed to represent shareholders and control managers.

We now move on to the main right of public shareholders: during the annual meetings, shareholders get to vote on the **corporate board**. It is the board's legal responsibility to oversee management and to ensure that managers are acting in the interests of shareholders. The board is the legal principal of the corporation.

The agenda and information available are important sources of real power.

The **Chairman of the Board** not only directs management to produce the necessary information, but also controls the board's agenda. Ultimately, the chairman does have to rely on management, though, in asking for the right information to present for discussion. The power to set the agenda and control the information available should not be underestimated. After all, with only a couple of days per year on the job, and with their own full-time jobs to attend to, board members cannot possibly know the business in great detail. Thousands of pages of readings as preparation for the board meeting—possibly with, possibly without key information—are often just as useful to board members as zero pages. And board members know that if they do not stick to the specific agenda, the risk is that the discussion will degenerate into long-winded, unfocused conversations. Not surprisingly, large boards are usually less effective.

Most corporations have no Chairman to oversee the CEO.

In many U.S. corporations, the power of the chairman relative to that of the CEO does not even matter *because the CEO is also the chairman of the board*. For example, in 2003, out of the thirty Dow-Jones Index companies, only four (General Motors, Intel, Microsoft, and Wal-Mart) had both a CEO and a chairman. This arrangement obviously makes it highly unlikely that the chairman of the board will control and, if necessary, discipline the management.

The board is often controlled by the CEO. There usually is no meaningful shareholder vote for directors.

How independent are other directors? New members of the board are usually either proposed by the chairman of the board or nominated by a committee of other board members. The board is then put forth *as a slate* for an up-or-down vote at the annual shareholder meeting. Shareholders cannot vote for or against particular candidates. (In the extreme, a shareholder with 49% of the shares could find herself with zero board representation.) Most corporate board elections are about as democratic and thrilling as elections in North Korea. The most common outcome is that between one-third and two-thirds of the board are also employees of the company, and thus under the direct day-to-day control of the CEO.

Many firms have a majority of corporate employees on the board. (Such) boards tend not to fire poorly performing managers.

Michael Weisbach studied 495 corporate boards from 1974 to 1983 and classified directors as insiders if they were full employees of the company. This would necessarily put them under the direct control of the CEO. Only about one-half of the 495 NYSE corporate boards even had a majority of outside directors! Only 128 had boards with clear majorities of outside directors, though many of these had their own dealings with the company and were thus also conflicted. Fortunately, the presence of inside rather than outside directors does not seem to matter much, either. In the ten years from 1974 to 1983, the probability that a manager would depart increased only from around 5% to 6% when a company lost 33% (!) of its stock market value (market adjusted)—and this retirement increase may have been because the manager was already close to retirement (and had maximized his own take). Firms with more than 60% outside directors only had an additional 1% resignation frequency; and for firms that lost "only" 10% to 25% of their values, having a majority of outside directors did not even increase the resignation frequency at all.

As corporate control mechanisms, except in extreme situations, corporate boards are ineffective.

In sum, it is usually the case that it is not the board that controls the CEO, but the CEO who controls the board. Almost any CEO, who was originally successful and who is eager to gain full control, can stack the board with dependents and friends within a couple of years. Consequently, in most corporations, the boards are effective control mechanisms only in three cases: first, when there is a large influential shareholder to whom some board members owe loyalty; second, when the CEO/Chairman is fairly new and has not yet taken full control of the board (or has not shown the appropriate interest in doing so, a rare but occasional condition); and third, when the CEO's misbehavior is so egregious that board members begin to fear negative publicity and personal legal liability. We discuss the ability of the media to embarrass managers—and set politicians, lawmakers, and enforcement into motion—below.

Corporate boards can serve other mechanisms.

When it comes to proactive control of managerial misbehavior, most corporate boards in the United States today are more theatrical stages than effective corporate control mechanisms. This is not to say that corporate boards do not serve other useful functions. For example, they can advise executives, they can signal a commitment to diversity, they can help build relationships with suppliers and customers, and they can help to find a new CEO if the current CEO suddenly "evaporates." The discrepancy between the supposed role and the actual role for many boards is so large that many reform ideas focus on improving the independence of corporate boards. If legal reform were to reduce the cozy relationship between board and management, management could indeed be better controlled—but it could come with cost. It might allow large shareholders to extort more value for themselves at the expense of small shareholders, it might reduce other beneficial functions of the board (better relations with suppliers, etc.), and it could even destroy the company, if the relationship between management and board were to degenerate into war.

28·3.C. The Role of Votes

Takeovers, Proxy Contests, and Shareholder Resolutions

Hostile takeovers seek to acquire and then vote shares. Proxy contests just seek votes to change management and the board.

The right to vote becomes relevant during a **hostile takeover** (formally called an **unsolicited bid**), in which an acquirer makes a **tender offer** to purchase shares in order to obtain either the whole firm or a voting majority. In a **proxy contest**, a large shareholder actively solicits other shareholders to vote against management's board and in favor of an alternative board. Often, the two go together, in that a hostile acquirer also launches a proxy contest to eliminate the board and charter provisions that would prevent him from purchasing all shares.

ANECDOTE: Executive Succession in Action

Through board control, CEOs usually can often determine their successors (and more than one successor has found huge skeletons in the closet). Recall that on many boards, the Chairman/CEO has considerable influence over which board members should retire and who the next board's members should be. Of course, these board members in turn nominate the executive compensation committee, who in turn decide on the Chairman/CEO's compensation.

A study of compensation committee membership found that when a director sits on the executive compensation committees (which determine the pay of the managers) of multiple firms, these tend to have similar executive severance pay packages. After all, it is easier to argue for a higher compensation package for oneself, when one can convey authoritatively that the CEO of a similar company required and received a higher pay package. Conversely, would you think it easy to argue to your own board that you should be paid more if you just managed to severely reduce the compensation of another CEO?

For example, the chair of IBM's compensation committee is Charles Knight, whose own exit package from Emersen Electric had a provision similar to one in Jack Welch's package from General Electric. Not surprisingly, IBM CEO Lou Gerstner's separation package was similar to Jack Welch's. (Both Knight's package and Gerstner's package were among the most generous around.) Ivan Seidenberg, CEO of Verizon, was singled out by the report for enjoying one of the most egregious severance packages. Seidenberg sits on Honeywell's compensation committee—*and Honeywell was also singled out.* Source: corporatelibrary.com.

file=governance.tex: RP

How to get a shareholder proposal up for vote.

A more modest form of the proxy contest is the **shareholder proposal**, which only rarely seeks to eliminate management outright. Shareholder proposals have been particularly successful in removing anti-takeover defenses, including in some cases the staggering of the board (see below). However, they are often not binding, and can therefore be ignored by the board. So they are only useful in setting the stage for later actions against poorly performing management. Any shareholder can put forth a shareholder proposal or proxy contest for vote by all shareholders. The SEC judges whether shareholder proxy suggestions are appropriate for shareholder vote. (The rules by which the SEC accepts or rejects shareholder proposals are explained in www.sec.gov/interps/legal/cfslb14.htm.) In addition, many shareholder proposals are brought by special interest groups, such as churches or labor unions, and are not necessarily in the interest of shareholders, either.

Gains must be very large to make voting action worthwhile. Proxy contests are costly and (only) modestly successful.

Obviously, engineering a hostile takeover is neither cheap nor easy. But even proxy contests and shareholder resolutions are costly and only occasionally successful mechanisms. Clearly, to wage either, the value gains from dislodging management must be large enough. "Modest" governance problems, such as an executive salary of $100 million in a $10 billion company (1% of value), are just not enough to make the expense worthwhile. Therefore, proxy contests are rare. For example, *Institutional Shareholder Services* (issproxy.com) reports that there were 17 proxy contests in the first 8 months of 2003, of which only 4 resulted in dissident victories. The average dissident's cost per proxy contest was about $1 million. (The highest cost was over $5 million.) Nevertheless, the small success ratio is misleading, because even the threat of a shareholder proxy contest can lead the executives to seek a compromise to rectify some of the problems. And, compared to hostile takeovers, proxy contests are outright cheap.

Defensive Strategies

Management can resist. Staggered boards virtually eliminate all hostile takeovers.

Management can resist hostile takeover and proxy contest attempts through many actions, collectively sometimes called **shark repellants**, such as the following:

Greenmail Management uses shareholders' money to "buy off" the shares of a potential acquirer at a premium.

Golden Parachutes Management lets itself be bought off by the acquirer.

Acquisitions A bigger company is more difficult to take over—the "blowfish" strategy.

Poison Pills Other shareholders become entitled to purchase more shares at a discount. The potential raider would then have to repurchase those shares at a higher price.

Fair Value Provisions An acquirer is forced to pay every shareholder the same price, i.e., the highest price at which shares are acquired.

Supermajority Rules An acquirer needs to obtain more than just a majority of votes to replace the board.

Litigation Management can delay a potential takeover in the courts, especially if the potential acquirer is in the same industry, in which anti-trust issues can come into play.

Scorched Earth Management can threaten to sell off corporate assets that are of particular interest to the acquirer.

New Share Issuance Management can issue more shares to employees and themselves.

Staggered Boards Each year, only a fraction (typically a third) of the directors are up for reelection. Therefore, no outsider can take control of a company during one annual meeting—even if you own 100% of the shares before the annual meetings, you can only replace one-third of the board. The remaining two-thirds will remain in office, which means that the company will remain under the control of the existing board for at least one more year, during which the existing management can do a lot of harm.

In 2003, a paper by Gompers, Ishii, and Metrick constructed an overall measure of how well a firm is governed, based on 24 governance mechanisms, prominently including the above mechanisms to prevent a takeover. A followup paper by Bebchuk and Cohen drilled deeper and found that staggered boards are the most effective defense. There have been no successful hostile takeovers of firms with effectively staggered boards.

Resistance can be good—especially if it is futile.

Not all takeover activity is driven by poor managerial performance. Other reasons for takeovers are industry consolidation and acquisition of monopoly power, desire by acquirers to increase their own empires, and a desire to take advantage of corporate tax shelters. That is, takeovers can also occur independently of the target's managerial performance, and they may increase or decrease total value and the value of the acquirer. Nevertheless, a takeover almost inevitably raises the shareholder value of the target. Still, not all managerial resistance by the target is value-reducing. For example, resistance can and often has forced acquirers to pay more for the firm. Even when it prevents the takeover, the incumbent management often shapes up, e.g., by making a competing tender repurchase offer for its own shares, or by forcing management to pay out much of its free cash to shareholders.

Some history: Leveraged Buyouts.

A particular form of a takeover is the **leveraged buyout** (**LBO**). Especially in the 1980s, there was a window when small private holding companies were able to borrow significant amounts to take over much larger publicly-traded companies in **leveraged buyouts** (**LBOs**). The most prominent LBO was the takeover of RJR Nabisco by **Kohlberg, Kravis, Roberts** (**KKR**). Because the majority of financing was debt, KKR owned only a small slice of very high-powered equity and even modest post-LBO underperformance could result in a total investment loss for KKR. This gave them enormous incentives to get everything right. In the typical LBO, they would either fire existing management or completely restructure the existing management compensation contracts in order to dramatically improve managerial incentives. Most LBOs created a lot of value, through better control of agency problems plus tax benefits, and much of it went to the existing shareholders in the price they received for tendering their shares. However, by the 1990s, public market valuations had generally increased, management generally began to pay more attention to shareholders, and it became harder and harder to find companies that could be purchased cheaply and then improved. But perhaps most importantly, companies learned how to institute takeover defenses that would be too expensive for a successful acquirer to overcome. Thus, at least for the time being, corporate governance through external takeovers, and especially through leveraged buyouts, has faded into the background.

Empirical Evidence

Takeover Activity in the United States.

Securities Data Corp (SDC) reports that from 1979 to 2002, there were 40,983 domestic takeovers (incl. LBOs), with $7.6 trillion in total value. Takeovers here include both public and private firms, as well as leveraged buyouts. Most of this acquisition activity was solicited by or occurred with the blessing of target management. Such takeovers are called "friendly." It is only the "hostile," or at least "neutral," takeovers that are likely to be a real threat to poorly performing management.

Takeover activity in the US in the 1980s.

Figure 28.1 gives an idea of the relative importance of hostile and neutral takeover activity over time. In the 1980s, there were 8,360 takeovers with $1.2 trillion in total target value. Only about 1.4% of all takeovers were "hostile"; another 1.2% were "neutral." But hostile acquirers managed to take over some pretty big fish relative to non-hostile acquirers: they accounted for 10% of all takeover value in the 1980s (neutral takeovers for less than 0.6%). How does this compare to the number and value of all publicly traded firms in the United States? In 1982, there were about 5,500 firms with just over $1 trillion in market value. The 50 or so hostile

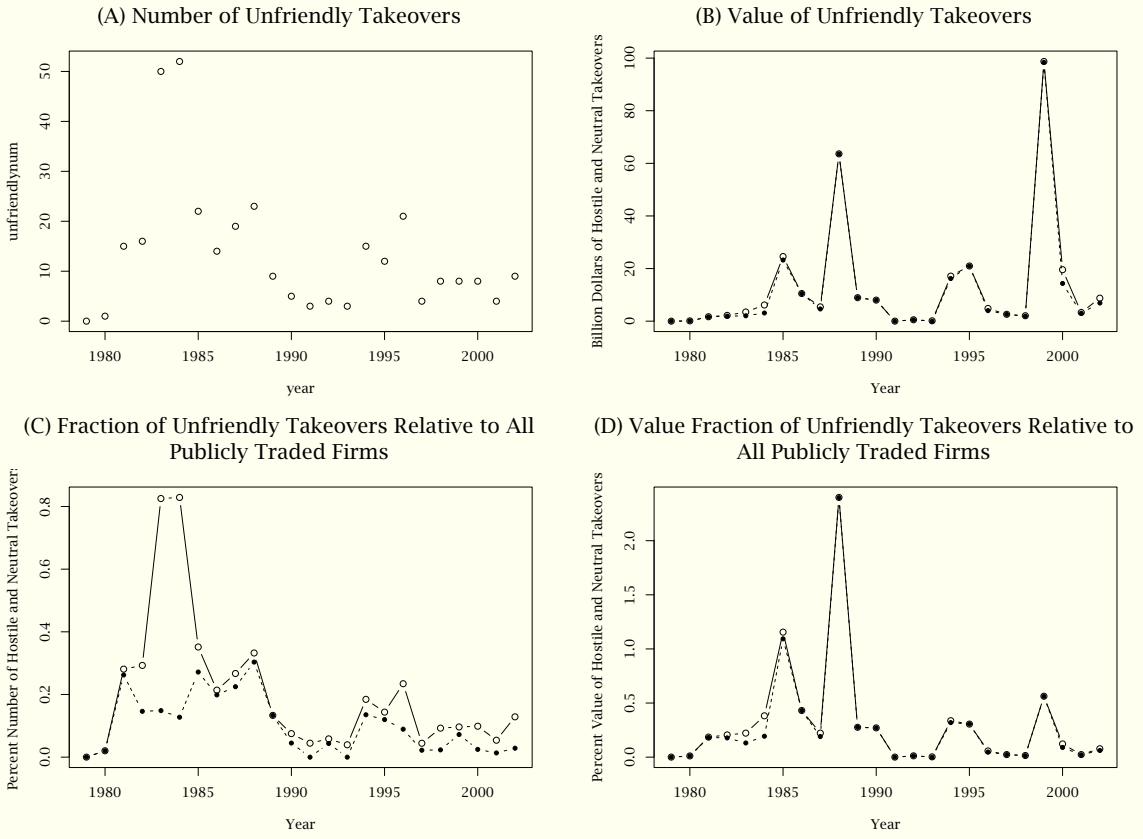
ANECDOTE: RJR, Ego, and Overpayment
The aforementioned bestseller *Barbarians at the Gate*, also made into a movie, describes the epic takeover battle for *RJR Nabisco* between *Kohlberg Kravis Roberts* (K.K.R.) and RJR management (supported by Shearson Lehman [now Lehman Brothers]). In October 1988, RJR's CEO Ross Johnson and his predecessors had mismanaged the company long enough to allow him to offer RJR shareholders the premium price of $17.6 billion in a leveraged management buyout. This required the resignation of Johnson from the board contemplating the offer, which in turn opened the door to a $20.6 billion counteroffer by KKR. Eventually, KKR purchased RJR for $25 billion, and Johnson got a $53 million golden parachute. This takeover was also probably KKR's biggest miscalculation in that it overpaid for RJR. The prime reasons were personal egos and animosities, which fueled an irrational bidding war—all to the benefit of RJR shareholders.

Table 28.1. Hostile Takeovers with More Than $5 billion in Target Value, United States to 2003

Announced	Target	Acquirer	Value (billion-US$)
1999/11/04	Warner-Lambert	Pfizer	89.2
1988/10/24	RJR Nabisco	Kohlberg Kravis Roberts	30.6
1988/10/17	Kraft	Philip Morris	13.4
1995/10/18	First Interstate	Wells Fargo Capital	10.9
1994/08/02	American Cyanamid	American Home Products	9.6
2000/11/13	Willamette	Weyerhaeuser	7.9
1990/12/02	NCR	AT&T	7.8
2002/02/22	TRW	Northrop Grumman	6.7
2000/02/22	Mirage Resorts	MGM Grand	6.5
1999/08/11	Reynolds Metals	Alcoa	6.1
1985/10/16	Beatrice Co	Kohlberg Kravis Roberts	6.1
1985/09/24	General Foods	Philip Morris	5.7
1988/01/13	Farmer's Group	BAT PLC	5.2

Source: Securities Data Corp. Not inflation adjusted.

Figure 28.1. Takeover Activity in the United States



Source: Securities Data Corp. In the upper diagrams, the total number of both types are circles, the hostile type are fat dots. In the lower diagrams, these are reported as a percent of the total number and the total market value of all publicly traded companies on the NYSE, AMEX, and Nasdaq.

and neutral takeovers in 1982 and 1983 accounted for 0.8% of all publicly traded firms—in one year...and it was entirely a Kohlberg, Kravis, Roberts effect! This was also the peak of hostile takeover activity.

Takeover Activity in the US in the 1990s.

In the 1990s, the stock market boomed. General corporate takeover activity also heated up, with 25,493 takeovers and $4.4 trillion in total target value. But *hostile* takeover activity declined, accounting for only 0.2% of all takeovers (down from 1.4% in the 1980s), and neutral takeovers for only 0.1% (down from 1.2%). In terms of target value, hostile takeovers accounted only for 3.5% (down from 10%), neutral takeovers only for 1.2%. Again, how does this compare to the number and value of all publicly traded firms in the United States? If we look at the year 2000, for example, there were about 8,100 firms with about $16 trillion in market value. There were 8 hostile takeovers with about $20 billion in market value, which accounted for just about 0.1% of all publicly traded firms.

Does takeover activity matter?

So, does the threat of a hostile takeover discipline managers? It certainly did in the 1980s, and still probably matters a little today. The sheer visibility and novelty of these takeovers were big enough to prevent the managers of many firms from engaging in the worst abuses. However, as Table 28.1 shows, KKR and its colleagues seemed pretty satiated after RJR Nabisco—the hostile takeover threat generally receded after 1990. Any given year now typically sees only about a handful of hostile takeovers. Their dwindling number indicates that they are no longer the sword of Damocles that is hanging over—and thereby controlling—corporate management.

28·3.D. Large Shareholders

The right to vote can matter if it is actively exercised by just a few large shareholders.

The Benevolent Role

Only large shareholders have an incentive to control agency problems.

It is not worth the time of small, diverse shareholders to attempt to vote and/or to influence management. The costs of meaningful action and coordination are too high, and the benefits to each individual shareholder are too low. (This is an example of the *tragedy of the commons*, in which each individual acts in his or her own personal interest, hoping that other individuals will band together to correct the problems that they all jointly face. But it is in the interest of each individual to "free-ride," so this hope is in vain.) Consequently, any active role is most likely to originate from large shareholders with both enough votes to scare management and enough value-at-stake to take an active interest. But to become a large shareholder is in itself costly, because it foregoes the benefit of risk diversification. Typically, the larger the firm, the smaller the stakes of the largest outside shareholders and therefore the smaller the largest

ANECDOTE: Bribing Shareholders in Proxy Fights

Karla Scherer led the *only* successful proxy contest of a major U.S. publicly held company in 1988. As a result, the company founded by her father in 1933 was sold in June 1989 at a price more than double the value of each shareholder's investment the year before, when the proxy contest began.

The most prominent recent proxy contest occurred in 2002, when Walter Hewlett, a Hewlett-Packard (HP) director and son of cofounder William Hewlett (holding 18% of HP), opposed HP's acquisition of Compaq. He lost the proxy vote after Deutsche Bank (DB) switched 17 million of the 25 million shares it controlled—shares of DB's clients held in the DB asset management division—in favor of the $22 billion merger. This happened after DB had become the co-arranger of a new multi-billion-dollar line of credit. In August 2003, the government fined DB $750,000 for failing to disclose another apparent conflict of interest to DB's asset management client. In a memo to her CEO, HP head Fiorina suggested HP do something "extraordinary" for DB and another firm. HP paid DB's investment banking arm $1 million for "market intelligence," with another $1 million contingent upon success. DB's investment banking arm then helped to convince DB's asset management group of DB's interest—and rightly so. During a conference call with DB money managers, Fiorina then reminded DB that their votes would be "of great importance to our ongoing relationship."

Some other institutional shareholders held shares in the target, Compaq, and therefore also voted in favor. (CalPERS, a prominent pension fund and advocate of better corporate governance, voted with Hewlett.) Net, 838 million shares voted in favor, 793 million shares against the deal. Hewlett alleged that HP spent roughly $150 million of shareholders' money on the proxy fight against him (18% of which he had to effectively pay for).

It is little consolation to the HP shareholderst that the acquisition indeed turned out to be a failure, and that Carla Fiorina was fired by the board in 2005.

shareholder's influence. Indeed, the evidence suggests that the shareholders tend to be more dispersed among firms with more severe agency problems.

But even the power of large shareholders is limited.

Large shareholder influence is limited.

1. Even if large shareholders have some incentives to control management, it is usually not profitable. A shareholder who owns 5% of a firm suffers 100% of the cost of any effort to influence the management, yet reaps only 5% of the benefit.
2. Votes are not secret: managers know exactly how their shareholders vote and can seek retribution later on.
3. If the large shareholder is a mutual fund, it cannot actively seek to influence corporate behavior. If it does, it could run into insider trading laws when it wanted to divest itself of its stake upon learning negative information. Therefore, many large institutional shareholders abstain from actively seeking corporate influence.

However, many passive institutional shareholders still can and often do tend to vote their shares *against* management if a third party were to seek an active influence, e.g., in a proxy contest. The presence of large blocks of shares, even passive shares, which could potentially overwhelm the voting power held by management and their allies, is therefore a low-level, but constant restraint on management.

The Malevolent Role

Large shareholders may not seek better governance, but better treatment for themselves!

It is not in the interest of the executives to pick a fight with their largest shareholders. It could be publicly embarrassing, especially in light of management's fiduciary responsibility towards their shareholders (see below). Instead, most corporate executives seek a cordial arrangement with their large shareholders. Special treatment of large shareholders is usually more effective than confrontation. Such "VIP" goodies can include special access to information, the sharing of corporate perks (such as golf outings), special deals (such as sweetheart deals for the firm—or even the manager of the fund controlling the shares), or greenmail targeted share repurchases (in which the company management uses shareholder money to repurchase pesky institutions' shares at a higher price).

Insiders can also be large shareholders. Oi wei!

Company founders in particular often have a special relation with the company. They often consider the company to be their own and hold enough stock to control it. There is strong empirical evidence suggesting that founders are often detrimental to shareholders *on average*: when the founder of a company suddenly dies, the stock price of the company usually goes up, not down! As with founders, managers can often become large shareholders, too, and this is a double-sided sword. On the one hand, they can incentivize managers to be more eager maximizers of share value: they can benefit more. On the other hand, more shares mean more votes, which in turn means that they are more likely to be able to win any votes. In perspective, the best control of agency problems by a founding large shareholder may be

ANECDOTE: CalPERS Top-10 List
The most visible corporate governance activist in the United States is the California Public Employee Retirement System. CalPERS publishes an annual list of worst corporate governance companies (in its portfolio). Among its 2003 winners were Gemstar (GMSTE), JDS Uniphase (JDSU), Manugistics (MANU), Midway Games (MWY), Parametric Technology (PMTC), and Xerox (XRX). The detailed corporate governance shortcomings make interesting reading.

But even CalPERS rarely takes on Fortune-100 companies (which are most prone to suffer from agency conflicts). The reason may not only be political, but the fact that CalPERS' ownership share in Fortune-100 companies is too low to make much of a difference.

ANECDOTE: Graft in Action: Panavision
In August 2002, *Business Week* reported the end of a two-year drama. In 2001, Ronald Perelman had a 53% stake in *M&F Worldwide Group* (MFW), a publicly traded tobacco ingredient company. Perelman initiated an M&F purchase of Perelman's *Panavision* shares at Perelman's cost of $17/share. At the time, *Panavision* (PVIS.OB), a movie camera maker, traded for $4/share. After more than a year in court with a minority shareholder (a hedge fund that had to pay for its court costs), Perelman graciously agreed to reverse the transaction.

managerial retirement and death—the new manager is unlikely to obtain the same high levels of capture immediately after succession.

In other countries, large shareholders may be the most important governance issue.

More generally, such **tunneling**—transfers from the corporation to a large or controlling stakeholder—is typically not the most important governance issue in the United States. In many other countries, however, small shareholders fear not so much that managers expropriate all shareholders, but that large shareholders expropriate small shareholders. For example, in Europe and Asia, a small number of families control large corporate pyramids, in which firms often trade with one another. If a family owns 100% of one company and 10% of another company, it may nevertheless control both managements, and the sale of a $100 million factory from the latter to the former in exchange for a sweetheart price of $20 million can enrich the former by $80 million, and the family by $72 million.

The Evidence

Some large shareholders help, other large shareholders hurt.

The degree of power of large shareholders to restrain management and the degree to which the presence of a large shareholder aids small shareholders remain a matter of opinion. In some firms, large shareholders serve a useful role in constraining management, and thereby aid small shareholders. In other firms, large shareholders help themselves to corporate assets, and thereby hurt small shareholders. There is some evidence that firms with large public pension fund investors tend to engage in fewer value-reducing takeovers; that firms with external 5% owners tend to perform better than firms without such; and that managers in poorly performing companies are more often replaced when there are large shareholders. But large shareholders are such a diverse group that it is not possible to generalize further.

28·3.E. The Legal Environment

U.S. law is ever-evolving.

The United States' best aspect of corporate governance is probably its legal environment. Investors are protected by a set of laws, regulations, and court rulings, plus appropriate legal enforcement. Much law has come about through court rulings and judicial precedence. This process has an intrinsic flexibility, which continues to fill gaps created by new problems. Such an evolutionary process is more difficult to accomplish by statutory law. In civil law countries, like France or Belgium, where regulations have to be legislated from the top, investor protections tend to be worse.

There are many regulations that try to ensure minimum decent corporate governance.

To become a successful publicly traded company, a U.S. company usually has to satisfy laws and regulations imposed by the state, the federal government, the Securities Exchange Commission (SEC), the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD), and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). It also has to try to avoid class action lawsuits, which have bankrupted more than one company. These needs together set minimum standards on corporate behavior—especially on appropriate information disclosure and self-dealing—that are not easy to skirt.

Shareholder's best protection is fiduciary responsibility.

Shareholders' single most important and broadest legal protection is management's legal fiduciary responsibility to act on shareholders' behalves. Black's *Law Dictionary* defines a fiduciary relationship as one "in which one person is under a duty to act for the benefit of the others." The seminal opinion on fiduciary duty was written by the New York Court of Appeals in 1984:

ANECDOTE: Board Courage at Citigroup
Although biased, the PBS series Frontline episode *The Wall Street Fix* (www.pbs.org) illuminates many of the conflicts of interest between ordinary shareholders and larger stakeholders. It details how Jack Grubman, star analyst for the investment bank of Salomon Smith Barney, hyped Worldcom in 2000 to its brokerage's small retail investors. At the same time, the CEO of Worldcom, Bernie Ebbers, held a personal $1 billion mortgage from Travelers. Both SSB and Travelers are owned by Citigroup (C). Ebbers' wealth (and therefore his $1 billion mortgage) was closely tied to the Worldcom stock value. In 2005, Ebbers was convicted of corporate fraud.

In a display of less than extraordinary courage, after the indictment of Citigroup for a variety of questionable activities, the Citigroup board voted its full support and confidence in its CEO, Sandy Weill. *Business Week* was not so generous: in January 2003, it ranked Sandy Weil as the worst manager in America.

> Because the power to manage the affairs of a corporation is vested in the directors and majority shareholders, they are cast in the fiduciary role of "guardians of the corporate welfare." In this position of trust, they have an obligation to all shareholders to adhere to fiduciary standards of conduct and to exercise their responsibilities in good faith when undertaking any corporate action. Actions that may accord with statutory requirements are still subject to the limitation that such conduct may not be for the aggrandizement or undue advantage of the fiduciary to the exclusion or detriment of the stockholders.
>
> The fiduciary must treat all shareholders, majority and minority, fairly. Moreover, all corporate responsibilities must be discharged in good faith and with "conscientious fairness, morality and honesty in purpose." Also imposed are the obligations of candor and of good and prudent management of the corporation. When a breach of fiduciary duty occurs, that action will be considered unlawful and the aggrieved shareholder may be entitled to equitable relief.

In other words, management's fiduciary responsibility primarily limits excessive self-dealing, especially transactions between the management of a public company and the public company itself. It does not extend to ordinary business decisions. In fact, the **business judgment rule** protects managers against lawsuits if they make poor choices in the execution of most other company affairs. (Otherwise, our litigious climate would paralyze them!)

Actual enforcement is important, too.

The importance of *enforcement* of laws (rather than just what is on the books) is not to be overlooked. The United States has strong civil (financial) and criminal penalties and enforcement for the range of actions detailed in Section 28·2.A. (Although the wheels of American justice are not perfect and only grind slowly, usually taking years to resolve even clearcut cases, they do grind.)

Firms can choose some then-legally-binding mechanisms.

Companies have some discretion to choose the laws and regulations under which they are operating. For example, firms can choose a particular auditor, stock exchange (with exchange rules), a particular investment banker, a particular set of warranties, a particular collateral. Large multinational firms can even choose which country to incorporate in (or reincorporate in). Of course, a firm that reincorporates itself in Russia, hires a no-name auditor, lists on the Moscow Stock Exchange, self-underwrites securities, and gives no promises or collateral is likely not to be able to raise much equity capital.

ANECDOTE: Disclosure Rights Outside the United States
If you believe the U.S. corporate governance situation is bad, wait until you learn the situation in other countries.

In Germany, until recently, insider trading was legal. Disclosure standards are modest. Minority shareholders have few rights against self-dealing by majority shareholders, which are themselves often other corporations. Executives have legal obligations not only to shareholders, but also to employees. But the most amazing fact is that many German firms are owned by complex webs of other firms, which in turn are owned by yet other sets of firms. Ultimately, most large publicly traded firms are owned by the banks. The banks in turn are owned by...themselves! Deutsche Bank holds voting rights for 47.2% of its shares; Dresdner for 59.25%, Commerzbank for 30.29%. (Source: Charkham (1994).) This makes effective control by the ultimate owners very difficult. Many German banks even own themselves!

But Germany looks like investor heaven relative to Russia. In Russia, shares can be declared void by the board at any time; majority share owners cannot force an issue onto the corporate agenda; and even physical threats against pesky shareholders are not unheard of. (And do not look to courts and police for protection: judicial and political corruption in Russia is rampant.)

28·3.F. Ethics, Publicity, and Reputation

Managers are self-interested, but most are not criminals or unethical people.

Ethics is an important factor that constrains many managers (and is often sadly underestimated by economists). Most CEOs want to do well for themselves, but they want to do so only "within the bounds of the normal, accepted, ethical range of actions." Staying within the bounds of the ordinary also reduces the concern for negative publicity and legal liability for violation of their fiduciary duties.

Ethical standards are relative and changing.

Yet ethical standards are themselves defined by CEOs as a group—and these have slipped over time. In some dimensions, the race seems to have been to the bottom. For example, one hundred years ago, the financier J.P. Morgan argued that no CEO should make more than 20 times what the average company employee earns. The average today is almost 200 times. Consequently, being paid 200 times an average worker's pay does not violate the ethical boundary of a CEO today. Similar arguments apply to almost every other issue in corporate governance: if a practice is commonplace among her peers, it is unlikely to violate an executive's sense of appropriateness.

Lack of transparency hints that pay packages are constrained more by board capture than driven by incentive issues.

The desire to avoid negative publicity is also an important constraint on executive compensation. Negative publicity seems also to be responsible as to why managerial compensation has come to consist of many complex components. The complexity renders pay packages fairly opaque to the press. Researchers are often similarly bewildered when they try to determine whether executive pay is primarily linked to the need to incentivize managers to seek out corporate performance or primarily due to managerial board capture. Both seem to matter, but there is some evidence that obfuscation is particularly important. First, the less-visible retirement packages are often higher even than reported compensation packages. Second, boards often change the terms of executive options that would otherwise expire worthless. Both of these facts indicate that it is not the incentives that are important.

Reputation sometimes constrains managers.

Corporations can also reduce their financing credibility problem through building **reputations**. A manager who has once harmed investors is much less likely to be able to raise capital in the future. Conversely, a company that has a long history of treating investors well (e.g., paying dividends and repurchasing shares) often has an easier time raising capital than a company that has just started up. Reputation may also play a role when a manager is CEO of only a small company, and has his sights set on being selected manager of a larger company in the future. To receive a higher call (with more opportunities to become richer), the manager must constrain his self-interest for a while. One problem with reputation as an agency control mechanism is that managers close to retirement no longer care as much about their reputations as they care about their severance packages. Most CEOs retire, rather than graduate to bigger companies.

28·3.G. Conclusion

Various mechanisms try to constrain agency problems.

Capitalism will not collapse because of managerial theft and misbehavior, even if corporate governance in many public corporations is largely broken—perhaps because theft can only be *so* large. Agency control works in some companies and fails in others. Like the agency problems themselves, the solutions to agency problems are complex. In broad strokes, today's mechanisms involve the combination of corporate obligations (promises by the corporation), legal obligations, and informal and ethical obligations. Ultimately, in today's system, if executives have no scruples, even the best legal and corporate systems are unlikely to succeed in curbing all misbehavior. But even though capitalism as a system will not collapse over poor corporate governance, individual economies may. Arguably, a country that has better corporate governance is likely to outcompete other countries and prosper. It is a matter of great importance to economic competitiveness to seek to improve it.

Solve Now!

Q 28.5 *Does the desire to raise equity capital control managerial agency conflicts?*

Q 28.6 *What are some of the reasons why corporate boards may have limited ability to control the CEO? What other roles may boards serve?*

Q 28.7 *What are some of the reasons why proxy and takeover contests may have limited ability to control the CEO? How is a shareholder proposal different?*

Q 28.8 *What are some of the reasons why large shareholders may have limited ability to control the CEO?*

Q 28.9 *What are some of the reasons why the rule of law may have limited ability to control the CEO?*

Q 28.10 *What are some of the reasons why ethical standards may have limited ability to control the CEO?*

ANECDOTE: The fox guarding the hen house: The N.Y.S.E.
It is well-known that the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE) is not a publicly traded company, but is owned by its members, primarily by investment banks like Goldman Sachs. The members appoint the NYSE board. But it is less well-known that the NYSE is an odd creature in another respect. It is both a stock exchange and a regulatory agency. The SEC relies heavily on the NYSE to ensure good corporate governance among its members and its traded firms, which represent almost all large U.S. corporations (with the exception of the technology sector).

As guardian of good corporate governance, arrangements at the NYSE are particularly relevant—but remarkably conflicted. The NYSE board decides on its chairman's compensation package. The chairman regulates its members. The NYSE members appoint the board. The board appoints the chairman and sets the chairman's pay package. The chairman regulates the members who appoint the board. The board pays the chairman. The chain is circular.

In August 2003, the media found out that Richard Grasso, the NYSE Chairman, held a retirement package worth $140 million—about four times the annual profits of the NYSE. The media later found an additional $48 million in pay, which Grasso then publicly and graciously declined. (But he never did so in writing.) After more press digging, it was revealed that Grasso also helped pick the executive compensation committee. Many large institutional shareholders then joined the chorus, publicly demanding Grasso's resignation. On September 17, 2003, Grasso finally bowed to the board's discontent—but he did not resign outright. Meeting with his lawyers, he learned that by forcing the board to terminate him (rather than by resigning), he would receive an additional $57.7 million, in addition to the $140 million deferred compensation—which he did.

In 2004, Grasso sued the NYSE for $50 million more, because his contract of 2003 contained a clause that forbade exchange executives from making any statement against Grasso if he left the NYSE. In March 2005, Grasso further sued the former chairman of the exchange's compensation committee for having overseen the approval of Grasso's pay package. As of 2005, Grasso still had one suit against the exchange for $50 million, but he has received his $193 million in compensation and pension benefits. (In other litigation, the New York Attorney General seeks to recover $100 million from Grasso as "excessive compensation.")

Q 28.11 *What can an executive do to resist a takeover? What has been the most effective anti-takeover device?*

Q 28.12 *What is an LBO? How common are LBOs?*

Q 28.13 *What fraction of takeovers are hostile?*

Q 28.14 *Is the presence of large shareholders always good from an agency perspective?*

28·4. Debt Protection

Equity needs constant, expensive supervision.

Equity payoffs depend very sensitively on good management control and actions and accurate accounting (verification). Even if they are firmly in charge, equityholders have the unenviable task of determining whether poor performance is the fault of management, the market, or both.

Debt has a much easier task: collect promised amounts, or seize assets.

Unlike equity, creditors do not need to play a large role in the day-to-day operations of the company in order to receive most of their due. Ascertaining the value of collateral is cheaper than ascertaining the value of equity (with its future growth options). And if cash is not paid when promised—regardless of whether it is because the market environment is bad, because management has performed poorly, or because management just hides assets—the company falls into automatic default (usually bankruptcy and/or corporate liquidation), and creditors can take control of the company and/or the collateral. Therefore, creditors need not spend much time and money investigating managers.

Some typical covenants.

We have already discussed in Chapter 27 that creditors usually demand and receive covenants, by which the firm must live. Covenants may include collateral, priority, the naming of an auditor, the specification of minimal financial ratios (e.g., dividend payout ratio), and many more terms. Default occurs when covenants are not met. Importantly, coordinated creditor action upon delinquency is not required, because such mechanisms are designed at inception. (If the creditor is a single large bank, this is not necessary.) In the case of a public bond, the covenants designate a trustee to oversee performance of covenants. The trustee has the obligation to declare a bond in default when the covenants are not met. (The process is mechanical.) Therefore, in contrast to equity holders, bond holders do not commonly suffer from free-rider problems.

Bankruptcy is really bad for management.

Management will try to avoid default like the plague. The reason is not just that equity owners, on whose behalves managers supposedly act, lose access to the firm's future projects. The more important reason is that corporate management is replaced in virtually all bankrupt companies. This gives management and shareholder-owners an enormous incentive to avoid default/bankruptcy.

Manipulation of bondholder rights is possible, but it is not easy.

Although there are some escape mechanisms that permit management to manipulate the covenants, these are rare and slow. The first such mechanism is a "forced exchange offer," in which managers set up a prisoner's dilemma that makes it in the interest of every individual bondholder to exchange their current bonds for less worthy bonds but of higher seniority—even though it is not in the bondholders' collective interest. The second mechanism is a covenant amendment, which must be approved by the bond trustee and voted on by bondholders. The third mechanism is asset sales or divisional splits, which require major corporate surgery. For example, when Marriott Corporation announced that it would split into two companies (hotel operator *Marriott International*, MRT, and a real-estate investment trust *Host Mariott*, HMT) in 1992, its share price rose by 10%. Marriott's bondholders sued, because the old Marriott debt now would be owed only by one descendent, *Host Marriott*. Moody's Special Report covering 1970–1992 stated on page 4 that:

> Perhaps the most notorious fallen angel of the year was Marriott Corp., which alone accounted for $2.6 billion of downgraded debt. In October, Marriott announced a

controversial spin-off that would relieve the profitable hotel operations business of the heavily indebted real estate and concessions business. Such a move would have the effect of creating one very healthy and essentially debt-free company, Marriott International Inc., and another substantially weaker debt-laded firm, Host Marriott Corp. While issuer-bondholder talks are ongoing in the Marriott case, investors worry that such lopsided spin-offs may become more popular in the future.

Nevertheless, these are the exceptions rather than the rule. It is generally much harder for management to escape bondholder discipline than it is for them to escape stockholder discipline. In turn, this can even help shareholders—even though liquidation almost always hurts shareholders, the threat of future liquidation upon poor managerial performance can motivate managers and thereby help dispersed public shareholders up-front.

The role of large creditors.

We have earlier talked about how large shareholders cannot only discipline managers but also extort special privileges. A similar issue can arise with creditors. That is, although we have discussed primarily the case in which creditors cannot trust corporations, the opposite can also be the case. (And it can just as much prevent the firm from obtaining viable debt financing.) A creditor may be able to pull its line of credit and thereby threaten management or expropriate the firm's equity (receiving control of the firm). Banks attempt to build a reputation for not doing so in order to reduce such borrower concerns.

Solve Now!

Q 28.15 *Why does management often prefer to avoid financial distress?*

ANECDOTE: Creditor Protection Outside the United States

In the United States, management can file for Chapter 11 protection, which can delay the turning over of assets to creditors. This option does not exist in many other countries. For example, in Germany, creditors can force practically immediate liquidation of the firm upon non-payment. As a result of poor shareholder protection and strong creditor protection, many German companies are heavily creditor-financed: it is far more difficult for them to find shareholders than it is to find creditors. Many of the largest German companies remain founding-family-financed.

The worst creditor protection usually occurs in the case of sovereign debt (debt issued by countries). There is very little other than a country's desire for a good name and its foreign assets that prevents it from simply repudiating its debt. For example, Argentina owed about $220 billion in 2001, with required repayments of $22 billion a year—during the worst economic crisis the country had ever experienced. Interestingly, in July 2000, an Argentinian Judge named Jorge Ballestero sent down an intriguing ruling on the foreign debt: the ruling attributed responsibility for the debt to the civil servants during the previous dictatorship that contracted it *and co-responsibility* to international organizations like the IMF, who approved the loans, now declared illegal and fraudulent.

Would you lend your money to a country?

Source: odiousdebts.org.

28·5. The Effectiveness of Corporate Governance

28·5.A. An Opinion: What Works and What Does not Work

Give up all hope—or don't give up hope.

In the real world, it is impossible to design corporate contracts and arrangements that result in perfect ("first-best") managerial behavior. If we want to maximize wealth, we have to live with imperfection ("second-best"). In equilibrium, we must trade off the advantages of being public (such as access to more capital and better diversification) against the disadvantages (managerial misbehavior). This is not to condone the latter: just because some shoplifting may be unavoidable does not mean it is right.

There are many mechanisms that work in concert. Now comes my opinion.

Our ultimate trade-off is achieved not through one, but through a variety of mechanisms. Corporate governance consists of many components, of which the corporate and legal structures are perhaps the most important. Although the many mechanisms all need one another, we can wonder what really works. This is a matter of some dispute among economists, so my own view must color my assessment here.

Corporate self-governance in the United States is almost totally broken.

Even if corporate governance in the United States seems to work better than it does elsewhere, it is largely broken. Corporate boards and institutional shareholders have only a modest constraining effect on CEOs in the ordinary course of business. A manager who starts out with a couple of good years and who is bent on taking over control of the company will encounter only mild internal resistance. Once entrenched, it is not corporate self-governance, but only legal and public relations concerns that are likely to constrain the manager. Fortunately, our corporate governance problems are not big enough to destroy most of the wealth created by our multi-billion dollar publicly traded companies, and they won't bring down capitalism, either. But in terms of the wealth siphoned off from the corporate sector into individual pockets and in terms of bad decisions taken, the problem is not modest.

Ethical constraints are decaying or decayed.

Unfortunately, the ethical aspect of corporate governance has also begun to erode, perhaps because the other corporate governance aspects have deteriorated. For example, even as late as 1980, the typical manager earned only 40 times what the average employee earned. Most managers would have felt uncomfortable earning more than 100 times. Nowadays, the average Fortune 500 executive earns over 400 times what the average employee earns, and few executives would deem pay packages of $100 million or more to be obscene. The standards of appropriate managerial behavior today are not the same as they were in the past—and the past itself is nowhere near as rosy as it is often painted.

Legal protection is the only half-way intact mechanism.

Consequently, it seems to be the legal structure in the United States that is our saving grace. The standard of disclosure; the requirement of fiduciary responsibility; the effectively enforced prohibition of theft, fraud, and insider trading; the personalized legal liability; and the strong enforcement of its laws all contribute to a viable governance framework. Oddly, this is enough to rank the United States at the top of locales for equity investors.

Legal protection as a corporate governance mechanism carries a real danger: in the future, it could hurt more than help.

This situation is perplexing to us economists. Our perspective is usually that much of what the government touches comes out for the worse. Private companies usually tend to do better. Yet, it is precisely the legal structure in the United States that has become the most effective corporate governance mechanism. So, should we ask the government to take a more active role in corporate affairs? If so, what is the risk that more government could end up as a cure worse than the disease? The appropriate remedy for managerial abuse is a vexing and thorny problem.

file=governance.tex: RP

28·5.B. Where are we going? Sarbanes-Oxley and Beyond

The corporate scandals of 2001–2003 ironically are not the result of inadequate corporate governance laws, and reform efforts are unlikely to prevent them from repeating.

One might be tempted to just leave a system alone that seems to have worked for centuries. But this system was not static either. There is also a real danger that if no action is taken and corporate governance becomes worse in the United States than in other countries, investors may wander off to other locales. The recent corporate scandals in the United States have helped to highlight the need for corporate governance reform. Ironically, these scandals were the results of already illegal actions, and many perpetrators may end up spending many years in prison. Recent reforms will not eliminate such scandals in the future: Just as bank robberies exist despite laws against bank robbery, so will illegal managerial looting continue despite laws against it. Fortunately, some good may yet come out of the current attempts at corporate reform.

Reforms are proposed by Sarbanes-Oxley, the NYSE, and NASDAQ.

The main legal regulatory functions in terms of corporate governance reside with the SEC and the stock exchanges. The **Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002** further reinforces this system. In line with this act, the stock exchanges are trying to tighten their rules for listed companies. (The NYSE enforces a tighter set of corporate governance rules than NASDAQ.)

Listing the current changes to corporate governance.

Most of the post-Enron changes seek to strengthen the independence and function of the corporate board, especially insofar as the audit, executive compensation, and nomination committees are concerned. Here is a selection of the most important reforms of 2003:

- There is now a clear definition of what an independent director is: an individual who has no current or recent material relationship with the company. (Note that independent board members can still have close relationships with the CEO.)
- Independent directors must meet among themselves in regularly scheduled executive sessions without management.
- A large part of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act pertains to the audit committee, as the Act itself was sparked by accounting scandals:
  - The audit committee, which checks over the company's financial reports, must consist entirely of independent directors. There are additional special rules for the audit committee pertaining to large shareholders.
  - The audit committee must have choice of, oversight of, and compensation responsibility for the company's auditors. It can engage additional advisors, and it must institute procedures to handle btoh complaints and whistle-blowers.
  - External auditors are also to be limited in the amount of consulting work they can do for companies, which has historically been a great source of conflict for public auditors. In addition, the audit committee must approve any remaining non-audit consulting work by the auditor.
  - The audit committee must identify which of its members is a financial expert, and at least one is required.
  - The audit committee has "code of ethics" responsibility.
  - Auditors must be rotated on a regular basis in order to reduce the tendencies of relationships between firms and auditors to become too cozy. (Of course, this has costs, too: new auditors have to first learn more about the firm, and may be less apt in detecting unusual behavior.)
- The C.E.O. and C.F.O. must certify to the audit committee the accuracy of the company's financial reports/condition. (This is a new feature of Sarbanes-Oxley—or is it? Executives were responsible for the reported financials of their companies even before its enactment. It made for good television, though.)
- Attorneys must alert the SEC if they learn of credible evidence of breaches of fiduciary duty or of United States securities law.

- Companies can select the members of their executive compensation committee and board-nominating committee, but these committees must be majority independent (NASDAQ) or fully independent (NYSE).

In addition to these new legal regulations, there have also been a whole range of institutions that have proposed "best practice" guidelines for corporate governance. The most prominent are the *GM Board Guidelines* (since 1994), the *American Law Institute Principles* (since 1992), the *Business Roundtable Principles* (since 2002), the *National Association of Corporate Directors Report* (since 1996), the *Conference Board Recommendations* (since 2002), the *CalPERS Principles/Guidelines* (at least since 1998), the *Council of Institutional Investors Principles and Positions* (since 1998), the *TIAA-CREF Policy Statement* (since 1997), the *AFL-CIO Voting Guidelines* (since 1997), and the *OECD Principles/Millstein Report* (since 1998).

Here is what I think is missing.

Many of these reforms have positive aspects, but there are also many negative ones. Sarbanes-Oxley was more image then substance, and where it had substance, it focused on process over outcome, and required yet more bureaucracy. Many foreign corporations that had cross-listed on the New York Stock Exchange are currently evaluating whether the added Sarbanes-Oxley cost is so high that they are better off delisting again. There have been a good number of other reform proposals that have been put forward. Here are the four suggestions that I most like:

1. Ira Millstein has proposed that the position of Chairman of the Board should be separate from that of Chief Executive Officer. It should be obvious that if the Chairman is also the CEO, the board at best can only struggle to assert influence over management, rather than direct management to act in the interest of shareholders. Today, in executive circles, a company that has a separate chairman is viewed as not trusting its CEO. It must become an accepted corporate norm for these two positions to be separate.

   The argument against separation, mustered by many CEOs, is that it would cost them time and effort to deal with a separate chairman. It is in effect the argument that a benign dictator is better than checks and balances. This is correct. Good governance—a system of good checks—does not come for free. It can cost money if management is good, but save money if management is bad—which, after all, is the whole point of governance. Good governance is not good management. Good governance is the mechanism to reign in management that is bad.

2. The voting system could be changed to a proportional system, in which minority shareholders are assured some representation. If a shareholder with 10% of the shares can obtain 10% of the seats if so desired, then large institutional shareholders could create mechanisms of "professional trustees" who are not beholden to management.

3. Any insider trading should be disclosed *before* a trade, not after it.

4. Large, publicly traded companies could be forced to disclose their tax financials. This would reduce their incentives to overstate earnings.

Better than forcible regulation is carrot-and-stick.

The government would not need to legislate governance reform. Instead, it could tighten the legal liability of corporations and individuals that do not follow these recommendations, and offer a "safe harbor" to corporations and individuals that do follow their recommendations. This would put the appropriate pressure on firms to follow them, without absolutely requiring it.

ANECDOTE: The Corporate Governance Consulting Industry
A recent phenomenon is the emergence of corporate governance consultants. For example, *Georgeson* publishes an interesting year-end wrap up of shareholder proposals and proxy contests. Unfortunately, some corporate governance consultants not only publish ratings of how well publicly traded companies are governed, but also sell "advice services" to companies. Not surprisingly, following the consultants' advice, the client tends to improve in the consultant's rankings. It looks like the corporate governance consultant has some serious corporate governance issues!

Solve Now!

Q 28.16 *What are the main Sarbanes-Oxley reforms?*

28·6. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- Control rights are necessary components of any security in order to defend their cash flow rights.
- Managers have the incentive to act in their own self-interest, not necessarily in the interest of shareholders and creditors.
- Mechanisms have evolved to reduce or rein in managerial theft—such as corporate takeovers, large shareholders, corporate boards, legal environments, ethics, and debt.
- There are a number of possible mechanisms to improve corporate governance in the United States.

Special thanks to Florencio Lopez-De-Silanes, Paul Macavoy, Ira Millstein and Holly Gregory. Holly authored a legal description of Sarbanes Oxley that is synthesized here. www.weil.com/weil/corpgov_frames.html. contains newer versions of this document.

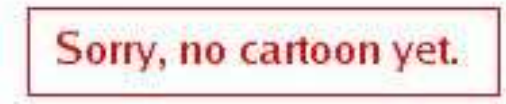
---

1. For debt, it is the right to force bankruptcy if covenants are violated. For equity, it is the right to vote.
2. Illegal: Theft, fraud, insider trading, transfers, bribes. Legal: Empire building, perks, excessive executive pay, entrenchment, friendship and loyalty, and the incentives to drive down the firm value in order to purchase the company on the cheap.
3. Right around the time of the firm going public. The entrepreneur internalizes all future agency conflicts. To the extent that money will be diverted from owners in the future, these owners will be willing to pay less for the firm today. For a numerical example, see the text.
4. First, it is impossible to think of all future contingencies that could happen, and therefore should be considered in the charter. Second, the entrepreneur will care primarily about agency conflicts soon after the IPO, and pretty much ignore what may happen many decades later.
5. No. Quite the opposite can happen—seasoned equity offerings can be a mechanism by which managers enrich themselves at the expense of the company that they are running.
6. The CEO knows the firm better, and through judicious choice of information, control the agenda. The CEO is often the board chair. Elections for the board are usually by slate and uncontested. Outsiders are often CEOs themselves. As to other roles, advice and relationships as well as aid in management succession may play a role.
7. It is very costly to execute a proxy and takeover contest. A typical premium may require a premium as high as 20%—worthwhile only if the current management commits the most egregious breach of appropriate behavior. Shareholder proposals are not binding.
8. In large, widely held publicly traded corporations, Even large shareholders typically hold only small fraction of the shares. Thus, they will not invest too much effort, because they do not receive 100% of the benefits from lobbying. Moreover, management will find out whether a shareholder voted against them.
9. It regulates only the most egregious violations of fiduciary duty. It does not extend to "business judgment" calls.
10. The standards are themselves set by the behavior of CEOs as a group. Moreover, ethical standards tend to be higher when information is publicly available, and not everything is publicly reported.
11. See the list in Section 28·3.C. Staggered boards have virtually eliminated hostile takeovers.
12. An LBO is a leveraged buyout, i.e., one that is financed with a significant amount of debt. They were very common in the 1980's, but have largely faded.
13. Around 1 percent.
14. The presence of large shareholders can be very bad from an agency perspective if these shareholders use their voting power to arrange special deals for themselves.
15. Even if the company continues to exist, management is usually replaced!
16. Independent directors are now clearly defined. They must meet by themselves regularly without management. The audit committee and the independence of auditors was beefed up. The CEO and CFO must certify the accuracy of the company's financial reports. Attorneys must report certain breaches of fiduciary duty or securities laws. And the executive compensation and board-nominating committees must be majority independent.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

Part V

Putting It All Together – Pro Formas



(A part of all versions of the book.)

CHAPTER 29

CORPORATE STRATEGY AND NPV ESTIMATION WITH PRO FORMA FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Projecting Financial Statements.

last file change: Mar 19, 2006 (11:05h)

last major edit: Apr 2004, Feb 2005, Mar 2006

A **pro forma** is a model of a hypothetical future scenario. In our context, a pro forma usually means a model of the financial performance in this hypothetical scenario.

In a sense, pro formas are what corporate finance is all about—the standard way in business to think about and propose financing or investing. For example, when you propose a new project to your boss, to the board of directors, or to an external venture capitalist, you will almost surely be asked to produce a business plan. The most critical part of this business plan will have to be your "pro forma" financials. These financials will be used as the baseline for discussion and valuation of your proposed project.

Managers and entrepreneurs are not the only producers of pro formas. Analysts for major investment banks or for firms seeking acquisitions or mergers also have to produce pro formas to back up their analyses of corporate value. Their task is both easier and harder than that of the entrepreneur: analysts can rely on historical financial statistics and sometimes a stable history upon which to base their pro formas, but they also often lack the detailed knowledge of the business internals and of the corporate intentions that the internal managers and entrepreneurs would have.

Every business is different, and thus every pro forma is different. Still, this chapter tries to give some guidance to the process of creating pro formas. In this chapter, you will learn how to produce a pro forma analysis of PepsiCo. We will construct pro formas from a number of different perspectives—that of an analyst valuing a privately traded company that has no market value yet (equivalent to the perspective of an analyst who values a publicly traded company for the purpose of assessing whether a leveraged buyout might make sense), that of an analyst proposing a capital structure change for a publicly traded corporation, and that of an economist who has the advantage of hindsight.

ANECDOTE: Pro Forma
According to Merriam-Webster, *pro forma* is a Latin term meaning "for form" and dated ca. 1580. Pro forma has two definitions: "provided in advance to prescribe form or describe items"; and "made or carried out in a perfunctory manner or as a formality." In many (rejected) business plans, the latter may be a better description than the former!

29·1. The Goal and Logic

Detailed pro formas help us think about the business.

To repeat, a **pro forma** is a model of the financial performance in a hypothetical future. Creating a pro forma is a challenge similar to what you encountered in earlier chapters, where you had to compute a project's present value. You needed to understand how everything fits together—the expected cash flows, the appropriate cost of capital, the role of the corporate and capital structure, the agency conflicts. The main novelty of a pro forma is that you now need to forecast the future in the context of the financial statements, rather than just in the context of the NPV formula. Creating such a full pro forma is not work for nothing: it will help impose some discipline and structure on your thinking about the design and value of the proposed project. It forces you to think about "details" such as what you believe sales and costs will be, how you will manage working capital, how quickly your contribution to corporate earnings can turn positive, whether taxes will be an important factor, and so on.

But forecasting for pro formas is hard and different from business to business.

No finance professor would dispute the importance of pro formas, but we are often reluctant to teach much about it. The cynical view is that constructing a pro forma is difficult, and we finance professors naturally prefer the "easy" tasks! The less cynical view is that there are at least three good reasons for our reluctance:

1. **Idiosyncracy:** In contrast to the many beautifully simple, elegant, and universal theoretical concepts in finance (such as present value or the capital-asset pricing model), financials and pro formas are messy and unique for each business. Forecasting the financials for a new cancer drug is different from forecasting the financials for a new toy fad, which is different from forecasting the financials for a retail store, which is different from forecasting the financials for aluminum mining, and so on. So, many of the guidelines for creating good pro formas are necessarily less universal and more ad hoc.

2. **Relativity:** The difficulties of making good financial projections for a specific project are often tremendous. It is important that you realize the limits of what you can and cannot do. You should be able to do it better than your peers—a *relative* rather than an *absolute* standard. Looking in retrospect at what later actually happened in relation to what you predicted in your pro forma is often a great lesson in humility. You are not alone in this predicament.

3. **Learning by doing:** The best way to learn how to do a pro forma is to struggle designing one. Such a case-based approach is considerably more effective than a passive listening approach.

Still, this chapter seeks to prepare you a little by giving you some general guidance, because in the end, you must learn how to design good pro formas: to be an effective entrepreneur, manager, or analyst, you must learn both how to produce and how to critically consume financial pro formas. After reading this chapter, your next step in learning pro formas should be to work through and critique many case studies—necessarily a trial-and-error-and-experience process.

file=proformas.tex: RP

29·1.A. The Template

The standard method for creating a pro forma separates the future into a "detailed projection" time period, for which you forecast the financials in great detail, and a **terminal value**, which you can think of as the "then market value" of the business—a going-concern value of the business if you were to sell it at this point in the future. You have to decide for how many years you want to project financials in detail before capping your value analysis with your terminal value.

Decide on a detailed projection period and a terminal value period.

As our guinea pig, let's use PepsiCo, because you have already studied its historical financials in Chapter 9. (Recall its financial statements on Pages 200–205.) Your goal now is to construct a good pro forma as of December 2001 to estimate PepsiCo's market value, presuming you already know the 2001 financials. The construction template is in Table 29.1. It shows the three big areas you must work on:

Here is the template of what we need to do.

1. A choice of horizon T, up to which you estimate in great detail.
2. The detailed financials during the initial projection phase, from time $+1$ to $T-1$.
3. A terminal market value at time $T-1$, which is a standin for the cash flows from time T to eternity.

Table 29.1. The Pro Forma Problem for PepsiCo

To be determined

Year	−2	−1	0	+1	+2	+3	...	+T	Terminal Value
	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	...		
Pro Forma Income Statement									
Net Sales	$22,970	$25,479	$26,935						
− COGS	$10,326	$10,226	$10,754						
...									
= Net Income	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662						
Pro Forma Cash Flow Statement									
Net Income	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662						
+ Depreciation	$1,156	$1,093	$1,082						
...	...	...	...						
= Operating Cash Flow	$3,605	$4,440	$4,201						

to be projected in detail

"wholesale" projection needed

to be projected in detail

"wholesale" projection needed

The numbers for PepsiCo's income statement were taken from Table 9.13 (Page 228). The numbers for PepsiCo's cash flow statement were taken from Table 9.14 (Page 229).

Your goal is to project future cash flows—T periods worth of detailed financials—followed by a wholesale market value estimate of the remaining cash flows until eternity.

We shall begin our analysis by presuming that you have the perspective of an external analyst who has to construct a pro forma to value a firm for which you do not know the current market value. That is, we pretend that you do not know PepsiCo's market value. Such a perspective is also taken by analysts of buyout companies, who try to assess whether the market value of a publicly traded company is low enough to warrant a takeover. In addition, we presume that because you are an external analyst—an outsider—you do not have detailed knowledge of PepsiCo's operation, and certainly not enough to pretend you are an insider or manager.

The main purpose is to determine independently a market value.

PepsiCo is an imperfect example, because it could be done a lot more simply.

Although entrepreneurs who need to design a pro forma often share the dilemma of not knowing the publicly traded market value of their proposed projects, they face two more big issues that are not very important in your analysis of PepsiCo:

Inside Knowledge As an entrepreneur, chances are that you know in great detail the operational details of your proposed project. As an external analyst (or venture capitalist considering funding the project), this is rarely the case.

Upstart vs. Mature Phase PepsiCo is an established company, so its projects have long prior histories. Its cash flows will *not* start with a sharp initial business growth curve to be followed only later by a more stable period. As firms mature and grow, they are less likely to default. The decline in credit risk will allow their promised rates of return to decline. In addition to having to pay higher default premia, many young, small firms also have to pay higher expected rates of return. The reason is that they tend to be especially vulnerable to downturns in economy-wide conditions, which reflects itself in higher betas and higher costs of capital.

The end of the upstart growth phase is often a natural break and thus a possible choice for T, the break of your pro forma into a detailed projection period and final market value. But PepsiCo is already in its mature, stable state and, as an outsider, you really have no detailed knowledge of how the next year will be different from what will happen in ten years.

Therefore, you could even just rely on a terminal value right now and dispense with the initial detailed projection phase altogether. Nevertheless, we will work out the detailed projections to illustrate the process.

Working Capital Issues Another issue that is relatively less important for PepsiCo is working capital projection and management—PepsiCo is so big, stable, and unlevered that it can easily borrow more capital whenever it needs more. In contrast, a small entrepreneurial firm would have to pay close attention to avoid running out of cash—which could lead to loss of the entire business even if its underlying real business economics were sound.

We can peek at "illegal" information.

I have surreptitiously introduced one more unusual feature—our pro forma is constructed as if we stand at the end of 2001. This shall allow us later to use hindsight knowledge to "autopsy" how good or bad your forecasts turned out.

file=proformas.tex: RP

29·2. The Detailed Horizon vs. The Terminal Time Break

How many years of detail?

Your first goal is to understand how to choose a suitable value for the horizon choice T in Table 29.1. Remember that the horizon is the span of time up to which you project detailed financials and beyond which you substitute your "wholesale" terminal value estimate.

In relative terms, the very-long run may not be more daunting than the intermediate run. Future cash flows may be equally uncertain, and present values would be less uncertain.

As an initial step, let us take a brief detour into forecasting. There is one surprising and key insight to note: you may be able to project future cash flows as well in the very long term as in the intermediate term. This would imply that you would be able to estimate the *present* value of long-term cash flows *better* than that of intermediate-term cash flows. This is best explained by example.

Uncertainty may not grow dramatically with horizon.

If you have to forecast the temperature in two hours, your (short-term) forecast will be pretty good, and much better than your six-month forecast. But how would your six-month forecast compare to your fifty-year forecast? Most likely, both your prediction and level of accuracy would be similar. For example, your temperature forecast for August of next year should probably be the same 80 degrees, plus or minus 10 degrees, as your forecast for August in fifty years. Thus, if the business and environment are stable, then your uncertainty is not likely to grow with your horizon after some point.

In NPV terms, long-term uncertainty can often be less problematic.

Now say you want to value an ice cream store. How does your temperature forecast affect your store's estimated present value? The effect of the temperature uncertainty for August of next year is less discounted and thus more important than the effect of the temperature uncertainty in August in fifty years. If your store expects to earn \$100,000, and a 10 degree temperature difference can cause you to earn anything between \$75,000 and \$125,000, then the temperature uncertainty for August of next year can cause a present value difference of about $\$50,000/(1+15\%)^1 \approx \$43,478$ at a 15% discount rate (cost of capital). But the same temperature uncertainty in fifty years hence causes only a present value difference of about $\$50,000/(1+15\%)^{50} \approx \$46$. Consequently, if you want to estimate your store's value today, your intermediate-term uncertainty should worry you more than your long-term uncertainty.

Economics and Strategy: Scarce resources make rents!

The role of intermediate term vs. long term uncertainty generalizes beyond ice cream stores, because knowledge of economics and strategy allows you to put reasonable bounds on long-term future profitability (in 20 or 50 years). At such far-out horizons, you should not expect businesses to still have unusually large growth rates and to earn **economic rents**—where economic rents are defined as investment rates of return that are much higher than the cost of capital. Economic rents can only be achieved when a firm has assets and capabilities that are scarce, valuable, and difficult to imitate. Examples of such scarce resources are the presence of a unique and excellent manager (e.g., a Jack Welch of General Electric), economies of scale (e.g., Microsoft's computer software or Walmart's mass logistics and buying power), unduplicable corporate reputation (e.g., Sony's brand name), legally protected intellectual property (e.g., Glaxo's retroviral drug patents or Disney's Mickey Mouse), or consumer switching costs (e.g., Comcast's cable television). In the very long run, over decades, scarce resources tend to become less scarce, as new technologies and consumers make old advantages obsolete. *Wal-Mart Stores* (WMT) may seem like a juggernaut today, but in 50 years, it will almost surely not have the scarce resources that will allow its owners to continue earning rates of return much above their investment cost of capital. (If Wal-Mart did maintain its historical growth rate, it would have to colonize other planets!)

The force (of economics) has worked on products historically, too.

To determine how long it might take before a product becomes a commodity and thus produces only normal profits, you need to apply economic thinking to your specific business knowledge. If there are few scarce resources and entry barriers, then it may only take a couple of years before unusually high corporate growth rates slow down and there are no more economic rents. For example, there are few entry barriers to flat-screen television technology today. Consequently, you can count on the industry that produces flat-screen televisions to earn few excess rents within 10 years. (If you do not believe this, think back to 1997, when the average DVD player sold for \$800; today, all entry barriers have disappeared, and you can purchase a DVD player for \$20.) Other products, however, can enjoy more scarcity and entry barriers for longer periods of time. For example, if you can get a patent on an effective cancer drug, you

will be able to earn economic rents for 15 to 25 years—although better competitors' drugs will eventually come onto the scene and your patent will eventually run out.

Don't get caught up in today's perspective.

Your first reaction might be to dismiss such a long-term perspective. Walmart, Microsoft, Google, and General Electric just seem too good to believe in their eventual demise. It is tempting to let your present-day experience color your long-term forecasts. But look back fifty years and ask yourself whether the fast-growing exciting juggernaut companies operating then are still the same. Or just 25 years. Can you even name the companies from the 1980s that still earn large economic rents? If you had picked two companies that looked similar in 1985, are both companies still around? For example, Dell may still be doing well, but Gateway looked just as good in 1985—and there are literally dozens of now bankrupt companies that looked no different then, either. Standing in 1985, you should not have expected to earn large economic rents if you had bet on any one computer hardware vendor then.

The strategy model: what delays erosion of economic rents?

The economics that help you decide on when a firm is likely to settle into a lower economic growth rate is taught in great detail in business strategy courses and carries different labels (e.g., Porter's five forces). To determine when economic rents are likely to dry up, strategy suggests you ask such questions as:

- How long before your entry barriers will erode?
- How long before your success will be mimicked by the competition?
- How long before you can be squeezed by suppliers or customers?

The two considerations for setting T: business economics and discount factors.

So, to choose your horizon T, you must consider the underlying firm economics. If you set T at a point where long-run economic forces will have eroded most of the economic edge of the company—where growth will return from the initial but unsustainably high short-term rates to sustainable, ordinary, long-term rates—then you can assume that the company will earn only "ordinary profits" thereafter. This suggests that your goal should be to capture the initial rapid and possibly unstable growth phase with detailed financial forecasts, and the stable period with the terminal value. Another way to say this is that a good T is the point in time when you expect the present value of growth opportunities (PVGO) to be low (or even zero). But there is also a second consideration to your choice of T. You want to pick a horizon such that the discount factor is high enough so that the precise choice of T would not matter *too* much. For example, at a 10% discount rate, each dollar in 20 years is worth only about 15 cents in present value today. The high discount factor can help plaster over the errors that your crude terminal value estimate will inevitably commit. Whether you choose 20 years or 25 years as the detailed horizon, then, would likely not matter too much in terms of your present value. After all, when it comes to exit values on horizons that are so far away, the best you can hope for is a *halfway* reasonable estimate of market value, anyway.

Typical values for T: 5-10 years.

For most businesses, you would pick a terminal value somewhere between 3 and 20 years, with 5 to 10 years being most common. Let's apply economic intuition to choose a T for PepsiCo. PepsiCo is a very stable company, so it is not necessary to project 20 years of financials in great detail. You can instead "lump" the value created in all future years into one terminal market (sale) value fairly soon. This is a relief—it saves you from guessing too many years and lots of numbers about which you—as an outsider—really have no clue. Thus, for expositional convenience, let us choose a horizon of $T = 3$ years. That is, we will try to project in detail from 2002 to 2004, and summarize all cash flows from 2005 to forever with one value estimate at the end of 2004.

IMPORTANT: *The choice of break point T between a detailed projection period and a terminal market value is often dictated by two considerations:*

1. *A desire to distinguish between an upfront strong growth phase and a subsequent mature and stable phase.*
2. *A desire to have a small discount factor on the terminal market value to reduce the present value importance of estimation errors.*

In practice, most pro formas choose a T between 5 and 20 years.

29·3. The Detailed Projection Phase

In real life, you must use all your economic knowledge to do a good projection.

You have now dealt with the first goal of choosing the horizon T. Your second goal is to determine the project value during the beginning growth period, from next year (+1) up to some year $T-1$. The good news is that, if you were an actual analyst, you would probably know your business quite well and thus be able to reasonably predict the immediate future. You could use historical cash flows for some guidance about future cash flows. Of course, to do this well, you would have to understand a lot about the underlying economics of the business, although you would still have to make many assumptions. In this process, you could use much additional information that you have so far mostly ignored—such as the specific industry economics or the corporate balance sheet.

Initial growth projections are highly product-specific. External analysts can use the historical financials as one of their inputs.

The bad news is that illustrating this process in a textbook is difficult. There are no clear rules that apply to all companies, and this book is not about PepsiCo. You probably do not know much about PepsiCo's business—and even if we could fully explain and analyze PepsiCo's many businesses, it would not help you elsewhere. Pharmaceutical drug research, aluminum mining, fad toys, and a new stamping machine each have their unique business, financial, and accounting patterns. There is little generality here. In contrast to the terminal value, long-run economic forces are unlikely to apply in the projection phase period.

The detailed projections will also influence your terminal values.

Even though we lack specific information, our exposition and forecast demand that we not simply brush over the initial growth phase. We need accurate, detailed projection period forecasts. They have a significant impact on project wealth, and not just because they have a direct contribution to the present value over the next five years, but also because the terminal value itself is (usually) relative to a baseline expected cash flow in year T. This baseline must be established from your initial detailed projections. Here, however, we are going to have to make up some numbers to illustrate the process. Be warned: our financial projections for PepsiCo will necessarily remain naïve. Again, because we know very little about PepsiCo's business or the plans of its managers, accuracy is not the goal—illustration is.

Projecting economic cash flows directly or indirectly (via detailed financials).

The two primary methods of projecting financials are explained in the next two subsections:

1. Direct extrapolation of the accounting component that you are interested in (i.e., the economic NPV cash flows for the project, though sometimes also the earnings).
2. Detailed financial modeling of all or most items in the financial statements.

The first is a drastic shortcut, used by analysts only when time and knowledge are severely limited, whereas the second is more common. Incidentally, computer spreadsheets were originally invented primarily to facilitate the projections in pro formas, and are therefore the preferred tool for designing them.

29·3.A. Method 1: Direct Extrapolation of Historical Cash Flows

Directly project the final cash flows themselves forward. Here, it gives bad results. Recognize such problems!

The first method is really a "cheat," in that it is a shortcut which avoids having to do the full-blown financial pro forma analysis. It directly projects the historical cash flows forward, e.g., by assuming a constant growth rate forever. For example, using Formula 9.18, PepsiCo's cash flows for 1999 to 2001, you can compute the cash flows that accrued to both debt and equity:

From Formula 9.18:

$$\begin{array}{lcccccccc} \text{Asset Cash Flow}_{1999} & = & \$3,605 & - & \$1,172 & + & (-\$792) & = & \$1,641 \\ \text{Asset Cash Flow}_{2000} & = & \$4,440 & - & \$1,996 & + & (+\$57) & = & \$2,501 \\ \text{Asset Cash Flow}_{2001} & = & \$4,201 & - & \$2,637 & + & (-\$8) & = & \$1,556 \\ \text{Economic Project Cash Flow} & = & \text{Operating Cash Flow} & + & \text{Investing Cash Flow} & - & \text{Interest Income} & . & \end{array} \tag{29.1}$$

Warning: You really need to understand the business. Mechanical extrapolation rarely works.

Over the three years, PepsiCo showed a cash flow decline of about $\$1,556/\$1,641 - 1 \approx 5\%$. This comes to an annual decline of about $(\$1,556/\$1,641)^{1/2} - 1 \approx 2.6\%$. Over the most recent 12 months, cash flows even dropped by one-third! You could assume that PepsiCo's cash flows will continue to decline at this rate forever. But do you really believe that PepsiCo's cash flow decline will continue, or do you believe that it will reverse? If you investigate PepsiCo's cash flow statement in Table 9.14 further, you can learn that much of PepsiCo's decline was due to a heavy increase in (other) investing activity, not to a decline in its business (sales). Some of it was due to the acquisition of Quaker, which PepsiCo hopes will eventually pay off in *more* cash, not less cash. This demonstrates how hazardous simplistic extrapolation of cash flows can be: You really need to know more about the business itself and the reasons behind the financial trends. Purely mechanical rather than economic models of the business usually just don't work well. Again, always remember that valuation requires much economic and common sense and that it is as much an art as science.

Table 29.2. Pro Forma: Direct Cash Flow Projections

	Known		"Detailed" Model Growth at 10%			Terminal Value See Next Section	
	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006-
	Year −1	Year 0	Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4	to ∞
Projected CF[1]	\$1,556	\$1,712	\$1,883	\$2,071	\$2,278	\$2,506	?

Explanations (Notes):
[1]: Projecting 10% due to investments, until (incl.) 2005.

You could project earnings instead of cash flows—which has advantages and disadvantages.

You have encountered another solution to issues arising from the lumpiness of cash flows. In Chapter 10, you considered forecasting earnings rather than cash flows. In the very long-run, earnings and cash flows should be roughly equal—after all, earnings "just" shift the time-series accruals. The question is whether historical net income growth or historical cash flow growth represents the present value of the future cash flow growth stream better if you have to work with truncated cash flow forecasts.

Net income On the positive side, the accountants have tried to capitalize future already-transacted for cash flows with good accrual judgment. On the negative side, this human intervention also means historical net income could have beeen more easily manipulated than historical cash flows. Earnings are also less lumpy than cash flows, allowing for more reliable forecasts.

Cash Flows Cash flows are the gold standard *if you can project them out accurately to infinity*. But if you have to truncate your forecast in the future, or rely on a finite number of cash

file=proformas.tex: RP

flows as representation of the future, it is not clear whether your history would paint a more accurate picture of the future.

The simplest of projects makes this clear—a plant that costs $20 million and then delivers $2 million a year with 20 year accounting depreciation. This plant does not have an $22 million economic value increase between years 0 and 1 that you should project forward as a sustainable path. In contrast, the earnings will not show such a negative spike followed by high growth, but a smooth and constant pattern of $1 million profit each year. Thinking that earnings will continue at $1 million would be more representative of the future cash flows (truly $2 million per year) than projecting cash flows of $2 + $22 = $24, $2 + $22 · 2 = $46, and so on. There is some academic evidence that earnings-based terminal value projections are *on average* superior to pure cash flow based terminal value projections.

Let's do PepsiCo with earnings.

PepsiCo had earnings of $2,662 in 2001, having grown at rates of 1.5% and 4.7% over the two prior years. If PepsiCo were to grow its earnings by 3% per year, the following earnings trend would emerge:

	Known		"Detailed" Model Growth at 3%			Terminal Value See Next Section	
	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006-
	Year −1	Year 0	Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4	to ∞
Projected Earnings	$2,543	$2,662	$2,742	$2,824	$2,909	$2,996	?

In this future, earnings would reach $3 billion by 2005—about 20% higher than the equivalent cash flow projection. Because earnings are more stable (have lower variance), their forecasts are also often more reliable than cash flow forecasts.

29·3.B. Method 2: Pro Forma Projections With Detailed Modeling of Financials

A more sophisticated method attempts to model the entire financials, not just the "end product," the economic cash flows.

The second and more common method of projecting economic cash flows during the initial period is to project entire financial statements, which provide the individual components for the economic cash flows you seek. Doing so is often (but not always) better than projecting economic cash flows directly for three reasons:

1. As we just noted, on the one hand, cash flows are difficult to directly project, because they tend to be volatile. Capital expenditures occur in lumps, and thus do not follow steady, constant growth paths. On the other hand, the smoother net income contains many fictional accounting accruals that are not really cash. We are caught between a rock and a hard place.

2. The full projection method can make it easier to intelligently incorporate any knowledge of the underlying business into the economic cash flow estimates. For example, you may happen to know that unusual expenses will be zero next year, or that a new payment system may speed the collection of receivables. By forecasting the individual items, you can integrate your economic knowledge, so that it flows in an optimal fashion into your cash flow estimates.

3. The full projection method can help you judge other important information—such as working capital availability, suitable debt-equity ratios, and interest rate coverage. Especially for entrepreneurs who are often in danger of a liquidity crisis, such information can be just as important as the economic cash flows themselves. In fact, *all* the ratio analysis, such as the financial health and profitability ratios, are often more useful when applied to pro forma financials than when applied to current financials. Such analysis can help you judge whether the firm is on a sound or critical path.

See Section 10·4.B

The Income Statement: Sales

Table 29.3. A Possible PepsiCo Pro Forma Income Statement Model for 2002

	Income Statement	December 1999	2000	2001	Estimated 2002	2003	...
=	Sales[1]	$25,093	$25,479	$26,935	$27,906	...	...
	COGS[2]	$10,326	$10,226	$10,754	$10,760	...	...
	+ SG&A[3]	$11,018	$11,104	$11,608	$12,279	...	...
	+ Deprec/Amort[4]	$193	$147	$165	$168	...	...
	+ Unusual Expenses[5]	$73	$184	$387	$279	...	...
–	= **Operating Expenses**[6]	$21,610	$21,661	$22,914	$23,486	...	...
=	**Operating Income**[7]	$3,483	$3,818	$4,021	$4,420	...	...
+	Net Interest Income[8]	$792	–$57	$8	$0	...	...
=	**Income Before Tax**[9]	$4,275	$3,761	$4,029	$4,420	...	...
–	Corporate Income Tax[10]	$1,770	$1,218	$1,367	$1,591	...	...
=	**Income After Tax**[11]	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662	$2,828	...	...
–	Extraordinary Items[12]	$0	$0	$0	$0	...	...
=	**Net Income** [13]	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662	$2,828	...	...

Explanations (Notes):

[1]: grows by historical 3.6%.
[2]: $3,506+26% of sales.
[3]: 44% of sales.
[4]: 3-year historical average.
[5]: 1% of sales.
[6]: sum the above.
[7]: subtract the above.
[8]: too ignorant and lazy.
[9]: subtract the above.
[10]: 36% of IBT.
[11]: subtract the above.
[12]: too ignorant and lazy.
[13]: subtract the above.

The base for detailed pro formas is sales prediction.

The detailed projection method usually starts by forecasting future sales in the income statement. This sales forecast is the single most critical aspect of any pro forma, because it becomes the baseline number from which many other financial item estimates will follow. In PepsiCo's case:

- You could use a mechanistic model that extrapolates sales growth from historical financials. For example, in Table 29.3, you can compute that PepsiCo sales grew at an annualized rate of $(\$26,935/\$25,093)^{1/2} - 1 \approx 3.6\%$ from 1999 to 2001. Let us assume that PepsiCo sales will continue in 2002 at the same growth rate. Therefore, projected PepsiCo sales in 2002 would be $\$26,935 \cdot (1 + 3.6\%) \approx \$27,906$.

  Like other pro forma line items, sales has a footnote that explains our assumption. Indeed, every good pro forma must have detailed footnotes explaining the assumptions behind each and every line item projection. Admittedly, our notes in Table 29.3 are too perfunctory and do not even explain where the 3.6% came from. But, in the real world, you must carefully explain the background assumptions behind each and every critical component of your pro forma!

- You could and should use an economic model that uses detailed business knowledge. For example, as a real-world analyst, you might know whether PepsiCo was about to launch many exciting new products or whether it had few new projects in the pipeline. You might use knowledge of how much PepsiCo did not pay out in dividends but kept in retained earnings for reinvestment into its operations—which eventually would turn into more sales or profitability. You might look at the forecast of the macroeconomic climate, which might tell you something about how PepsiCo sales would perform next year, e.g. during the then-predicted recession of 2002. And so on. Any such information would help you to adjust the sales estimates for more accurate projections.

file=proformas.tex: RP

In a real pro forma where your money is on the line, it would be reckless to forecast sales through a mechanistic model without an economic model!

The Income Statement: Other Components

Direct extrapolation of COGS is possible. But it can now also be projected in relation to (as a fraction of) sales.

You would then go down item by item on the income statement, the next being COGS. You have a whole range of options:

- You could repeat the sales exercise with COGS: a pure growth model would project that COGS' historical growth rate of $(\$10,754/\$10,326)^{1/2} - 1 \approx 2.05\%$ will continue in 2002. If applied to the year 2001 COGS of $10,754, your 2002 COGS forecast would thus be $\$10,754 \cdot (1 + 2.05\%) \approx \$10,975$.

But, armed with the sales scenario of $27,906 in 2002, you can now consider a much wider set of models.

- You could forecast COGS not only relative to its own history, but also relative to projected sales for 2002, which you have already estimated. You also know the historical relationship between COGS and sales, which you can use to predict a relationship between 2002 sales and 2002 COGS. For example, PepsiCo's COGS was $\$10,326/\$25,093 \approx 41.15\%$ of sales in 1999, 40.14% of sales in 2000, and 39.93% of sales in 2001. The simplest sales-based model might just project that COGS would be a slowly declining fraction of sales in 2002. In this case, your COGS forecast might be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\text{COGS}_{2002}) &\approx 0 + 39.5\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{2002}) \\ &= 39.5\% \cdot 27,906 \approx \$11,023 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{29.2}$$

- A more sophisticated model might pose that there are **economies of scale**. In this case, COGS would not go up one-to-one with sales. Instead, COGS would have both a "fixed component," whose cost would not change with sales (e.g., the factories), and a "variable component," whose costs would increase with sales (e.g., the cola syrup). You might try to plot COGS against sales for 1999–2001, and determine visually that a good line fit would be

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\text{COGS}_{2002}) &= \$3,500 + 25\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{2002}) \\ &= a + b \cdot \mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{2002}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{29.3}$$

  This says that $3.5 billion is unalterable factory costs, but for each extra dollar of sales, you have to purchase only 25 cents of syrup. Substituting in our estimated 2002 sales of $27,906 million, you would project COGS for 2002 to be

$$\mathcal{E}(\text{COGS}_{2002}) \approx \$3,500 + 25\% \cdot (\$27,906) \approx \$10,500 \ . \tag{29.4}$$

  Or, you could use heavier statistical artillery and run a regression relating PepsiCo's COGS to sales over its most recent three years. (Don't worry if you do not know what this is.) Such a regression suggests that a better line fit would be

$$\mathcal{E}(\text{COGS}_{2002}) \approx \$3,506 + 26\% \cdot \mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{2002}) \ , \tag{29.5}$$

  so your prediction would change to

$$\mathcal{E}(\text{COGS}_{2002}) \approx \$3,506 + 26\% \cdot \$27,906 \approx \$10,760 \ . \tag{29.6}$$

- You could draw on information from other firms, such as Coca Cola. In 2001, Coca Cola had COGS of $6,044 on sales of $20,092, a ratio of 30%, which is much lower than PepsiCo's.

This may not only suggest that Coca Cola's business is different, but also that PepsiCo may be able to lower its COGS in the future to meet "better practice" standards. Thus, you might want to lower PepsiCo's COGS estimate from $10,760.

- If you were even more sophisticated, you could recognize that COGS contains some depreciation. Thus, the history of PepsiCo's past capital expenditures could also influence your COGS estimate. You could throw past capital expenditures into your statistical regression, too, to come up with a better prediction equation.

The sky—your economic and econometric background knowledge—is your limit. For illustration's sake, let's adopt $10,760 as our predicted COGS in Table 29.3.

Other items in the table may follow other models.

You can repeat these forecasting processes to predict other income statement items. Like COGS, SG&A contains both fixed and variable expenses, as well as depreciation that relates to past investments. SG&A might thus best be modeled as a combination of a fixed component, plus a sales-variable component, plus a past capital-expenditure-based component. But given that no money (only scarce book space) is at stake, for the rest of the income statement, let's play it simple. The footnotes describe the method of projection for each item. Clearly, if your money was at stake, you would want to know as much about the business as possible and use this knowledge to come up with better models for PepsiCo's business relations. Again, the limit is your business knowledge, your imagination, and your economic and accounting knowledge. Different items could receive totally different treatments, too. For example, you could relate net interest income to how much debt PepsiCo currently has, and what you know current and what you believe future interest rates to be.

SIDE NOTE: In the appendix to this chapter, there are similar formulas for many pro forma components estimated with data from the universe of publicly traded companies. These can be used "in-a-pinch"—or even help you gain some intuition about how important the fixed and variable components are in a particular data item. However, the formulas there are mechanistic and therefore definitely not particularly reliable in any individual case—so be careful.

The Cash Flow Statement

The cash flow statement model would rely on the income statement model.

Next, you might model the cash flow statement. Table 29.4 is an attempt for PepsiCo. It starts by transferring the projected net income from the pro forma income statement model into the cash flow statement model. For the remaining cash flow items, we can only remain perfunctory—after all, this is only an illustration without real economic knowledge. Although we really have no idea what causes depreciation and depletion, a number on the order of $1,100 looks "reasonably reasonable," given that you know nothing about PepsiCo's physical plant, and given the stabilities of PepsiCo's prior history of depreciation and capital expenditures. (We also ignore the fact that some parts of depreciation have already been modeled in components of the income statement, although we really should check consistency.)

Other cash flow statement components.

Working down the cash flow statement, you must adopt a ratio for your model for deferred taxes, which fits the history reasonably well—let's go with around 18% of PepsiCo's income taxes. You know nothing about non-cash items, and PepsiCo's history does not suggest a clear pattern, so choose zero. Changes in working capital are more noteworthy, because their relation to sales contain interesting economics. We know that it is not the absolute level of sales, but sales growth that determines the working capital that the business consumes—but not one-to-one. For example, you may have to carry more inventory to satisfy sales growth, although economies of scale may allow you to grow inventory less than one-to-one. Your receivables collection policies and technologies (and your willingness to sell to dubious customers) may influence how much your receivables should grow with sales. Your willingness to pay your suppliers may influence your payables, and so on. With a projected sales increase for 2002 of just under $1 billion, it would suggest that PepsiCo will need more working capital. Yet, PepsiCo also grew in prior years, and still managed to pull working capital out of the business, rather than put it in! This is rather unusual, and may contain some interesting choices PepsiCo has made. We could dig further to find out, but without further knowledge, and after much (pretend) analysis of the underlying business, just presume that PepsiCo will need to put $200 million into the business to finance sales growth. The result of all these forecasts is a projected operating

file=proformas.tex: RP

Table 29.4. A Possible PepsiCo Pro Forma Cash Flow Statement Model

	Cash Flow Statement	December 1999	2000	2001	Estimated 2002	···
	Net Income [1]	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662	$2,828	···
+	Depreciation and Depletion[2]	$1,156	$1,093	$1,082	$1,100	···
+	Deferred Taxes[3]	$573	$33	$162	$300	···
+	Non-Cash Items[4]	–$708	$355	$211	$0	···
+	Changes in Working Capital [5]	$79	$416	$84	−$200	···
=	**Total Operating Activity**[6]	$3,605	$4,440	$4,201	$3,700	···
	Capital Expenditures[7]	–$1,341	–$1,352	–$1,324	–$1,300	···
+	Other Investing[8]	$169	–$644	–$1,313	$0	···
=	**Total Investing Activity**[9]	–$1,172	–$1,996	–$2,637	–$1,300	···
	Operating Plus Investing				$2,400	···

Explanations (Notes):

[1]: transfer $2,828 from IS.
[2]: cat in the hat.
[3]: 15%-20% of Income Tax, rounded.
[4]: too ignorant and lazy.
[5]: 27% of revenue *Increase*.
[6]: sum of above, rounded.
[7]: $-\$1,200 + 4\% \cdot$ Earnings.
[8]: too ignorant and lazy.
[9]: sum the above, rounded.

cash flow of $3.7 billion. Finally, after equally long consideration of PepsiCo's business, and equally long interviews with PepsiCo management, you determine that PepsiCo is planning to invest $1.3 billion into capital expenditures, and nothing into other activities.

Financing Policy, the Balance Sheet, and Linkages

More Linkages arise.

Your next step would be to think more about your financing policy. This will influence not only the remainder of your cash flow statement (the financing cash flows), but also your balance sheet (debt and equity positions) and even your income statement (interest payments). In fact, depending on what you assume, you may have to go back to the income statement and go through your forecasts again. Other linkages will arise, too. For example, what you assume about financing cash flows will force your end-of-period cash position on your balance sheet, because the cash position next year is the cash position this year plus the net of all cash flows. For another example, you must also think hard about what you believe current assets and current liabilities will be—e.g., how your technology may change your inventory or your collection abilities. This assumption has direct implications not only for your balance sheet, but also for your changes in working capital on your cash flow statement. Of course, you would also need to provide detailed projections for the remaining detailed projection period, 2003–2005. The principles are the same as they were for your projection of 2002. We will skip all these for lack of space.

29·3.C. Policy and Calculations off the Pro Forma Components

After you have projected your balance sheet and the statement of owners' equity, i.e., a full set of detailed financial forecasts up to the terminal value, T, what can you do with these numbers?

Economic Project Cash Flows

The projected cash flow is now much higher, due to our Other Investing assumptions.

The first important use of the pro forma is project value analysis. Having guestimated the components of the cash flow statement for 2002, you can now compute the economic cash flow for your NPV analysis, using the basic cash flow formula 9.18 from Page 221: economic project cash flow for PepsiCo is the sum of operating cash flows and investing cash flows plus interest expense, which comes to around $2.4 billion—about 50% higher than your alternative $1.7 billion direct projection in Table 29.2. This is not because the forecasting technique is different, but primarily because here you projected other investing activity to be zero. (It accounted for around $1 billion of consumed cash in 2001.)

Ratio and Soundness Analysis

Ratio or Financial Health Analysis.

A second common use for detailed financial projections is forward-looking ratio and soundness analysis. Such an analysis can serve to check the reasonableness of your forecasts—and the viability of the firm under your presumed scenario. For example, if an upstart firm were to end up with a very high debt/equity ratio and very little cash, the implied future interest coverage ratio should ring an alarm. Or, a growth path may have an interim negative cash position—which would doom the firm. The firm may be on a collision course with reality, and management should change course to preserve cash before the entire firm evaporates. However, because most ratio analysis requires aspects of the financials that we do not have space to model—specifically, the financing policy on the cash flow statement, and the full balance sheet—we will not discuss this any further. Once you have the full pro forma model, the ratio analysis principles and soundness principles remain exactly the same as they were in Chapter 10.

Policy Influences

Historical projections work only if the world is stable.

Pro forma projections depend not only on external factors—for example, whether the economy is going into a recession—but also on many choices that managers make—for example, how quickly to pay for or collect outstanding bills, how much to invest into new projects vs. how much to pay out in dividends, how much to finance with debt vs. how much to finance with equity, and so on. You have to be careful to realize that historical extrapolations may no longer work if either the external environment or the corporate policy is changing.

If policy is changing, the world may no longer be stable.

This is even more important to recognize when you are not an external analyst, but a manager constructing a pro forma in order to contemplate a corporate policy change. For example, if you invest more in new factories, all sorts of relationships—some of them nonobvious—may change. For instance, the relation between COGS and sales may change if the consumers of your product ask for more or less complementary products from other producers, which in turn may change the cost of raw materials that you require for production. Just be careful.

file=proformas.tex: RP

29·4. Pro Forma Terminal Values

We have decided on T and the cash flows up to T—let's work on the terminal value.

Your third goal is to determine the firm's terminal market value. The growing perpetuity formula 3.13 from Page 40 is the most common way to estimate it. That is, you would take your detailed estimated value of cash flows for time T, presume that it will grow forever at some sustainable, long-term growth rate $\mathcal{E}(g)$, and discount it back:

$$\mathcal{E}(\text{Terminal Value}_{-1=2004}) = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{Cash Flow}_{T=2005})}{\mathcal{E}(r) - \mathcal{E}(g)}. \tag{29.7}$$

For illustration's sake, the remainder of the chapter will rely only on the direct cash flow forecasts from Table 29.2. (This means, for example, that $\text{Cash Flow}_{T=2005}$ is \$2,506.) We now need a combined estimate for the eventual, stable, and eternal growth rate $\mathcal{E}(g)$ and the eternal cost of capital $\mathcal{E}(r)$.

29·4.A. The Cost of Capital

The first goal—determine the appropriate expected rate of return for PepsiCo—or, if you do not have historical data, a company like PepsiCo that is in its stable phase.

To determine the cost of capital for PepsiCo as of late 2001, you would probably rely on the CAPM. If PepsiCo is publicly traded, you can use its own historical return data. You can also use information from one or more comparables, such as Coca Cola—and this would be your only good option if PepsiCo were a privately held company. Table 29.5 gathers a couple of years of (dividend-adjusted) stock prices from Yahoo!*Finance* for the S&P500, PepsiCo, and Coca Cola.

Table 29.5. Four Years of Historical Stock Prices

Date	S&P500	PEP	KO	Date	S&P500	PEP	KO
2-Jan-98	980.28	\$32.86	\$58.87	3-Jan-00	1,394.46	\$31.94	\$53.21
2-Feb-98	1,049.34	\$33.20	\$62.39	1-Feb-00	1,366.42	\$30.07	\$45.05
2-Mar-98	1,101.75	\$38.95	\$70.56	1-Mar-00	1,498.58	\$32.79	\$43.65
1-Apr-98	1,111.75	\$36.22	\$69.12	3-Apr-00	1,452.43	\$34.49	\$43.94
1-May-98	1,090.82	\$37.24	\$71.40	1-May-00	1,420.60	\$38.25	\$49.64
1-Jun-98	1,133.84	\$37.70	\$78.04	1-Jun-00	1,454.60	\$41.92	\$53.58
1-Jul-98	1,120.67	\$35.64	\$73.48	3-Jul-00	1,430.83	\$43.22	\$57.19
3-Aug-98	957.28	\$25.52	\$59.44	1-Aug-00	1,517.68	\$40.23	\$49.11
1-Sep-98	1,017.01	\$27.06	\$52.73	1-Sep-00	1,436.51	\$43.54	\$51.59
1-Oct-98	1,098.67	\$31.02	\$61.82	2-Oct-00	1,429.40	\$45.85	\$56.51
2-Nov-98	1,163.63	\$35.56	\$64.24	1-Nov-00	1,314.95	\$42.95	\$58.78
1-Dec-98	1,229.23	\$37.70	\$61.43	1-Dec-00	1,320.28	\$47.06	\$57.19
4-Jan-99	1,279.64	\$35.97	\$59.88	2-Jan-01	1,366.01	\$41.84	\$54.43
1-Feb-99	1,238.33	\$34.64	\$58.57	1-Feb-01	1,239.94	\$43.75	\$49.77
1-Mar-99	1,286.37	\$36.26	\$56.42	1-Mar-01	1,160.33	\$41.86	\$42.53
1-Apr-99	1,335.18	\$34.18	\$62.56	2-Apr-01	1,249.46	\$41.59	\$43.51
3-May-99	1,301.84	\$32.85	\$62.97	1-May-01	1,255.82	\$42.63	\$44.64
1-Jun-99	1,372.71	\$35.94	\$57.13	1-Jun-01	1,224.38	\$42.23	\$42.55
1-Jul-99	1,328.72	\$36.17	\$55.80	2-Jul-01	1,211.23	\$44.55	\$42.17
2-Aug-99	1,320.41	\$31.70	\$55.11	1-Aug-01	1,133.58	\$44.91	\$46.02
1-Sep-99	1,282.71	\$28.44	\$44.59	4-Sep-01	1,040.94	\$46.48	\$44.30
1-Oct-99	1,362.93	\$32.35	\$54.53	1-Oct-01	1,059.78	\$46.68	\$45.27
1-Nov-99	1,388.91	\$32.23	\$62.36	1-Nov-01	1,139.45	\$46.61	\$44.57
1-Dec-99	1,469.25	\$32.99	\$53.96	3-Dec-01	1,148.08	\$46.80	\$44.75

Index values and prices on December 1, 1997, were 970.43, \$60.64, and \$32.98, respectively . All prices were obtained from Yahoo!*Finance*.

Compute the Historical Beta.

Augment this table by computing historical rates of returns from historical prices to obtain the following table:

Date	S&P500	KO	PEP	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{KO}$	$\tilde{r}_{PEP}$
2-Jan-98	980.28	$58.87	$32.86	1.015%	-2.919%	-0.3639%
2-Feb-98	1,049.34	$62.39	$33.20	7.045%	5.979%	1.0347%
2-Mar-98	1,101.75	$70.56	$38.95	4.995%	13.095%	17.3193%
...	...	...	...	...	...	...

With these rates of return, you can compute the relevant historical statistics:

Statistic	$\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	$\tilde{r}_{KO}$	$\tilde{r}_{PEP}$
Mean	0.49%	-0.21%	1.08%
Variance	27.77%%	84.46%%	67.03%%
Standard Deviation	5.27%	9.19%	8.19%
Cov with $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	27.77%%	12.76%%	19.30%%
Corr with $\tilde{r}_{S\&P500}$	100%	26%	45%

These statistics make it easy to calculate the historical equity beta of PepsiCo and Coca Cola:

$$\beta_{KO,S\&P500} = \frac{0.001276}{0.002777} = 0.46\ , \qquad \beta_{PEP,S\&P500} = \frac{0.001930}{0.002777} = 0.70$$
$$\beta_{i,S\&P500} = \frac{Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{S\&P500})}{Var(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_{S\&P500})} \tag{29.8}$$

So, what would be your best estimate of PepsiCo's future equity beta?

- You could just adopt PepsiCo's historical equity market-beta of 0.7 (if you know the historical value data for PepsiCo).
- You could believe that equity betas should be shrunk towards the average beta in the market, which is $\beta_{\mathcal{M},\mathcal{M}} = 1$. In this case, you might want to choose a market beta of $\beta_{PEP,S\&P500} = (0.7 + 1)/2 \approx 0.85$.
- You could compute an industry beta, which might be more reliable than even PepsiCo's own beta. After all, PepsiCo's data can be noisy because it relies on just one realization of history for just one firm. (Well, you do not have this information here, so let's skip this option.)
- You could assume that Coca Cola is similar to PepsiCo, which gives you information about PEP's future market-beta, too. You might then choose a market-beta of 0.46, or an average between PepsiCo's and Coca Cola's market-betas. This would give you an equity-beta estimate of around 0.58.

Let's presume you adopt $\beta_{PEP,S\&P500} = 0.7$ as your equity beta. But this is not the estimate number you need. You really want to value the assets and not just the equity of PepsiCo. About 10% of PepsiCo's market value was in various liabilities, which likely would have had market-betas close to zero. Therefore, with an equity beta of 0.7, PepsiCo's asset-beta would likely have been around $\beta_{PEP\ (FM)} = 90\% \cdot \beta_{PEP\ (EQ)} + 10\% \cdot \beta_{PEP\ (DT)} = 90\% \cdot 0.7 + 10\% \cdot 0 \approx 0.6$. So, henceforth, let us assume that your best asset beta estimate for PepsiCo is $\beta_{PEP,S\&P500} = 0.6$. (For convenience we omit subscripting the asset beta differently from the equity beta.)

CAPM inputs: risk-free rate choice.

To use the CAPM, you also need an estimate of the economy-wide risk-free rate and equity premium.

The Risk-Free Rate At the end of 2001, the 5-year Treasury Yield was about 4.4%, and the 20-year Treasury Yield was about 5.7%, holding pretty steady throughout 2001. Given that PepsiCo is likely to be around for a while, maybe a 10-year interest rate would be a good choice. You could choose a rate of around 5% per annum, perhaps plus or minus 1-2%.

file=proformas.tex: RP

SIDE NOTE: Of course, the CAPM demands a purely risk-free interest rate and not PepsiCo's interest rate (which already contains a default and risk premium). For curiosity, how does your risk-free return estimate compare to PepsiCo's historical average interest rate? The income statement suggests an interest expense of $219 in 2001 on balance sheet short-term borrowings of $354 and long-term debt of $2,651. This interest debt ratio suggests a nominal interest rate of about 7.3%—although we do not know whether some of the interest expense went to pay for other liabilities, when PepsiCo contracted to its debt, what the interest rate would be if it could refinance in 2001, or what PepsiCo bonds' relative liquidity premium would be. A quick look at Yahoo!*Finance* would show you that PepsiCo's bond rating was A+, which at the time carried nominal interest rates of just about 7.5%. Of course, these are promised interest rates, not expected interest rates.

Computing the Levered Equity Cost of Capital.

The Equity Premium It is more difficult to settle on an appropriate equity premium. Pretend that the board of PepsiCo and your own management have unanimously declared that 3% per annum is the standardized estimate.

Putting the three inputs together yields an appropriate CAPM cost of capital for PepsiCo—the firm (not the equity)—of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Asset Cost of Capital:} \quad \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}) &\approx 5\% + 3\% \cdot 0.7 \approx 7.1\% \\ \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\text{PEP}}) &\approx r_{\mathcal{F}} + [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}}] \cdot \beta_{\text{PEP,S\&P500}}. \end{aligned} \tag{29.9}$$

Let's just round this to 7%—the CAPM is not a model with accuracy after the decimal point, anyway. You must keep in mind that reasonable variations on the estimate for PepsiCo's market beta, for the risk-free rate, and for the equity premium could easily justify other cost of capital estimates, say between about 5% and 10%.

29·4.B. The Cost of Capital Minus the Growth Rate of Cash Flows

For choice of $\mathcal{E}(g)$, a wide range is often easy to come up with.

To compute a terminal value estimate via a perpetuity calculation, you need an estimate of the cost of capital ($\mathcal{E}(r)$) minus the eternal expected growth rate of cash flows ($\mathcal{E}(g)$). It is easy to come up with *high* upper limits for sustainable growth rates. For example, $\mathcal{E}(g)$ cannot be above the firm's cost of capital, or PepsiCo's value would be infinite. You would also not expect $\mathcal{E}(g)$ to be much above the growth rates of world GDP—you would not expect our world to consist of nothing but PepsiCo. In sum, a number like 5–6% is probably an upper bound on PepsiCo's $\mathcal{E}(g)$. You can also think of *low* lower bounds. Although it is not impossible to imagine PepsiCo fading away in terms of its importance, this probably will not happen too quickly, so we might want to choose a growth rate of no less than, say, −1% per annum. Sometimes, it is more intuitive to think of such changes not in terms of nominal growth rates, but in terms of real growth rates. With an assumption of an inflation rate of 2% per annum, the −1% growth rate would correspond to a real rate of decline of about 3% per annum.

For choice of $\mathcal{E}(g)$, a narrow range is more difficult—and subjective.

But you need to do better than these wide limits, or your valuation will have too large a range of possible values to be useful. To improve your eternal growth estimate, you can draw on information from two sources:

1. **Within Company Information:** For example, you can assume that managers will not be drastically overinvesting or underinvesting forever. This means you should be consistent in your choice of expected cash flows and the expected growth rate of your cash flows. Would you really want to assume that a firm invests 20% of its value each year forever, but will grow its cash flows by only 1% forever? Probably not.

   In PepsiCo's case, cash flow from investing activity was $2,637 million in 2001. This is a reinvestment rate of around 3% per annum, measured in terms of PepsiCo's value. (I peaked at PepsiCo's asset market value of $100 billion, which allowed me to compute $2,637/$100,000. I could have equally well used other market value estimates—such as the number that our pro forma will come up with in the end.) This is a reinvestment rate of about 3% per annum. A number in this vicinity for $\mathcal{E}(g)$ would make sense.

2. Industry or Comparable Firm Information: For example, you can analyze the publicly traded Coca Cola to better understand PepsiCo. Its economic cash flows were computed on Page 228. You can learn that Coca Cola had earnings of $2,431 in 1999, $2,177 in 2000, and $3,969 in 2001. Its economic cash flows were $799, $2,867, and $3,211, respectively—driving home yet again how lumpy cash flows are compared to earnings! Moreover, throughout 2001, Coca Cola was valued at just about $100 billion.

For Coca Cola's financials, see Tables 9.11 and 9.12.

If you think of Coca Cola in 2000 or 2001 as a comparable for a then-stable PepsiCo as of 2005, you can back out an estimate of $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$ from Coca Cola's value. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \$100,000 &= \frac{\$3,211}{\mathcal{E}(r-g)} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathcal{E}(r-g) = 3.2\% \\ \text{Terminal Value}_{2000} &\approx \frac{\text{CF}_{2001}}{\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g)} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{29.10}$$

This contains a small error, in that you should formally have used the cash flow forecasts for 2002, not those for 2001. However, this error is minor compared to the real problem. If you had computed this just two years earlier, the same calculation would have yielded not 3.2% but 0.8%! Clearly, the lumpiness of cash flows makes backing out eternal growth rates hazardous. This is the reason why many analysts prefer to use the smoother earnings as a standin for cash flows, similar to why many analysts do comparables (Chapter 10) in terms of earnings, not in terms of cash flows.

Wow! We do not have a dilemma for a change!

Remarkably, your two numbers for the eternal growth rates agree on an estimate for $\mathcal{E}(g)$ of about 3% per annum. (Such agreement is, unfortunately, quite rare.) Moreover, this is about 1–2% above the inflation rate, and roughly in line with generally predicted long-run real growth rates of GDP. This gives us some confidence in our estimates (or, more likely, overconfidence).

You could have easily used other estimates.

You can now combine the estimate of your eternal growth rate with your estimate for the cost of capital. At an appropriate expected rate of return at 7%, you would expect $\mathcal{E}(r-g) = \mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g) \approx 7\%-3\% = 4\%$ per annum. It is important for you to contemplate the importance of your estimate of $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$. You should recall that your cost of capital estimate could easily have been 10% instead of 7%, which would have meant $\mathcal{E}(r-g) \approx 10\%-3\% = 7\%$ per annum on the high end; or 5%, which would have meant $\mathcal{E}(r-g) \approx 5\%-3\% = 2\%$ per annum on the low end. So how big is the value difference that would come from different costs of capital and different eternal growth rates of earnings? Do you have to worry about it?

Differences in estimates of $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$ matter even for a company as large as PepsiCo, which does not have almost all its earnings power far in the future.

Unfortunately, the answer is yes. The uncertainty in your $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$ estimate is not only wide, but it also has a significant influence on your valuation. (This is often the case in the real world, too.) To see this, let us consider a cash flow estimate for 2005 of $2,506 million (from Table 29.2). Then, your base estimate of $\mathcal{E}(r) \approx 7\%$ and $\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g) \approx 4\%$ would translate into a terminal value estimate (in millions of dollars) of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Terminal Value}_{2004} &\approx \frac{\$2,506}{\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g)} = \frac{\$2,506}{4\%} \approx \$62,650 \\ \text{Terminal Value}_{T-1} &\approx \frac{\text{CF}_T}{\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g)} \ . \end{aligned} \tag{29.11}$$

Again, this terminal value (TV) represents the 2004 value of all future cash flows that PepsiCo will create from Year 2005 to eternity—the presumed market value if you had to sell PepsiCo at the end of 2004. Now vary the denominator and see how this terminal value changes:

$\mathcal{E}(r)$	$\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g)$	$\text{TV}_{T=2004}$	$\mathcal{E}(r)$	$\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{E}(g)$	$\text{TV}_{T=2004}$
5%	2%	$125.3 billion	8%	5%	$50.1 billion
6%	3%	$83.5 billion	9%	6%	$41.8 billion
7%	4%	$62.7 billion	10%	7%	$35.8 billion

Of course, because the terminal value estimates are as of 2004, you have to discount them back to 2001. One issue we will not have to confront in PepsiCo's case is that of time-changing

file=proformas.tex: RP

costs of capital. In upstart firms, the early discount rate would often be higher than the long-run discount rate (used in the growing perpetuity formula). The reason is that there is more uncertainty and market dependence before the firm reaches its more stable phase, causing a higher cost of capital early on. In contrast, for PepsiCo, the market risk is probably the same in 2001 as it is after 2004, so you can use the same discount rate. Therefore, you can just adopt the same $\mathcal{E}(r)$ for both early and late years. This gives 2001 equivalent present values of

$\mathcal{E}(r)$	$\mathcal{E}(r-g)$	$\mathsf{PV}_{T=2001}(\ \mathrm{TV}_{T=2004}\ )$	$\mathcal{E}(r)$	$\mathcal{E}(r-g)$	$\mathsf{PV}_{T=2001}(\ \mathrm{TV}_{T=2004}\ )$
5%	3%	\$108.2 billion	8%	5%	\$39.8 billion
6%	3%	\$70.1 billion	9%	6%	\$32.2 billion
7%	4%	\$51.1 billion	10%	7%	\$26.9 billion

A present value spread as large as \$26 billion and \$108 billion is a problem. Clearly, your uncertainty about the difference between the cost of capital and the appropriate eternal growth rate has a big impact on your valuation. What should you do now? In real life, you would probably entertain a range of possible values, do more research, and pick estimates based on the purpose for which you wanted to use the pro forma. If you wanted to sell the company, you would pick a low discount and high growth rate to make the value appear large. If you wanted to buy the company, you would want to claim a high discount and low growth rate in your negotiations with the seller. Yes, you would probably choose whatever suits you. It is not all science!

29·5. Complete Pro Formas

You now have the ingredients necessary to produce a pro forma with a market value: economic cash flow forecasts, a terminal value based on the cost of capital and eternal growth, and discount factors. Let's put it all together.

29·5.A. An Unbiased Pro Forma

Table 29.6 uses one set of assumptions that we deemed to be reasonable. It starts with the projected asset cash flows from Table 29.2.

Reasons why our pro forma value estimate for PepsiCo is too low.

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
	Year 0	Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4
Annual Cash Flows	\$1,712	\$1,883	\$2,071	\$2,278	\$2,506

The terminal market value estimate, as of 2004 for all cash flows from 2005 to eternity, is \$62.65 billion, assuming a 7% cost of capital and 3% eternal growth rate. Add the 2004 cash flows, and you obtain a value of \$65.0 billion for 2004. Finally, you must discount all cash flows, which gives you an estimated market value as of 2001 of

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{PV}_{2001} &\approx \$1.7 + \$2.4 + \$53.0 \approx \$57 \text{ billion} \\ &= \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_{2002}) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_{2003}) + \mathsf{PV}(\mathrm{CF}_{2004}) \ . \end{aligned} \tag{29.12}$$

Incidentally, this assumes that if you bought PepsiCo at the end of 2001, you would not receive the 2001 cash flows of \$1,712.

file=proformas.tex; LP

Table 29.6. Direct Economic Cash Flow Projections

Pro Forma Cash Flow Statement

Known			Cash Flow Model Growth at 10%			Terminal Value Growth at 3%	
2000	2001		2002	2003	2004	2005	
Year −1	Year 0		Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4	to ∞
$1,556	$1,712	Projected Annual Asset Cash Flows[1]	$1,883	$2,071	$2,278	$2,506	next row
		Terminal Market Value for 2005 to eternity at $\mathcal{I}(g) = 3\%$:			$\frac{\$2,506}{7\% - 3\%} \approx \$62.650$ billion		
		Total Cash Flows	$1,883	$2,071	$2,278+$62,650 ≈ $65.0 billion		
	1.000	Discount Factor, based on 7% cost of capital	0.935	0.873	0.816		
		2001 Present Value of Cash Flows	$1,712	$2,372	$53,001		
Total Present Value in 2001 of Asset Cash Flows from 2002 to Eternity: ≈ $57 billion							

Explanations (Notes):

Unless otherwise stated, values are in million dollars.
[1]: Projecting 10% growth due to investments, until (incl.) 2005. These particular estimates were derived in Table 29.2. (You could alternatively use the cash flows from the detailed projections, instead.)

file=proformas.tex: RP

29·5.B. A Calibrated Pro Forma

If PepsiCo was public, then we could use information about its market value!

Now switch your perspective to that of an analyst who is analyzing not the hypothetical privately held company, but the actual publicly traded PepsiCo. This allows you to check whether your pro forma value is in line with the actual market value. It turns out that PepsiCo's stock market-value was actually around $87.4 billion in 2001 (plus about $3 billion of debt and another $10 billion in other liabilities) for a total asset value of about $100 billion. This suggests that your pro forma value estimate was *way low*. (In Section 29·8, we will investigate using as-yet-unavailable *ex-post information* why this is so.)

We need to "calibrate" our model to the current market value.

Why would you want to find a pro forma market value for a firm for which you already have a public market value? Here is one scenario: you want to suggest capital structure changes that would not only increase PepsiCo's value, but also generate fees for your employer, an investment bank. The pro forma is the language of proposing corporate changes. Naturally, you will have to present your pro forma to PepsiCo's management. But before you can do so, you will want to have a value estimate that fits the current market value of PepsiCo—otherwise, PepsiCo's management would likely be so displeased with your original low pro forma value estimate that they will not listen to any of your proposals. It would also be silly for you to pretend that you believe that PepsiCo is worth only $54 billion when it is trading for $100 billion. You must somehow coerce the inputs in your model to fit the reality of PepsiCo's current market value better. You should look for reasons why PepsiCo is worth more than what your original pro forma suggests. Although this should rightly be called model "fudging," the technical term is model **calibration**.

We can tinker with the numbers.

You have basically three tools at your disposal that can do the job:

1. You can depart from your current projected cash flow path. The original pro forma relied on the direct-projection cash flows that assumed a growth rate of 10%. Altering the cash flow growth rate changes both the initial period cash flow projections and the 2005 cash flow projection of $2,506, upon which your terminal value was based. There are a number of alternative choices you can entertain.

   One way to justify higher cash flows is to argue for higher sales, lower expenses, higher future cash flows, etc. This can flow into a faster growth path for directly projected cash flows. For example, your calibrated model can assume that PepsiCo should be valued off cash flows that grow faster than 10%—say, 15%:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Projected	Year 0	Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4
Economic CF@ 15% growth	$1,789	$2,058	$2,366	$2,721	$3,130

   Another way to increase value is to work off the detailed financials from Table 29.4 rather than the direct projections, because the former were higher, reaching $2,400 as early as 2002.

   Yet another way is to shift your focus to earnings, either from the detailed financials or from the direct projection. You know that in the very long-run, discounted earnings and discounted cash flows should be roughly equal—after all, earnings "just" shift the time-series accruals. You also know that earnings may be more suitable to a growing-perpetuity valuation, because they are less affected by temporary and possibly lumpy investment patterns. Perhaps PepsiCo accelerated its investments in 2001, sacrificing immediate cash flows for higher future cash flows. So, relying on earnings growing at 3% per annum, you have the following revised figures:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Projected	Year 0	Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4
Earnings (not CF)	$2,662	$2,742	$2,824	$2,909	$2,996

   Or, you can rely on the detailed earnings projections, which were even higher, reaching $2,828 as early as 2002.

2. You can reduce your estimate of PepsiCo's cost of capital from 7% to a lower number. This has two effects: it makes future cash flows more valuable, and it increases your estimated terminal market value. The first effect is relatively unimportant—we know that present values over short horizons are reasonably robust to modest changes in the cost of capital. It is the second effect that gives you a lot of valuation "bang for the buck." Referring back to Page 747, you can see that reducing the cost of capital by just 1% gives you an extra $20 billion in present value. Reducing the cost of capital by 2% gives you an extra $60 billion.

3. You can increase PepsiCo's eternal earnings growth rate estimate $\mathcal{E}(g)$, thereby changing its growth profile. Doing so would assume that PepsiCo has more of the characteristics of a growth firm than a value firm. Increasing the eternal growth rate is just as powerful as reducing the long-term cost of capital. In the perpetuity, g and r enter only as a difference.

Voi-la! In the real world, you would probably choose a combination of these tools to increase the pro forma value to reach the actual market value. Table 29.7 contains one calibrated version of the PepsiCo pro forma that increases the initial cash flow growth rate from 10% to 15%, and reduces the cost of capital by 0.5%. Together, these two changes push the market value from $57 billion to $90 billion—and you could make up others. If you push it up a little more, PepsiCo's management would be pleased with your calibrated pro forma—it would indicate to them that their market value is justified. (Of course, you would not show them your original uncalibrated pro forma.)

Know what you are doing here when you are doing this! You must be conceptually clear about what it is that you are doing if you calibrate your pro forma: you are "fudging" numbers to make the outcome fit a market value. This is justified if you believe that the financial market's value of PepsiCo is efficient and better than your own pro forma estimate. You can "fudge" appropriately and responsibly or inappropriately and irresponsibly (and be on the lookout if someone else is handing you their pro forma estimates). For example, by adopting Coca Cola's 3% growth rate as appropriate, you are accepting the market's assessment of Coca Cola at face value—even though this seems economically like an optimistically low cost of capital and optimistically high growth rate. In one sense, you are adopting a "deus ex machina"—a number that is dropped on you from another part of the stage (the financial markets) and that you therefore do not fully understand. In another sense, you are just doing what you have always done: you are doing *relative* valuation, accepting the known market-value of a comparable as a good baseline in your quest to compute another project's valuation.

Table 29.7. Calibrated Economic Cash Flow Projections

Pro Forma Cash Flow Statement

Known			Cash Flow Model Growth at 15%			Terminal Value Growth at 3%	
2000	2001		2002	2003	2004	2005	
Year −1	Year 0		Year +1	Year +2	Year +3	Year +4	to ∞
$1,556	$1,712	Projected Annual Asset Cash Flows[1]	$1,969	$2,264	$2,604	$2,994	next row
		Terminal Market Value for 2005 to eternity at $\mathcal{E}(g) = 3\%$:			$\frac{\$2,994}{6.5\% - 3.0\%} \approx \$99.8$ billion		
		Total Cash Flows	$2,058	$2,366	$2,721+$99,810 ≈ $102.4 billion		
	1.000	Discount Factor, based on 6% cost of capital	0.943	0.890	0.840		
		2001 Present Value of Cash Flows	$1,857	$2,015	$85,989		
Total Present Value in 2001 of Asset Cash Flows from 2002 to Eternity: ≈ $90 billion							

Explanations (Notes):

Unless otherwise stated, values are in million dollars.
[1]: Projecting 10% growth due to investments, until (incl.) 2005. These particular estimates were derived in Table 29.2. (You could alternatively use the cash flows from the detailed projections, instead.)

file=proformas.tex; RP

29·6. Alternative Assumptions and Sensitivity Analysis

You need sensitivity analysis

What should you learn from this chapter? Perhaps most importantly: do not trust any single pro forma estimate. But you can do more analysis to help you understand how robust your estimates actually are. Most such techniques are easiest to perform in spreadsheets, which allow you to try out different assumptions and scenarios.

29·6.A. Fiddle With Individual Items

You want to find a best estimate of value—not the simplest or most complex, easiest or hardest pro forma.

Always keep your ultimate goal in mind—you want to find the best value estimate for your business. Your goal is not an exercise in NPV analysis. It is not beauty or simplicity, either. Though both are nice to have, if elegance requires sacrificing important value drivers, you cannot do it. Use your imagination, your head, and your good common sense!

You can use ad-hoc assumptions if you believe they offer better estimates.

You should pay attention to other information—and even your personal opinion. For example, in our PepsiCo valuation, $2,506 (or $2,994) was the estimated expected cash flow in 2005. If you have good reason to believe that this is a low estimate, you can adjust ("fudge") it. For example, if you believed that a new drink were to come on-line and give cash flows a one-time upward value transition of $500 million, then you can use $3,000 or even $3,500. Your estimate does not have to be based on formal, scientific forecasting, either. Of course, whoever is the consumer of your pro forma may not agree with your estimate, so you'd better be ready to mount a good and credible defense of your number.

You can use alternative terminal value estimates, too

Similarly, there are no laws that say that you have to use the growing perpetuity formula on cash flows to obtain your terminal market value. Instead of using the assumption that growth will remain eternally the same (say, 3%/year), you could develop another formula that assumes high growth rates for a few years (say, 5% next year), followed by growth rate declines until the growth rate reaches the inflation rate (say, 2% per year). Or, you might deem it best if you assumed that you could find a buyer for PepsiCo who will be paying $200 billion in 2005—ultimately, it is this quantity that you seek to model with your terminal value. Again, you'd better be ready to argue why your $200 billion should be the best estimate.

More analysis can help to determine expected (rather than just most likely) cash flows.

Modeling the pro forma as a spreadsheet will also allow you to consider specific future scenarios. For example, what would happen if the new product were to be wildly successful, or if it were to fall on hard times (though few pro formas in the real world consider complete failure–a mistaken omission)? What would happen in a recession, based on what has happened in past recessions? What would happen if sales were to decline by 5% next year, rather than grow by 3.6% per year? What would happen if sales were to decline for a number of years, not just for one year? How bad would one or many inputs have to be for you to regret having bought into the project in the first place? And, of course, you can ask the venerable payback question: how long will it take before you get your money back? Admittedly, with more time, technology, and printing space, you really should look at many different modified scenario analyses to understand our PepsiCo pro forma better. Computer spreadsheets were invented precisely to make such analyses relatively easy.

29·6.B. Do Not Forget Failure

The biggest problem. This is a scenario, not an expected value! Overall failure is often not considered.

The biggest problem in most pro formas, however, is not even in the details. It is the fact that a pro forma is just one particular scenario, and usually a reasonably optimistic one. Many pro formas are modeling just a "typical" or median outcome (recall Section 7·3). This would not be dissimilar to an average outcome *but conditional on the project not aborting altogether*.

Entrepreneurial ventures—especially tech ventures—often have almost all value in the terminal value estimate.

Obviously, this is more important for entrepreneurial ventures or startups than it is for PepsiCo. For example, if someone pitches you a new magazine, most of the time, the pro forma will project a mildly optimistic scenario—*on condition that the magazine succeeds*. It probably does not take into account the fact that 50% of all magazines fold within a year. It is your task as the consumer of the pro forma to determine for yourself the probability of overall magazine failure, or you will end up misled. (Immediate death does not matter for our PepsiCo pro forma. PepsiCo is likely to stay around for a few more years.)

29·6.C. Assessing the Pro Forma

What you should ask and what I can tell you.

By now, you should have realized that the question, "Which PepsiCo pro forma is correct?" is not a good one . *No* pro forma is correct! A better question is, "What kind of PepsiCo pro forma is better?" But perhaps the best question is, "How can I judge how good a pro forma is?" There is no easy answer.

An interesting diagnostic: what fraction of the value comes from the final value estimate?

You should definitely contemplate your uncertainty about each input. Often, the most influential source of uncertainty is the long-run value. For PepsiCo, it came into play in your terminal value. An interesting statistic is, therefore, what fraction of the value comes from the terminal value. In PepsiCo's case, the present value estimate was \$57 billion, of which roughly \$53 billion came from the terminal value. After calibration, the value estimate was about \$90 billion, of which \$86 billion came from the terminal value. So 95% of your PepsiCo pro forma value was buried in your terminal value estimate. To the extent that you do not trust this terminal value, you should be particularly careful. Of course, if you had stretched T, more value would have been part of the detailed period rather than the terminal value—but this would not mean that your forecast would have had more reliability. Consequently, the fraction of terminal value in the overall value is only one interesting diagnostic. But then again, a large influence of the terminal value is fairly common, even for established companies. And startup companies typically have even more of the future cash flows far in the future, although they also have higher costs of capital early on. Many entrepreneurial venture business plans have 80% to 95% of their value in this "dark-gray box" called terminal value. Watch out!

Monte-Carlo Estimation.

Are there any tools that can help? Even though a spreadsheet is the right tool for presenting and playing with one pro forma at a time, it is really the wrong tool to incorporate your uncertainty in a more systematic way. Your input into each cell of your pro forma spreadsheet should really contain not just one number for your best estimate, but also a second number that tells you how reliable you deem your best estimate to be. This is what an even more sophisticated method of analysis—called **Monte-Carlo Simulation**—does. It allows you to associate your uncertainty with each cell in your pro forma spreadsheet. The Monte-Carlo procedure then simulates a whole range of possible scenarios (NPV values), and gives you a distribution of outcomes. Think of it as an automated sensitivity analysis. But this is beyond the scope of a first textbook in finance.

Monte-Carlo Analysis is explained in the web chapter on real options.

29·7. Proposing Capital Structure Change

We want to propose capital structure changes.

Return to the scenario in which you are an investment banker seeking to propose a capital structure change. Equipped with your calibrated pro forma, you can now go in front of PepsiCo's management and present two capital structure scenarios—the current structure and the proposed change. Your exposition of any proposed capital structure change will again be through a hypothetical pro forma, including the full balance sheet and financing section on the cash flow statement, but space constraints in this textbook limits our discussion.

The current situation.

Let's begin evaluating PepsiCo's current capital structure. In 2001, it had short-term debt of $354 and long-term debt of $2,651. Other liabilities and deferred income taxes added another $5,372. The income statement tells you that this caused PepsiCo to pay $219 in interest and $1,367 in corporate income taxes (provisionally). With $4,029 in pre-tax earnings, this is a 34% average tax rate.

Judge the reasons pro and con capital structure.

Of its asset market value of over $100 billion, $87 billion was in equity and only $3 billion was in financial debt. (The rest were other liabilities.) With so little financial debt, the only question of real interest is whether it would make sense for PepsiCo to take on more. To answer this question, you must weigh the various capital structure rationales from Part IV—questions like:

- How likely is PepsiCo to go into financial distress if it increases its leverage?
- How much could it save in corporate income taxes if it takes on more debt?
- How important are free cash flow effects? How much in value would PepsiCo gain by operating more efficiently?

And so on.

To sell to PepsiCo, you must estimate the cost of debt.

In PepsiCo's case, many of these questions are relatively easy. For example, the probability that PepsiCo will experience financial distress if it took on a couple of billion dollars in extra debt is very low. Moody's rated PepsiCo's current debt an A1, just below Aa3; Standard and Poor's rated it an A. To pitch a new debt issue, you would have to inform PepsiCo what you believe its cost of debt would be if it took on more debt. You would probably begin by looking at the credit ratings of other companies. For example, Table 29.8 gives some relevant statistics for firms with different credit ratings, debt ratios and interest coverages. In 2001, PepsiCo had a book-value based debt/assets ratio of 14%, and its EBIT/interest ratio was about 25. In fact, PepsiCo seemed like an outlier—its S&P rating should have been AA, not just A+.

Let's speculate on alternative capital structure interest rates.

Table 29.8 suggests that firms with long-term debt of about 30% and an EBIT/Interest ratio of 7 still tend to rank as "investment grade," a category that many investment professionals consider an important break. How much debt could PepsiCo take on to reach this high a level? The answer is around $4 billion. With about $4 billion additional debt, and even if PepsiCo had to pay an 8% interest rate, it would still likely remain BBB-rated. A quick look at prevailing interest rates on financial websites further reveals that AAA bonds promised to pay about 7%, BB bonds about 7.95% on average. Consequently, a PepsiCo with $6.5 billion in debt may have to promise an interest rate of about 7.7% (which seems high relative to our cost of capital). Of course, to really convince PepsiCo, you should spend many more hours researching a good interest rate estimate for PepsiCo's new debt.

The dollar effect of releveraging—long term and short term tax savings.

Against these costs of borrowing, management should weigh the potential benefits of more debt. What would the effect of such leveraging be on PepsiCo's value? Fortunately, we even have formulas to help us assess the tax savings. For each dollar extra in debt rather than equity financing *forever*, you know that the corporate income tax savings would have a present value of $\tau \cdot \mathrm{DT}$. Specifically, with an interest rate of 7.7% on $4 billion of new debt, PepsiCo's interest proceeds would increase by $300 million. In turn, at its $\tau = 33\%$ tax rate, this would create a net present value of tax savings of about $100 million in the first year alone—about 4% of net income. If PepsiCo maintained the extra $4 billion in perpetuity, the present value of these tax savings would come to over $1.5 billion—not bad for a day's work.

See Section 22·7.B.

Table 29.8. Characteristics of Firms by S&P Bond Ratings, December 2001

		Investment Grade			Speculative Grade		
		AA	A	BBB	BB	B	C
Long-Term Debt / Book-Assets	Mean	23%	26%	34%	43%	54%	62%
	Std.Dev.	15%	16%	16%	20%	26%	56%
	Quart 1	11%	15%	23%	30%	36%	22%
	Median	20%	26%	33%	42%	52%	56%
	Quart 3	32%	37%	44%	53%	67%	86%
EBIT / Interest	Mean	17	11	7	5	4	1
	Std.Dev	15	15	11	14	25	4
	Quart 1	6	4	3	2	0	-1
	Median	14	7	5	3	1	0
	Quart 3	24	12	8	5	3	1

PepsiCo had an equivalent total debt over assets ratio of $(\$2,651 + \$354)/\$21,695 \approx 14\%$, and an equivalent operating income over interest ratio of $\$5,490/\$219 \approx 25$. Assets are book value based, and, for an old firm such as PepsiCo, severely understate assets.

Other Efficiency-Related Savings.

It is more difficult to judge the operational savings that more debt could bring. For example, PepsiCo's unions might see a seemingly less profitable company (lower earnings), which would make them more willing to accept lower wages. Management might work harder, too—perhaps even cut a few corporate airplanes. In deciding whether it would make sense value-wise to relever, you would add these tax savings to any efficiency gains from debt, and subtract any dead-weight losses.

You can return the cash to shareholders either as dividends or in a repurchase. This makes sense primarily if you do not believe that shares are already overvalued.

See Section 19·3.C.

Finally, there is another issue at hand. To take advantage of the tax savings, the money would need to be returned to shareholders—or else it would earn more taxable net income. This can be done either through dividend payments or through a share repurchase. Both have the disadvantage that if PepsiCo were overvalued in the market, as the original pro forma suggested, PepsiCo should raise more money in the equity markets, too, and not repurchase our shares. As you learned, overvalued shares allow you to raise capital at very low expected rates of return.

In real life, your problem would not be maximizing firm value; your problem would be convincing management—an example of an agency issue.

But, as a junior investment banker looking out to create value for PepsiCo shareholders, your most important problem would almost surely be elsewhere. It would be the problem of convincing PepsiCo's management that more leverage is good for *them*. You could tell management that if they raised $4 billion in debt to repurchase $4 billion in equity, they would probably create an instant corporate value increase of $1 billion—more than just one-year's $100 million savings, but less than the $1.5 billion perpetuity income tax savings. Unfortunately, this is unlikely to sway management. Clearly, with more debt and less equity, they would have less ability to take over other companies, start new projects, purchase corporate airplanes, or build corporate empires. As an investment banker, in thinking about how to pitch to PepsiCo's management, you would have to ask yourself—what's in it for PepsiCo's management? (Any productive answer would most likely have to lie in the compensation package of management.) One good choice for an investment banker is to identify potential candidate firms to take over—not only will this create issuing fees, but it will also create advice fees. (And the investment banker can suggest acquisitions that can create value even for the acquiror, too!) But on an equity value of $87 billion, even $1 billion in more value is only about 1% of PepsiCo's stock market value—clearly, you would have an uphill struggle on your hands, even though a debt-for-equity issue would just as clearly create shareholder value. (And hindsight knowledge tells us not only that PepsiCo maintained its capital structure, but also that it continues to pay around $300 million in interest expense, and continues to incur tax obligations of around $1.4 billion every year.)

So, your best shot may be to convince PepsiCo to take over another company and lever up in the process. (There is another alternative, too: you could try to convince a third party to take over PepsiCo and relever. Unfortunately, this is not very attractive, because PepsiCo may already have been overvalued by the market, if you believe your original pro forma.)

29·8. HINDSIGHT

Hindsight allows us to autopsy!

Let's now switch perspective again. This time, you will look at the preceding analysis as an economist with hindsight. Remember that in our previous perspective, PepsiCo was a publicly traded firm. Consequently, you had a real market value upon which you could calibrate your pro forma estimate. But why was this real market value so much higher than our original unbiased pro forma estimate? Were the financial markets too optimistic, or were you too pessimistic?

This is unfair—you would not have this information.

In fact, we wanted to work with PepsiCo as of 2001, because you can now see how your financial forecasts turned out in hindsight. But before we delve into what happened to PepsiCo from 2002 to 2005, you should realize that the actual realized ex-post performance would not necessarily have been the best ex-ante estimate, because it contains subsequent and possibly unexpected developments. For example, if you had believed defense contractors to be poor investments in 2000, it might have been the right bet, but the events of and following September 11, 2001 would have proved you wrong. This does not mean that your 2000 forecast was bad, or that you should have bet on a growing defense sector in 2000. (It may be of little consolation to you if your bet would have lost you a lot of money.) Nevertheless, more often than not, the best forecast is more likely to be borne out by the events of the future. Analyzing one realization of the subsequent events is not giving you a perfect assessment of what you should have predicted—but it is informative. In our case, PepsiCo's actual 2002-2005 performance can help tell you why the financial markets in 2001 were more optimistic than your pro forma was, though not perfectly so. An autopsy can therefore give you some good but not perfect hints where our forecast was wrong.

Table 29.9. Actual Vs. Forecast Cash Flows and Earnings for PepsiCo

	Known			Predicted		
Year	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
Actual Econ. Cash Flow	$1,641	$2,501	$1,556	$4,242	$2,169	$2,817
Projected, Direct, Tables 29.2 and 29.6				$1,883	$2,071	$2,278
Projected, Detailed, Table 29.4				$2,400+		
Actual Net Income	$2,505	$2,543	$2,662	$3,000	$3,568	$4,212
Projected, Direct, Page 737				$2,742	$2,824	$2,909
Projected, Detailed. Table 29.3				$2,828		

+: The detailed projected cash flow omits interest paid, and is therefore a little too low.

Your cash flow and especially earnings forecasts were too low!

If your cash flow forecasts were too low, your pro forma forecast would have been too pessimistic. Indeed, Table 29.9 shows this turned out to be the case. In 2002, PepsiCo sold off some subsidiaries and therefore produced cash of over $4.2 billion. In 2003, PepsiCo invested more than usual, and its cash flows dropped back to just above $2 billion. This confirms what you already knew—cash flows are too lumpy to be well suited to direct projections. But what about your earnings forecasts? They grew more smoothly than cash flows—but also much faster than what you had projected. By 2004, actual earnings were almost 50% higher than your detailed forecast. No wonder that your pro forma was too pessimistic!

Further information.

A closer reading of the 2002 annual report reveals what happened. After adjusting for changes in the reporting of sales and COGS, PepsiCo's 2002 sales actually increased by about $1.6 billion, much more than the projected $971 million sales growth (from $26,935 million to $27,906 million) in the detailed pro forma in Table 29.1. Almost all of the increased sales ended up as profit. Higher sales in later years, too, can explain why most of the pro forma forecasts were so mistakenly low. Our method—mechanistic projection models from past financial data—is rarely very good, and PepsiCo was no exception. Unless you had known the business and market well enough to forecast sales this high, you would have stood no chance!

How to reach the $100 billion!

You can also autopsy the pro forma estimate of $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$. As of mid 2005, PepsiCo had an asset market cap of $100 billion ($87 billion in equity) on earnings of $4.3 billion, plus another $300 million in interest payments. Consequently, it is now capitalized at about $\mathcal{E}(r-g) = \mathcal{E}(CF)/\mathsf{PV} \approx 4.5\%$—in line with our own forecasts. Next, autopsy the forecast for $\mathcal{E}(r)$, again as of 2005. PepsiCo had a lower beta of only about 0.35—closer to the optimistic historical 0.7 beta than the pessimistic, shrunk beta of 0.9. Interest rates also turned out to have remained low, so the 2005 cost of capital estimate might be

$$\mathcal{E}(r) = 5\% + 3\% \cdot 0.35 \approx 6\% , \tag{29.13}$$

which was lower than our unbiased 7% cost of capital estimate. Together with the $\mathcal{E}(r-g) \approx 4.5\%$, this implies that PepsiCo is capitalized as if its earnings were to grow only by about 1.5% per year—not a very optimistic valuation, and indeed even lower than both the 2005 rate of inflation and the estimate in your unbiased pro forma. So, we did not do too badly on our $\mathcal{E}(r-g)$ forecast.

This was an "easy" pro forma—and we were still off by a factor of two.

In sum, in hindsight, the primary driver of PepsiCo's higher value was its higher sales. Let this be a lesson in humility: even for a large and established company with a solid history, valuation is difficult and suffers from plenty of uncertainties—though economic knowledge could have done much to improve our estimates. But how much more uncertain are pro formas of upstart projects, in which even more of the value lies far in the future?! This uncertainty should not discourage you, however. Just as the CAPM is the premier model for the cost of capital, the pro forma is the premier model to write business plans—*simply, there is no better alternative.*

Forecasting the future is the tough job that economic value is all about. Fortunately, you don't even need to be able to forecast *well*. All that matters is that you can forecast *better* than the rest of us. If you can, you will become rich.

A reasonable way to approach public market values.

Finally, how would I, as an investor in 2001, have looked at your pro forma? Most of my faith would have been in the market value of PepsiCo, not in your pro forma value analysis. I would not have trusted your ability to forecast the economics. However, if you had had more knowledge of the underlying sales dynamics, your value analysis could have raised enough doubts in me to believe that PepsiCo might be a little overvalued. After all, any public market value is the clearing price where the bears and bulls on PepsiCo are in equilibrium—and your analysis would have led me to join the bears. But I would have kept it all in proper perspective—it would have been irrational for me to believe that the appropriate market price of PepsiCo would be the pro forma $57 billion, when I could have seen the market value of $100 billion—a reasonable synthesis of the PepsiCo value estimates would instead have concluded a value closer to the market value than to the pro forma value—say, a synthesis of $95 billion.

29·9. Caution — The Emperor's New Clothes

Do not automatically trust pro formas! They often look very professional even if they are not credible.

Did our projections seem arbitrary to you? They should, *because they were arbitrary*—and this chapter made a point of telling you so throughout. But look back at the financials in Tables 29.3 and 29.4. If you did not round but quoted a few more digits (for pseudo-accuracy), if you expanded the footnotes with some more mumbo-jumbo, and if you added a few more columns of future years, a naïve reader might be fooled into thinking that you were a sophisticated analyst who knew what you were doing! It is important that you not end up being such a naïve consumer of pro formas. A well-written pro forma can easily convey an image of professional knowledge where there is none. (Form over content may work here!) In the case of pro formas, even the best emperor wears only a bathing suit.

Do not lose the forest and discuss mini-details.

Another danger for the unwary pro forma reader is falling into the trap of looking at the trees, rather than the forest. You can easily get involved in endless discussions of a particular projected item in someone else's pro forma. In real life, most pro formas rely on plenty of heroic assumptions—in some cases, there are just one or two critical assumptions, in other cases, there may be many. You must look at the big picture as well as at the minor assumptions. There is devil in both detail and in the sum-total.

What a good pro forma is and is not.

I hope I have not been sounding dismissive of pro formas. On the contrary—again, you really have *no* alternative, and forecasting the future is inherently a difficult but important task. The universal use of heroic assumptions does not mean that there is no difference between a good and a bad pro forma. A less naïve reader can certainly distinguish a good one from a bad one. A good pro forma pitched to a sophisticated audience must use solid economics and have detailed footnotes explaining and justifying just about every important line item. It is a starting point for a good discussion, not an end in itself.

Closing the circle.

Ultimately, finance is about value, so it must revolve around projections, and pro formas are a good tool to organize projections. Projecting is very hard. Remember how the book started? I told you then that valuation is both an art and a science. The formulas are easy; the application is hard. I trust that you believe me now. Welcome to the club of financiers!

file=proformas.tex: RP

29·10. SUMMARY

The chapter covered the following major points:

- The purpose of pro formas is to project financials, which are then often used to compute a project's NPV today. You can also use pro formas to perform a ratio analysis to test the financial soundness of a business plan or to analyze a project's working capital requirement.
- Pro formas are usually split into a detailed forecast period and a terminal value.
- A good horizon choice for the detailed forecast period depends on the economics of the business and the prevailing discount rate.
- A quick-and-dirty pro forma analysis may just project the line items of direct use. A more complete pro forma analysis can try to project many intermediate components.
- A useful distinction is to think of fixed vs. variable (sales-contingent) forecasts for individual components.
- Scenario analysis helps you to better understand the uncertainty in your pro forma.
- Pro formas are often idiosyncratic and not very reliable. But you have no better alternative. So, use caution in constructing and interpreting pro formas.

A. Appendix: In-a-Pinch Advice: Fixed vs. Variable Components

What is fixed, what is variable? Some advice.

Is it possible to predict *in general* how firms' income statements and cash flow statements are likely to develop in the future? Is depreciation better modeled as consisting of fixed+variable components, or is it better modeled as a fixed component only, or as a variable component only? Is COGS more sales-variable or more stable, or are dividends? Of course, every business is different, so there are no uniform answers here. Some firms rely more on fixed-cost technologies, others on variable cost technologies. However, rather than not provide any guidance, I will now describe how corporate financials have evolved *on average* in publicly traded companies. Our specific interest is whether particular accounting items have been better explained by their own history or by sales growth. Although such knowledge of how the average publicly traded firm has evolved can sometimes help you in a pinch (when you need something quickly and without much thought), it is better if you regard this section as a "jumpstart" to get you to do more economic thinking, exploration, and business modeling of your particular company.

Important: *If you can, ignore the crutches provided for you in this section. Instead, execute your modeling based on specific and sound intelligence about your business.*

Our projections consist only of a fixed component and a variable (sales-related) component.

Our basic public company financial item prediction model will be

$$\mathcal{E}(X_{t+1}) \approx y_{\text{fixed}} \cdot X_t + y_{\text{variable}} \cdot \left\{ X_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{t+1})}{\text{sales}_t} \right] \right\} . \tag{29.14}$$

where X is a financial statement number, such as COGS or SG&A, and t is a year index. For example, statistical history suggests that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\text{SG\&A}_{t+1}) &\approx 36\% \cdot \text{SG\&A}_t + 68\% \cdot \left\{ \text{SG\&A}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{t+1})}{\text{sales}_t} \right] \right\} \\ &= y_{\text{fixed}} \cdot \text{SG\&A}_t + y_{\text{variable}} \cdot \left\{ \text{SG\&A}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}(\text{sales}_{t+1})}{\text{sales}_t} \right] \right\} . \end{aligned} \tag{29.15}$$

This says that the typical firm's SG&A was about one-third related to its own past SG&A value, and two-thirds related to SG&A adjusted for sales growth. How would you use this prediction in our PepsiCo pro forma? In 2001, PepsiCo had SG&A of \$11,608, and sales of \$26,935. Projected 2002 sales were \$27,906 for a 3.6% increase. Thus, Formula 29.15 suggests

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\text{SG\&A}_{2002}) &\approx 36\% \cdot \$11,608 + 68\% \cdot \left[\$11,608 \cdot \left(\frac{\$27,906}{\$26,935} \right) \right] . \\ &\approx 36\% \cdot \$11,608 + 68\% \cdot [\$11,608 \cdot (1 + 3.6\%)] \\ &\approx 36\% \cdot \$11,608 + 68\% \cdot \$12,025 \approx \$12,356 . \end{aligned} \tag{29.16}$$

The left part in the formula measures the "fixed effect," i.e., the degree to which SG&A remains the same as last year's SG&A, independent of PepsiCo's 2002 sales growth. The right part in the formula measures the "variable effect," i.e., how SG&A has to increase with sales growth in 2002.

SIDE NOTE: The reason why the coefficients in formula 29.16 do not add up to 1 is that SG&A increased on average in the sample—perhaps due to inflation. If γ_{fixed} is 1 and γ_{variable} is 0, then the best prediction of X next year is the same as X this year. If γ_{fixed} is 0 and γ_{variable} is 1, then the best prediction of X next year is obtained by multiplying last year's X by the observed or predicted sales increase from this year to next year.

It is important that you do not believe that the precise coefficient estimates of 36% and 68% are applicable to *your* company. They are based on mechanical statistical models, which rely only on historical information for publicly trading companies that may be totally unrelated to your own, and on a time period that is ancient history. The coefficient estimates can serve only as "quick-and-dirty" stand-ins until you use your skills and smarts to produce something better. They are here only to help give you some initial guidance in your own economic exploration of whether a particular financial item in your firm tends to be more fixed or more variable.

Again, use the estimates for guidance, and—if need be—as stand-ins, but do not believe they fit your project well.

Moreover, keep in mind that most of the time, you will be asked to create a pro forma when the company contemplates a change in policy, or when you want to propose a new project. The historical behavior of large publicly traded companies is unlikely to be a good representation of what will happen in such circumstances. Instead, your pro forma forecasts must be specific in addressing contemplated policy changes. So, please do better than the formulas below.

Projection formulas can definitely be hazardous to your wealth. Watch it.

Enough words of caution. Here are some nuggets of forecasting advice:

Sales This is the most important variable. You must forecast this number as diligently as you possibly can. Other variables below can depend on this critical estimate. For illustration, we shall forecast PepsiCo's 2002 sales to be \$27,906, which means that PepsiCo's 2002 sales growth is $\$27,906/\$26,935 - 1 \approx 3.6\%$.

COGS In our average publicly traded companies,

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{COGS}_{t+1}\right) \approx 6\% \cdot \text{COGS}_t + 95\% \cdot \left\{\text{COGS}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.17}$$

Coefficients so close to 0 and 1, respectively, suggest that cost of goods sold is best explained as a constant ratio of sales (unless the firm deliberately shifts production into different [fixed cost] production). Like all other formulas below, this formula is based on the history of reasonably large publicly traded U.S. firms (and thus is neither necessarily applicable to smaller firms nor to the future).

To use this formula to forecast PepsiCo's COGS for 2002, you would compute

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{COGS}_{2002}\right) &\approx 6\% \cdot \text{COGS}_{2001} + 95\% \cdot \left\{\text{COGS}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 6\% \cdot \$10{,}754 + 95\% \cdot \{\$10{,}754 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$11{,}229 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.18}$$

SG&A Selling, general & administrative expenses tend to have both a fixed and a variable component. A typical firm may be modeled by assuming that two-thirds is related to the sales increase, and one-third is related to historical SG&A. A formula estimated on reasonably large publicly traded U.S. firms suggests that

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{SG\&A}_{t+1}\right) \approx 36\% \cdot \text{SG\&A}_t + 68\% \cdot \left\{\text{SG\&A}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.19}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{SG\&A}_{2002}\right) &\approx 36\% \cdot \text{SG\&A}_{2001} + 68\% \cdot \left\{\text{SG\&A}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 36\% \cdot \$11{,}608 + 68\% \cdot \{\$11{,}608 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$12{,}356 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.20}$$

Unusual Expenses No particular advice.

Operating Income Either construct from the items above (i.e., use the accounting identities), or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Oper.Inc.}_{t+1}\right) \approx -41\% \cdot \text{Oper.Inc.}_{t} + 120\% \cdot \left\{\text{Oper.Inc.}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.21}$$

Note that operating income is extremely sensitive to sales growth: any extra sales on the margin has more than a one-to-one effect on operating income. This is why the first coefficient is negative and the second is above 1. It makes economic sense: operating income goes positive only above some break-even sales point. (A strong sensitivity to sales growth also appears in some other variables below.) However, there is one unusual feature of this formula that you should understand: the two coefficients sum up to considerably less than 100%. This means that the formula indicates a strong "drift" of operating income towards zero. For example, for PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Oper.Inc.}_{2002}\right) &\approx -41\% \cdot \text{Oper.Inc.}_{2001} + 120\% \cdot \left\{\text{Oper.Inc.}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx -41\% \cdot \$4{,}021 + 120\% \cdot \{\$4{,}021 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$3{,}350 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.22}$$

You would estimate declining operating income even in the face of increasing sales! This also occurs in a number of formulas below. You must watch out for this—and think about whether such a drift towards zero would make sense for your particular company and pro forma!

Interest Income/Payments Either construct from debt and/or previous year's interest payments, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Intst Inc.}_{t+1}\right) \approx 22\% \cdot \text{Intst Inc.}_{t} + 67\% \cdot \left\{\text{Intst Inc.}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.23}$$

Remember: If a change in capital structure policy is contemplated, this item needs to reflect it.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Intst Inc.}_{2002}\right) &\approx 22\% \cdot \text{Intst Inc.}_{2001} + 67\% \cdot \left\{\text{Intst Inc.}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 22\% \cdot \$8 + 67\% \cdot \{\$8 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$7 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.24}$$

Income Before Tax Either construct from items above, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{t+1}\right) \approx -32\% \cdot \text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{t} + 116\% \cdot \left\{\text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.25}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{2002}\right) &\approx -32\% \cdot \text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{2001} + 116\% \cdot \left\{\text{Inc.bef.Tax}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx -32\% \cdot \$4{,}029 + 116\% \cdot \{\$4{,}029 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$3{,}553 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.26}$$

Income Tax Either construct from items above, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Income Tax}_{t+1}\right) \approx -55\% \cdot \text{Income Tax}_{t} + 123\% \cdot \left\{\text{Income Tax}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.27}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Income Tax}_{2002}\right) &\approx -55\% \cdot \text{Income Tax}_{2001} + 123\% \cdot \left\{\text{Income Tax}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx -55\% \cdot \$1{,}367 + 123\% \cdot \{\$1{,}367 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$990 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.28}$$

Income After Tax Either construct from items above, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{t+1}\right) \approx -30\% \cdot \text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{t} + 113\% \cdot \left\{\text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.29}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{2002}\right) &\approx -30\% \cdot \text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{2001} + 113\% \cdot \left\{\text{Inc.aft.Tax}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx -30\% \cdot \$2{,}662 + 113\% \cdot \{\$2{,}662 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$2{,}318 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.30}$$

Extraordinary Items No specific advice.

Net Income Either construct from items above, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Net Inc.}_{t+1}\right) \approx -42\% \cdot \text{Net Inc.}_{t} + 114\% \cdot \left\{\text{Net Inc.}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.31}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Net Inc.}_{2002}\right) &\approx -42\% \cdot \text{Net Inc.}_{2001} + 114\% \cdot \left\{\text{Net Inc.}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx -42\% \cdot \$2{,}662 + 114\% \cdot \{\$2{,}662 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$2{,}026 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.32}$$

Depreciation, Depletion, Amortization Either construct from items above, or forecast as

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{DDA}_{t+1}\right) \approx 42\% \cdot \text{DDA}_{t} + 62\% \cdot \left\{\text{DDA}_{t} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_{t}}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.33}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{DDA}_{2002}\right) &\approx 42\% \cdot \text{DDA}_{2001} + 62\% \cdot \left\{\text{DDA}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 42\% \cdot \$1{,}082 + 62\% \cdot \{\$1{,}082 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$1{,}149 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.34}$$

Deferred Taxes Very strongly related to sales growth and/or capital investment.

Non-Cash Items Very sticky, but negatively related to sales growth.

Changes in Working Capital In Chapter 9, we discussed that changes in working capital can use up cash quite quickly, especially when the firm is growing fast! Consequently, this

is one of the cases where a negative coefficient on the sales-growth-adjusted term makes sense! And, indeed, we find that a decent model for large firms is

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\Delta WC_{t+1}\right) \approx 46\% \cdot \Delta WC_t + (-43\%) \cdot \left\{\Delta WC_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.35}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\Delta WC_{2002}\right) &\approx 46\% \cdot \Delta WC_{2001} + (-43\%) \cdot \left\{\Delta WC_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 46\% \cdot \$84 + (-43\%) \cdot \{\$84 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx 1 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.36}$$

Capital Expenditures Capital expenditures seem to be strongly related to sales growth.

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CapExp}_{t+1}\right) \approx 0\% \cdot \text{CapExp}_t + 100\% \cdot \left\{\text{CapExp}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.37}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CapExp}_{2002}\right) &\approx 0\% \cdot \text{CapExp}_{2001} + 100\% \cdot \left\{\text{CapExp}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx 0\% \cdot \$1{,}324 + 100\% \cdot \{\$1{,}324 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$1{,}324 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.38}$$

Note: If a change in capital expenditures policy is contemplated, this item needs to reflect it.

Other Investing Very sticky, but negatively related to sales growth.

Total Cash Flows From Investing Activity

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CF-Inv}_{t+1}\right) \approx (-320\%) \cdot \text{CF-Inv}_t + 340\% \cdot \left\{\text{CF-Inv}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.39}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CF-Inv}_{2002}\right) &\approx (-320\%) \cdot \text{CF-Inv}_{2001} + 340\% \cdot \left\{\text{CF-Inv}_{2001} \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\} . \\ &\approx (-320\%) \cdot \$2{,}637 + 340\% \cdot \{\$2{,}637 \cdot [1.036]\} \\ &\approx \$850 .\end{aligned} \tag{29.40}$$

Very strongly related to sales growth.

Financing Cash Flow Items No useful relationship.

Dividends Very sticky, but negatively related to sales growth.

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Dividends}_{t+1}\right) \approx 159\% \cdot \text{Dividends}_t + (-82\%) \cdot \left\{\text{Dividends}_t \cdot \left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\} . \tag{29.41}$$

This estimated formula often does not make much economic sense: Why would dividends go down if sales go up? It is not altogether impossible, of course. For example, if the firm experiences great sales surprises, it may decide that it needs the money to cover working capital or that it wants to reinvest the money rather than pay it out as dividends. However, you should consider this on a case-by-case basis. You might be better off just assuming last year's dividends.

Net Stock Issuing No useful relationship. Strongly related to sales growth.

Net Debt Issuing Strongly related to sales growth.

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Debt-Issue}_{t+1}\right) \approx (-192\%)\cdot\text{Debt-Issue}_t + 195\%\cdot\left\{\text{Debt-Issue}_t\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\}. \tag{29.42}$$

Total Cash Flows From Financing Activity Mildly related to sales growth.

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CF-Fin}_{t+1}\right) \approx (-0.07)\cdot\text{CF-Fin}_t + 0.25\cdot\left\{\text{CF-Fin}_t\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\}. \tag{29.43}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{CF-Fin}_{2002}\right) &\approx (-0.07)\cdot\text{CF-Fin}_{2001} + 0.25\cdot\left\{\text{CF-Fin}_{2001}\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\}.\\ &\approx (-0.07)\cdot\$1{,}919 + 0.25\cdot\{\$1{,}919\cdot[1.036]\}\\ &\approx \$363.\end{aligned} \tag{29.44}$$

Foreign Exchange Effects Sticky.

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{FX}_{t+1}\right) \approx 0.75\cdot\text{FX}_t + (-0.52)\cdot\left\{\text{FX}_t\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\}. \tag{29.45}$$

For PepsiCo,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}\left(\text{FX}_{2002}\right) &\approx 0.75\cdot\text{FX}_{2001} + (-0.52)\cdot\left\{\text{FX}_{2001}\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{2002}\right)}{\text{sales}_{2001}}\right]\right\}.\\ &\approx 0.75\cdot\$4 + (-0.52)\cdot\{\$4\cdot[1.036]\}\\ &\approx \$1.\end{aligned} \tag{29.46}$$

Total Net Cash Flows

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\text{Net CF}_{t+1}\right) \approx 272\%\cdot\text{Net CF}_t + (-267\%)\cdot\left\{\text{Net CF}_t\cdot\left[\frac{\mathcal{E}\left(\text{sales}_{t+1}\right)}{\text{sales}_t}\right]\right\}. \tag{29.47}$$

Here is an example of an estimated formula that serves as a warning: a negative coefficient on the sales-growth adjusted number probably makes little sense for most large companies. Yes, it could be that the company does consume more working capital as it grows, but it just does not seem to be applicable in many cases—such as PepsiCo. You might just want to avoid this formula.

DIGGING DEEPER: *The formulas are estimated using "regression analysis." For super-nerds, to normalize firms, all variables were normalized by sales, regressions were run firm-by-firm, and the coefficients were then averaged over firms. Even more sophisticated modeling assumptions and techniques did no better than the simple regression approach adopted here.*

In conclusion, do not trust these formulas. They are merely tools you can use for constructing a first draft of your pro forma—they are not good blueprints. Forecasting the performance of any business, but especially a new business, remains an art that relies on the underlying sciences of economics, statistics, accounting and finance. Don't just rely on statistics alone. Use common sense. Use good knowledge of the economics of the business and the industry. Document your reasoning in informed and detailed footnotes. And then—pray!

Solve Now!

Q 29.1 *Complete the 2002 forecast in the cash flow statement model in Table 29.4. Create a forecast for 2003. (Iterate on depreciation and investing to determine sensible inputs into both.)*

1. There is no clear and unique answer to this question. Here is a reasonable attempt.

	Income Statement	December 2001	2002	2003	Model Used
=	Sales	$26,935	$27,906	$28,911	grows by 3.6%
	COGS	$10,754	$10,761	$11,023	$3,506+26% of revenue
	+ SG&A	$11,608	$12,279	$12,721	44% of revenue
	+ Deprec/Amort	$165	$168	$168	3-year average
	+ Unusual Expenses	$387	$279	$289	1% of revenue
–	= **Operating Expenses**	$22,914	$23,486	$24,201	Sum The Above
=	**Operating Income**	$4,021	$4,420	$4,710	Subtract The Above
+	Net Interest Income	$8	$0	$0	Too Ignorant and Lazy
=	**Income before Tax**	$4,029	$4,420	$4,710	Subtract The Above
–	Corporate Income Tax	$1,367	$1,591	$1,696	36% of IBT
=	**Income After Tax**	$2,662	$2,828	$3,014	Subtract The Above
–	Extraordinary Items	$0	$0	$0	Too Ignorant and Lazy
=	**Net Income**	$2,662	$2,828	$3,014	

	Cash Flow Statement	December 2002	2003	Model Used
=	Net Income	$2,828	$3,014	transferred
+	Depreciation and Depletion	$1,149	$1,216	formula
+	Deferred Taxes	$286	$305	18% of Income Tax
+	Non-Cash Items	–$46	–$46	Average Historical
+	Changes in Working Capital	$43	$71	27% of Revenue *Increase*
=	**Total Operating Activity**	$4,260	$4,560	Sum Above
=	Capital Expenditures	–$1,313	–$1,321	$-\$1,200 - 4\% \cdot$ Earnings
+	Other Investing	–$1,000	–$1,000	Arbitrary. Sticky.
=	**Total Investing Activity**	–$2,313	–$2,321	Sum The Above

Depreciation: 42% times prior year depreciation plus 62% times sales-grossed-up prior depreciation.

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

Part VI

Appendices

The Appendix

(A part of all versions of the book.)

APPENDIX A

EPILOGUE

Afterthoughts and Opinions. **Preliminary**

last file change: Feb 23, 2006 (15:37h)

last major edit: n/a

You have traveled a long distance with me throughout this book. We have now reached the Epilogue, where by tradition, I am allowed to voice my own personal and perhaps unscientific opinions. I want to leave you with some of my thoughts on business and finance education, finance as a discipline, and financial research.

ANECDOTE: Yogi Berra's Theory and Practice

In theory, there is no difference between theory and practice. In practice, there is.

— Yogi Berra

A·1. Thoughts on Business and Finance Education

By nature, most disciplines in business schools, but especially finance, are closely related to practice. It is not an overstatement to claim that the majority of ideas in finance were either invented or developed in Academia, before they crossed over into practice. Unfortunately, over the years, fundamental misunderstandings have developed, which have become the source of much frustration among both faculty and students. Let me try to correct some of them.

A·1.A. Common Student Misconceptions

Some students seem to believe that business schools exist primarily to increase salaries and to enhance job opportunities. As a result, they expect a "vocational education." It is no wonder that they are especially fond of some practitioner-teachers, who can share plenty of war stories, vouch for the importance of their own teaching in their business environment, and may even help some students to get a job at their own or their friends' businesses.

This is a sad and limited view of what business schools have to offer. It will necessarily cause their finance education to be a rather unrewarding experience. Vocational training is not what top business schools are good at. The top business schools are without exception *not* vocational training centers, but research centers. Community colleges teach job-specific skills; universities do not!

Business schools provide—or at least should provide—a profoundly intellectual experience. Such an experience allows students to take a fresh look at the world, to explore other business areas for the first time, to learn how to think in economic and business terms, to consider the intellectual foundations of business, and to learn about the most novel ideas—those that have not yet permeated practice. Chances are that the practice in any given company is based on knowledge that the previous generation of managers learned in business schools *ten to twenty years ago*.

So, the value of an M.B.A. graduate—even to the first employer—is not his/her immediate business knowledge. It makes no sense for M.B.A. students to learn how the fixed-income department at Goldman Sachs works *this year*, which is well known by anyone working there (including the secretaries), and which will surely be best explained by the Goldman Sachs traders to any new hire upon arrival. Instead, the value of M.B.A. students to an employer is the intellectual ability; knowledge of the fundamentals, basic theories and their application; cutting edge ideas; human skills; team skills; sales skills, etc. Some of these skills are native, but most can be taught or at least improved upon by studying. In the end, it is an individual's versatility and curiosity, an ability to generalize and synthesize, and a talent for bringing an aerial perspective to specific problems that will allow the newly minted M.B.A. to be of value for many years to come.

Naturally, many students feel a great deal of anxiety about job prospects, and therefore they tend to prefer skills that they believe will facilitate immediate placement upon graduation. Trust me: pretending to have been taught business practice in business schools is not what employers want. Employers first and foremost want to hire smart, curious, and enthusiastic individuals, who are solid on the basic concepts and who can apply them to new situations. They can teach their own practices better than business schools can.

ANECDOTE: The Time Warp
Do you really want to just learn what the CFO knows *today*? In October 2003, City&Guilds (U.K.) released their study of 405 random financial directors. One in seven needs help even switching his or her computer on and off. One in five struggle to save a document. More than one in five need assistance in printing. And a quarter cannot understand spreadsheets. (Source: The Register.)

file=epilogue.tex: RP

Student Heterogeneity

Realize that there are distinct student populations.

There is another factor at play which may make you initially unhappy in your introductory finance class—but it is important that you realize why this is so. Chances are that you will find yourself in a classroom with considerable heterogeneity in student preparation. Some students will be more comfortable with math then other students. If you are taking this course in business school, half the students may have come from a background in which their prime function was finance-related. Usually, such finance work experience will not have left them with solid enough knowledge to skip the finance core course, but it will have left them with the knowledge to help them better integrate the new information. Large and distinct student populations are a fact of life in many introductory finance courses. It is thus inevitable that you find yourself in a classroom in which many students find the tempo of the first course finance too fast and many other students find it too slow. On the plus side, I have found that it can work very well if students with worse backgrounds are tutored by students with better backgrounds. On the minus side, the temptation is high to just let the "finance jocks" take care of the group assignments. Do *not* let this happen, or the preparation problem will accumulate and become unsurmountable.

It is impossible to time a finance course in a business school core, so that both the well-prepared finance nerds and novices will be happy all the way.

Now put yourself into the shoes of your finance instructor. There is plenty of material that can absolutely not be skipped. Interviewers expect students to have a solid grasp of the finance basics (but fortunately not of practical esoterics). It is not uncommon for an interviewer to ask questions that could go right onto the midterm or final. To appreciate the difficult task of the instructor, now add the heterogeneity in student background. The need to grade does not improve student happiness much, either. The well-prepared students start out with a considerable headstart when it comes to test performance relative to students who come from non-quantitative and non-financial backgrounds. The world is not fair—and neither is the grade competition in such a course.

Advice to the "non-quants": As a less prepared student, you must struggle.

In the end, there is no way around it: it will be a challenge for previously unprepared and non-technically inclined students to keep up. It is the task of the instructor to make this a surmountable challenge. This is the most important goal of a finance course—*all* motivated students must be able to acquire a solid finance background. But if you are one of those students without quantitative and financial preparation, you will inevitably feel overwhelmed by your class experience. Let me advise patience, practice, and reflection: it will all eventually fall into place, kemosabe, and you can do well *in the end*. Some of my best and brightest students felt frustrated during the course, but they kept at it, studied and learned twice as hard, and ended up at the top of their class. Struggling and anxiety along the way are necessary, maybe even desirable, and in the end unavoidable.

A·1.B. Common Faculty Misconceptions

Some faculty are as mistaken as students. They seem to believe that ideas in Academia are too difficult to communicate to M.B.A. students in an exciting and interesting fashion. They deemphasize current academic research in their classes. They rarely talk about what it is that drew themselves to business schools rather than to practice: the excitement of new knowledge and research, and the opportunity to convey ideas to students and the world at large. If academic research is not universally incorporated into the curriculum and identified as such, then it is not surprising that students find little value in it. In fact, if the research ideas are so obscure that they cannot be explained to and appeal to M.B.A. students, they probably are of little interest to begin with.

So, here is my personal appeal to faculty in core courses: in addition to integrating current research throughout the curriculum, please reserve your final teaching session of class to talk about academic research in finance in general terms—and the academic research in *your* own department, specifically. My own experience tells me that students will find this to be the single most popular session of the entire course.

A·1.C. Business School vs. Practice

Table A.1. Advantages and Disadvantages of Business Schools over Business Practice

	Some Examples of
What Business School Teaches Better Than Practice	What Practice Teaches Better Than Business School
General, universal knowledge	Job specific knowledge
Concepts of business	The specific business
General tools (statistics, data, economics, etc.)	Specific tools (e.g., a particular accounting system)
Marketing methods	Our product or service marketing
Method of thinking	Method of company's practice
Concepts of ideas for the next 20 years	Implementation of ideas from the last 10 years
Knowledge for a lifetime	Knowledge for this year
Leadership principles and theories	Learning how to lead a particular Set of people
Source of conflict	Conflict resolution with a specific person
Learning by study	Learning by doing
Reflection	Action
Selling principles	Selling our product or service
Negotiation principles	Negotiating with specific customers
Forests	trees

Business schools can teach some subjects better than practice, but not all. This is *not* to say that practice is any less interesting than Academia. It *is* to say that practice is best taught by practice (the employer) than by business schools. As an M.B.A. student, be patient: the fixed income department at Goldman Sachs will explain in its own training program the specialized fixed income and institutional knowledge that it will require. The fixed income department does not seek individuals who already know what Goldman Sachs will teach in its first week. Instead, the fixed income department seeks smart, flexible, and open-minded individuals, with a solid understanding of fundamentals—of forests, not of trees. Table A.1 is my perspective on who does what better.

Business schools should focus on subjects that they can teach both well and better than practice. One or the other is not enough. For example, there is ample research that has shown that taller people are more successful. But height is not something that business schools can contribute much to, so we should not teach it. Take the second: I wish I knew how to teach you how to "sell" anything—products, services, ideas. In my opinion, the ability to sell to other people—to get them excited—may be the single most important skill and key for success in life. Now, some people are naturally adept at selling, others can learn it, and still others will never be good at it. Unfortunately, although selling ability is undoubtedly enormously important, this does not mean that business schools can and should teach it. It may be better learned by following the company's best salesperson. (I will let you know when I figure this one out!) In sum, do not expect to learn *everything* you need for success either only in practice or only in school! If you do, you will be disappointed.

ANECDOTE: Success in Business: Grow up!
Timothy Judge, a University of Florida management professor, finds that controlling for gender, weight, and age, each inch in height seems to add about $789 a year in salary. In his study, greater height boosted subjective ratings of work performance, including supervisors' evaluations of how effective someone was on the job. It also raised objective measures of performance, such as sales volume. The relationship between height and earnings was particularly strong in sales and management, but was also present in less social occupations such as engineering, accounting and computer programming.
Source: Yahoo.

file=epilogue.tex: RP

A·1.D. The Rankings

In 1988, *Business Week* (BW) began to publish a bi-annual ranking of business schools. This rankings issue has become one of BW's top sellers. Unfortunately, the quality of the rankings is only mediocre. Worse, the influence of the rankings on business education has been both enormous and negative.

The BW rankings are based primarily on "customer satisfaction" surveys of students and recruiters. Consequently, the BW ratings end up mostly as a popularity contest, and are not based on criteria that measure the quality of education. For example, consider another prominent survey: students at California State University at Chico were #1 in *Playboy*'s Party School Rankings. They would probably rate their satisfaction very highly—but this does not make Cal-State Chico a good school. The same issue applies to recruiters sampled by BW. Most recruiters are themselves alums of *one* of the schools they are asked to rank. Most business school alums have never studied at any school beyond their own—a fact that naturally makes them relatively ill-equipped to make comparisons. (They also see themselves reflected in the students from their alma mater.) Because larger schools have more alums that are sampled, the size of the pool of alums ends up being the primary predictor of "recruiter opinion" in the BW survey. The result is inevitable: the average recruiter ranks his or her own alma mater highest (or at least very highly). Finally, all schools, students, and alums are now catering to and manipulating the BW rankings. Students and alums know that if they do not rank their own school highly, the values of their degrees will go down. And in almost every school, some faculty member will explain this to those students who have not yet understood this basic fact. In sum, popularity ratings are not a great measure of educational quality.

But the most important error of the BW survey is that it treats education as if it were a consumption good sold by vendors. Instead, education is something that is coproduced by the school *and the student*. Almost anyone with an above-average IQ can get a degree in a business school today, but its usefulness is largely determined by the depth of engagement of the student. A student who coasts will gain little, no matter how good the school is.

This is not to say that there are no quality differences between schools. There are quality differences, but the BW rankings do not fairly reflect them. My advice to any student is to consider many rankings only as useful supplementary indicators. For example, Harvard Business School (HBS) should probably be ranked as the #1 business school for a general M.B.A. education today, although a ranking somewhere between #1 and #5 would be more appropriate. But HBS is not #1 in every field. Its finance education, though superb, is not the world's #1. There are other schools that are at least as good. In contrast, HBS' education in corporate strategy—where its world-renowned case method works well—is undoubtedly #1. Yale, my prior school, may not boast a top 3 M.B.A. program, but it offers the #1 ranked education for management of not-for-profit organizations today. And so on. Finally, quality differences among similarly ranked schools are often modest: most schools teach similar curricula. The material in this book should appeal to students of any school. My personal guess is that the educational quality difference between the #1 school and the #10 school is very small (as it would be between #10 and #30, or between #30 and #100). *The variation in what an individual gets out of an M.B.A. program within one individual school just swamps the average quality variations across schools.* It is up to you to make your education top-ranked.

Fortunately, although deciding on the right school is a tough problem, there are many good choices to pick from. It is especially encouraging to me that many schools that never show up in any of the rankings are offering excellent business educations. Again, by selection of classes and instructors, a student can easily get a worse business education at, say, Harvard Business School, than at, say, Notre Dame, even though Harvard clearly outranks Notre Dame in any ratings.

SIDE NOTE: In my opinion, there are no good distance-learning universities in existence today. (This may change in the future.) The most prominent, the so-called University of Phoenix, is a great business for its owners, but not for its students. Its degrees are not recognized by others and it is not accredited by the AACSB. (This is not an absolute necessity for an established top-10 school, but it is necessary for an upstart school.)

file=epilogue.tex: LP

A·2. FINANCE: AS A DISCIPLINE

A·2.A. Art or Science?

I have stated several times throughout the book that finance is as much an art as it is a science. All three parts of finance—valuation, investments, and financing—have simple conceptual underpinnings, but their applications in real life are difficult. And for all three of them, there is no alternative: finding the proper value, the proper portfolio, the proper capital structure may be tough, but this is what it is all about. The difficulty of these questions is good news for practitioners and academics alike: it means that computers will not replace them for a long time to come.

What to do for now? Given that all methods have their errors, the best advice is to use common sense, to employ a number of different techniques to come up with a whole range of possible answers, and then to make a judgment at the end of the day as to what appears most reasonable in light of different models and estimates.

A·2.B. Will We Ever Fully Understand Finance?

No! It is the nature of the beast. Most of finance is a social science. When there are no arbitrage conditions to constrain permissible behavior and prices, behavior and prices can and will deviate from the theory. On occasion, this leads some to conclude that finance is less worthy of study or even a lesser science than, say, mathematics or physics. This is a mistake. The questions are different. Finance is not interested in the big bang, and physics is not interested in the behavior of C.F.O.'s. The study of one is not more or less worthy than the study of the other.

Finance and physics even share many similar philosophical issues: Some questions permit more precise answers than others. Some systems (like the weather and stock prices) are chaotic and difficult to predict, while others (like Newtonian mechanics and option prices) are more exact. It may even surprise you that I am comfortable stating that economics and finance ask many questions to which the answers are more difficult and complex than those often pondered in mathematics and physics. For example, economic agents can react to economic forecasts, which makes predicting the stock market even harder than predicting the weather. Imagine how much more difficult it would be for atmospheric physicists to predict the weather if the weather read the weather forecast, and changed its behavior after reading the weather forecast!

Unfortunately, we are now encountering a new hindrance to progress in finance. Financial institutions have come to consider their data to be their proprietary competitive advantage. Fear of legal liability is further limiting the data that becomes available for public study—and given the litigiousness of U.S. society, justly so. Sadly, many of the most interesting questions in finance therefore may no longer be researchable or answerable.

The fact that we do not have all the answers is good news and bad news. The bad news is that we will never fully understand financial markets and individuals. The good news is that our knowledge will continue to improve, and that there is plenty of space for new and exciting research in finance. For me, this means finance is still intellectually challenging enough to remain "fun."

file=epilogue.tex: RP

A·3. Finance Research

Finance research is not just for aspiring academics: consulting firms are basically research firms. Academics and consultants may have different audiences, production speeds, team systems, and evaluation processes, but they both research issues of interest to business and do so using similar methodologies. There is also much cross-fertilization: many professors work regularly with major consulting firms—and some have even quit Academia altogether and departed for higher paying jobs in consulting.

A·3.A. Accomplishments of Finance

Rather than taking up space here, let me just refer you to my paper called The Top Achievements, Challenges, and Failures of Finance, available for free download at the book's website or the Social Science Research Network (www.ssrn.com).

A·3.B. Interesting Current Academic Research

Fortunately, finance is by nature a very applied discipline. If you have read this book, you already understand the main questions and problems in finance and financial research today. You do not need a higher finance degree. Unfortunately, academic finance journals (and many academics) love obscure jargon and algebra. It may or may not require some extra training in "language" for you to follow the writeups of academic papers in academic journals. But, in the end, with just a little bit of extra jargon, you should be able to pick up the important journals and understand the most cutting-edge and interesting research ideas in finance today.

A·3.C. Getting Involved in Academic Research

My own recommendation to an aspiring student of finance is first to learn what the top professors (and especially the younger professors) in your own school are working on. Then, browse SSRN for current working papers. Finally, you should work for a professor in your finance or economics department, even if it is unpaid—though you should pick a professor who does not have too many assistants already. You will learn more in this one-on-one contact than you will learn from taking many classes.

A·3.D. Finance Degrees

The most common finance degree in many of the top schools is the M.B.A. with a specialization in finance. But increasingly, many universities, such as UC/Berkeley, Princeton, and Wharton, are offering undergraduate degrees in finance. The Harvard economics department may well feature the best finance department in the world right now, and it teaches only undergraduates and Ph.D. students. Similarly, universities like Brown and the University of Chicago are just beginning to expand financial economics curricula into undergraduate education. Finance definitely qualifies as a subject with no less intellectual rigor than economics, and no more of a specialization/vocational education component than, say, pre-med or biochemistry.

There are also some other programs that offer masters programs in finance, e.g., the N.Y.U. program in mathematical finance, offered by the Courant Institute. Typically, these programs have a bent towards financial engineering. Their graduates tend to come from specific backgrounds (usually some other engineering discipline), and their graduates tend to work in specific types of jobs (typically in derivatives and fixed income modeling). Finally, there is the Ph.D. track, discussed next.

A·3.E. Academic Careers in Finance and Economics: A Ph.D.?

Finance is a subfield of economics. About one-third of its professors have an economics Ph.D. instead of a finance Ph.D. Either degree is sufficient—although it is imperative for the future academic to have solid grounding in both disciplines.

The typical Ph.D. program in finance takes between 4 and 8 years. Unlike most degree programs, success is not guaranteed. About one-third of accepted students drop out, typically after 2 to 4 years—not a cheap outcome. Although qualifying exams, usually taken in the first two years of the program, are very challenging, the biggest hurdle for almost every Ph.D. student to overcome is the transition from classroom work to academic research. This is a Gordian knot, and success is difficult to predict. Although intelligence and smarts are necessary, it is not mathematical sophistication that determines success. Very little of finance uses more than plain algebra—although it does use lots of it. Instead, the successful Ph.D. student must develop a problem-relevant intuition and creativity. If I only knew how to translate this skill into a recipe!

Although the first 4 years in Ph.D. programs are usually paid for by full stipends by the university, the opportunity costs and the uncertainty of ultimate success mean that only the most intellectually interested students will find a Ph.D. program to be a rewarding endeavor. For the successful graduate, job opportunities tend to be plenty and lucrative. Even academic careers are not exactly a vow of poverty. In 2003, the typical first year Assistant Professor in a top business school earned somewhere between $130,000 and $180,000 per year. Industry jobs in financial or consulting institutions sometimes pay more even in the first year, but their big advantage is that salaries tend to escalate far more rapidly than those in Academia in subsequent years. Finally, many economics and finance Ph.D.s pursue governmental careers, e.g., at the *International Monetary Fund* or the *World Bank*.

It is very encouraging that many universities and institutions today conduct terrific academic research in finance and economics. Thirty years ago, only a handful of schools were able to produce great papers, but this time of exclusivity has passed. This does not mean that there are no differences in average academic quality. I will volunteer here my personal impression of the rank order of academic finance departments today, which is based on the tendency of departments to successfully attract faculty from other departments. In my opinion, the top academic department today is the University of Chicago. It is followed closely by "Cambridge," which is really the combination of Harvard (economics and finance) and M.I.T. (economics and finance). A large number of schools vie for the ranking spots right after. Among them, but not exclusively, are (in alphabetical order) Columbia, Duke, N.Y.U., Northwestern, Stanford, U.C./Berkeley, U.C.L.A., Wharton, and Yale. These schools each have their unique advantages and disadvantages, and regularly succeed in stealing faculty from one another.[1] There are also a large number of excellent schools, many of which have individual faculty who are every bit as good as some faculty at, say, Chicago, but which typically do not have the same overall average academic quality or resources.

The average quality of a finance or economics department can make an important difference for Ph.D. students, however. They benefit greatly from the variety of interaction. Therefore, a Ph.D. from any top academic institution would make an excellent springboard into a top-notch academic economics or finance department, or into a very high-quality investment or consulting career.

[1] I almost surely have omitted some schools by mistake.

file=epilogue.tex: RP

A·3.F. Being a Professor — A Dream Job for the Lazy?

So, what does a professor do? Multiply the number of classes per year by the hours per class, and you arrive at a number of 120–180 hours per year. Is being a finance professor the ultimate dream job for the lazy?

Sorry to disappoint you—the opposite is the case. The classroom hours during which you see your instructor are just a small part of the job—most comparable perhaps to the small number of hours in which a litigation lawyer is in the courtroom. The rule of thumb is that every hour of teaching of a new course requires about ten hours of preparation. This includes topic selection, comparative evaluations of various textbooks, reading of the relevant literature, preparation of slides and homeworks, and so on. Many finance professors do not teach exactly what is in any one textbook, but inform *themselves* about what *they* should teach, how *their* material fits together in one coherent set, what relevant papers have recently appeared in the literature, what relevance their courses and subjects have to current events and their own locale and audience, where they think the textbooks are wrong, how their finance courses relate to other academic areas, and so on. (Fortunately, once prepared, a course would take only about two hours of preparation for each hour of teaching.) Add this all up, and the 150 hours have already increased to about 600–800 hours. In addition to course preparation and lecturing, there are class handling tasks, office hours, teaching assistance coordination, and grading. This easily adds another 100 hours per year. Finally, many finance professors get roped into holding speeches at school events, and giving lectures not within the context of their regular classes. So, a typical finance professor may spend about 800 to 1,000 hours per year on teaching related issues.

Is this it? Of course not! Tenure-track finance professors are promoted based on their research. Where do you believe the insights in this book have originally come from? Yes, most financial concepts are now heavily used in practice, so even practitioners know them—especially if they were taught concepts in their own academic training decades ago—but it is the academic published research that is responsible for 99% of what you have read in this book. After all, if smart practitioners invent something useful, they do not teach it—they keep it secret and try to sell it. So how much time do professors spend on creating knowledge? Writing an academic paper can take anywhere from 100 hours to 1,000 hours. I know this from painful experience, having written papers that fall into both extremes of this spectrum. Moreover, a good amount of research flops and thus never ends up in a published paper. After all, this is why it is called research and not development! In total, a research-active professor will publish one or two papers per year spending about 500 to 1,500 hours per year on research. Attending conferences and seminars that are necessary to keep up with the profession and publicize one's work may require another 100 hours.

Is this it? Sorry, still no. There is service. Students need advising—undergraduate students, masters students, and Ph.D. students. Universities are governed by the faculty and run by committees that need to be staffed. Alumni and potential donors need to be charmed. Depending on the particular university and one's particular role, this can be anything from 2 hours per week to 10 hours per week. In-school service therefore sums to another 100-500 hours per year.

For all of the aforementioned tasks, you may be able to catch your professor in the act—that is, you are the direct beneficiary or may be present when he or she is spending time working thereon. However, an important part of a professor's job is service to the profession overall. Academia lives by peer evaluation. This applies both to papers and careers. Journals need referees to judge papers. Schools need outsiders to write academic letters for promotion. Refereeing a paper or writing a reference for another professor at another university (should) take at least a day (10 hours). Different professors get different number of external evaluation requests—my own number sits at about 30 per year, consuming about 300 hours per year of my time. There is very little direct reward for doing a good, conscientious job on refereeing and referencing, but it is necessary to make Academia work. As an external referee or evaluator, you are also literally making or breaking someone else's career. It is every professor's duty to take these tasks very seriously.

Putting this all together, my typical year has about 2,500-3,000 hours of work per year. On an hourly basis, my compensation would probably be five times higher if I worked for a top consulting firm or investment bank. (If you read my chapter on ethics, in which I more or less describe economics as the science of "profit maximization" with little concern for others, I hope you will see the irony.) So, why do I work for a university? Simple—I love my work. I love teaching students, I love writing research papers, and I love having the relative independence to do what I want to do that only an academic job can provide. Yes, not every single task is enjoyable, but overall, it is the best job for me.

Now I must admit that telling you all about what I do in a typical year had a second hidden agenda. I want you to understand the difference between a full-time professor and a part-time professor. Understanding the full scope of professorial obligations will hopefully make you appreciate why you need "the real deal." Yes, both faculty and students can benefit from some lecturers who know practice well, who are only teaching what they themselves learned in their programs (often decades ago, though supplemented with their practical experience), and who do not participate in academic research and in the running of the university and of the academic profession. In fact, many lecturers are very valuable, both to the research faculty and to the students. They can complement our academic knowledge with some practical experience. And a small number start out as lecturers and over time turn into full faculty and excellent researchers. But it is the regular faculty that remains the backbone of financial economics—who provide you with new knowledge to navigate the broad continent of finance over the next few years.

A·3.G. Top Finance Journals

The top academic journals in finance today are *The Journal of Finance*, the *Journal of Financial Economics*, the *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, the *Review of Financial Studies*, and the *Journal of Business*. However, there are also many other good outlets for academic research. For example, economics journals have published some of the most influential work in finance. Other journals are written with more of a practitioner audience in mind, such as *Financial Analysts Journal*.

Although numbers do not tell the whole story (it is impact that counts!), the tenure standards for professors range from about 8–10 papers in the top journals for a Chicago professor, to 5–7 papers for a school ranking at around #10, to 3–5 for a school ranking at around #30. The top journals have rejection rates of about 90%. A successful academic will write about 2–3 papers per year, but publish only one of them in a top journal.

file=epilogue.tex: RP

A·4. Bon Voyage

Our book has covered the principles of finance in some depth and breadth. You can trust me when I say that if you have read and understood these chapters, you are very well prepared for the next steps in your finance/business education. (You can choose your next courses á la carte: investments, derivatives, corporate finance, fixed income, financial institutions, international finance, or something else. If you are still curious to learn more, visit the book's web site at http://welch.econ.brown.edu/book.)

But even more important to me than teaching you finance has been teaching you how to approach problems: when you need to solve a new problem, think in terms of the easiest numerical example that you can come up with, and only then translate whatever you have learned from your simple example into something more complex—be it a formula or a more complex scenario. So, if you are facing a new problem, even if you do not know or remember any of our formulas, given time, you should now be able to "reinvent" them. When you encounter a complex new problem in your company, do not despair, but gradually work your way up from the simplest versions.

I have enjoyed writing this book in the same way that I enjoy writing my academic research papers, and pretty much for the same reason: it has been like solving an intriguing puzzle that no one else has figured out in quite the same way—a particular way to see and explain finance. Of course, writing it has taken me far longer than I had anticipated—four years and still counting just for the first edition.

But it will all have been worth it if you have learned from my presentation. If you have studied the book, you should now know about 90% of what I know about finance. Interestingly, there were a number of topics that I thought I had understood, but had not—and it was only my having to explain it that made this clear to myself. And this brings me to a key point that I want to leave you with—never be afraid to ask questions, even about first principles. To do so is not a sign of stupidity—on the contrary, it is often a sign of deepening awareness and understanding.

I have no illusions that you will remember all the fine details in this book as time passes—nor will I. But more than the details, I hope that I will have left you with an appreciation for the big ideas, an arsenal of tools, a method to approach novel problems, and a new perspective. You can now think like a financier.

Ivo Welch

APPENDIX B

More Resources

An NPV Checklist, Some Data URL Links, Algebra, Statistics, and Portfolios

last file change: Feb 19, 2006 (12:33h)

last major edit: n/a

file=appendix.tex: LP

2·1. An NPV Checklist

Here is an abbreviated list of issues to worry about when using NPV.

The NPV formula is easy. For most projects, its application is hard. It is usually very difficult to estimate future cash flows (and even their appropriate interest rates), especially for far-in-the-future returns. It is usually more important and more difficult to avoid errors for the expected cash flow (the NPV numerator) than it is for the cost of capital (the NPV denominator). The NPV formula is less robust to cash flow errors than it is to cost of capital (r) errors, and it is "easier" to commit dramatic errors in the cash flow estimation than in the cost of capital estimation.

Here is an abbreviated checklist of items to consider when working out NPV estimates.

- ✓ **Real After-Tax Dollars** (Page 138, Page 141, Page 141):
  - ✓ Have all relevant inputs and outputs been quoted in what-is-relevant-to-you after-tax dollars? This applies to both expected cash flows and to appropriate discount rates.
  - ✓ Has inflation been properly included? Preferably, have all computations used nominal expected future cash flows and nominal costs of capital, with inflation used only to gross up nominal cash flows appropriately?
- ✓ **Interactions** (Page 154, Page 441):
  - ✓ Have all projects been properly credited with their contributions, positive or negative, to the values of other projects (externalities)?
  - ✓ Have all projects been judged "on the margin," i.e., without charging them for unalterable or previously made choices, such as sunk costs, overhead, etc.?
  - ✓ Has the cost of capital applicable to each project component, respectively, been used, and not the (incorrect) overall average cost of capital? (Note: some errors and simplifications here are unavoidable in the real world, because it is impossible to put a different cost of capital on each paper clip.)
- ✓ **Conditionals (Strategic Options)** (Page 165, and in the Web Chapter on Options and Derivatives):
  - ✓ Have all possible future options been considered (using scenario analyses) in order to find the correct *expected* cash flows, e.g.:
    - ✓ The ability to leverage a product into future markets?
    - ✓ The ability to find product spinoffs?
    - ✓ The ability to learn about (how to do) future products?
    - ✓ The ability to stop the project if conditions are bad.
    - ✓ The ability to delay the project if conditions are bad.
    - ✓ The ability to mothball the project if conditions are bad and restart the project if conditions improve.
    - ✓ The ability to accelerate the project if conditions are good.
    - ✓ The ability to expand the project if conditions are good.

file=appendix.tex: RP

✓ **Accuracy** (Page 104, Page 175, Page 176, Page 211, Page 449):

- ✓ How accurate are the estimated project cash flows?
- ✓ If project success and project cash flows were estimated by someone else, what are the motives of the estimator? Does the estimator want the project taken or rejected?
- ✓ Can the cash flow estimates be improved by doing more research?
- ✓ Is it possible to get another independent evaluation/audit of the project estimates?
- ✓ Given unavoidable simplifications, assumptions, and errors, how sensitive/robust is the NPV computation to changes?

✓ **Correct Inputs** (Page 163):

- ✓ Are the cash flows *expected*, rather than just *promised*? Are the interest rates *expected*, rather than *promised*? (Recall: expected interest rates are below promised interest rates due to default premia, not just due to risk premia.)
- ✓ Are the expected cash flows the "average outcome" (correct!), and not the "most likely outcome"?
- ✓ Do the expected cash flow estimates include the correct weighted probabilities of low-probability events, especially for negative outcomes?
- ✓ If money needs to be borrowed to execute the project, is the used cost of capital r the borrowing rate? If capital is already available, is the used cost of capital r the lending (investments) rate?

✓ **Corporate Income Taxes** (Page 552):

- ✓ For use of WACC and APV, is the numerator in the NPV calculation the expected cash flows "as if all equity financed"? (This means that the company bears the full brunt of its corporate income tax load.)
- – In the weighted cost of capital, is the debt cost of capital the *expected* (not the promised!) interest rate on debt? Is the numerator the *expected* cash flow, not the *promised* cash flow?

A final warning: although many of these issues seem obvious in isolation, they are much harder to spot and take care of in complex real-world situations than in our highlighted expositions. Watch out! The most common error is worth its own box:

IMPORTANT: *The most common NPV method is to estimate cash flows for the numerator, and to use an expected rate of return (cost of capital) from the CAPM formula (see Chapter 17).*

- ✓ *The default risk is handled only in the numerator, i.e., in the computation of expected cash flows.*
- ✓ *The time-premium and risk-premium are handled only in the denominator. The CAPM formula provides an expected rate of return, which contains only these two components.*
- ✓ *Do not try to adjust the numerator for the time premium or the risk premium. Do not try to add a default-premium to the rate of return in the denominator. (This would yield a promised, not an expected rate of return on capital.) Do not believe that by using the CAPM expected rate of return, you have taken care of the default risk.*

Q B.1 *Recall as many items from the NPV checklist as you can remember. Which are you most likely to forget?*

2·2. Prominently Used Data Websites

The following data and information websites have been prominently used in this book. (If you are reading this on the Acrobat reader , you can click on the links!) Please note that the list is not complete, and that the links may have changed by the time you read this.

	Overall Market Information	
Marketgauge.com	*Various market gauges (incl. S&P500 dividend and earnings yields).*	http://tal.marketgauge.com/dvmgpro/gauges/dvplast.htm
Yahoo!*Finance*	*Stock and Index Quotes, Current and Historical*	http://quote.yahoo.com
Yahoo!*Finance*	*Current Interest Rates*	http://bonds.yahoo.com/rates.html
CNN Money	*General Information and Quotes*	http://money.cnn.com
Federal Reserve Data	*Historical Interest Rates*	http://www.federalreserve.gov/releases/h15/data.htm
Fred (Federal Reserve)	*U.S. economic time series, macroeconomic and financial.*	http://research.stlouisfed.org/fred
SmartMoney	*Animated Yield Curve*	http://www.smartmoney.com/onebond/index.cfm?story=yieldcurve
Treasury Direct	*Inflation Protected Interest Rates*	http://www.publicdebt.treas.gov/gsr/gsrlist.htm
Treasury – Debt	*Office of Public Debt*	http://www.publicdebt.treas.gov/
Bloomberg	*Index rates (incl. muni bonds)*	http://www.bloomberg.com/markets/rates/index.html
R. Shiller's Website	*Very long-run indexes*	http://aida.econ.yale.edu/~shiller/
Yahoo!*Finance*	*Foreign financial market websites*	e.g., Germany: http://de.finance.yahoo.com/
	Individual Stock and Fund Information	
Yahoo!*Biz*	*Firm-specific corporate profiles (earnings, sales, etc.). Here, IBM.*	http://biz.yahoo.com/p/i/ibm.html
Edgar	*All public corporate SEC filings*	http://www.edgar.sec.gov
PWC	*Price-Waterhouse-Coopers' Edgarscan*	http://edgarscan.pwcglobal.com/EdgarScan/
Vanguard	*Funds Information*	http://www.vanguard.com
PepsiCo	*Investor Information*	http://www.pepsico.com/investors/
PepsiCo	*Annual Reports*	http://www.pepsico.com/investors/annual-reports/
PepsiCo	*2000 10-K Filing*	http://www.pepsico.com/filings/200010k.shtml
	Other Information	
Ivo Welch	*General Website*	http://welch.econ.brown.edu/
SSRN	*Finance Working Papers*	http://www.ssrn.com
AFA	*The American Finance Association*	http://www.afajof.org
AEA	*The American Economics Association*	http://www.aeaweb.org
Moody's	*Monthly bond default reports.*	http://riskcalc.moodysrms.com/us/research/mdr.asp
Moody's	*Extended report on default rates, 1992.*	http://riskcalc.moodysrms.com/us/research/defrate/0085.pdf
BankruptcyFinger	*Bankruptcy Related Information.*	http://bankruptcyfinder.com/
BLS	*Bureau of Labor Statistics (Inflation).*	http://www.bls.gov/
SEC	*Securities Exchange Commission*	http://www.sec.gov
	Governance Web Chapter	
CalPers	*Corporate Governance Focus*	http://www.calpers-governance.org/alert/focus/
	International Web Chapter	
Barchart	*Currencies*	http://www2.barchart.com/mktcom.asp?section=currencies
PACIFIC	*Exchange Rate Related Information and Data*	http://pacific.commerce.ubc.ca/
Bloomberg	*Market Indices*	http://www.bloomberg.com/markets/rates/index.html
The Economist	*The "Big-Mac" Price Index*	http://www.economist.com/markets/Bigmac/Index.cfm

file=appendix.tex: RP

2·3. Necessary Algebraic Background

· Finding a base:

$$\begin{aligned} 3^2 &= 9 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad 3 = 9^{1/2} \\ x^a &= b \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = b^{1/a} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{B.1}$$

· Finding an exponent:

$$\begin{aligned} 3^2 &= 9 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad 2 = \frac{\ln(9)}{\ln(3)} \\ a^x &= b \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad x = \frac{\ln(b)}{\ln(a)} \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{B.2}$$

· Summation Notation:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{N} f(i) = f(1) + f(2) + \cdots + f(N) \quad . \tag{B.3}$$

This should be read as the "sum over all i from 1 to N." There are N terms in this sum. i is not a real variable: it is simply a dummy counter to abbreviate the notation. When 1 and N are omitted, it usually means "over all possible i."

· Summation Rules:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^{N} [a \cdot f(i) + b] &= [a \cdot f(1) + b] + [a \cdot f(2) + b] + \cdots + [a \cdot f(N) + b] \\ &= a \cdot \left[\sum_{i=1}^{N} f(i) \right] + N \cdot b \quad . \end{aligned} \tag{B.4}$$

Here is an illustration:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{3} \left[5 \cdot i^i + 2 \right] = [5 \cdot 1^1 + 2] + [5 \cdot 2^2 + 2] + [5 \cdot 3^3 + 2] = 7 + 22 + 137 = 166 \quad . \tag{B.5}$$

· The following is not necessary but interesting. A function $\mathcal{L}(\cdot)$ is called a linear function, if and only if $\mathcal{L}(a + b \cdot x) = a + \mathcal{L}(b \cdot x) = a + b \cdot \mathcal{L}(x)$, where a and b are constants.

Here is an illustration. (Weighted) averaging is a linear function. For example, start with (5,10,15) as a data series. The average is 10. Pick an $a = 2$ and a $b = 3$. For averaging to be a linear function, it must be that

$$\text{Average}(2 + 3 \cdot \text{Data}) = 2 + 3 \cdot \text{Average}(\text{Data}) \tag{B.6}$$

Let's try this—the LHS would become the average of $17, 32, 47$, which is 32. The RHS would become $2 + 3 \cdot 10 = 32$. So, in our example, averaging indeed behaves like a linear function. In contrast, the square-root is not a linear function, because $\sqrt{-2 + 3 \cdot 9} \neq -2 + 3 \cdot \sqrt{9}$. The LHS is 5, the RHS is 7.

- Similar to averaging, expected values are linear functions. This is what has permitted us to interchange expectations and linear functions:

$$\mathcal{E}(a + b \cdot \tilde{X}) = a + b \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) \quad . \tag{B.7}$$

  This will be explained in the next section.

- The rate of return on a portfolio is also a linear function of the investment weights. For example, a portfolio rate of return may be $r(x) = 20\% \cdot r_x + 80\% \cdot r_y$, where r_x

is the rate of return on the component into which you invested \$20. For $r(x)$ be a linear function, we need

$$\begin{aligned} 2 + 3 \cdot r(x) &= r(2 + 3 \cdot x) \\ a + b \cdot r(x) &= r(a + b \cdot x) \end{aligned} \tag{B.8}$$

Substitute in

$$2 + 3 \cdot [20\% \cdot r_x + 80\% \cdot r_y] = 20\% \cdot (2 + 3 \cdot r_x) + 80\% \cdot (2 + 3 \cdot r_y) \tag{B.9}$$

Both sides simplify to $2 + 60\% \cdot r_x + 240\% \cdot r_y$, so our statement is true and a portfolio return is indeed a linear function.

However, not all functions are linear. The variance is not a linear function, because

$$\mathcal{V}ar(a + b \cdot \tilde{X}) \neq a + b \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) \ . \tag{B.10}$$

This will also be explained in the next section.

Solve Now!

Q B.2 *If* $(1 + x)^{10} = (1 + 50\%)$, *what is* x*?*

Q B.3 *If* $(1 + 10\%)^x = (1 + 50\%)$, *what is* x*?*

Q B.4 *Are* $\sum_{i=1}^{N} x_i$ *and* $\sum_{s=1}^{N} x_s$ *the same?*

Q B.5 *Write out and compute* $\sum_{x=1}^{3} (3 + 5 \cdot x)$*. Is* x *a variable or just a placeholder to write the expression more conveniently?*

Q B.6 *Write out and compute* $\left(\sum_{y=1}^{3} 3\right) + 5 \cdot \left(\sum_{x=1}^{3} y\right)$*. Compare the result to the previous expression.*

Q B.7 *Is* $\sum_{i=1}^{3} (i \cdot i)$ *the same as* $\left(\sum_{i=1}^{3}\right) \cdot \left(\sum_{i=1}^{3} i\right)$*?*

file=appendix.tex: RP

2·4. Laws of Probability, Portfolios, and Expectations

This section describes some of the algebra that we are using in our investments chapters. The material is exposited in a more mathematical fashion that in the chapters, which you may find easier or harder depending on your background.

2·4.A. Single Random Variables

The **Laws of Expectations** for single random variables (illustration will follow):

- Definition of Expectation

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \mathcal{P}rob(i) \cdot [\tilde{X} = X(i)] \tag{B.11}$$

- The expected value of a linear transformation (a and b are known constants):

$$\mathcal{E}(a \cdot \tilde{X} + b) = a \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) + b \ . \tag{B.12}$$

  This works because expectation is a linear operator. Similarly, you could rename $\tilde{X}$ as $f(\tilde{X})$, so

$$\mathcal{E}[a \cdot f(\tilde{X}) + b] = a \cdot \mathcal{E}[f(\tilde{X})] + b \ . \tag{B.13}$$

  However, you cannot always "pull" expectations in, so $\mathcal{E}(f(\tilde{X}))$ is not always $f(\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}))$ For example, if $f(x) = x^2$, it is the case that

$$\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X} \cdot \tilde{X}) \neq \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) \ . \tag{B.14}$$

  To see this, consider a fair coin that can be either 0 or 1. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}^2) = 0.5 \cdot 0^2 + 0.5 \cdot 1^2 = 0.5$, but $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X})^2 = (0.5 \cdot 0 + 0.5 \cdot 1)^2 = 0.25$.

- Definition of Variance:

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) = \mathcal{E}\left([\tilde{X} - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X})]^2\right) \ . \tag{B.15}$$

  It is sometimes easier to manipulate this formula $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) = \mathcal{E}\left(\tilde{X}\right) - [\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X})]^2$.

- Definition of a Standard Deviation:

$$\text{Standard Deviation}(\tilde{X}) = \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X})} \ . \tag{B.16}$$

- The variance of a linear transformation (a and b are known constants):

$$\mathcal{V}ar(a \cdot \tilde{X} + b) = a^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) \ . \tag{B.17}$$

Here is an extended illustration. A coin, outcome called $\tilde{X}$, with 4 and 8 written on the two sides. These two outcomes can be written as $4 \cdot i$ where i is either 1 or 2. So, the expected value of $\tilde{X}$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} \mathcal{P}rob[\tilde{X} = (4 \cdot i)] \cdot (4 \cdot i) \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 4) \cdot (4) + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 8) \cdot (8) \\ &= 50\% \cdot 4 + 50\% \cdot 8 = 6 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.18}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} \mathcal{P}rob[\tilde{X} = (4 \cdot i)] \cdot [(4 \cdot i) - 6]^2 \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 4) \cdot (4-6)^2 + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 8) \cdot (8-6)^2 \\ &= 50\% \cdot 4 + 50\% \cdot 4 = 4 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.19}$$

The standard deviation is the square root of the variance, here 2.

As we noted earlier, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}^2)$ is of course not the same as $[\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X})]^2 = [3]^2 = 9$, because

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}^2) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} \mathcal{P}rob[\tilde{X} = (2 \cdot i)] \cdot (2 \cdot i)^2 \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 2) \cdot (2^2) + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 4) \cdot (4^2) \\ &= 50\% \cdot 4 + 50\% \cdot 16 = 10 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.20}$$

Now we work with a linear transformation of the X, say $\tilde{Z} = \$2.5 \cdot \tilde{X} + \$10$. (In finance, the rate of return on portfolios are such linear transformation; for example, if you own 25% in $\mathcal{A}$ and 75% in $\mathcal{B}$ you will earn $0.25 \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{A}} + 0.75 \cdot \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{B}} + 0$.) Thus,

$\mathcal{P}rob$	Coin	$\tilde{X}$	$\tilde{Z}$
$1/2$	Heads	4	\$20
$1/2$	Tail	8	\$30

We want to convince ourselves that the expected value of $\tilde{Z}$, defined as is $\$2.5 \cdot \tilde{X} + \$10$, is $\$2.5 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}) + \$10 = \$25$. So, we hand-compute the expected value the long way from $\tilde{Z}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{Z}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} \mathcal{P}rob[\tilde{X} = (4 \cdot i) \text{ same as } \tilde{Z} = \$2.5 \cdot X + \$10] \cdot (Z_i) \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 4 \text{ same as } \tilde{Z} = \$20) \cdot (\$20) \\ &\quad + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 8 \text{ same as } \tilde{Z} = \$30) \cdot (\$30) \\ &= 50\% \cdot \$20 + 50\% \cdot \$30 = \$25 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.21}$$

Unlike the mean (the expected value), the variance is *not* a linear function, so the variance of $\tilde{Z} = \$2.5 \cdot \tilde{X} + \$10$ is *not* $\$2.5 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) + \$10 = \$2.5 \cdot 4 + \$10 = \$20$. Instead, $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{Z}) = \mathcal{V}ar(a \cdot \tilde{X} + c) = a^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) = (\$2.5)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{X}) = \$^2 \cdot 2.5^2 \cdot 4 = \$^2 25$. We can confirm this working with $\tilde{Z}$ directly:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{Z}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} \mathcal{P}rob[\tilde{X} = (4 \cdot i)] \cdot [(\tilde{Z}_i) - \mathcal{E}(\tilde{Z})]^2 \\ &= \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 4 \text{ same as } \tilde{Z} = \$20) \cdot (\$20 - \$25)^2 \\ &\quad + \mathcal{P}rob(\tilde{X} = 8 \text{ same as } \tilde{Z} = \$30) \cdot (\$30 - \$25)^2 \\ &= 50\% \cdot (\$5)^2 + 50\% \cdot (\$5)^2 = \$^2 25 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.22}$$

The standard deviation of $\tilde{Z}$ is therefore $\sqrt{\$^2 \cdot 25} = \$5$.

You should confirm Formula B.12: the expected value of $\tilde{Z}$ should be (\$5) times the expected value of $\tilde{X}$ plus \$10. Confirm Formula B.17: the variance of $\tilde{Z}$ should be the variance of $\tilde{X}$ multiplied by (\$5) squared.

Solve Now!

Q B.8 *What is the expected value and standard deviation of a bet B that pays off the number of points on a fair die, squared? For example, if the die comes down 3, you receive $9.*

Q B.9 *Assume that you have to pay $30, but you receive twice the outcome of the previous bet $\tilde{B}$. This is a new bet, called $\tilde{C}$. That is, your payoff is $\tilde{C} = -\$30 + 2 \cdot \tilde{B}$. What is the expected payoff and risk of your position? Make your life easy!*

2·4.B. Portfolios

Portfolios are defined as follows (illustration will follow):

$$\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{P}} \equiv \sum_i w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i \ , \tag{B.23}$$

where w_i is the known investment weights in security i and $\tilde{r}_i$ is the security return on security i. Unlike the above, simpler definitions, portfolios are the weighted sum of multiple random variables.

- Portfolio Expectations

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\sum_i w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i\right) = \sum_i w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) \ . \tag{B.24}$$

  Although the weights are fixed and known constants, they cannot be pulled out of the summation, because they are indexed by i (each could be different from the others).

-
$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar\left(\sum_i w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i\right) &= \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \left[w_i \cdot w_j \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) \right] \right\} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \sum_{j=1}^{\mathcal{N}} \left[w_i \cdot w_j \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) \right] \end{aligned} \tag{B.25}$$

Here is an illustration. A coin toss outcome is a random variable, $\tilde{T}$, and it will return either $2 (head) or $4 (tail). You have to pay $2 to receive this outcome. This looks like a great bet: The mean rate of return on each coin toss, $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}})$ is 50%, the variance on *each* coin toss is

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{T}}) = {}^1/_2 \cdot (0\% - 50\%)^2 + {}^1/_2 \cdot (100\% - 50\%)^2 = 0.50 \ . \tag{B.26}$$

Therefore, the standard deviation of each coin toss is $0.707.

Now, bet on two independent such coin toss outcomes. You have $10 invested on the first bet and $20 on the second bet. In other words, your overall actual and unknown rates of return are

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} w_i \cdot r_i \ , \\ \tilde{r} &= \sum_{i=1}^{2} w_i \cdot \tilde{r}_i \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.27}$$

(The second equation is in random variable terms.) Now, your investment portfolio consists of the following investments

$$\begin{aligned} w_1 &= \frac{\$10}{\$30} = 0.33 \ , \\ w_2 &= \frac{\$20}{\$30} = 0.67 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.28}$$

We can now use the formulas to compute your expected rate of return ($\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r})$) and risk ($Sdv(\tilde{r})$). To compute your expected rate of return, use

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}) = \sum_{i=1}^{2} w_i \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_i) &= w_1 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= {}^1/_3 \cdot (50\%) + {}^2/_3 \cdot (50\%) = 50\% \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.29}$$

To compute your variance, use

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) &= \sum_{i=1}^{2}\sum_{j=1}^{2} w_i \cdot w_j \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_i, \tilde{r}_j) \\ &= w_1 \cdot w_1 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_1) + w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &\quad + w_2 \cdot w_1 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_1) + w_2 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= w_1^2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_1) + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &\quad + w_2^2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_2, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &= w_1^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot Cov(\tilde{r}_1, \tilde{r}_2) \\ &\quad + w_2^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= ({}^1/_3)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + 2 \cdot w_1 \cdot w_2 \cdot 0 + ({}^2/_3)^2 \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= ({}^1/_9) \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_1) + ({}^4/_9) \cdot \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_2) \\ &= ({}^1/_9) \cdot 0.5 + ({}^4/_9) \cdot 0.5 = 0.278 \ . \end{aligned} \tag{B.30}$$

The standard deviation is therefore $\sqrt{0.278} = 52.7\%$. This is lower than the 70.7% that a single coin toss would provide you with.

Solve Now!

Q B.10 *Repeat the example, but assume that you invest \$15 into each coin toss, rather than \$10 and \$20 respectively. Would you expect the risk to be higher or lower? (Hint: What happens if you choose a portfolio that invests more and more into just one of the two bets.)*

file=appendix.tex: RP

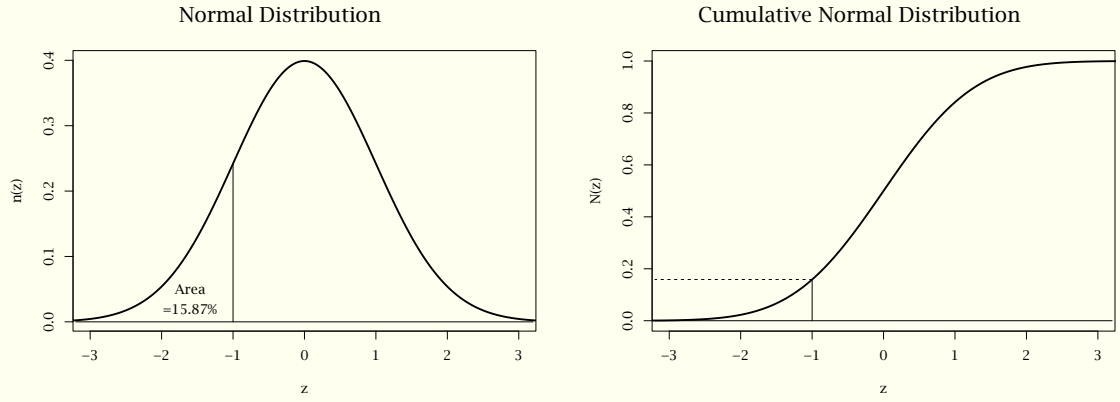
2·5. Cumulative Normal Distribution Table

We used the cumulative normal distribution in Subsection 13·6.D. It is also used in the famous Black-Scholes formula, explained in the Web Chapter on Options and Derivatives.

Table B.1. Cumulative Normal Distribution Table

z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$	z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$	z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$	z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$	z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$	z	$\mathcal{N}(z)$
-4.0	0.00003										
-3.5	0.00023										
-3.0	0.0013	-2.0	0.0228	-1.0	0.1587	0.0	0.5000	1.0	0.8413	2.0	0.9772
-2.9	0.0019	-1.9	0.0287	-0.9	0.1841	0.1	0.5398	1.1	0.8643	2.1	0.9821
-2.8	0.0026	-1.8	0.0359	-0.8	0.2119	0.2	0.5793	1.2	0.8849	2.2	0.9861
-2.7	0.0035	-1.7	0.0446	-0.7	0.2420	0.3	0.6179	1.3	0.9032	2.3	0.9893
-2.6	0.0047	-1.6	0.0548	-0.6	0.2743	0.4	0.6554	1.4	0.9192	2.4	0.9918
-2.5	0.0062	-1.5	0.0668	-0.5	0.3085	0.5	0.6915	1.5	0.9332	2.5	0.9938
-2.4	0.0082	-1.4	0.0808	-0.4	0.3446	0.6	0.7257	1.6	0.9452	2.6	0.9953
-2.3	0.0107	-1.3	0.0968	-0.3	0.3821	0.7	0.7580	1.7	0.9554	2.7	0.9965
-2.2	0.0139	-1.2	0.1151	-0.2	0.4207	0.8	0.7881	1.8	0.9641	2.8	0.9974
-2.1	0.0179	-1.1	0.1357	-0.1	0.4602	0.9	0.8159	1.9	0.9713	2.9	0.9981
										3.5	0.99977
										4.0	0.99997

Normal Score (z) vs. standardized Normal Cumulative Distribution Probability $\mathcal{N}(z)$ Table: This table allows determining the probability that an outcome X will be less than a prespecified value x, when standardized into the score z. For example, if the mean is 15 and the standard deviation is 5, an outcome of $X = 10$ is one standard deviation below the mean. This standardized score can be obtained by computing $z(x) = [x - \mathcal{E}(x)]/Sdv(x) = (x - 15)/5 = (10 - 15)/5 = (-1)$. This table then indicates that the probability that the outcome of $\tilde{X}$ (drawn from this distribution with mean 15 and standard deviation 5) will be less than 10 (or less than its score of $z = -1$) is 15.87%.



These two figures show what the table represents. The left-side is the classical bell curve. Recall that at $z = -1$, the table gave $N(z = -1) = 15.87\%$. This 15.87% is the area under the left curve up to an including $z = -1$. The right figure just plots the values in the table itself, i.e., the area under the graph to the left of each value from the left-side figure.
If you need to approximate the cumulative normal distribution, you can use the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{N}(z) &\approx 1 - \frac{e^{-z^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \cdot \left(b_1 \cdot k_z + b_2 \cdot k_z^2 + b_3 \cdot k_z^3 + b_4 \cdot k_z^4 + b_5 \cdot k_z^5\right) \\ k_z &\equiv \frac{1}{1 + a \cdot |z|} \cdot \end{aligned} \tag{B.31}$$

where $a = 0.2316419$, $b_1 = 0.319381530$, $b_2 = (-0.356563782)$, $b_3 = 1.781477937$, $b_4 = (-1.821255978)$, $b_5 = 1.330274429$, and $\pi = 3.141592654$.

file=appendix.tex: RP

2·6. A Short Glossary of Some Bonds and Rates

This appendix briefly describes a plethora of different interest rates and bonds that you may encounter. More complete finance glossaries are at www.investopedia.com and the New York Times and Campbell Harvey's Dictionary of Money and Investing (also online at www.duke.edu/ charvey/Classes/wpg/glossary.htm).

Other interest rate information sources.

In the real world, there are many different interest rates. Every borrower and every lender may pay a slightly different interest rate, depending on the bond's default risk, risk premium, liquidity, maturity, identity, convenience, etc. It is impossible to describe every common bond or rate. The C-section of the *Wall Street Journal* describes daily interest rates on many common and important interest instruments: the C-1 Page **Markets Diary**; the C-2 Page **Interest Rates and Bonds** section; some boxes on a later page describing the interest rates paid on individual government and government agency bonds (headlines **Treasury Bonds, Notes and Bills** and **Government Agency & Similar Issues**); the **Credit Markets** page thereafter, which includes the important **Yield Comparisons** and **Money Rates** boxes, as well as some Corporate Bonds; and what is often the final page, which contains the **Bond Market Data Bank**. In addition, futures on interest rates (similar to forward rates) are listed in the B-section.

Some real-world interest rates explained.

Here are short descriptions of some of the interest rates printed in the *Wall Street Journal* on a daily basis, as well as some other bond subclasses.

Agency Bonds Issued by quasi-governmental companies, such as FannieMae, FreddieMac, and SallieMae (all described below). These agencies were originally set up by the U.S. government to facilitate loans for a particular purpose, then bundle them, and sell them to the financial markets. These companies are huge. Sometimes they are thought to be implicitly backed by the U.S. government, though no explicit guarantees may exist.

APR (Annual Percentage Rate) A measure of interest due on a mortgage loan that accounts for upfront costs and payments. Unfortunately, there are no clear rules of how to compute APR, so the APR computation can vary across companies.

ARM Rate (Adjustable Rate Mortgage) A mortgage with an interest rate that is usually reset once per year according to a then prevailing interest rate, pre-specified by a formula, but subject to some upper limit (called a cap). Repayable by the borrower.

Bankers Acceptances Loans by banks to importers, used to pay the exporting firm. Backed by the issuing bank if the importer defaults. Usual maturities are 30 to 180 days.

Certificate of Deposit (CD) Rate paid by banks to bank retail customers willing to commit funds for a short-term or medium-term period. Unlike ordinary savings accounts, CDs are not insured by the government if the bank fails.

Callable Bonds Bonds that the issuer can redeem. We will discuss these in Chapter 27.

CMO (Collateralized Mortgage Obligation) A security backed by a pool of real estate mortgages, with specified claims to interest and principal payments. For example, there are **Interest Only** (**IO**) bonds and **Principal Only** (**PO**) bonds, which entitle bond holders to only the interest or principal that the pool of mortgages receives.

Collateralized Trust Bonds Often issued by corporations, these bonds pledge as collateral the securities owned by a subsidiary.

Commercial Paper Short-term bonds issued by corporations to the public markets. Often backed by bank guarantees. Because commercial paper is short-term and often backed by assets, it is usually very low risk.

Consumer Credit Rates The *Wall Street Journal* lists typical **credit-card rates** and **car loan rates**.

Convertible Bonds Bonds that the holder can convert into common equity—we will discuss these in Chapter 27.

file=appendix.tex: LP

Debenture Unsecured general obligation bond.

Discount Rate The interest rate that the Federal Reserve charges banks for short-term loans of reserves.

Equipment Obligations Unlike debentures, these corporate bonds usually pledge specific equipment as collateral.

Eurobond Bonds issued by the U.S. government outside the domain of the Securities Exchange Commission (e.g., in Europe) and purchased by foreign investors. Eurobonds need not be denominated in dollars.

Federal Funds Rate Banks must hold financial reserves at the Federal Reserve Bank. If they have more reserves than they legally need, they can lend them to other banks. The rate at which they lend to one another overnight is the Federal Funds Rate. It is this interest rate which is the interest rate primarily under the control of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve.

FannieMae, originally the *Federal National Mortgage Association* (or **FNMA**), a corporation set up by the government to help facilitate mortgage lending. It holds mortgages as assets. FannieMae and FreddieMac together hold most U.S. mortgages, though they sell off claims against these mortgage bundles into the financial markets. The FNMA bonds are themselves collateralized (backed) by the mortgages, but, despite common perception, *not* by the U.S. government.

FreddieMac, originally the *Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation* (**FHLMC**). An agency similar to FNMA.

GICs (Guaranteed Investment Contracts) Usually issued by insurance companies and purchased by retirement plans. The interest rate is guaranteed, but the principal is not.

G.O. Bonds (General Obligation Bonds) Bonds whose repayment is not guaranteed by a specific revenue stream. See also **Revenue Bonds**.

High-Yield Bonds Sometimes also called **Junk Bonds**, high-yield bonds are bonds (usually of corporations) that have credit ratings of BB and lower. This will be discussed in the next chapter.

Home Equity Loan Rate The rate for loans secured by a home. Usually second mortgages, i.e., taken after another mortgage is already in place.

Investment Grade Bonds Bonds that have a rating higher than BBB. This is a common classification for corporate bonds, discussed in the next chapter.

Jumbo Mortgage Rate Like the N-year mortgage rate (see below), but for loans which exceed the FNMA limit on mortgage size.

LIBOR London Interbank Offer Rate Typical rate at which large London banks lend dollars to one another.

Money-Market Rate Rate paid to cash sitting in a brokerage account and not invested in other assets.

Mortgage Bonds Bonds secured by a particular real-estate property. In case of default, the creditor can foreclose the secured property. If still not satisfied, the remainder of the creditor's claim becomes a general obligation.

Municipal Bond Bonds issued by a municipality. Often tax-exempt.

N-year Mortgage Rate A fixed-rate loan, secured by a house, with standard coupon payments. The rate is that paid by the borrower. Usually limited to an amount determined by FNMA.

Prime Rate An interest rate charged by the average bank to their best customers for short-term loans. (This rate is used less and less. It is being replaced by the LIBOR rate, at least in most commercial usage.)

file=appendix.tex: RP

Repo Rate A Repo is a *repurchase* agreement, in which a seller of a bond agrees to repurchase the bond, usually within 30 to 90 days, but also sometimes overnight. (Repos for more than 30 days are called *Term Repos*.) This allows the bond holder to obtain actual cash to make additional purchases, while still being fully exposed to (speculate on) the bond.

Revenue Bond A bond secured by a specific revenue stream. See also G.O. bond.

SallieMae, originally **Student Loan Marketing Association** (SLMA). Like FannieMae, an agency (corporation) set up by the U.S. government. It facilitates student loans.

Savings Bonds Issued by the U.S. Treasury, Savings Bonds can only be purchased from or sold to agents authorized by the Treasury Department. They must be registered in the name of the holder. **Series E Bonds** are zero bonds; **Series H Bonds** are semi-annual coupon payers and often have a variable interest feature. In contrast to Savings Bonds, other bonds are typically **bearer bonds**, which do not record the name of the owner and are therefore easy to resell (or steal).

Tax-Exempt Bonds Typically bonds issued by municipalities. Their interest is usually exempt from some or all income taxes. The designation **G.O. Bond** means **General Obligation Bond**, i.e., a Bond that was not issued to finance a particular obligation. In contrast, a **Revenue Bond** is a Bond backed by specific municipal revenues—but it may or may not be tax-exempt.

Treasury Security See Section 2·1.C.

Treasury STRIPS , or *Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal of Securities*. Financial institutions can convert each coupon payment and principal payment of ordinary Treasury coupon bonds into individual zero bonds. We briefly described these in the previous chapter. See also www.publicdebt.treas.gov/of/ofstrips.htm. for a detailed explanation.

Yankee Bonds U.S. Dollar denominated and SEC-registered bonds by foreign issuers.

Note: mortgage (and many other) bonds can be paid off by the borrower before maturity. Repayment is common, especially if interest rates are dropping. Prepayment.

1. See text for list. Your personal propensity to forget is probably unique to yourself.

2. $x \approx 4.138\%$. Check: $(1 + 4.138\%)^{10} \approx 1.5$.
3. $x \approx 4.254$. Check: $1.1^{4.254} \approx 1.5$.
4. Yes! i and s are not variables, but notation!
5. The expression is

$$\sum_{x=1}^{3} (3 + 5 \cdot x) \;=\; (3 + 5 \cdot 1) + (3 + 5 \cdot 2) + (3 + 5 \cdot 3) \;=\; 8 + 13 + 18 \;=\; 39 \;. \tag{B.32}$$

   x is not an unknown. It is simply a counter dummy used for writing convenience. It is not a part of the expression itself.

6. The expression is

$$\left(\sum_{y=1}^{3} 3\right) + 5 \cdot \left(\sum_{y=1}^{3} y\right) \;=\; (3 + 3 + 3) + 5 \cdot (1 + 2 + 3) \;=\; 39 \;. \tag{B.33}$$

   The result is the same. This is an example why $\sum_i a + b \cdot x = \left(\sum_i a\right) + b \cdot \sum_i x$.

7.

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^{3} (i \cdot i) \;&=\; 1 + 4 + 9 \;=\; 14 \;. \\ \left(\sum_{i=1}^{3} i\right) \cdot \left(\sum_{i=1}^{3} i\right) \;&=\; (1 + 2 + 3) \cdot (1 + 2 + 3) \;=\; 36 \;. \end{aligned} \tag{B.34}$$

   The two are not the same. So, be careful not to try to pull out multiplying i's! You can only pull out constants, not counters. Incidentally, is also why $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{X}^2) \neq \mathcal{E}(\tilde{X})^2$, as stated in the next section.

8. The expected value is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{B}) \;&=\; (1/6) \cdot \$1 + (1/6) \cdot \$4 + (1/6) \cdot \$9 + (1/6) \cdot \$16 + (1/6) \cdot \$25 + (1/6) \cdot \$36 \\ &=\; \$15.17 \end{aligned} \tag{B.35}$$

   The variance is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{B}) \;&=\; (1/6) \cdot (\$1 - \$15.17)^2 + (1/6)(\$4 - \$15.17)^2 + (1/6) \cdot (\$9 - \$15.17)^2 \\ &+\; (1/6) \cdot (\$16 - \$15.17)^2 + (1/6) \cdot (\$25 - \$15.17)^2 + (1/6) \cdot (\$36 - \$15.17)^2 \\ &=\; \$^2 149.14 \end{aligned} \tag{B.36}$$

   The standard deviation is therefore

$$\mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{B}) \;=\; \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{B})} \;=\; \sqrt{149.14} \;=\; 12.21 \tag{B.37}$$

9. You expect to receive

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(\tilde{C}) \;&=\; -\$30 + 2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{B}) = -\$30 + 2 \cdot \$15.17 \;=\; \$0.34 \;, \\ \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{C}) \;&=\; 2^2 \cdot \mathcal{E}(\tilde{B}) = 4 \cdot \$149.14 \;=\; \$595.56 \;, \\ \mathcal{S}dv(\tilde{C}) \;&=\; \sqrt{\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{B})} \;=\; \$24.42 \;. \end{aligned} \tag{B.38}$$

10. Your investment weights are now $w_1 = w_2 = 0.5$. The mean rate of return remains the same 50%. The variance of the rate of return is computed similarly to the example in the text,

$$\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}) = (^1/_4) \cdot 0.5 + (^1/_4) \cdot 0.5 = 0.25 \ . \tag{B.39}$$

Therefore, the risk (standard deviation) is 50%. This is lower than where you put more weight on one of the coin tosses. This makes sense: as you put more and more into one of the two coin tosses, you lose the benefit of diversification.!

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

APPENDIX C

SAMPLE EXAMS

Applied Torture!

last file change: Jan 18, 2006 (13:22h)

last major edit: n/a

The following are the midterm and final exams that I gave in my introductory finance course in Spring 2005. The exams did not cover all subjects that were covered in the course, but students did not know which subjects would be on the exam and which subjects would be omitted. The exam answers follow.

The student instructions common to both exams were

- This is a closed-book, closed-notes exam. You are allowed to use your prepared 3*5 index card, and a calculator. No Internet connections are allowed, either.
- The *final answer* must be in the right units, so make sure to distinguish between raw numbers and percent, between dollars and dollars-squared, etc.
- We will try to give partial credit, so show your work.
- You have enough time to write clearly: we will mercilessly penalize hard-to-read and hard-to-comprehend answers. It is your task to make it clear to us that you know the answer, not our task to decipher what you mean. Be concise.
- If you believe a question is ambiguous, please make reasonable assumptions, and spell them out in your answer.
- We will liberally subtract points for wrong answers—in particular, we do not like the idea of 3 different answers, one of which is correct, two of which are incorrect. So, if you show us two different solutions, you can at best only get half credit, unless you clearly outline assumptions that you have to make because my question is ambiguous.
- Assume a perfect market, unless otherwise indicated.

3·1. A Sample Midterm

Students were told that the midterm was 80 minutes for 12 questions, and that each question was worth 10 points, regardless of difficulty or time required to solve.

Q C.1 *Market Perfection Questions:*

(a) What are the four conditions that make a market "perfect"?

(b) What kind of ambiguity happens if the market is not perfect? (You do not need to spell it out for each reason why the market can be imperfect. You need to tell us what breaks generally.)

Q C.2 *The interest rate (at a zero-tax rate) is 12 basis points per week, A year is always 52 weeks.*

(a) What is the payoff on a $200 investment in 5 years?

(b) If the inflation rate is 5 basis points per week, what is the PV of your answer?

(c) Now introduce an imperfect market. Your tax rate is now 20%, and due immediately each Jan 1. What will your cash flow in 5 years be? What is this worth in real terms (in 2005 dollars), i.e., adjusted for purchasing power using the inflation rate?

Q C.3 *If it takes 9 years for you to triple your investment, what is your annualized rate of return?*

Q C.4 *Risk-free Treasury bonds earn holding rates of return (not annualized) of 10% over 1 year, 25% over 2 years, and 40% over 3 years.*

(a) Draw the yield curve and provide the appropriate table that you use to draw your yield curve. (Use the same abbreviations that we have been using in class.)

(b) What are the two forward rates?

Use at least 4 significant digits in your calculation, so we know you are computing the right thing.

Q C.5 *What is the IRR of a project that costs $100 today, earns $100 next year, and costs $50 the year after?*

Q C.6 *What is the monthly payment on a fixed 30-year 8% home mortgage for $500,000? (Interpret the 8% quote the same way a normal mortgage company or bank interprets it.)*

Q C.7 *Tomorrow, a project will be worth either $200 million (60% probability), or $10 million liquidation value (40% probability). Today, the project is worth and can be bought for $100 million. You only have $80 million, so you borrow $20 million today from a bank.*

(a) If the world is risk-neutral, what interest rate do you have to promise the bank?

(b) If the world is not risk-neutral, but you know that in equilibrium the bank asks for a 50% promised rate of return, what would you as residual equity holder demand as your expected rate of return?

Q C.8 *A project reports the following:*

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Beyond
Sales = Income	$200	$300	$500	$0
A/R	$100	$100	$50	$0

What are the cash flows?

Q C.9 *Some accounting questions:*

(a) What is the main difference between how an accountant thinks of cash flows (not earnings!) and how a financier thinks of the same?

file=exam-sample.tex: RP

(b) *Why can EBITDA be a very "incomplete" and therefore often worse number than EBIT for valuation purposes? Can you modify EBITDA to be better?*

Q C.10 *Compare two equal underlying firms (projects). One, however, is levered. Which one has the higher P/E ratio? Do you have to assume a risk-averse world, or will your analysis also hold just the same in a risk-neutral world?*

Q C.11 *If you believe that the underlying growth rate of GDP of 5% nominal (2.0% real) is also applicable to the earnings of firms in the stock market forever, and if the P/E ratio of the stock market is 20 (as it is in December 2004), then what do you expect to be an appropriate expected rate of return on the stock market?*

Q C.12 *If the interest rate is 12% per annum, what is the rental equivalent of a machine that costs $50,000 upfront, $2,000 per year in maintenance, and lasts for 10 years?*

3·2. A Sample Final

Students were told that the final was 160 minutes for 24 questions. The number of points was provided for each questions, and is noted at the beginning of each question.

Q C.13 ***(4p)*** *Market Perfection Questions:*

(a) *What are the four conditions that make a market "perfect"?*

(b) *What kind of ambiguity happens if the market is not perfect? (You do not need to spell it out for each reason why the market can be imperfect. You need to tell us what breaks generally.)*

Q C.14 ***(12p)*** *The following are all possible future outcomes, all equally likely:*

	Rate of Returns on			
	T-bond	*Market*	*Project A*	*Project B*
Bad	*5%*	*–5%*	*–10%*	*$800*
Medium	*5%*	*+10%*	*–5%*	*$1,000*
Good	*5%*	*+25%*	*+90%*	*$15,000*

(a) *What are the risks and rewards of the projects in the first three data columns?*

(b) *What is the risk and reward of an investment of 20% in A and 80% in the market?*

(c) *What is correlation between project A and the market?*

(d) *What is the market beta of project A?*

(e) *If the CAPM (almost) held, is project A overpriced or underpriced?*

(f) *What is a fair price of project B if the CAPM holds?*

(g) *What are the rates of return for project B?*

Q C.15 ***(3p)*** *If the average rate of return in the market had a standard deviation of about 20% per year, then what was its monthly standard deviation?*

Q C.16 ***(4p)*** *What is the definition of an arbitrage opportunity? How does it differ from a great bet?*

Q C.17 ***(2p)*** *If the stock market is efficient, what kind of advantages does this carry for corporations?*

Q C.18 ***(3p)*** *Evaluate: If the market is efficient, all goods are fairly priced. Therefore, there are no gains to trade.*

Q C.19 ***(4p)*** *What are the two main kinds of owner rights for debt and equity?*

Q C.20 ***(3p)*** *Evaluate each in the context of an example that you make up.*

(a) If a firm increases its leverage, its cost of debt will generally increase (or at least not decrease).
(b) If a firm increases its leverage, its cost of equity will generally increase (or at least not decrease).
(c) If a firm increases its leverage, its cost of capital will generally increase (or at least not decrease).

Q C.21 ***(4p)*** *What do the two M&M propositions say?*

Q C.22 ***(6p)*** *Name three deeper reasons that favor debt over equity as a value-maximizing claim. (In other words, saying debt is cheaper than equity is not deep enough a reason.)*

Q C.23 ***(6p)*** *Name three deeper reasons that favor equity over debt as a value-maximizing claim.*

Q C.24 ***(10p)*** *A firm consists of the following:*

This Year, Value			Next Year, expected		
			Revenues	=	$230
			Cost*	=	$200
Debt Today	=	$100	Interest	=	$10
Equity Today	=	$100	Taxes	=	$5
			Net Income	=	$15

* *The cost is covered by the financing that debt and equity are providing.*

If everything is fairly priced:

(a) What is the expected rate of return on equity?
(b) What is the expected rate of return on debt?
(c) What is the tax rate?
(d) What is the WACC?
(e) What is the total net payout to debt and equity investors?
(f) Using the WACC method, what is the project value?

Q C.25 ***(3p)*** *From a pure tax perspective, what sort of clientele would you expect would be attracted by cash cow firms, and how would they do this?*

Q C.26 ***(5p)*** *Capital Structure Dynamics:*

(a) What seems to be the main determinant in firms' debt-equity ratios?
(b) When do firms typically issue public seasoned equity?
(c) As far as capital structure is concerned, is long-term debt net issuing or equity net issuing more important?
(d) In company's debt balance, is there debt that is not created in the financial markets?
(e) How strong are the forces pulling towards an optimal capital structure?

Q C.27 ***(4p)*** *What can firms do to avoid liquidity problems?*

Q C.28 ***(3p)*** *What is the typical fee charged in M&A transactions?*

file=exam-sample.tex: RP

Q C.29 ***(4p)*** *What is the pecking order? What is the financing pyramid? Does the pecking order hypothesis imply a financing pyramid?*

Q C.30 ***(4p)*** *What is the typical announcement response in a debt offering? in an equity offering? what does this suggest about the market's beliefs about capital inflows vs. outflows, and debt-equity ratio changes?*

Q C.31 ***(5p)*** *What legal temptations that do not maximize shareholder wealth do managers face?*

Q C.32 ***(3p)*** *When do companies have the strongest incentives to control agency problems? Why?*

Q C.33 ***(3p)*** *What considerations and caveats should flow into the "Terminal Value" in a pro forma analysis?*

Q C.34 ***(2p)*** *What is the golden rule of ethics?*

Q C.35 ***(2p)*** *In the most common economic point of view, is it a seller's fault if he misrepresents the good that is for sale?*

Q C.36 ***(4p)*** *Is there a problem with averaging P/E ratios? If so, how can you avoid it?*

A. Q&A: Answers

1.
   (a) No Taxes. No opinion/information differences. No Transaction costs. No big buyers/sellers.
   (b) Project value is ambiguous because it depends on owner's wealth.
2.
   (a) The annual interest rate is $1.0012^{52} - 1 = 6.43\%$. This comes to a 5-year rate of return of 36.5%. The \$200 would grow to \$273.18.
   (b) Still \$200.
   (c) Your interest rate is now 5.144%, because you have to pay taxes every year. Over 5 years, you will have $1.05144^5 - 1 = 28.5\%$ rate of return, or \$257.01. The inflation rate is 2.6% inflation per year. In real terms, you will end up with \$226.06 in 5 years. [rounding error may lead you to a number off by a dollar or so.]
3. $(1+r)^9 = (1+100\%) \Rightarrow r = 3^{1/9} - 1 = 12.98\%$. Check: $1.1298^9 \approx 3$.
4.
   (a)
   $$r_{\overline{2}} = \sqrt{1.25} - 1 = 11.80\%, r_{\overline{3}} = \sqrt[3]{1.40} - 1 = 11.87\%$$
   (b)
   $$f_{1,2} = 1.25/1.1 - 1 = 13.64\%, f_{2,3} = 1.4/1.25 - 1 = 12.00\%$$
5. This project has no IRR!
6. Annuity: $\$500,000 = \frac{C}{8\%/12}\left(1 - \frac{1}{(1+8\%/12)^{30\cdot 12}}\right) \Rightarrow C = \$3,668.82$.
7.
   (a) The expected project payoff is \$124. At a price of \$100, this is an expected 24% rate of return. In a risk-neutral world, this will be the expected rate of return for all projects. The bank must expect to receive $\$20 \cdot 1.24 = \$24.8$. With 40% probability, the bank will get \$10 million, with 60% probability it will get what it was promised. The promise must therefore be \$34.667 million. This represents a 73.33% promised rate of return.
   (b) The project payoff is still the same. The bank will receive \$30 million [50% rate of return] with 60% probability, \$10 million with 40% probability. This gives the bank an expected payoff of \$22 million—or an expected rate of return of 10%. The project is financed by 20% debt, so to keep the project expected rate of return at 24%, it must be that
   $$20\% \cdot 10\% + 80\% \cdot x = 24\% \qquad x = 27.5\%$$
   So, you demand an unconditional expected rate of return of 27.5%.
8. Cash Flows: \$100. \$300-\$0=\$300. \$500-(-\$50)=\$550. \$0-(-\$50)=\$50.
9.
   (a) The financier considers interest to be a distribution to investors, while the accountant considers it a cost.
   (b) Because it has absolutely no adjustment for capital expenditures. EBIT has at least an amortized version therein. The alternative is to work with EBITDA - capexp.
10. Unlevered has higher P/E. See classnotes. You need risk-aversion, or else the P/E ratio will be the same.
11.
   $$P/E = 1/(r-g) \qquad \rightarrow \qquad 20 = 1/(r - 5\%) \qquad r = 10\%$$
12. The 10 years of maintenance are the equivalent of
   $$\frac{\$2,000}{0.12} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{1.12^{10}}\right) = \$11,300.4$$
   Add to this the cost of \$50,000, and you have a total cost of \$61,300. This comes to a rental equivalent of
   $$\frac{x}{0.12} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{1.12^{10}}\right) = \$61,300 \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad x = \$10,849$$

13.

(a) No Taxes. No opinion/information differences. No Transaction costs. No big buyers/sellers.

(b) Project value is ambiguous because it depends on owner's wealth.

14.

(a) T-bond: mean 5%, sd 0%. Market: 10%, 12.25%. A: 25%. 46.01%

(b) Returns are (-6%,7%,38%). So, the mean is 13%, the standard deviation is 18.5%.

(c) $Cov(\tilde{r}_A, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = 500\%$. $Correlation(\tilde{r}_A, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = 88.8\%$

(d) $Cov(\tilde{r}_A, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) / \mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = 500/12.25^2 = 3.33$.

(e) The CAPM prescribes $5\% + 5\% \cdot 3.33 = 21.65\%$. The actual rate of return is 25%. Therefore, the price of A is too low—it is underpriced.

(f) You need the certainty equivalence formula here. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_B) = \$5,600$. $Cov(\tilde{r}_B, \tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = \$710$. $\mathcal{V}ar(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) = 150\%\% = 0.015$. $\mathcal{E}(\tilde{r}_{\mathcal{M}}) - r_{\mathcal{F}} = 5\%$. lambda= 3.33 .
So, the value is

$$\text{Value}(P) = \frac{\$5,600}{1+5\%} - 3.3 \cdot \frac{\$710}{1+5\%} = \$5,333 - \$2,253 = \$3,080$$

(g) This translates into rates of return of -74%, -68%, and +287%.

15. $20/\sqrt{12} \approx 5.8\%$

16. A zero upfront investment, with no possibility of a cash outflow, and occasionally positive cash flows. A great bet may have a negative in the future, e.g., $-\$5$ in one state of the world, $+\$100,000$ in another state of the world.

17. Rely on and learn from your own market prices. Rely on and learn from your competitors' market prices. Rely on and learn from input's and output's market prices. Cannot add value by doing things that investors can do for themselves.

18. False. There is consumer and producer surplus. e.g., a gas station may have fair prices, but if you are out of gas, having the ability to buy gas there is very useful to you.

19. Control rights (debt can force bankruptcy, equity votes management), and cash flow rights (debt gets first dib, equity gets remainder incl unlimited upside).

20. True. True. False.

21. [1] In a perfect market, the financing mix (debt/equity) of the company makes no difference to its value. [2] In a perfect market, the payout policy of the company makes no difference to its value.

22. See Table 23.7

23. See Table 23.7

24.

(a) $\$100 \to \$115$, so 15%.

(b) $\$100 \to \$110$, so 10%.

(c) \$20 in earnings. \$5 in taxes. Thus, tax rate is 25%.

(d) $0.5 \cdot 10\% \cdot (1-25\%) + 0.5 \cdot 15\% = 22.5\%/2 = 11.25\%$.

(e) It is not $-\$200 + \$225/1.1125 = \$2.247$! The reason is that the payouts have already taken care of the taxes. so, you need to use the non-tax adjusted WACC, which is $-\$200 + \$225/1.125 = \$0$. Actually, another way to see this is to just rely on the statement that everything is fairly priced—this means that there is positive NPV value to be gained here.

25. Cash cows would be debt-financed, have high interest payments, and be held by non-profits.

26.

(a) How their value has changed around, i.e., their recent stock prices.

(b) In M&A transactions.

(c) Long-Term debt.

(d) Yes, e.g., pension fund obligations.

(e) Not very strong. They are unlikely to be big enough to stop managers from maintaining lousy capital structures if they so wish.

27. Match assets and liabilities. Obtain a credit line. Have more liquid investments. Have more equity and less debt financing.

28. About 1% of deal value.

29. Pecking Order: firms prefer issuing debt to equity. Financing pyramid: a lot of debt at the bottom, less equity at the top. The pecking order does not imply a financing pyramid, perhaps most of all, because equity gains in value over time.

30. Debt carries about a zero (or tiny negative) announcement event. Equity is a large negative announcement event, –1.5% (dilution of >10%). Together, this implies that markets like capital payouts and higher leverage.
31. [Legal Bribes]. Empire building. Corporate perks. High executive pay. Entrenching. Friendship+Loyalty. Employees. Perverse incentives (MBO). Any 5 are enough.
32. Before the company is originally sold, because by reducing future agency problems, the entrepreneur is increasing the value of the firm that she benefits from immediately. Thus, it should be a great corporate charter!
33. You

(All answers should be treated as suspect. They have only been sketched, and not been checked.)

WEB CHAPTER A

INDEX

Index

last file change: Jan 17, 2006 (21:07h)

last major edit: na

n/a

1·1. MAIN INDEX

- Please note that page numbers here can be off by a couple of pages (most hopefully no more than 1 page). This has to do both with infrequent updating of the index by myself, and with LaTeX's way of processing lines and pages. Underline means frequent mention on the same page.
- **Boldface** of a page number (or range) means an important occurrence (or specific definition) of the phrase on the particular page.
- underline of a page number (or range) means multiple occurrences.

INDEX

τ, **550**.
10-K, *see* Annual Report.
10-Q, *see* Quarterly Report.
1040, **128**.
401-K, **128**.

Absolute priority, **603**.
Absolute priority rule, **508**, **603**.
Accounting, **198**, **207**, **250**, **255**.
Accounts payables, **215**.
Accounts receivables, **206**, **215**.
Accruals, **206**.
Acid-Test, **258**.
Acquirer, **500**, **595**.
Acquisition, **236**, **693**.
Adjustable Rate Mortgage, **797**.
Adjusted present value, **554–559**, **561–564**, **566–568**, **571–574**, 583f, **614–616**, **787**.
ADR, **255**, **296**.
Adverse selection, **606**.
After-tax expense, **130**.
Agency, **176**.
Agency Bond, **797**.
Alternative Minimum Tax, **130**.
American Airlines, **600**.
American Depositary Receipt, **255**, **296**.
Ameritrade, **288**.
Amortization, **210**.
AMT, *see* Alternative Minimum Tax.
Annual Percentage Rate, **797**.
Annual quote, **21**.
Annual rate, compounded daily, **21**.
Annual Report, **199**, **250**.
Annualization of Portfolio Risk, **374**.
Annuity, **43**.
APR, **508**, **603**, **797**.
APT, **471–475**.
APV, *see* Adjusted present value.
APV with personal taxes, **583**.
Arbitrage, **296**, **445**, **478**, 530f, **533**, 611f.
Arbitrage portfolio, **474**.
Arbitrage Pricing Theory, **471**.
Archipelago, **289**.
ARM Rate, **797**.
Ask price, **124**, **291**, **478**.
Asset, **569**.
Asset allocation, **374**.
Asset beta, **436**.
Auction market, **288**.
Audit, **178**.
Average, **84**, **308**.
Average annualized rate, **55**.
Average tax rate, **131**.

Balloon payment, **513**.
Bank, **609**.
Bank Debt, **609**.
Bank of England, **612**.
Bank overdrafts, **215**.
Bankers Acceptances, **797**.
    Indirect, **593**.
Basis point, **16**.
Beardstown Ladies' Common-Sense Investment Guide, **492**.
Bearer bond, **799**.
Before-tax expense, **130**.
Behavioral finance, **116**, **481**, **609**, **672**.
Benchmarking, CAPM, **469**.
Berkshire-Hathaway, **491**.
Beta, **319**.
Bid price, **124**, **291**, **478**.
Bid-ask bounce, **488**.
BLS, *see* Bureau of Labor Statistics.
Bond, 12f, **58**, **508**.
    Bearer, **799**.
    Callable, **512**.
    Change of Interest Rate Influencing Price of, **66**.
    Collar, **513**.
    Collateral, **512**.
    Coupon, **513**.
    Covenant, **512**.
    CPI, **143**.
    Duration, **513**.
    Maturity, **513**.
    Municipal, **134**.
    Puttable, **512**.
    Secured, **512**.
    Seniority, **512**.
    Sinking Fund, **512**.
    Subordinated, **512**.
    Zero, **513**.
Bond covenant, **508**, **512**.
Bond duration, **513**.
Bond Market Data Bank, **797**.
Bond maturity, **513**.
Bond seniority, **512**.
Bond stripping, **513**.
Book value, **205**.
Book-to-Market Ratio, **260**, **475**.
Borrower, **13**.
Brownian motion, **488**.
Bubble, **429**.
Bureau of Labor Statistics, **138**.
Business judgment rule, **717**.
Business Week, **0-vii**.
Buy recommendation, **684**.
Buy-and-hold, **126**.

Cadbury Schweppes, **244–246**, **248**, 253f, **256**, 265f, **294–297**, **300**, **303**, 342f, **355**.
Calibration, **749**.
Call, **517**.
Call option, **517**.
Callability, **512**.
Callable Bond, **797**.
Capital Asset Pricing Model, **422**.
Capital budgeting, **11**.
Capital Expenditure, **236**.
Capital gain, **15**, **131**.
Capital loss, **15**.
Capital structure, **526**.
CAPM, **0-iv**, **8**, **270**, 285f, **325**, **382**, **392**, **402**, **405**, **410**, **421–429**, **431–433**, **435**, **438–443**, **445–452**, 454f, 457f, **461–472**, **474**, **476**, 479f, **487**, **494**,

499, 501, 537–539, 544–547, 567–569, 571, 743–745, 757.
Capped, 513.
Car loan rate, 797.
Cash, 215.
Cash Conversion Cycle, 259.
Cash flow, 12.
Expected, 164.
Most Likely, 164.
Typical, 164.
Cash flow right, 700.
Cash flow statement, 221.
Cash Inflow, *see* Cash flow.
Cash Outflow, *see* Cash flow.
Cash ratio, 258.
Causation, 327.
CD, 797.
Certainty equivalence, 452.
Certificate of Deposit, 797.
Chairman of the Board, 709.
Change in working capital, 220.
Changes in Deferred Taxes, 219.
Changes in working capital, 222.
Chapter 11, 508.
Chapter 7, 508.
Chapter 11 Reorganization, 593.
Chapter 7 Liquidation, 593.
Charles Schwab, 288.
Chase Manhattan Bank, 685.
Citibank, 685.
Classical finance, 116, 481.
Closed end fund discount, 296.
Closed-end, 296.
CMO, 797.
Coca Cola, 225–228, 232, 234, 244–248, 253f, 256, 265, 277, 293–297, 300, 303, 342–344, 355, 565, 739f, 743f, 746, 750.
COGS, *see* Cost of goods sold.
Collared, 513.
Collateral, 119, 512.
Collateralized Mortgage Obligation, 797.
Collateralized Trust Bond, 797.
Collection period, 259.
Commercial paper, 513, 797.
Common equity, 509.
Compartmentalization, 175.
Competitive market, 114.
Computer science, 155.
Conflict of interest, 700.
Conglomerates, 439.
Consumer Credit, 797.
Consumer Price Index, 138.
Continuously compounded interest rate, 78.
Control right, 700.
Convertability, 512.
Convertible Bond, 797.
Corporate board, 509, 700, 709.
Corporate charter, 526.
Corporate governance, 178, 509, 699.
Corporate income tax, 207.
Corporate Income Tax Rate, 549, 569.
Correlation, 318, 322, 328, 363, 377f, 387, 417, 810.
Cost, 12.
Cost of capital, 24, 188, 536.
Internally Generated vs External Funds, 648.
Cost of goods sold, 209.
Coupon bond, 44, 513.
Coupon yield, 15.
Covariance, 315, 317–320, 322, 328, 330, 332–335, 337–342, 347, 350, 354f, 360–364, 377f, 382, 385, 387f, 394, 397, 400f, 404, 412, 415–419, 423, 434, 452–455, 459, 744, 793f, 810.
Covenants, 119.
CPI, 138.
CPI Bond, 143.
Credit line, 514.
Credit Markets, 149, 797.
Credit premium, 88.
Credit risk, 88.
Credit Suisse First Boston, 290.
Credit-card rate, 797.
Crossing system, 289.
CSFB, 290.
Cum dividend, 610.
Cumulative Normal Distribution Table, 326.
Current assets, 205, 258.
Current liabilities, 205, 258.
Current Ratio, 258.

DAX, 298.
Dax Performance Index, 297.
Day trader, 126.
Days in inventory, 259.
Days of Inventories Outstanding, 259.
Days of Payables Outstanding, 259.
Days of Receivables Outstanding, 259.
Days of Sales Outstanding, 259.
Debenture, 798.
Debt, 12.
Debt capacity, 567.
Debt Ratio, 257.
Debt-for-equity, 251.
Debt-for-stock, 251.
Debt/Equity Ratio, 257.
Default, 88.
Default premium, 88, 99.
Default risk, 88, 427.
Deferred Tax, 586.
Deferred taxes, 220.
Defined benefit, 13.
Defined contribution, 13.
Deflation, 138.
Depletion, 210.
Depreciation, 206, 210.
Deviation from the mean, 308.
Dilution, 514, 678.
Discount, 45.
Discount bond, 582.
Discount factor, 25.
Discount rate, 25, 798.
Discounting, 25.
Diseconomies of scale, 156.
Diversification, 359.
Dividend, 290.
Dividend Payout Ratio, 260.
Dividend reinvestment plan, 612.
Dividend yield, 15, 261, 611.
Dividend-price ratio, 261.
DJIA, 270.
Double taxation of dividends, 509.
Dow Jones, 298.
Dow-Jones 30, 297f.
Dow-Jones Industrial Average, 270.
DPO, 259.
DRIP, 612.
Due diligence, 481.
Duration, 74.
Duration and Maturity, 258.

E-M, *see* Efficient Market.
EAC, 162.
Earned income, 128.
Earnings, 209.
Earnings before interest and taxes, 209.

Earnings before interest and taxes, depreciation, and amortization, 209.
Earnings dilution, 672.
Earnings yield, 236.
EBIT, *see* Earnings before interest and taxes.
EBITDA, *see* Earnings before interest and taxes, depreciation, and amortization.
Ecaps, 646.
ECN, 289.
Economic rents, 733.
Economies of scale, 158, 739.
EDGAR, 199.
Effective annual rate, 21.
Efficient frontier, 384.
Efficient Market, 115, 384, 477.
Electronic communications network, 289.
Enterprise value, 13.
Entity value, 632.
Entrepreneurial Finance, 442.
Equal-weighted, 298.
Equipment Obligation, 798.
Equity, 12, 96, 508.
Equity beta, 436.
Equity Premium, 423.
Estate tax, 133, 612.
Eurobond, 798.
Event study, 495.
Ex-ante, 527.
Ex-dividend day, 610, 612.
Ex-post, 527.
Exchange offer, 651.
Exchange-traded fund, 296.
Expected cash flow, 164.
Expected interest rate, 99.
Expected Rates of Return, 188.
Expected Value, 0-iii, 84–86, 89–91, 94f, 97–100, 102, 107f, 136, 164, 167–174, 236–242, 247, 252, 265, 269, 277, 307f, 310, 317, 320, 331, 336f, 342f, 350, 354f, 360f, 364f, 372, 374, 382f, 385, 388f, 391, 394, 396–398, 400f, 403, 405–408, 410–416, 418f, 423–425, 427, 429, 433f, 437–439, 441f, 449, 451–458, 462–464, 471–474, 476, 487, 535–538, 542–544, 546f, 550, 552, 554–559, 563, 565, 567–569, 571–576, 578–581, 583f, 590f, 739, 743, 745–748, 750f, 757, 760–765, 789, 791–794, 796, 800, 810.
Expense, 12, 206.
  After-Tax, 130.
  Before-Tax, 130.
Externality, 155.

Factor, 471.
Factor exposures, 472.
Factor loadings, 472.
Fair bet, 85.
FannieMae, 798.
FASB, 210.
Federal Funds Rate, 798.
Federated Department Stores, 596.
FHLMC, 798.
Fidelity, 370.
Fiduciary obligation, 290.
Financial reports, 199.
Financial results, 199.
Financial Times, 0-vii.
Financial Times Stock Exchange, 298.
Financials, *see* Financial results.
Fire-sale, 594.
Fitch, 688.
Fixed income, 13.
Fixed interest-rate debt, 513.
Fixed rate mortgage loan, 43.
Floating interest-rate debt, 513.
Flow-to-equity, 561.
FNMA, 798.
Forward interest rate, 70.
Forward rate, *see* Forward interest rate.
Forward transaction, 74.
FreddieMac, 798.
FT, 0-vii.
FTSE, 298.
Fund, 288, 296.
Fund of funds, 393.
Fundamental trading, 483.
Funded debt, 513.
Future value, 17.
Futures Contract, 479.
  Citrus, 479.

GAAP, 210.
GDP, 14.
GDP Deflator, 138.
General Obligation Bond, 798f.
Geometric average, 71.
George Soros, 490.
Germany, 526.
GIC, 798.
Glass-Steagall Act of 1933, 685.
GO Bond, 798f.
Gold, 370.
Goldman Sachs, 289.
Good bet, 479.
GOP, 612.
Gordon growth model, 42.
Government Agency & Similar Issues, 797.
Greedy algorithm, 154.
Growing annuity, 47.
Growing perpetuity, 40.
Growth firm, 345, 475.
Guaranteed Investment Contract, 798.

Hamada Equation, 559.
Hammurabi, 60.
Health care firms, 345.
Hedge, 76, 424.
Hedge fund, 296, 393.
Hedging, 440.
Heuristic, 154.
High-yield bond, 688, 798.
Historical mean, 345.
Hold up, 705.
Holding period, 14.
Holding rate of return, 18.
Home Equity Loan, 798.
Hostile takeover, 710.
Hurdle Rate, 188.
Hyperbola, 382.
Hyperinflation, 138.

I/B/E/S, 240.
Independent, 155.
Index fund, 345, 370.
Indirect bankruptcy cost, 593.
Individual retirement account, 128.
Inflation, 138.
Initial public offering, 289, 651f.
Instinet, 289.
Insurance Company, 655.
Intangible Assets, 210.
Interaction, 155.
Interest, 13.
Interest Coverage, 258.
Interest forward, 74.
Interest Only, 797.
Interest rate, 13.
  Continuously Compounded, 78.

Expected, **88**.
Influence on Bond Price, **66**.
Promised, **88**.
Quoted, **88**.
Stated, **88**.
Interest Rates and Bonds, **797**.
Internal Rate of Return, **185**, **188**.
Internal Revenue Service, **128**, **582**.
Inventories, **215**.
Inventory Turnover, **258**.
Inverted, **61**.
Investment, **12**.
Investment grade, **120**.
Investment grade bond, **688**, **798**.
Investment in Goodwill, **219**.
Investor psychology, **482**.
IO, **797**.
IPO, **289**.
IPO underpricing, **653**.
IRA, **128**.
IRR, *see* Internal Rate of Return.
IRS, *see* Internal Revenue Service.
Issue origination, **684**.
Issue placement, **684**.
ITG, **289**.

Jargon, **0-vi**.
Jumbo Mortgage, **798**.
Junior bond, **512**.
Junk, **120**.
Junk Bond, **798**.

KKR, **649**, **712**.
Kohlberg, Kravis, Roberts, **649**, **712**.

Law of one price, **6**, **26**, **478**.
Laws of Expectations, **791**.
LBO, *see* Leveraged Buyout.
Leasing, **569**.
Lehman Brothers, **298**.
Level-coupon bond, **44**.
Leverage, **508**.
Leveraged Buyout, **553**, **693**, **705**, **712**.
Levered equity, **93**, **96**.
LIBOR, *see* London Interbank Offer Rate.
Lifland, Burton, **509**.
Limit order, **125**, **288**.
Limit order book, **288**.
Limited liability, **96**, **290**, **509**.
Linear Regression, **320**.
Liquidity premium, **91**, **127**.
Liquidnet, **289**.
Loan, **13**.
Credit Risk, **88**.
Default Risk, **88**.
London Interbank Offer Rate, **513**, **798**.
Long bond, **14**.
Long-term accrual, **206**.
Long-Term Capital Management, **327**.
LTCM, **327**.

M&A, **693**.
M&M, *see* Modigliani-Miller.
Macaulay Duration, **75**.
Management buyout, **693**.
Margin, **157**.
Marginal tax rate, **131**.
Market beta, **347**, **433**.
Market Efficiency, **479**.
Market model, **347**.
Market order, **125**, **288**.
Market Risk Premium, **423**.
Market value, **475**.
Market-maker, **288**.
Markets Diary, **797**.
Maturity, **13**, **508**.
MBO, **693**.
MBS, **298**.
Mean, **84**, **308**.
Mean reverting, **374**.
Mean-variance efficient frontier, **384**.
Medicare, **130**, **133**.
Mergent, **688**.
Merrill Lynch, 288f.
Microsoft, **6**.
Miller Debt and Taxes, **615**.
Minimum variance portfolio, 390f.
Modigliani-Miller, **528**.
Momentum, **475**, **484**.
Money Rates, **150**, **797**.
Money-market, **272**.
Money-Market Rate, **798**.
Money&Investing, **298**.
Monopoly, **160**.
Monte-Carlo simulation, **170**, **390**, **753**.
Moody's, **119**, **688**.
Moral Hazard, **617**.
Morgan Stanley, **298**.
Mortgage, **43**.
Mortgage Bond, **798**.
Motley Fool Investment Guide, **492**.
MSCI EAFE, **298**.
Muni, **134**.
Muni bonds, *see* Municipal bond.
Municipal bond, **134**, **798**.
Mutual fund, **296**, **370**, **490**.
MVE, **384**.

N-year Mortgage Rate, **798**.
NASD, **289**.
Nasdaq, **288**, **298**, **484**, **492**.
Natural logarithm, **78**.
Natural monopoly, **160**.
Natural Resources, **210**.
Negative interaction, **156**.
Negotiated debt, **514**.
Net Income, *see* Earnings.
Net income, **206**.
Net issuance of debt, **222**.
Net operating losses, **569**.
Net present value, 26f, **62**.
Capital Budgeting Rule, **27**.
Net return, **14**.
New York Bond Exchange, **650**.
New York Futures Exchange, **479**.
New York Mercantile Exchange, **479**.
New York Stock Exchange, **288**, **478**.
New York Times, **0-vii**.
Nikkei, **298**.
No-recourse loan, **96**.
Noise trader, **480**.
NOL, **569**.
Nominal return, **139**.
Non-cash items, **220**.
NYSE, **214**, **288**, **370**, **478**, **484**.
NYT, *see* New York Times.

On margin, **288**.
On the margin, **158**.
On-the-run, **127**.
Open-ended, **296**.
Operating activity net of investing activity, **222**.
Operating income, **209**.
Operations research, **155**.
Opportunity cost, **24**, **124**.
Opportunity cost of capital, **422**.

Optimal capital structure, 527.
Ordinary equity, *see* Common equity.
Ordinary income, 128.
OTC, 289.
Over-the-counter, 289, 650.
Overconfidence, 175, 609.
Overoptimism, 609.

P-E ratio, *see* Price-earnings ratio.
P/E ratio, *see* Price-earnings ratio.
Par value, 44.
Parabola, 385.
Past performance is no predictor of future performance, 491.
Payables Turnover, 259.
Payback rule, 189.
Payment for order flow, 125.
Payoff, 12.
Payoff table, 93.
Payout Ratio, 260f.
Payout Table, 72.
PE Ratio, *see* Price-earnings ratio.
Pecking order, 607, 648.
PepsiCo, 6, 10, 114, 124f, 196f, 200–203, 205, 208–210, 214, 217, 219–223, 225, 228f, 231, 234, 238, 244, 246, 248, 253f, 256–259, 261, 265, 270, 277, 283, 291–297, 300, 303, 324, 342–344, 355, 363, 435, 478–480, 551, 565, 568, 585, 729, 731f, 734–747, 749f, 752–758, 760–765.
Percent, 14.
Perfect World, 525.
  Growing, 40.
Perpetuity, 38.
Pink sheets, 289.
PO, 797.
Pooling, 210.
Portfolio, 294, 793.
Portfolio benchmarking, 469.
POSIT, 289.
Positive interaction, 156.
Post audit, 178.
PPI, 138.
Preferred equity, 517.
Premium, 45, 90.
  Default, 90, 99.
  Risk, 91.
  Time, 91.
Present value, 17, 23.
Present Value of Growth Opportunities, 237.
Price-earnings ratio, 235.
Primary shares, 652.
Prime broker, 288.
Prime rate, 513, 798.
Principal, 44, 513.
Principal Only, 797.
Pro forma, 729f.
Probability, 84–86, 88–90, 94–100, 107, 165, 427, 453, 459, 532, 592, 597, 601, 603, 606, 618f, 791f.
Probability distribution, 85.
Producer Price Index, 138.
Profit Margin, 259.
Profitability index, 184.
Progressive Tax Rates, 128.
Project, 12.
Project beta, 436.
Promised, 89f.
Promised interest rate, 88, 99.
Promised rate of return, 97.
Proxy contest, 710.
Puttability, 512.
PVGO, *see* Present Value of Growth Opportunities.

Quarterly Report, 199, 250.
Quick Ratio, 258.
Quoted interest rate, 88.

Random variable, 84, 307.
Random walk, 487.
Rate of return, 14, 23.
  Annualized, 56.
  Holding, 56.
  promised, 97.
Rate-indexed, 139.
Rational Finance, 481.
Real Estate Investment Trust, 345.
Real option, 165.
Real return, 139.
Realization, 84.
Receivables Turnover, 258.
Redeem, 512.
Reinvestment rate, 54.
REIT, 345.
Relativism, 175.
Repo Rate, 799.
Reputation, 718.
Research and Development, 566.
Restated, 210.
Restaurant Failure Rate, 12, 175.
Retail broker, 288.
Return, 12, 14.
  Nominal, 139.
  Real, 139.
Return on (Book) Assets, 259.
Return on (Book) Equity, 260.
Return on Sales, 259.
Revenue, 12, 206, 209.
Revenue Bond, 798f.
Reward, 86.
Rho, 318.
Rights offering, 652.
Risk, 87.
Risk premium, 91.
Risk-neutral, 87.
ROA, 259.
ROE, 260.
Round-trip, 123.
Round-trip transaction, 291.
Rule 415, 652.
Russell 2000, 298.

S&P 500, 298.
Sales, 209.
Sales tax, 133.
SallieMae, 799.
Sample mean, 345.
Sampling error, 327.
Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, 723.
Savings Bond, 799.
Scenario analysis, 104, 170, 174.
Score, 326.
Seasoned equity offering, 290, 651.
SEC, *see* Securities and Exchange Commission.
Second-best, 700.
Secondary shares, 652.
Secured bond, 512.
Securities, 508.
Securities and Exchange Commission, 508.
Security, 512.
Security markets line, 424.
Sell recommendation, 684.
Selling, general & administrative expenses, 209.
Semi-Strong Market Efficiency, 483.
Senior bond, 512.
Sensitivity analysis, 104.
SEO, 290.
Separation, 118.

Separation of decisions, **35**.
Series E Bond, **799**.
Series H Bond, **799**.
SG&A, *see* Selling, general & administrative expenses.
Share repurchase, **290**.
Shareholder proposal, **711**.
Shareholder wealth, **526**.
Shark repellant, **711**.
Sharpe Ratio, **398**.
Sharpe-ratio, **374**.
Short sale, **72**.
Short-term accrual, **206**.
Shorting, **291**.
Sigma, **318**.
Signal-to-noise ratio, 482f.
Sinking fund, **512**.
Small Business Administration, **175**.
Social Security, **130**, **133**.
Solvent, **88**.
Specialist, **288**.
Speculative grade, **120**.
Spot interest rate, **70**.
Spot rate, **70**.
Standard Deviation, **86**, **100**, **277**, 309f, **314**, **317–319**, **322**, **328**, **330**, **344**, 354f, **360–364**, **372**, **374**, 377f, 382f, **385**, 388f, **394**, **396–398**, 400f, **403**, **408**, **415–419**, **453**, **794**, **796**, **800**.
Standard&Poors, **119**, **688**.
Stanley Toolworks, **570**.
State, **510**.
State table, **93**.
State-contingent claim, **510**.
Stated interest rate, **88**.
Stock, **12**, **96**, 508f.
Stock dividend, **612**.
Stock shareholder, **509**.
Stock split, **297**, **612**.
Stockholder, **509**.
Straight-line depreciation, **206**.
Strategic option, **165**.
Strong buy, **684**.
Strong Market Efficiency, **484**.
Strong sell, **684**.
Student Loan Marketing Association, **799**.
Subordinated bond, **512**.
Sunk cost, **160**.
Supervisory Board, **526**.
Survivorship bias, **490**.
Switzerland, **569**.
Synergies, **156**.

T-bill, **14**.
Tangency Portfolio, **399**.
Tangible Assets, **210**.
Tax bracket, **130**.
Tax form, **128**.
Tax payables, **207**, **215**.
Tax-Exempt Bond, **799**.
Tax-exempt institution, **128**.
Taxable income, **128**.
Technical analysis, **483**, **490**.
Tender offer, **693**, **710**.
Term structure of interest rates, **58**.
Terminal value, **731**.
The Economist, **0-vii**.
The Whiz Kid of Wall Street's Investment Guide, **492**.
Theft, **600**.
Time value of money, **17**.
Times Interest Earned, **258**.
TIPS, *see* Treasury Inflation Protected Securities.
Total investing activity, **222**.
Total operating activity, **222**.
Total Return Index, **297**.
Tracking error, **345**.
Trade credit, **595**.
Trading Places, **479**.
Trailing twelve months, **251**.
Tranche, **650**.
Transaction cost, **291**.
Treasuries, **14**.
Treasury bill, **14**.
Treasury bond, **14**.
Treasury Bonds, Notes and Bills, **797**.
Treasury Inflation Protected Securities, **143**.
Treasury note, **14**.
Treasury stock, **651**.
Treasury STRIPS, **69**.
TTM, *see* Trailing twelve months.
Tunneling, **716**.
Turnover, **258**.

Underinvestment, **596**.
Underwriter, **289**, **684**.
Unfunded debt, **513**.
Unit, **513**, **595**, **612**.
Unsolicited bid, **710**.
US Treasuries, **14**, **58**.
US Treasuries yield curve, **58**.
Utilities, **345**.

Value, **484**.
Value firm, **345**, **475**.
Value-at-Risk, **367**.
Value-weighted, **299**.
Vanguard, **345**, **370**.
VaR, **367**.
Variance, 309f, **314**, **317–319**, **328**, **330**, **333–335**, **338–342**, **344**, **347**, 354f, **360–364**, **372**, 377f, **382**, **385**, **388**, **394**, **397**, **401**, 403f, **411–416**, 418f, **423**, **434**, **452–455**, **744**, **790–794**, 800f, **810**.
Venture Capital, **517**.
Volatility, **483**.
Voting rule, **526**.

WACC, **0-iii**, **0-v**, **137**, 436f, **525**, **534**, **537–541**, **543–547**, **549**, **554**, **556–559**, 563f, **566–569**, **571–575**, 583f, 590f, **614–616**, **787**.
WACC with personal taxes, **583**.
Wall Street Journal, **0-vii**, **22**, **58**, **70**, **122**, **125**, 134f, **138**, **144**, **296**, **298**, **457**, **491**, **570**, **595**, **688**, **797**.
Warrant, 517f.
Warren Buffett, **490**.
Waste Management, **207**.
Weak Market Efficiency, **483**.
Weather, **479**.
Weighted average cost of capital, **534**, **538**, **554**.
  Tax-Adjusted, **556**.
Winner's curse, **606**.
Working capital, **215**.
WSJ, *see* Wall Street Journal.

Yankee Bond, **799**.
Yield, **14**.
Yield Comparisons, **149**, **797**.
Yield curve, **58**.
  Flat, **61**.
Yield to Maturity, **68**.
Yield-to-Call, **68**.
You get what you pay for, **65**.

Z-score, **326**.
Zero bond, **44**, **513**.